Netter's HEAD AND NECK ANATOMY FOR DENTISTRY





NEIL S. NORTON

2nd EDITION

F. Netter M.D.

Highdent laboratory

مرکز تخصصی پروتزهای دندانی

های دنت

طراحی و ساخت انواع پروتزهای دندانی بویژه ایمپلنت

برگزار کننده دوره های آموزشی تخصصی وجامع دندانسازی و...

با ما همراه باشید...

WWW.HIGHDENTlab.com





Netter's Head and Neck Anatomy for Dentistry

2nd Edition

Neil S. Norton, Ph.D.
Director of Admissions
Assistant Dean of Student Affairs
Professor of Oral Biology
School of Dentistry
Creighton University
Omaha, NE

Illustrations by Frank H. Netter, MD

Contributing Illustrators

Carlos A.G. Machado, MD
John A. Craig, MD
James A. Perkins, MS, MFA
Kip Carter, MS, CMI
Andrew E. B. Swift, MS, CMI
William M. Winn, MS, FAMI
Tiffany S. DaVanzo, MA, CMI

ELSEVIER
SAUNDERS

ELSEVIER
SAUNDERS

1600 John F. Kennedy Blvd.
Ste 1800
Philadelphia, PA 19103-2899

NETTER'S HEAD AND NECK ANATOMY FOR DENTISTRY ISBN: 978-1-4377-2663-3
Copyright © 2012, 2007 by Saunders, an imprint of Elsevier Inc.

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, or any information storage and retrieval system, without permission in writing from the publisher. Permissions for Netter Art figures may be sought directly from Elsevier's Health Science Licensing Department in Philadelphia, PA, via email at H.licensing@elsevier.com.

Notices

Knowledge and best practice in this field are constantly changing. As new research and experience broaden our understanding, changes in research methods, professional practices, or medical treatment may become necessary.

Practitioners and researchers must always rely on their own experience and knowledge in evaluating and using any information, methods, compounds, or experiments described herein. In using such information or methods they should be mindful of their own safety and the safety of others, including parties for whom they have a professional responsibility.

With respect to any drug or pharmaceutical products identified, readers are advised to check the most current information provided (i) on procedures featured or (ii) by the manufacturer of each product to be administered, to verify the recommended dose or formula, the method and duration of administration, and contraindications. It is the responsibility of practitioners, relying on their own experience and knowledge of their patients, to make diagnoses, to determine dosages and the best treatment for each individual patient, and to take all appropriate safety precautions.

To the fullest extent of the law, neither the Publisher nor the authors, contributors, or editors, assume any liability for any injury and/or damage to persons or property as a matter of products liability, negligence or otherwise, or from any use or operation of any methods, products, instructions, or ideas contained in the material herein.

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data
Norton, Neil Scott.
Netter's head and neck anatomy for dentistry / Neil S. Norton ; illustrations by Frank H. Netter ; contributing illustrators, Carlos A.G. Machado . . . [et al.].—2nd ed.
p. ; cm.
Head and neck anatomy for dentistry
Includes bibliographical references and index.
ISBN 978-1-4377-2663-3 (pbk. : alk. paper)
I. Netter, Frank H. (Frank Henry), 1906-1991. II. Title. III. Title: Head and neck anatomy for dentistry.
[DNLM: 1. Dentistry—Atlases. 2. Head—anatomy & histology—Atlases. 3. Neck—anatomy & histology—Atlases. WU 17]
LC-classification not assigned
611′.91—dc23

2011029515

Acquisitions Editor: Elyse O'Grady
Developmental Editor: Marybeth Thiel
Publishing Services Manager: Catherine Jackson
Senior Project Manager: Carol O'Connell
Design Direction: Louis Forgione

Printed in China

Last digit is the print number: 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

Working together to grow libraries in developing countries
www.elsevier.com | www.bookaid.org | www.sabre.org
ELSEVIER BOOK AID International Sabre Foundation

I dedicate this book to the following influential people in my life,

To my mother Chari, who worked tirelessly and sacrificed everything throughout her life so that her children would not be without.

To Elizabeth, who made me a better man. I owe you everything for all that you have done for me.

To my brother John, who helped raise me.

To the late Father John G. Holbrook, S.J., who helped me appreciate the importance of service to others. He taught me the dedicated ways of *cura personalis,* or care for the individual. I have tried to live by those words every day of my life.

About the Author

Neil S. Norton, PhD, joined Creighton University in 1996 and is currently the Director of Admissions, Assistant Dean for Student Affairs, and Professor of Oral Biology in the School of Dentistry. After graduating Phi Beta Kappa from Randolph-Macon College with a BA in Biology he went on to receive his PhD training in Anatomy from the University of Nebraska Medical Center. Dr. Norton has been the recipient of numerous teaching awards including ten Outstanding Instructor of the Year Awards from the Freshman classes and eight Dr. Theodore J. Urban Pre-Clinical Awards, presented by graduating Senior classes for dedication and outstanding Basic Science instruction. Dr. Norton is the third professor in the history of the School of Dentistry to receive the prestigious Robert F. Kennedy Memorial Award for Teaching Achievement, the highest teaching recognition offered by the University. In 2007 Dr. Norton received the GlaxoSmithKline Sensodyne Teaching Award, the highest national teaching award given by the American Dental Education Association (ADEA). An active member of the School of Dentistry faculty, he was elected by colleagues to honorary membership in Omicron Kappa Upsilon, the Honor Dental Society whose regular membership is reserved for dentists. His teaching responsibilities include Head and Neck Anatomy, General Anatomy, Neuroscience, and Pain Control. Dr. Norton served four years as President of the University Faculty and chaired many committees, including the University Committee on Rank and Tenure and the University Committee on Academic Freedom and Responsibility. Currently he serves as the Faculty Athletic Representative for Creighton. He continues to actively publish on a variety of anatomical topics in addition to his administrative duties. He is an active member of the American Association of Clinical Anatomists (AACA) and has served as the Treasurer since 2006.

About the Artists

Frank H. Netter, MD

Frank H. Netter was born in 1906, in New York City. He studied art at the Art Student's League and the National Academy of Design before entering medical school at New York University, where he received his MD degree in 1931. During his student years, Dr. Netter's notebook sketches attracted the attention of the medical faculty and other physicians, allowing him to augment his income by illustrating articles and textbooks. He continued illustrating as a sideline after establishing a surgical practice in 1933, but he ultimately opted to give up his practice in favor of a full-time commitment to art. After service in the United States Army during World War II, Dr. Netter began his long collaboration with the CIBA Pharmaceutical Company (now Novartis Pharmaceuticals). This 45-year partnership resulted in the production of the extraordinary collection of medical art so familiar to physicians and other medical professionals worldwide.

In 2005, Elsevier, Inc., purchased the Netter Collection and all publications from Icon Learning Systems. There are now over 50 publications featuring the art of Dr. Netter available through Elsevier, Inc. (in the United States: www.us.elsevierhealth.com/Netter and outside the United States: www.elsevierhealth.com).

Dr. Netter's works are among the finest examples of the use of illustration in the teaching of medical concepts. The 13-book *Netter Collection of Medical Illustrations,* which includes the greater part of the more than 20,000 paintings created by Dr. Netter, became and remains one of the most famous medical works ever published. *The Netter Atlas of Human Anatomy,* first published in 1989, presents the anatomical paintings from the Netter Collection. Now translated into 16 languages, it is the anatomy atlas of choice among medical and health professions students the world over.

The Netter illustrations are appreciated not only for their aesthetic qualities, but, more important, for their intellectual content. As Dr. Netter wrote in 1949, ". . . clarification of a subject is the aim and goal of illustration. No matter how beautifully painted, how delicately and subtly rendered a subject may be, it is of little value as a *medical illustration* if it does not serve to make clear some medical point." Dr. Netter's planning, conception, point of view, and approach are what inform his paintings and what makes them so intellectually valuable.

Frank H. Netter, MD, physician and artist, died in 1991.

Learn more about the physician-artist whose work has inspired the Netter Reference collection at www.netterimages.com/artist/netter.htm.

Carlos Machado, MD

Carlos Machado was chosen by Novartis to be Dr. Netter's successor. He continues to be the main artist who contributes to the Netter collection of medical illustrations.

Self-taught in medical illustration, cardiologist Carlos Machado has contributed meticulous updates to some of Dr. Netter's original plates and has created many paintings of his own in the style of Netter as an extension of the Netter collection. Dr. Machado's photorealistic expertise and his keen insight into the physician/patient relationship inform his vivid and unforgettable visual style. His dedication to researching each topic and subject he paints places him among the premier medical illustrators at work today.

Learn more about his background and see more of his art at www.netterimages.com/artist/machado.htm.

Acknowledgments

The second edition of Netter's Head & Neck Anatomy for Dentistry book has been a labor of love. Like the 1st edition, it is the culmination of many hours of hard, but very satisfying, work. I am truly indebted to the help of many talented and dedicated individuals.

I started at the Creighton University School of Dentistry in 1996 and was overwhelmed by the comradery that existed at both the School and University level. I am grateful every day to be part of such a fine institution that is committed to the education of students. The support and assistance my fellow colleagues provided has been immeasurable. I would especially like to thank for their review of chapters, suggestions, and willingness to provide materials: Drs. W. Thomas Cavel, Paul Edwards, Terry Lanphier, Takanari Miyamoto, Cyndi Russell, Tarjit Saini, and Timothy McVaney. I owe a very special thanks to my Dean, Dr. Wayne W. Barkmeier. He was the person willing to give a young anatomist an opportunity at Creighton, and I owe my career to Dr. Barkmeier. It was he and Dr. Frank J. Ayers who pushed me and provided me the opportunity in Admissions and Student Affairs. For that, I'll always be grateful.

Additionally, I am grateful to Dr. Laura C. Barritt who was instrumental in the creation of the Development section of the book, as well as providing various suggestions in many other chapters. Another special thanks goes to my chair, Dr. Margaret A. Jergenson. Since 1996, Dr. Jergenson and I have taught general anatomy and head and neck anatomy to freshman dental students. As a dentist, her clinical background has been invaluable in helping me appreciate head and neck anatomy from a dental perspective. Together, we have enjoyed a great time working together as the anatomical team in the School of Dentistry. I could not ask for a better colleague with whom to teach anatomy.

My sincere appreciation to my Creighton colleagues. Creighton is a family, and I have been fortunate to spend my career at such a fine university. Over the years there are a few individuals who have helped me immensely. In particular, I owe a special acknowledgment of gratitude to Frs. Richard Hauser, S.J., and Thomas Shanahan, S.J. Last, a special thanks goes to Fr. John P. Schlegel, S.J. For eleven of my fifteen years at Creighton, Fr. Schlegel served as the President of Creighton University. In my previous role as President of the University Faculty, I worked with Fr. Schlegel on many issues and was always grateful to be working for a President committed to his students, staff, and faculty.

Thank you to the reviewers who examined the chapters in the first edition and provided excellent feedback: Drs. Robert Spears, Kathleen M. Klueber, and Brian R. MacPherson, and Professor Cindy Evans. My sincere appreciation goes to friend and colleague Dr. Thomas Quinn, who offered helpful comments and words of encouragement throughout the textual writing and development of the art.

I enlisted the help of my dental students to make *Netter's Head and Neck Anatomy for Dentistry* more student-friendly. Special thanks go to Dr. Joseph Opack for providing excellent critiques on chapters and Dr. Ryan Dobbs for his assistance in keeping many of my chapters well organized and developed. Additional thanks go to Drs. Steve Midstokke and Paul Mendes for helping in the creation of some of the new pieces of art. A special thanks to Dr. Kyle D. Smith for helping select many of the new cone beam images that have been incorporated into the second edition.

This book would not be possible if not for the beautiful new artwork created by the incredible medical illustrators at Elsevier. Their hard work not only supplemented the illustrations of Dr. Frank Netter, Carlos Machado, MD, and John Craig, MD, seamlessly,

time/highdent www.highdentlab.com instagram.com/high_dent

but also added to the vast Netter collection of anatomical pieces. Tiffany DaVanzo was instrumental in the creation of the new pieces in the second edition. I am very grateful to the work of Kip Carter, William Winn, and Andrew Swift. All of these illustrators helped put my vision into art. Their artistic interpretations are simply magnificent.

The Elsevier team deserves a special thanks for making this project happen, including Elyse O'Grady, Marybeth Thiel, Anne Lenehan, and Carol O'Connell. Additionally, I would like to acknowledge the work of those who helped me complete the first edition of the book: Jennifer Surich, Carolyn Kruse, and Jonathan Dimes.

A very special thanks goes to Paul Kelly. I have had the great honor and privilege of knowing Paul for the past 10 years. I remember many conversations with Paul over the years in which he encouraged me to put together an anatomical project for dentistry. I presented him with the rough outline and prospectus for a text/atlas that evolved into the first edition of this book.

Lastly, I thank all of the students whom I have instructed over my career. You have always served as a great inspiration to me. It has been an honor and privilege to be a part of your education. *Netter's Head and Neck Anatomy for Dentistry* is for you.

Preface

Netter's Head and Neck Anatomy for Dentistry is a text/atlas written to help dental students and professionals learn and review head and neck anatomy. Designed for first-year dental students, it also serves to teach anatomy to students of dental hygiene as well as a review for the practicing clinician. The head and neck comprise the foundation for dental anatomical study. The many small, inter-related structures are not easily observable, which makes head and neck anatomy one of the most difficult disciplines for students to master.

This second edition has three major additions from the first edition. First is the inclusion of an introductory chapter on upper limb, thorax, and abdomen. These sections are included in dental school courses of gross anatomy, and it was a goal to create one book that would fully cover head and neck anatomy but also provide the basic anatomy needed to successfully complete the upper limb, thorax, and abdomen portions of an anatomy course. The second addition is the inclusion of over 20 radiographic images to complement the anatomy illustrations throughout the text. Radiology is an important part of the education of dental students and it is a natural addition to any anatomy text. The third addition is the inclusion of review questions that cover all of the chapters in the text. The multiple-choice questions are designed to serve as a review for the reader.

To understand the clinical significance of an anatomical concept is to understand the anatomy. It is with that in mind that a series of clinical correlates that relate to dentistry are provided at the end every chapter. Many anatomical topics covered in head and neck courses have been expanded especially for this text. A chapter has been dedicated to the temporomandibular joint. In the chapter on the oral cavity, more information has been provided for the reader on such topics as dentition. Chapters on the development of the head and neck and basic neuroscience are included to help connect with other related anatomical areas. A chapter on intraoral injections is included to help teach and reinforce an area often overlooked. The intent of these chapters is to provide the reader with a brief overview of important concepts related to head and neck anatomy.

A superb team of medical illustrators created new art to complement the anatomical illustrations of Dr. Frank H. Netter, which resulted in a more complete learning tool. Essential information is presented in tables and brief text that are integrated with the Netter art to help bridge gaps and augment the readers' knowledge of head and neck anatomy.

Netter's Head and Neck Anatomy for Dentistry is for those in all stages of the dental profession. My hope is that this book will provide an essential resource to readers in helping them to learn and appreciate the complex anatomy of the head and neck.

t.me/highdent www.highdentlab.com instagram.com/high_dent

CHAPTER 1

DEVELOPMENT OF THE HEAD AND NECK

Overview 2
Pharyngeal Arches 4
Pharyngeal Pouches, Membranes, and Clefts 7
Skull 10
Face 13
Palate 15
Tongue 17
Thyroid Gland 18
Clinical Correlates 19

1 Overview

GENERAL INFORMATION

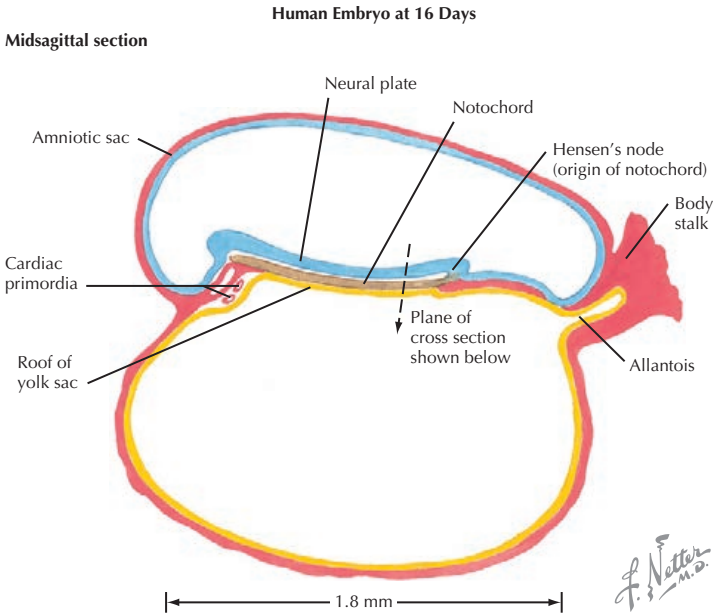
3 major germ layers form the initial developing embryo:
- Ectoderm
- Mesoderm
- Endoderm

Mesoderm differentiates into:
- Paraxial mesoderm
- Intermediate mesoderm
- Lateral plate mesoderm

Ectoderm gives rise to 2 layers:
- Neuroectoderm
- Neural crest

The head and neck are formed by:
- Paraxial mesoderm
- Lateral plate mesoderm
- Neural crest
- Ectodermal placodes

Most of the head and neck is formed from the pharyngeal arches

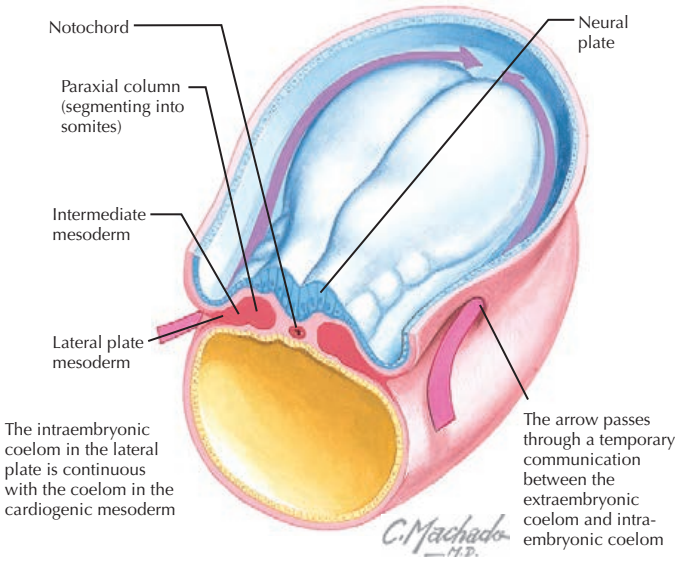


t.me/highdent www.highdentlab.com instagram.com/high_dent

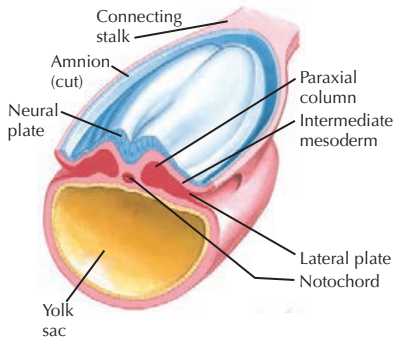
Overview

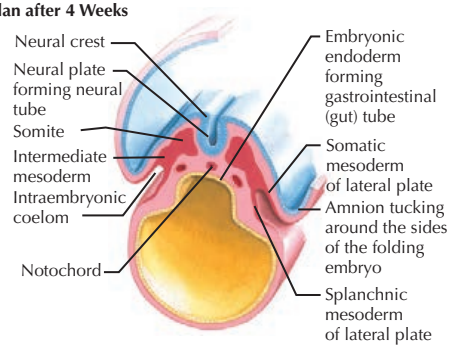
GENERAL INFORMATION *CONTINUED*

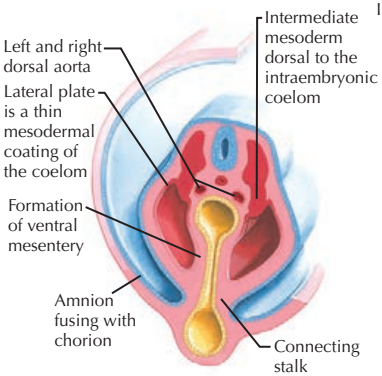
Cross section of embryo

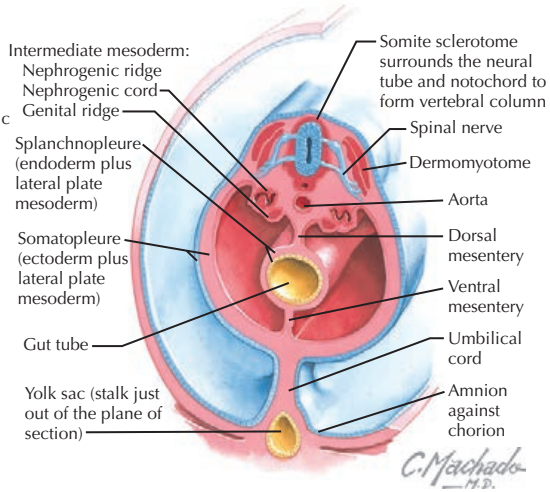


Vertebrate Body Plan after 4 Weeks









1 Pharyngeal Arches

GENERAL INFORMATION

Start forming in the 4th week of development

Develop as blocks separated by pharyngeal clefts

Initially, 6 arches develop, but the 5th regresses

Arising from the endoderm are compartments called pharyngeal pouches that extend toward the pharyngeal clefts

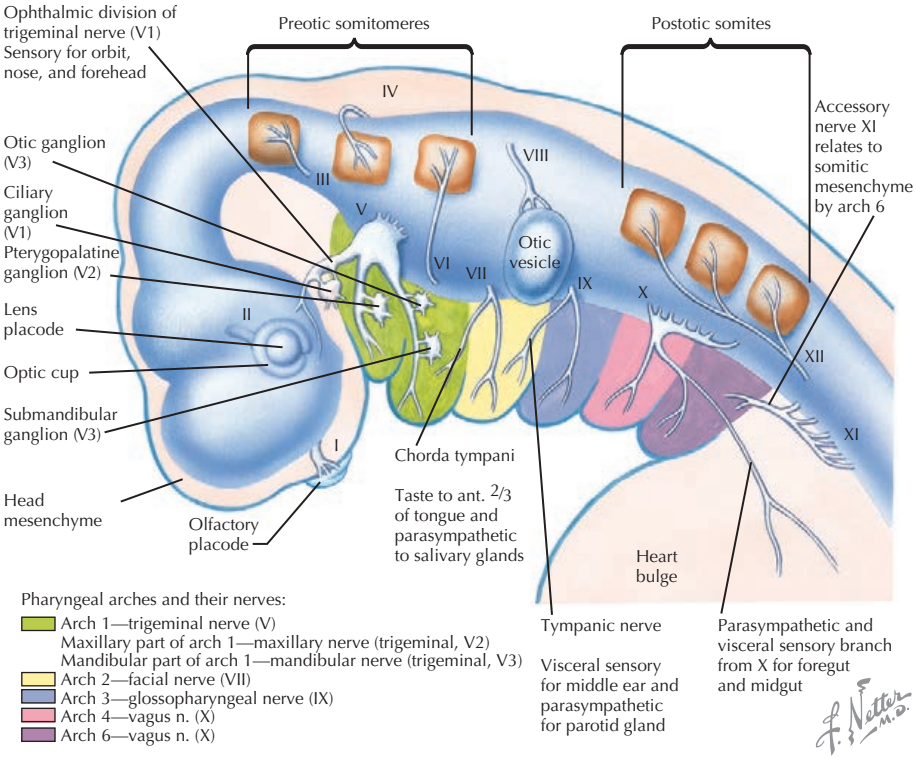
Help form 4 of the 5 swellings of the face:
- 2 mandibular processes (pharyngeal arch)
- 2 maxillary processes (pharyngeal arch)
- 1 frontonasal prominence

Composed of:
- External surface—ectoderm
- Internal surface—endoderm
- Central part—lateral plate mesoderm, paraxial mesoderm, neural crest

Skeletal components develop from the neural crest tissue

Muscular structures develop collectively from the mesoderm

Each arch is innervated by a cranial nerve that migrates with the muscles



t.me/highdent www.highdentlab.com instagram.com/high_dent

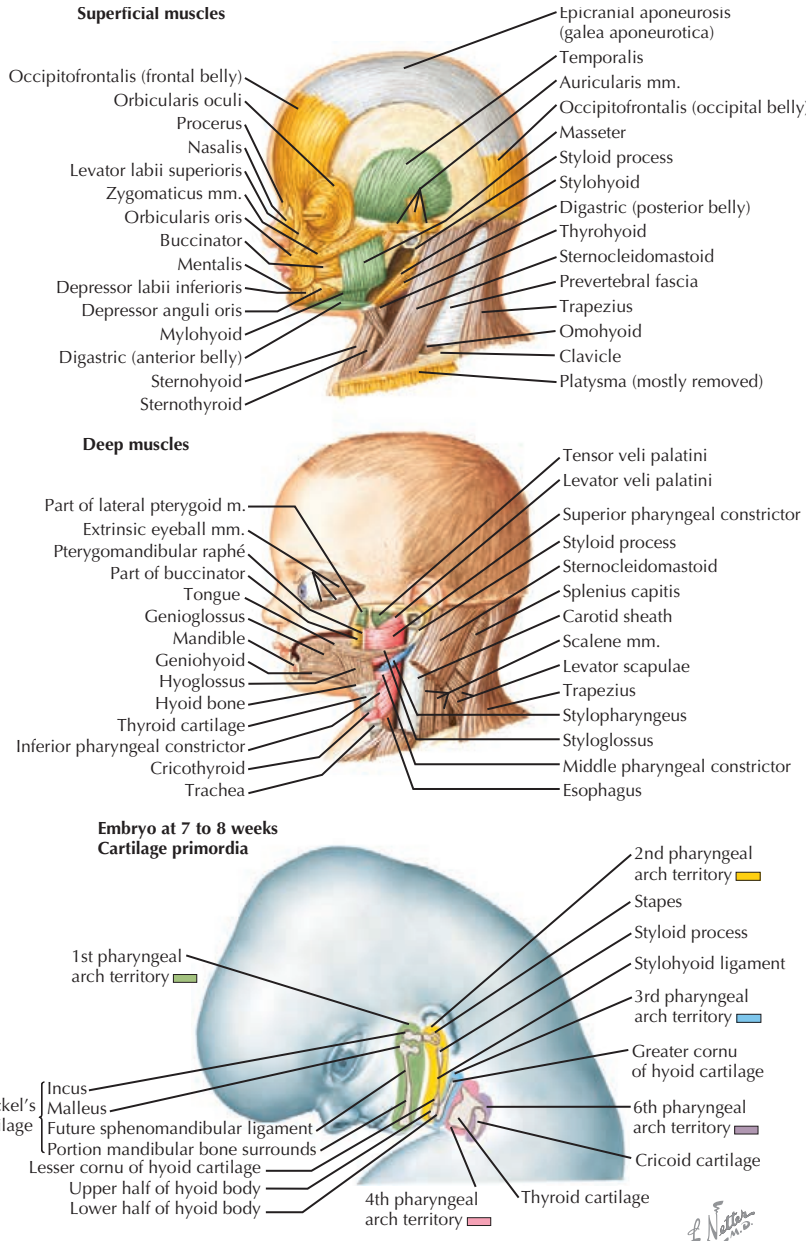
Pharyngeal Arches

DERIVATIVES OF THE PHARYNGEAL ARCHES

Arch	Muscles from Mesoderm	Skeletal Structures from Neural Crest	Cartilage Structures	Connective Tissue Structures	Nerve
1 Develops into: • Maxillary process • Mandibular process	Masseter Temporalis Lateral pterygoid Medial pterygoid Mylohyoid Anterior digastric Tensor tympani Tensor veli palatini	Maxilla Temporal (squamous portion) Zygoma Mandible Malleus Incus	Meckel's cartilage (degenerates in adulthood)	Sphenomandibular ligament Anterior ligament of the malleus	Trigeminal
2	Muscles of facial expression Posterior digastric Stylohyoid Stapedius	Lesser cornu of the hyoid Superior part of the hyoid body Styloid process Stapes	Reichert's cartilage	Stylohyoid ligament Connective tissue of the tonsil	Facial
3	Stylopharyngeus	Greater cornu of the hyoid Inferior part of the hyoid body		Connective tissue of the thymus and inferior parathyroid	Glossopharyngeal
4	Musculus uvulae Levator veli palatini Palatopharyngeus Palatoglossus Superior constrictor Middle constrictor Inferior constrictor Salpingopharyngeus Cricothyroid		Thyroid (from lateral plate mesoderm) Epiglottis	Connective tissue of the superior parathyroid and the thyroid	Vagus
6	Thyroarytenoid Vocalis Lateral cricoarytenoid Oblique arytenoids Transverse arytenoids Posterior cricoarytenoid Aryepiglottis Thyroepiglottis		Arytenoid Cricoid Cuneiform Corniculate (from lateral plate mesoderm)		Vagus

1 Pharyngeal Arches

DERIVATIVES OF THE PHARYNGEAL ARCHES *CONTINUED*



PHARYNGEAL ARCH BONES AND CARTILAGE

Arch #	Derivatives of Arch Cartilages
1	Malleus, incus, sphenomandibular ligament
2	Stapes, styloid process, stylohyoid ligament, upper half of hyoid
3	Lower half and greater horns of hyoid
4	Thyroid and epiglottic cartilages of larynx
6	Cricoid, arytenoid, and corniculate cartilages of larynx

t.me/highdent www.highdentlab.com instagram.com/high_dent

Pharyngeal Pouches, Membranes, and Clefts

GENERAL INFORMATION

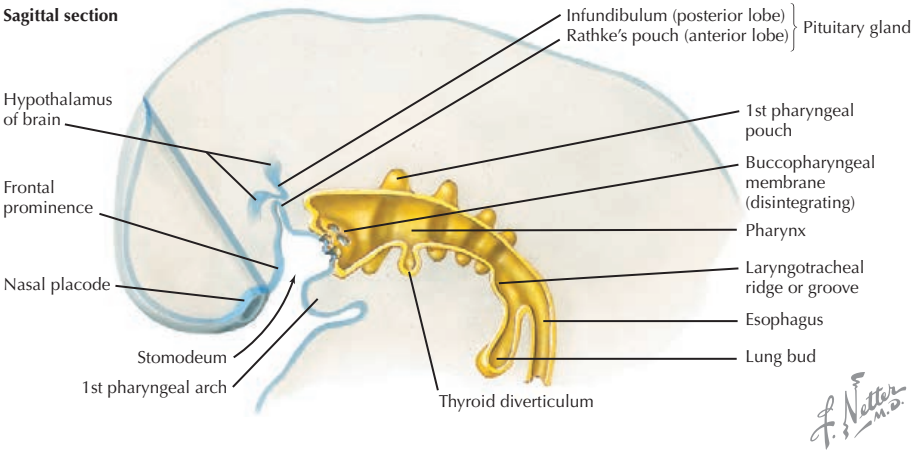
Pharyngeal pouches—4 develop from endoderm

Pharyngeal clefts—each is a groove formed from ectoderm

Pharyngeal membranes—each is composed of tissue located between a pharyngeal pouch and a pharyngeal cleft; composed of external ectoderm, mesoderm and neural crest in the core, and an internal endoderm lining

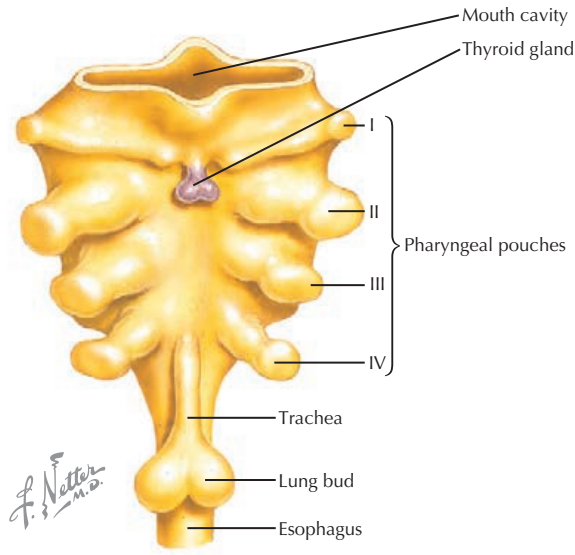
PHARYNGEAL POUCHES

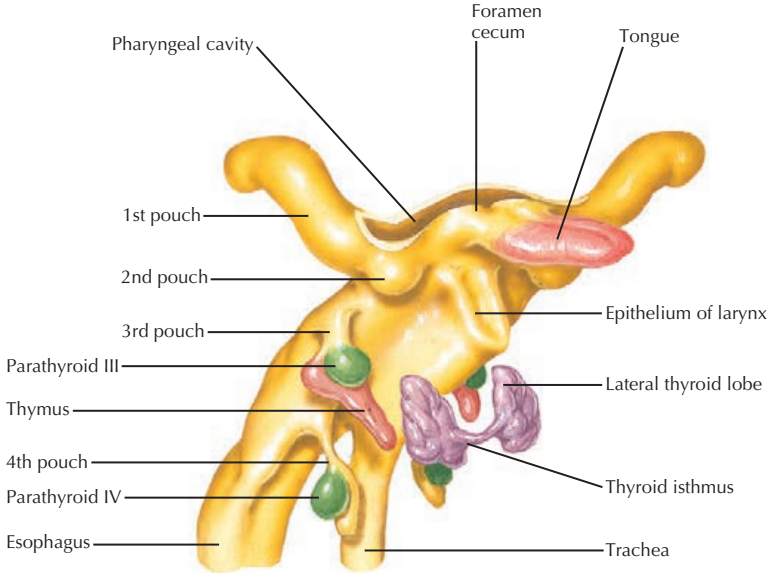
Pouch	Location	Embryonic Structure	Adult Structure
1	Opposite the 1st pharyngeal cleft, separated by the 1st pharyngeal membrane	Tubotympanic recess	Epithelium of the auditory tube and tympanic cavity
2	Opposite the 2nd pharyngeal cleft, separated by the 2nd pharyngeal membrane	Primitive palatine tonsils	Tonsilar fossa Epithelium of the palatine tonsil
3	Opposite the 3rd pharyngeal cleft, separated by the 3rd pharyngeal membrane	Divides into a dorsal and a ventral part Dorsal part migrates inferiorly toward the thorax	Inferior parathyroid gland (from the dorsal part) Thymus (from the ventral part)
4	Opposite the 4th pharyngeal cleft, separated by the 4th pharyngeal membrane	Divides into a dorsal and a ventral part Ventral part is invaded by neural crest to form the parafollicular cells	Superior parathyroid gland (from the dorsal part) Ultimobranchial body (from the ventral part)



1 Pharyngeal Pouches, Membranes, and Clefts

PHARYNGEAL POUCHES *CONTINUED*





t.me/highdent www.highdentlab.com instagram.com/high_dent

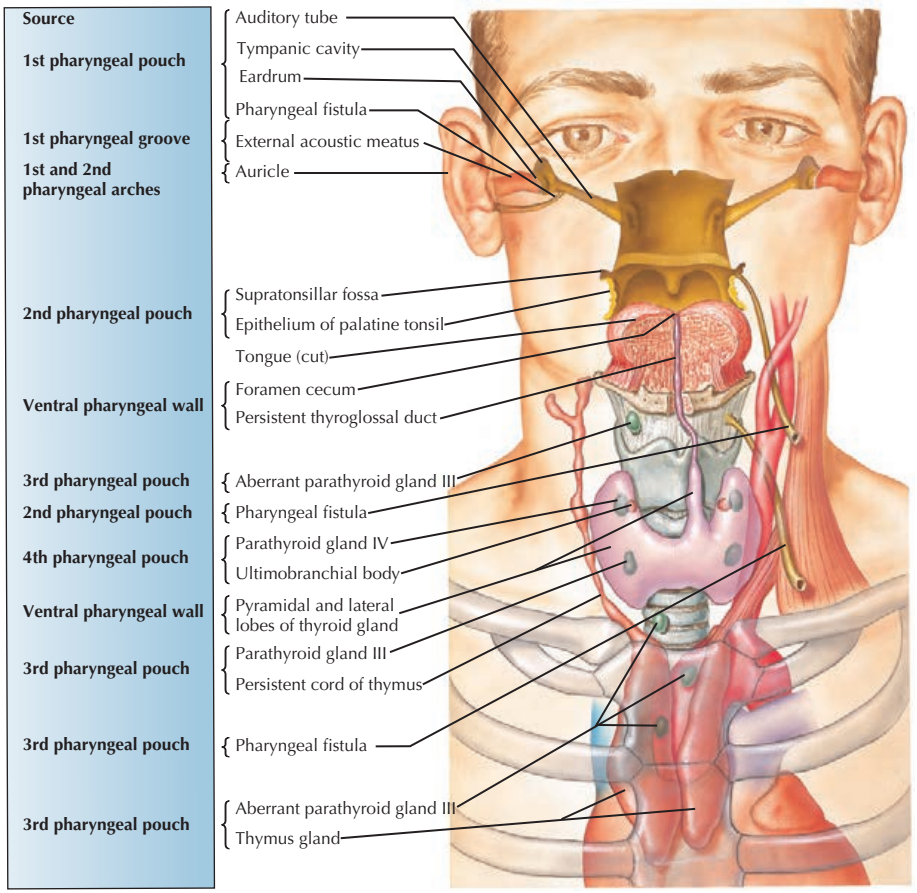
Pharyngeal Pouches, Membranes, and Clefts

PHARYNGEAL MEMBRANES

Membrane	Location	Adult Structure
1	Between the 1st pharyngeal cleft and the 1st pharyngeal pouch	Tympanic membrane
2	Between the 2nd pharyngeal cleft and the 2nd pharyngeal pouch	
3	Between the 3rd pharyngeal cleft and the 3rd pharyngeal pouch	
4	Between the 4th pharyngeal cleft and the 4th pharyngeal pouch	

PHARYNGEAL CLEFTS

Cleft	Location	Adult Structure
1	A groove between the 1st and 2nd pharyngeal arches	External acoustic meatus
2	A groove between the 2nd and 3rd pharyngeal arches	Obliterated cervical sinus by the 2nd pharyngeal arch, which grows over the cleft
3	A groove between the 3rd and 4th pharyngeal arches	
4	A groove between the 4th and 6th pharyngeal arches	



1 Skull

GENERAL INFORMATION

Skull is formed from:
- Lateral plate mesoderm (neck region)
- Paraxial mesoderm
- Neural crest

Bony skull is formed by either of 2 mechanisms:
- Intramembranous ossification
- Endochondral ossification

Skull development is divided into 2 parts:
- Viscerocranium—forms the bones of the face
- Neurocranium—forms the bones of the cranial base and cranial vault and can be divided into membranous neurocranium and cartilaginous neurocranium

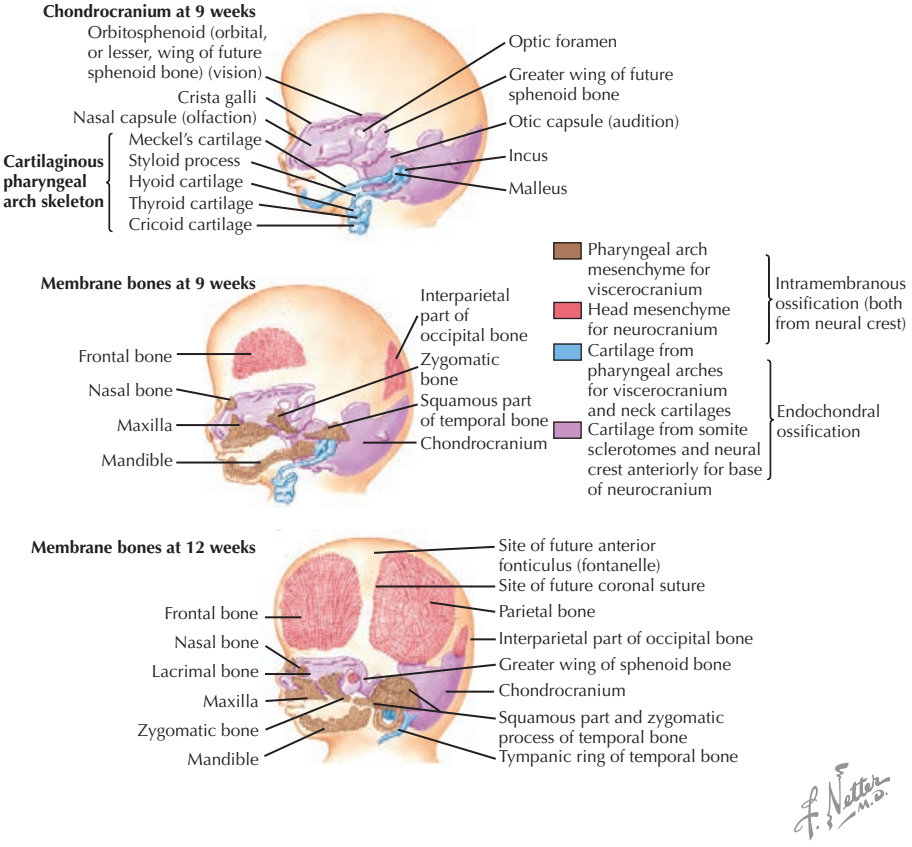
VISCEROCRANIUM

Germ Layers	Origins	Adult Structure	Ossification
Neural crest	1st pharyngeal arch		
	Maxillary process	Maxilla	Intramembranous
		Temporal bone	
		Zygoma	
		Palatine	
		Lacrimal	
		Vomer	
		Nasal	
		Inferior nasal concha	Endochondral
	Mandibular process	Mandible	Intramembranous and endochondral
		Sphenomandibular ligament	Not ossified
		Malleus	Endochondral
		Incus	
	2nd pharyngeal arch	Styloid process	Endochondral
		Stapes	
		Hyoid	
		Stylohyoid ligament	Not ossified

t.me/highdent www.highdentlab.com instagram.com/high_dent

Skull

VISCEROCRANIUM *CONTINUED*



SKULL FONTANELLES

Fontanelle	Time of Closure
Anterior fontanelle (bregma)	4–26 months
Posterior fontanelle (lambda)	1–2 months
Sphenoidal fontanelle (pterion)	2–3 months
Mastoid fontanelle (asterion)	12–18 months

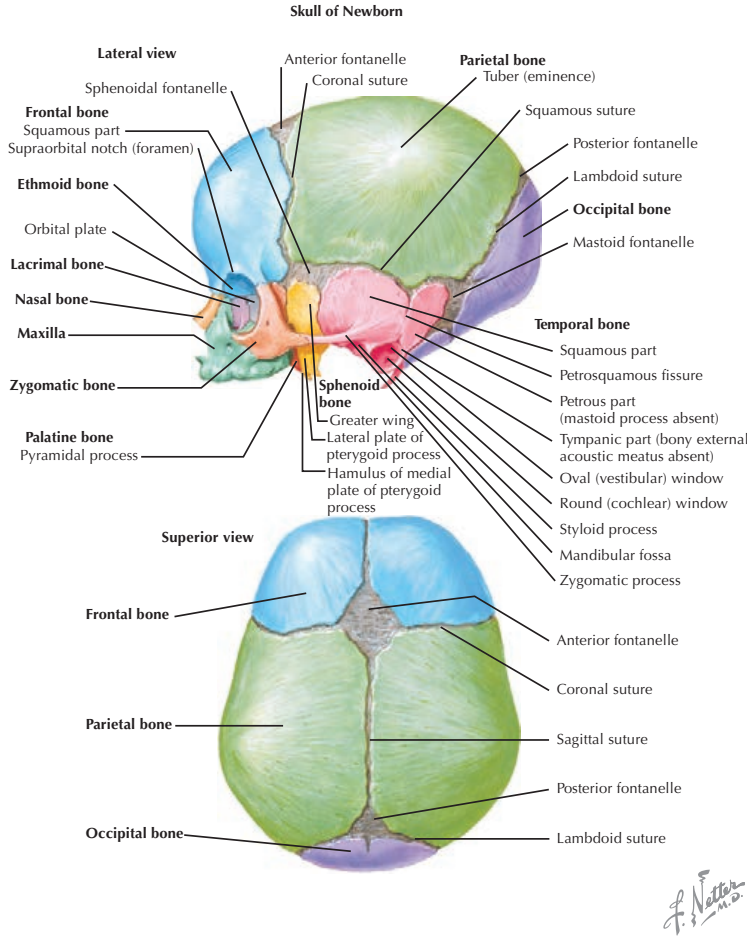
1 Skull

MEMBRANOUS NEUROCRANIUM

Germ Layer	Portions of Neurocranium	Adult Structure	Ossification
Neural crest	Main portion of the roof and lateral sides of the cranial vault	Frontal bone Squamous portion of the temporal bone	Intramembranous
Paraxial mesoderm		Parietal bone Occipital bone (intraparietal portion)	

CARTILAGINOUS NEUROCRANIUM

Germ Layer	Portions of Neurocranium	Adult Structure	Ossification
Neural crest	Prechordal Anterior to the sella turcica	Ethmoid Sphenoid	Endochondral
Paraxial mesoderm	Chordal Posterior to the sella turcica	Petrous portion of the temporal bone Mastoid process of the temporal bone Occipital bone	



t.me/highdent www.highdentlab.com instagram.com/high_dent

Face

GENERAL INFORMATION

The face is formed mainly from neural crest, which makes 3 swellings that surround the stomodeum:

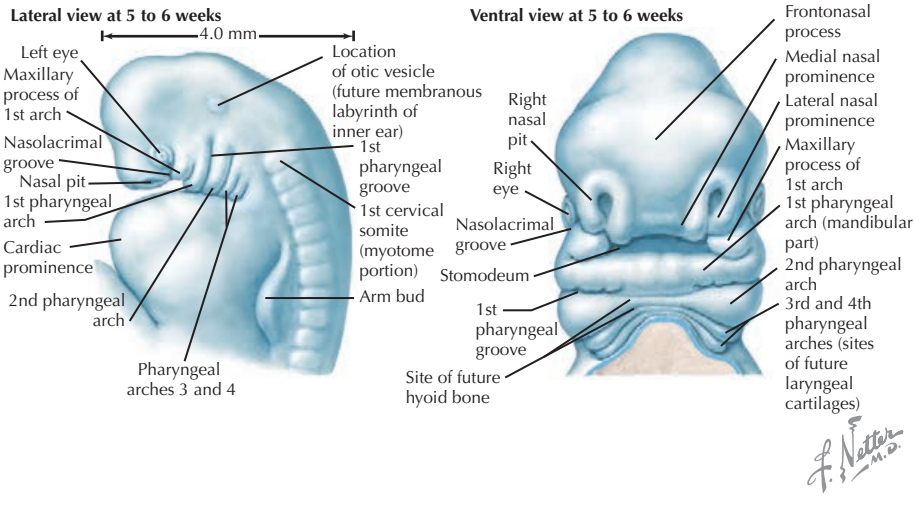
- Frontonasal prominence
- Maxillary prominence (from the 1st pharyngeal arch)
- Mandibular prominence (from the 1st pharyngeal arch)

Lateral to the frontonasal prominence, 2 additional areas of ectoderm form the 2 nasal placodes that invaginate in the center to form nasal pits, creating ridges of tissue on either side of the pits:

- Lateral nasal prominence
- Medial nasal prominence

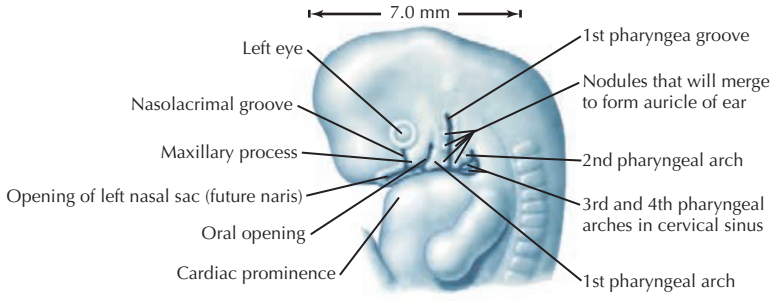
Fusion of the medial nasal prominences at the midline results in formation of the intermaxillary segment

ADULT STRUCTURES OF THE FACE	
Structure(s)	**Develop(s) from**
Upper lip	Maxillary prominence Medial nasal prominence
Lower lip	Mandibular prominence
Lacrimal sac Nasolacrimal duct	A nasolacrimal groove that separates the lateral nasal prominence and the maxillary prominence
Nose	Frontonasal prominence Medial nasal prominence Lateral nasal prominence
Cheeks	Maxillary prominence
Philtrum Primary palate Upper jaw containing the central and lateral incisors	Intermaxillary segment

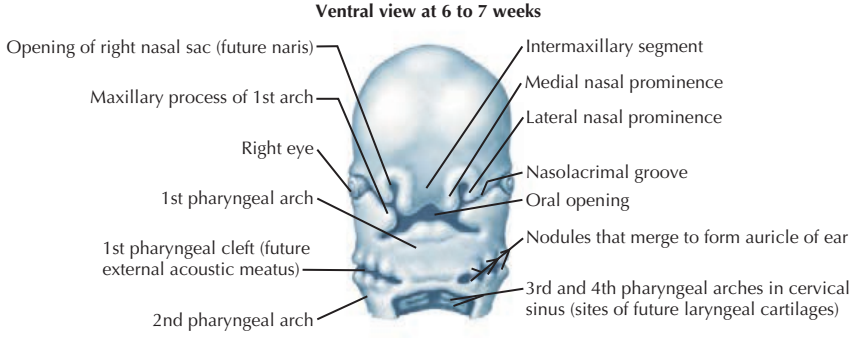


GENERAL INFORMATION *CONTINUED*

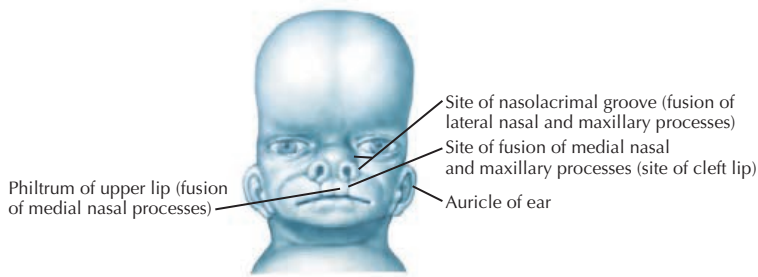
Lateral view at 6 to 7 weeks



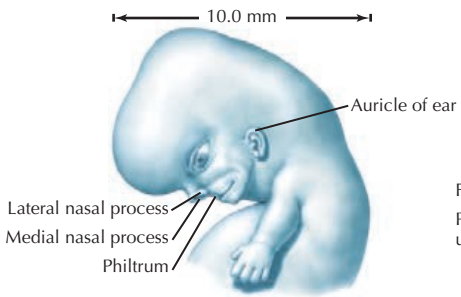
Ventral view at 6 to 7 weeks



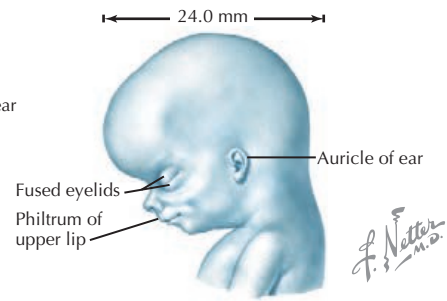
Ventral view at 7 to 8 weeks



Lateral view at 7 to 8 weeks



Lateral view at 8 to 10 weeks



t.me/highdent www.highdentlab.com instagram.com/high_dent

Palate

GENERAL INFORMATION

Formed by the:

- Primary palate (intermaxillary segment)
- Secondary palate (protrusions from the maxillary prominences)

Intermaxillary segment: the initial portion of the palate in development; contains the central and lateral incisors

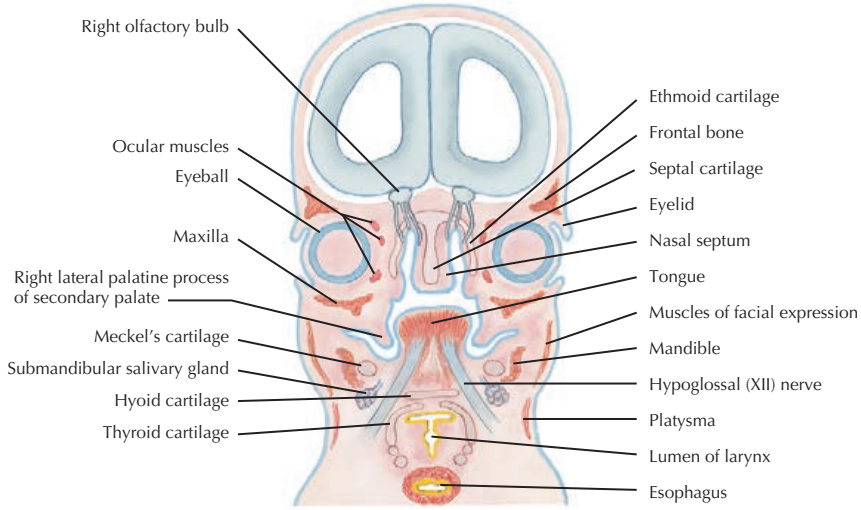
Swellings of the maxillary prominence form shelves that project medially and are separated by the tongue

When the tongue no longer occupies the space between the palatal shelves, these processes fuse together to form the secondary palate

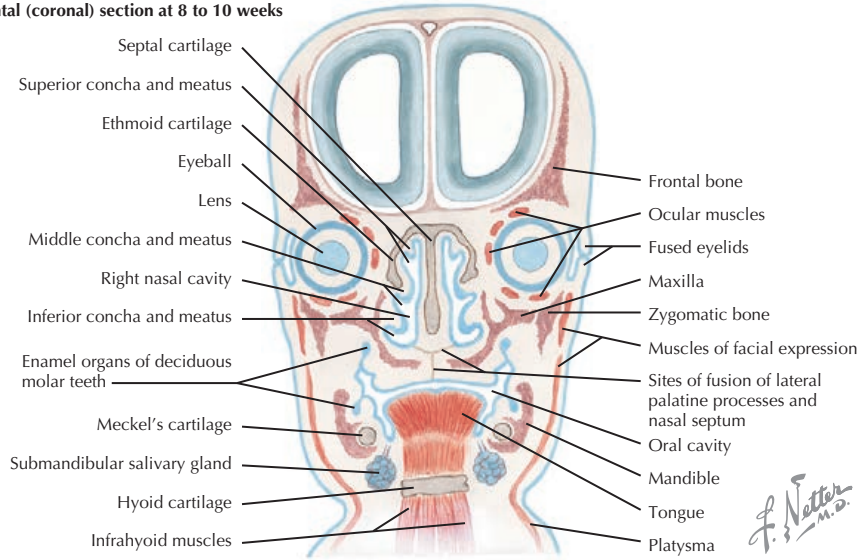
The primary and secondary palatal tissues all meet at the *incisive foramen*

Primary and secondary palates and the nasal septum fuse to form the definitive palate

Frontal (coronal) section at 7 to 8 weeks



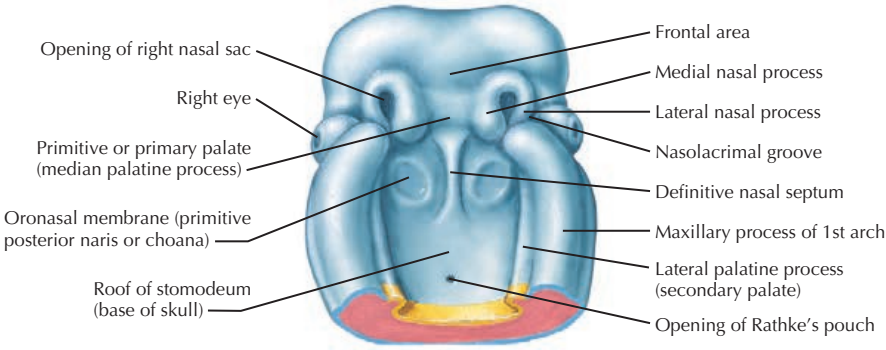
Frontal (coronal) section at 8 to 10 weeks



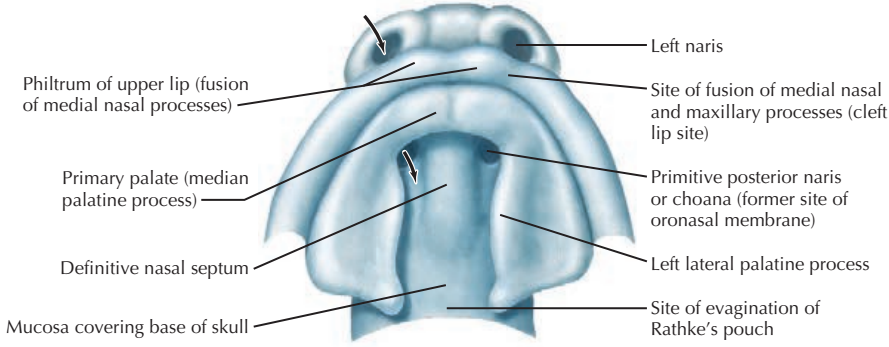
1 Palate

GENERAL INFORMATION *CONTINUED*

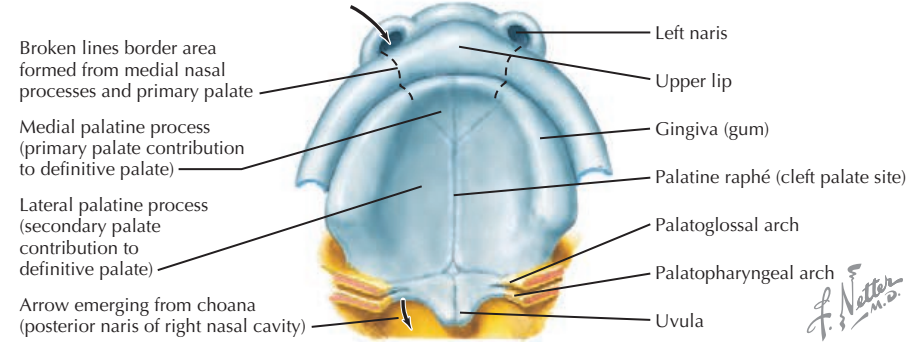
Roof of stomodeum (inferior view; 6 to 7 weeks)



Palate formation (inferior view; 7 to 8 weeks)



Roof of oral cavity (inferior view; 8 to 10 weeks)



t.me/highdent www.highdentlab.com instagram.com/high_dent

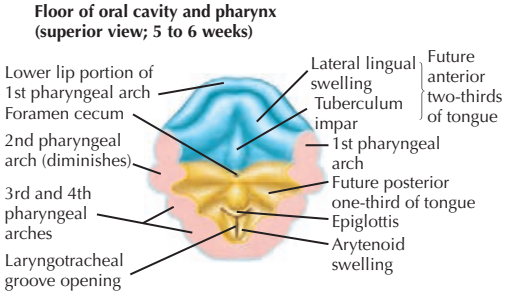
Tongue

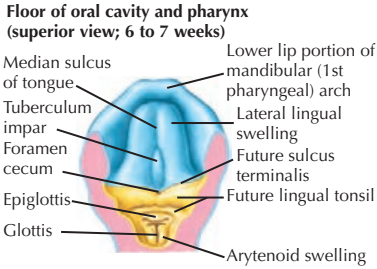
GENERAL INFORMATION

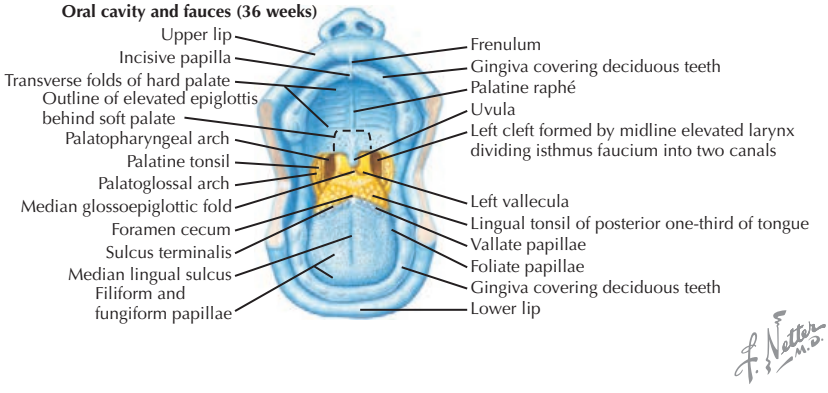
Pharyngeal Arch	Embryonic Structure(s)	Adult Structure	Innervation
1	2 lateral lingual swellings Tuberculum impar	Anterior 2/3 of the tongue	GSA: Lingual branch of the mandibular division of the trigeminal n. SVA: Chorda tympani of the facial n.
2	Is overgrown by the 3rd arch; does not contribute to the adult tongue Very little contributes to the hypobranchial eminence	Does not contribute to the adult tongue	
3	Hypobranchial eminence	Posterior 1/3 of the tongue	GSA: Glossopharyngeal n. SVA: Glossopharyngeal n.
4	Hypobranchial eminence Epiglottic swelling Arytenoid swelling Laryngotracheal groove	Root of the tongue	GSA: Internal laryngeal branch of the vagus n. SVA: Internal laryngeal branch of the vagus n.

MUSCLES

Mesoderm from the occipital somites migrates anteriorly with the hypoglossal nerve to give rise to the extrinsic and intrinsic muscles of the tongue







1 Thyroid Gland

GENERAL INFORMATION

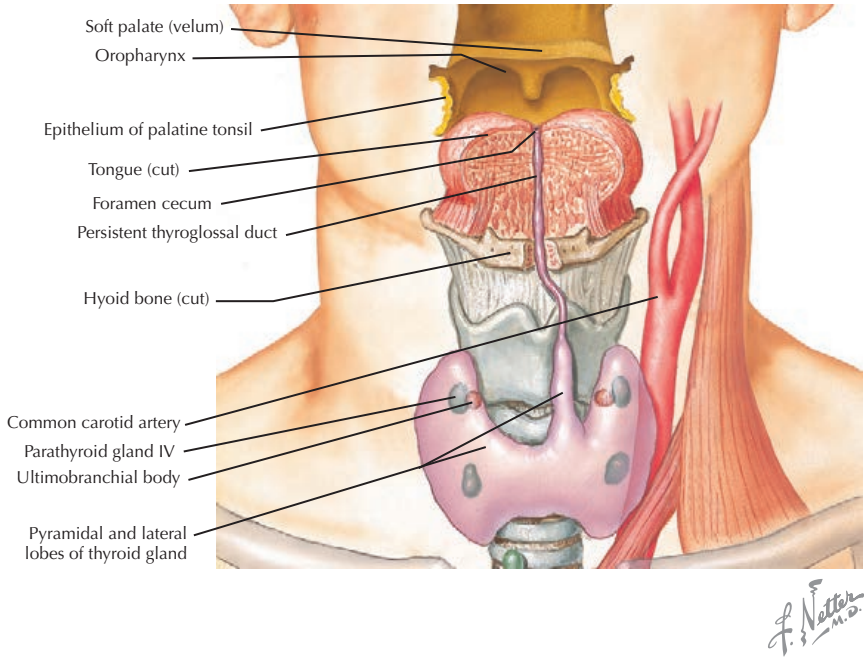
Begins as an invagination at the foramen cecum

Descends inferiorly to its final position alongside the larynx

May be connected to the foramen cecum by the thyroglossal duct

Divided into 2 lateral lobes connected by an isthmus, from which a pyramidal lobe sometimes develops

Follicular cells are derived from the endoderm; parafollicular cells are derived from the ultimobranchial body



t.me/highdent www.highdentlab.com instagram.com/high_dent

Clinical Correlate

PHARYNGEAL POUCH ABNORMALITIES

ECTOPIC THYROID

Thyroid tissue in an aberrant location

Often the only thyroid tissue in the affected person

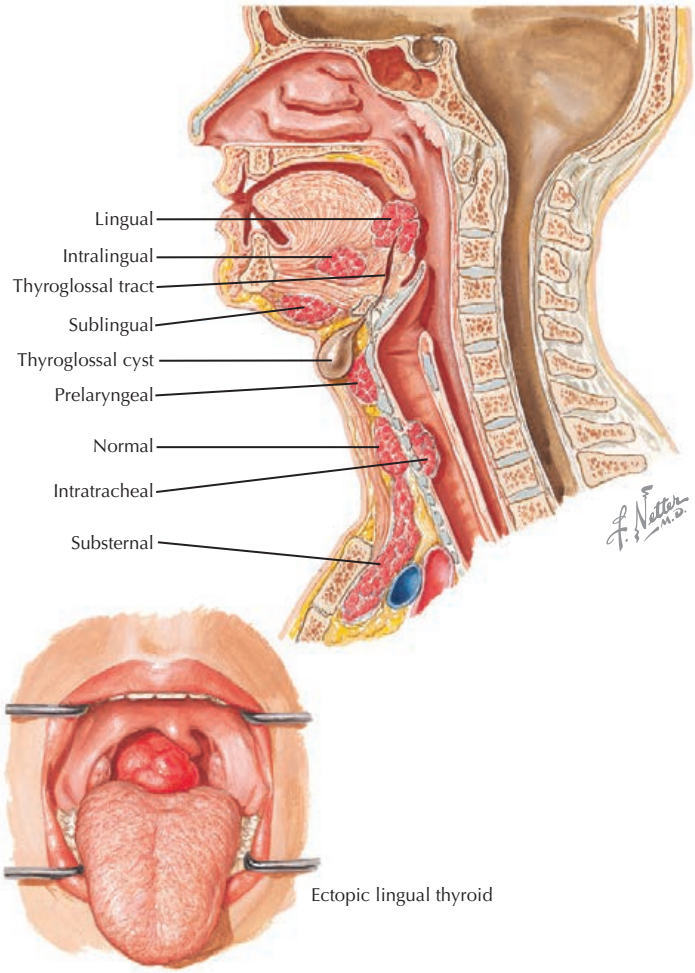
Susceptible to thyroid diseases like normal thyroid tissue

May occur anywhere along the migratory pathway of the thyroid gland beginning at the foramen cecum

Usually located at the base of the tongue (lingual thyroid)

Common locations include:

- Lingual thyroid
- Sublingual thyroid
- Thyroglossal duct remnant
- Anterior mediastinum
- Prelaryngeal
- Intralingual
- Intratracheal



Ectopic lingual thyroid

1

Clinical Correlate

PHARYNGEAL ARCH ABNORMALITIES

PIERRE ROBIN

First reported as a condition characterized by micrognathia, cleft palate, and glossoptosis

Now includes any condition with a series of anomalies caused by events initiated by a single malformation

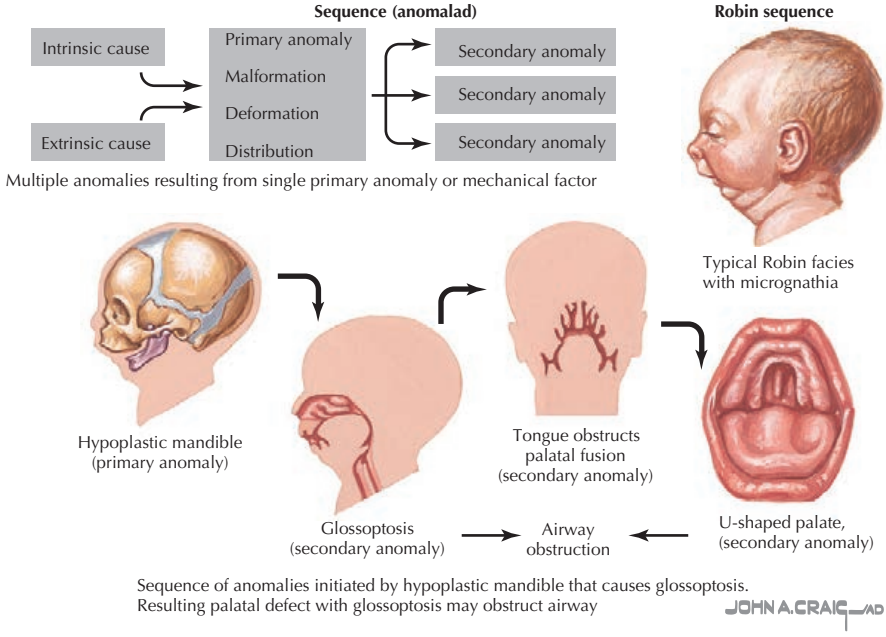
In this micrognathia, the inferior dental arch is posterior to the superior arch

The cleft palate may affect the hard and the soft palate

Glossoptosis (posterior displacement of the tongue) may cause airway obstruction or apnea

The mandible usually grows fairly quickly during childhood

Multiple surgeries typically needed to correct the cleft palate and to aid speech development in children



t.me/highdent www.highdentlab.com instagram.com/high_dent

Clinical Correlate

PHARYNGEAL ARCH ABNORMALITIES *CONTINUED*

TREACHER COLLINS

A hereditary condition affecting the head and neck

Thought to be caused by a defect in the gene or chromosome 5

Children of an affected parent have a 50% risk of having the syndrome

Clinical manifestations include:
- Downslanting eyes
- Notching of the lower eyelids
- Hypoplastic mandible
- Hypoplastic zygomatic bones (zygomas)
- Underdeveloped or malformed ears or "sideburns," or both, are prominent

Common associated problems include:
- Hearing loss
- Eating/breathing difficulties
- Cleft palate



Treacher Collins syndrome

1 Clinical Correlate

PHARYNGEAL ARCH ABNORMALITIES *CONTINUED*

DIGEORGE SYNDROME

A rare condition caused by a deletion on chromosome 22, characterized by a wide array of clinical manifestations

Possible explanation: proper development is dependent on migration of neural crest cells to the area of the pharyngeal pouches

Although researchers described the syndrome as abnormal development of the 3rd and 4th pharyngeal pouches, defects involving the 1st to the 6th pouches have been observed

Possible associated problems include:

- Congenital heart defects (such as tetralogy of Fallot, right infundibular stenosis, truncus arteriosus, aberrant left subclavian artery, and ventricular septal defect)
- Facial defects (such as cleft palate, microstomia, downslanting eyes, low-set ears, or hypertelorism)
- Increased vulnerability to infections (due to impaired immune system from the loss of T cells associated with absence or hypoplasia of the thymus)



DiGeorge syndrome

t.me/high_dent www.highdentlab.com instagram.com/high_dent

Clinical Correlate

CLEFT LIP AND PALATE

Cleft lip: a gap in the upper lip

Cleft palate: a gap in the palate

Classification of the developmental defect is with reference to the incisive foramen:
- Primary cleft
- Secondary cleft
- Complete cleft

Both cleft lip and cleft palate often cause difficulty with feeding and eventually speech

Surgery is the most common form of treatment for both

PRIMARY

Occurs anterior to the incisive foramen and results from a failure of the mesenchyme in the lateral palatine process to fuse with the intermaxillary segment (primary palate)

Common types of primary cleft:
- Unilateral cleft lip
- Unilateral cleft alveolus
- Unilateral cleft lip and primary palate
- Bilateral cleft lip and primary palate

SECONDARY

Occurs posterior to the incisive foramen; results from failure of the lateral palatine process to fuse together

Common types of secondary cleft:
- Cleft in soft palate
- Unilateral cleft in hard and soft palate
- Bilateral cleft of hard and soft palate

COMPLETE

Extends through the lip, the primary palate, and the lateral palatine process; results from a failure of the lateral palatine process to fuse together with each other, as well as with the nasal septum and primary palate

Common types of complete cleft:
- Unilateral cleft lip and cleft palate
- Bilateral cleft lip and cleft palate

1 Clinical Correlate

CLEFT LIP AND PALATE *CONTINUED*



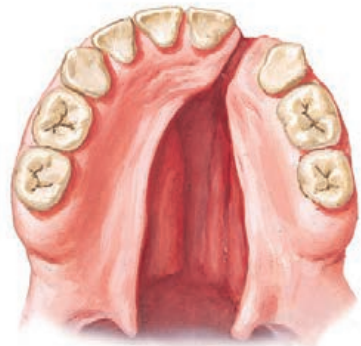
Unilateral cleft lip—partial



Partial cleft of palate



Unilateral cleft of primary palate—complete, involving lip and alveolar ridge



Complete cleft of secondary palate and unilateral cleft of primary palate



Bilateral cleft lip

t.me/highdent www.highdentlab.com instagram.com/high_dent

CHAPTER 2
OSTEOLOGY

Overview 26
Bones of the Skull 28
Views and Sutures 47
Major Foramina and Fissures 51
Cervical Vertebrae 56
Clinical Correlates 61

2 Overview

GENERAL INFORMATION

Most complicated bony structure in the human body

The complete bony framework of the head; includes the mandible

28 individual bones make up the skull:
- 11 are paired
- 6 are single

Wormian bones, or sutural bones, are irregularly shaped small bones found along sutures that occur naturally

FUNCTIONS

Most important function: to protect the brain

Also protects the 5 organs of special sense:
- Olfaction
- Vision
- Taste
- Vestibular function
- Auditory function

DIVISIONS

Two major ways to divide the bones of the skull:
- Regional
- Developmental

Regionally, the skull is divided into the mandible (lower jaw) and cranium (skull without the mandible)

Cranium is further divided into:
- Cranial vault—upper portion of the skull
- Cranial base—inferior portion of the skull
- Cranial cavity—interior of the skull
- Facial skeleton—bones that make up the face
- Acoustic skeleton—ear ossicles

Developmentally, the skull is divided into:
- Viscerocranium—the portion of the skull related to the digestive and respiratory systems
- Neurocranium—the portion of the skull that protects the brain and the 5 organs of special sense

Cranial cavity divisions:
- Anterior cranial fossa—contains the frontal lobe of the brain
- Middle cranial fossa—contains the temporal lobe of the brain
- Posterior cranial fossa—contains the cerebellum

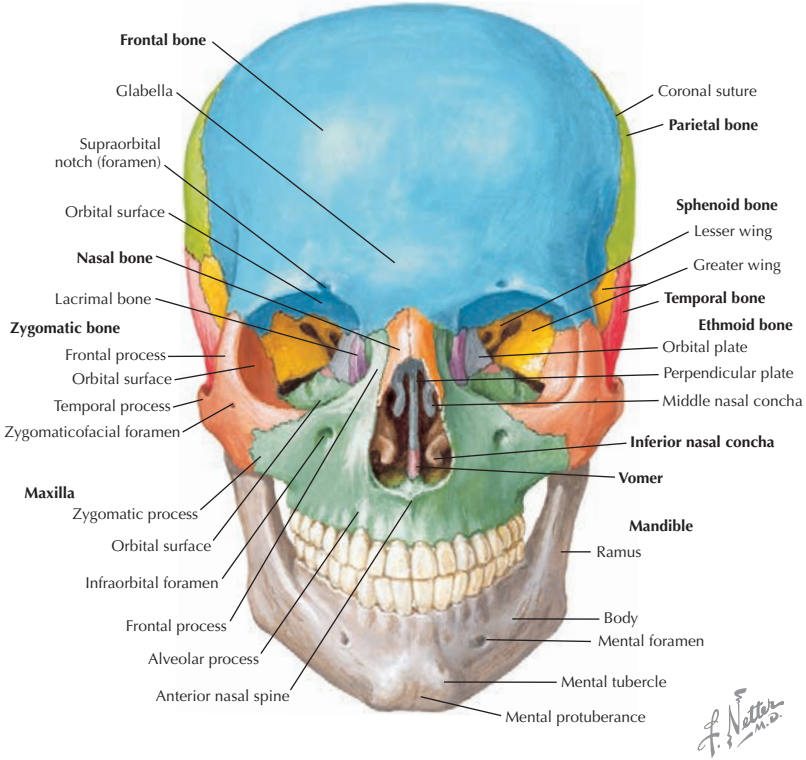
Skull is depicted by observing it from 5 views:
- Norma frontalis—the anterior view
- Norma lateralis—the lateral view
- Norma occipitalis—the posterior view
- Norma basalis—the inferior view
- Norma verticalis—the superior view

t.me/highdent www.highdentlab.com instagram.com/high_dent

Overview

ARTICULATIONS

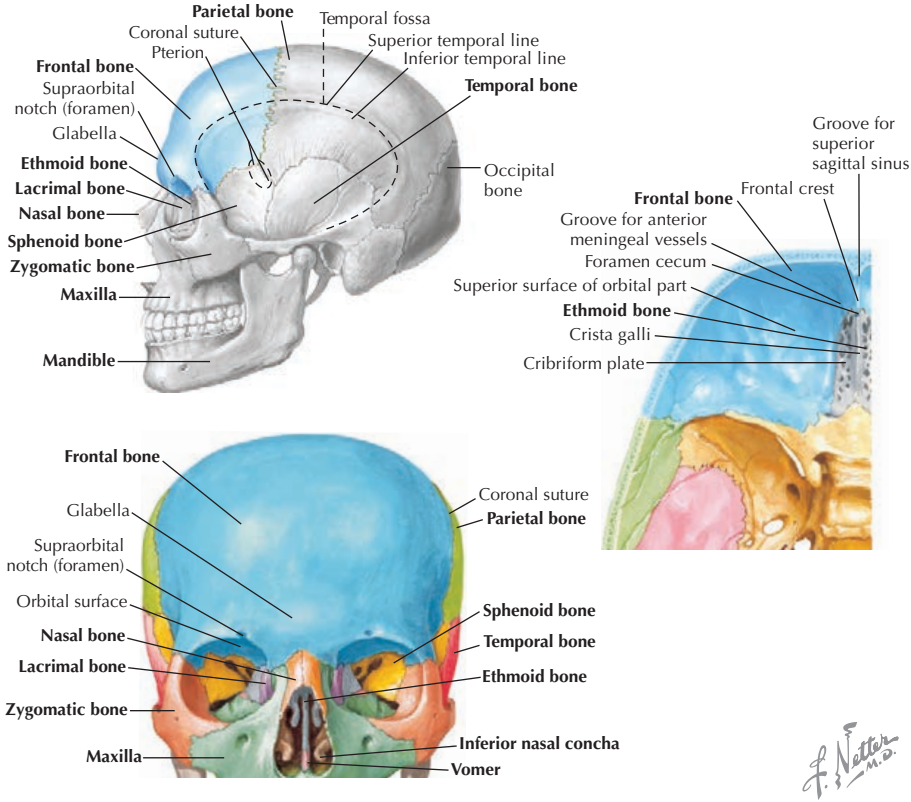
Bone	Single	Paired	Articulates with
Frontal	X		Parietal, sphenoid, zygomatic, maxilla, ethmoid, nasal, lacrimal
Parietal		X	Frontal, parietal, temporal, occipital, sphenoid
Temporal		X	Parietal, occipital, sphenoid, zygomatic, mandible
Occipital	X		Parietal, temporal, sphenoid, and atlas (C1)
Sphenoid	X		Frontal, parietal, temporal, occipital, zygomatic, maxilla, ethmoid, palatine, vomer
Zygomatic		X	Frontal, temporal, maxilla
Maxilla		X	Frontal, sphenoid, zygomatic, maxilla, ethmoid, palatine, vomer, nasal, lacrimal, inferior nasal concha
Ethmoid	X		Frontal, sphenoid, maxilla, palatine, vomer, nasal, lacrimal, inferior nasal concha
Palatine		X	Sphenoid, maxilla, ethmoid, palatine, vomer, inferior nasal concha
Vomer	X		Sphenoid, maxilla, ethmoid, palatine
Nasal		X	Frontal, maxilla, nasal
Lacrimal		X	Frontal, maxilla, ethmoid, inferior nasal concha
Inferior nasal concha		X	Maxilla, ethmoid, palatine, lacrimal
Mandible	X		Temporal



2 Bones of the Skull

FRONTAL BONE

Characteristics	Parts	Ossification	Comments
Contains the frontal paranasal sinuses Has two primary centers that ossify along the frontal suture (metopic) in the 2nd year Helps form the foramen cecum, which allows passage of an emissary vein that connects to the superior sagittal sinus There is 1 frontal bone	Squamous portion	*For all 3 parts:* Intramembranous	The largest part of the frontal bone Forms the majority of the forehead Forms the supraorbital margin and the superciliary arch The zygomatic process of the frontal bone extends from the posterior part of the supraorbital margin *Arachnoid foveae*—depressions caused by arachnoid granulations that push on the dura mater, causing bone resorption on the endocranial surface
	Orbital portion		Forms the roof of the orbit and floor of the anterior cranial fossa
	Nasal portion		The trochlea of the orbit articulates with the orbital portion Articulates with the nasal bones and the frontal process of the maxilla to form the root of the nose

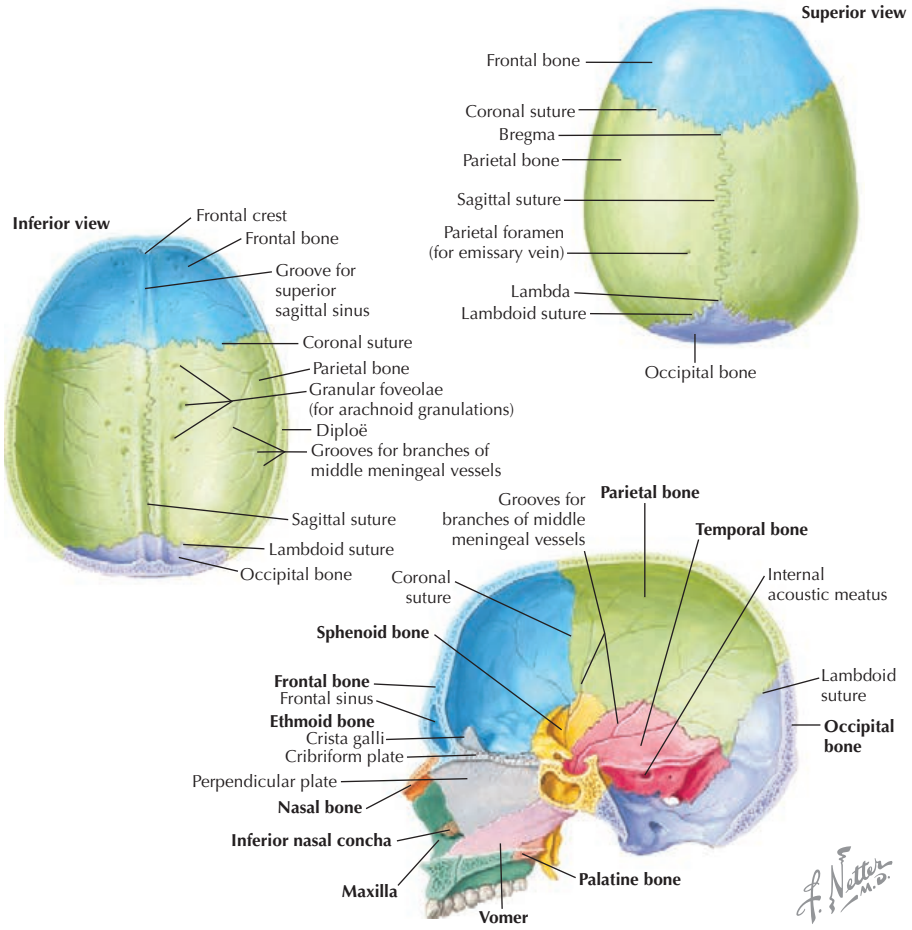


t.me/highdent www.highdentlab.com instagram.com/high_dent

Bones of the Skull

PARIETAL BONE

Characteristics	Parts	Ossification	Comments
Forms the majority of the cranial vault Provides for the attachment of the temporalis muscle The four corners of the parietal are not ossified at birth and give rise to the fontanelles There are 2 parietal bones	Has 4 angles: • Frontal—located at bregma • Sphenoid—located at pterion • Occipital—located at lambda • Mastoid—located at asterion	Intramembranous	Relatively square, forming the roof and sides of the cranial vault Endocranial surface is filled with grooves made by branches of the middle meningeal a. Sigmoid sulcus is a groove caused by the beginning of the transverse sinus, located at the mastoid angle



2

Bones of the Skull

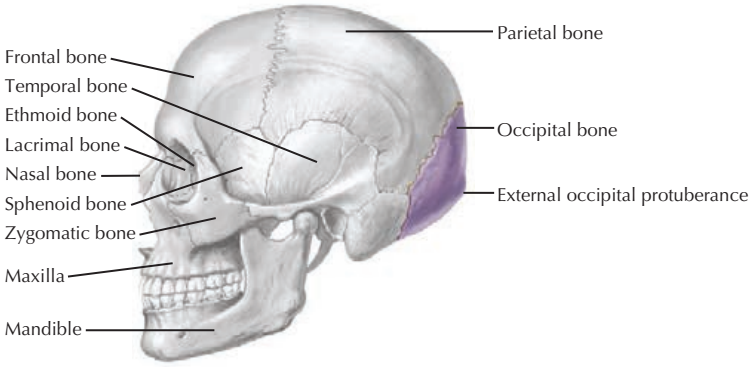
OCCIPITAL BONE

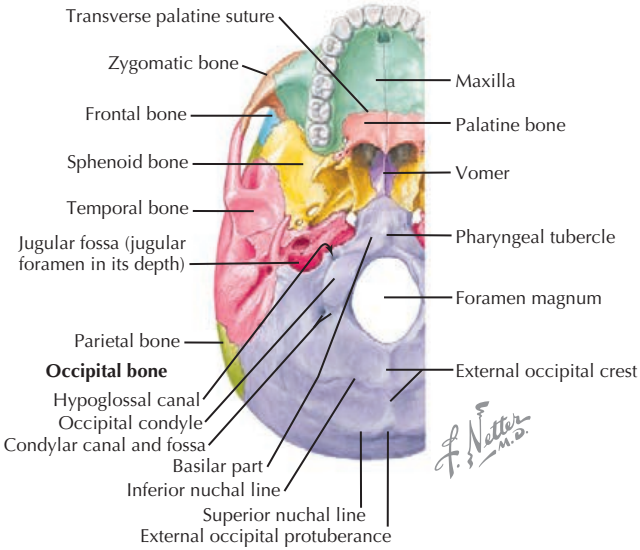
Characteristics	Parts	Ossification	Comments
Forms the posterior part of the cranial vault Articulates with the atlas The squamous and lateral portions normally ossify together by year 4 The basilar portion unites to this section at year 6 There is 1 occipital bone	Squamous portion	Intramembranous	Articulates with the temporal and parietal bones The largest portion of the occipital bone Located posterior and superior to the foramen magnum Has the external occipital protuberance (more pronounced in males) Has the superior and the inferior nuchal lines Has grooves on the internal surface for 3 of the sinuses forming the confluence of the sinuses (the superior sagittal and the right and left transverse sinuses) The depression superior to the transverse sinus is for the occipital lobes of the brain The depression inferior to the transverse sinus is for the cerebellum
	Lateral portion	Endochondral	Articulates with the temporal bone Is the portion lateral to the foramen magnum Has the occipital condyles that articulate with the atlas Contains the hypoglossal canal Forms a portion of the jugular foramen
	Basilar portion	Endochondral	Articulates with the petrous part of the temporal and the sphenoid bones Is the portion immediately anterior to the foramen magnum Pharyngeal tubercle is part of the basilar portion that provides attachment for the superior constrictor Internal surface of the basilar portion is called the clivus, and part of the brainstem lies against it

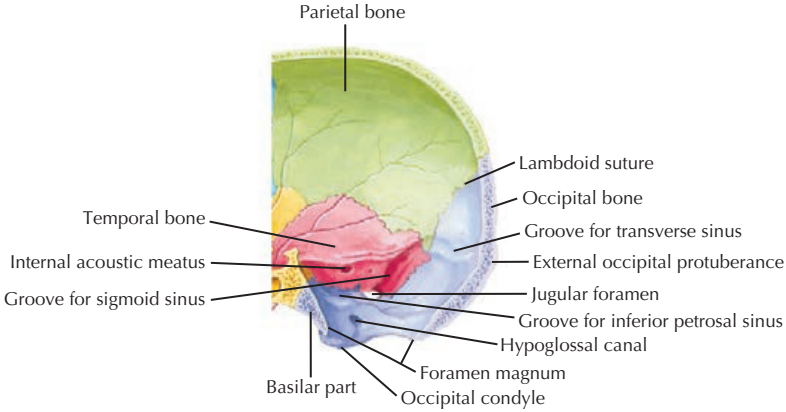
t.me/highdent www.highdentlab.com instagram.com/high_dent

Bones of the Skull

OCCIPITAL BONE *CONTINUED*







2 Bones of the Skull

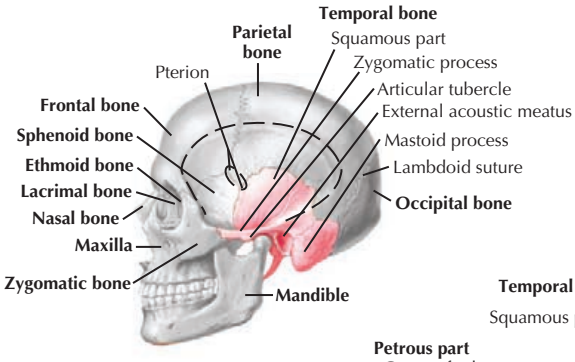
TEMPORAL BONE

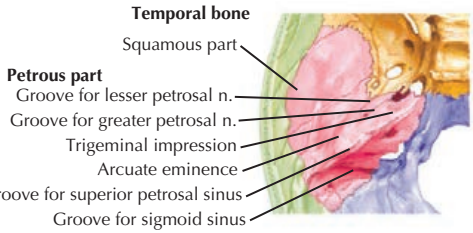
Characteristics	Parts	Ossification	Comments
The paired temporal bones: Help form the base and the lateral walls of the skull House the auditory and vestibular apparatuses Contain mastoid air cells Each bone has 8 centers of ossification that give rise to the 3 major centers observed before birth There are 2 temporal bones	Squamous part	Intramembranous	The largest portion of the bone Three portions to the squamous part: • Temporal • Zygomatic process • Glenoid fossa *Temporal portion* is the thin large area on the squamous part of the temporal On the internal surface of the temporal portion lies a groove for the middle meningeal a. The *zygomatic process* extends laterally and anteriorly from the squamous portion; it articulates with the temporal process of the zygomatic bone to make the zygomatic arch *Glenoid fossa* is inferior and medial to the zygomatic process; it articulates with the mandibular condyle, forming the temporomandibular joint
	Petrous part	Endochondral	Forms the solid portion of bone The auditory and vestibular apparatuses are located within the petrous part Helps separate the temporal and the occipital lobes of the brain It extends anteriorly and medially The medial part articulates with the sphenoid bone to form the foramen lacerum Internal acoustic meatus is observed on the medial side of the petrous part Carotid canal lies on the inferior part of the petrous part Petrotympanic fissure lies between the petrous part of the temporal bone and the tympanic part of the temporal bone On the medial portion of the petrous part lie grooves for the superior and inferior petrosal sinuses On the posterior inferior surface of the petrous part lies the jugular fossa Between the jugular fossa and the carotid canal is the tympanic canaliculus The mastoid process extends posteriorly and has large mastoid air cells
	Tympanic part	Intramembranous	A plate of bone forming the anterior, posterior, and inferior portions of the external acoustic meatus Anterior part forms the posterior portion of the glenoid fossa
	Styloid process	Endochondral	A projection from the temporal bone The stylomastoid foramen lies posterior to this process

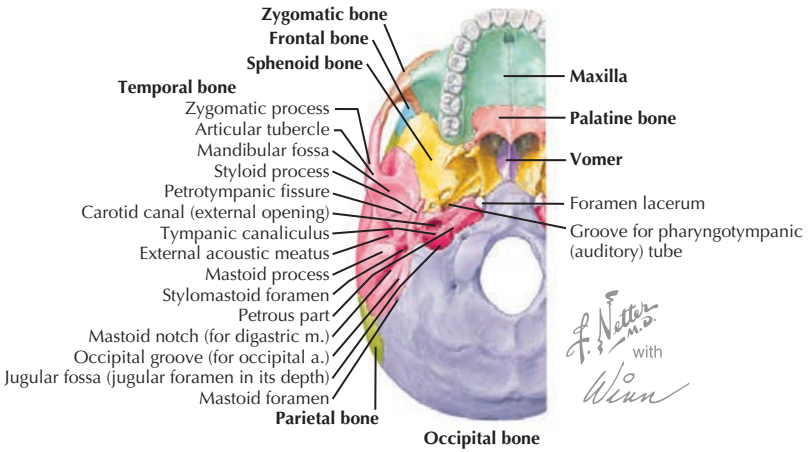
t.me/highdent www.highdentlab.com instagram.com/high_dent

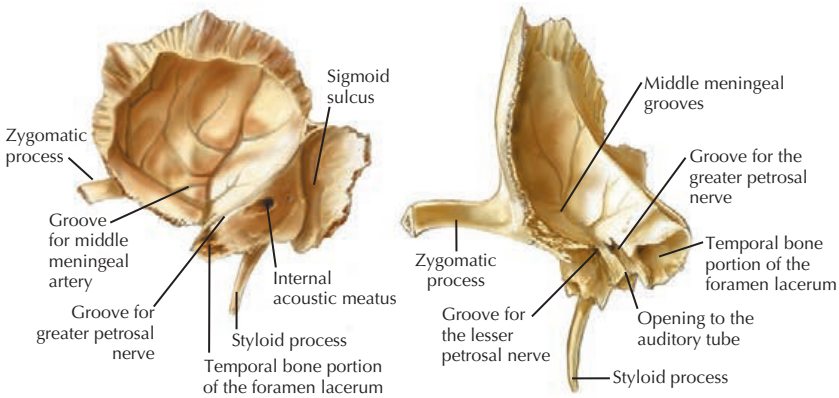
Bones of the Skull

TEMPORAL BONE *CONTINUED*









2 Bones of the Skull

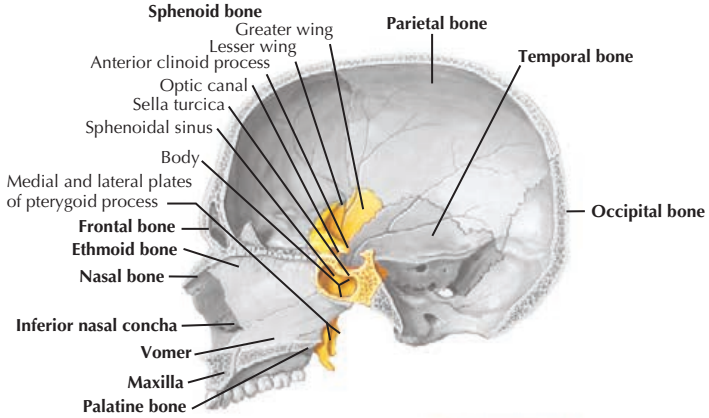
SPHENOID BONE

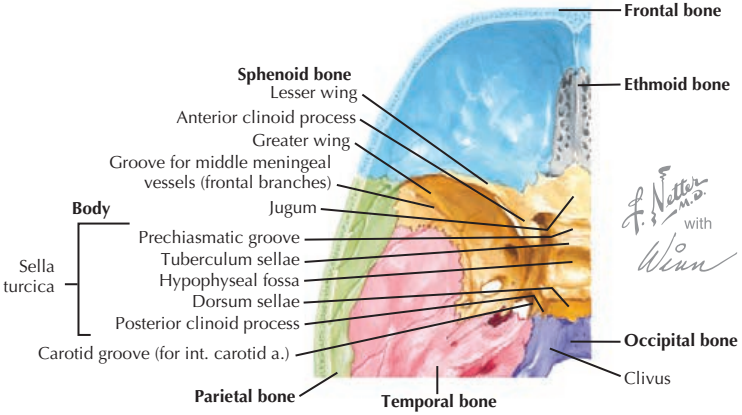
Characteristics	Parts	Ossification	Comments
Forms the majority of the middle portion of the cranial base Forms the majority of the middle cranial fossa Contains the sphenoid paranasal sinus There is 1 sphenoid bone	Body	Endochondral ossification	The center of the sphenoid Anterior portion of the body helps form part of the nasal cavity Superior part of the body, known as the sella turcica, is saddle-shaped and possesses the anterior and posterior clinoid processes Hypophyseal fossa, the deepest part of the sella turcica, houses the pituitary gland Dorsum sellae is a square-shaped part of the bone that lies posterior to the sella turcica Clivus is the portion that slopes posterior to the body Body contains the sphenoid paranasal sinuses Lateral portion of the body is covered by the cavernous sinus Optic canal is found in the body of the sphenoid
	Greater wing	Endochondral and intramembranous ossification	Extends laterally and anteriorly from the posterior portion of the body of the sphenoid Endocranial portion helps form a large part of the middle cranial fossa Lateral portion is the infratemporal surface Anterior portion lies in the orbit Contains 3 foramina: • Foramen spinosum • Foramen rotundum • Foramen ovale
	Lesser wing	Endochondral ossification	Extends laterally and anteriorly from the superior portion of the sphenoid body Separated from the greater wing by the superior orbital fissure
	Pterygoid process	Intramembranous ossification	Arises from the inferior surface of the body There are 2 pterygoid processes Each has a: • Lateral pterygoid plate • Medial pterygoid plate Pterygoid hamulus extends from the medial pterygoid plate Two canals are associated with the pterygoid process: • Pterygoid canal • Pharyngeal canal

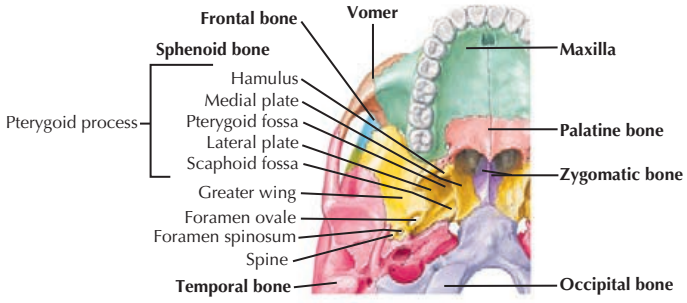
t.me/highdent www.highdentlab.com instagram.com/high_dent

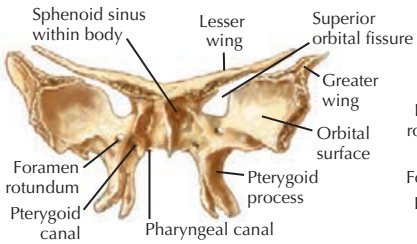
Bones of the Skull

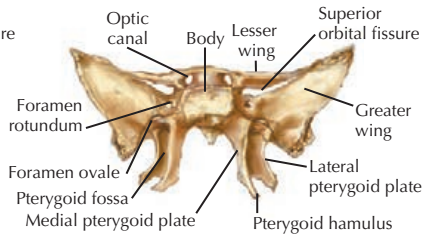
SPHENOID BONE *CONTINUED*











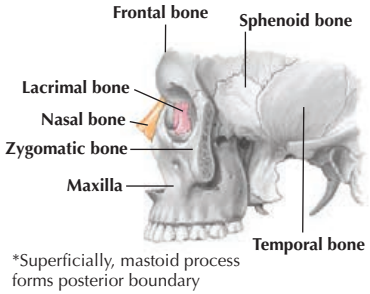
2 Bones of the Skull

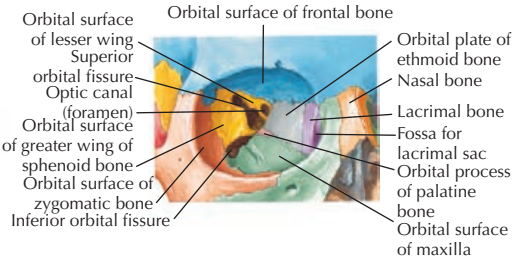
LACRIMAL BONE

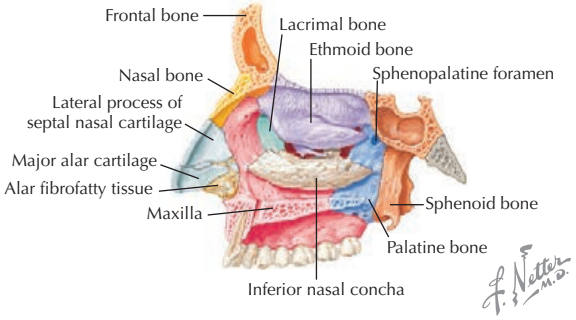
Characteristics	Parts	Ossification	Comments
Lacrimal bone is small and rectangular in shape and very thin and fragile There are 2 lacrimal bones		Intramembranous	Forms a small portion of the medial wall of the orbit Articulates with the frontal process of the maxilla, orbital plate of the ethmoid bone, the frontal bone, and the inferior nasal concha The region that articulates with the frontal process of the maxilla forms the lacrimal fossa, the location of the lacrimal sac The inferior part of the lacrimal forms a small portion of the lateral wall of the nasal cavity

NASAL BONE

Characteristics	Parts	Ossification	Comments
Inferior portion forms the superior margin of the nasal aperture Forms the bridge of the nose There are 2 nasal bones		Intramembranous	Articulates with the nasal bone of the opposite side, the nasal portion of the frontal bone, the frontal process of the maxilla, and the perpendicular plate of the ethmoid Inferior portion of the nasal bones attaches with the lateral nasal cartilages and septal cartilage





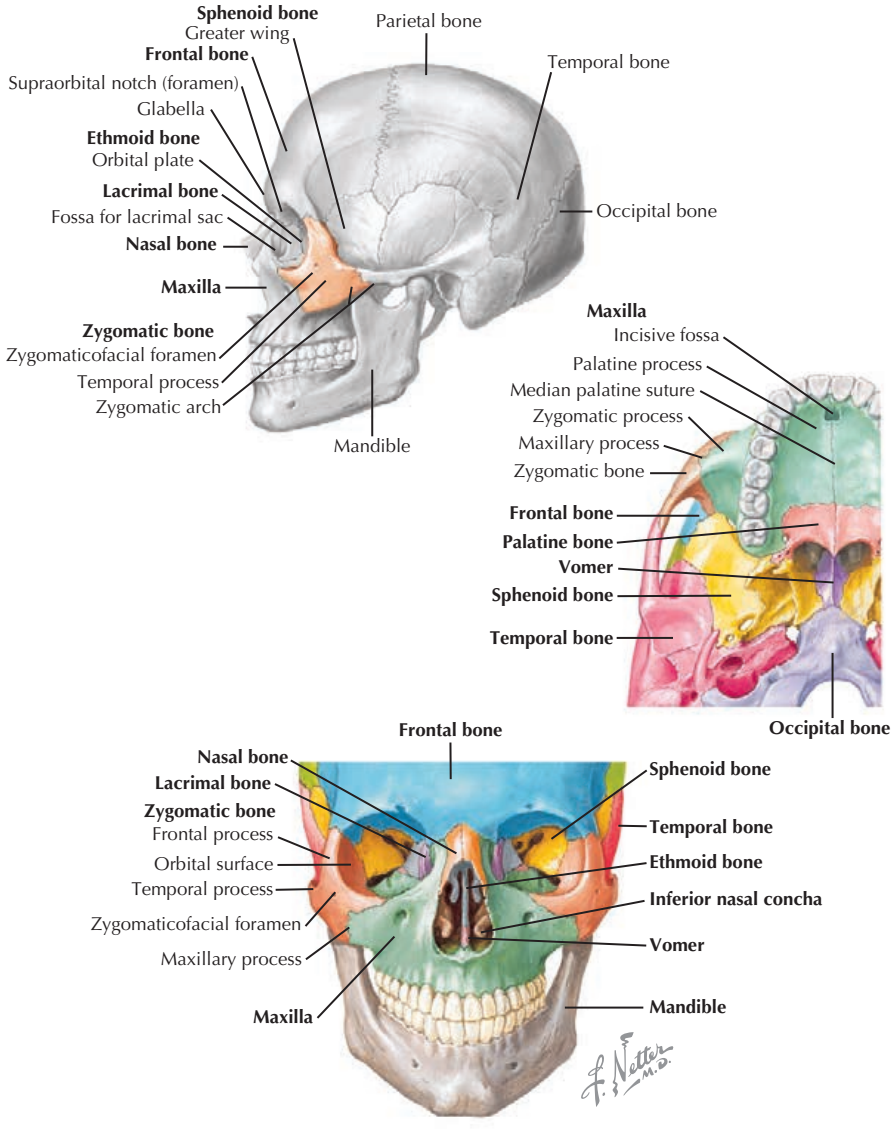


t.me/highdent www.highdentlab.com instagram.com/high_dent

Bones of the Skull

ZYGOMATIC BONE (ZYGOMA)

Characteristics	Part	Ossification	Comments
Forms the majority of the skeleton of the cheek Provides for attachment of the masseter Three foramina in the zygoma: • Zygomatico-orbital foramen • Zygomaticofacial foramen • Zygomaticotemporal foramen There are 2 zygomatic bones	Frontal process Temporal process Maxillary process	Intramembranous	Articulates with the frontal bone to help form the orbit Articulates with the zygomatic process of the temporal bone to form the zygomatic arch Articulates with the zygomatic process of the maxillary bone to help form the orbit



2 Bones of the Skull

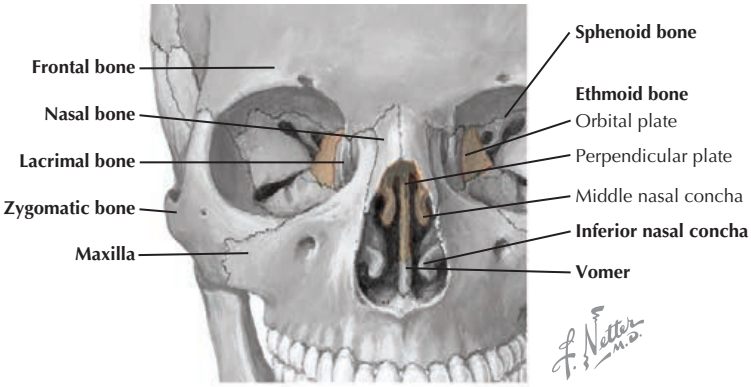
ETHMOID BONE

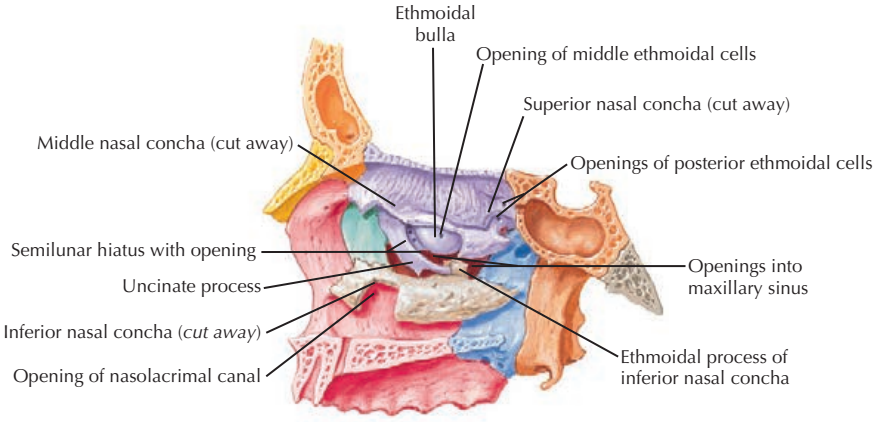
Characteristics	Part	Ossification	Comments
A porous bone that forms the major portion of the middle part of the face between the orbits Helps form the orbit, nasal cavity, nasal septum, and anterior cranial fossa There is 1 ethmoid bone	Perpendicular plate	Endochondral	A flat plate that descends from the cribriform plate to form part of the nasal septum Articulates with the vomer inferiorly
	Cribriform plate		A horizontal bone that forms the superior surface of the ethmoid Contains numerous foramina for the olfactory n. Crista galli is a vertical plate that extends superiorly from the cribriform plate providing attachment for the falx cerebri of the meninges Associated with a small foramen cecum
	Ethmoid labyrinth		The largest part of the ethmoid bone Descends inferiorly from the cribriform plate Ethmoid paranasal sinuses are located within the ethmoid labyrinth Ethmoid labyrinth forms 2 major structures within the nasal cavity: • Superior nasal concha • Middle nasal concha Ethmoid bulla is the large elevation of bone located by the middle ethmoid paranasal sinuses Uncinate process is a curved piece of bone Between the uncinate process and the ethmoid bulla is the hiatus semilunaris

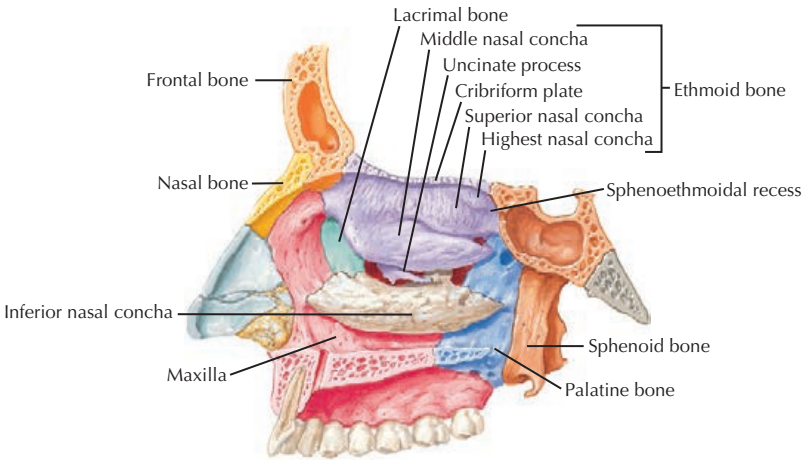
t.me/highdent www.highdentlab.com instagram.com/high_dent

Bones of the Skull

ETHMOID BONE *CONTINUED*



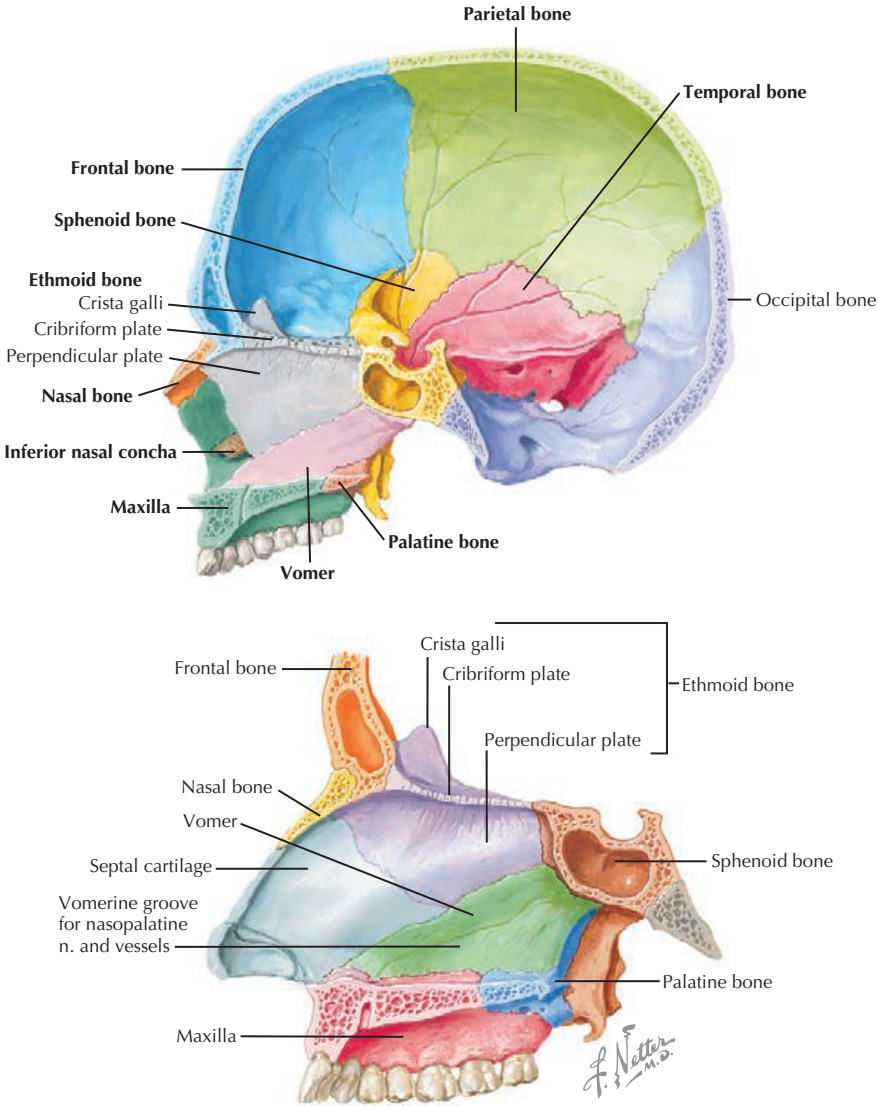




2 Bones of the Skull

VOMER

Characteristics	Part	Ossification	Comments
Shaped like a "plough" Forms the posterior inferior part of the nasal septum There is 1 vomer bone		Intramembranous	Articulates with the perpendicular plate of the ethmoid, maxilla, palatine, and sphenoid bones and septal cartilage Posterior border does not articulate with any other bone



t.me/highdent www.highdentlab.com instagram.com/high_dent

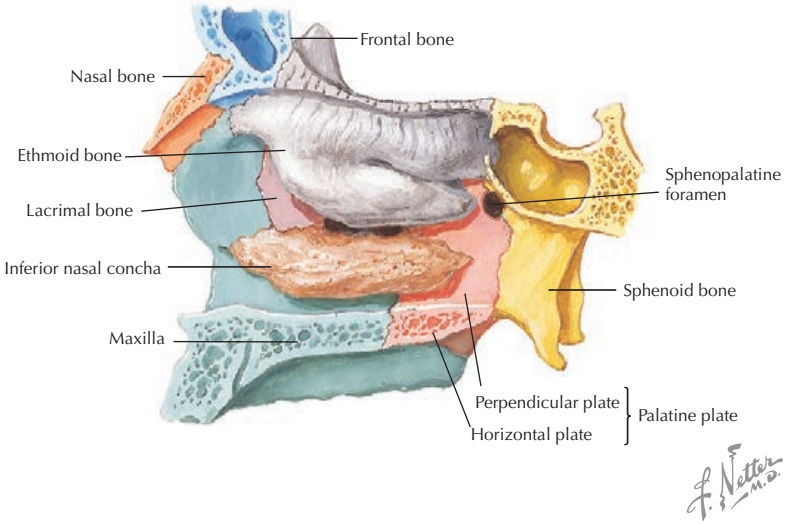
Bones of the Skull

INFERIOR NASAL CONCHA

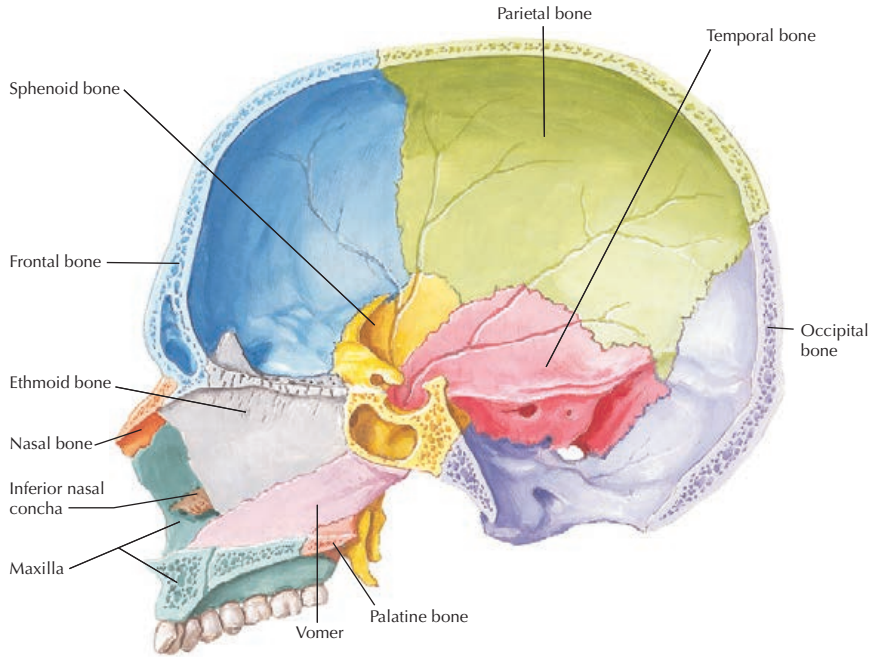
Characteristics	Part	Ossification	Comments
Is described as a curved bone that forms part of the lateral wall of the nasal cavity There are 2 inferior nasal conchae		Endochondral	Lies within a curve in the lateral wall of the nasal cavity Articulates with the maxilla and perpendicular plate of the palatine, lacrimal, and ethmoid bones

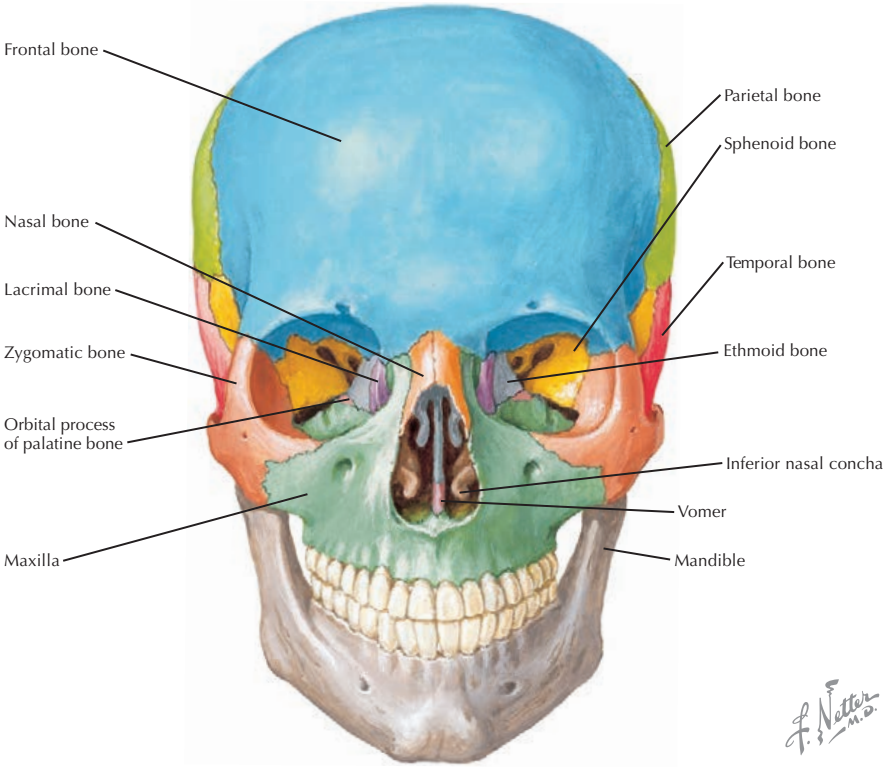
PALATINE BONE

Characteristics	Part	Ossification	Comments
Forms part of the nasal cavity and the hard palate Is L-shaped There are 2 palatine bones	Perpendicular plate	Intramembranous	Is in the shape of a vertical rectangle On the superior border is a notch that articulates with the sphenoid bone, forming the sphenopalatine foramen A small orbital process helps form part of the orbit Forms part of the wall of the pterygopalatine fossa and the lateral wall of the nasal cavity Lateral wall articulates with the maxilla to form the palatine canal
	Horizontal plate		Forms the posterior portion of the hard palate Superior to the horizontal plate is the nasal cavity On the medial part, formed by both of the horizontal plates, is the posterior nasal spine Greater palatine foramen is on this plate
	Pyramidal process		Extends posteriorly and inferiorly from the junction of the perpendicular and horizontal plates of the palatine Lesser palatine foramina are located here



INFERIOR NASAL CONCHA *CONTINUED*



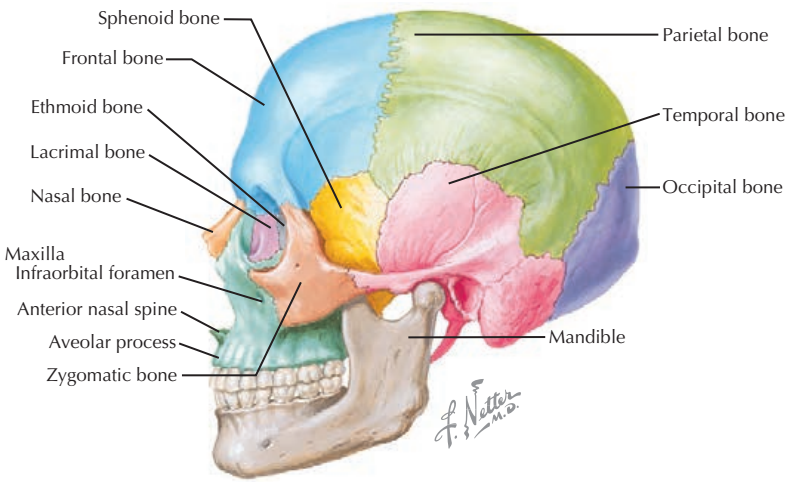


t.me/high_dent www.highdentlab.com instagram.com/high_dent

Bones of the Skull

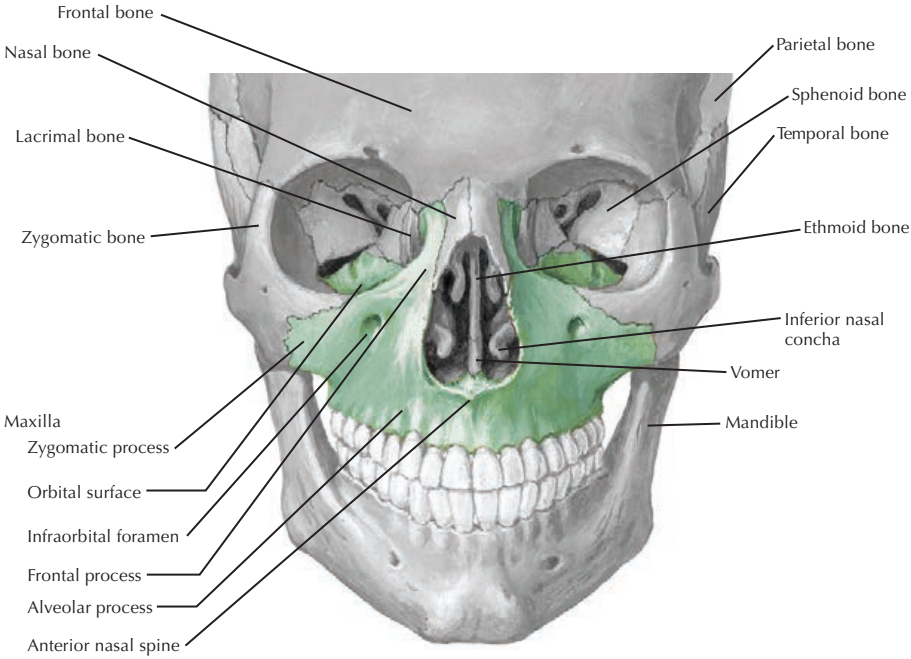
MAXILLA

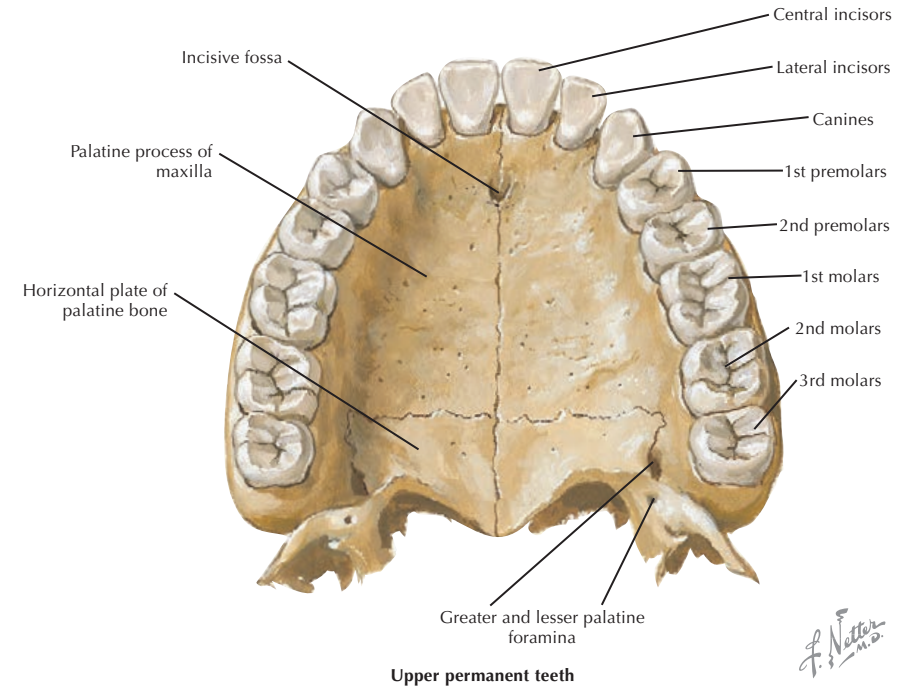
Characteristics	Part	Ossification	Comments
Forms the majority of the skeleton of the face and the upper jaw Contains the maxillary paranasal sinus Articulates with the opposite maxilla and the frontal, sphenoid, nasal, vomer, and ethmoid bones; inferior nasal concha; palatine, lacrimal, and zygomatic bones; and the septal and nasal cartilages There are 2 maxilla bones (maxillae)	Body	Intramembranous	Major part of the bone Shaped like a pyramid Contains the maxillary paranasal sinus *Gives rise to 4 different regions:* • Orbit • Nasal cavity • Infratemporal fossa • Face Infraorbital canal and foramen pass from the orbit region to the face region
	Frontal process		Extends superiorly to articulate with the nasal, frontal, ethmoid, and lacrimal bones Forms the posterior boundary of the lacrimal fossa
	Zygomatic process		Extends laterally to articulate with the maxillary process of the zygomatic bone
	Palatine process		Extends medially to form the majority of the hard palate Articulates with the palatine process of the opposite side and the horizontal plate of the palatine bone Incisive foramen is located in the anterior portion
	Alveolar process		The part of the maxilla that supports all of the maxillary teeth Extends inferiorly from the maxilla Each maxilla contains 5 primary and 8 permanent teeth Alveolar bone is resorbed when a tooth is lost



2 Bones of the Skull

MAXILLA *CONTINUED*





Upper permanent teeth

t.me/highdent www.highdentlab.com instagram.com/high_dent

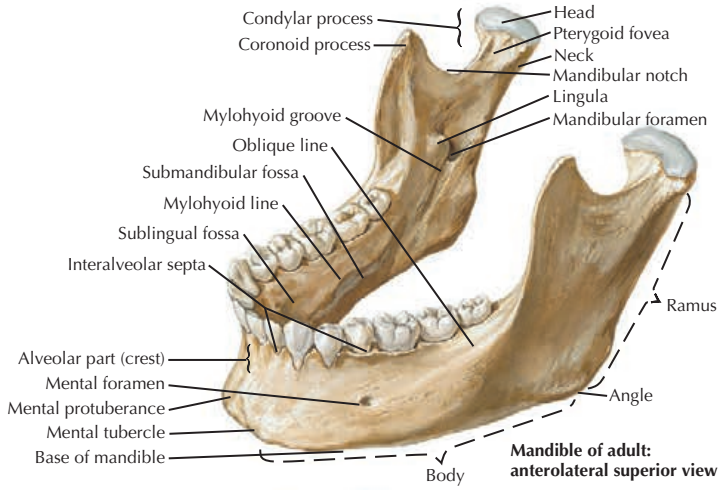
Bones of the Skull

MANDIBLE

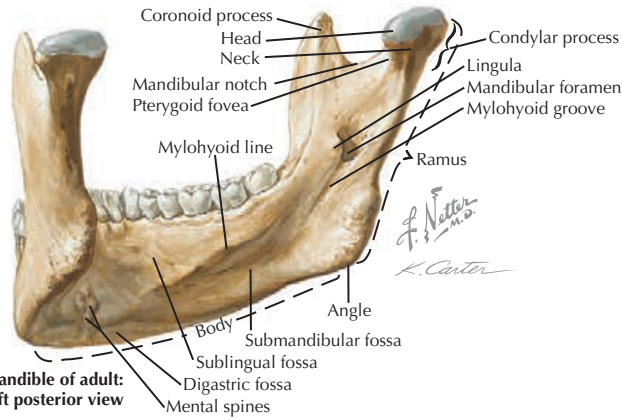
Characteristics	Part	Ossification	Comments
Forms the lower jaw Described as horseshoe shaped All muscles of mastication attach to the mandible There is 1 mandible	Body	Intramembranous (ossifies around Meckel's cartilage)	Mental foramen lies on the anterior part of the lateral surface of the body External oblique line is observed on the lateral side of the mandible On the medial side of the body lies the mylohyoid line Mylohyoid line helps divide a sublingual from a submandibular fossa Posterior border of the mylohyoid line provides for attachment of the pterygomandibular raphe At the midline on the medial side are the superior and inferior genial tubercles, as well as the digastric fossa
	Ramus		Meets the body of the mandible at the angle of the mandible on each side Masseter m. attaches to the lateral side Medial pterygoid m. and sphenomandibular lig. attach to the medial side Mandibular foramen is located on the medial side of the ramus Superior part divides into a coronoid process anteriorly and a condylar process posteriorly, separated by a mandibular notch
	Coronoid process		The anteriormost superior extension of each ramus Temporalis m. attaches to the coronoid process
	Condylar process		Articulates with the temporal bone in the temporomandibular joint Has a neck that forms a condyle superiorly Lateral pterygoid muscle attaches to pterygoid fovea on the neck
	Alveolar process		Extends superiorly from the body Created by a thick buccal and a thin lingual plate of bone The part of the mandible that supports the mandibular teeth Each side of the mandible contains 5 primary and 8 permanent teeth Alveolar bone is resorbed when a tooth is lost

2 Bones of the Skull

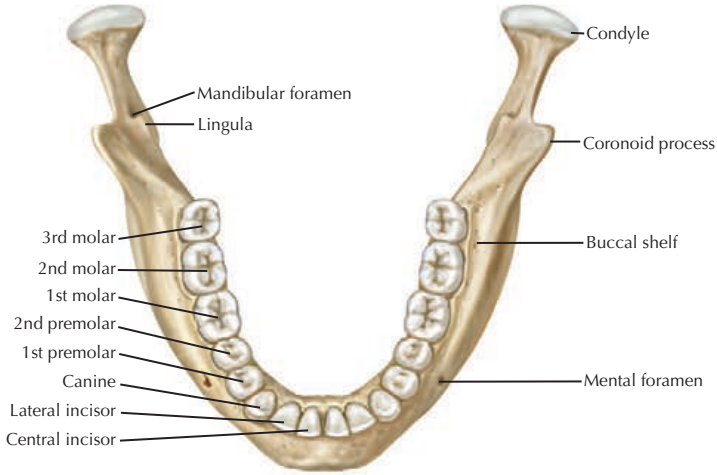
MANDIBLE *CONTINUED*



Mandible of adult: anterolateral superior view



Mandible of adult: left posterior view

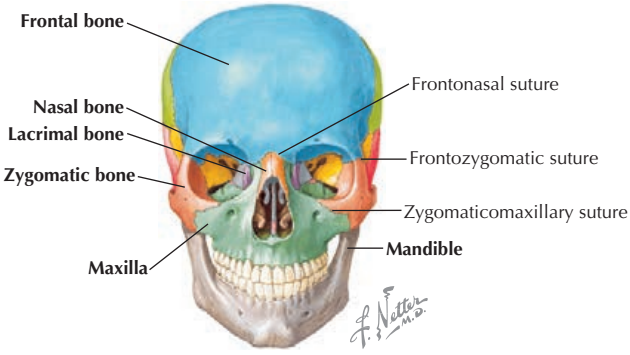


t.me/high_dent www.highdentlab.com instagram.com/high_dent

Views and Sutures

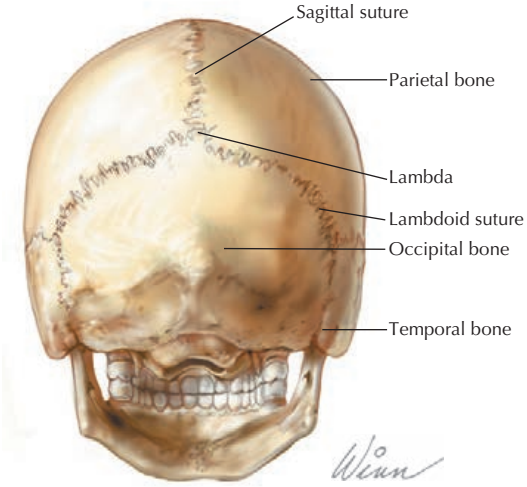
NORMA FRONTALIS

Bones	Frontal Nasal Maxilla Zygomatic Mandible
Sutures	Frontonasal Frontozygomatic Zygomaticomaxillary Metopic



NORMA OCCIPITALIS

Bones	Parietal Occipital
Sutures	Sagittal Lambdoid

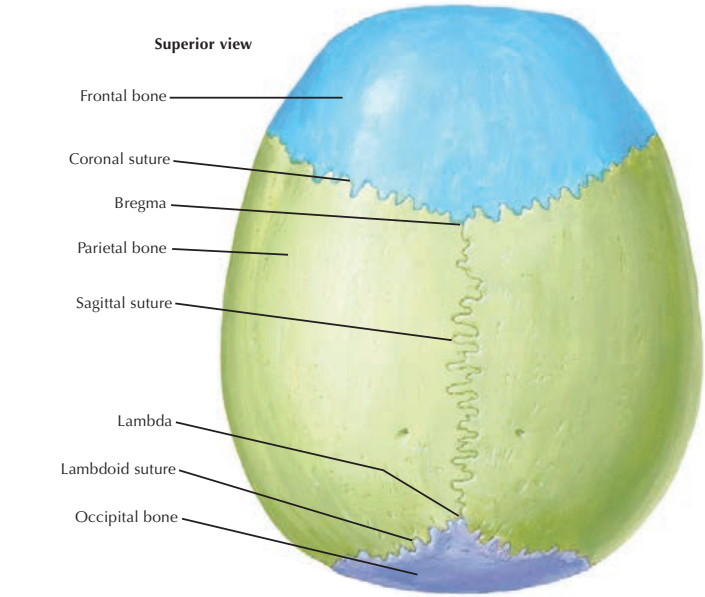


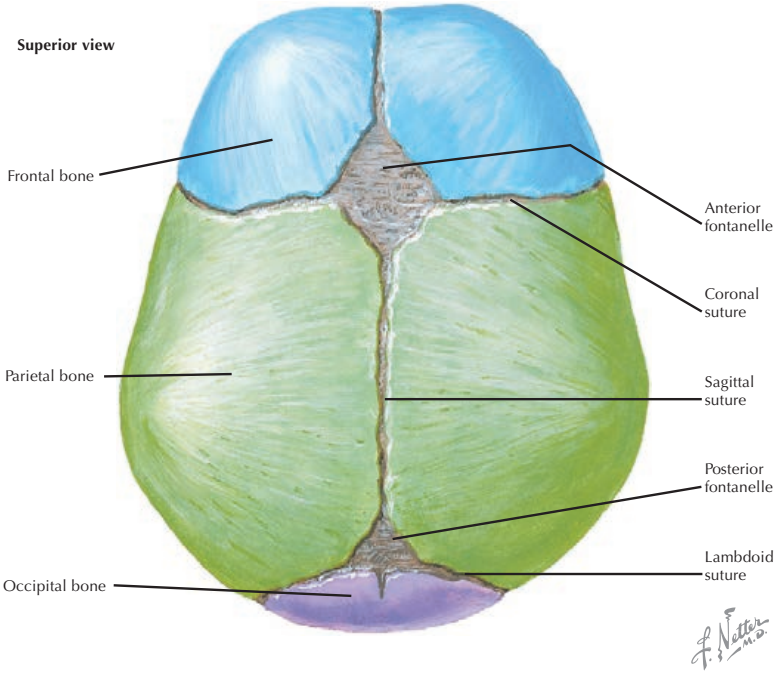
2

Views and Sutures

NORMA VERTICALIS

Bones	Frontal Parietal Occipital
Sutures	Coronal Sagittal Lambdoid



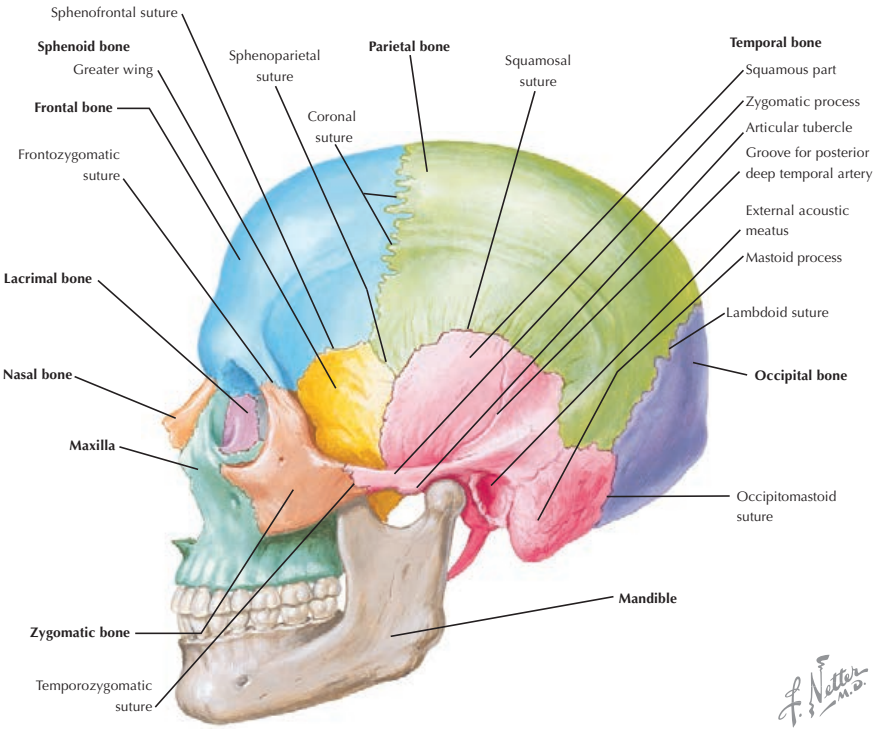


t.me/highdent www.highdentlab.com instagram.com/high_dent

Views and Sutures

NORMA LATERALIS

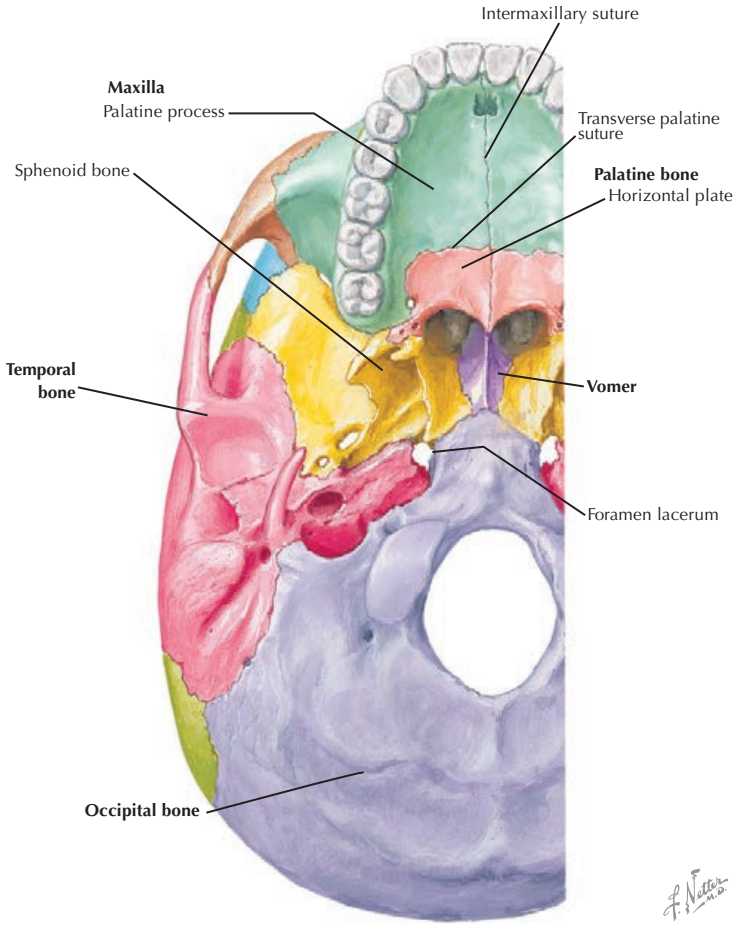
Bones	Frontal Parietal Lacrimal Temporal Zygomatic Maxilla Nasal Occipital Greater wing of the sphenoid Mandible
Sutures	Coronal Squamosal Sphenofrontal Sphenoparietal Lambdoid Occipitomastoid Temporozygomatic Frontozygomatic



2 Views and Sutures

NORMA BASALIS

Bones	Palatine process of maxilla Occipital Temporal Horizontal plate of the palatine Greater wing of the sphenoid Vomer Medial pterygoid plate Lateral pterygoid plate
Sutures	Intermaxillary Transverse palatine Petro-occipital Spheno-occipital Petrosquamous Petrotympanic Squamotympanic



t.me/highdent www.highdentlab.com instagram.com/high_dent

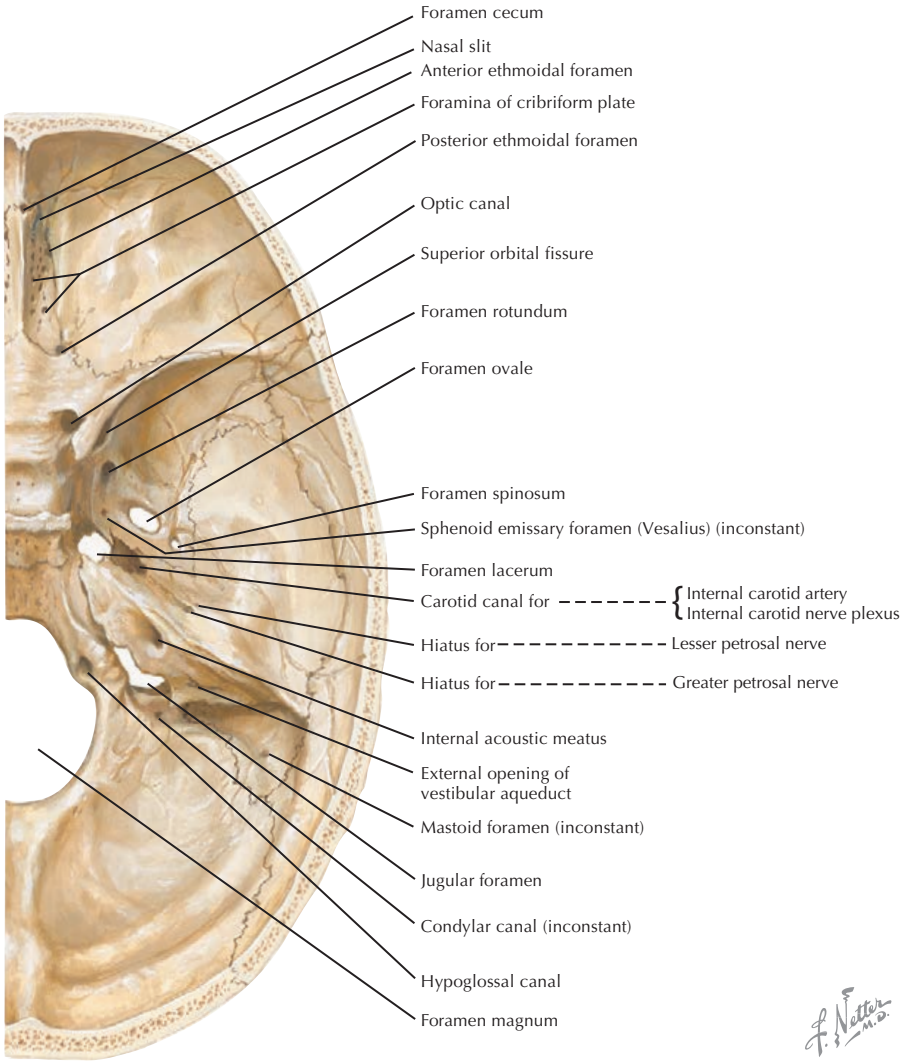
Major Foramina and Fissures

SUPERIOR VIEW OF THE CRANIAL BASE

Foramen/Fissure	Located in or Formed by	Structures Passing through
Cribriform plate	Ethmoid	Olfactory nn. from the olfactory bulb
Foramen cecum	Between the frontal and the ethmoid bones	Emissary v. from nasal cavity to the superior sagittal sinus
Anterior ethmoid foramen		Anterior ethmoid n. and vessels
Posterior ethmoid foramen		Posterior ethmoid n. and vessels
Optic canal	Sphenoid	Optic n., ophthalmic a.
Superior orbital fissure	Between the greater and the lesser wings of the sphenoid	Nasociliary, frontal, and lacrimal branches of the ophthalmic division of the trigeminal n., oculomotor n., trochlear n., abducens n., superior and inferior ophthalmic vv.
Foramen rotundum	Sphenoid	Maxillary division of the trigeminal n.
Foramen ovale		Mandibular division of the trigeminal n., accessory meningeal a., lesser petrosal n., emissary v.
Foramen spinosum		Middle meningeal vessels and meningeal branch of the mandibular division of the trigeminal n.
Sphenoid foramen		Emissary v.
Foramen lacerum	Articulation of the sphenoid (greater wing and body), temporal (petrous portion), and occipital (basilar portion) bones	Nothing passes through it Filled with fibrocartilage during life (although the anterior wall of the foramen has an opening for the pterygoid canal and the posterior wall has an opening for the carotid canal)
Carotid canal	Temporal (petrous portion)	Internal carotid a., internal carotid n. plexus (sympathetics)
Hiatus for the lesser petrosal n.		Lesser petrosal n.
Hiatus for the greater petrosal n.		Greater petrosal n.
Internal acoustic meatus		Facial n., vestibulocochlear n., labyrinthine a.
Opening of the vestibular aqueduct		Endolymphatic duct
Mastoid foramen	Temporal (mastoid portion)	Emissary v. (sometimes branches of the occipital a.)
Jugular foramen	Temporal (petrous portion) and occipital	Glossopharyngeal n., vagus n., spinal accessory n., inferior petrosal sinus, sigmoid sinus, posterior meningeal a.
Condylar canal	Occipital	Emissary v., meningeal branches of ascending pharyngeal a.
Hypoglossal canal		Hypoglossal n.
Foramen magnum		Medulla oblongata, vertebral arteries, spinal roots of the spinal accessory n.

2 Major Foramina and Fissures

SUPERIOR VIEW OF THE CRANIAL BASE *CONTINUED*



t.me/highdent www.highdentlab.com instagram.com/high_dent

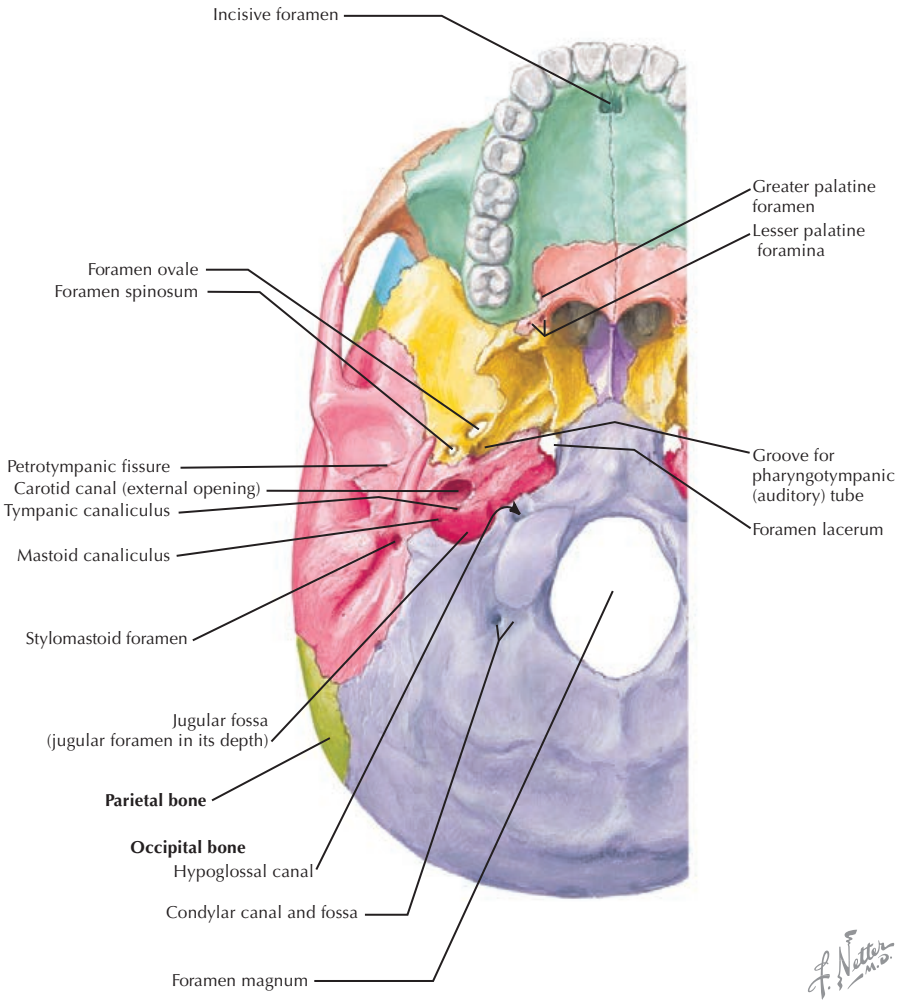
Major Foramina and Fissures

INFERIOR VIEW OF THE CRANIAL BASE

Foramen/Fissure	Located in or Formed by	Structures Passing through
Incisive foramen	Maxilla (palatine process)	Nasopalatine n., sphenopalatine a.
Greater palatine foramen	Palatine	Greater palatine n. and vessels
Lesser palatine foramina	Palatine	Lesser palatine n. and vessels
Foramen ovale	Sphenoid	Mandibular division of the trigeminal n., accessory meningeal a., lesser petrosal n., emissary v.
Foramen spinosum	Sphenoid	Middle meningeal vessels and meningeal branch of the mandibular division of the trigeminal n.
Foramen lacerum	Articulation of the sphenoid (greater wing and body), temporal (petrous portion), and occipital (basilar portion) bones	Nothing passes through it Filled with fibrocartilage during life (although the anterior wall of the foramen has an opening for the pterygoid canal and the posterior wall has an opening for the carotid canal)
Opening for auditory tube	Temporal and sphenoid	Cartilaginous portion of the auditory tube
Carotid canal	Temporal (petrous portion)	Internal carotid a., internal carotid n. plexus (sympathetics)
Tympanic canaliculus	Temporal	Tympanic branch of the glossopharyngeal n.
Jugular foramen	Temporal (petrous portion) and occipital	Glossopharyngeal n., vagus n., spinal accessory n., inferior petrosal sinus, sigmoid sinus, posterior meningeal a.
Mastoid canaliculus	Temporal (within the jugular fossa)	Auricular branch of the vagus n.
Petrotympanic fissure	Temporal	Chorda tympani n., anterior tympanic a.
Stylomastoid foramen		Facial n., stylomastoid a.
Tympanomastoid fissure		Auricular branch of the vagus n.
Hypoglossal canal	Occipital	Hypoglossal n.
Condylar canal		Emissary v., meningeal branches of ascending pharyngeal a.
Foramen magnum		Medulla oblongata, vertebral arteries, spinal roots of the spinal accessory n.

2 Major Foramina and Fissures

INFERIOR VIEW OF THE CRANIAL BASE *CONTINUED*

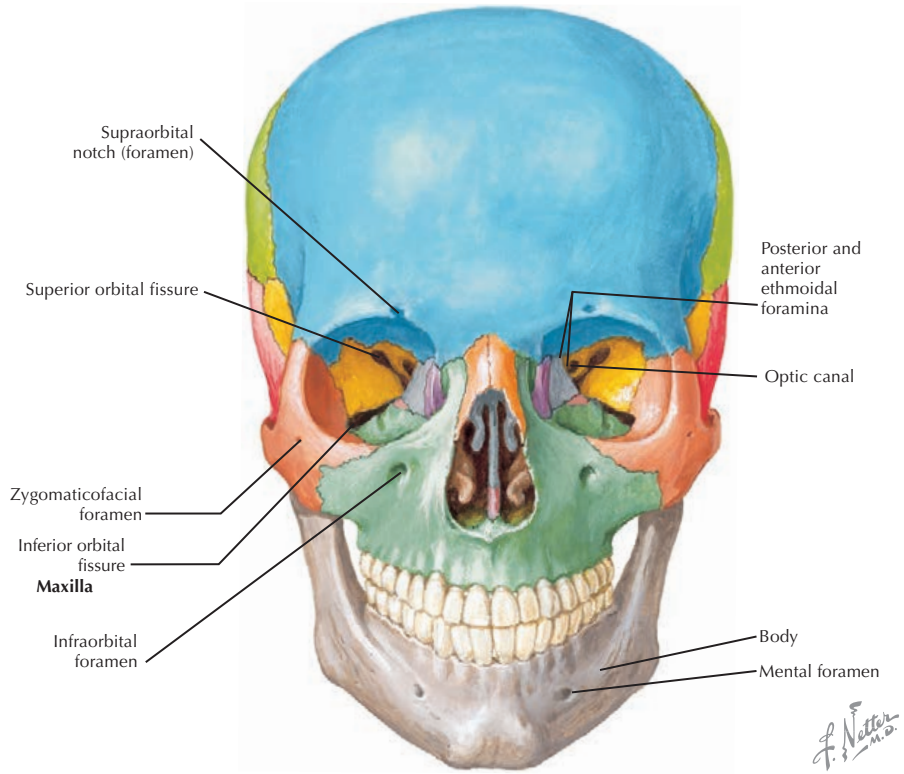


t.me/highdent www.highdentlab.com instagram.com/high_dent

Major Foramina and Fissures

ANTERIOR VIEW

Foramen/Fissure	Located in or Formed by	Structures Passing through
Supraorbital foramen	Frontal	Supraorbital n. and vessels
Optic canal	Sphenoid	Optic n., ophthalmic a.
Superior orbital fissure	Between the: • Greater wing of the sphenoid and • Lesser wing of the sphenoid	Nasociliary, frontal, and lacrimal branches of the ophthalmic division of the trigeminal n., oculomotor n., trochlear n., abducens n., superior and inferior ophthalmic vv.
Inferior orbital fissure	Between the: • Greater wing of the sphenoid and • Maxilla and orbital portion of the palatine bones	Maxillary division of the trigeminal n., zygomatic n., infraorbital vessels
Anterior ethmoid foramen	Between the: • Frontal and • Ethmoid	Anterior ethmoid n. and vessels
Posterior ethmoid foramen		Posterior ethmoid n. and vessels
Zygomaticofacial foramen	Zygomatic	Zygomaticofacial n. and vessels
Infraorbital foramen	Maxilla	Infraorbital n. and vessels
Mental foramen	Mandible	Mental n. and vessels



2

Cervical Vertebrae

GENERAL INFORMATION

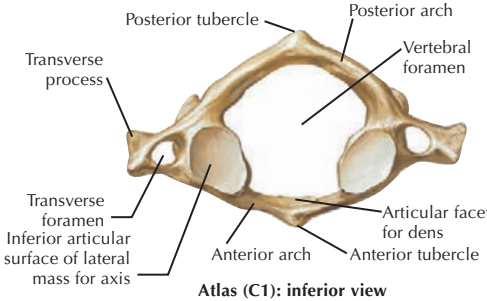
7 cervical vertebrae (C1 to C7)

The smallest vertebrae in the body

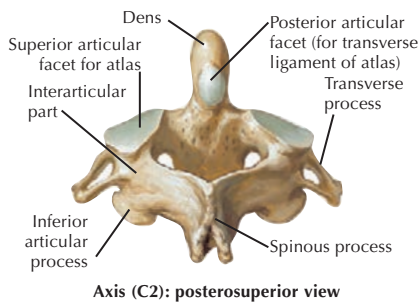
The 1st, 2nd, and 7th cervical vertebrae are unique in their shape; the 3rd to the 6th are similarly shaped

BONES

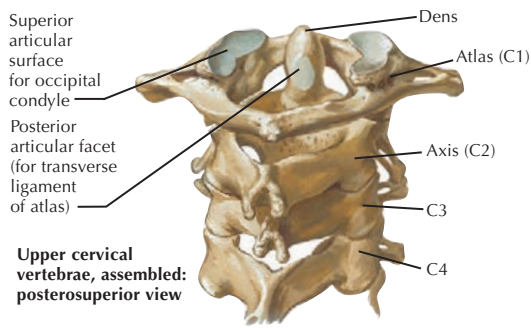
Vertebra	Characteristics
Atlas (C1)	Supports the skull No body No spinous process Has an anterior arch and a posterior arch Large lateral masses support the occipital condyles of the skull superiorly and articulate with the axis inferiorly Foramen transversarium located in the large transverse process
Axis (C2)	Dens (odontoid process) located on the body's superior surface Foramen transversarium located in the small transverse process Spinous process is large and bifid
C3–C6	Cervical vertebrae have small bodies Pedicles project posteriorly and laterally Spinous processes are short and bifid Vertebral foramina are large and triangular Each foramen transversarium is located in the transverse process Vertebral a. enters the foramen transversarium at C6 Transverse processes each have an anterior and a posterior portion called the anterior tubercle and the posterior tubercle
C7	Also called "vertebra prominens" because its long spinous process makes it visible under the skin Long spinous process is not bifid Foramen transversarium located in the large transverse process Normally, the vertebral vessels do not pass through the foramen transversarium of C7 (the veins pass through more frequently than the arteries)



Atlas (C1): inferior view



Axis (C2): posterosuperior view

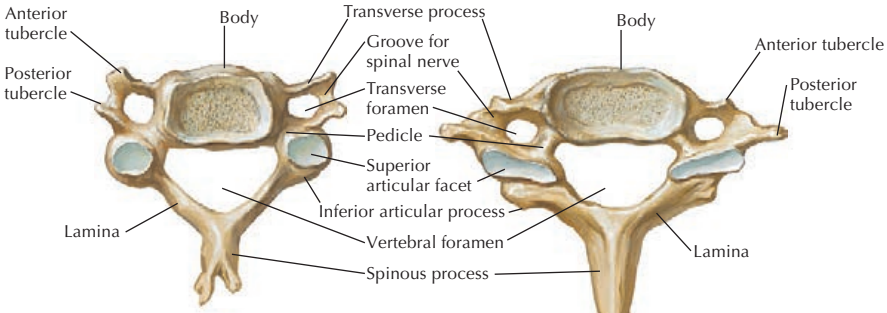


Upper cervical vertebrae, assembled: posterosuperior view

t.me/highdent www.highdentlab.com instagram.com/high_dent

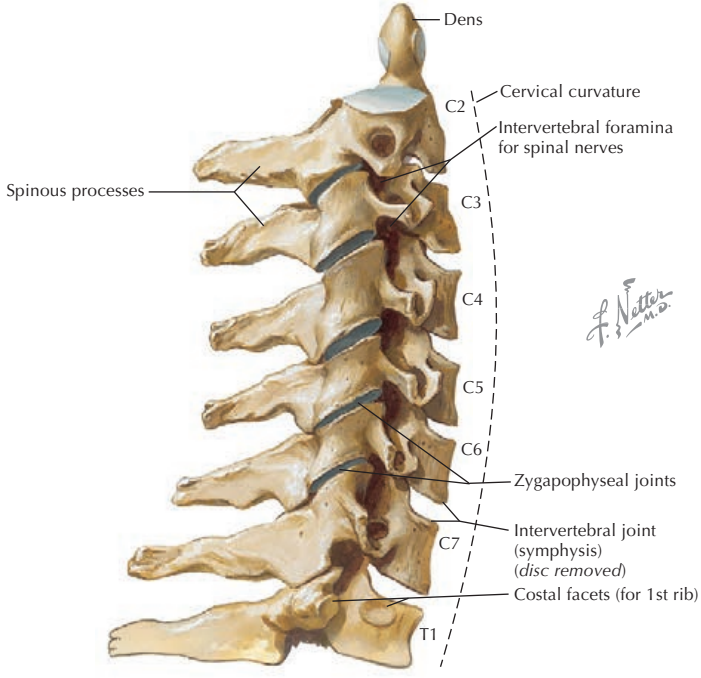
Cervical Vertebrae

GENERAL INFORMATION *CONTINUED*



4th cervical vertebra: superior view

7th cervical vertebra: superior view



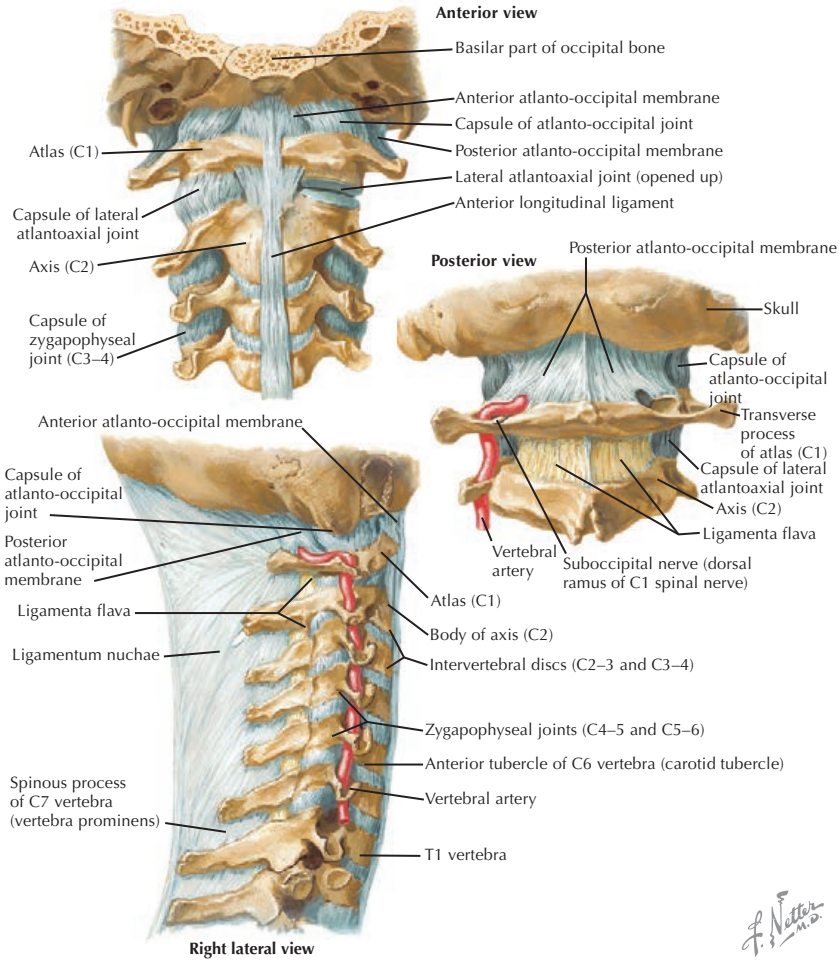
2nd cervical to 1st thoracic vertebrae: right lateral view

2

Cervical Vertebrae

MAJOR EXTERNAL LIGAMENTS

Ligament(s)/Membrane(s)	Comments
Anterior longitudinal ligament	Attached to the anterior surfaces of the vertebral bodies, extending from the axis to the sacrum Superior to the axis, it is continuous with the anterior atlantoaxial lig.
Ligamenta flava	Attached to the anterior surfaces of the lamina within the vertebral foramen extending from the axis to the first sacral vertebra
Ligamentum nuchae	Extends from the external occipital protuberance and median nuchal line to the spinous process of C7 Between these attachments, it attaches to the posterior tubercle of the atlas and the spinous processes of the axis and C3–C6
Anterior atlanto-occipital membrane	Extends from the anterior margin of the foramen magnum superiorly and the anterior arch of the atlas inferiorly Continuous with the capsule of the atlanto-occipital joint laterally
Posterior atlanto-occipital membrane	Extends from the posterior margin of the foramen magnum superiorly to the posterior arch of the atlas inferiorly Allows passage of the vertebral a. on the lateral margin



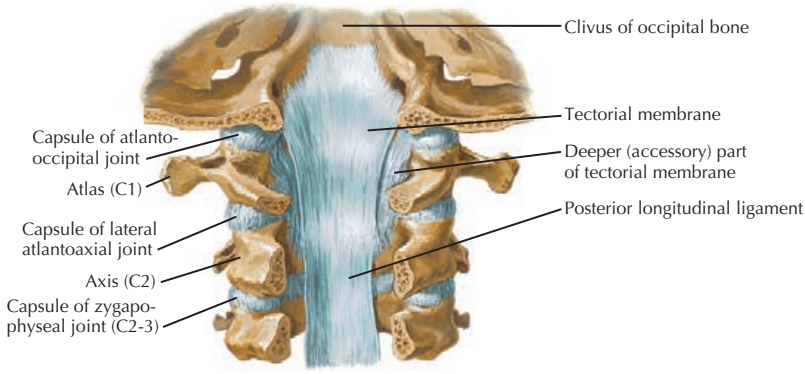
t.me/highdent www.highdentlab.com instagram.com/high_dent

Cervical Vertebrae

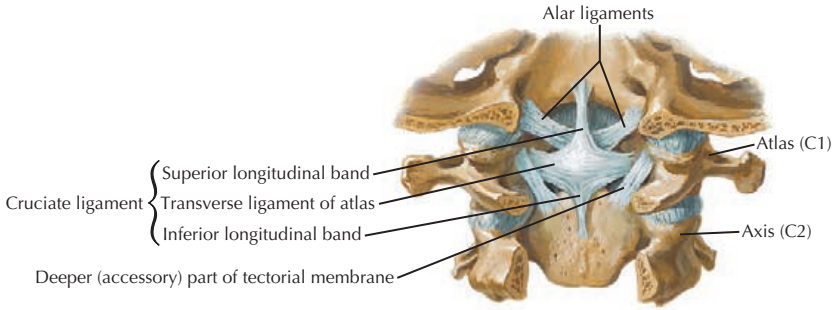
MAJOR INTERNAL LIGAMENTS

Ligament(s)/Membrane(s)	Comments
Deep Ligaments/Membranes	
Alar ligament	Extends from the dens to the medial portions of the occipital condyles Also known as "check ligaments" because they limit skull rotation
Apical ligament of the dens	Extends from the dens to the anterior margin of the foramen magnum
Cruciate ligament *Superior longitudinal band*	Part of the transverse lig. of the atlas, which extends superiorly to attach to the basilar portion of the occipital bone
Transverse ligament of atlas	Thick ligament extending from one side of the internal surface of the anterior arch of the atlas to the other side, holding the dens in contact with the anterior arch
Inferior longitudinal band	Part of the transverse lig. of the atlas that extends inferiorly, attaching to the posterior body of the axis
Superficial Ligaments/Membranes	
Tectorial membrane	Extends from the basilar portion of the occipital bone, where it blends with the dura mater, to the posterior portion of the body of the axis Continuous inferiorly with the posterior longitudinal lig.
Posterior longitudinal ligament	Attached to the posterior surfaces of the bodies of the vertebrae extending within the vertebral foramen from the axis to the sacrum Superior to the axis, it is continuous with the tectorial membrane

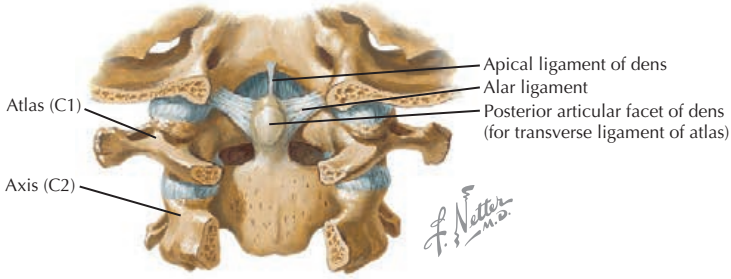
MAJOR INTERNAL LIGAMENTS *CONTINUED*



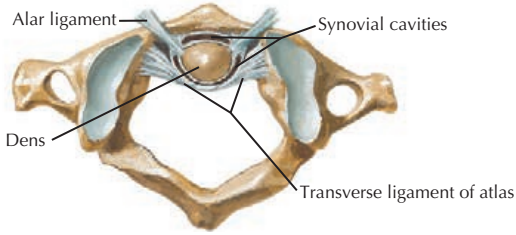
Upper part of vertebral canal with spinous processes and parts of vertebral arches removed to expose ligaments of posterior vertebral bodies: posterior view



Principal part of tectorial membrane removed to expose deeper ligaments: posterior view



Cruciate ligament removed to show deepest ligaments: posterior view



Median atlantoaxial joint: superior view

t.me/highdent www.highdentlab.com instagram.com/high_dent

Clinical Correlate

ZYGOMATIC FRACTURES

Zygoma is the second most commonly fractured bone of the face after the nasal bone

Susceptible to fracture, usually due to a facial blow from a fist or trauma related to a car accident

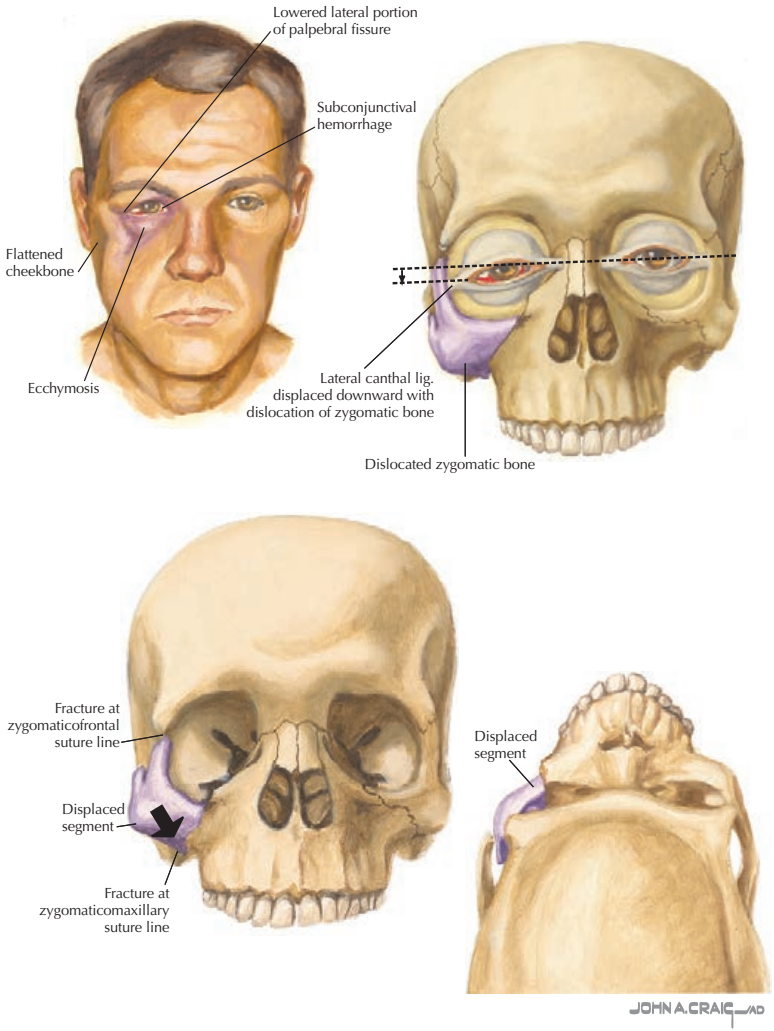
In fractures due to blows from a fist, the left zygomatic bone is more frequently fractured than the right

Most fractures are unilateral

May displace the zygomatic bone along the sutures, or more severe displacement in a posterior, medial, and inferior direction may occur

Common clinical manifestations include:

- Pain
- Swelling
- Diplopia
- Paresthesia
- Depressed cheek



2 Clinical Correlate

LE FORT FRACTURES

Trauma to the midface usually follows 1 of 3 patterns of fracture:

- Le Fort I
- Le Fort II
- Le Fort III

LE FORT I

Horizontal, extending from the lateral margin of the piriform aperture to the pterygoid plates just superior to the apices of the teeth

Gives rise to a detached upper jaw relative to the rest of the maxillofacial skeleton

LE FORT II

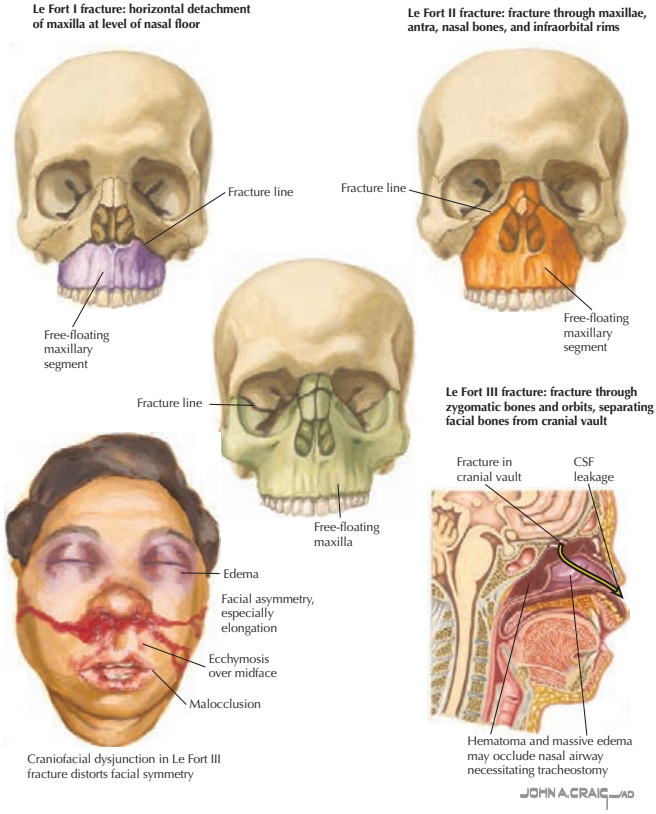
Pyramidal in outline, extending from the bridge of the nose at or inferior to the nasofrontal suture or maxilla, then inferiorly and laterally through the inferior orbital floor near the infraorbital foramen, through the anterior wall of the maxillary sinus, to the pterygoid plates

LE FORT III

Transverse, extending from the nasofrontal suture and frontomaxillary suture and passing posteriorly along the medial wall of the orbit through the nasolacrimal groove and ethmoid, then following the inferior orbital fissure to the lateral wall of the orbit, and extending through the frontozygomatic suture

Within the nose, the fracture extends along the perpendicular plate, vomer, and pterygoid plates

In a Le Fort III fracture, the facial skeleton is detached from the base of the skull



t.me/high_dent www.highdentlab.com instagram.com/high_dent

Clinical Correlate

MANDIBLE FRACTURES

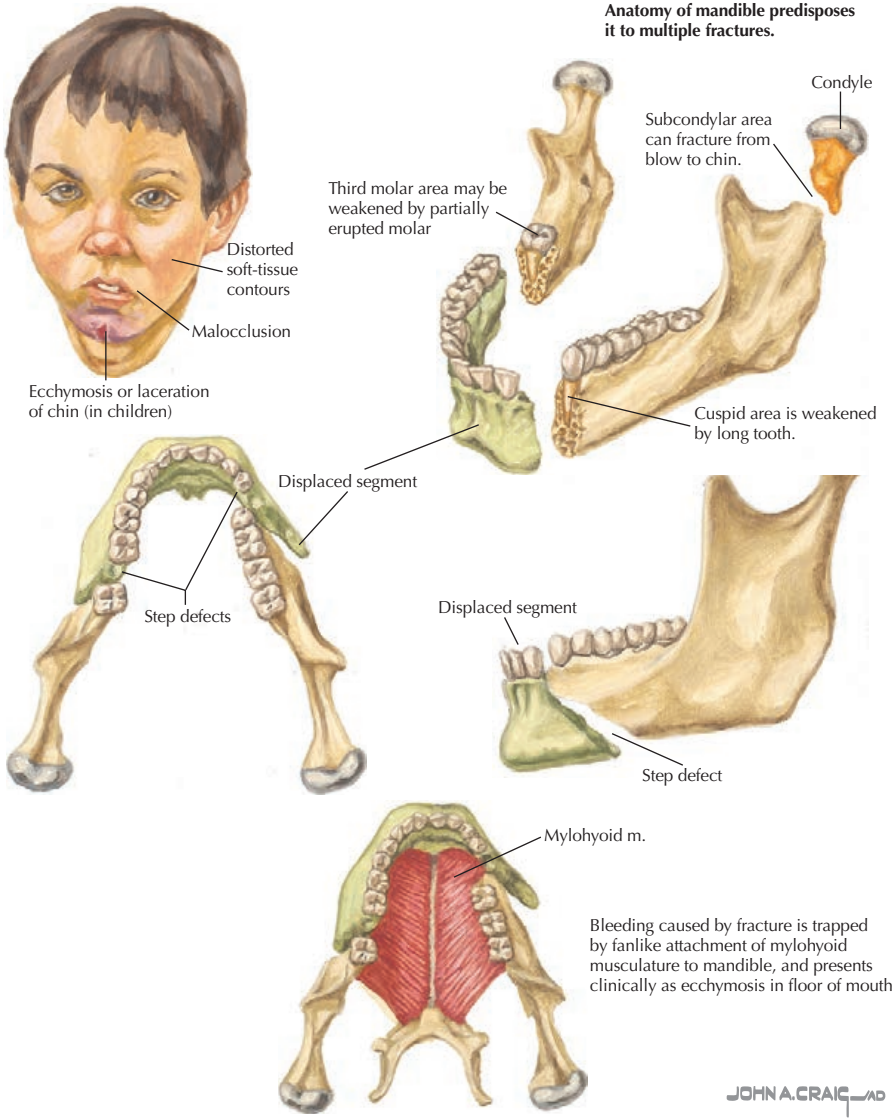
Mandible is a frequently fractured bone

Fractures result from blow from a fist or trauma incurred in motor vehicle accidents

Common sites (in decreasing order of frequency):

- Body
- Angle
- Condyle
- Symphysis
- Ramus
- Alveolus
- Coronoid process

With double mandibular fractures, the second usually is contralateral



2 Clinical Correlate

CERVICAL FRACTURES

Two common types of cervical fractures:
- Jefferson fracture (at C1)
- Hangman's fracture (at C2)

JEFFERSON FRACTURE

Involves the atlas

Results from skull compression due to axial loading, causing the atlas to burst

Most patients are neurologically intact but have severe neck pain

Vertebral artery can be compromised

Classified as stable or unstable according to whether the transverse ligament of the atlas is intact:
- *Stable fractures* can be treated with an orthosis such as a soft collar
- *Unstable fractures* are more problematic; may require cranial traction applied with use of a halo, as well as cervical fusion

HANGMAN'S FRACTURE

Occurs through the vertebral arch of the axis between the superior and the inferior articulating facets

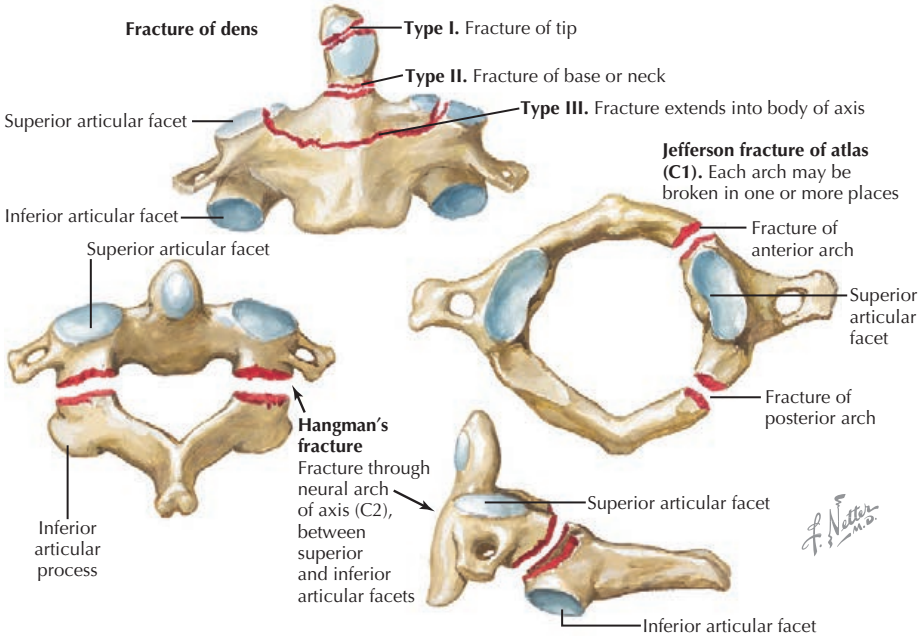
A traumatic spondylolisthesis often is caused by extension of the neck with axial compression, common in car accidents

The historical hangman's fracture is caused by extension and distraction of the neck

ODONTOID FRACTURE

Involves the axis

Classification into 3 types:
- Type 1—fracture at the tip of the odontoid process
- Type 2—fracture along the base or the neck of the odontoid
- Type 3—fracture that passes through the body of the axis



t.me/highdent www.highdentlab.com instagram.com/high_dent

CHAPTER 3

BASIC NEUROANATOMY AND CRANIAL NERVES

Nervous Tissue 66
Central Nervous System 68
Peripheral Nervous System 72
Cranial Nerves 74
Clinical Correlates 103

3 Nervous Tissue

GENERAL INFORMATION

Nervous tissue is divided into 2 major cell types:
- Neurons
- Neuroglial cells (the neuroglia)

NEURONS

The structural and functional cells in the nervous system

Respond to a nervous stimulus and conduct the stimulus along the length of the cell

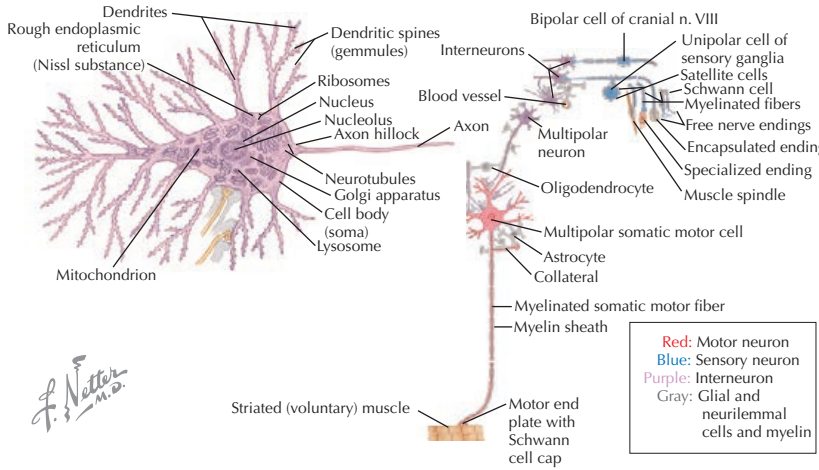
A neuron's cell body is called the perikaryon, or soma

Cell bodies are classified by their location:
- Ganglion—a collection of nerve cell bodies located in the peripheral nervous system (e.g., dorsal root ganglion, trigeminal ganglion, ciliary ganglion)
- Nucleus—a collection of nerve cell bodies located in the central nervous system (e.g., Edinger-Westphal nucleus, chief sensory nucleus of cranial nerve V, motor nucleus of cranial nerve VII)

Neuron's cell bodies contain typical cellular organelles within their cytoplasm:
- Mitochondria
- Nucleus
- Nucleolus
- Ribosomes
- Rough endoplasmic reticulum (Nissl substance)
- Neurotubules
- Golgi apparatus
- Lysosomes

Neurons have 2 types of processes that extend from the nerve cell body:
- Dendrite—process that carries nerve impulses toward the nerve cell body; neurons may have multiple dendrites
- Axon—process that carries nerve impulses away from the nerve cell body; neurons can have *only 1* axon

3 major types of neurons:
- Unipolar—has only 1 process from the cell body (sensory neurons)
- Bipolar—has 2 processes from the cell body: 1 dendrite and 1 axon (sensory neurons; located only in the retina, olfactory epithelium, and the vestibular and cochlear ganglia)
- Multipolar—has 3 or more processes from the cell body: 2 or more dendrites and 1 axon (motor neurons and interneurons)



t.me/high_dent www.highdentlab.com instagram.com/high_dent

Nervous Tissue

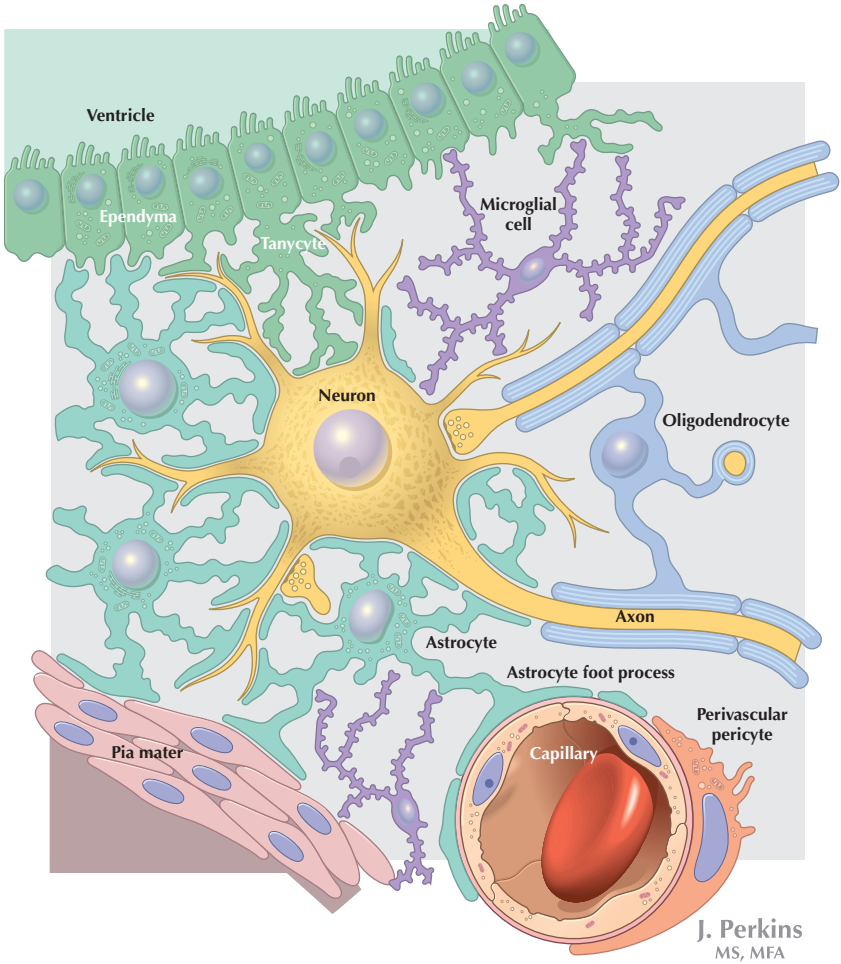
NEUROGLIA

Neuroglia is the supporting nervous tissue for neurons, although neuroglial cells also have assistive roles in neuron function

Neuroglial cells have only 1 type of process

Classification:

- Astrocytes—located in the central nervous system; help keep neurons in place, provide nutritional support, regulate the extracellular matrix, form part of the blood-brain barrier
- Oligodendrocytes—located in the central nervous system; responsible for axon myelination in the central nervous system; 1 oligodendrocyte can myelinate 1 segment of multiple axons
- Microglia—located in the central nervous system; responsible for phagocytosis to remove waste
- Schwann cells—located in the peripheral nervous system; responsible for axon myelination in the peripheral nervous system; 1 schwann cell can myelinate 1 segment of 1 axon
- Satellite cells—located in the peripheral nervous system; surround the nerve cell bodies of ganglia

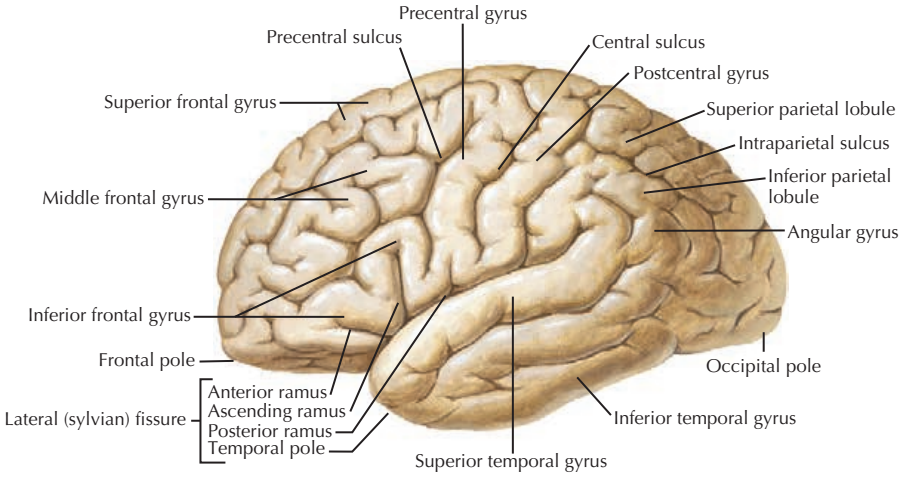


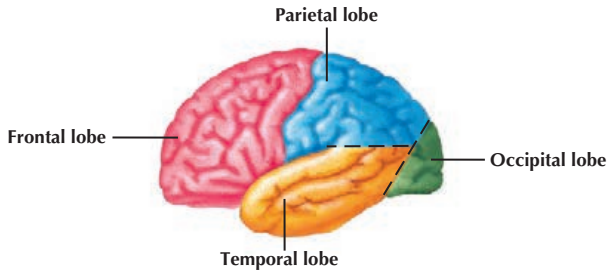
3 Central Nervous System

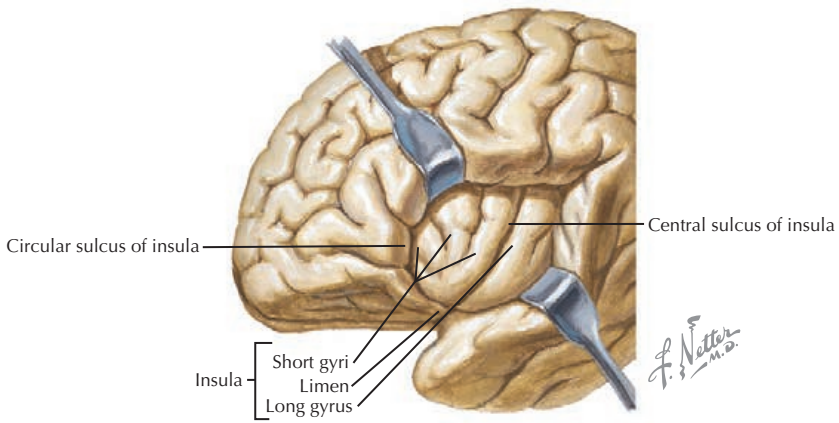
GENERAL INFORMATION

The *central nervous system* is composed of the:

- Brain
- Spinal cord







t.me/highdent www.highdentlab.com instagram.com/high_dent

Central Nervous System

BRAIN

CEREBRUM

The surface of the cerebral cortex of the brain is divided by:

- Gyri (singular gyrus)—the elevations of brain tissue on the surface
- Sulci (singular sulcus)—the grooves or fissures located between the gyri

There are 3 large sulci that help divide the cerebral hemispheres into 4 of its lobes:

- Central sulcus (of Rolando)—divides frontal lobe from parietal lobe
- Lateral sulcus (of Sylvius)—divides the frontal and parietal lobes from the temporal lobe
- Parieto-occipital sulcus—divides the parietal lobe from the occipital lobe

The brain is divided into 5 lobes:

- Frontal—motor movement, motor aspect of speech (Broca's area), reasoning, emotions, personality, and problem solving
- Parietal—sensory perceptions related to pain, temperature, touch and pressure, spatial orientation and perception, sensory aspect of language (Wernicke's area)
- Temporal—auditory perceptions, learning, and memory
- Occipital—vision
- Insula—associated with visceral functions including taste

DIENCEPHALON

Composed of 4 parts:

- Thalamus—major relay center of the somatosensory system and parts of the motor system
- Hypothalamus—controls the autonomic nervous system and endocrine system
- Epithalamus—major structures include the pineal gland (which controls circadian rhythms) and the habenula
- Subthalamus—an extrapyramidal nucleus of the motor system; if lesioned, will result in a contralateral hemiballismus

BRAINSTEM

Composed of 3 parts:

- Midbrain
- Pons
- Medulla

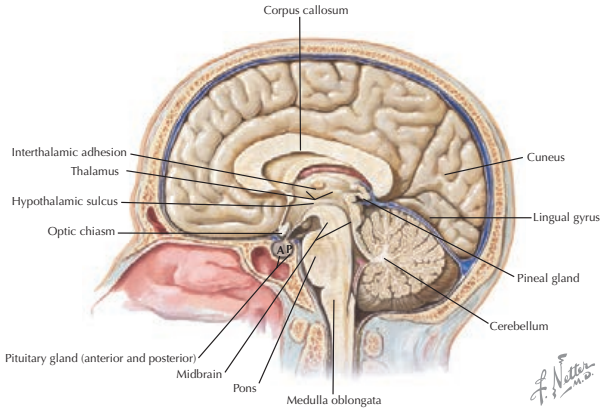
CEREBELLUM

Part of the motor system

Receives sensory input of all forms that use the deep cerebellar nuclei

Associated with:

- Equilibrium
- Posture
- Tone of axial muscles
- Gait



3 Central Nervous System

SPINAL CORD

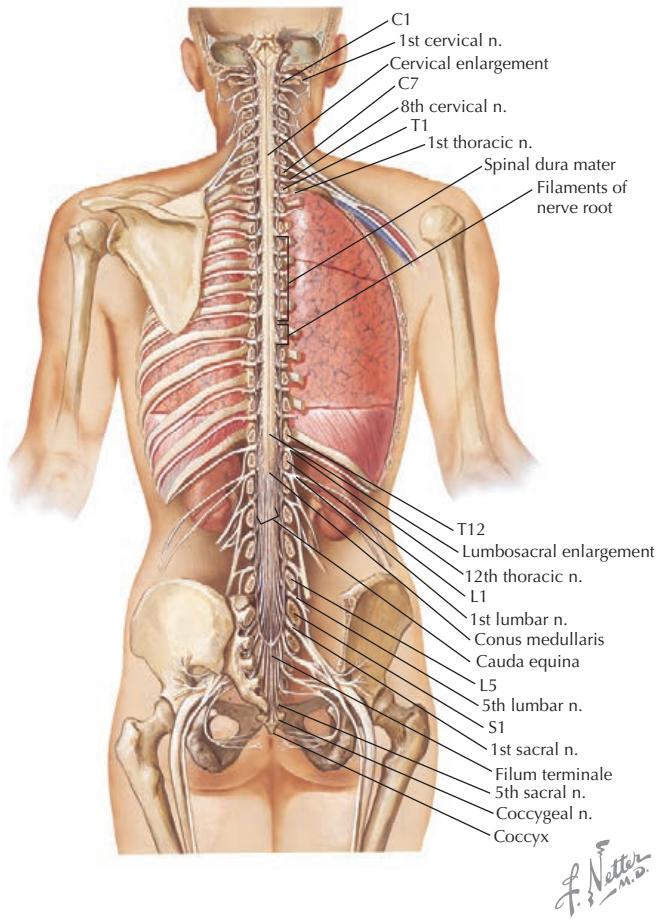
The caudal continuation of the central nervous system

Begins at the caudal end of the medulla and ends at vertebral level L1–2, tapering into the conus medullaris

Has 2 enlargements associated with the limbs:
- Cervical—associated with the upper limb and found between the spinal cord at levels C4 to T1
- Lumbosacral—associated with the lower limb and found between the spinal cord at levels L1 to S2

Composed of:
- Gray matter—location of nerve cell bodies and neuroglial cells
- White matter—location of the axons and neuroglial cells

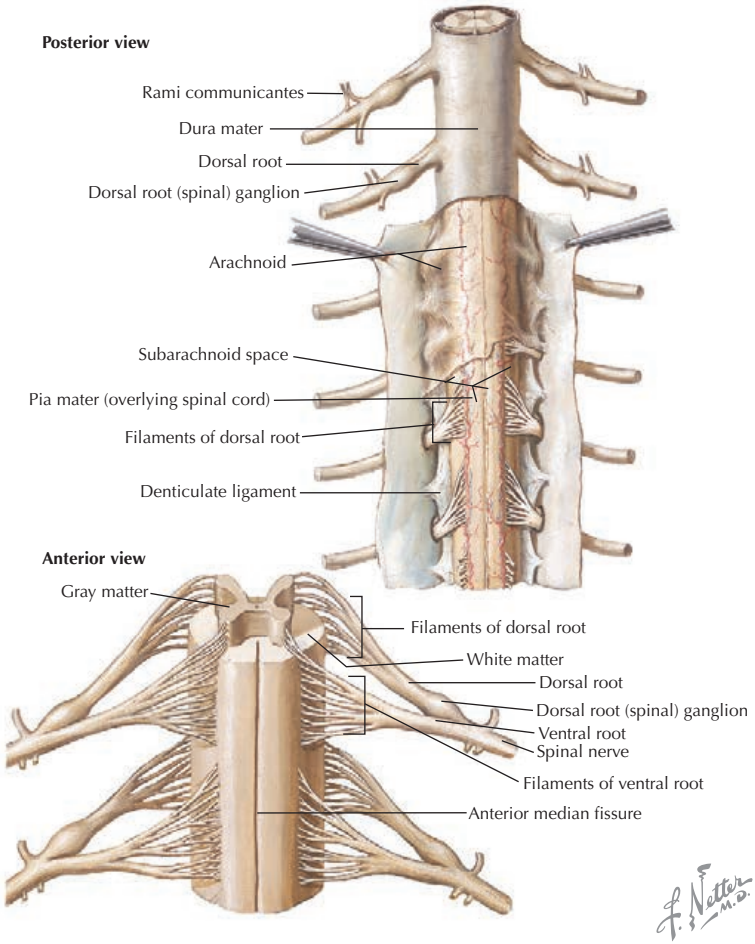
Has 5 levels:
- Cervical—8 spinal nerves
- Thoracic—12 spinal nerves
- Lumbar—5 spinal nerves
- Sacral—5 spinal nerves
- Coccygeal—1 spinal nerve



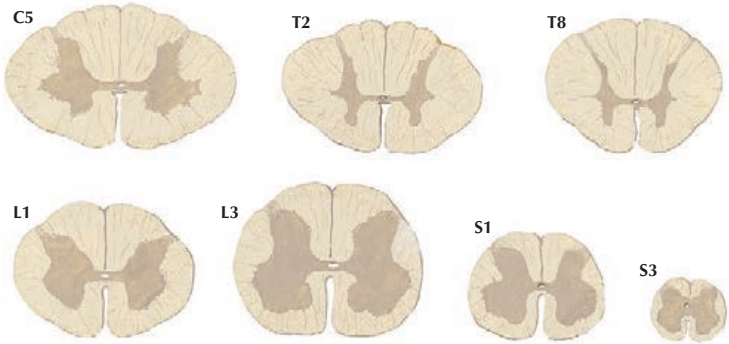
t.me/highdent www.highdentlab.com instagram.com/high_dent

Central Nervous System

SPINAL CORD *CONTINUED*



Sections through spinal cord at various levels



3 Peripheral Nervous System

GENERAL INFORMATION

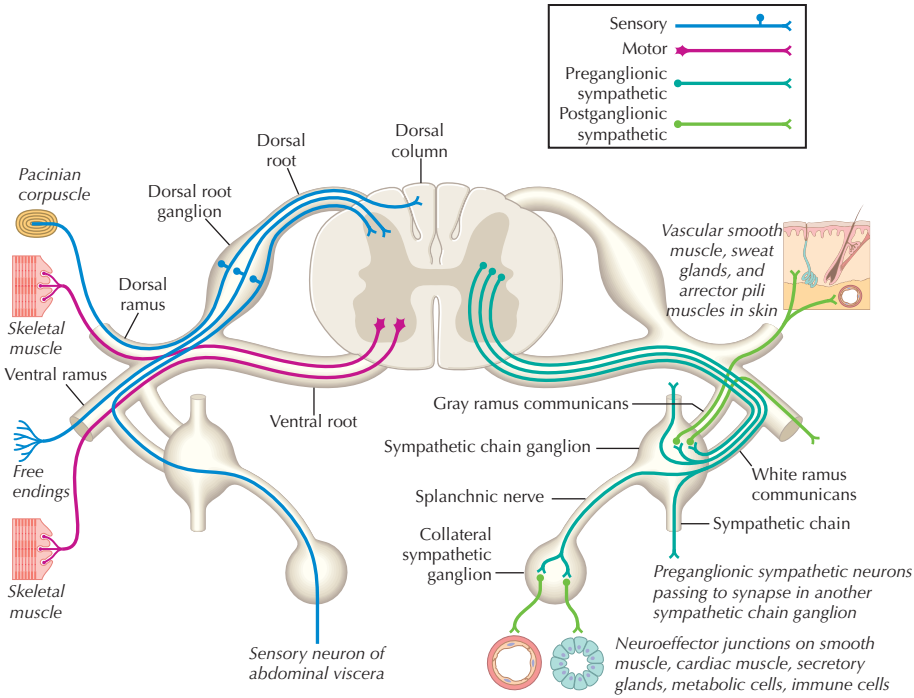
Peripheral nervous system is that portion of the nervous system located external to the central nervous system

Consists of:

- Cranial nerves—12 pairs
- Spinal nerves—31 pairs

Can be subdivided into:

- Somatic nervous system—voluntary system associated with afferent (sensory) and efferent (motor) fibers
- Autonomic nervous system—involuntary system associated with homeostasis of the body

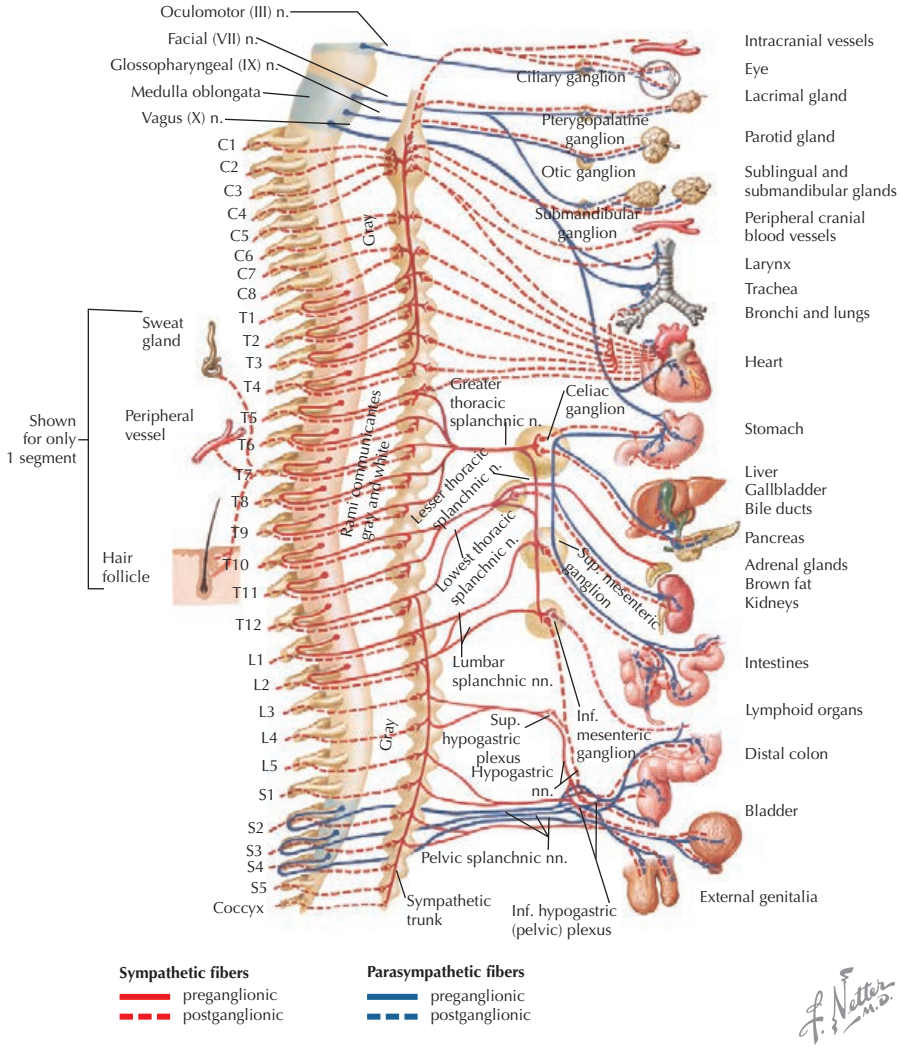


J. Perkins
MS, MFA

t.me/highdent www.highdentlab.com instagram.com/high_dent

Peripheral Nervous System

SPINAL NERVES AND CRANIAL NERVES



3 Cranial Nerves

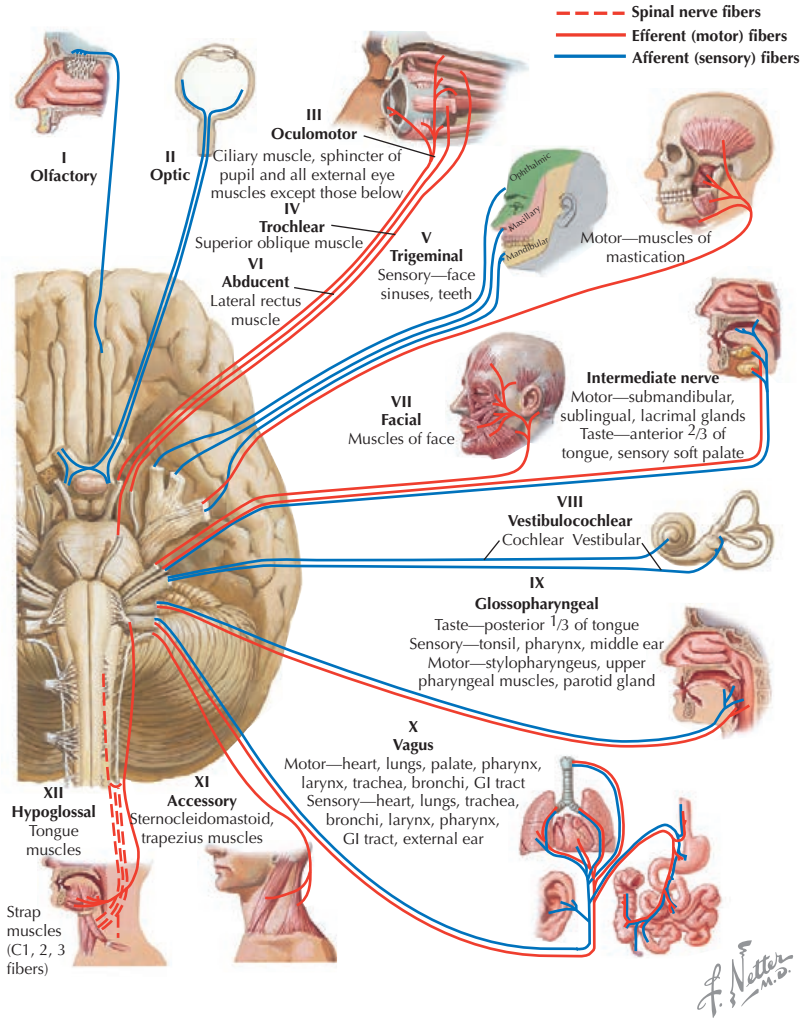
GENERAL INFORMATION

Cranial nerves or *cerebral nerves* are those peripheral nerves that leave the brain or brainstem

The cranial nerves customarily are subdivided into 12 pairs:

I: Olfactory nerve
II: Optic nerve
III: Oculomotor nerve
IV: Trochlear nerve
V: Trigeminal nerve
VI: Abducens nerve
VII: Facial nerve
VIII: Vestibulocochlear nerve
IX: Glossopharyngeal nerve
X: Vagus nerve
XI: Spinal accessory nerve
XII: Hypoglossal nerve

Because of the high degree of differentiation in the brain of humans, cranial nerves are more complex in structure and function than spinal nerves



t.me/highdent www.highdentlab.com instagram.com/high_dent

Cranial Nerves

FUNCTIONAL COLUMNS

7 functional components (or functional columns) of the cranial nerves are recognized

- Concept of *functional columns* comes from studies of spinal nerves—functions associated with different neurologic pathways along spinal column are assigned corresponding "columns"

A given cranial nerve may have 1 to 5 functional columns

The functional columns are classified as *general* or *special*:

- General—these functional columns have the same functions as those for spinal nerves
- Special—these functional columns are specific only to cranial nerves

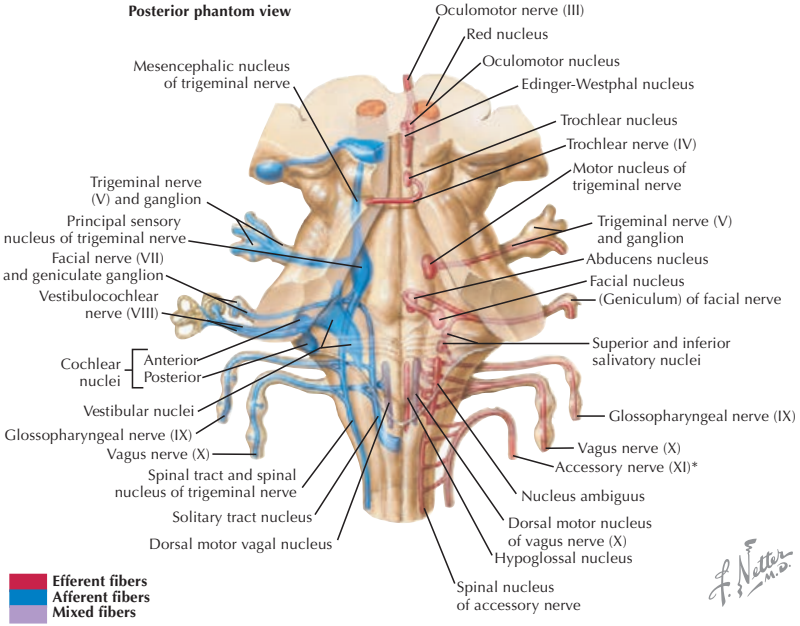
General and special functional columns each are subdivided into 2 additional categories:

- *Afferent* (sensory) and *efferent* (motor)
- *Somatic* (body-related) and *visceral* (organ-related)

SUMMARY OF FUNCTIONS

GSA	Exteroceptors and proprioceptors (e.g., for pain, touch, and temperature, or within tendons and joints) These are the same as in spinal nerves
SSA	Special senses in eye and ear (vision; hearing and equilibrium)
GVA	Sensory from viscera (e.g., gut) These are the same as in spinal nerves
SVA	Olfaction and taste
GVE	Autonomic nervous system (innervates cardiac muscle, smooth muscle, and glands) These are the same as in spinal nerves
GSE	Skeletal (somatic) muscle These are the same as in spinal nerves
SVE	Skeletal muscle which develops from the pharyngeal (branchial) arches (homologous to GSE)

**Within each designation:* G or S, general or special; S or V, somatic or visceral; A or E, afferent or efferent.

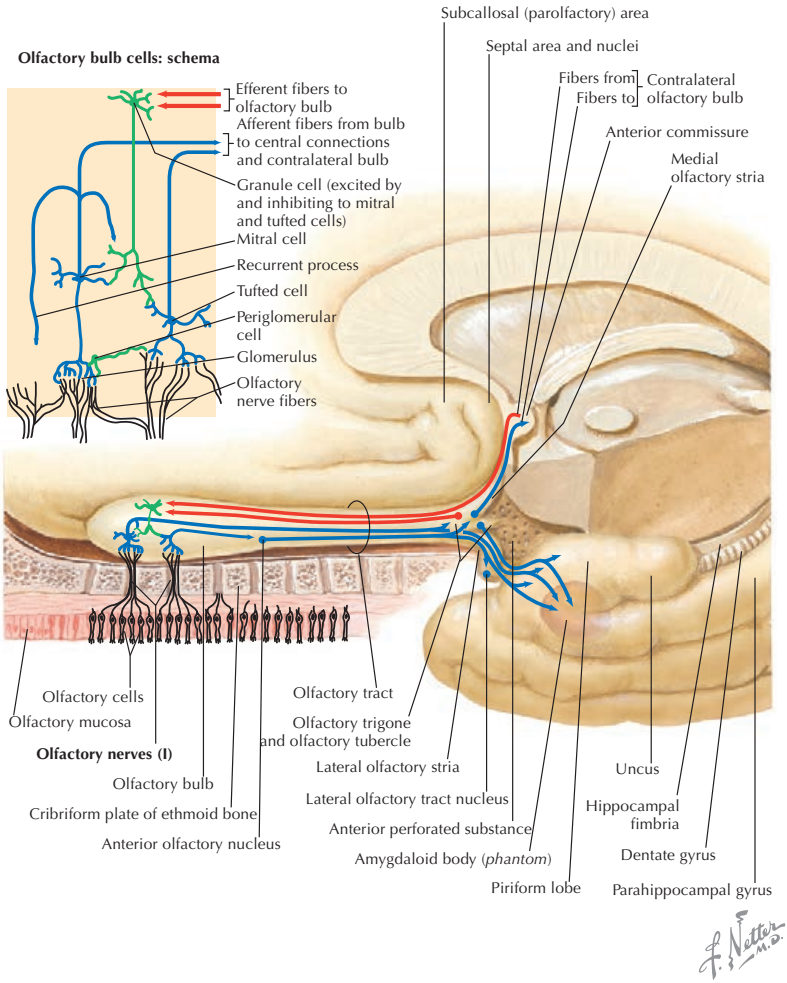


*Recent evidence suggests that the accessory nerve lacks a cranial root and has no connection to the vagus nerve. Verification of this finding awaits further investigation

3 Cranial Nerves

CRANIAL NERVE I: OLFACTORY NERVE

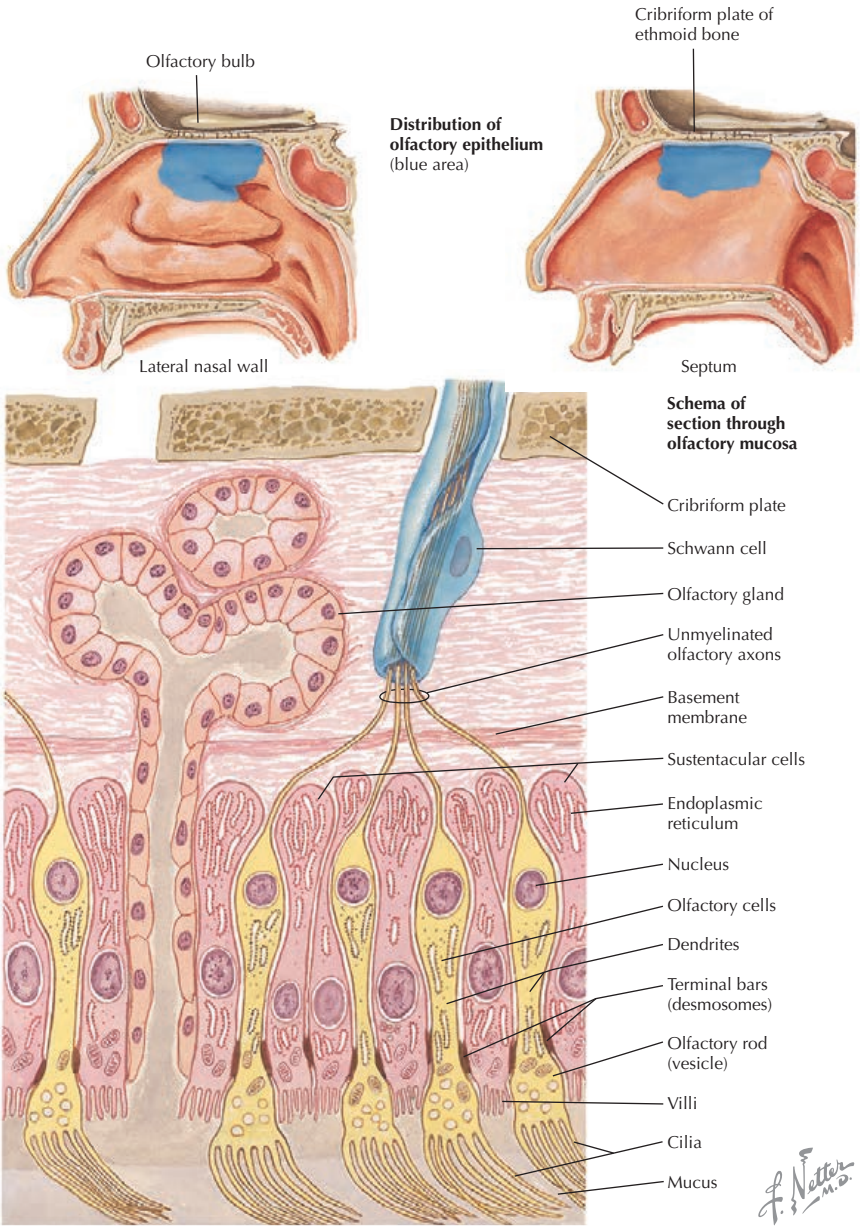
Functional Column	Origin of Fibers	Termination of Fibers	Summary	Comment
SVA	Fibers originate in the neurosensory cells of the olfactory epithelium The primary fibers travel through the cribriform plate to synapse on the secondary fibers within the olfactory bulb These fibers continue posteriorly as the olfactory tract that carries the fibers to the olfactory areas	The secondary fibers continue to synapse in the olfactory areas: • Lateral olfactory area • Anterior olfactory nucleus • Intermediate olfactory area • Medial olfactory area	The SVA fibers are responsible for the sense of smell	Tumors of the olfactory lobe can affect the olfactory system



t.me/highdent www.highdentlab.com instagram.com/high_dent

Cranial Nerves

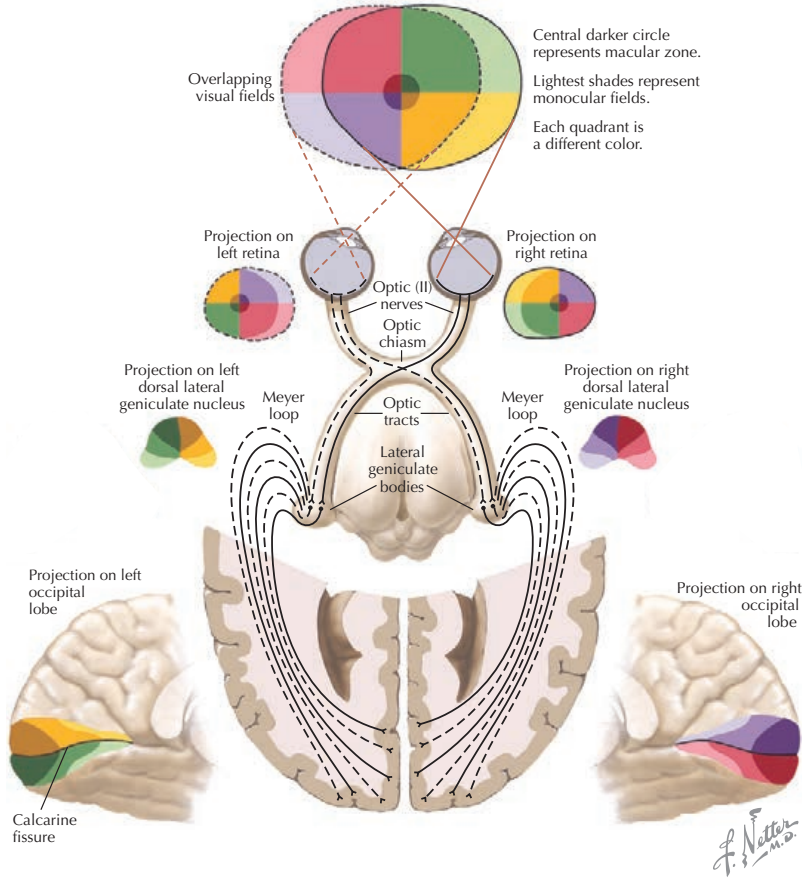
CRANIAL NERVE I: OLFACTORY NERVE *CONTINUED*



3 Cranial Nerves

CRANIAL NERVE II: OPTIC NERVE

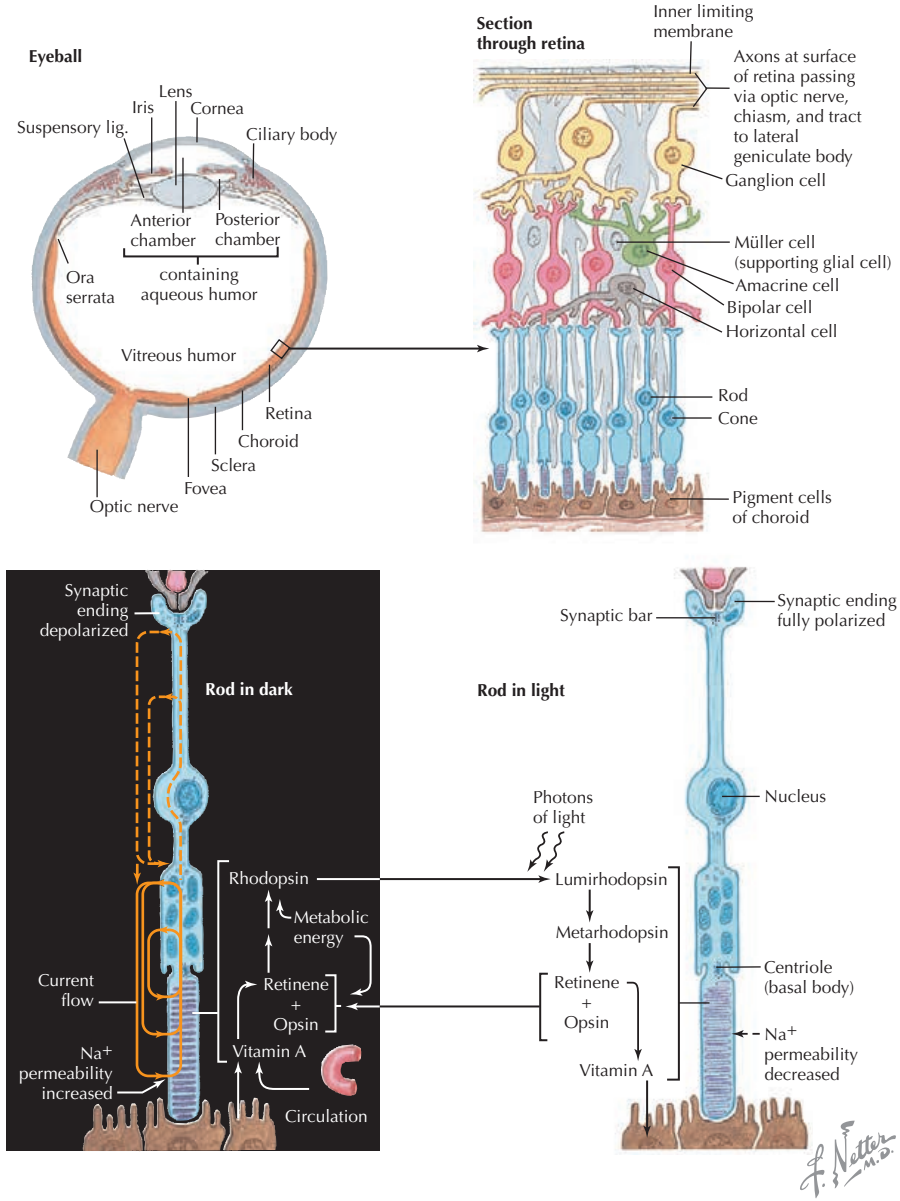
Functional Column	Origin of Fibers	Termination of Fibers	Summary	Comment
SSA	Begins in the retina with the receptors of rods and cones that synapse on bipolar cells which synapse with ganglion cells	Ganglionic axons form the optic nerve that meets in an incomplete crossing at the optic chiasm where: • Nasal retinal fibers decussate to the opposite side • Temporal retinal fibers remain on the ipsilateral side These form an optic tract that terminates on the lateral geniculate nucleus Fibers from the lateral geniculate travel to synapse in the occipital lobe	The SSA fibers are responsible for vision	Lesions of the optic nerve lead to blindness Lesions of the optic chiasm lead to bitemporal hemianopsia Lesions of the optic tract lead to homonymous hemianopsia



t.me/highdent www.highdentlab.com instagram.com/high_dent

Cranial Nerves

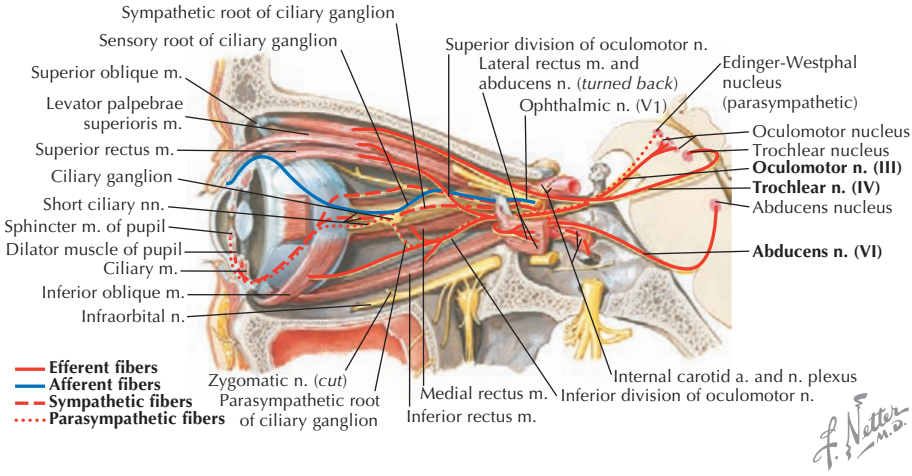
CRANIAL NERVE II: OPTIC NERVE *CONTINUED*



3 Cranial Nerves

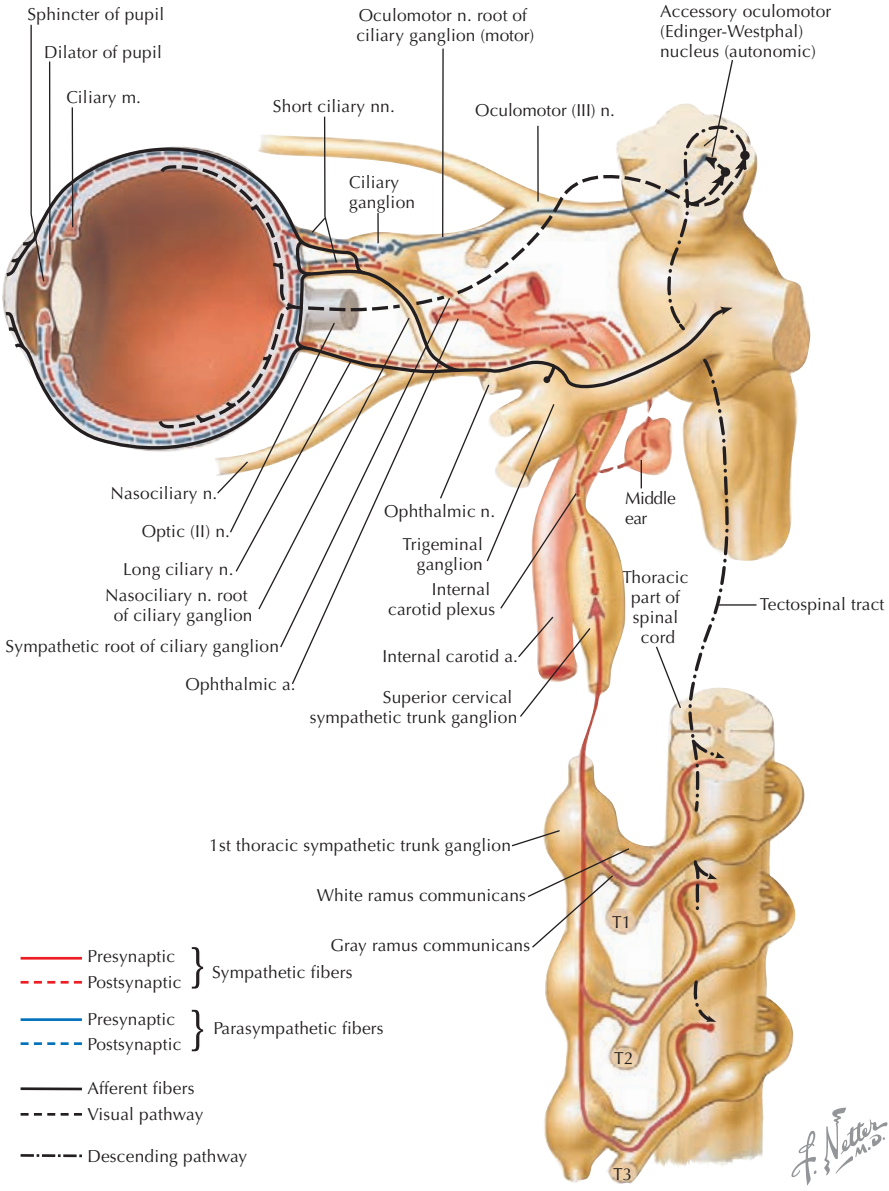
CRANIAL NERVES III, IV, AND VI: OCULOMOTOR, AND TROCHLEAR, ABDUCENS NERVES

OCULOMOTOR NERVE				
Functional Column	**Origin of Fibers**	**Termination of Fibers**	**Summary**	**Comment**
GSE	Begins in the oculomotor nucleus	Innervates the superior rectus, inferior rectus, medial rectus, inferior oblique, and levator palpebrae superioris mm.	GSE fibers are responsible for innervating the majority of the extraocular eye muscles	Lesions of the oculomotor nerve result in diplopia, lateral strabismus, ptosis, and mydriasis
GVE	Preganglionic parasympathetic fibers begin in the Edinger-Westphal nucleus	Innervates the sphincter pupillae and ciliary mm.	GVE fibers are responsible for providing the parasympathetic innervation to the intrinsic eye muscles	GVE fibers utilize 1 ganglion: • Ciliary
TROCHLEAR NERVE				
Functional Column	**Origin of Fibers**	**Termination of Fibers**	**Summary**	**Comment**
GSE	Begins in the trochlear nucleus	Innervates the superior oblique m.	GSE fibers are responsible for innervating 1 extraocular muscle of the eye: the superior oblique	The trochlear nerve exits the brainstem dorsally Lesions of the trochlear n. result in diplopia In trochlear n. lesions, the eye is adducted and elevated
ABDUCENS NERVE				
Functional Column	**Origin of Fibers**	**Termination of Fibers**	**Summary**	**Comment**
GSE	Begins in the abducens nucleus	Innervates the lateral rectus m.	GSE fibers are responsible for innervating 1 extraocular muscle of the eye: the lateral rectus	Lesions of the abducens nerve result in diplopia and medial strabismus



t.me/highdent www.highdentlab.com instagram.com/high_dent

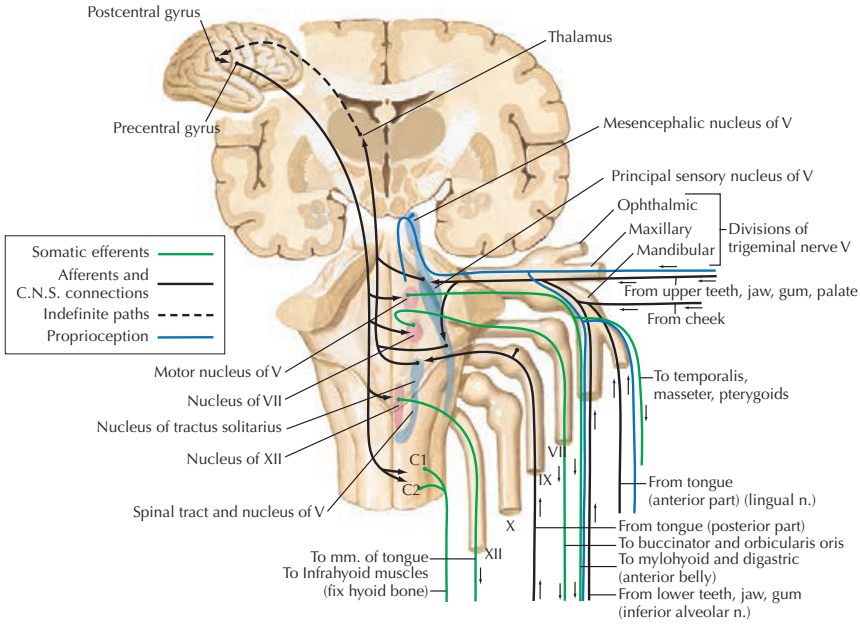
CRANIAL NERVES III, IV, AND VI: OCULOMOTOR, AND TROCHLEAR, ABDUCENS NERVES *CONTINUED*



3 Cranial Nerves

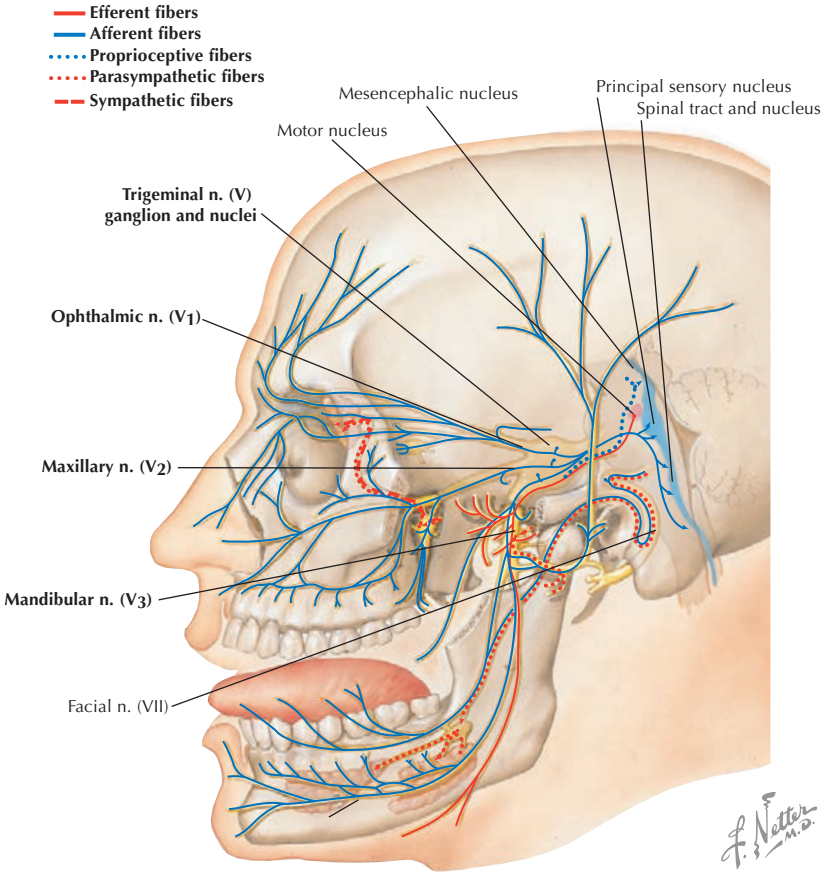
CRANIAL NERVE V: TRIGEMINAL NERVE

Functional Column	Origin of Fibers	Termination of Fibers	Summary	Comment
GSA	Afferent fibers begin in the various receptors (nociceptors, mechanoceptors, proprioceptors) of the skin and deep tissues of the head	Pain and temperature, and light touch fibers terminate in the spinal nucleus of V Discriminative touch fibers terminate in the main sensory nucleus of V Proprioception fibers have their cell bodies in the mesencephalic nucleus of V	GSA fibers are responsible for providing sensory innervation to the major part of the head GSA fibers utilize the trigeminothalamic lemniscus to carry their sensory impulses to consciousness	Provides sensory innervation through 3 main divisions: • Ophthalmic • Maxillary • Mandibular The nerve cell bodies for the primary fibers are located in the trigeminal ganglion
SVE	Begins in the motor nucleus of the trigeminal	Innervates the muscles of mastication: • Masseter • Temporalis • Medial pterygoid • Lateral pterygoid Also innervates: • Mylohyoid • Anterior digastric • Tensor tympani • Tensor veli palatini	The SVE fibers are responsible for innervating the muscles of the 1st pharyngeal arch	



t.me/highdent www.highdentlab.com instagram.com/high_dent

CRANIAL NERVE V: TRIGEMINAL NERVE *CONTINUED*



OPHTHALMIC DIVISION OF THE TRIGEMINAL NERVE		
The ophthalmic division (V_1), being a branch of the trigeminal n., is sensory in function Arises from the main nerve in the middle cranial fossa Passes anterior on the lateral wall of the cavernous sinus immediately inferior to the oculomotor and trochlear nn., but superior to the maxillary division of the trigeminal n. Immediately before entering the orbit, through the superior orbital fissure, it divides into 3 major branches: • Lacrimal • Frontal • Nasociliary		
Nerve	**Source**	**Course**
Lacrimal	1 of the 3 major branches of the ophthalmic division of the trigeminal n.	Smallest branch of the ophthalmic division of the trigeminal n. Passes anteriorly to enter the orbit through the superior orbital fissure In the orbit it travels on the superior border of the lateral rectus with the lacrimal a. Before reaching the lacrimal gland, it communicates with the zygomatic branch of the maxillary division of the trigeminal n. to receive autonomic nervous fibers Enters the lacrimal gland and supplies it and the conjunctiva before piercing the orbital septum to supply the skin of the upper eyelid

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

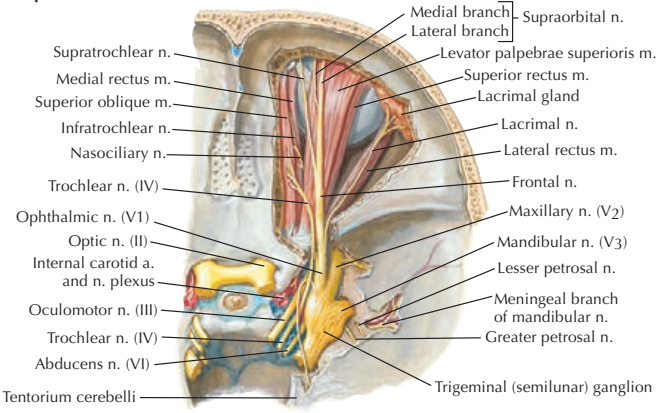
CRANIAL NERVE V: TRIGEMINAL NERVE *CONTINUED*

Nerve	Source	Course
Frontal	1 of the 3 major branches of the ophthalmic division of the trigeminal n.	Largest branch of the ophthalmic division of the trigeminal n. Passes anteriorly to enter the orbit through the superior orbital fissure In the orbit it passes anteriorly between the periosteum of the orbit and the levator palpebrae superioris m. About halfway in the orbit, it divides into its 2 terminal nerves, the supraorbital and supratrochlear nn.
Supraorbital	Frontal n.	1 of the 2 terminal branches of the frontal n. in the orbit Passes between the levator palpebrae superioris m. and periosteum of the orbit Continues anteriorly to the supraorbital foramen (notch) At the level of the supraorbital margin, it sends nerve supply to the frontal sinus and ascends superiorly along the scalp Divides into medial and lateral branches, which travel up to the vertex of the scalp
Supratrochlear		1 of the 2 terminal branches of the frontal n. in the orbit Once the supratrochlear a. joins it within the orbit, it continues to pass anteriorly toward the trochlear n. In the trochlear region, it often supplies the frontal sinus before exiting the orbit Ascends along the scalp, at first deep to the musculature in the region, before piercing these muscles to reach the cutaneous innervation along the scalp
Nasociliary	1 of the 3 major branches of the ophthalmic division of the trigeminal n.	Passes anteriorly to enter the orbit through the superior orbital fissure Enters the orbit lateral to the optic n. Travels across the optic n. anteriorly and medially to lie between the medial rectus m. and the superior oblique m. along the medial wall of the orbit All along its path, it gives rise to other nerves, including the sensory root of the ciliary ganglion and the long ciliary and posterior ethmoid nn., until terminating into the anterior ethmoid and infratrochlear nn. near the anterior ethmoid foramen
Sensory root of the ciliary ganglion	Nasociliary n.	Travels anteriorly on the lateral side of the optic n. to enter the ciliary ganglion Carries general sensory fibers, which are distributed by the short ciliary nn.
Short ciliary	Ciliary ganglion	Arises from the ciliary ganglion to travel to the posterior surface of the eye Supplies the sensory fibers to the eye and helps carry the postganglionic parasympathetic fibers to the sphincter pupillae and the ciliary muscle
Long ciliary	Nasociliary n.	Has 2 to 4 branches that travel anteriorly to enter the posterior part of the sclera of the eye
Posterior ethmoid		Travels deep to the superior oblique m. to pass through the posterior ethmoid foramen Supplies the sphenoid sinus and the posterior ethmoid sinus
Anterior ethmoid		Arises on the medial wall of the orbit Enters the anterior ethmoid foramen and travels through the canal to enter the anterior cranial fossa Supplies the anterior and middle ethmoid sinus before entering and supplying the nasal cavity Terminates as the external nasal n. on the face
External nasal	A terminal branch of the anterior ethmoid n.	Exits between the lateral nasal cartilage and the inferior border of the nasal bone Supplies the skin of the ala and apex of the nose around the nares
Internal nasal		Supplies the skin on the internal surface of the vestibule
Infratrochlear	Nasociliary n.	1 of the terminal branches of the nasociliary branch of the ophthalmic division of the trigeminal n. Passes anteriorly on the superior border of the medial rectus m. Passes inferior to the trochlea toward the medial angle of the eye Supplies the skin of the eyelids and bridge of the nose, the conjunctiva, and all of the lacrimal structures

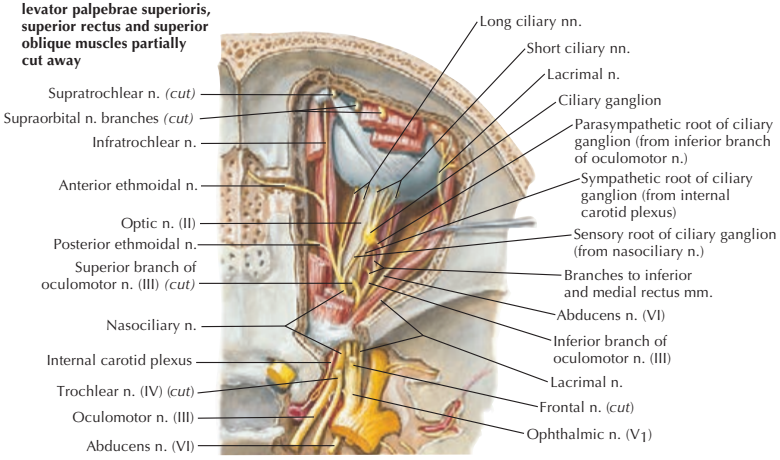
WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

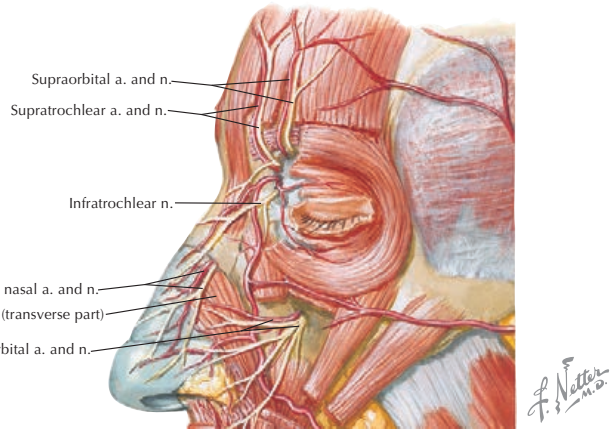
CRANIAL NERVE V: TRIGEMINAL NERVE *CONTINUED*

Superior view



Superior view: levator palpebrae superioris, superior rectus and superior oblique muscles partially cut away





WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

CRANIAL NERVE V: TRIGEMINAL NERVE *CONTINUED*

MAXILLARY DIVISION OF THE TRIGEMINAL NERVE	
The maxillary division (V_2), being a branch of the trigeminal n., is sensory in function Branches from the trigeminal n. and travels along the lateral wall of the cavernous sinus Passes from the middle cranial fossa into the pterygopalatine fossa via the foramen rotundum Within the pterygopalatine fossa, it gives rise to 4 branches 1 of those nerves, the infraorbital n., is considered the continuation of the maxillary division of the trigeminal n.	
BRANCHES WITHIN THE MIDDLE CRANIAL FOSSA	
Nerve	**Course**
Meningeal	A small meningeal branch is given off within the middle cranial fossa The nerve supplies the meninges
BRANCHES WITHIN THE PTERYGOPALATINE FOSSA	
Nerve	**Course**
Posterior superior alveolar	Passes through the pterygomaxillary fissure to enter the infratemporal fossa In the infratemporal fossa, it passes on the posterior surface of the maxilla along the region of the maxillary tuberosity Gives rise to a gingival branch that innervates the buccal gingiva alongside the maxillary molars Enters the posterior surface of the maxilla and supplies the maxillary sinus and the maxillary molars, with the possible exception of the mesiobuccal root of the 1st maxillary molar, and the gingiva and mucosa alongside the same teeth
Zygomatic	Passes through the inferior orbital fissure to enter the orbit Passes on the lateral wall of the orbit and branches into the zygomaticotemporal and zygomaticofacial branches A communicating branch from it joins the lacrimal n. from the ophthalmic division of the trigeminal n. to carry autonomics to the lacrimal gland
Ganglionic branches	Usually 1 or 2 ganglionic branches that connect the maxillary division of the trigeminal n. to the pterygopalatine ganglion Contain sensory fibers that pass through the pterygopalatine ganglion (without synapsing) to be distributed with the nerves that arise from the pterygopalatine ganglion Also contain postganglionic autonomic fibers to the lacrimal gland that pass through the pterygopalatine ganglion (parasympathetic fibers form a synapse here between the preganglionic fibers from the vidian n. and the postganglionic fibers)
Infraorbital	Considered the continuation of the maxillary division of the trigeminal n. Passes through the inferior orbital fissure to enter the orbit Passes anteriorly through the infraorbital groove and infraorbital canal and exits onto the face via the infraorbital foramen
BRANCHES ASSOCIATED WITH THE PTERYGOPALATINE GANGLION	
Nerve	**Course**
Pharyngeal	Passes through the pharyngeal canal to enter and supply the nasopharynx
Posterior superior nasal	A branch of the maxillary division of the trigeminal n. Arises from the pterygopalatine ganglion in the pterygopalatine fossa Passes through the sphenopalatine foramen to enter the nasal cavity and branches into the: • Posterior medial superior nasal n. • Posterior lateral superior nasal n.
Posterior lateral superior nasal	A branch of the posterior superior nasal n. that supplies the posterosuperior portion of the lateral wall of the nasal cavity in the region of the superior and middle concha
Posterior medial superior nasal	Arises from the posterior superior nasal n. from the maxillary division of the trigeminal n. This nerve supplies the posterior portion of the nasal septum
Greater palatine	Passes through the palatine canal to enter the hard palate via the greater palatine foramen Supplies the palatal gingiva and mucosa from the area in the premolar region to the posterior border of the hard palate to the midline

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

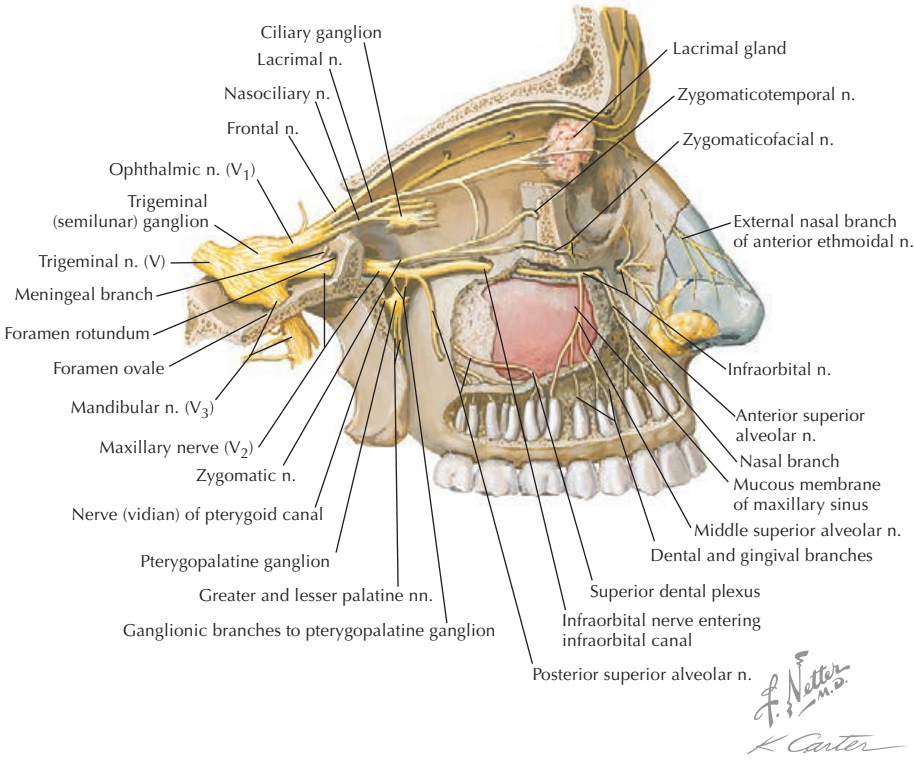
CRANIAL NERVE V: TRIGEMINAL NERVE *CONTINUED*

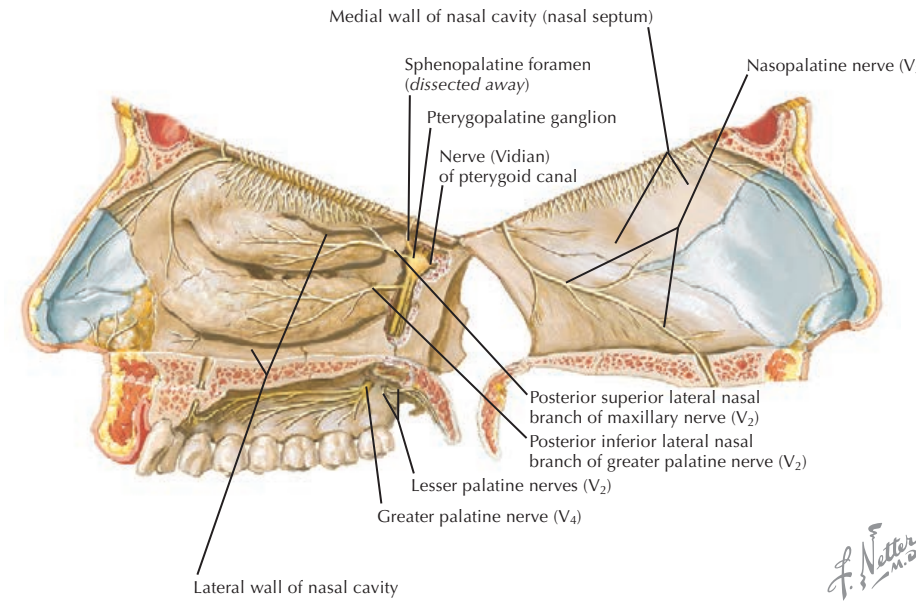
BRANCHES ASSOCIATED WITH THE PTERYGOPALATINE GANGLION *CONTINUED*	
Nerve	**Course**
Posterior inferior nasal branch of the greater palatine	While descending in the palatine canal, the greater palatine n. gives rise to a posterior inferior nasal branch Supplies the posterior part of the lateral wall of the nasal cavity in the region of the middle meatus
Lesser palatine	Passes through the palatine canal to enter and supply the soft palate via the lesser palatine foramen
Nasopalatine	Branches from the pterygopalatine ganglion in the pterygopalatine fossa Passes through the sphenopalatine foramen to enter the nasal cavity Passes along the superior portion of the nasal cavity to the nasal septum, where it travels anteroinferiorly to the incisive canal, supplying the septum Passes through the incisive canal to supply the gingiva and mucosa of the hard palate from central incisor to canine
BRANCHES WITHIN THE INFRAORBITAL CANAL	
Nerve	**Course**
Middle superior alveolar	A variable nerve When present, it branches off the infraorbital n. as it travels in the infraorbital canal As the nerve descends to form the superior dental plexus, it innervates part of the maxillary sinus; the premolars and possibly the mesiobuccal root of the 1st molar; and the gingiva and mucosa alongside the same teeth
Anterior superior alveolar	While in the infraorbital canal, it gives rise to the anterior superior alveolar n., which has a small branch that supplies the nasal cavity in the region of the inferior meatus and inferior corresponding portion of the nasal septum, the maxillary sinus As the nerve descends to form the superior dental plexus, it innervates part of the maxillary sinus; maxillary central incisor, lateral incisor, and canine teeth; and the gingiva and mucosa alongside the same teeth

BRANCHES AFTER INFRAORBITAL NERVE EMERGES FROM THE INFRAORBITAL FORAMEN	
Nerve	**Course**
Superior labial branch of the infraorbital	Supplies the skin of the upper lip
Nasal branch of the infraorbital	Supplies the ala of the nose
Inferior palpebral branch of the infraorbital	Supplies the skin of the lower eyelid

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

CRANIAL NERVE V: TRIGEMINAL NERVE *CONTINUED*





WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

CRANIAL NERVE V: TRIGEMINAL NERVE *CONTINUED*

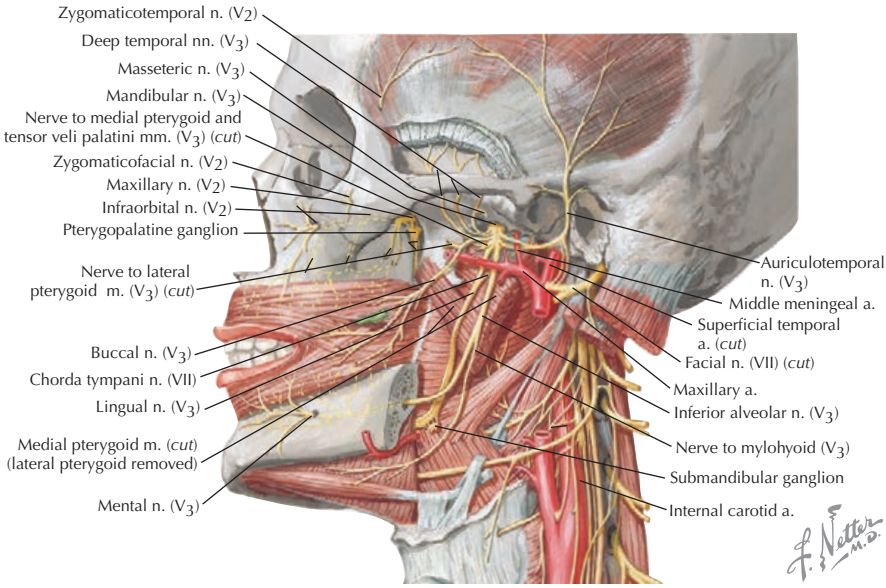
MANDIBULAR DIVISION OF THE TRIGEMINAL NERVE				
			Divisions	
Description	Source	Course	Anterior	Posterior
Mandibular division (V_3) is the largest of the 3 divisions of the trigeminal n. Has motor *and* sensory functions	Created by a large sensory root and a small motor root that unite just after passing through the foramen ovale to enter the infratemporal fossa	Immediately gives rise to a meningeal branch and then divides into anterior and posterior divisions	Smaller; mainly motor, with 1 sensory branch (buccal): • Masseteric • Anterior and posterior deep temporal • Medial pterygoid • Lateral pterygoid • Buccal	Larger; mainly sensory, with 1 motor branch (nerve to the mylohyoid): • Auriculotemporal • Lingual • Inferior alveolar • Mylohyoid nerve

ANTERIOR DIVISION OF THE MANDIBULAR NERVE	
Branch	Course
Masseteric	Passes laterally superior to the lateral pterygoid m. Lies anterior to the temporomandibular joint and posterior to the tendon of the temporalis m. Crosses the mandibular notch with the masseteric a. to innervate the masseter m. Also provides a small branch to the temporomandibular joint
Anterior and posterior deep temporal	Pass superior to the lateral pterygoid m. between the skull and the temporalis m. while passing deep to the muscle to innervate it
Medial pterygoid	Enters the deep surface of the muscle
Lateral pterygoid	Passes into the deep surface of the muscle Often arises from the buccal n.
Buccal	Passes anteriorly between the 2 heads of the lateral pterygoid m. Descends inferiorly along the lower part of the temporalis m. to appear from deep to the anterior border of the masseter m. Supplies the skin over the buccinator m. before passing through it to supply the mucous membrane lining its inner surface and the gingiva along the mandibular molars

POSTERIOR DIVISION OF THE MANDIBULAR NERVE	
Branch	Course
Auriculotemporal	Normally arises by 2 roots, between which the middle meningeal a. passes Runs posteriorly just inferior to the lateral pterygoid and continues to the medial side of the neck of the mandible Then it turns superiorly with the superficial temporal vessels between the auricle and condyle of the mandible deep to the parotid gland On exiting the parotid gland, it ascends over the zygomatic arch and divides into superficial temporal branches
Lingual	Lies inferior to the lateral pterygoid and medial and anterior to the inferior alveolar n. The chorda tympani n. also joins the posterior part The lingual n. passes between the medial pterygoid and the ramus of the mandible to pass obliquely to enter the oral cavity bounded by the superior pharyngeal constrictor m., medial pterygoid, and the mandible Supplies the mucous membrane of the anterior 2/3 of the tongue and gingiva on the lingual side of the mandibular teeth
Inferior alveolar	The largest branch of the mandibular division Descends following the inferior alveolar a. inferior to the lateral pterygoid and finally between the sphenomandibular lig. and the ramus of the mandible until it enters the mandibular foramen Innervates all mandibular teeth and the gingiva from the premolars anteriorly to the midline via the mental branch
Mylohyoid	Branches from the inferior alveolar n. immediately before it enters the mandibular foramen Descends in a groove on the deep side of the ramus of the mandible until it reaches the superficial surface of the mylohyoid Supplies the mylohyoid and the anterior belly of the digastric m.

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

CRANIAL NERVE V: TRIGEMINAL NERVE *CONTINUED*



TRIGEMINAL NERVE PATHWAYS		
Responsible for carrying to conscious level: • Pain and temperature • Light touch • Discriminative touch • Pressure		
Utilizes a 3-neuron sensory system: • Primary neuron • Secondary neuron • Tertiary neuron		
Utilizes the contralateral ventral trigeminothalamic tract		
Some discriminative touch and pressure fibers utilize the ipsilateral dorsal trigeminothalamic tract, but this contribution is very minor		
Proprioception fibers are unique in that the cell body for the sensory nerve fiber is located in the central nervous system (mesencephalic nucleus)		
Types of Fibers	**Trigeminal Sensory Nucleus**	**Ascending Pathway**
Pain and temperature Light touch	Spinal (descending) nucleus	Ventral trigeminothalamic tract
Discriminative touch Pressure	Principal (main) sensory nucleus	Ventral trigeminothalamic tract (Dorsal trigeminothalamic tract subserves discriminative touch and pressure)
Proprioception	Mesencephalic nucleus	Projects to motor nucleus of V to control the jaw jerk reflex and force of bite

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

CRANIAL NERVE V: TRIGEMINAL NERVE *CONTINUED*

MAJOR ASCENDING PATHWAYS OF THE TRIGEMINAL NERVE

Types of Neurons	Path of Pain and Temperature	Path of Light Touch	Path of Discriminative Touch and Pressure
Primary neuron	Fibers (Aδ or C) travel from the receptor from the ophthalmic, maxillary, and mandibular divisions of the trigeminal n. The nerve cell body of the primary neuron is located in the trigeminal ganglion Fibers enter the pons Fibers descend in the spinal (descending) tract located from the pons to the upper cervical spinal cord Fibers synapse on the nerve cell body of the secondary neuron	Fibers (Aβ) travel from the receptor from the ophthalmic, maxillary, and mandibular divisions of the trigeminal n. The nerve cell body of the primary neuron is located in the trigeminal ganglion Fibers enter the pons Fibers may have either of 2 courses: • May descend in the spinal (descending) tract located from the pons to the upper cervical spinal cord • May ascend to synapse on the nerve cell body of the secondary neuron Fibers synapse on the nerve cell body of the secondary neuron	Fibers (Aβ) travel from the receptor from the ophthalmic, maxillary, and mandibular divisions of the trigeminal n. The nerve cell body of the primary neuron is located in the trigeminal ganglion Fibers enter the pons Fibers ascend to synapse on the nerve cell body of the secondary neuron
Secondary neuron	Secondary nerve cell bodies begin in the spinal (descending) nucleus located from the pons to the upper cervical spinal cord (pars caudalis) Fibers decussate and ascend in the ventral trigeminothalamic tract (lemniscus) to the thalamus Fibers synapse on the nerve cell body of the tertiary neuron	Secondary nerve cell bodies may reach the thalamus along either of 2 courses: • May begin in the spinal (descending) nucleus (pars interpolaris and pars oralis) and decussate and ascend in the ventral trigeminothalamic tract (lemniscus) to the thalamus • May begin in the principal (main) sensory nucleus and decussate and ascend in the ventral trigeminothalamic tract (lemniscus) to the thalamus (NOTE: some fibers ascend in the ipsilateral dorsal trigeminothalamic tract) Fibers synapse on the nerve cell body of the tertiary neuron	Secondary nerve cell bodies begin in the principal (main) sensory nucleus located in the pons Fibers decussate and ascend in the ventral trigeminothalamic tract (lemniscus) to the thalamus (NOTE: some fibers ascend in the ipsilateral dorsal trigeminothalamic tract) Fibers synapse on the nerve cell body of the tertiary neuron
Tertiary neuron	Tertiary nerve cell bodies begin in the ventral posteromedial nucleus of the thalamus (VPM) Fibers ascend through the posterior limb of the internal capsule to terminate in the postcentral gyrus	Tertiary nerve cell bodies begin in the VPM Fibers ascend through the posterior limb of the internal capsule to terminate in the postcentral gyrus	Tertiary nerve cell bodies begin in the VPM Fibers ascend through the posterior limb of the internal capsule to terminate in the postcentral gyrus

PROPRIOCEPTION OF THE TRIGEMINAL NERVE

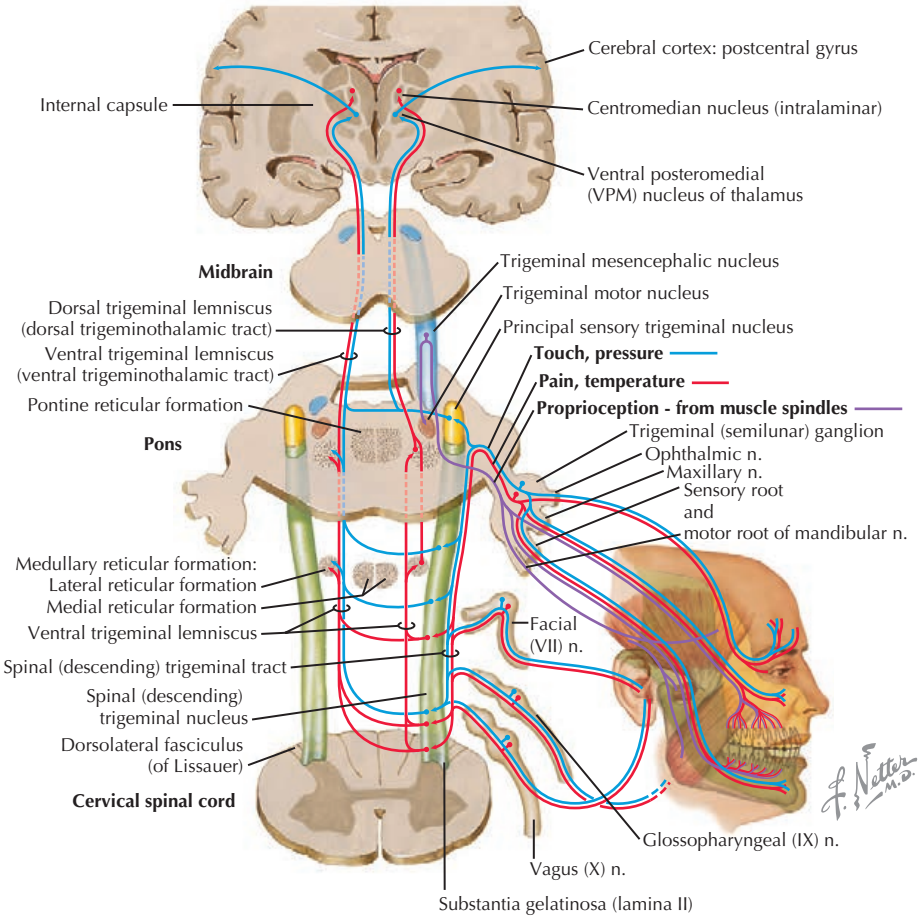
Sensory fibers carry input from the neuromuscular spindles along the mandibular division of the trigeminal n.

The nerve cell bodies of these sensory neurons are located in the mesencephalic nucleus of the midbrain

These fibers project to the motor nucleus of the trigeminal n. and innervate the muscles of mastication, to control the jaw jerk reflex and force of bite

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

CRANIAL NERVE V: TRIGEMINAL NERVE *CONTINUED*



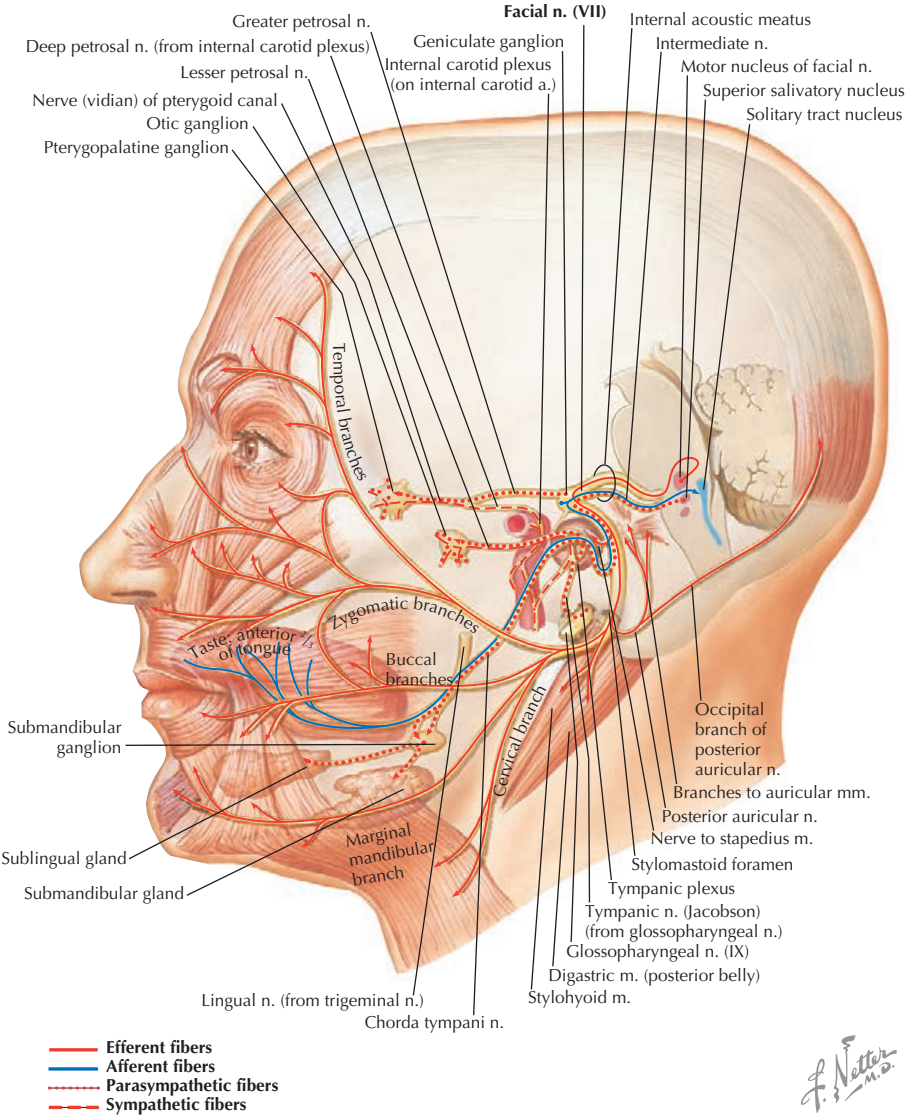
WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

CRANIAL NERVE VII: FACIAL NERVE

Functional Column	Origin of Fibers	Termination of Fibers	Summary	Comment
GSA	Afferent fibers begin in the various receptors (nociceptors, mechanoceptors, proprioceptors) of the skin of the external ear and tympanic membrane	Pain and temperature fibers terminate in the spinal nucleus of V	GSA fibers are carried in the nervus intermedius portion of the facial n. GSA fibers are responsible for providing sensory innervation to a portion of the external ear and tympanic membrane GSA fibers of the facial n. utilize the trigeminothalamic lemniscus to carry their sensory impulses to consciousness	Facial nerve provides a very small area of GSA distribution Nerve cell bodies for the primary fibers are located in the geniculate ganglion
SVA	Afferent fibers begin in the taste receptors of the anterior 2/3 of the tongue	Primary afferent fibers travel in the tractus solitarius and terminate in the nucleus solitarius	SVA fibers are carried in the nervus intermedius portion of the facial n. SVA fibers are responsible for carrying the taste fibers from the taste buds on the anterior 2/3 of the tongue	Nerve cell bodies for the primary fibers are located in the geniculate ganglion
GVA	Afferent fibers begin in the various receptors (such as nociceptors) of the mucous membranes of the nasopharynx	Primary afferent fibers travel in the tractus solitarius and terminate in the nucleus solitarius	GVA fibers are carried in the nervus intermedius portion of the facial n. GVA fibers utilize the same pathway as for the SVA fibers	Nerve cell bodies for the primary fibers are located in the geniculate ganglion
GVE	Preganglionic parasympathetic fibers begin in the superior salivatory nucleus	Postganglionic parasympathetic fibers innervate the lacrimal, nasal, submandibular, and sublingual glands	GVE fibers are carried in the nervus intermedius portion of the facial n.	GVE fibers utilize 2 ganglia: • Pterygopalatine • Submandibular
SVE	Begins in the motor nucleus of the facial n.	Innervates the muscles of facial expression, stylohyoid, posterior digastric, and stapedius mm.	SVE fibers are carried in the motor root of the facial n. SVE fibers are responsible for innervating the muscles of the 2nd pharyngeal arch	In Bell's palsy, the easiest symptom to observe is that the muscles innervated by the SVE fibers are paralyzed

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

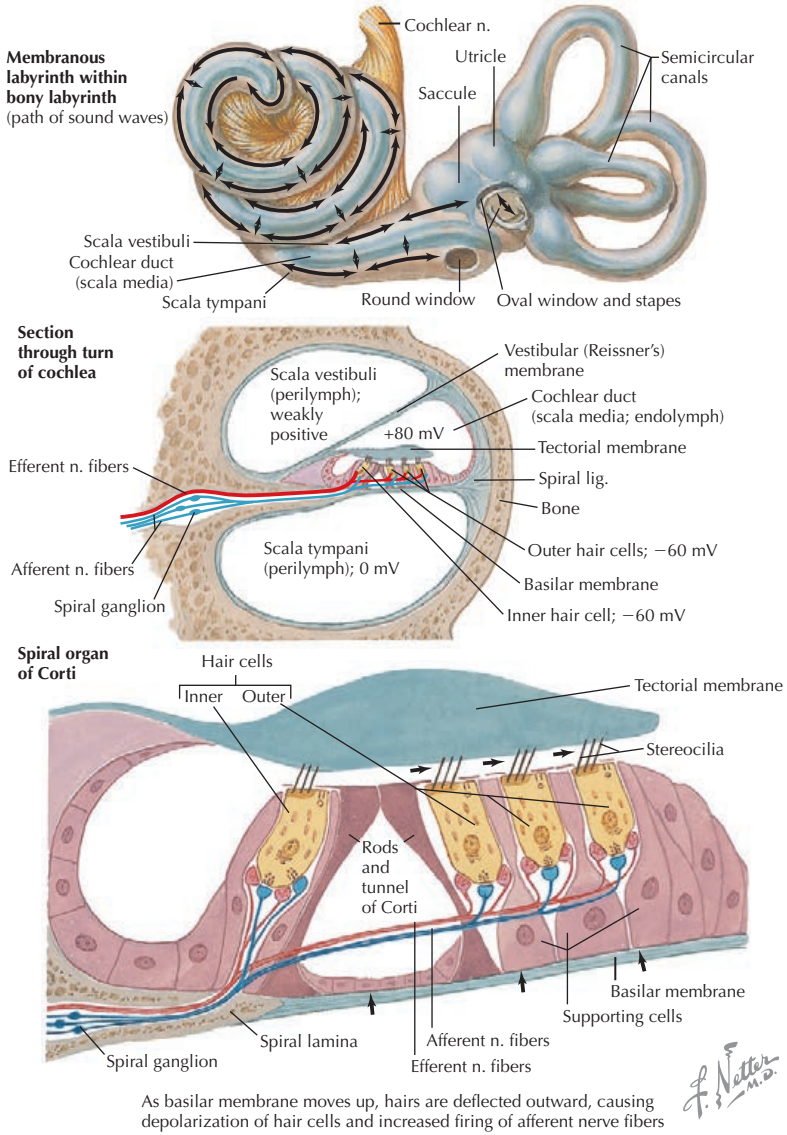
CRANIAL NERVE VII: FACIAL NERVE *CONTINUED*



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

CRANIAL NERVE VIII: VESTIBULOCOCHLEAR NERVE

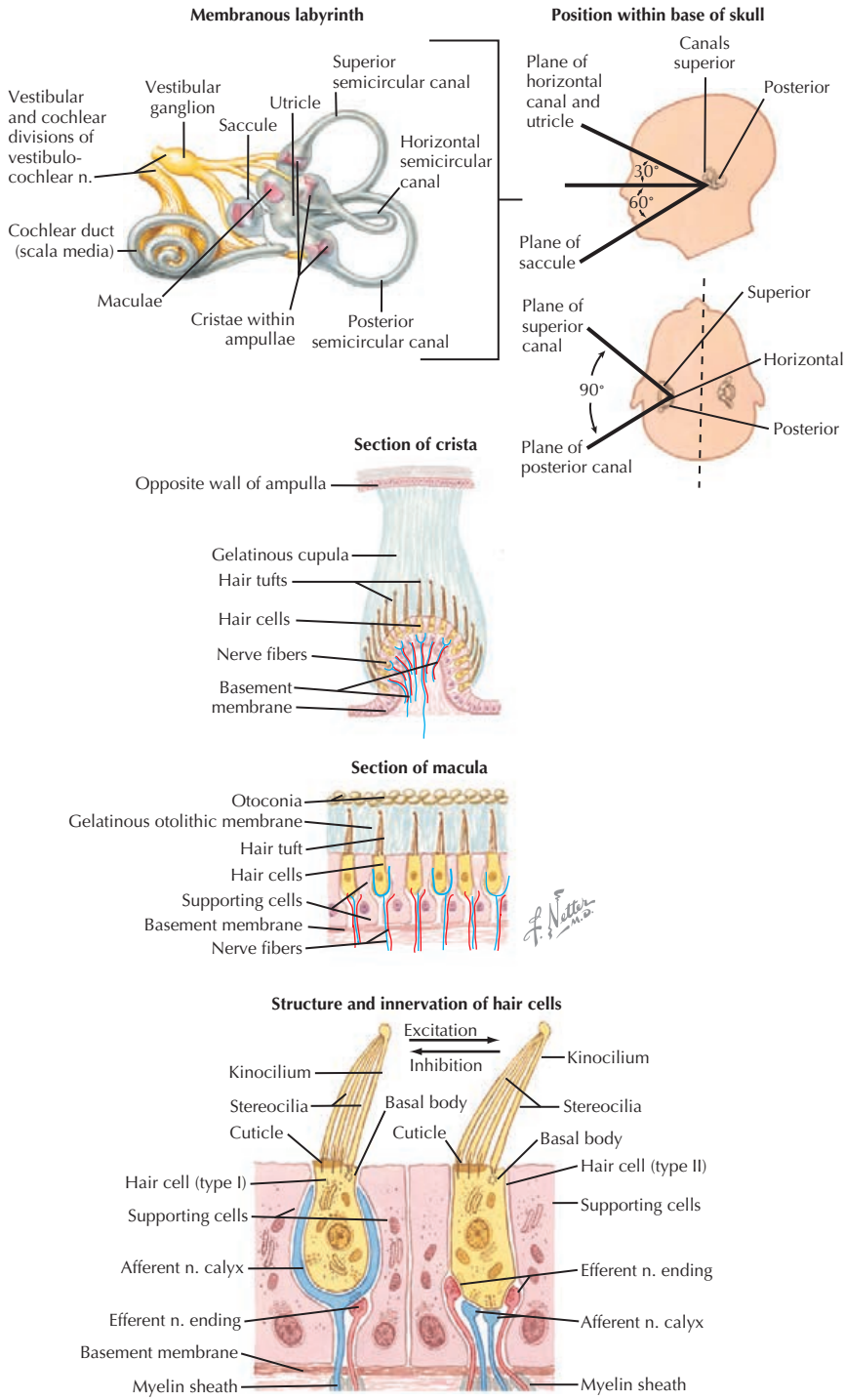
Functional Column	Origin of Fibers	Termination of Fibers	Summary	Comment
SSA	Organ of Corti Cristae of semicircular canals Maculae of utricle and saccule	Cochlear and vestibular nuclei	SSA fibers travel from the various vestibulocochlear receptors to their respective nuclei in the brainstem	Vestibulocochlear and facial nn. both enter the internal acoustic meatus and can be affected by tumors in the region



As basilar membrane moves up, hairs are deflected outward, causing depolarization of hair cells and increased firing of afferent nerve fibers

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

CRANIAL NERVE VIII: VESTIBULOCOCHLEAR NERVE *CONTINUED*



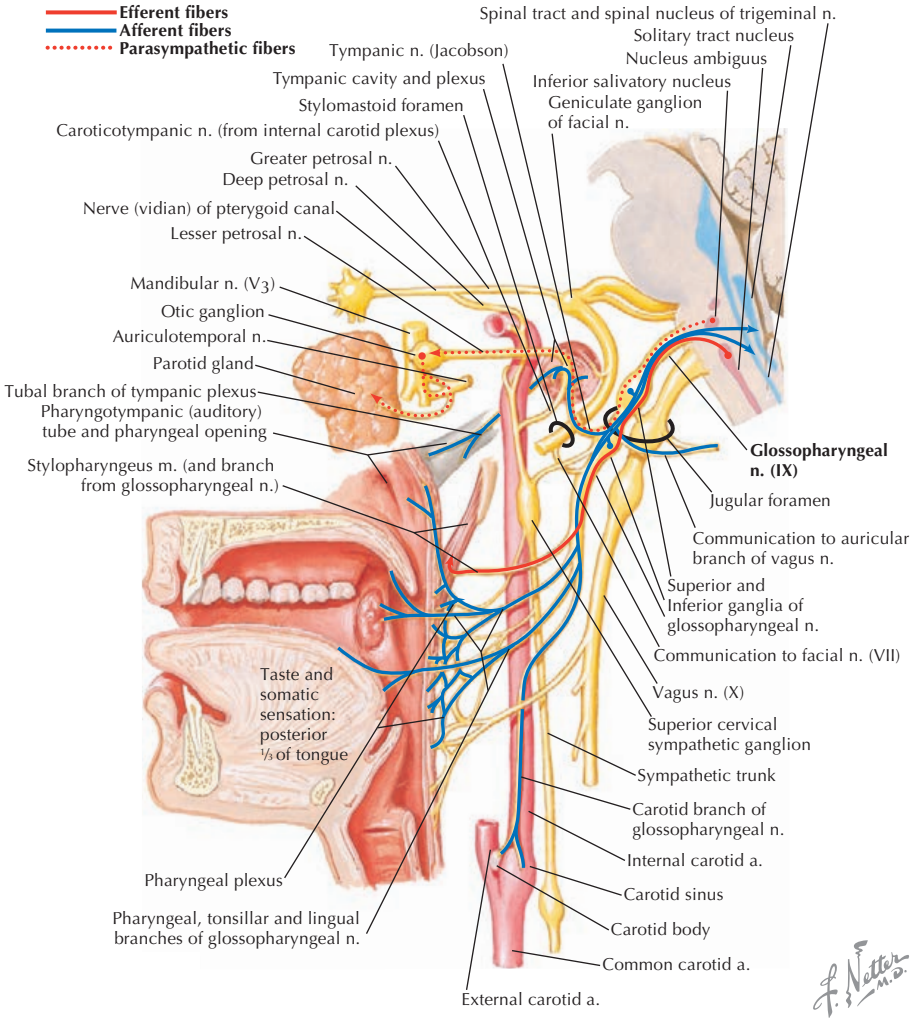
WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

CRANIAL NERVE IX: GLOSSOPHARYNGEAL NERVE

Functional Column	Origin of Fibers	Termination of Fibers	Summary	Comment
GSA	Afferent fibers begin in the various receptors of the skin of the external ear and the posterior 1/3 of the tongue	Pain and temperature fibers terminate in the spinal nucleus of V	GSA fibers are responsible for providing sensory innervation to a small portion of the external ear and posterior 1/3 of the tongue GSA fibers of the glossopharyngeal n. utilize the trigeminothalamic lemniscus to carry their sensory impulses to consciousness	Nerve cell bodies for the primary fibers are located in the superior ganglion of IX
SVA	Afferent fibers begin in the taste receptors of the posterior 1/3 of the tongue	Primary afferent fibers travel in the tractus solitarius and terminate in the nucleus solitarius	SVA fibers are responsible for carrying the taste fibers from the circumvallate papillae and the taste buds on the posterior 1/3 of the tongue	Nerve cell bodies for the primary fibers are located in the inferior ganglion of IX
GVA	Afferent fibers begin in the various receptors of the mucous membranes of the nasopharynx. oropharynx, middle ear, carotid body, and carotid sinus	Primary afferent fibers travel in the tractus solitarius and terminate in the nucleus solitarius	GVA fibers utilize the same pathway as for the SVA fibers	The nerve cell bodies for the primary fibers are located in the inferior ganglion of IX GVA fibers are predominantly the sensory portion of the pharyngeal plexus
GVE	Preganglionic parasympathetic fibers begin in the inferior salivatory nucleus	Postganglionic parasympathetic fibers innervate parotid gland	The GVE fibers are responsible for providing the parasympathetic innervation to the parotid gland	GVE fibers utilize 1 ganglion: • Otic
SVE	Begins in the nucleus ambiguus	Innervates the stylopharyngeus m.	SVE fibers are responsible for innervating the muscles of the 3rd pharyngeal arch	Stylopharyngeus is the only muscle innervated by the glossopharyngeal n.

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

CRANIAL NERVE IX: GLOSSOPHARYNGEAL NERVE *CONTINUED*



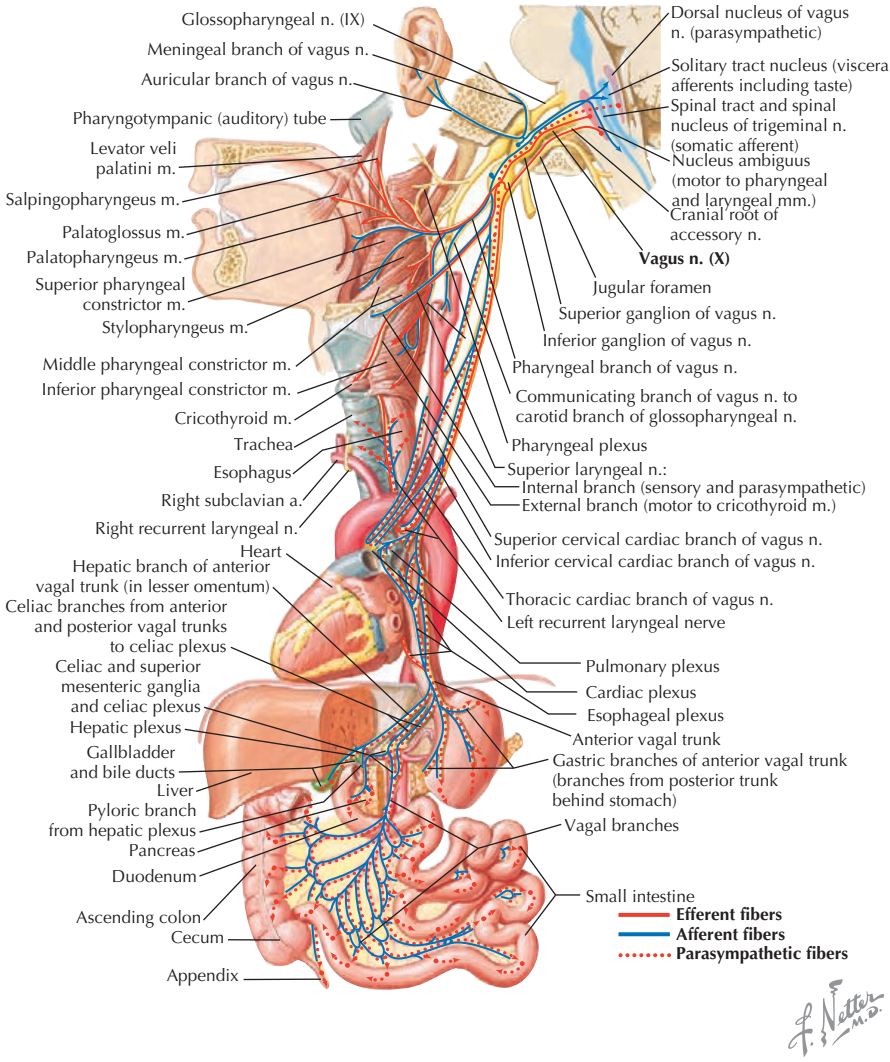
WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

CRANIAL NERVE X: VAGUS NERVE

Functional Column	Origin of Fibers	Termination of Fibers	Summary	Comment
GSA	Afferent fibers begin in the various receptors on a small part of the skin of the external ear	Pain and temperature fibers terminate in the spinal nucleus of V	The GSA fibers are responsible for providing sensory innervation to a very small portion of the external ear The GSA fibers of the glossopharyngeal n. utilize the trigeminothalamic lemniscus to carry their sensory impulses to consciousness	The nerve cell bodies for the primary fibers are located in the superior ganglion of X
SVA	Afferent fibers begin in the taste receptors of the epiglottic region and are scattered on the palate	Primary afferent fibers travel in the tractus solitarius and terminate in the nucleus solitarius	The SVA fibers are responsible for carrying the taste fibers from the epiglottic region and are scattered on the palate	The nerve cell bodies for the primary fibers are located in the inferior ganglion of X
GVA	Afferent fibers begin in the various receptors of the mucous membranes of the laryngopharynx, larynx, thorax, and abdomen	Primary afferent fibers travel in the tractus solitarius and terminate in the nucleus solitarius	The GVA fibers utilize the same pathway as for the SVA fibers	The nerve cell bodies for the primary fibers are located in the inferior ganglion of X
GVE	Preganglionic parasympathetic fibers begin in the dorsal motor nucleus of the vagus n.	Postganglionic parasympathetic fibers innervate thoracic and abdominal viscera	The GVE fibers are responsible for providing the parasympathetic innervation to the thoracic and abdominal viscera	The GVE fibers utilize: • Intramural ganglia
SVE	Begins in the nucleus ambiguus	Innervates the muscles of the pharynx (via the pharyngeal plexus) and the larynx	The SVE fibers are responsible for innervating the muscles of the 4th pharyngeal arch	The SVE fibers are the motor component to the pharyngeal plexus (muscles of pharynx) Lesions of the vagus paralyze the muscles of the larynx on the affected side

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

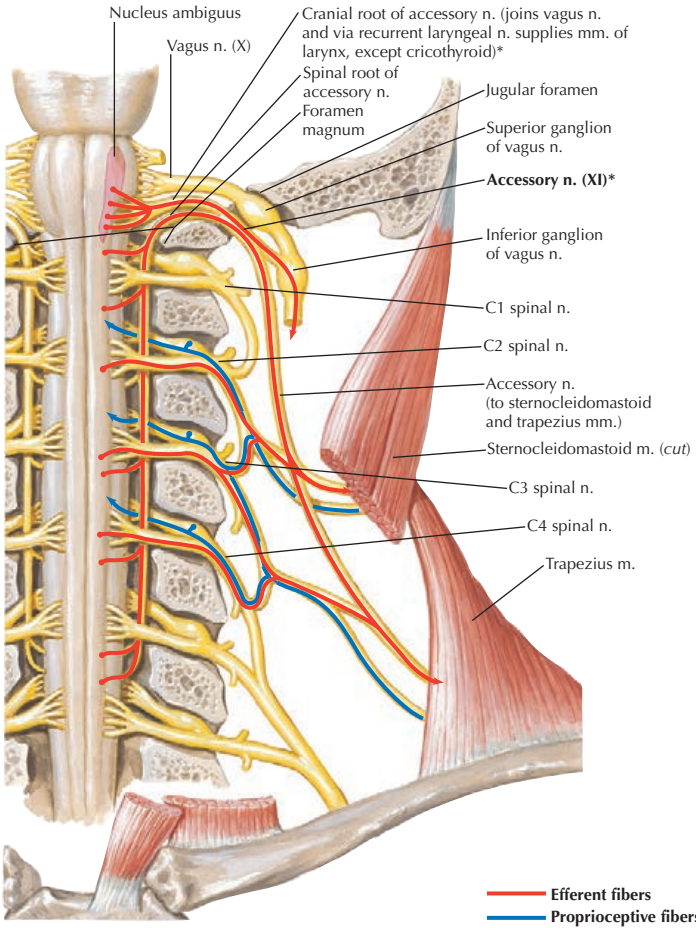
CRANIAL NERVE X: VAGUS NERVE *CONTINUED*



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

CRANIAL NERVE XI: SPINAL ACCESSORY NERVE

Functional Column	Origin of Fibers	Termination of Fibers	Summary	Comment
SVE	Cranial part: Begins in the nucleus ambiguus Spinal part: Begins in the upper cervical levels of the spinal cord	Cranial part: Innervates the muscles of the pharynx (via the pharyngeal plexus) Spinal part: Innervates the trapezius and sternocleidomastoid mm.	These SVE fibers of the cranial part travel with the vagus n. and arise from the same nucleus (nucleus ambiguus) and often are considered to be the same	The cranial and spinal parts separate so the cranial part can join the pharyngeal plexus and the spinal part can innervate the sternocleidomastoid m. and pass through the posterior triangle until reaching the trapezius m.

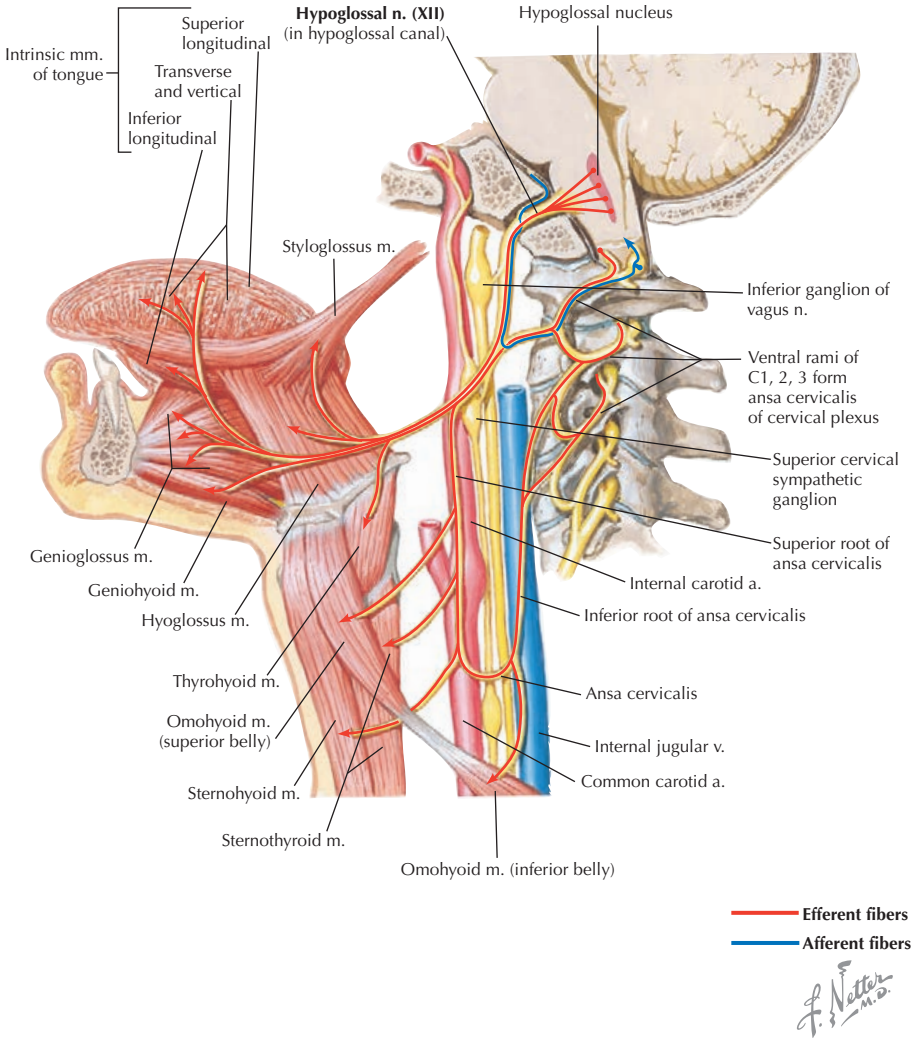


*Recent evidence suggests that the accessory nerve lacks a cranial root and has no connection to the vagus nerve. Verification of this finding awaits further investigation.

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

CRANIAL NERVE XII: HYPOGLOSSAL NERVE

Functional Column	Origin of Fibers	Termination of Fibers	Summary	Comment
GSE	Begins in the hypoglossal nucleus	Innervates the genioglossus, hyoglossus, and styloglossus mm. and the intrinsic mm. of the tongue	The GSE fibers are responsible for innervating the major portion of the tongue musculature	Lesions of the hypoglossal n. cause the tongue to deviate to the side of the lesion on protrusion



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

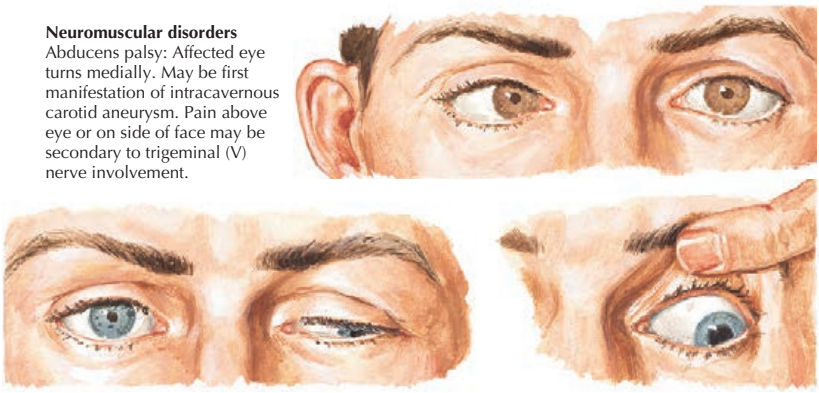
Clinical Correlate

CEREBRAL ANEURYSMS CAUSING OPHTHALMOPLEGIA

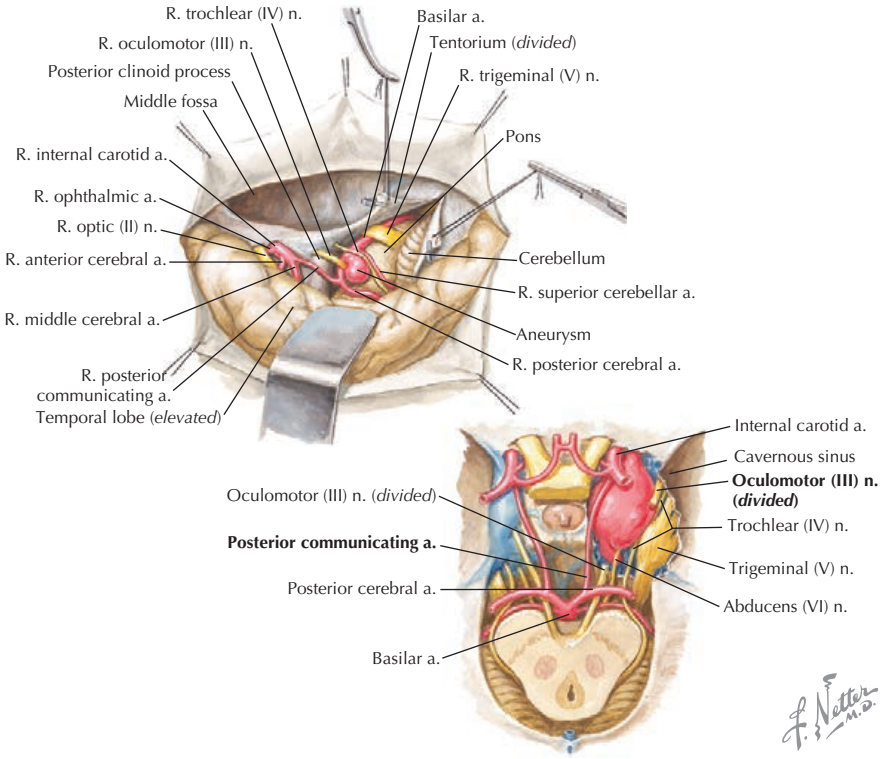
Because of the close proximity of the oculomotor, trochlear, and abducens nerves to blood vessels supplying the brain, aneurysms along these vessels may lead to a paralysis of the muscles that they innervate

Commonly affected vessels include the basilar, posterior cerebral, and posterior communicating arteries

Neuromuscular disorders
Abducens palsy: Affected eye turns medially. May be first manifestation of intracavernous carotid aneurysm. Pain above eye or on side of face may be secondary to trigeminal (V) nerve involvement.



Oculomotor palsy: Ptosis, eye turns laterally and inferiorly, pupil dilated; common finding with cerebral aneurysms, especially carotid-posterior communicating aneurysms



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

3 Clinical Correlate

LESIONS AFFECTING THE VOICE

The vagus nerve provides all of the motor and sensory innervation to the larynx

The superior laryngeal nerve divides into the internal laryngeal (sensory) and external laryngeal (motor to the cricothyroid)

The recurrent laryngeal provides sensory and motor innervation to the remainder of the muscles of the larynx

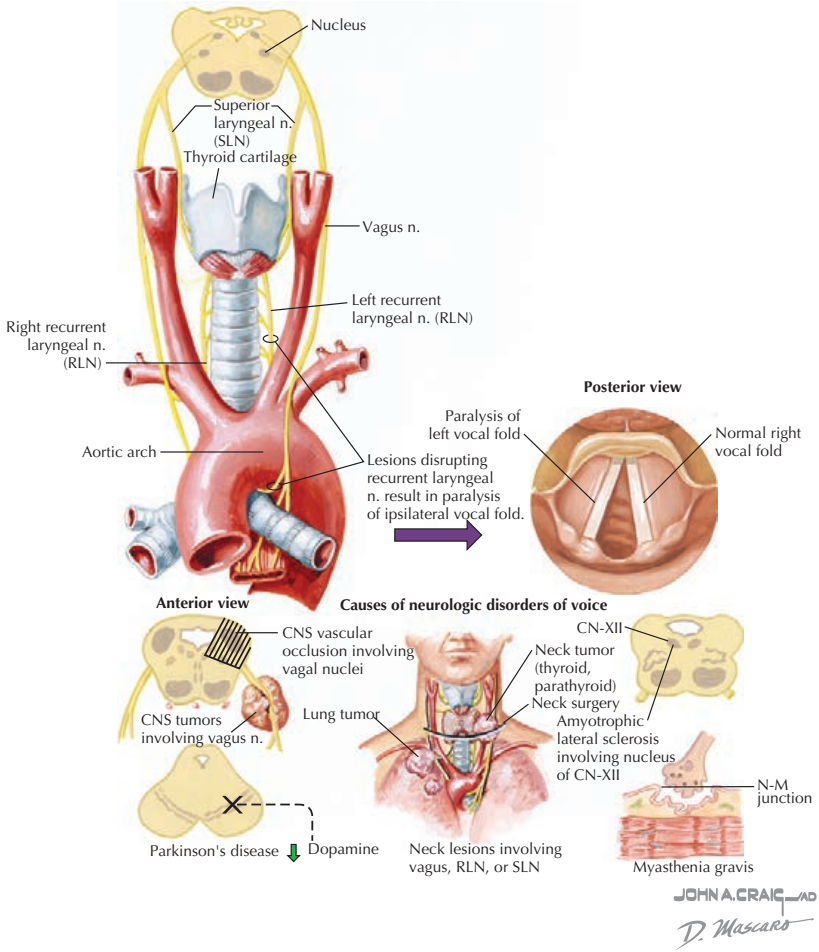
Lesions of the recurrent laryngeal nerve result in a paralysis of the ipsilateral vocal fold

This problem usually manifests clinically as hoarseness with an ineffective cough

Common causes include:

- Thyroid tumors
- Neck tumors
- Cerebrovascular accidents
- Lung tumors
- Surgery
- Thyroiditis

The voice also may be affected in Parkinson's disease and myasthenia gravis



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Clinical Correlate

LESIONS AFFECTING THE SPINAL ACCESSORY NERVE

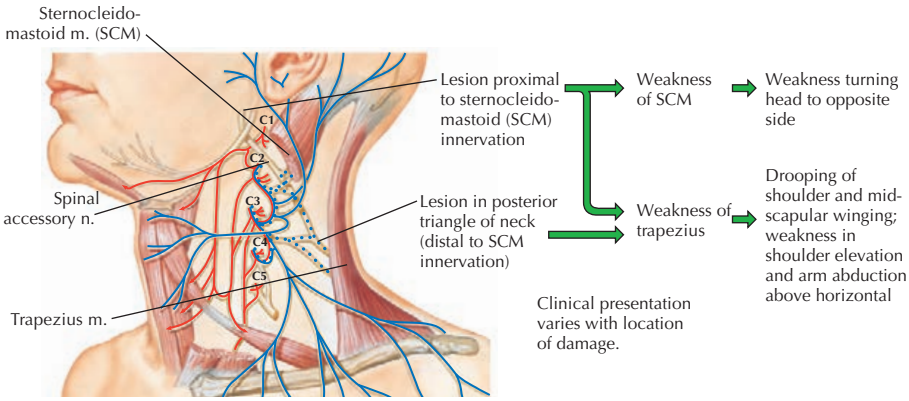
The spinal accessory nerve provides motor innervation to the sternocleidomastoid and trapezius muscles

The spinal accessory nerve courses close to the superficial cervical lymph nodes

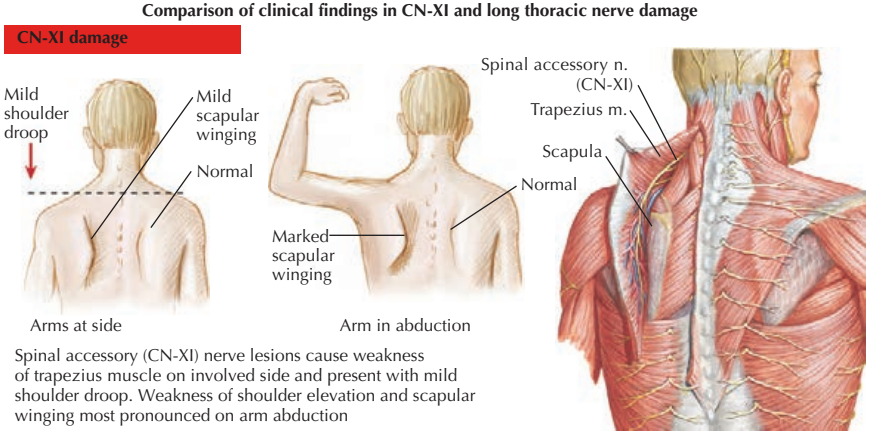
- This course makes it vulnerable to damage during biopsy or radical neck dissection in the posterior triangle
- Damage to the spinal accessory nerve also may result from a carotid endarterectomy

In lesions located in the posterior triangle, the sternocleidomastoid muscle is unaffected, but the trapezius muscle is deinnervated

- The shoulder droops, with mild winging of the scapula
- Abduction of the arm also is affected when patient attempts to raise it above the horizontal plane



Comparison of clinical findings in CN-XI and long thoracic nerve damage



Spinal accessory (CN-XI) nerve lesions cause weakness of trapezius muscle on involved side and present with mild shoulder droop. Weakness of shoulder elevation and scapular winging most pronounced on arm abduction

F. Netter M.D. with Stedman CMI

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

LESIONS AFFECTING THE HYPOGLOSSAL NERVE

The hypoglossal nerve provides motor innervation to a majority of the muscles of the tongue, including:

- Genioglossus
- Hyoglossus
- Styloglossus

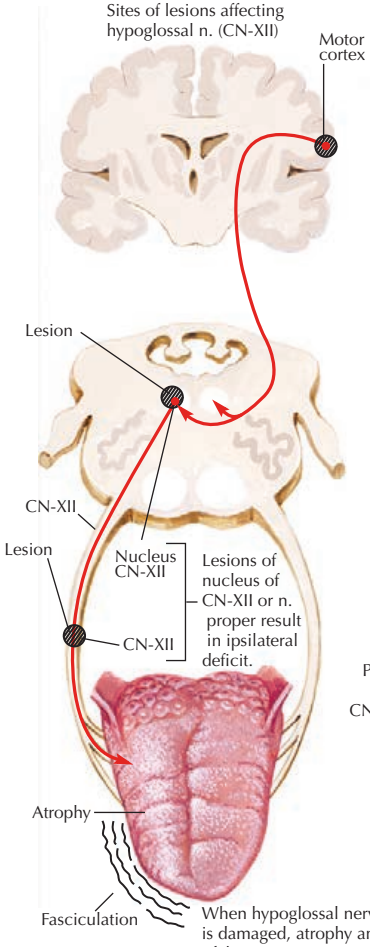
Protrusion of the tongue is accomplished by the bilateral actions of the genioglossus muscles

Paralysis of a genioglossus muscle causes the protruded tongue to deviate to the paralyzed side

Paralysis of the hypoglossal nerve can be caused by:

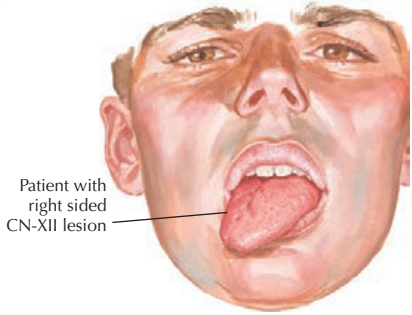
- Tumors
- Neck trauma
- Radiation therapy

A similar paralysis can be caused by a stroke affecting the upper motor neurons on the side contralateral to the paralyzed muscles, owing to the crossing fibers of the upper motor neurons





Subtle weakness of tongue may be tested by asking patient to press tongue against cheek (shown) or against a tongue depressor.



If hypoglossal nerve is affected on one side, the tongue often deviates toward the side of the lesion on protrusion (due to imbalance of genioglossus contraction).

F. Netter M.D.
JOHN A. CRAIG—AD
with
E. Hatton

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

CHAPTER 4
THE NECK

Overview and Topographic Anatomy 108
Triangles of the Neck 111
Anterior Triangle 113
Posterior Triangle 120
Suboccipital Triangle 122
Visceral Contents 123
Root of the Neck 125
Muscles 127
Vascular Supply of the Neck 132
Nerve Supply of the Neck 139
Clinical Correlates 149

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

4 Overview and Topographic Anatomy

GENERAL INFORMATION

The *neck* is the area between the base of the skull and inferior border of the mandible and the superior thoracic aperture

The anterior portion of the neck contains the major visceral structures between the head and the thorax:

- Pharynx
- Larynx
- Trachea
- Esophagus
- Thyroid and parathyroid glands

For descriptive purposes, the neck is divided into 2 triangles:

- Anterior triangle
- Posterior triangle

Skin is the most superficial structure covering the neck

FASCIA

The neck is surrounded by 2 main layers of cervical fascia that can be further subdivided:

- Superficial fascia
- Deep fascia
- Superficial layer of deep cervical fascia (investing)
- Middle layer of deep fascia (includes muscular and visceral parts such as the pretracheal)
- Deep layer of deep fascia (includes prevertebral and alar)
- Carotid sheath

Superficial fascia is deep to the skin and surrounds the platysma muscle

Sensory branches to the neck are located in the superficial fascia

Deep to the superficial fascia is the investing layer of deep cervical fascia

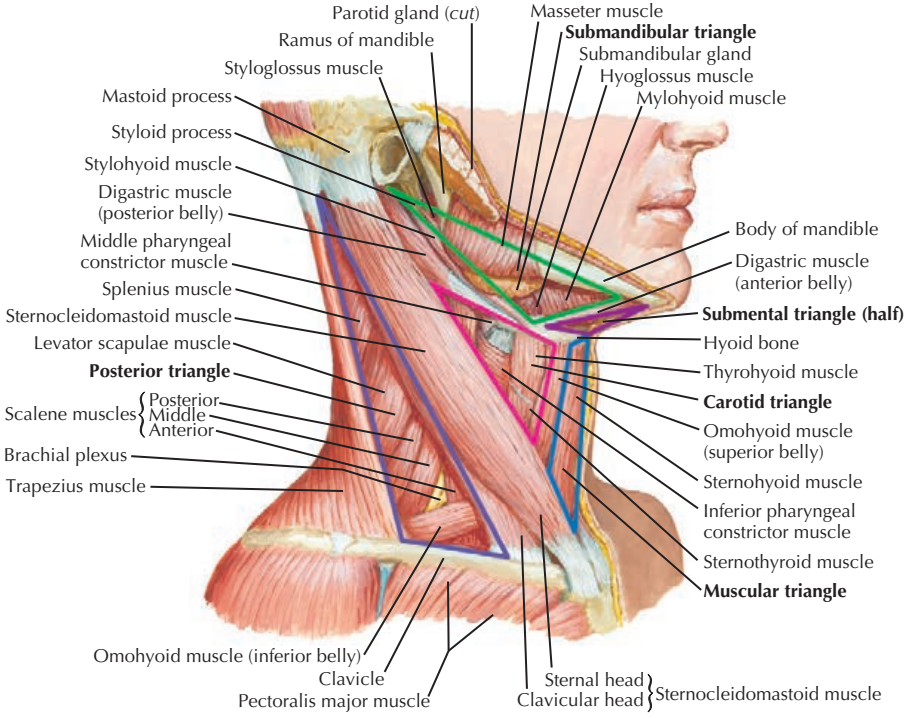
The superficial (or investing) layer of deep cervical fascia attaches posteriorly along the midline and passes anteriorly to surround the entire neck

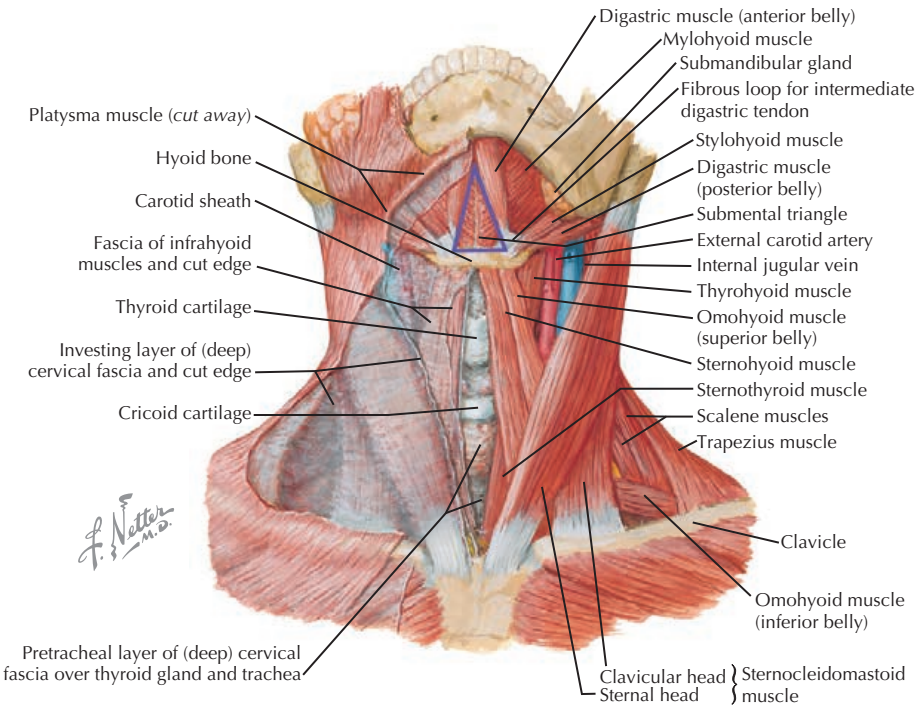
The superficial (or investing) layer of deep cervical fascia surrounds these muscles:

- Trapezius
- Sternocleidomastoid

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

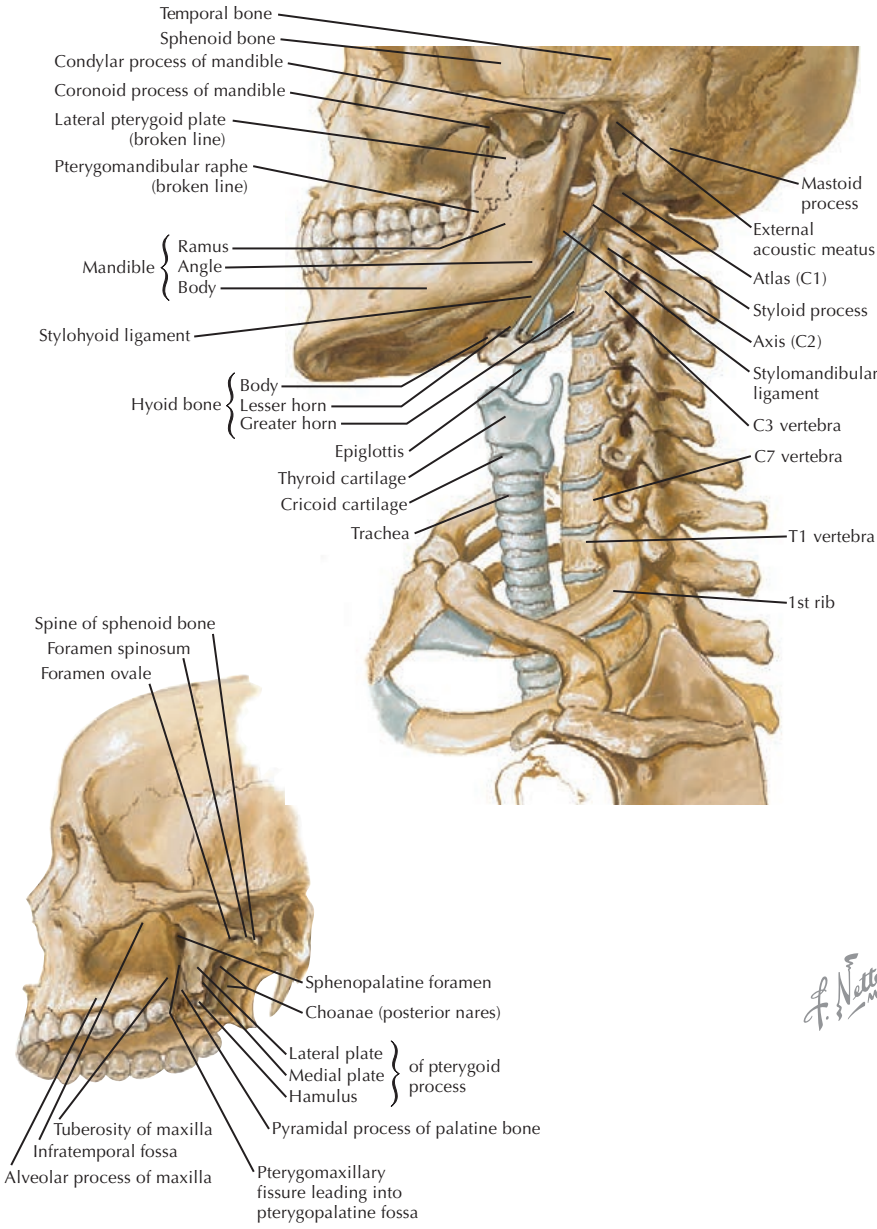
GENERAL INFORMATION *CONTINUED*





WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

GENERAL INFORMATION *CONTINUED*



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Triangles of the Neck

ANTERIOR TRIANGLE

Borders of the anterior triangle:
- Anterior border of the sternocleidomastoid
- Inferior border of the mandible
- Midline of the neck

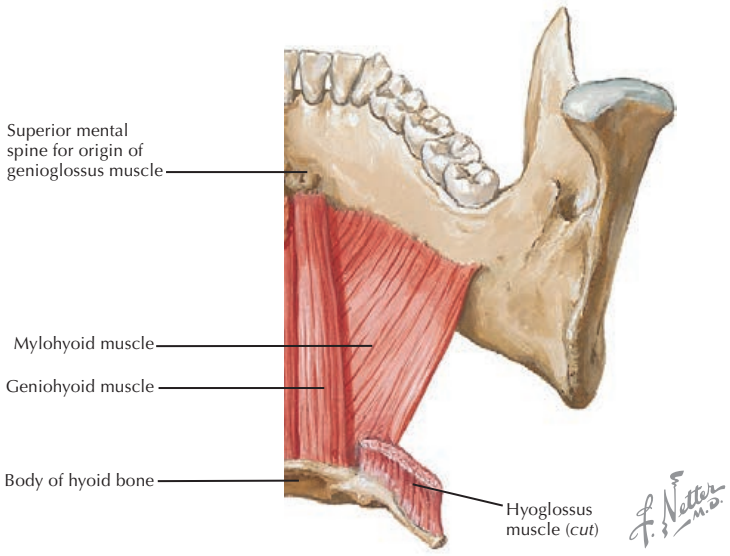
Using the hyoid as a keystone, the omohyoid and digastric muscles subdivide the anterior triangle into:
- Submandibular triangle
- Carotid triangle
- Muscular triangle
- Submental triangle

All of the triangles within the anterior triangle are paired except for the submental triangle, which spans the right and the left sides of the neck

Hyoid bone divides the anterior triangle into 2 areas: suprahyoid and infrahyoid regions

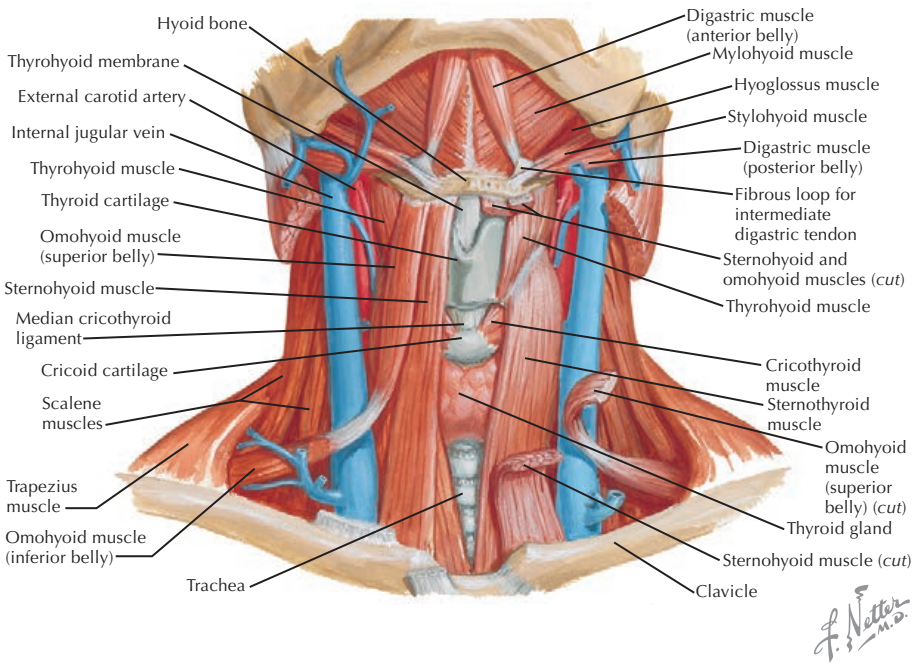
The suprahyoid region contains 4 muscles:
- Mylohyoid
- Digastric
- Stylohyoid
- Geniohyoid

The infrahyoid region contains 4 muscles commonly called strap muscles:
- Omohyoid
- Sternohyoid
- Sternothyroid
- Thyrohyoid



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

ANTERIOR TRIANGLE *CONTINUED*



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Anterior Triangle

SUBMANDIBULAR TRIANGLE

Often called the digastric triangle

Borders of the submandibular triangle:
- Inferior border of the mandible
- Posterior digastric
- Anterior digastric

Floor of the triangle is composed of the:
- Hyoglossus
- Mylohyoid
- Middle constrictor

Roof is made of the:
- Skin
- Superficial fascia with platysma
- Deep cervical fascia

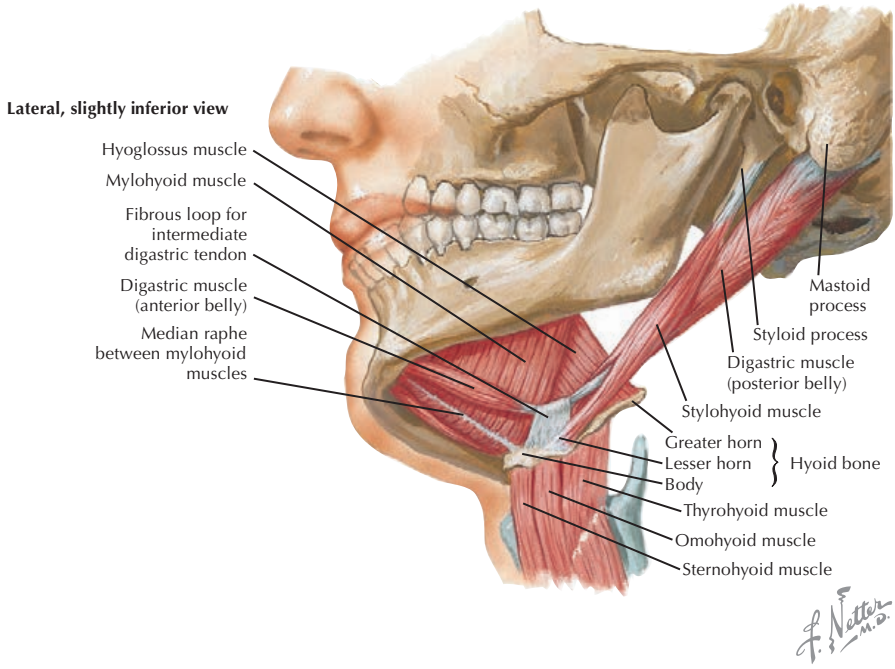
Submandibular triangle is paired
Lesser's triangle is a small subdivision of the submandibular triangle, which aids in identifying the lingual artery (especially for ligation)

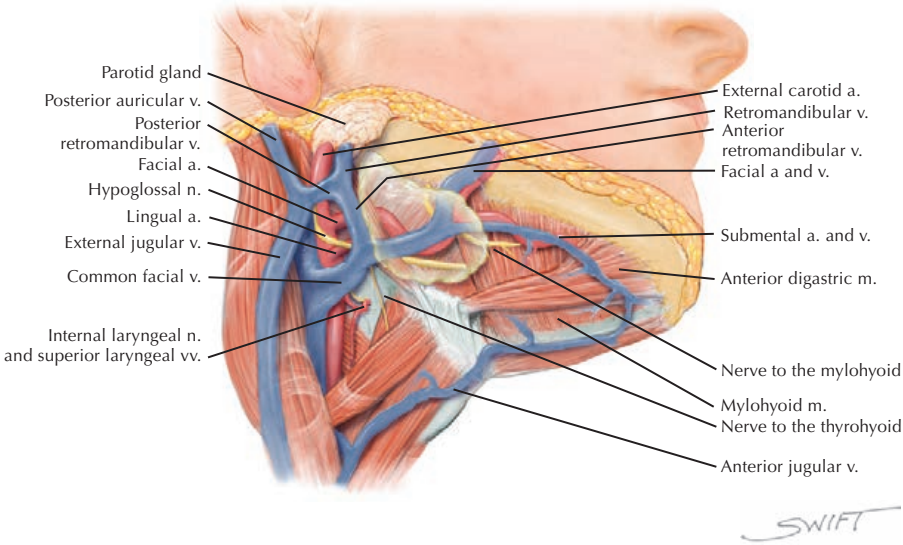
Boundaries of Lesser's triangle:
- Hypoglossal nerve
- Anterior digastric
- Posterior digastric

CONTENTS OF THE SUBMANDIBULAR TRIANGLE			
Arteries	**Veins**	**Nerves**	**Structures**
Facial Submental Lingual (small portion)	Facial Submental Lingual (small portion)	Mylohyoid Hypoglossal	Submandibular gland Submandibular lymph nodes Inferior portion of the parotid gland

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

SUBMANDIBULAR TRIANGLE *CONTINUED*





WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Anterior Triangle

CAROTID TRIANGLE

Named because parts of all three carotid arteries are located within it

Borders of the carotid triangle:
- Anterior border of the sternocleidomastoid
- Posterior digastric
- Superior omohyoid

Floor of the triangle is composed of the:
- Hyoglossus
- Thyrohyoid
- Middle constrictor
- Inferior constrictor

Roof is made of the:
- Skin
- Superficial fascia with platysma
- Deep cervical fascia

Carotid triangle is paired

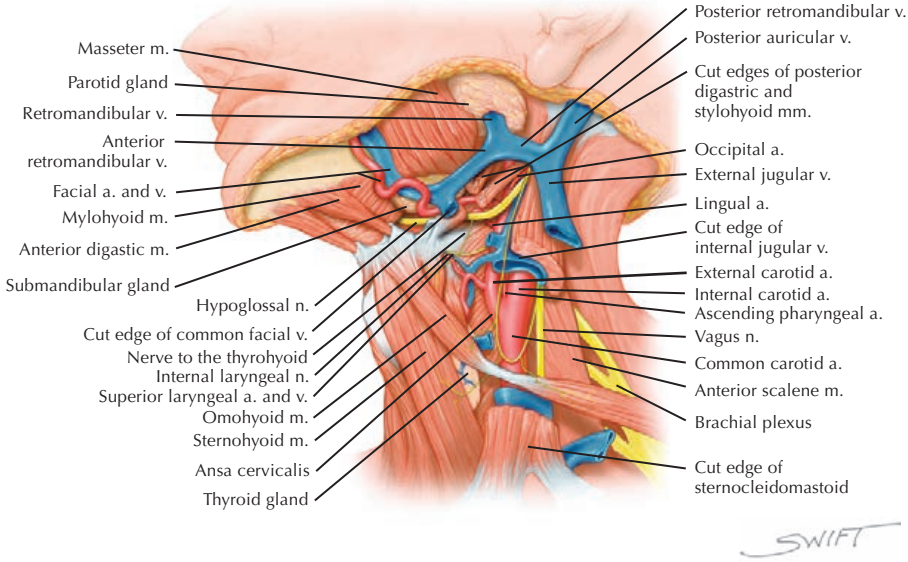
CONTENTS OF THE CAROTID TRIANGLE

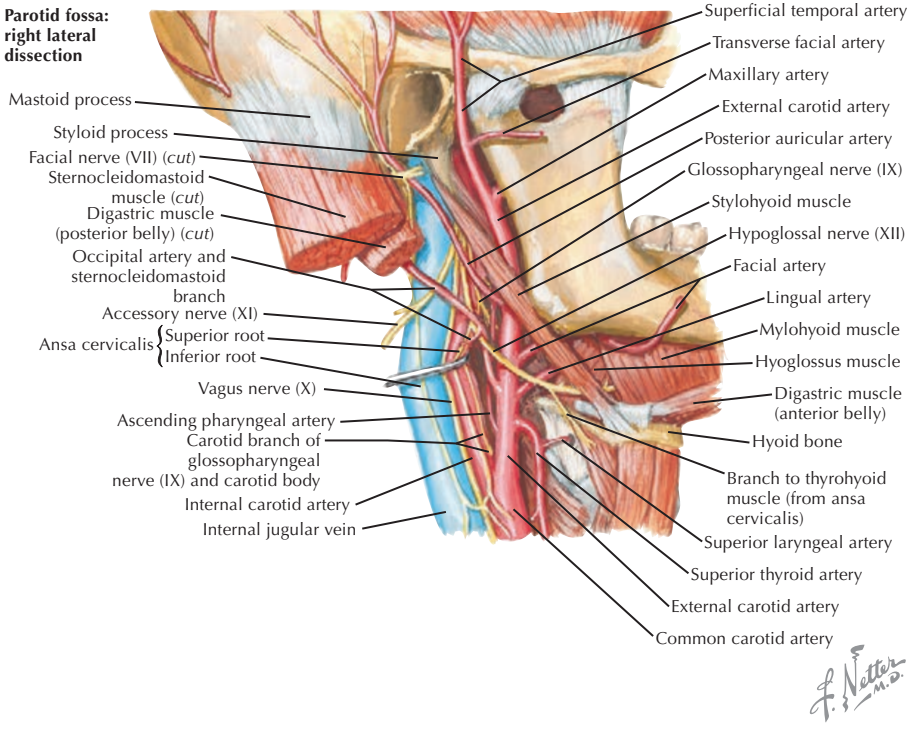
Arteries	Veins	Nerves	Structures

Common carotid (with carotid body)
• Internal carotid (with carotid sinus)
• External carotid
  • Superior thyroid (with superior laryngeal branch)
  • Lingual
  • Facial
  • Ascending pharyngeal
  • Occipital
	Internal jugular
	Common facial
	Lingual
	Superior thyroid
	Middle thyroid
		Vagus
		• External laryngeal
		• Internal laryngeal
		Spinal accessory (small portion)
		Hypoglossal
		Ansa cervicalis (superior limb)
		Sympathetic trunk
			Larynx (small portion)
			Thyroid (small portion)

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

CAROTID TRIANGLE *CONTINUED*





WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Anterior Triangle

MUSCULAR TRIANGLE

Borders of the muscular triangle:
- Anterior border of the sternocleidomastoid
- Superior omohyoid
- Midline

Floor of the triangle is composed of the:
- Sternohyoid
- Sternothyroid

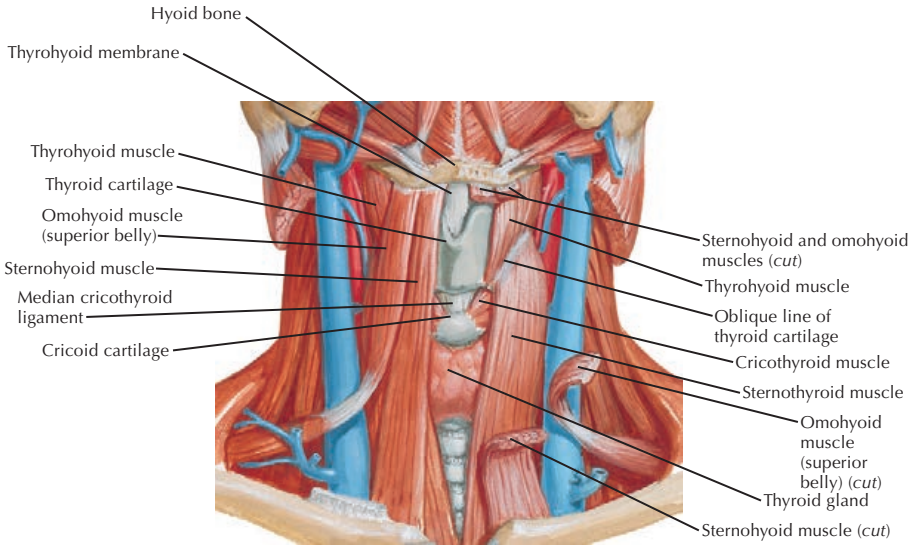
Roof is made of the:
- Skin
- Superficial fascia with platysma
- Deep cervical fascia

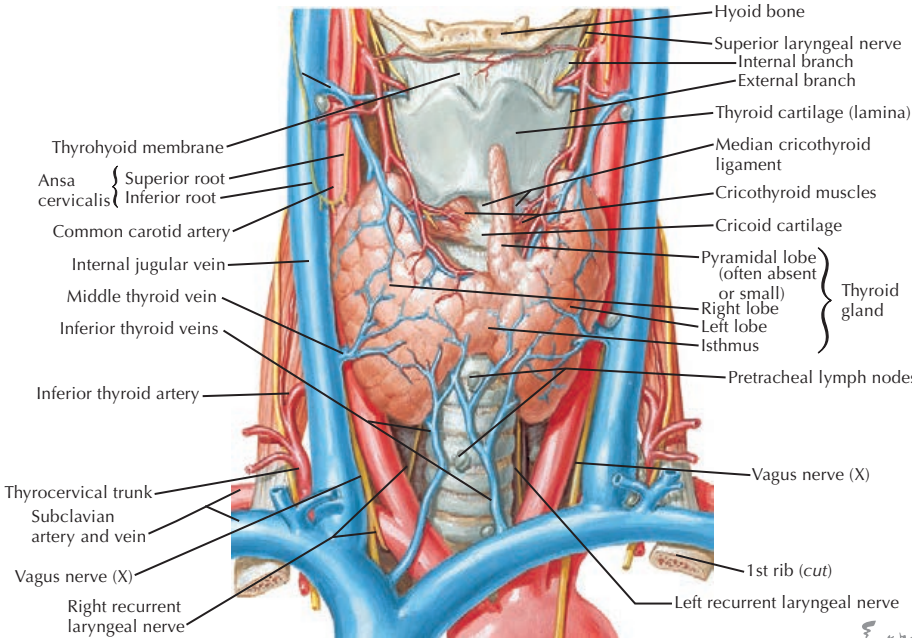
Muscular triangle is paired

CONTENTS OF THE MUSCULAR TRIANGLE			
Artery	**Veins**	**Nerve**	**Structures**
Superior thyroid	Inferior thyroid Anterior jugular	Ansa cervicalis	Strap muscles: • Sternohyoid • Sternothyroid • Thyrohyoid Thyroid gland Parathyroid gland Larynx Trachea Esophagus

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

MUSCULAR TRIANGLE *CONTINUED*





WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Anterior Triangle

SUBMENTAL TRIANGLE

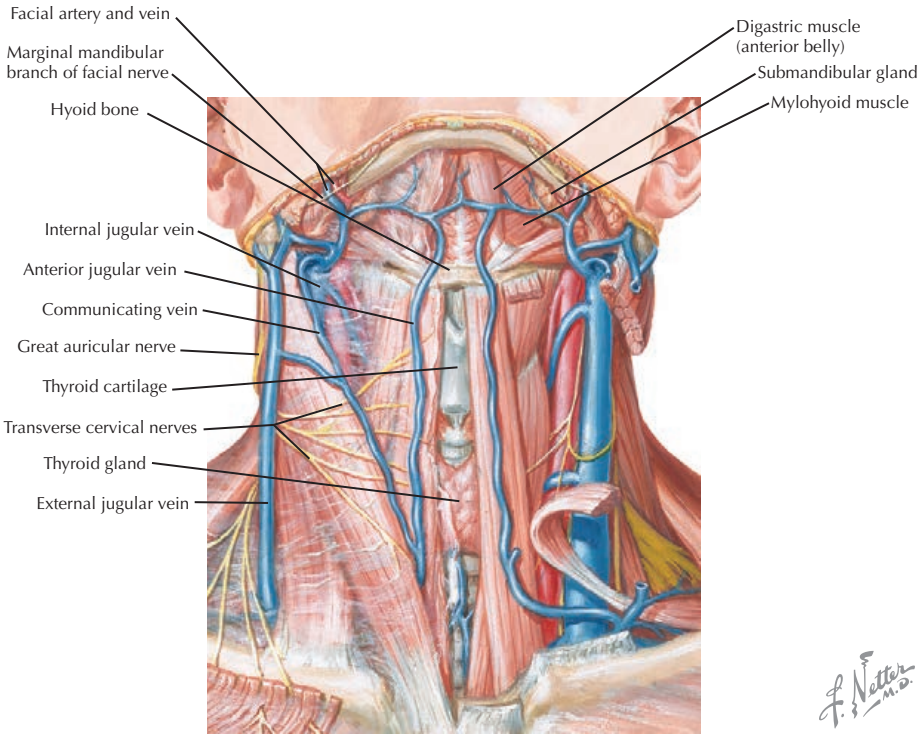
Borders of the submental triangle:
- Body of hyoid
- Anterior digastric on right
- Anterior digastric on left

Floor of the triangle is composed of the:
- Mylohyoid

Roof is made of the:
- Skin
- Superficial fascia with platysma
- Deep cervical fascia

Submental triangle is unpaired

CONTENTS OF THE SUBMENTAL TRIANGLE			
Artery	**Vein**	**Nerve**	**Structures**
	Anterior jugular		Submental lymph nodes



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

4 Posterior Triangle

GENERAL INFORMATION

Borders of the posterior triangle:
- Posterior border of the sternocleidomastoid
- Middle third of the clavicle
- Anterior border of the trapezius

Located on the lateral side of the neck and spirals around the neck

Is subdivided into 2 triangles by the omohyoid:
- Omoclavicular (also called the supraclavicular triangle)
- Occipital

Roof of the posterior triangle includes:
- Skin
- Superficial fascia with platysma
- Superficial (investing) layer of deep cervical fascia

Floor of the posterior triangle includes*:
- Semispinalis capitis
- Splenius capitis
- Levator scapulae
- Posterior scalene
- Middle scalene
- Anterior scalene

Posterior triangle is paired

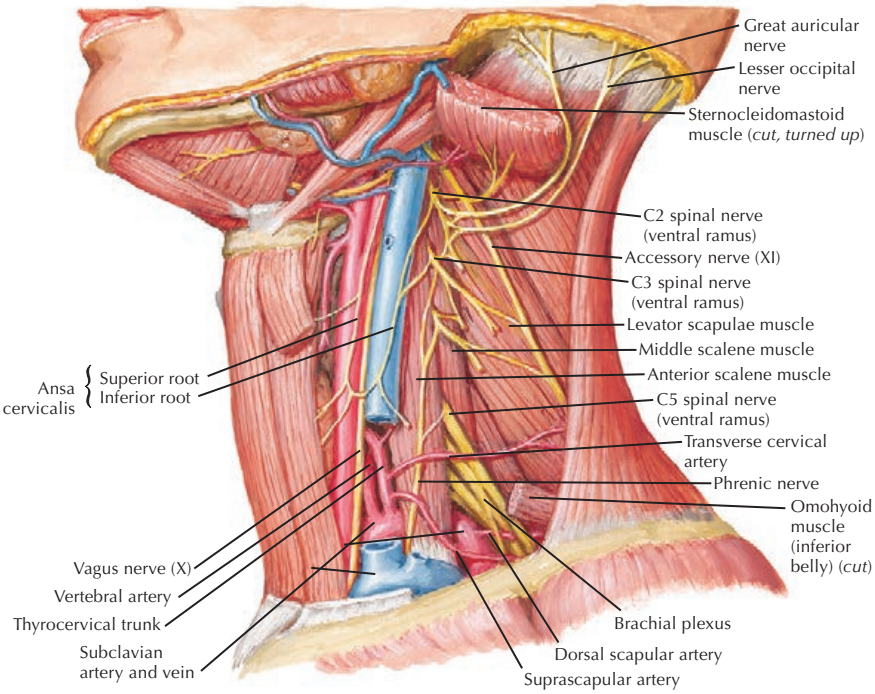
CONTENTS OF THE POSTERIOR TRIANGLE		
Arteries	**Veins**	**Nerves**
3rd part of the subclavian Occipital Suprascapular Transverse cervical Dorsal scapular (usually)	External jugular (and branches) Occipital Suprascapular Transverse cervical	Cervical plexus (sensory branches): • Lesser occipital • Transverse cervical • Great auricular • Supraclavicular Spinal accessory Dorsal scapular Long thoracic Suprascapular Rami and trunks of brachial plexus • Dorsal scapular • Long thoracic • Suprascapular Phrenic

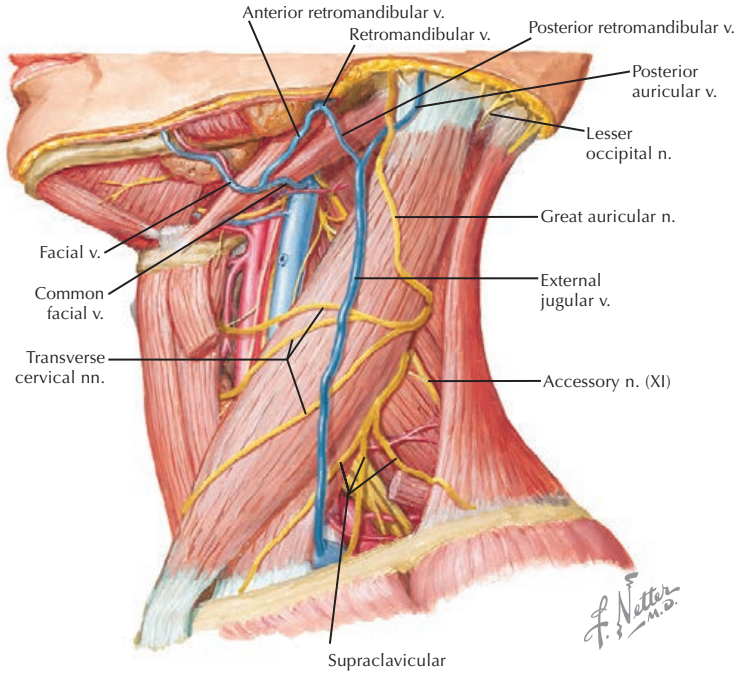
*These muscles are covered by the prevertebral layer of deep cervical fascia.

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Posterior Triangle

GENERAL INFORMATION *CONTINUED*





WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

4 Suboccipital Triangle

GENERAL INFORMATION

Borders of the suboccipital triangle:
- Obliquus capitis superior
- Obliquus capitis inferior
- Rectus capitis posterior major

Roof of the suboccipital triangle includes:
- Dense connective tissue

Floor of the suboccipital triangle includes:
- Posterior atlanto-occipital membrane
- Posterior arch of the atlas

Suboccipital triangle is paired

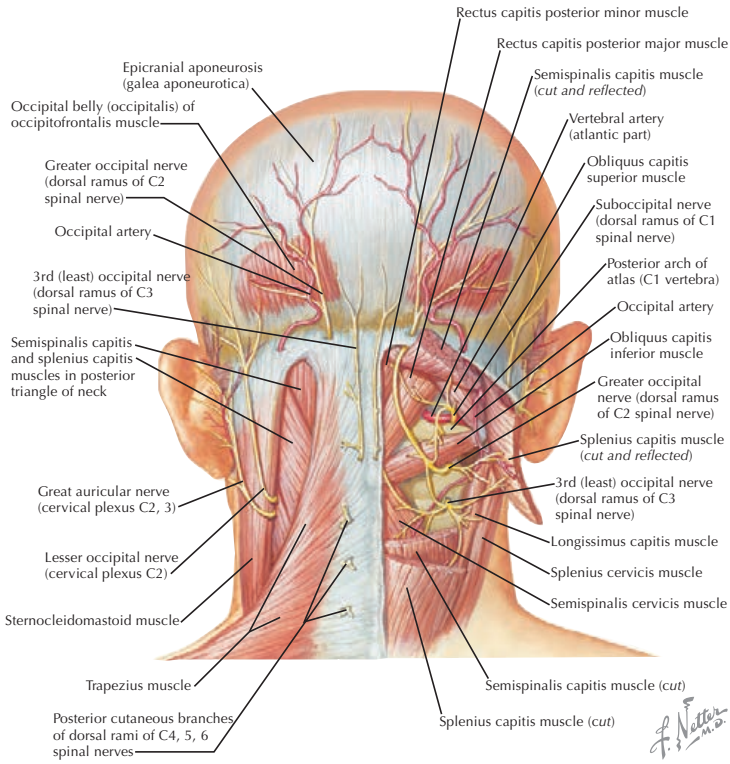
VERTEBRAL ARTERIES

These vessels enter the foramen transversarium of the 6th cervical vertebra, emerging above the 1st cervical vertebra to enter the suboccipital triangle

They curve medially to lie in a groove on the posterior arch of the atlas

Pass through the posterior atlanto-occipital membrane to enter the vertebral canal

CONTENTS OF THE SUBOCCIPITAL TRIANGLE			
Artery	**Vein**	**Nerves**	**Structures**
Vertebral	Vertebral	Greater occipital Suboccipital	Muscles: • Rectus capitis posterior major • Rectus capitis posterior minor • Obliquus capitis superior • Obliquus capitis inferior



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Visceral Contents

THYROID GLAND

Highly vascular organ located on the anterior and lateral surfaces of the neck

Formed by a right and a left lobe connected in the midline by an isthmus

Lies roughly at a level between the 5th cervical and the 1st thoracic vertebrae

The isthmus crosses at the 2nd and 3rd tracheal rings

A pyramidal lobe often arises from the isthmus and extends superiorly

Arterial supply arises from the superior and inferior thyroid arteries, with the major portion from the inferior thyroid artery

A thyroidea ima vessel may supply the thyroid gland and arises from the brachiocephalic artery or as a direct branch from the aorta

Venous drainage forms from a plexus on the surface of the thyroid gland that drains into the superior, middle, and inferior thyroid veins

Microscopically, the thyroid is made of thyroid epithelial cells, which secrete thyroid hormones (thyroxine and triiodothyronine), and parafollicular (C cells), which secrete calcitonin

PARATHYROID GLANDS

Parathyroid glands normally are 4 glands located on the posterior surface of the thyroid lobes

The superior parathyroids are supplied by the superior thyroid artery and the inferior parathyroids are supplied by the inferior thyroid artery

Microscopically, their cells are organized in cords and secrete parathyroid hormone

LARYNX

Connection between the pharynx and the trachea

Prevents foreign bodies from entering the airways

Designed for the production of sound (phonation)

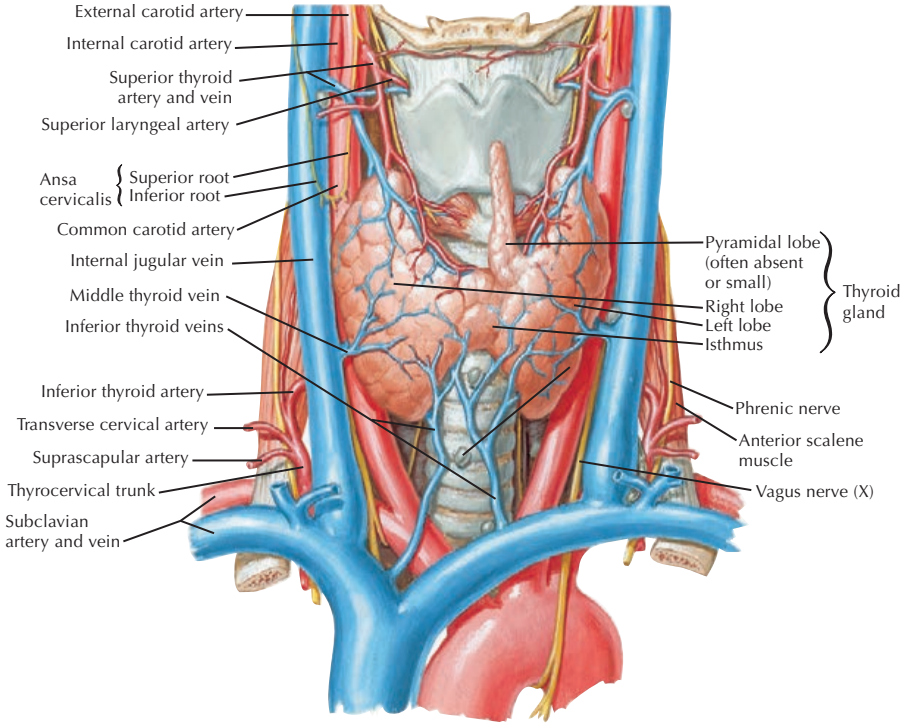
Shorter in women and children

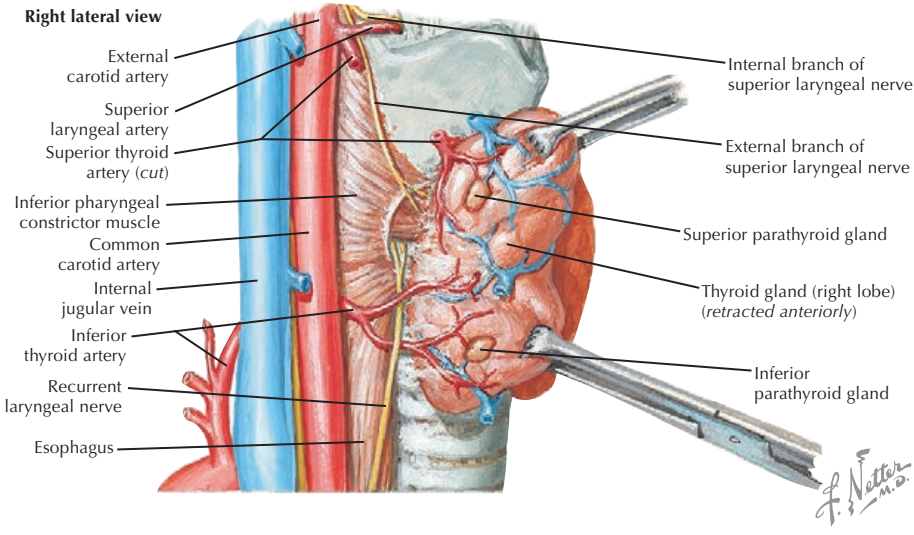
Formed by 9 cartilages: 3 paired and 3 unpaired

Located in the midline opposite the 3rd to 6th cervical vertebrae

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

THYROID GLAND, PARATHYROID GLANDS, LARYNX *CONTINUED*





WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Root of the Neck

GENERAL INFORMATION

Root of the neck connects the structures of the neck with the thoracic cavity

The superior thoracic aperture is bounded by:

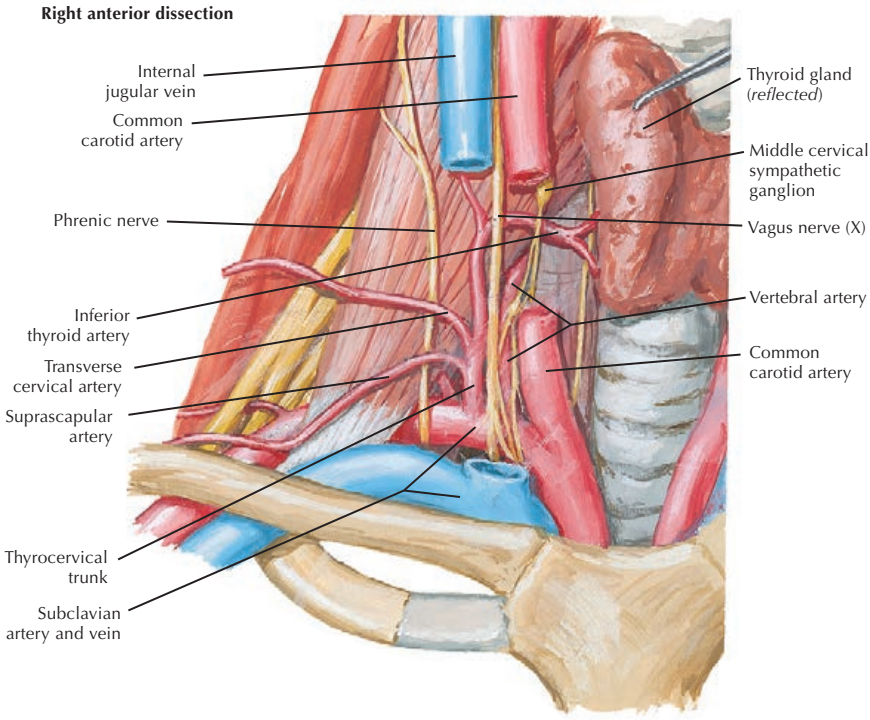
- Manubrium
- 1st rib and cartilage
- 1st thoracic vertebra

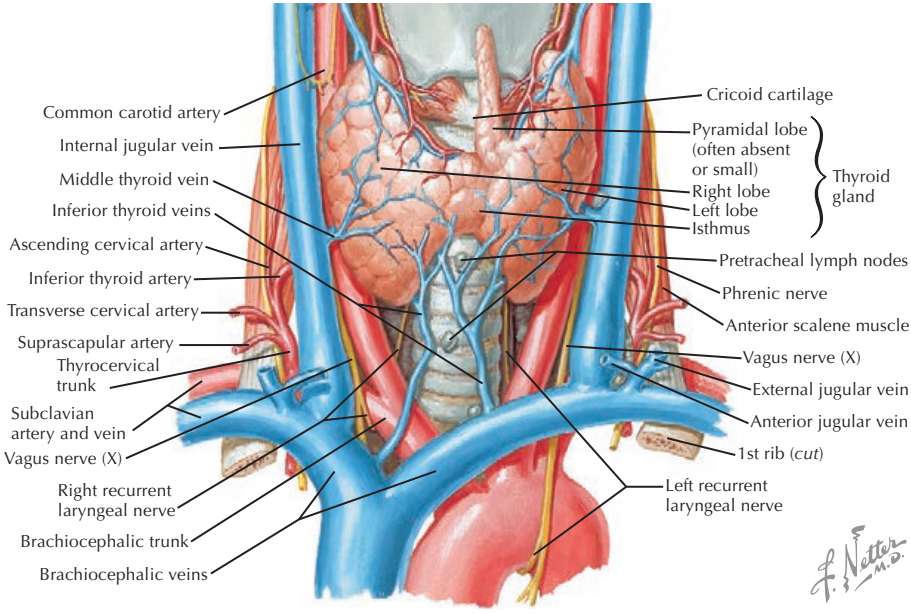
The apex of each lung extends into the root of the neck on the lateral side of the superior thoracic aperture

CONTENTS OF THE ROOT OF THE NECK			
Arteries	**Veins**	**Nerves**	**Structures**
Common carotid Subclavian Vertebral Transverse cervical	Internal jugular Subclavian Brachiocephalic Inferior thyroid Vertebral	Vagus Recurrent laryngeal Phrenic Sympathetic trunk Brachial plexus	Trachea Esophagus Thoracic duct Right lymphatic duct

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

GENERAL INFORMATION *CONTINUED*





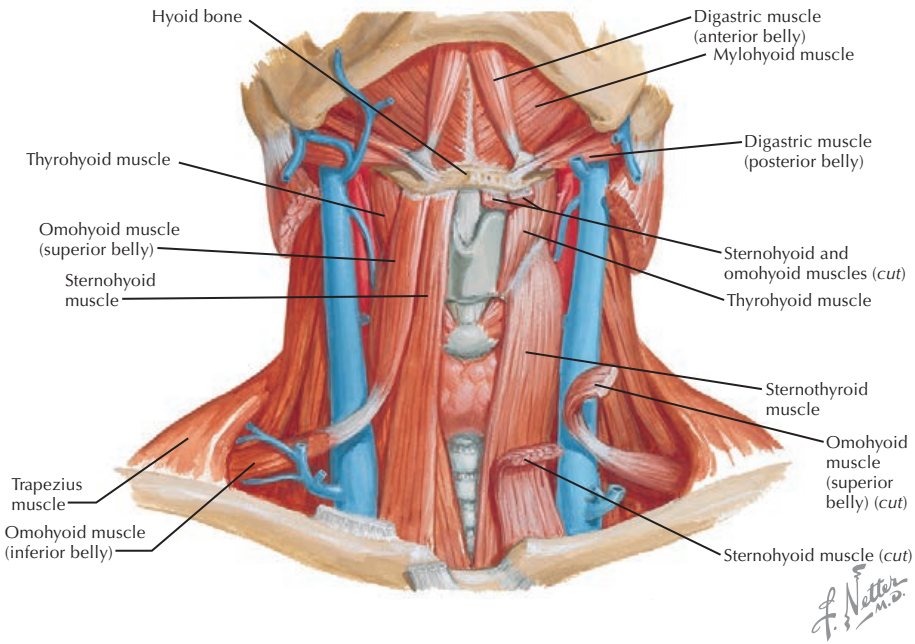
WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

MAJOR BORDERS OF THE TRIANGLES

Muscle	Origin	Insertion	Actions	Nerve Supply
Trapezius	External occipital protuberance Superior nuchal line Ligamentum nuchae Spinous process of C7 Spinous processes of T1 to T12	Spine of the scapula Acromion Lateral 1/3 of the clavicle	Elevate the scapula Retract the scapula Depress the scapula	Spinal accessory n. also receives some branches from C3 and C4, thought to be proprioceptive
Sternocleido-mastoid	Manubrium Medial 1/3 of the clavicle	Mastoid process of the temporal bone Superior nuchal line	Unilaterally: • Face turns to contralateral side • Head tilts to ipsilateral side Bilaterally: • Head is flexed	Spinal accessory n.

MUSCLES THAT SUBDIVIDE THE TRIANGLES

Muscle	Origin	Insertion	Actions	Nerve Supply
Digastric (posterior and anterior bellies connected by a tendon attached to the hyoid)	Mastoid process	Digastric fossa of the mandible	Elevates hyoid Helps depress and retract the mandible	Facial n. (posterior belly) Trigeminal n. (anterior belly)
Omohyoid (superior and inferior bellies connected by a tendon)	Superior border of the scapula	Body of the hyoid	Depresses the hyoid Helps depress the larynx	Ansa cervicalis



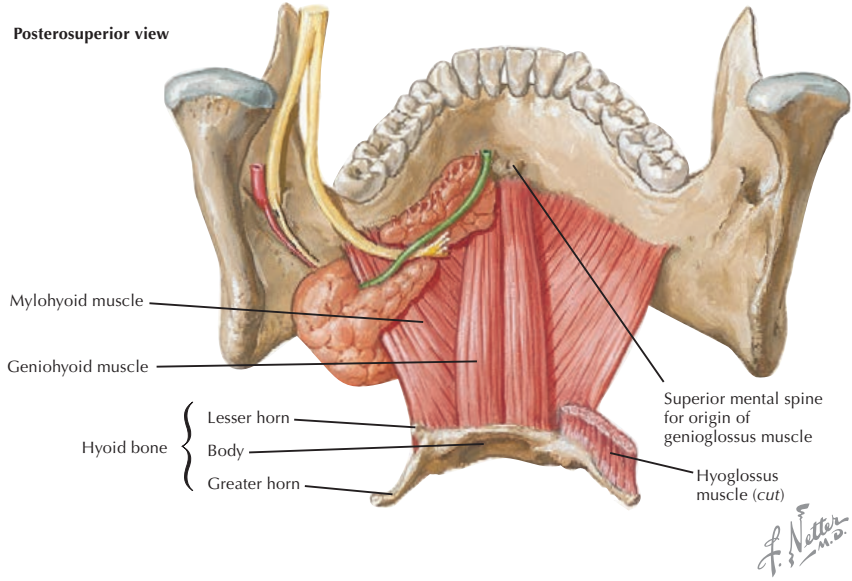
WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

SUPRAHYOID MUSCLES

Muscle	Origin	Insertion	Actions	Nerve Supply
Stylohyoid	Styloid process	Body of the hyoid	Elevates the hyoid Retracts the hyoid	Facial n.
Mylohyoid	Mylohyoid line of the mandible	Mylohyoid of opposite side at the raphe Body of the hyoid	Elevates the hyoid Elevates the floor of the oral cavity	Trigeminal n. (mandibular division)
Digastric (posterior and anterior bellies connected by a tendon attached to the hyoid)	Mastoid process	Digastric fossa of the mandible	Elevates hyoid Helps depress and retract the mandible	Facial n. (posterior belly) Trigeminal n. (anterior belly—mandibular division)
Geniohyoid	Inferior genial tubercle	Body of the hyoid	Helps move the hyoid and tongue anteriorly	C1 (ventral ramus, which follows the hypoglossal n.)

INFRAHYOID MUSCLES

Muscle	Origin	Insertion	Actions	Nerve Supply
Omohyoid (superior and inferior bellies connected by a tendon)	Superior border of the scapula	Body of the hyoid	Depresses the hyoid	Ansa cervicalis
Sternohyoid	Manubrium	Body of the hyoid	Depresses the hyoid	Ansa cervicalis
Sternothyroid	Manubrium	Oblique line of the thyroid cartilage	Depresses the larynx	Ansa cervicalis
Thyrohyoid	Oblique line of the thyroid cartilage	Greater cornu (horn) of the hyoid	Depresses the hyoid	C1 (ventral ramus, which follows the hypoglossal n.)



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

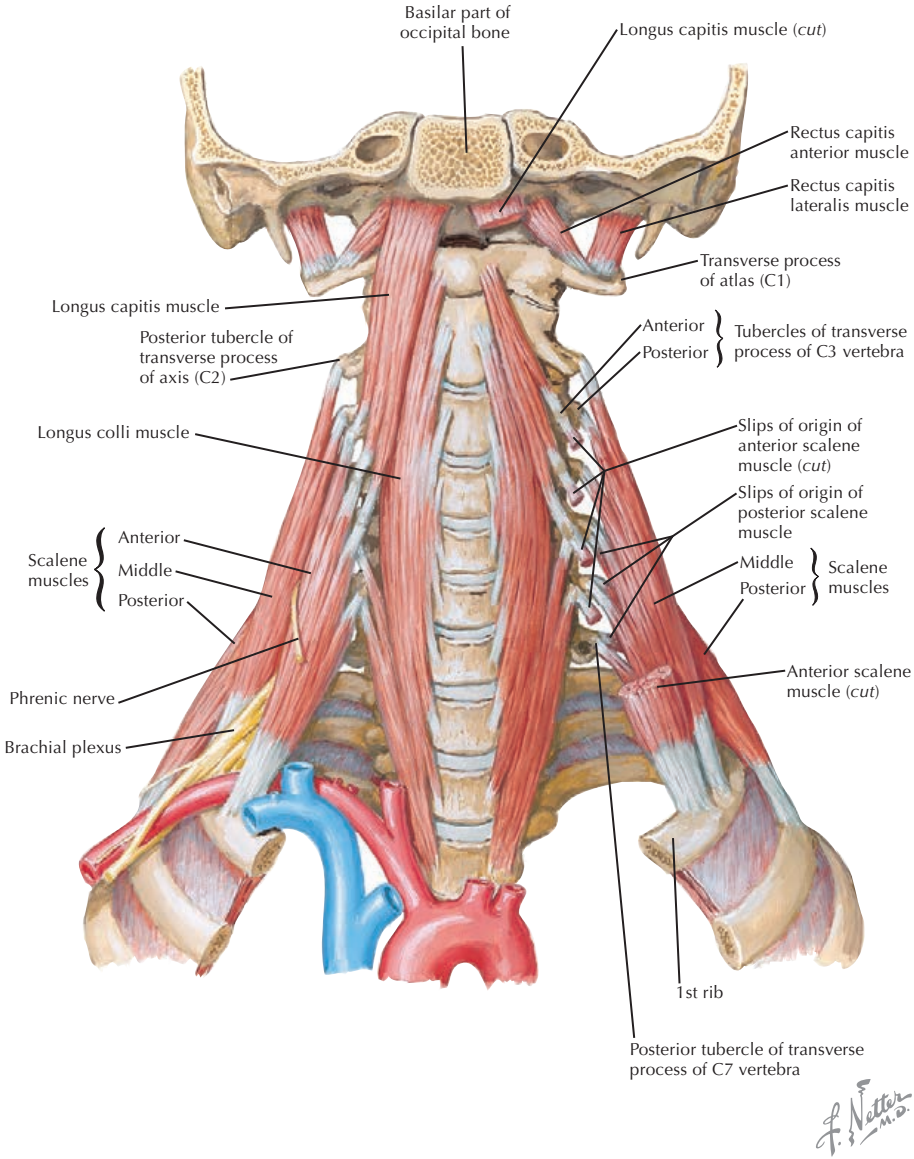
Muscles

PREVERTEBRAL MUSCLES

Muscle	Origin	Insertion	Actions	Nerve Supply
Longus colli			Flexion of the neck Helps rotate the neck	Ventral rami of C2 to C8
Superior oblique	Transverse processes of C3 to C5	Anterior arch of atlas		
Inferior oblique	Vertebral bodies of T1 to T3	Transverse process of C5 to C6		
Vertical	Vertebral bodies of C5 to C7 and T1 to T3	Vertebral bodies of C2 to C4		
Longus capitis	Transverse processes of C3 to C6	Basilar portion of the occipital bone	Flexion of the head	Ventral rami of C1 to C3
Rectus capitis anterior	Transverse process of the atlas			Ventral rami of C1 and C2
Rectus capitis lateralis		Jugular portion of the occipital bone	Lateral flexion of the head	
Anterior scalene	Transverse processes of C3 to C6	Scalene tubercle on the 1st rib	Elevates 1st rib Lateral flexion of the neck	Ventral rami of C4 to C6
Middle scalene	Transverse processes of C2 to C7	1st rib	Lateral flexion of the neck	Ventral rami of C5 to C8
Posterior scalene	Transverse processes of C5 to C7	2nd rib		Ventral rami of C6 to C8

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

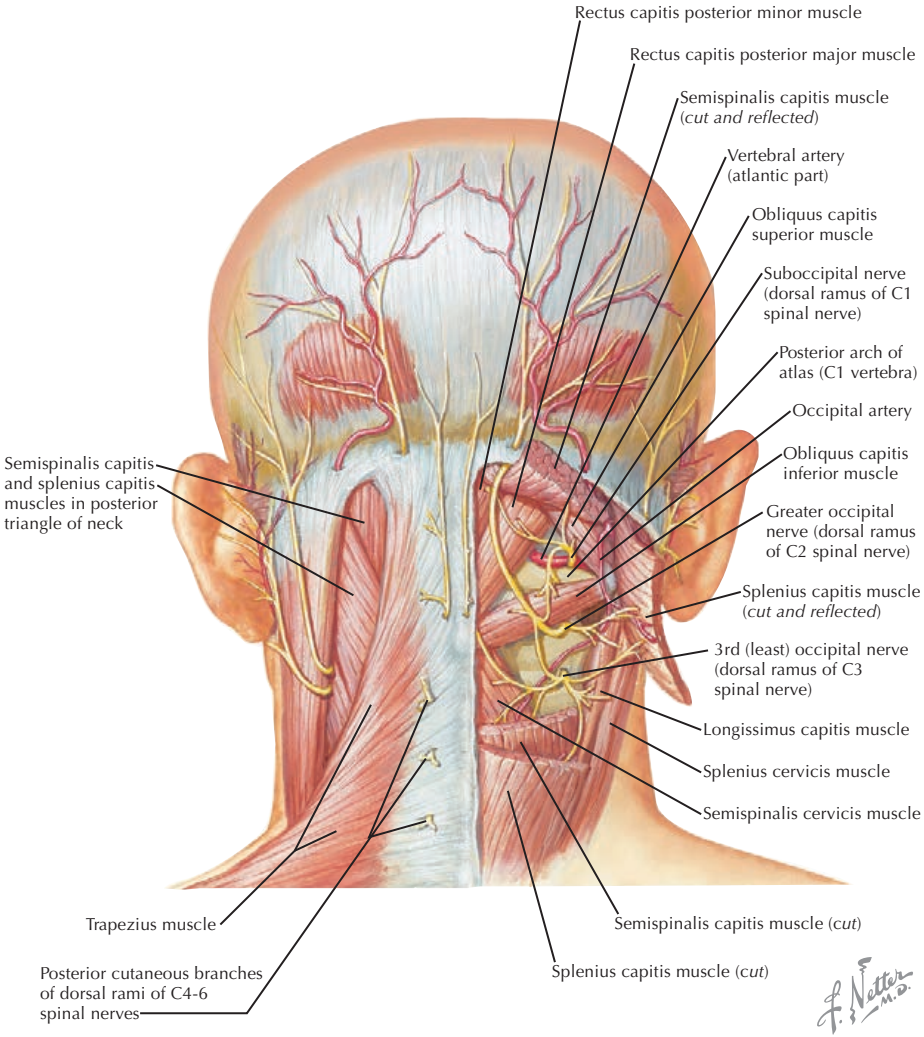
PREVERTEBRAL MUSCLES *CONTINUED*



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

SUBOCCIPITAL TRIANGLE MUSCLES

Muscle	Origin	Insertion	Actions	Nerve Supply
Obliquus capitis superior	Transverse process of the atlas	Occipital bone	Extends head Lateral flexion of head	Suboccipital n. (dorsal rami of C1)
Obliquus capitis inferior	Spinous process of the axis	Transverse process of the atlas	Rotates head to ipsilateral side	Suboccipital n. (dorsal rami of C1)
Rectus capitis posterior major		Inferior nuchal line (lateral portion) of the occipital bone	Extends head Rotates head to ipsilateral side	Suboccipital n. (dorsal rami of C1)
Rectus capitis posterior minor	Posterior arch of the atlas	Inferior nuchal line (medial portion) of the occipital bone	Extends head	Suboccipital n. (dorsal rami of C1)



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

4 Vascular Supply of the Neck

ARTERIAL SUPPLY

The major arteries of the neck are the common carotid and the subclavian arteries

SUBCLAVIAN

- Thyrocervical
- Costocervical
- Vertebral
- Dorsal scapular (usually)

(Internal thoracic artery is located in the thorax)

COMMON CAROTID

- Internal carotid
- External carotid
  - Superior thyroid
  - Lingual
  - Facial
  - Ascending pharyngeal
  - Occipital

(Posterior auricular, maxillary, and superficial temporal arteries are located in the head)

SUBCLAVIAN VASCULAR SUPPLY OF THE NECK

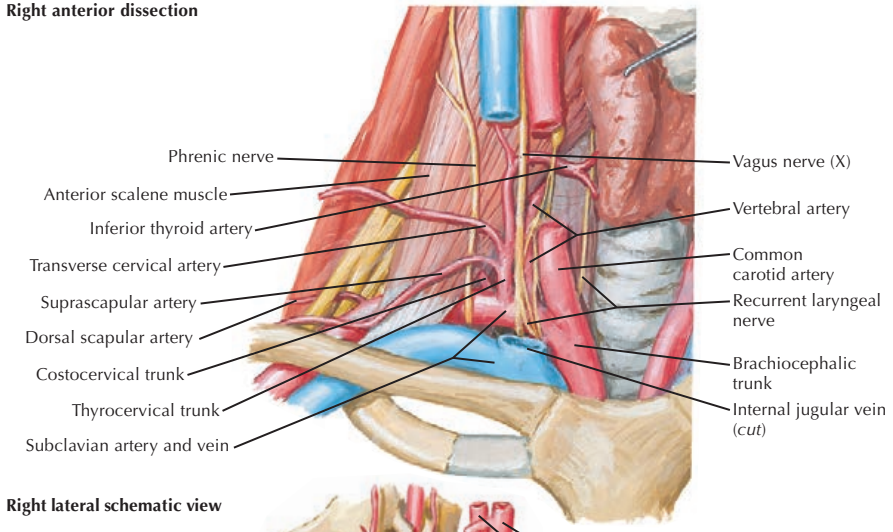
Artery	Source	Comments
Subclavian	Right subclavian a. is a branch of the brachiocephalic a.; left subclavian a. is a direct branch of the aorta	Both subclavian aa. travel lateral to the trachea into the root of the neck, passing between the anterior and middle scalene aa. Divided into 3 parts based on its relationship to the anterior scalene m.: • 1st part—extends from the beginning of the subclavian to the medial border of the anterior scalene, and all of the branches of the subclavian a. arise from the 1st part, except the left costocervical trunk, which often is a branch of the 2nd part • 2nd part—located posterior to the anterior scalene • 3rd part—located from the lateral margin of the anterior scalene to the lateral border of the 1st rib, where it becomes the axillary a.
Thyrocervical	A branch of the 1st part of the subclavian along the medial aspect of the anterior scalene m.	Immediately divides into 3 branches: • Inferior thyroid—travels along the medial border of the anterior scalene posterior to the carotid sheath and anterior to the vertebral a. to the thyroid gland while accompanied by the recurrent laryngeal n.; it gives rise to the inferior laryngeal a. to the larynx and the ascending cervical, which helps supply the muscles in the area and sends branches to the vertebral a. • Suprascapular—travels inferior to and laterally across the anterior scalene m. and phrenic n. deep to the sternocleidomastoid m. and crosses the posterior triangle of the neck to reach the scapula, where it passes superior to the transverse lig. of the scapula • Transverse cervical—travels across the posterior triangle of the neck to reach the anterior border of the trapezius m.
Costocervical	A branch of the 1st part of the right subclavian a. and the 2nd part of the left subclavian a.	Divides into 2 branches: • Deep cervical—travels superiorly along the posterior part of the neck mainly to help supply the muscles • Supreme intercostal—travels to supply the 1st and 2nd intercostal spaces
Vertebral	1st part of the subclavian a.	Ascends to enter the foramen transversarium of C6 Passes around the atlas and then through the foramen magnum to enter the skull, where it unites with the opposite vertebral to form the basilar a. along the ventral surface of the pons
Dorsal scapular	2nd or 3rd part of the subclavian a.	Arises from the subclavian a. in about 70% to 75% of people and the transverse cervical a. in the other 25% to 30% When arising from the subclavian a., it passes posteriorly between the trunks of the brachial plexus to travel across the posterior triangle of the neck to reach the anterior border of the trapezius m.

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

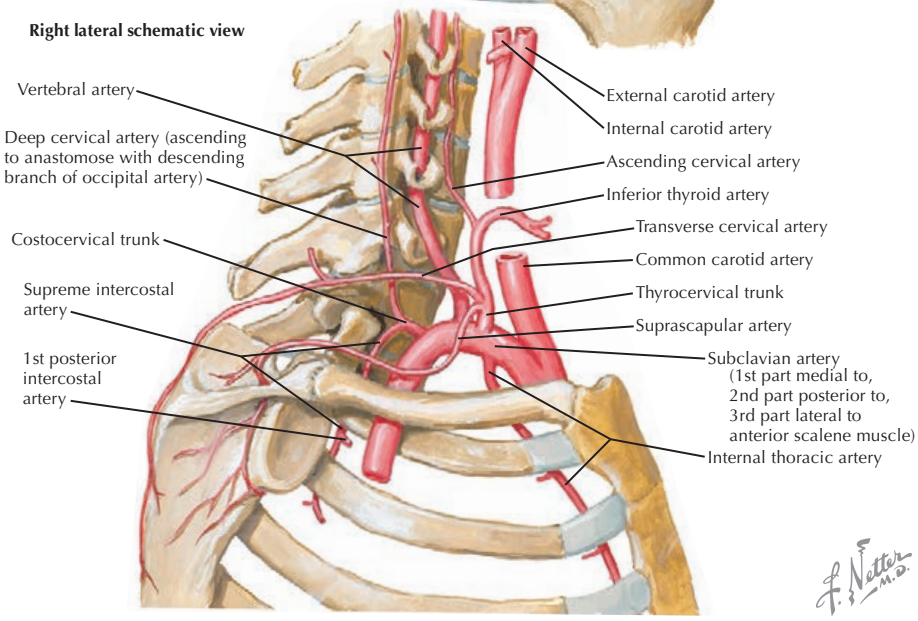
Vascular Supply of the Neck

ARTERIAL SUPPLY *CONTINUED*

Right anterior dissection



Right lateral schematic view



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Vascular Supply of the Neck

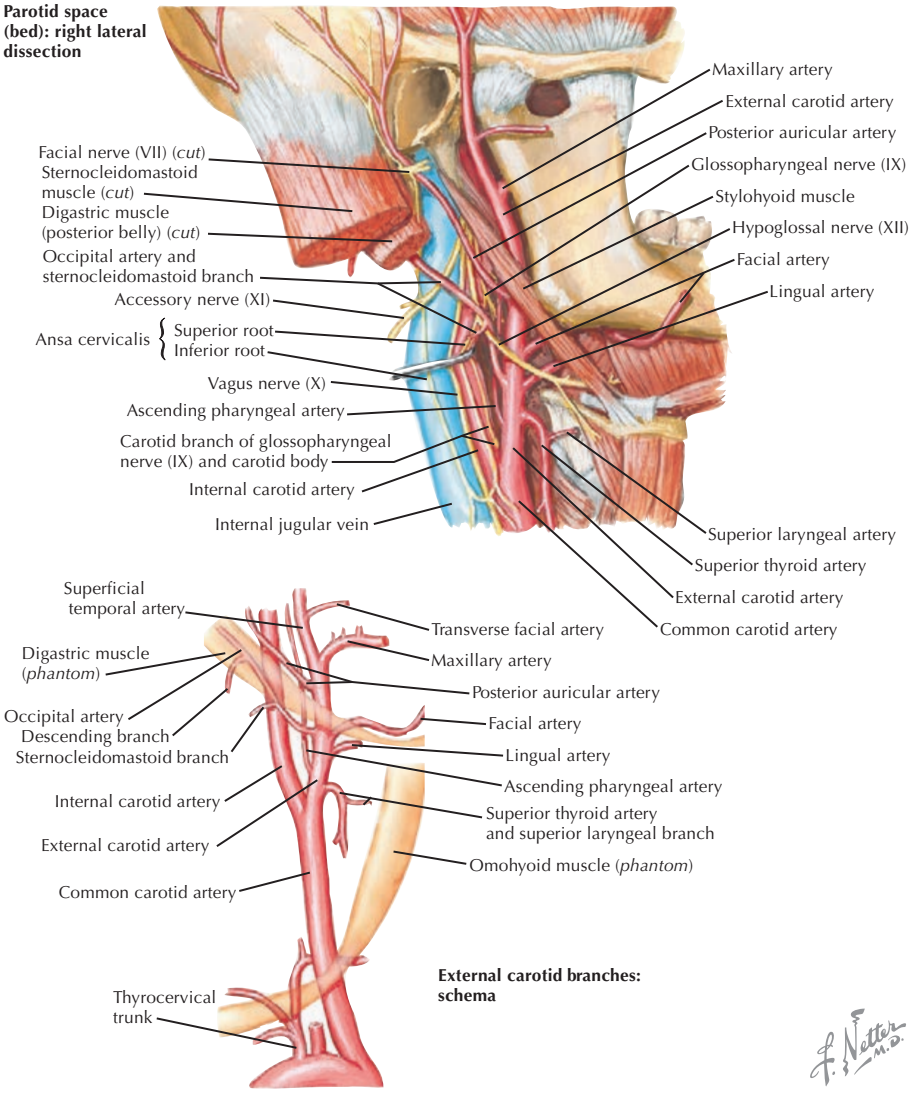
ARTERIAL SUPPLY *CONTINUED*

CAROTID VASCULAR SUPPLY OF THE NECK		
Artery	**Source**	**Comments**
Common carotid	Right common carotid a. is a branch of the brachiocephalic a.; left common carotid a. is a direct branch of the aorta	Both common carotids ascend posterior to the sternoclavicular joint into the neck and bifurcate at the superior border of the thyroid cartilage at C3 into the: • External carotid a. • Internal carotid a. There are no branches of the common carotid a. in the neck Carotid body: A chemoreceptor located along the common carotid a. Usually receives its sensory innervation from the carotid branch of the glossopharyngeal n.
Internal carotid	The 2 branches of the common carotid a.; arise at the superior border of the thyroid cartilage at C3	There are no branches of the internal carotid a. in the neck Passes superiorly in the neck within the carotid sheath along with the internal jugular v. and the vagus n. anterior to the transverse processes of the upper cervical vertebrae Carotid sinus: A baroreceptor located as a dilation at the beginning of the internal carotid a. Usually receives its sensory innervation from the carotid branch of the glossopharyngeal n.
External carotid		Gives rise to a majority of the branches to the neck Located external to the carotid sheath and travels anteriorly and superiorly in the neck posterior to the mandible and deep to the posterior belly of the digastric and stylohyoid mm. to enter the parotid gland
Superior thyroid	The first branch of the external carotid a.; arises in the carotid triangle	Passes inferiorly along the inferior constrictor m. on its path to the thyroid gland The superior laryngeal a. arises from the superior thyroid a. and passes through the thyrohyoid membrane to supply the larynx
Lingual	External carotid a.; arises within the carotid triangle	Passes superiorly and medially toward the greater cornu of the hyoid bone in an oblique fashion and makes a loop by passing anteriorly and inferiorly while traveling superficial to the middle constrictor m. While forming a loop, the artery is crossed superficially by the hypoglossal n. The lingual a. passes deep to the posterior belly of the digastric and stylohyoid mm. as it travels anteriorly At this region, it gives rise to a hyoid branch that travels on the superior surface of the hyoid bone supplying the muscles in the area Passes deep to the hyoglossus m. and travels anteriorly between the hyoglossus and genioglossus mm. to supply the tongue
Facial	External carotid a. in the carotid triangle of the neck	Passes superiorly immediately deep to the posterior belly of the digastric and stylohyoid mm. Passes along the submandibular gland giving rise to the submental a., which helps supply the gland Passes superiorly over the body of the mandible at the masseter m. in a tortuous pattern to supply the face
Ascending pharyngeal	Posterior portion of the external carotid a. near the bifurcation of the common carotid a.	The smallest branch of the external carotid Ascends superiorly between the lateral side of the pharynx and the internal carotid a. Has a series of branches: 3 to 4 pharyngeal branches supply the superior and middle constrictor mm. The most superior branch passes through the gap superior to the superior constrictor m. Gives rise to an inferior tympanic branch, which supplies the middle ear cavity Gives rise to a posterior meningeal branch, which supplies the bones of the posterior cranial fossa and dura mater
Occipital	External carotid a. in the carotid triangle of the neck	Branches along the inferior margin of the posterior belly of the digastric and stylohyoid mm. The hypoglossal n. wraps around the occipital a. from the posterior part of the vessel, traveling anteriorly Passes posteriorly along the mastoid process, making a groove on the bone Pierces the fascia that connects the attachment of the trapezius with the sternocleidomastoid m. Ascends in the connective tissue layer of the scalp, dividing into many branches Anastomoses with the posterior auricular and superficial temporal aa. The terminal part of the artery is accompanied by the greater occipital n.

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Vascular Supply of the Neck

ARTERIAL SUPPLY *CONTINUED*



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

4 Vascular Supply of the Neck

VENOUS DRAINAGE

Highly variable with inconsistent drainage

VEINS OF THE NECK

Internal jugular
- Occipital
- Facial
- Lingual
- Pharyngeal
- Superior thyroid
- Middle thyroid

External jugular

Anterior jugular

Subclavian
- Vertebral

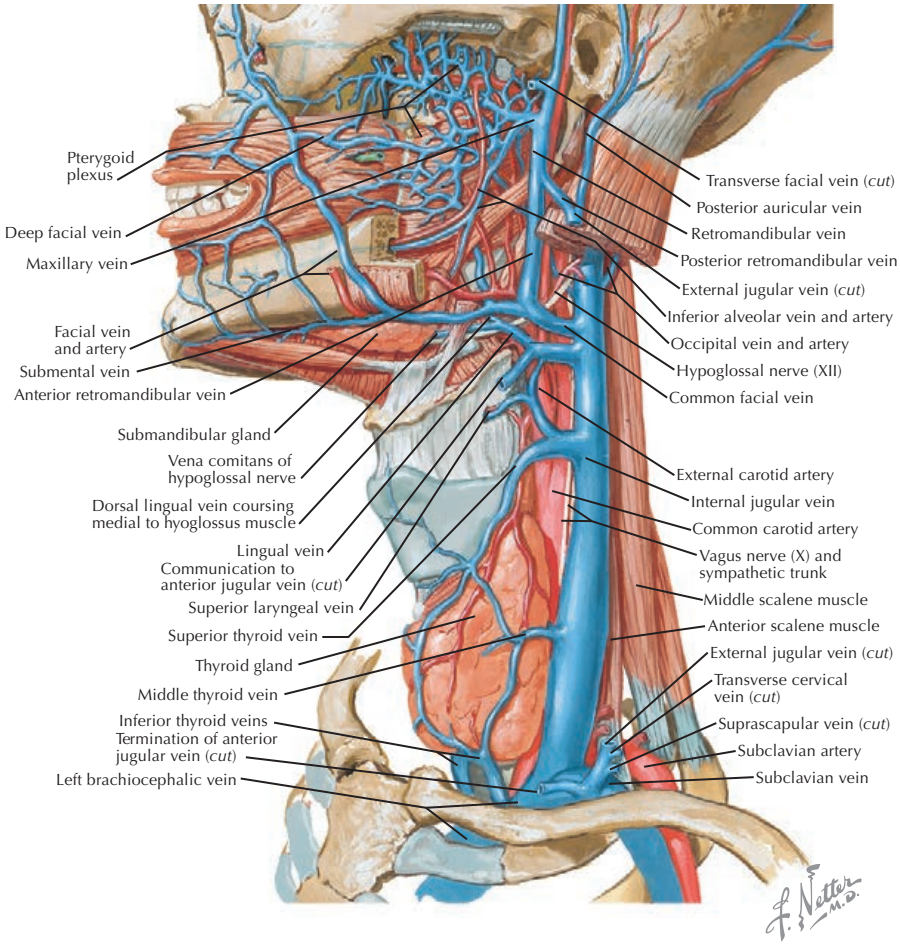
JUGULAR VASCULAR SUPPLY OF THE NECK

Vein	Comments
Internal jugular	Continuous with the sigmoid sinus within the cranial cavity Begins at the base of the skull at a dilation called the superior bulb Lies posterior to the internal carotid a. and the glossopharyngeal, vagus, and spinal accessory nn. as it initially descends Travels lateral to the internal carotid a. within the carotid sheath with the vagus n. posterior to the vessels Unites with the subclavian v. to form the brachiocephalic v. at the root of the neck Receives a series of branches
Occipital	Begins on the posterior portion of the scalp at the vertex Passes from superficial to deep by passing through the attachment of the sternocleidomastoid m. Has a mastoid emissary v. that connects it to the transverse sinus The vein's termination is variable, but it usually passes inferiorly to join the internal jugular v.
Facial	Has no valves to allow blood to backflow Begins as the angular v. Passes inferiorly along the side of the nose, receiving the lateral nasal v. Continues in a posterior and inferior path across the angle of the mouth to the cheek, receiving the superior and inferior labial vv. While passing toward the mandible, the deep facial v. connects the facial v. to the pterygoid plexus In the submandibular triangle, the facial v. joins the anterior branch of the retromandibular to form the common facial v. Common facial v. drains into the internal jugular v.
Lingual	Passes with the lingual a., deep to the hyoglossus m., and ends in the internal jugular v. The vena comitans nervi hypoglossi, or accompanying v. of the hypoglossal n., begins at the apex of the tongue and either joins the lingual v. or accompanies the hypoglossal n. and enters the common facial v., draining into the internal jugular v.
Pharyngeal	Pharyngeal vv. pass from the pharyngeal plexus of vv. along the posterior portion of the pharynx Drain into the internal jugular v.
Superior thyroid	Forms a venous plexus on the thyroid gland with the middle and inferior thyroid vv. before draining into the internal jugular v.
Middle thyroid	Forms a venous plexus on the thyroid gland with the superior and inferior thyroid vv. before draining into the internal jugular v.
External jugular	Formed by the combination of the posterior branch of the retromandibular and posterior auricular vv. in the parotid gland Lies deep to the platysma m. but superficial to the sternocleidomastoid m. as it descends vertically Passes into the posterior triangle of the neck, where it drains into the subclavian v. immediately lateral to the anterior scalene m.
Transverse cervical	Passes from the anterior border of the trapezius m. through the posterior triangle to drain into the external jugular v.
Suprascapular	Arises from the scapula above the transverse scapular lig. to pass through the posterior triangle of the neck to drain into the external jugular v.
Anterior jugular	Arises by the joining of a series of superficial veins in the submental region Descends anterior to the sternocleidomastoid m. and passes deep to the muscle before draining into the external jugular or the subclavian
Subclavian	The continuation of the axillary v. Located along the lateral border of the 1st rib until it unites with the internal jugular v. Passes anterior to the anterior scalene m.
Vertebral	Begins as a plexus in the suboccipital triangle and descends through the foramen transversarium of all of the cervical vertebrae before draining into the subclavian or, more commonly, the brachiocephalic v.

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Vascular Supply of the Neck

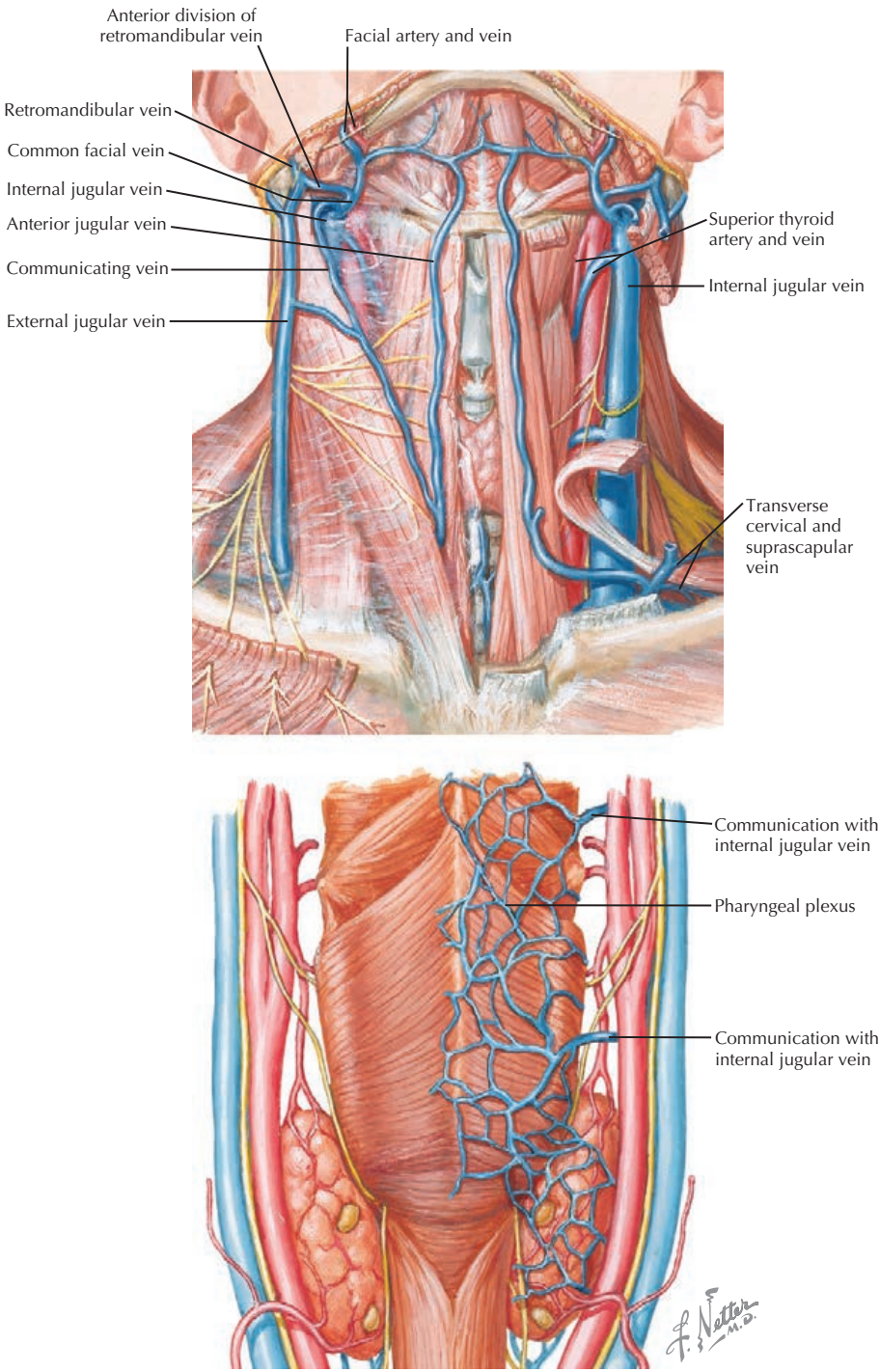
VENOUS DRAINAGE *CONTINUED*



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Vascular Supply of the Neck

VENOUS DRAINAGE *CONTINUED*



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Nerve Supply of the Neck

GENERAL INFORMATION

The nerve supply to the neck is extensive; it is made up of:

- Cranial nerves
  - Glossopharyngeal
  - Vagus
  - Spinal accessory
  - Hypoglossal
- Cervical plexus
- Brachial plexus
  - Dorsal scapular
  - Long thoracic
  - Suprascapular
- Phrenic
- Other cervical ventral rami

CRANIAL NERVES OF THE NECK

GLOSSOPHARYNGEAL NERVE

Also known as cranial nerve IX

Branches from the medulla oblongata and passes through the jugular foramen with the vagus and spinal accessory nn.

Immediately after passing through the jugular foramen, it gives off the tympanic branch

As the glossopharyngeal passes through the foramen, it passes between the internal carotid a. and internal jugular v. in an inferior direction

Gives rise to the carotid branch that passes between the internal and external carotid aa. to the carotid body and carotid sinus

The main glossopharyngeal n. continues to pass inferiorly, giving rise to the pharyngeal branch, which is the sensory nerve to the pharyngeal plexus that perforates the muscles of the pharynx and supplies the mucous membranes (mainly oropharynx region)

Continues to pass inferiorly; travels posterior to the stylopharyngeus m. and innervates it

Passes anteriorly with the stylopharyngeus and travels between the superior and middle constrictor mm. to be located by the palatine tonsils

Small lingual branches arise from it and distribute general somatic afferent (GSA) fibers to the mucous membrane of the posterior 1/3 of the tongue, in addition to the fauces, and special visceral afferent (SVA) fibers to the taste buds

VAGUS NERVE

Also known as cranial nerve X

Branches from the medulla oblongata and passes through the jugular foramen with the glossopharyngeal and spinal accessory nn.

As the vagus n. passes through the foramen, it passes between the internal carotid a. and internal jugular v.

A series of nerves branch from the vagus n. as it passes from the base of the skull through the neck: auricular, pharyngeal, superior laryngeal, recurrent laryngeal, and cardiac vagal branches

Auricular Branch

Arises from the superior ganglion, travels posterior to the internal jugular v., and passes along the temporal bone to enter the mastoid canaliculus and give branches that innervate the skin of the back of the auricle and the posterior portion of the external acoustic meatus

Pharyngeal Branch

Arises from the upper part of the inferior ganglion of the vagus n., contains filaments from the cranial portion of the spinal accessory n., and serves as the motor component to the pharyngeal plexus

Superior Laryngeal n.

Travels inferiorly posterior to the internal carotid and on the side of the pharynx, and divides into the:

- Internal laryngeal n.—passes inferiorly to the larynx through the thyrohyoid membrane along with the superior laryngeal vessels to distribute the GSA fibers to the base of the tongue at the epiglottic region, and to the mucous membranes of the larynx as far inferiorly as the false vocal folds; and SVA fibers to the taste buds in the area
- External laryngeal n.—travels inferiorly along the inferior constrictor to supply the cricothyroid muscle and the inferior portion of the inferior constrictor

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

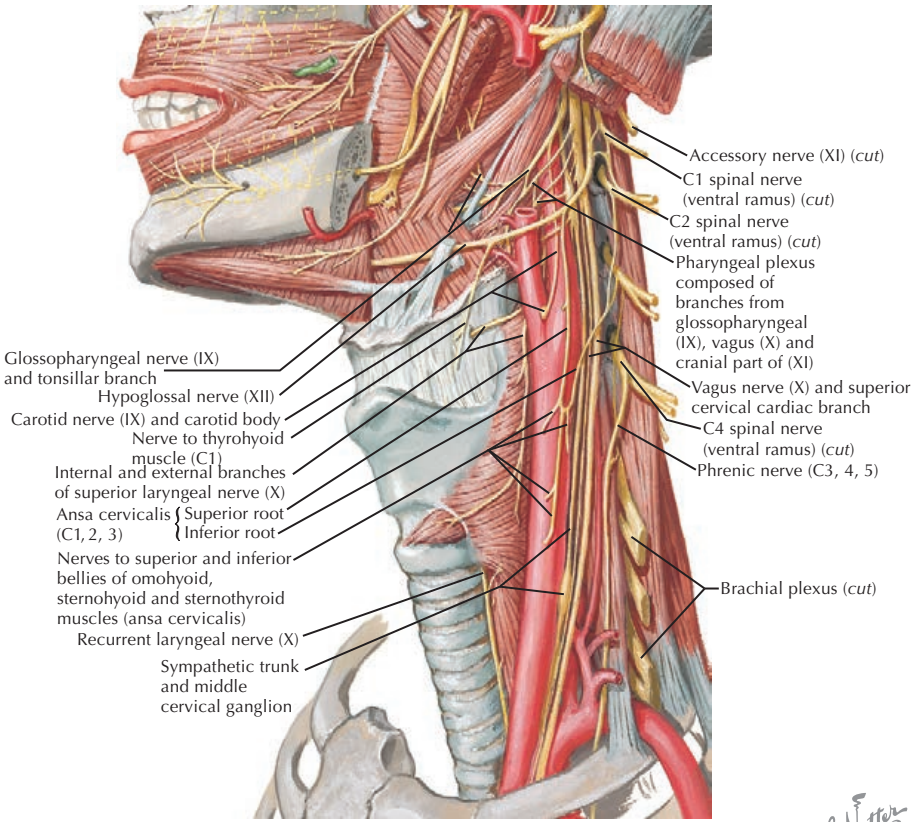
CRANIAL NERVES OF THE NECK *CONTINUED*

Recurrent Laryngeal n.
Arises from the vagus n. differently, depending on the side of the body
The right recurrent laryngeal n. loops under the right subclavian, whereas the left recurrent laryngeal n. loops under the ligamentum arteriosum posterior to the aorta
Ascends on the lateral side of the trachea until reaching the pharynx where it passes deep to the inferior constrictor m. to reach the larynx, innervating the mucous membranes below the false vocal folds and all of the intrinsic muscles of the larynx except the cricothyroid
Cardiac Vagal Branches
Descend to form the parasympathetic portion of the cardiac plexus
SPINAL ACCESSORY NERVE
Also known as cranial nerve XI
Described as being formed from 2 parts: cranial and spinal
Cranial Part
Begins in the nucleus ambiguus from the medulla as 4 to 5 branches just inferior to the roots of the vagus n. and passes laterally to the jugular foramen, where it merges with the fibers of the spinal part of the spinal accessory n.
While united for a short distance, it also is connected by 1 or 2 branches with the inferior ganglion of the vagus n.
Exits through the jugular foramen, separates from the spinal part, and continues over the surface of the inferior ganglion of the vagus n. to be distributed mainly to the pharyngeal branches of the vagus to form the motor portion of the pharyngeal plexus, which innervates the muscles in the pharynx, soft palate, and 1 tongue muscle
Spinal Part
Begins in the upper cervical levels of the spinal cord and after separating from the cranial part provides innervation to the sternocleidomastoid m. and passes obliquely through the posterior triangle of the neck to innervate the trapezius m.
HYPOGLOSSAL NERVE
Also known as cranial nerve XII
Arises as a series of rootlets from the medulla oblongata and passes through the hypoglossal canal
Travels inferiorly, located between the internal carotid a. and the internal jugular v.
Passes anteriorly as it wraps around the occipital a. inferior to the posterior belly of the digastric m.
Passes superficial to the external carotid a. and the loop of the lingual a. in its anterior path
Passes deep to the posterior belly of the digastric and stylohyoid mm. and lies superficial to the hyoglossus m. with the accompanying v. of the hypoglossal n.
It passes deep to the mylohyoid m. and continues anterior in the genioglossus m.
Gives rise to muscular branches that supply all the intrinsic tongue muscles and the hyoglossus, genioglossus, and styloglossus mm.

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

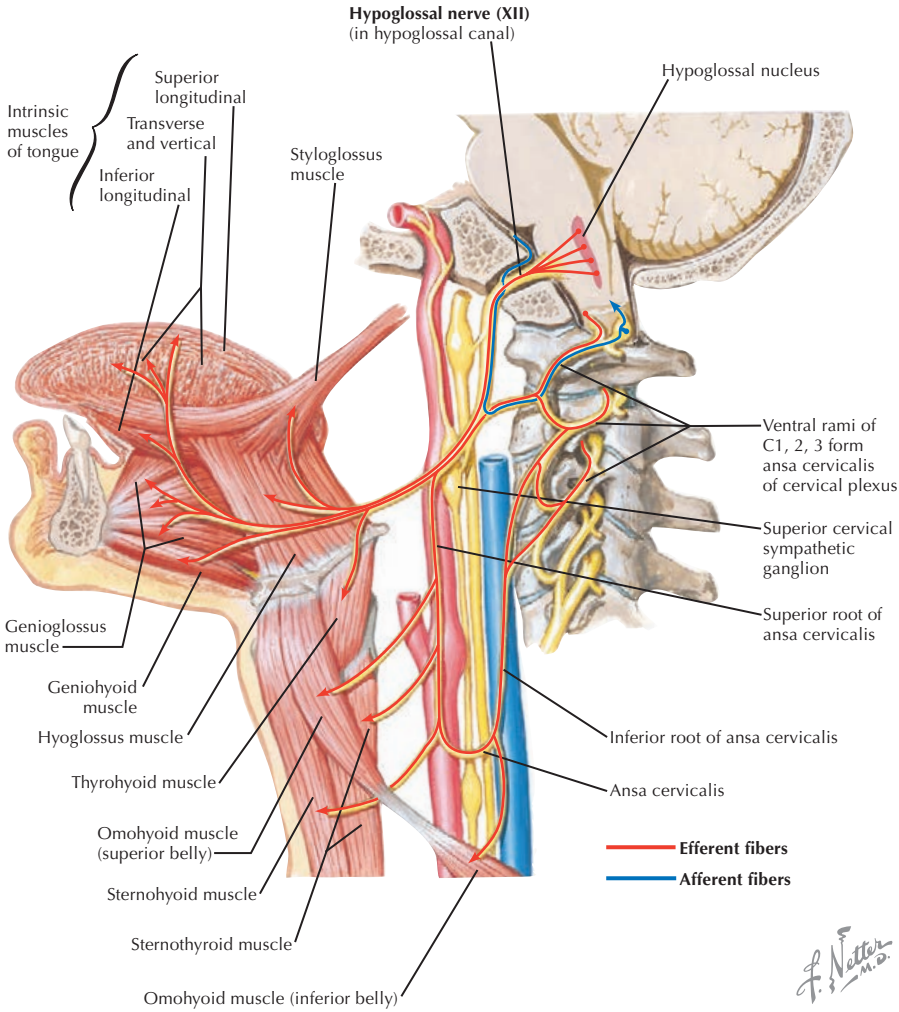
Nerve Supply of the Neck

CRANIAL NERVES OF THE NECK *CONTINUED*



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

CRANIAL NERVES OF THE NECK *CONTINUED*



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Nerve Supply of the Neck

SENSORY INNERVATION OF THE NECK

Skin of the neck receives sensory innervation from both dorsal and ventral rami

Dorsal ramus of C1 lacks sensory fibers and does not contribute to the sensory distribution to the neck

Dorsal rami of C6 to C8 lack sensory fibers and do not contribute to the sensory distribution to the neck

Ventral rami provide most of the sensory innervation to the neck through the sensory branches of the cervical plexus

CERVICAL PLEXUS

Formed by C1 to C4 ventral rami

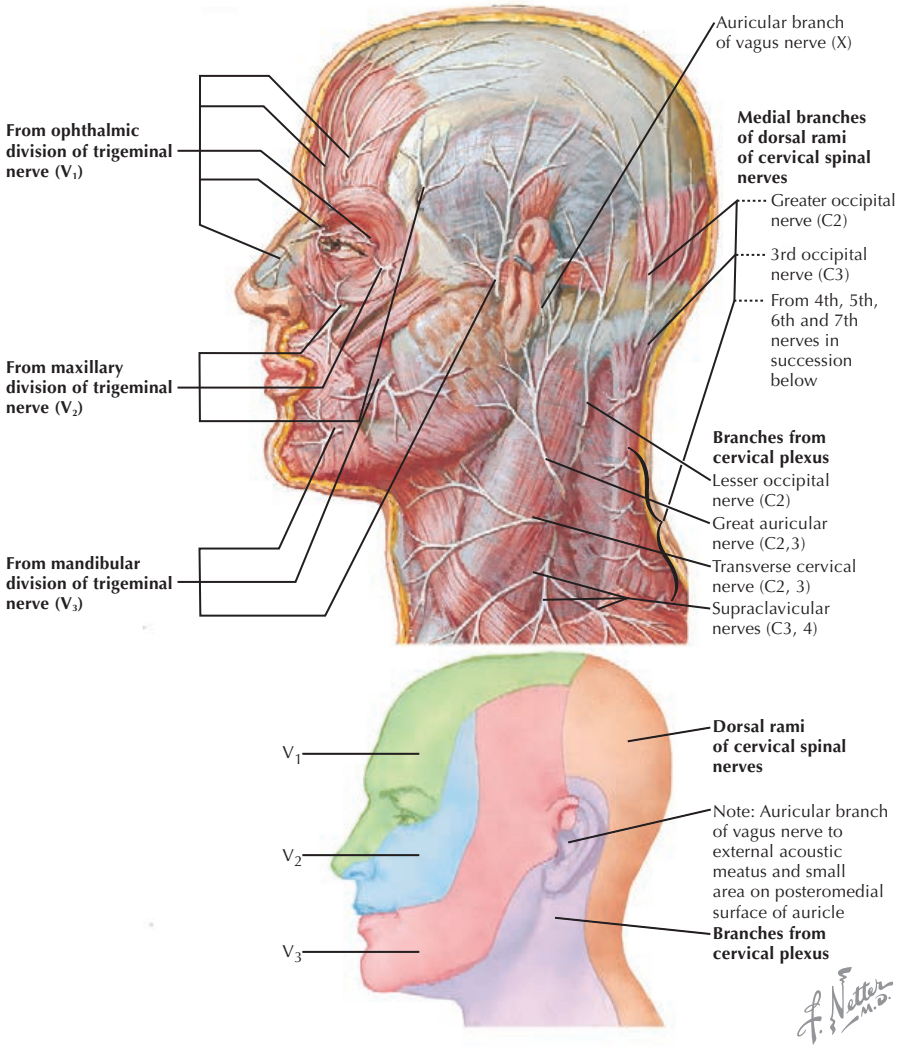
Originates deep to the sternocleidomastoid

Sensory branches pass along the posterior border of the muscle at Erb's point to travel to their destinations

VENTRAL RAMI		
Nerve	**Source**	**Comments**
Lesser occipital	Cervical plexus by contributions from the ventral ramus of C2	Passes posterior to the sternocleidomastoid m. at Erb's point Ascends posterior to the sternocleidomastoid along the posterior portion of the head Continues on the head posterior to the auricle supplying the skin in the region
Great auricular	Cervical plexus formed by contributions of ventral rami C2 and C3	Passes posterior to the sternocleidomastoid m. at Erb's point Ascends along the sternocleidomastoid, dividing into anterior and posterior branches: Anterior branch innervates the skin of the face over the parotid gland Posterior branch innervates the skin over the mastoid process, the posterior portion of the auricle, and the concha and lobule
Transverse cervical		Passes posterior to the sternocleidomastoid m. at Erb's point Crosses anteriorly along the sternocleidomastoid, dividing into ascending and descending branches Ascending and descending branches pass through the platysma m. to supply the skin of the neck from the region between the mandible and the manubrium
Supraclavicular	Cervical plexus formed by contributions of ventral rami C3 and C4	Passes posterior to the sternocleidomastoid m. at Erb's point Travels inferiorly in an oblique direction through the posterior triangle of the neck *Divides into 3 major branches:* • Medial supraclavicular—supplies the skin up to the midline • Middle supraclavicular—supplies the skin over the pectoralis major and deltoid m. region • Lateral supraclavicular—supplies the skin along the deltoid and anterior trapezius mm.
DORSAL RAMI		
Nerve	**Source**	**Comments**
Greater occipital	Dorsal ramus of C2	Ascends after emerging from the suboccipital triangle obliquely between the inferior oblique and semispinalis capitis mm. Passes through the trapezius m. and ascends to innervate the skin along the posterior part of the scalp to the vertex
3rd occipital	Branch of the dorsal ramus of C3 deep to the trapezius m.	Passes through the trapezius m. and ascends along in the skin of the inferior portion of the posterior surface of the head near the midline
Dorsal ramus of C4	Dorsal ramus of C4 deep to the trapezius m.	Passes through the trapezius m. and ascends along in the skin of the inferior portion of the posterior surface of the head near the midline
Dorsal ramus of C5	Dorsal ramus of C5 deep to the trapezius m.	Passes through the trapezius m. and ascends along in the skin of the inferior portion of the posterior surface of the head near the midline

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

SENSORY INNERVATION OF THE NECK *CONTINUED*



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Nerve Supply of the Neck

CERVICAL PLEXUS OF THE NECK

Arises from the ventral rami of C1 to C4

Divided into 2 parts:

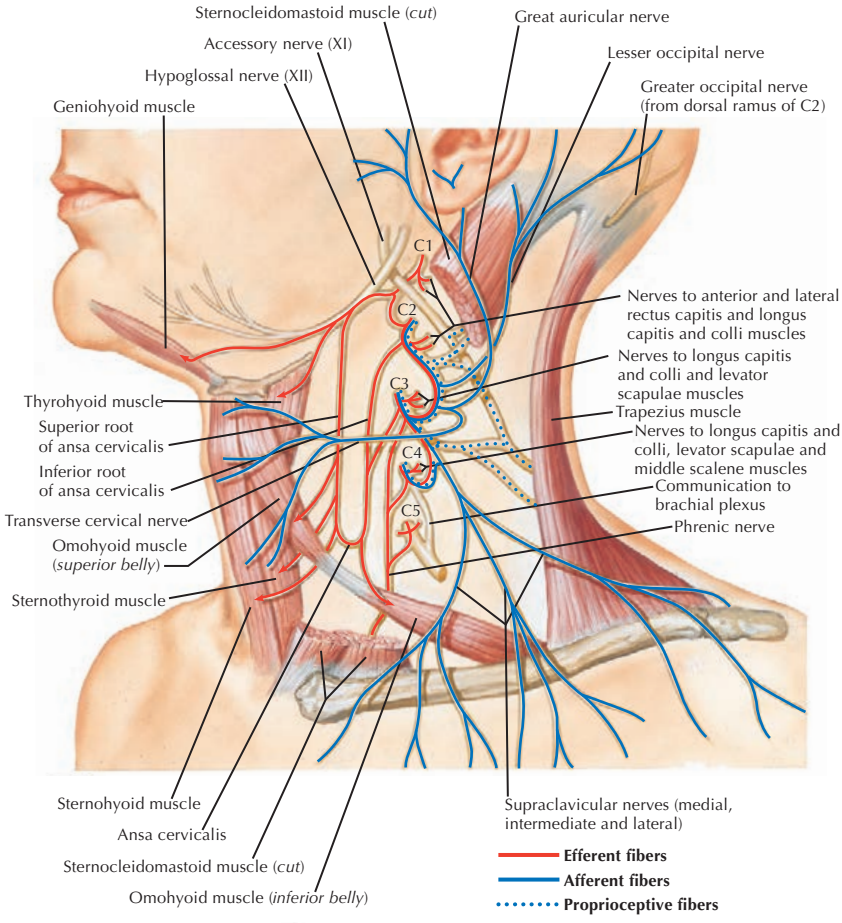
- Ansa cervicalis (motor component)
- Cutaneous branches (sensory component):
  - Lesser occipital
  - Transverse cervical
  - Great auricular
  - Supraclavicular

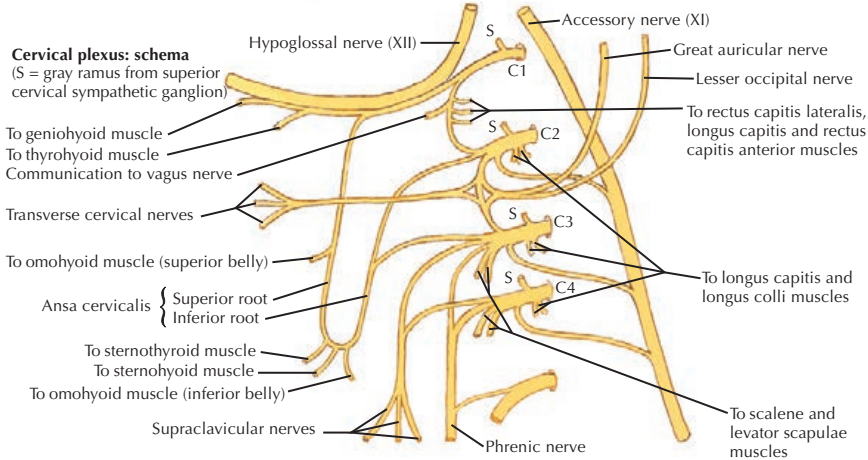
ANSA CERVICALIS	
Source	**Comments**
Ventral rami of C1 to C3	The motor component of the cervical plexus Innervates the: • Omohyoid • Sternohyoid • Sternothyroid **Divisions:** Superior root (descendens hypoglossi) Arises from the ventral ramus of C1, which passes anteriorly and joins the hypoglossal n., and the fibers travel together without mixing As the hypoglossal n. passes anteriorly toward the tongue, some of the fibers of C1 branch inferiorly to form the superior root of the ansa cervicalis Superior root joins the inferior root along the lateral border of the carotid sheath Some of the fibers from C1 continue to follow the hypoglossal n. to innervate the geniohyoid and thyrohyoid mm. Inferior root (descendens cervicalis) Arises from the ventral rami of C2 and C3 These branches unite to form the inferior root that unites with the superior root along the lateral border of the carotid sheath

CUTANEOUS BRANCHES		
Nerve	**Source**	**Comments**
Lesser occipital	Cervical plexus by contributions from the ventral ramus of C2	Passes posterior to the sternocleidomastoid m. at Erb's point Ascends posterior to the sternocleidomastoid along the posterior portion of the head Continues on the head posterior to the auricle supplying the skin in the region
Great auricular	Cervical plexus formed by contributions of ventral rami C2 and C3	Passes posterior to the sternocleidomastoid m. at Erb's point Ascends along the sternocleidomastoid dividing into anterior and posterior branches: Anterior branch innervates the skin of the face over the parotid gland Posterior branch innervates the skin over the mastoid process, the posterior portion of the auricle, and the concha and lobule
Transverse cervical		Passes posterior to the sternocleidomastoid m. at Erb's point Crosses anteriorly along the sternocleidomastoid dividing into ascending and descending branches Ascending and descending branches pass through the platysma to supply the skin of the neck from the region between the mandible and the manubrium
Supraclavicular	Cervical plexus formed by contributions of ventral rami C3 and C4	Passes posterior to the sternocleidomastoid m. at Erb's point Travels inferiorly in an oblique direction through the posterior triangle of the neck *Divides into 3 major branches:* • Medial supraclavicular—supplies the skin up to the midline • Middle supraclavicular—supplies the skin over the pectoralis major and deltoid m. region • Lateral supraclavicular—supplies the skin along the deltoid and anterior trapezius mm.

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

CERVICAL PLEXUS OF THE NECK *CONTINUED*



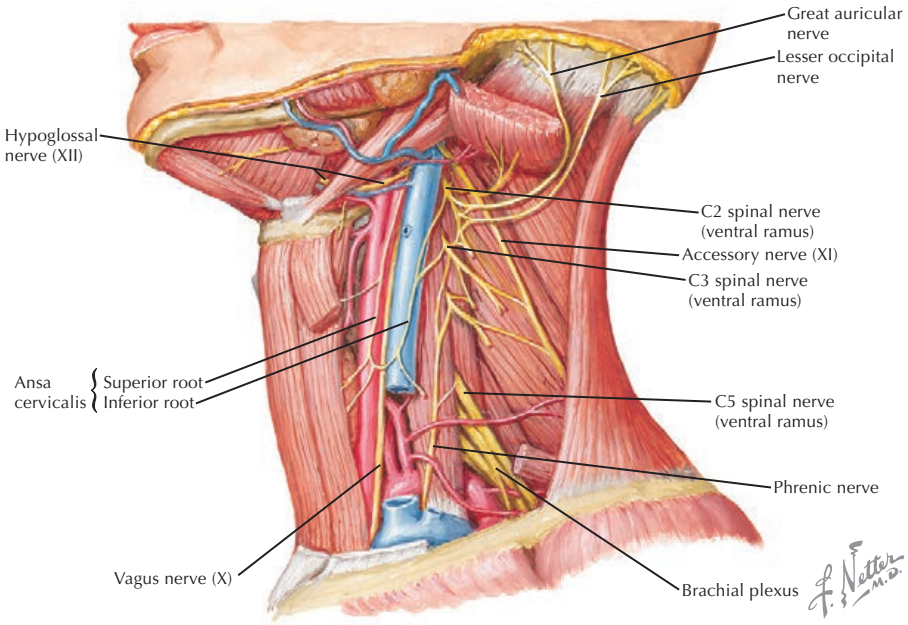


WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Nerve Supply of the Neck

VENTRAL RAMI NERVES OF THE NECK

Nerve	Source	Comments
Phrenic	Arises from the ventral rami of C3 to C5	Passes inferiorly along the anterior surface of the anterior scalene m. Eventually passes through the thorax to innervate the diaphragm
Brachial plexus	Ventral rami of C5 to C8 and T1 form the brachial plexus, which provides motor and sensory function to the upper limb	These rami pass between the anterior and the middle scalene mm. Ventral rami of C5 and C6 unite to form the upper trunk Ventral ramus of C7 continues as the middle trunk Ventral ramus of C8 to T1 form the inferior trunk These trunks continue to form the divisions of the brachial plexus that enter the axilla 3 branches of the brachial plexus are contained in the posterior triangle of the neck: • Dorsal scapular—arises from C5 and passes through the middle scalene before passing obliquely to the levator scapulae, which it innervates (along with the rhomboid major and minor mm.) • Long thoracic—arises from the ventral rami C5 to C7 to pass through the middle scalene before passing inferiorly to the serratus anterior, which it innervates • Suprascapular—arises from the upper trunk to pass through the posterior triangle of the neck to reach the supraspinatus and infraspinatus mm. by passing below the transverse scapular lig.



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

4 Nerve Supply of the Neck

SYMPATHETICS IN THE NECK

Sympathetic trunk extends into the neck from the thorax
In the neck, the sympathetic trunk typically has 3 ganglia:

- Superior cervical ganglion—located at the base of the skull
- Middle cervical ganglion—located at C6
- Inferior cervical ganglion—located immediately posterior to the vertebral artery near the vessel's origin

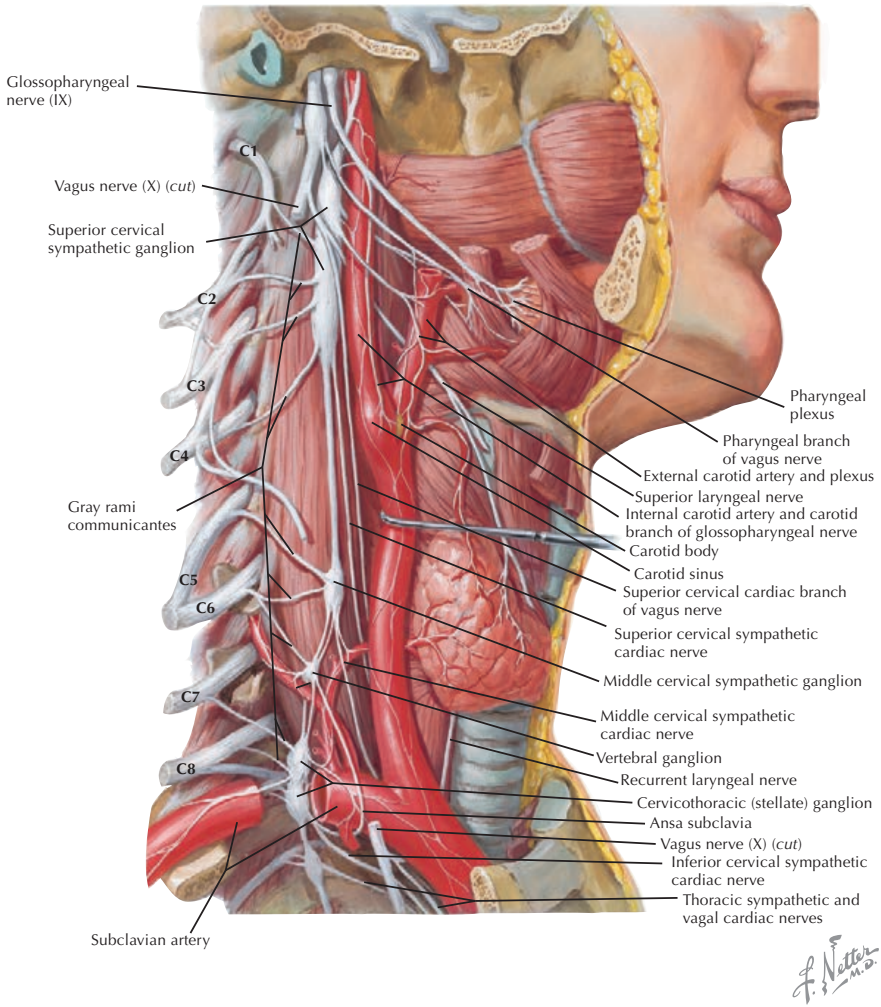
Often the inferior cervical ganglion unites with the 1st thoracic ganglion to create the stellate ganglion

Sympathetics for the head and neck arise in the intermediolateral horn column of the spinal cord from T1 to T4

These preganglionic fibers ascend through the sympathetic trunk to reach the cervical ganglia and synapse with the postganglionic neurons

Postganglionic neurons follow either of 2 paths:

- May travel to the spinal nerves via the gray ramus
- May follow the arterial supply to the effector organs of the head



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Clinical Correlate

TORTICOLLIS

Torticollis, also known as "wryneck," is a disorder in which the muscles of the neck are flexed, extended, or twisted in an abnormal position

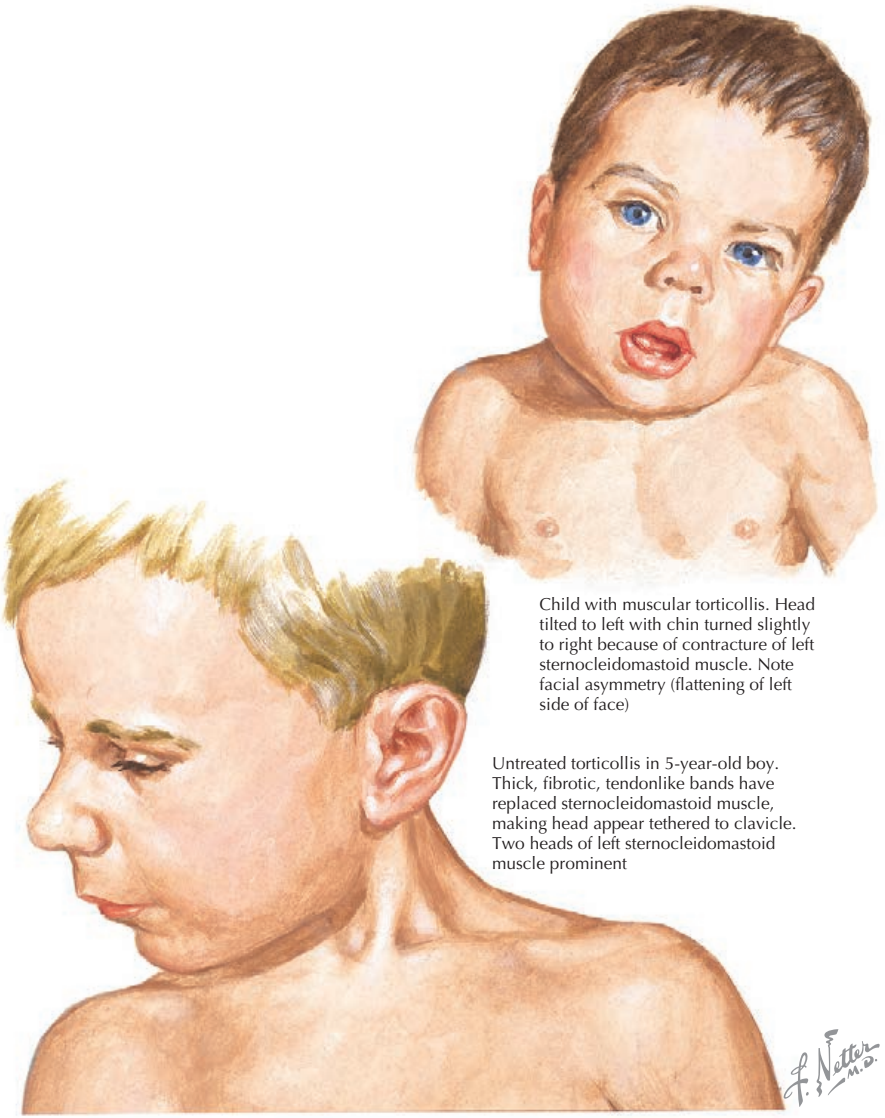
The sternocleidomastoid is the most commonly affected muscle

The neck typically twists to one side, leading to abnormal movements and postures of the head

In congenital muscular torticollis, the bent neck is caused by a tight sternocleidomastoid on one side of the body

Early treatment is important in preventing permanent deformities

Certain drugs, such as neuroleptic agents, can cause *dystonia*, a condition in which involuntary muscle contraction occurs in the neck, back, and trunk



Child with muscular torticollis. Head tilted to left with chin turned slightly to right because of contracture of left sternocleidomastoid muscle. Note facial asymmetry (flattening of left side of face)

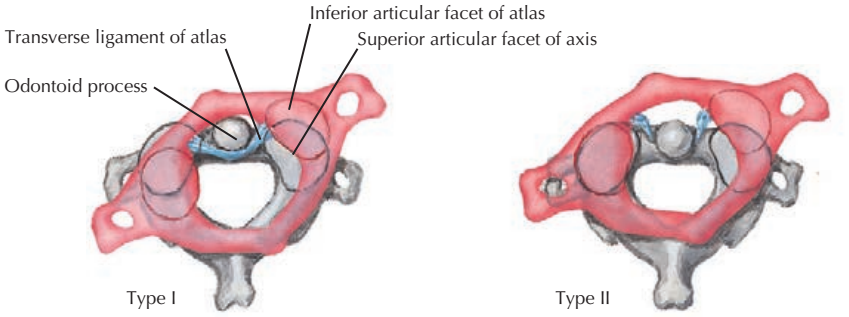
Untreated torticollis in 5-year-old boy. Thick, fibrotic, tendonlike bands have replaced sternocleidomastoid muscle, making head appear tethered to clavicle. Two heads of left sternocleidomastoid muscle prominent

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

TORTICOLLIS *CONTINUED*

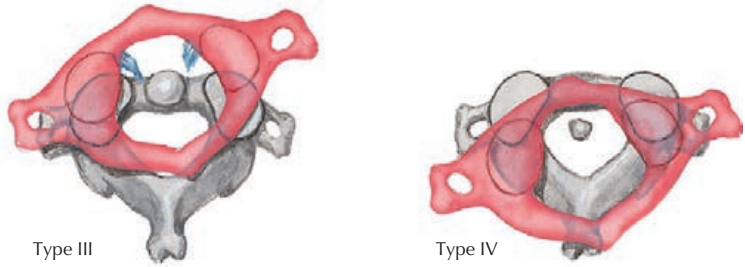
Nonmuscular Causes of Torticollis

Atlantoaxial rotatory subluxation and fixation (after Fielding and Hawkins)



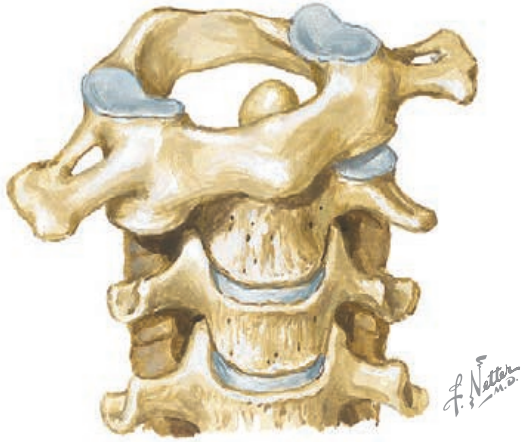
Rotatory subluxation of atlas about dens but transverse ligament intact. No anterior displacement

One articular facet subluxated, other acts as pivot; transverse ligament defective. Anterior displacement of 3–5 mm



Both articular facets subluxated, transverse ligament defective. Anterior displacement of >5 mm

Posterior rotatory subluxation (rare). Os odontoideum or absent or defective dens



Type I rotatory subluxation

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Clinical Correlate

HYPOTHYROIDISM

Hypothyroidism: a condition in which the thyroid gland does not produce enough thyroid hormones

The pituitary gland regulates the thyroid's normal production of the hormones thyroxine and triiodothyronine

The lack of hormones leads to an overall slowing of mental and physical activities

Congenital hypothyroidism is known as cretinism

CAUSES

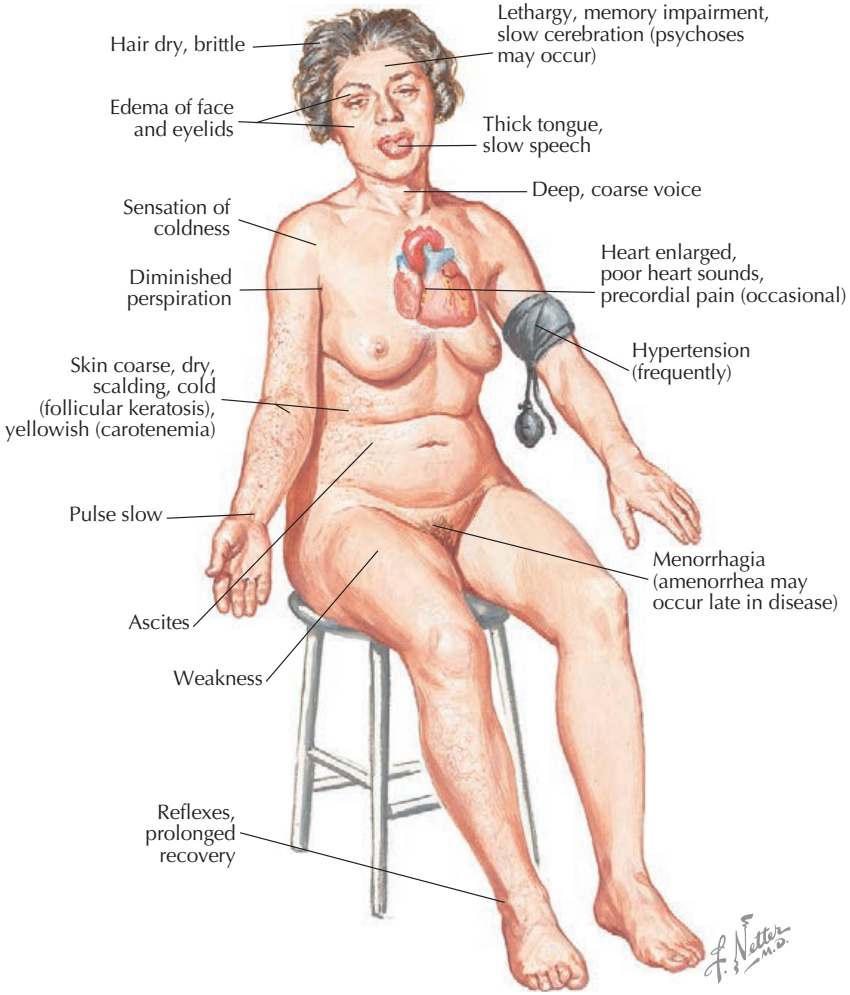
- Hashimoto's thyroiditis—immune system of the body attacks the gland
- Irradiation of the gland
- Surgical removal of the gland
- Congenital defects

RISK FACTORS

- Obesity
- Age older than 50 years
- Female gender

CLINICAL MANIFESTATIONS

- Fatigue
- Weakness
- Slow pulse
- Edema of face
- Cold sensations
- Dry and coarse skin
- Coarse voice



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

4 Clinical Correlate

HYPERTHYROIDISM

Hyperthyroidism: a condition characterized by hypermetabolism and elevated levels of thyroid hormones

Can lead to *thyrotoxicosis,* a toxic condition caused by excess thyroid hormones regardless of the cause

CAUSES

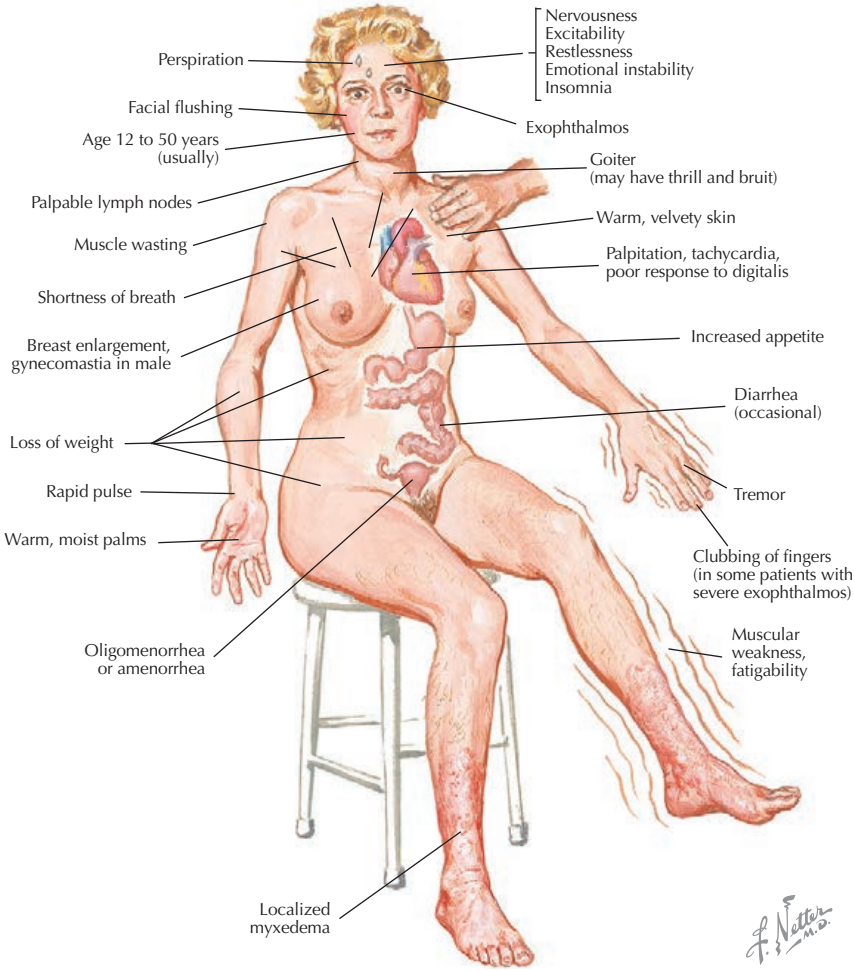
- Graves' disease—most common cause (in greater than 80% of all cases of hyperthyroidism), in which the body produces antibodies that stimulate the thyroid to synthesize excess thyroid hormones
- Benign growths of the thyroid or pituitary gland
- Thyroiditis
- Ingestion of excess thyroid hormones or iodine
- Gonadal tumors

CLINICAL MANIFESTATIONS

- Loss of weight
- Restlessness
- Nervousness
- Increased appetite
- Fatigue
- Goiter

TREATMENT

- Radioactive iodine—but too much can lead to hypothyroidism
- Surgery
- Antithyroid agents



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

CHAPTER 5

SCALP AND MUSCLES OF FACIAL EXPRESSION

Overview and Topographic Anatomy 154
Overview of the Scalp 156
Vascular Supply of the Scalp 157
Nerve Supply of the Scalp 159
Overview of Muscles of Facial Expression 161
Vascular Supply of the Face 168
Nerve Supply of the Face 175
Clinical Correlates 182

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

5 Overview and Topographic Anatomy

GENERAL INFORMATION

SCALP

The area bordered by the forehead, superior part of the cranium, and occipital area immediately superior to the superior nuchal line

The lateral portion of the scalp blends with the temporal area because it extends inferiorly to the zygomatic arch

Anatomy of the scalp is important because of frequent trauma in this region

FACE

The area bordered within the hairline, anterior border of the auricles, and the chin

Major contents: eyes, nose, mouth, muscles of facial expression, muscles of mastication, parotid gland, trigeminal nerve, and facial nerve

BONES

Bones of the facial skeleton:

- Frontal bone
- Zygomatic bone (zygoma)
- Maxilla
- Palatine bone
- Nasal bone
- Mandible

Besides the nasal bone, the most commonly fractured bone of the facial skeleton is the zygomatic bone

MUSCLES OF FACIAL EXPRESSION

Innervated by the facial nerve

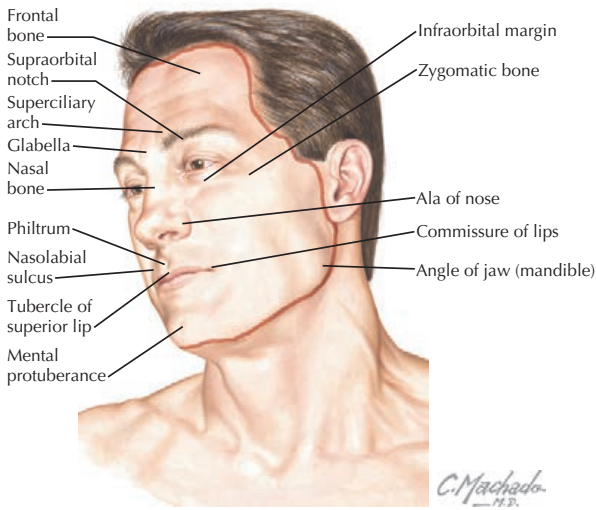
Derivatives of the 2nd pharyngeal arch

Originate from either bone or fascia and insert on the skin

The Superficial Muscular Aponeurotic System (SMAS) is a term used to describe the relationship of the muscles of facial expression located within the superficial fascia

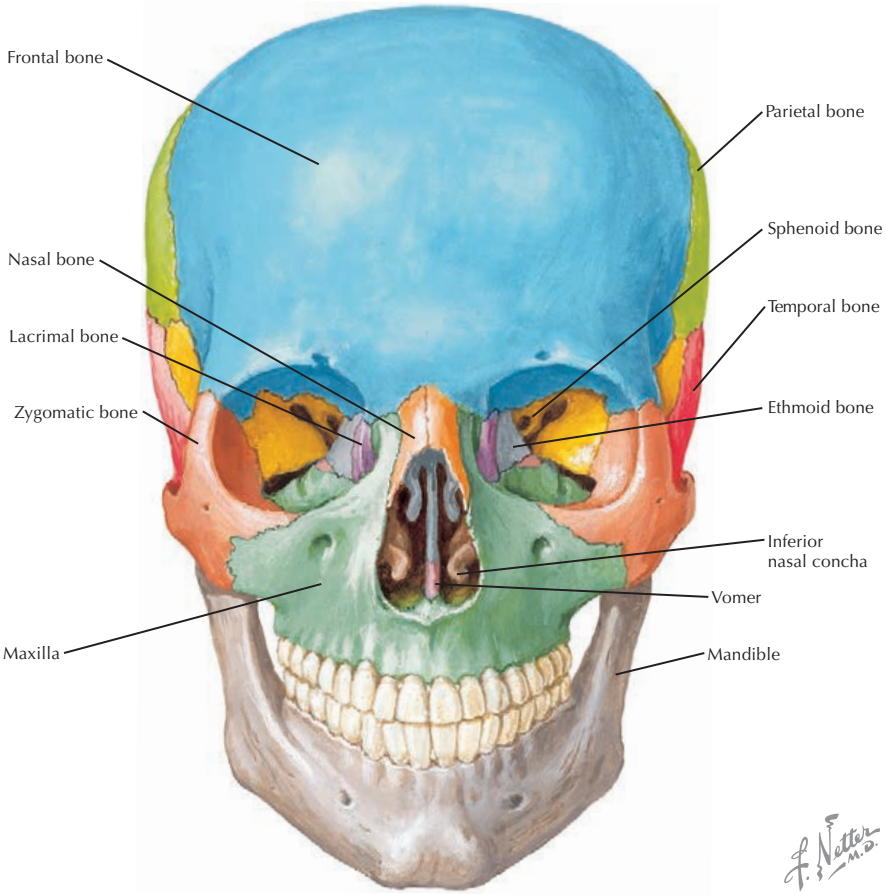
The SMAS is maneuvered in a rhytidectomy (facelift)

There is no deep fascia along the face



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

GENERAL INFORMATION *CONTINUED*

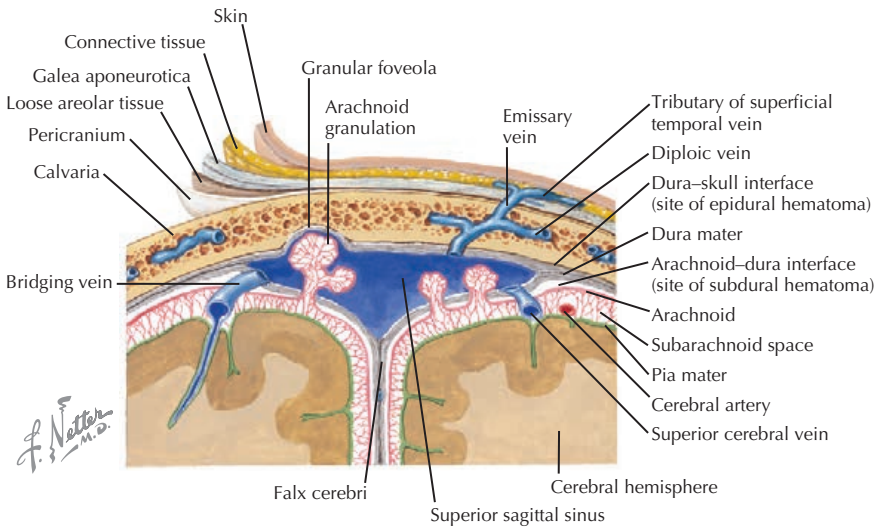


WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

5 Overview of the Scalp

GENERAL INFORMATION

Layer	Description
Skin	Thickest layer of the scalp Contains the hair follicles
Connective tissue	Heavily vascularized Arteries, veins, and nerves of the scalp are located here Emissary veins connect this layer to the dural venous sinuses, providing channel for infections to spread Head wounds that pierce the skin and connective tissue layers bleed profusely
Aponeurosis	Also called galea aponeurosis Continuous with the occipitofrontalis m.: anteriorly with the frontalis, posteriorly with the occipitalis Blends laterally with the temporal fascia Its surgical manipulation is important in cosmetic surgery Head wounds that pierce the skin, connective tissue, and aponeurosis layers bleed and gape open from the pull of the 2 bellies of the occipitofrontalis Skin, connective tissue, and aponeurosis layers are adherent and often called "scalp proper"
Loose areolar connective tissue	Thin and mobile Helps form a subaponeurotic layer that extends from the eyebrows to the superior nuchal line and external occipital protuberance Allows substances such as bacteria and blood to pass freely Separates with scalp avulsion
Pericranium	Covers the outer surface of the cranium



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Vascular Supply of the Scalp

GENERAL INFORMATION

Highly vascularized; the vessels anastomose freely on the scalp

Arteries are derived from the external and the internal carotid arteries

The neurovascular supply arises from the anterior, lateral, and posterior scalp regions

ARTERIAL SUPPLY		
Artery	**Source**	**Course**
Supratrochlear	Ophthalmic a. from the internal carotid a.	Exits the orbit at the medial angle accompanied by supratrochlear n. Ascends on the scalp Anastomoses with the contralateral supraorbital and supratrochlear aa.
Supraorbital		Branches from the ophthalmic a. as the artery passes the optic n. Passes medially to the levator palpebrae superioris and superior rectus mm. to join the supraorbital n. Passes through the supraorbital foramen (notch) and ascends superiorly along the scalp Anastomoses with the supratrochlear and superficial temporal aa.
Superficial temporal	1 of 2 external carotid a. terminal branches	Begins posterior to the neck of the mandible and travels superiorly as a continuation of the external carotid a. Joined by the auriculotemporal n. Anastomoses with a majority of other branches supplying the scalp
Posterior auricular	External carotid a.	Arises within the parotid gland Passes superiorly between the mastoid process and the cartilage of the ear Anastomoses with the superficial temporal and occipital aa.
Occipital		Branches along the inferior margin of the posterior belly of the digastric and stylohyoid mm. Hypoglossal n. wraps around it from the posterior part of the vessel, traveling anteriorly Passes posteriorly along the mastoid process, making a groove on the bone Pierces the fascia that connects the attachment of the trapezius with the sternocleidomastoid m. Ascends in the connective tissue layer of the scalp, dividing into many branches The terminal part is accompanied by the greater occipital n. Anastomoses with the posterior auricular and superficial temporal aa.

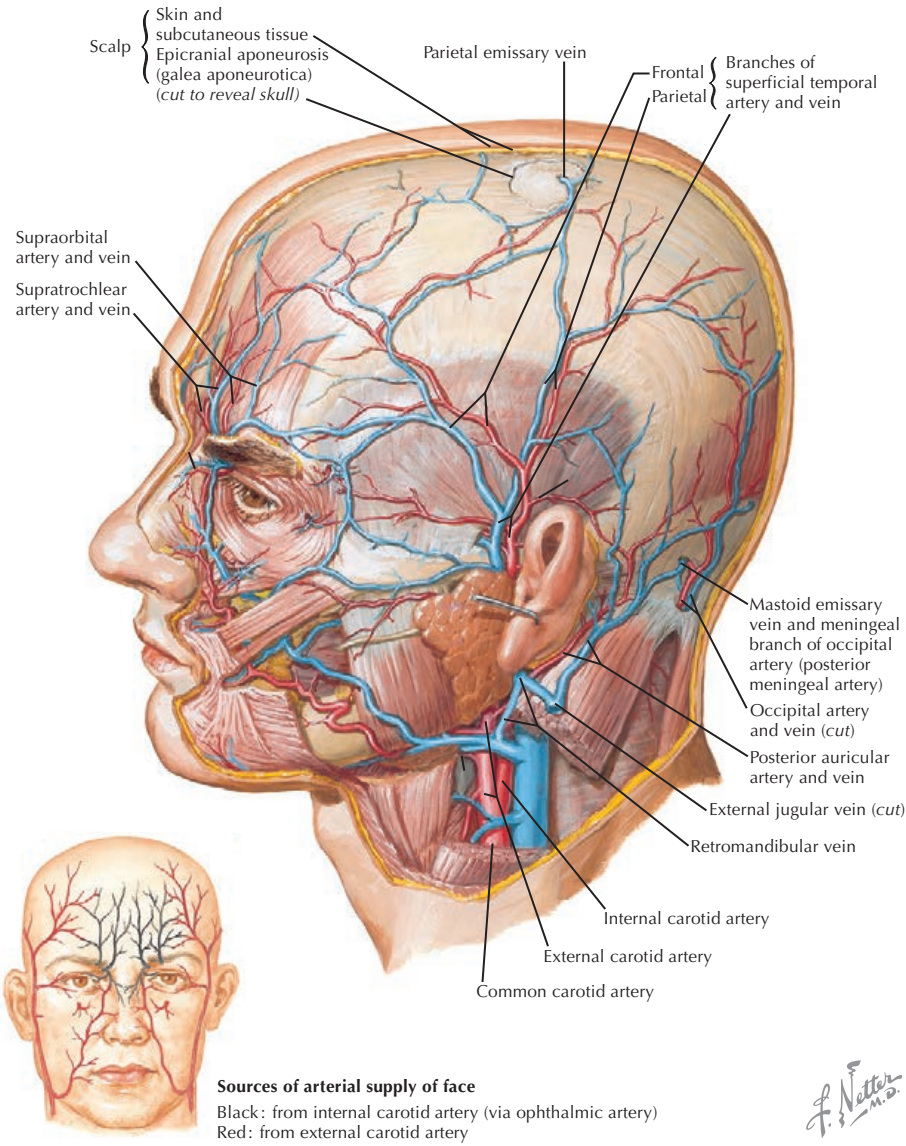
VENOUS DRAINAGE

Vein	Course
Supratrochlear	Begins on the forehead, where it communicates with the superficial temporal v. Passes inferiorly along the forehead parallel with the vein of the opposite side At the medial angle of the orbit, it joins the supraorbital and the angular v.
Supraorbital	Begins on the forehead, where it communicates with the superficial temporal v. Passes inferiorly superficial to the frontalis m. and joins the supratrochlear v. at the medial angle of the orbit and the angular v.
Superficial temporal	Descends posterior to the zygomatic root of the temporal bone alongside the auriculotemporal n. to enter the substance of the parotid gland Unites with the maxillary v. to form the retromandibular v.
Posterior auricular	Begins on the side of the scalp, posterior to the auricle Passes inferiorly and joins the posterior division of the retromandibular v. to form the external jugular v.
Occipital	Begins on the posterior portion of the scalp at the vertex Passes from superficial to deep by passing through the attachment of the sternocleidomastoid m. to the skull Has a mastoid emissary v. that connects it to the transverse sinus The vein's termination is variable, but it usually passes inferiorly to join the internal jugular v.

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Vascular Supply of the Scalp

VENOUS DRAINAGE *CONTINUED*



Sources of arterial supply of face

Black: from internal carotid artery (via ophthalmic artery)
Red: from external carotid artery

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Nerve Supply of the Scalp

SENSORY DISTRIBUTION

Sensory supply is derived from all 3 divisions of the trigeminal nerve, branches of the cervical plexus, and upper cervical dorsal rami

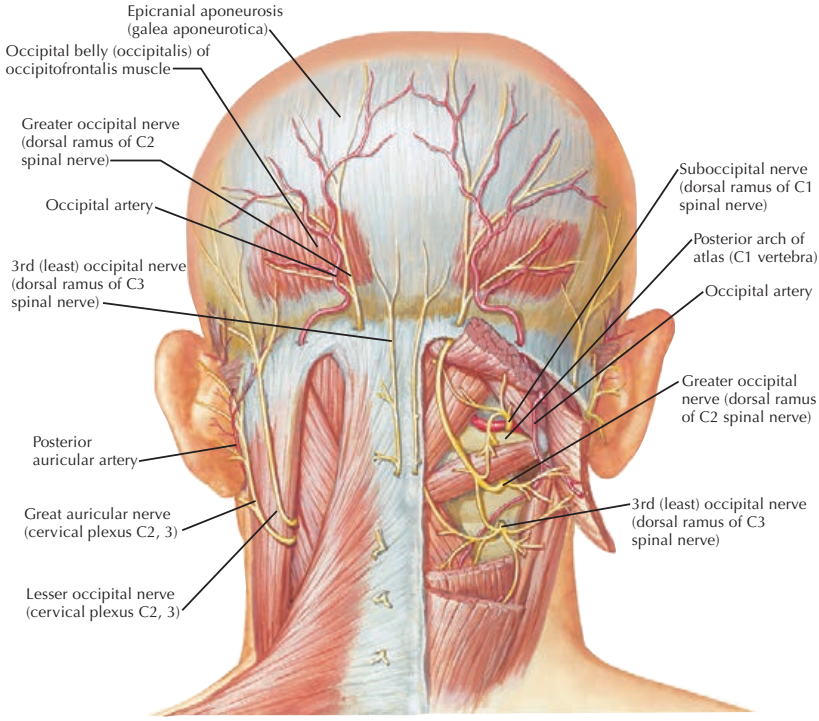
These nerves travel in the scalp's connective tissue layer

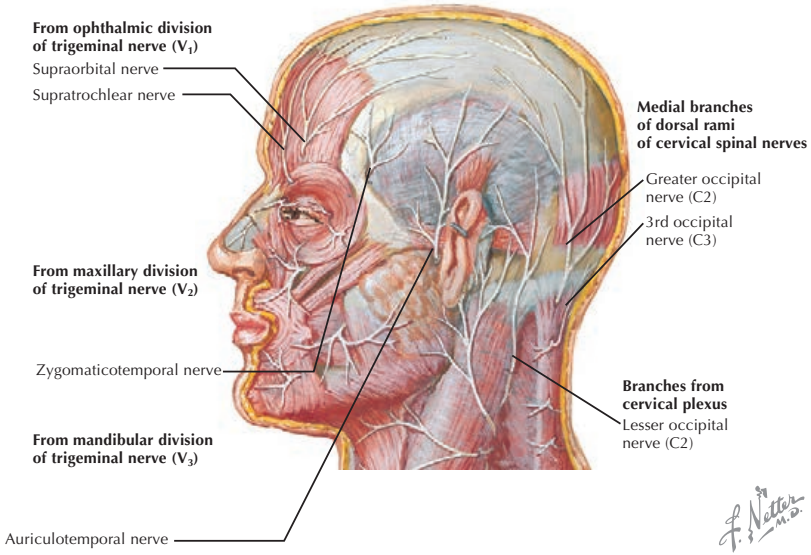
SENSORY NERVES OF THE SCALP		
Nerve	**Source**	**Course**
Supratrochlear	Arises from the ophthalmic division of the trigeminal n.; 1 of the 2 terminal branches of the frontal n. in the orbit	Continues to pass anteriorly toward the trochlea once the supratrochlear a. joins it within the orbit In the trochlear region, it often supplies the frontal sinus before exiting the orbit Ascends along the scalp, at first deep to the musculature in the region, before piercing them to reach the cutaneous innervation along the scalp
Supraorbital		Passes between the levator palpebrae superioris m. and periosteum of the orbit Continues anteriorly to the supraorbital foramen (notch) At the level of the supraorbital margin, the supraorbital n. supplies the frontal sinus and ascends superiorly along the scalp Divides into medial and lateral branches that travel to the vertex of the scalp
Zygomaticotemporal	Maxillary division of the trigeminal n.	Arises from the zygomatic n. in the pterygopalatine fossa, and passes through the inferior orbital fissure to enter the lateral wall of the orbit and branches into the zygomaticotemporal and zygomaticofacial branches Passes on the lateral wall of the orbit in a groove in the zygomatic bone, then through a foramen in the zygomatic bone to enter the temporal fossa region Within the temporal fossa, it passes superiorly between the bone and the temporalis m. to pierce the temporal fascia superior to the zygomatic arch Passes along the skin of the side of the scalp
Auriculotemporal	Mandibular division of the trigeminal n.	Normally arises as 2 roots, between which the middle meningeal a. passes Runs posteriorly just inferior to the lateral pterygoid and continues to the medial aspect of the neck of the mandible Turns superiorly with the superficial temporal vessels between the auricle and the condyle of the mandible deep to the parotid gland On exiting the parotid gland, ascends over the zygomatic arch and divides into branches along the scalp
Lesser occipital	Arises from the cervical plexus from the ventral ramus of C2	Wraps around and travels superiorly along the posterior border of the sternocleidomastoid At the skull, it passes through the investing layer of deep cervical fascia and continues superiorly posterior to the auricle to supply the skin in the area
Greater occipital	Dorsal ramus of C2	Ascends between the obliquus capitis inferior and semispinalis capitis mm. in the suboccipital triangle Passes through the semispinalis capitis and trapezius mm. near their bony attachments Ascends on the back of the head with the occipital a. to supply the skin as far anterior as the vertex
3rd occipital	Dorsal ramus of C3	Arises deep to the trapezius m., passes through it, and ascends in the skin of the inferior portion of the posterior surface of the head near the midline

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Nerve Supply of the Scalp

SENSORY DISTRIBUTION *CONTINUED*





WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Overview of Muscles of Facial Expression

GENERAL INFORMATION

Innervated by the facial nerve

Derivatives of the 2nd pharyngeal arch

Insert into the skin to provide movement

Most muscles of facial expression are localized around the facial orifices

There is no deep fascia along the face

ORAL GROUP

Muscle	Origin	Insertion	Actions	Nerve	Comments
Orbicularis oris	*Bone*: anterior midline of the maxilla and mandible *Muscular*: angle of the mouth where fibers blend with levator anguli oris, depressor anguli oris, zygomaticus major, and risorius mm.	Skin along the mouth	Closes mouth Protrusion of lips Pursing of lips	Facial (buccal and mandibular branches)	Sphincter of the mouth Muscle fibers encircle the mouth
Depressor anguli oris	Mandible along area near the external oblique line	Angle of the mouth Some fibers blend and provide origin for the orbicularis oris m. Fibers overlap those of the depressor labii inferioris m.	Depresses the corners of the mouth Antagonizes the levator anguli oris m.	Facial (mandibular branches)	Antagonizes levator anguli oris m.
Levator anguli oris	Canine fossa of the maxilla (inferior to the infraorbital foramen)	Angle of the mouth Some fibers blend and provide origin for the orbicularis oris m.	Elevates the angle of the mouth	Facial (zygomatic and buccal branches)	In an infraorbital injection, the needle lies between the levator anguli oris and levator labii superioris mm.
Zygomaticus major	Zygomatic bone (anterior to the zygomaticotemporal suture)		Moves the angle of the mouth superiorly and laterally		Commonly called the "laughing muscle" owing to its action
Zygomaticus minor	Zygomatic bone (anterior to the zygomaticus major)	Lateral upper lip	Helps elevate the upper lip		Inserts between the levator labii superioris and zygomaticus major mm.

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Overview of Muscles of Facial Expression

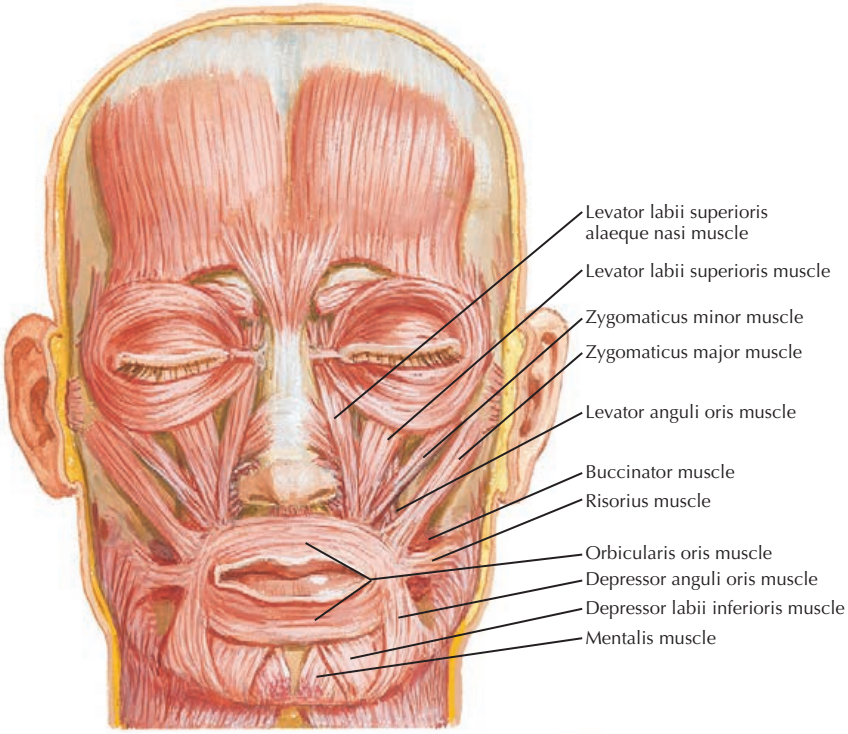
ORAL GROUP *CONTINUED*

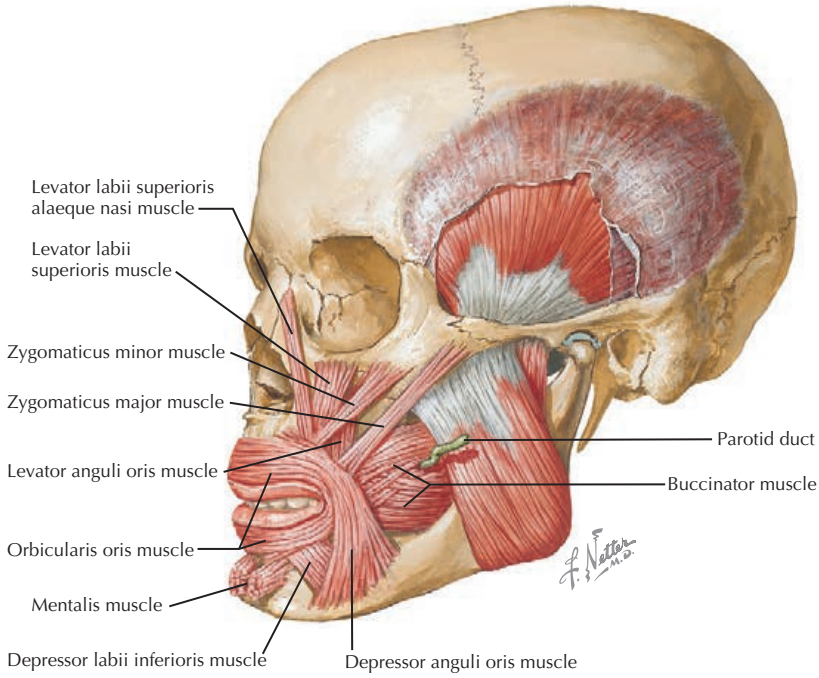
Muscle	Origin	Insertion	Actions	Nerve	Comments
Levator labii superioris	Maxilla (superior to the infraorbital foramen along the inferior margin of the orbit)	Lateral upper lip Some fibers blend and provide origin for the orbicularis oris m.	Elevates the upper lip	Facial (zygomatic and buccal branches)	In an infraorbital injection, the needle lies between the levator anguli oris and levator labii superioris mm.
Levator labii superioris alaeque nasi	Maxilla (near the bridge of the nose)	Cartilage of the nose Lateral upper lip	Elevates the upper lip Dilates the nostril		Also called the angular part of the levator labii superioris m.
Risorius	Fascia overlying the parotid gland	Angle of the mouth	Moves the angle of the mouth laterally	Facial (buccal branch)	Commonly called the "grinning muscle"
Depressor labii inferioris	Mandible (inferior to the mental foramen)	Fibers blend and provide origin for the orbicularis oris m.	Depresses the lower lip	Facial (mandibular branch)	Fibers of the depressor anguli oris m. overlap the fibers of the depressor labii inferioris m.
Mentalis	Incisive fossa of the mandible	Skin of the lower lip	Protrudes the lower lip		Used in "pouting"
Buccinator	Pterygomandibular raphe Alveolar margins of the maxilla and mandible	Some fibers blend and provide origin for the orbicularis oris Some fibers blend into the upper and lower lips	Aids in mastication keeping the bolus between cheek and teeth Helps forcibly expel air or create a sucking action	Facial (buccal branch)	Creates the framework of the cheek

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Overview of Muscles of Facial Expression

ORAL GROUP *CONTINUED*





WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Overview of Muscles of Facial Expression

NASAL GROUP

Muscle		Origin	Insertion	Actions	Nerve	Comment
Nasalis	Compressor naris	Maxilla	Compressor naris m. of opposite side	Compresses the nostril	Facial n.: buccal branch	Variable and occasionally absent
	Dilator naris		Nasal cartilage	Dilates the nostril		
Depressor septi			Nasal septum	Draws nasal septum anteriorly to constrict the nostril		Antagonistic to the dilator naris m.
Procerus		Nasal bone Lateral nasal cartilage	Skin of the bridge of the nose	Brings skin together producing transverse wrinkles on the bridge of the nose	Facial n.: temporal and zygomatic branches	Partially excised in some facelift procedures (rhytidectomy)

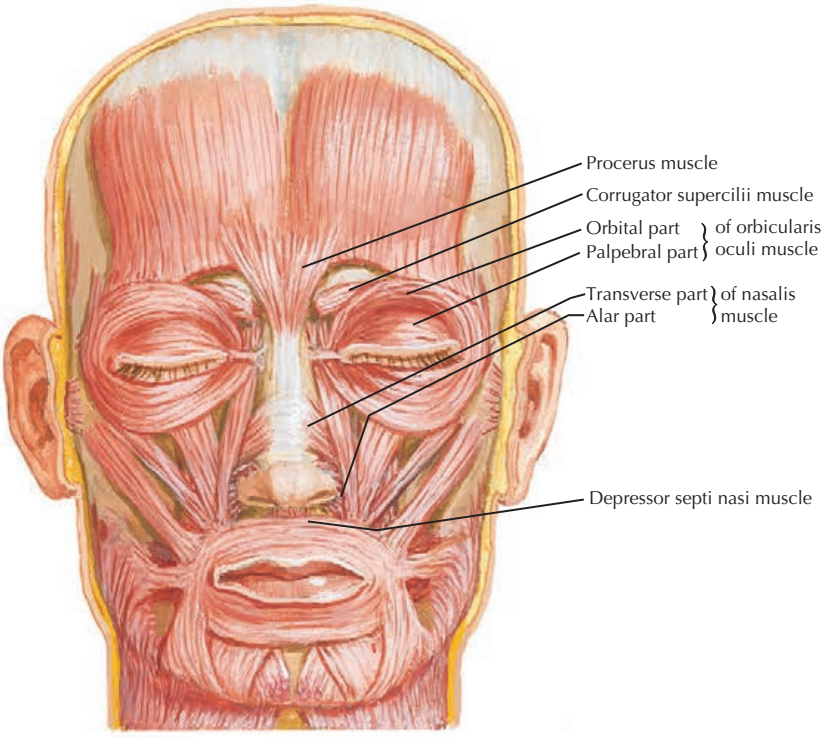
ORBITAL GROUP

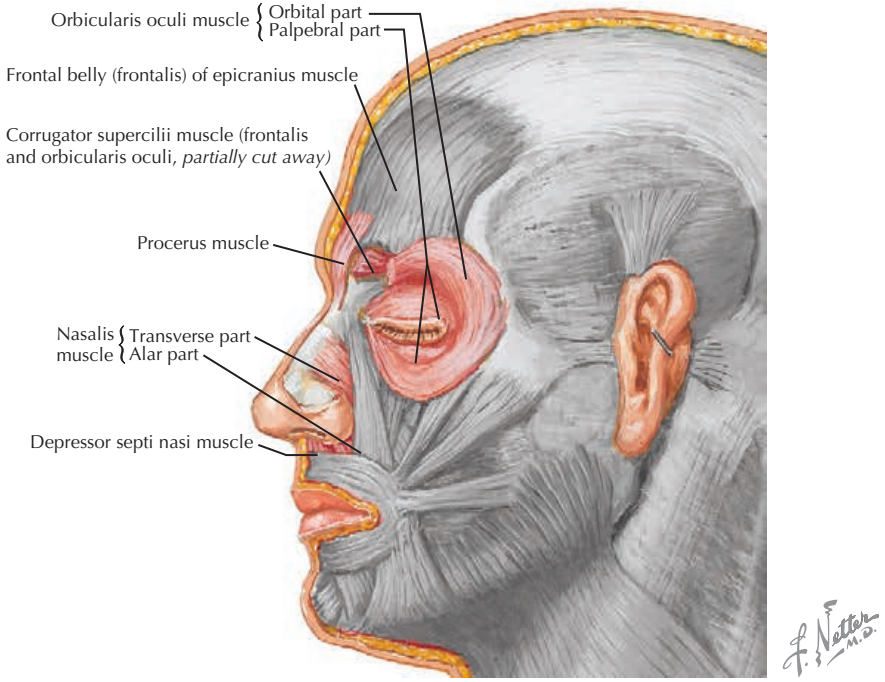
Muscle		Origin	Insertion	Actions	Nerve	Comment
Orbicularis oculi	Orbital	Frontal process of maxilla Nasal portion of frontal bone Medial palpebral ligament	Around the orbit	Forcible closure of the eye	Facial n.: temporal and zygomatic branches	Fat that accumulates around the eye from aging may be removed surgically (blepharoplasty)
	Lacrimal	Lacrimal bone	Lacrimal fascia around the lacrimal canaliculi	Aids the flow of tears		Because the orbicularis oculi m. moves the skin around the eye, its attachment is extremely important
	Palpebral	Medial palpebral ligament	Lateral palpebral raphe	Closure of eyelids gently (blinking)		
Corrugator supercilii		Frontal bone (supraorbital ridge)	Middle of the eyebrow	Draws the eyebrows medially and inferiorly	Facial n.: temporal branch	Fibers lie deep to the orbicularis oculi m.

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Overview of Muscles of Facial Expression

NASAL GROUP *CONTINUED*





WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Overview of Muscles of Facial Expression

AURICULAR GROUP

Muscle		Origin	Insertion	Actions	Nerve	Comment
Auricular	Anterior	Galea aponeurosis	Helix	Draws auricle anteriorly	Facial n.: temporal branch	These muscles usually provide little movement and tend to not always be voluntary
	Superior		Superior part of the auricle	Draws auricle superiorly		
	Posterior	Mastoid process	Posterior part of the auricle	Draws auricle posteriorly	Facial n.: posterior auricular branch	

SCALP GROUP (OCCIPITOFRONTALIS)

Muscle	Origin	Insertion	Actions	Nerve	Comment
Frontalis	Galea aponeurosis	Galea aponeurosis	Elevates eyebrows Wrinkles forehead Wrinkles the back of the head	Facial n.: temporal branch	Has no bony attachment Surgical management important in cosmetic surgery
Occipitalis	Superior nuchal line Mastoid process			Facial n.: posterior auricular branch	

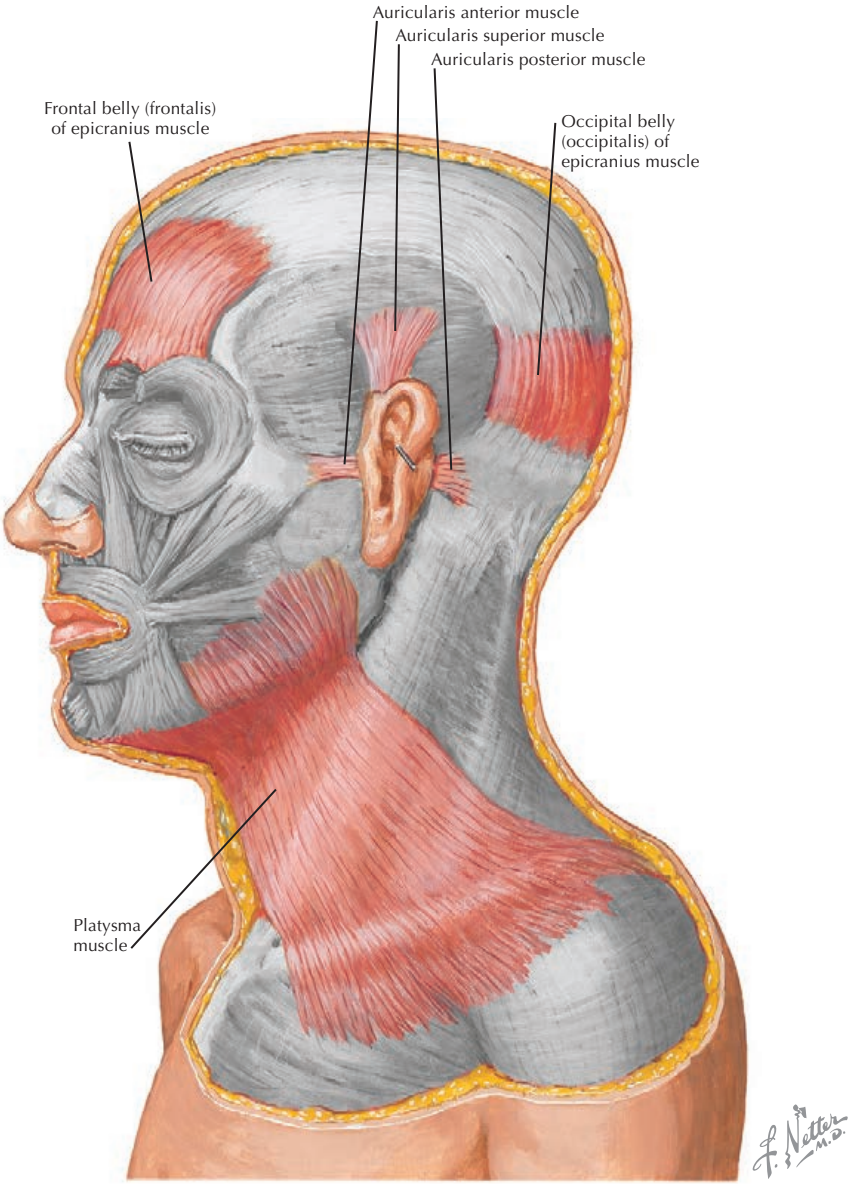
NECK GROUP

Muscle	Origin	Insertion	Actions	Nerve	Comment
Platysma	Fascia of upper part of the pectoralis major m. and deltoid	Inferior border of the mandible Some fibers blend with the skin of the neck and lower face	Wrinkles the skin of the neck	Facial n.: cervical branch	The external jugular lies deep to the platysma m.

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Overview of Muscles of Facial Expression

AURICULAR GROUP *CONTINUED*



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

5 Vascular Supply of the Face

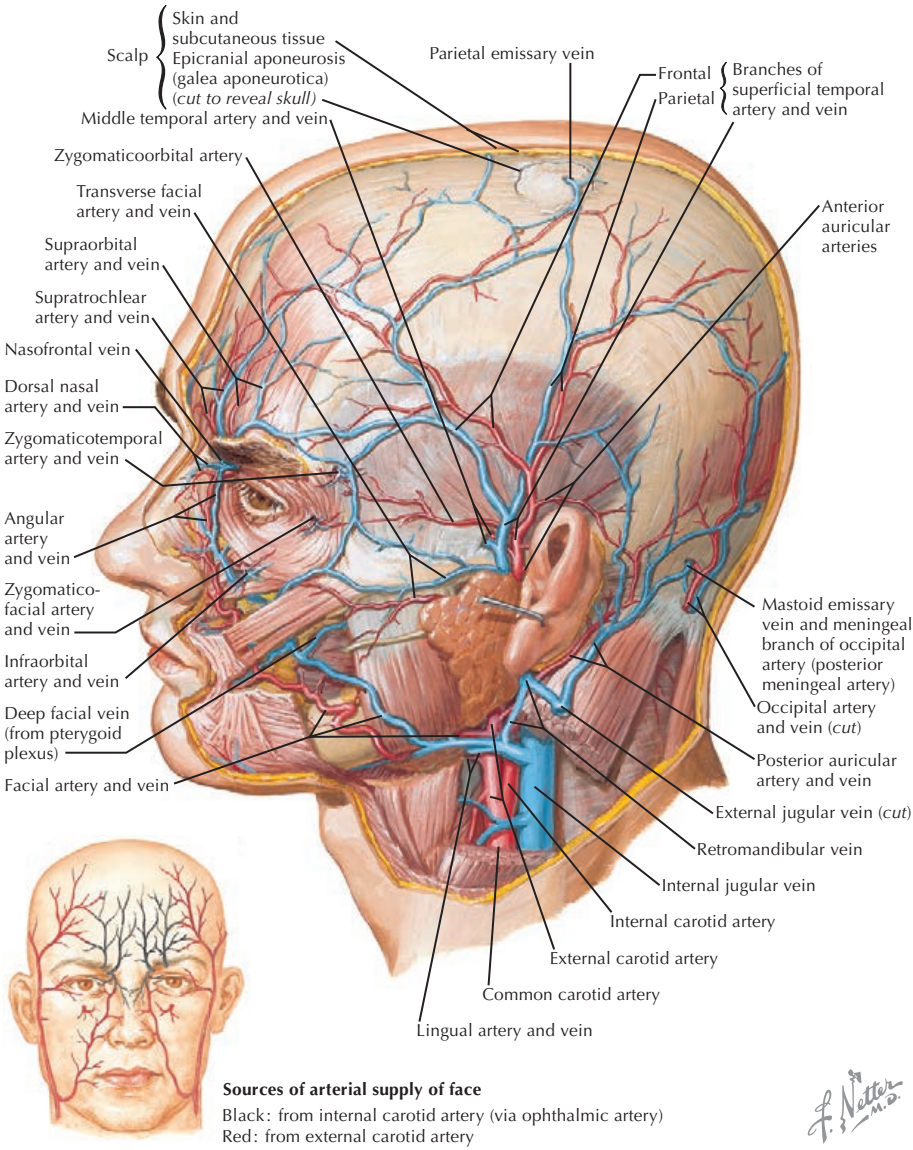
GENERAL INFORMATION

Most of the arterial supply to the face arises from the superficial temporal artery and facial branches of the external carotid artery

The maxillary branch of the external carotid supplies most areas that the superficial temporal and facial branches do not supply

The internal carotid artery supplies the anterior portion of the forehead and dorsal surface of the nose via ophthalmic artery branches

The arteries of the face anastomose freely



Sources of arterial supply of face

Black: from internal carotid artery (via ophthalmic artery)
Red: from external carotid artery

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Vascular Supply of the Face

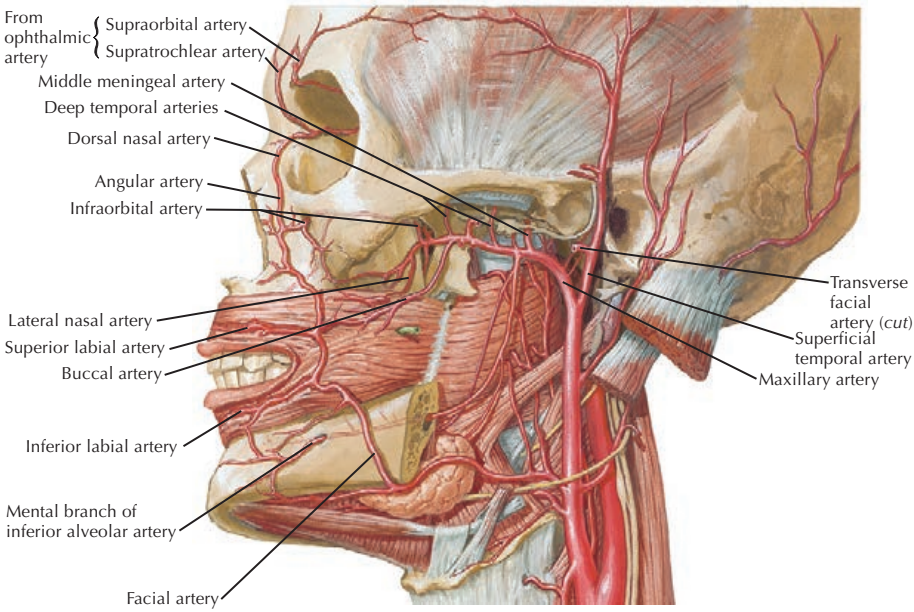
ARTERIAL SUPPLY

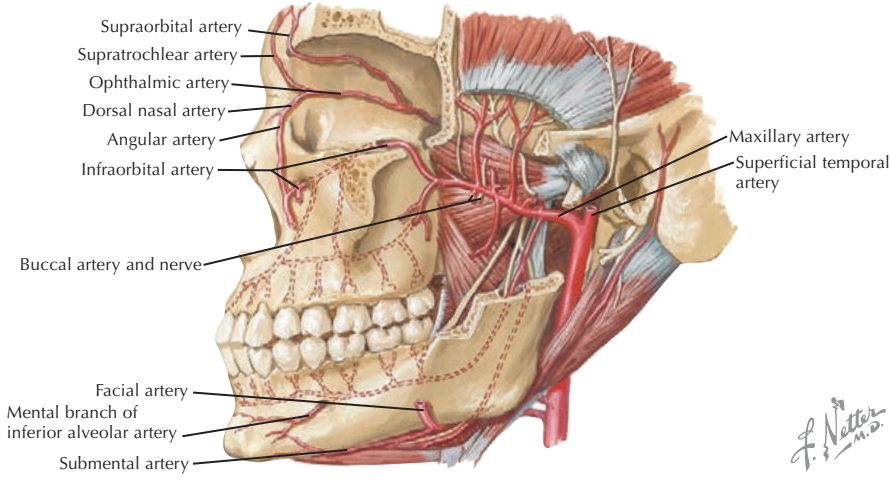
EXTERNAL CAROTID ARTERY AND ITS BRANCHES IN THE FACE		
Artery	**Source**	**Course**
Facial	External carotid a.	Arises in the carotid triangle of the neck Passes superiorly immediately deep to the posterior belly of the digastric m. and the stylohyoid mm. Passes along the submandibular gland, giving rise to the submental a. that helps supply the gland Passes superiorly over the body of the mandible at the masseter m. Continues anterosuperiorly across the cheek to the angle of the mouth, giving rise to the *superior and inferior labial* aa. Passes superiorly along the side of the nose, giving rise to the *lateral nasal* a. Continues on the side of the nose as the *angular* a. to terminate along the medial aspect of the eye Tortuous
Superior labial	Facial a.	Supplies the upper lip Gives rise to the septal branch that travels to the nasal septum
Inferior labial		Supplies the lower lip
Lateral nasal		Supplies the ala and nose
Angular		The facial a.'s terminal branch Passes superiorly to terminate at the medial angle of the orbit
Superficial temporal	External carotid a.	1 of the 2 terminal branches of the external carotid Arises posterior to the neck of the mandible and travels superiorly as a continuation of the external carotid a. Joined by the auriculotemporal n.
Transverse facial	Superficial temporal a.	Passes transversely before it exits the parotid gland Passes immediately superior to the parotid duct across the masseter m. and face
Maxillary	External carotid a.	1 of the 2 terminal branches of the external carotid a. Gives rise to a series of branches; only 3 provide blood supply to the face: the infraorbital, buccal, and mental
Infraorbital	Maxillary a.	The continuation of the 3rd part of the maxillary a. Accompanied by the infraorbital n. and v. Passes forward in the infraorbital groove and infraorbital canal and exits the infraorbital foramen On exiting the infraorbital foramen, it lies between the levator labii superioris and levator anguli oris mm. and follows the branching pattern of the nerve: Inferior palpebral (supplies the lower eyelid) Nasal (supplies the lateral side of the nose) Superior labial (supplies the upper lip)
Buccal		A branch of the 2nd part of the maxillary A small artery that runs obliquely in an anterior direction between the medial pterygoid m. and the insertion of the temporalis m. until it reaches the outer surface of the buccinator m. to supply it and the face
Mental		A terminal branch of the inferior alveolar a., which arises from the 1st part of the maxillary a. Emerges from the mental foramen to supply the chin region

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Vascular Supply of the Face

ARTERIAL SUPPLY *CONTINUED*





WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Vascular Supply of the Face

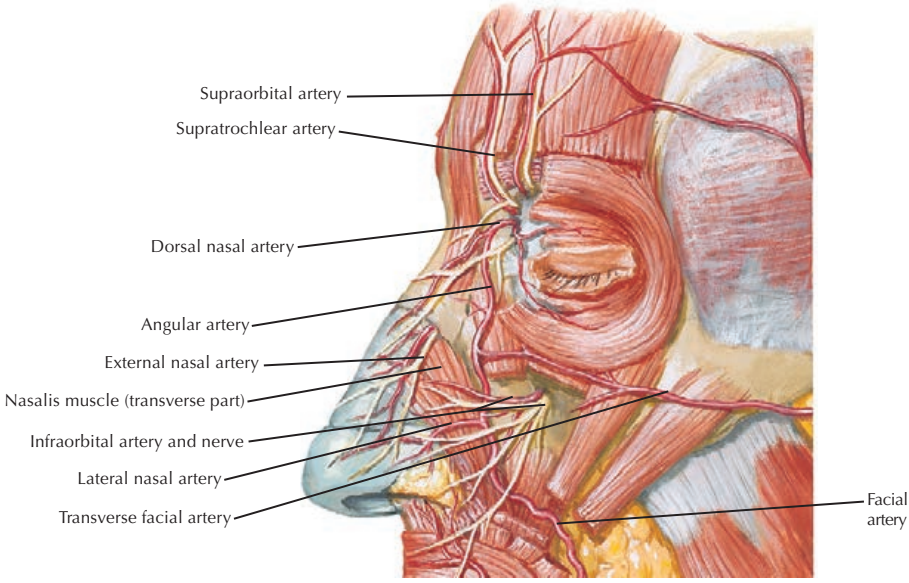
ARTERIAL SUPPLY

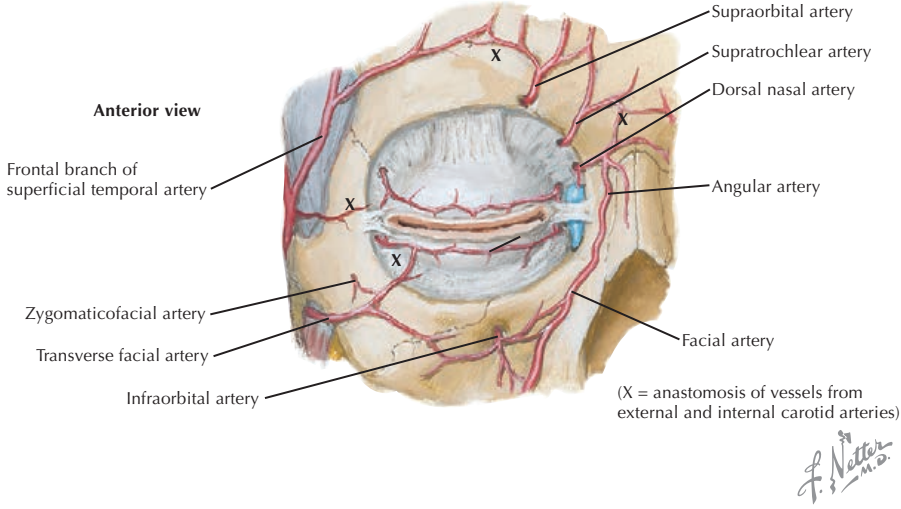
OPHTHALMIC ARTERY AND ITS BRANCHES	
Artery	**Course**
Ophthalmic	A branch of the internal carotid Enters the orbit through the optic foramen immediately inferior and lateral to the optic n. Crosses the optic n. to reach the medial part of the orbit *Within the orbit, besides the orbital branches, it gives rise to 5 major branches that supply the face*: • Supratrochlear • Supraorbital • Lacrimal • Anterior ethmoid • Dorsal nasal
Supratrochlear	Exits the orbit at the medial angle accompanied by supratrochlear n. Ascends on the scalp, anastomosing with the supraorbital and supratrochlear aa. from the opposite side
Supraorbital	Arises as the ophthalmic passes the optic n. Passes on the medial side of the levator palpebrae superioris and superior rectus mm. to join the supraorbital n. Passes through the supraorbital foramen (notch) and ascends superiorly along the scalp Anastomoses with the supratrochlear and superficial temporal aa.
Lacrimal	Arises near the optic foramen One of the largest branches of the ophthalmic a. Follows the lacrimal n. along the superior border of the lateral rectus m. of the eye to reach and supply the lacrimal gland Gives rise to a series of terminal branches that pass to the eyelids and conjunctivae Gives rise to a zygomatic branch that divides into the zygomaticotemporal and zygomaticofacial aa., to supply those facial regions
External nasal	A terminal branch of the anterior ethmoid a. Supplies the area along the external nose at the junction of the nasal bone and the lateral nasal cartilage
Dorsal nasal	One of the terminal branches of the ophthalmic a. Exits the orbit along the superomedial border along with the infratrochlear n. Supplies the area along the bridge of the nose

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Vascular Supply of the Face

ARTERIAL SUPPLY *CONTINUED*





WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Vascular Supply of the Face

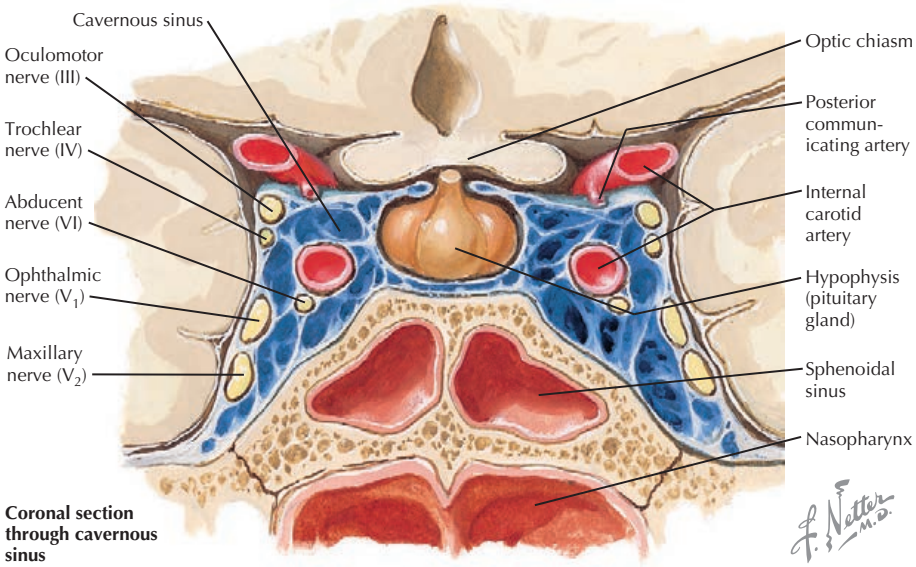
VENOUS DRAINAGE

Facial veins have similar distribution pattern to that for the arteries

Highly variable

Connect to the deeper vessels such as the pterygoid plexus and cavernous sinus

SUPERFICIAL VEINS	
Vein	**Course**
Facial	Begins as the angular v. Passes inferiorly along the side of the nose, receiving the lateral nasal v. Continues posteroinferiorly across the angle of the mouth to the cheek, receiving the superior and inferior labial vv. While passing toward the mandible, the deep facial v. connects it to the pterygoid plexus In the submandibular triangle, it joins the anterior branch of the retromandibular to form the common facial v. Has no valves that can allow blood to backflow
Superior labial	Drains the upper lip and joins the facial v.
Inferior labial	Drains the lower lip and joins the facial v.
Lateral nasal	Drains the ala and nose and joins the facial v.
Angular	Forms from the confluence of the supraorbital and supratrochlear vv. along the medial part of the eye Travels along the lateral aspect of the nose to become the facial v.
Supraorbital	Begins on the forehead, where it communicates with the superficial temporal Passes inferiorly superficial to the frontalis m. and joins the supratrochlear v. at the medial angle of the orbit to form the angular v.
Supratrochlear	Begins on the forehead, where it communicates with the superficial temporal vv. Passes inferiorly along the forehead parallel with the vein of the opposite side At the medial angle of the orbit, it joins the supraorbital v. to form the angular v.
Superficial temporal	Descends posterior to the zygomatic root of the temporal bone alongside the auriculotemporal n. to enter the substance of the parotid gland Unites with the maxillary v. to form the retromandibular v.
Transverse facial	Travels posteriorly to enter the parotid gland and join the superficial temporal v.
Buccal	Drains the cheek and joins the pterygoid plexus
Mental	Drains the chin and joins the pterygoid plexus



Coronal section through cavernous sinus

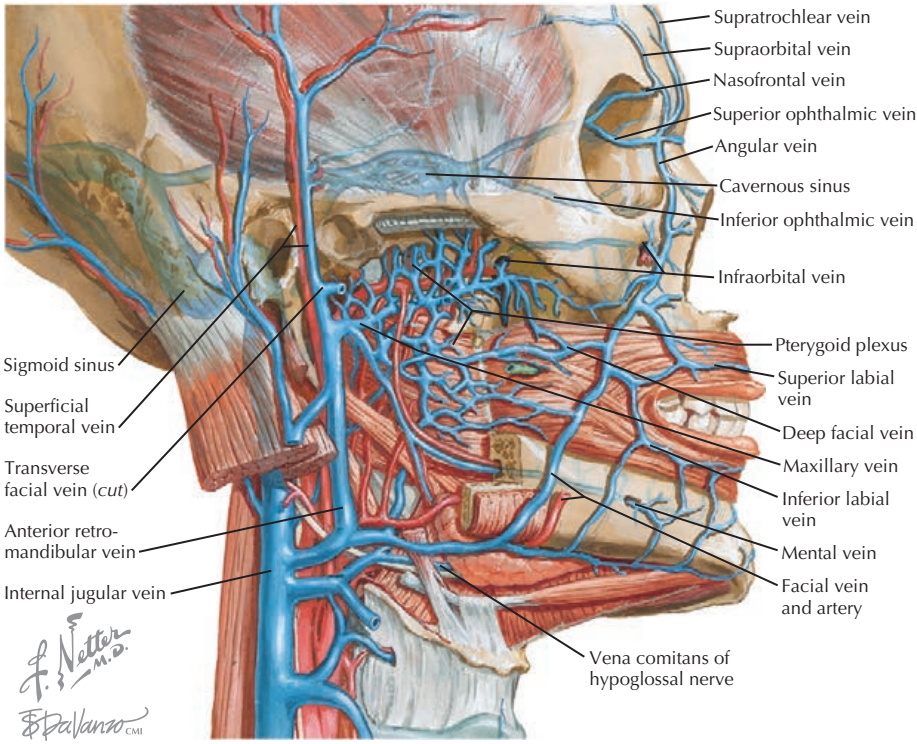
WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Vascular Supply of the Face

VENOUS DRAINAGE *CONTINUED*

COMMUNICATING VEINS	
Vein	**Course**
Superior ophthalmic	Receives blood from the roof of the orbit and the scalp Travels posteriorly to communicate with the pterygoid plexus and cavernous sinus
Inferior ophthalmic	Receives blood from the floor of the orbit Travels posteriorly with the infraorbital v., which passes through the inferior orbital fissure to communicate with the pterygoid plexus and the cavernous sinus
Infraorbital	Receives blood from the midface via the lower eyelid, lateral aspect of the nose, and the upper lip Eventually communicates with the pterygoid plexus
Deep facial	Connects the facial v. with the pterygoid plexus

DEEP VEINS	
Vein	**Course**
Cavernous sinus	A reticulated venous structure on the lateral body of the sphenoid bone Drains posteriorly into the superior and inferior petrosal sinuses Receives blood from the superior and inferior ophthalmic vv. The oculomotor and trochlear nn. and ophthalmic and maxillary divisions of the trigeminal n. lie along the lateral wall of the sinus Abducens n. and internal carotid artery lie in the sinus
Pterygoid plexus	An extensive network of veins that parallels the 2nd and 3rd parts of the maxillary a. Receives branches that correspond to the maxillary a.'s branches Tributaries of the pterygoid plexus eventually converge to form a short maxillary v. Communicates with the cavernous sinus, pharyngeal venous plexus, facial v. via the deep facial v., and ophthalmic vv.



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Nerve Supply of the Face

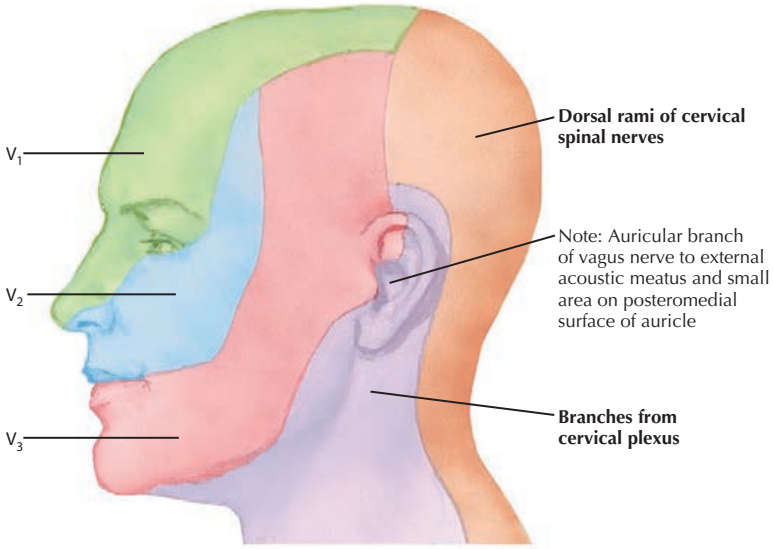
GENERAL INFORMATION

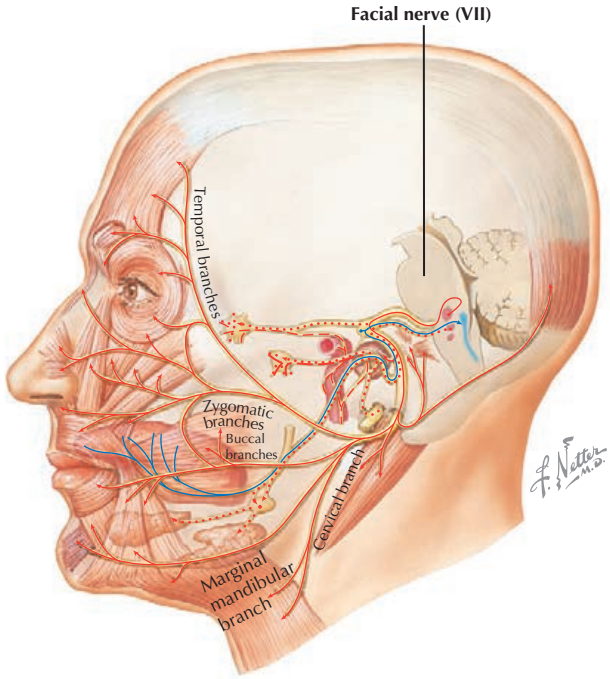
Many motor and sensory nerves supply the face

All motor nerves are from the facial nerve and supply the muscles of facial expression

Sensory nerves of the face are derived mainly from the 3 divisions of the trigeminal nerve (V_1, V_2, V_3)

Some sensory branches are from the cervical plexus





WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

5 Nerve Supply of the Face

SENSORY INNERVATION

TRIGEMINAL NERVE: OPHTHALMIC DIVISION		
Nerve	**Source**	**Course**
Ophthalmic division	Trigeminal n. in the middle cranial fossa	Passes anteriorly on the lateral wall of the cavernous sinus immediately inferior to the oculomotor and trochlear nn., but superior to the maxillary division of the trigeminal n. Immediately before entering the orbit, through the superior orbital fissure, it divides into 3 major branches: *lacrimal*, *frontal*, and *nasociliary*
Supratrochlear	From the ophthalmic division; the 2 terminal branches of the frontal n. in the orbit	Continues to pass anteriorly toward the trochlea, once the supratrochlear a. joins it within the orbit In the trochlear region, it often supplies the frontal sinus before exiting the orbit Ascends along the scalp, at first deep to the musculature in the region, before piercing it to reach the cutaneous innervation along the scalp
Supraorbital		Passes between the levator palpebrae superioris m. and orbital periosteum Continues anteriorly to the supraorbital foramen (notch) At the level of the supraorbital margin, it sends nerve supply to the frontal sinus and ascends superiorly along the scalp Divides into medial and lateral branches that travel up to the vertex of the scalp
Lacrimal	The smallest branch of the ophthalmic division	Passes anteriorly to enter the orbit through the superior orbital fissure Travels in the orbit on the superior border of the lateral rectus with the lacrimal a. Before reaching the lacrimal gland, it communicates with the zygomatic branch of the maxillary division of the trigeminal n. to receive autonomic nervous fibers Enters the lacrimal gland and supplies it and the conjunctivae before piercing the orbital septum to supply the skin of the upper eyelid
Infratrochlear	One of the terminal branches of the nasociliary	Passes anteriorly on the superior border of the medial rectus m. Passes inferior to the trochlea toward the medial angle of the eye Supplies the skin of the eyelids and bridge of the nose, the conjunctivae, and all of the lacrimal structures
External nasal	Arises from the anterior ethmoid n. (from the nasociliary n.)	Terminal branch of the anterior ethmoid n. Exits between the lateral nasal cartilage and the inferior border of the nasal bone Supplies the skin of the ala and apex of the nose around the nares

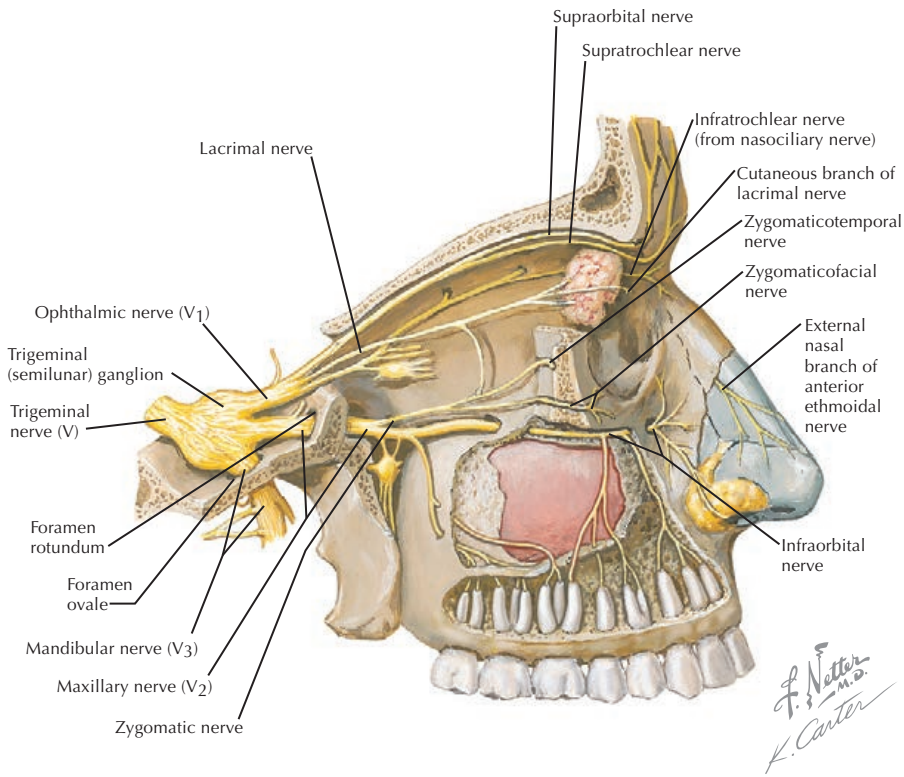
TRIGEMINAL NERVE: MAXILLARY DIVISION		
Nerve	**Source**	**Course**
Maxillary division	Trigeminal n. in the middle cranial fossa	Travels along the lateral wall of the cavernous sinus Before exiting the middle cranial fossa, it gives off a meningeal branch that innervates the dura mater Passes from the middle cranial fossa into the pterygopalatine fossa via the foramen rotundum Within the pterygopalatine fossa, it gives rise to 4 branches: *posterior superior alveolar n.*, *zygomatic n.*, *ganglionic branches*, and *infraorbital n.*
Zygomaticotemporal	Zygomatic branch of the maxillary division	Arises from the zygomatic n. in the pterygopalatine fossa, which passes through the inferior orbital fissure to enter the orbit, dividing into the zygomaticotemporal and zygomaticofacial Passes on the lateral wall of the orbit in a groove in the zygomatic bone, then through a foramen in the zygomatic bone to enter the temporal fossa region Within the temporal fossa, it passes superiorly between the bone and the temporalis m. to pierce the temporal fascia superior to the zygomatic arch Continues along the skin of the side of the scalp

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Nerve Supply of the Face

SENSORY INNERVATION *CONTINUED*

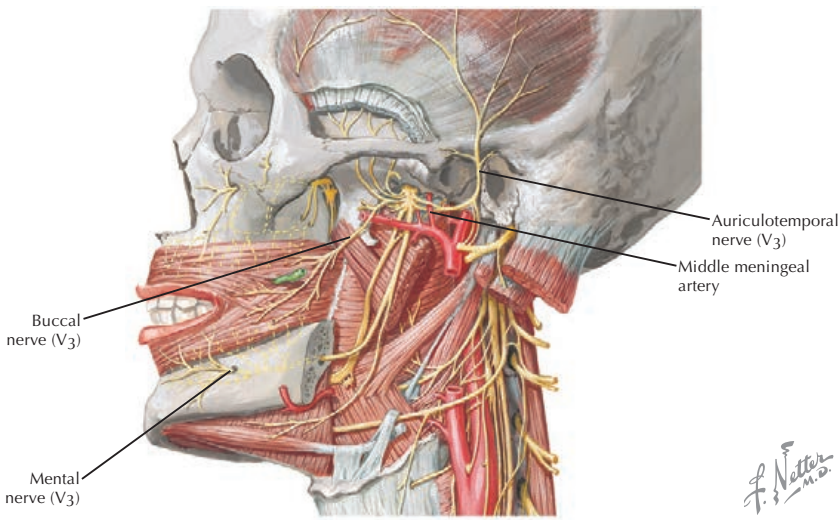
TRIGEMINAL NERVE: MAXILLARY DIVISION *CONTINUED*		
Nerve	**Source**	**Course**
Zygomaticofacial	Zygomatic branch of the maxillary division	Passes on the lateral wall of the orbit before emerging on the face through the zygomaticofacial foramen in the zygomatic bone Supplies the skin on the prominence of the cheek
Infraorbital	The continuation of the maxillary division of the trigeminal n.	Passes through the inferior orbital fissure to enter the orbit, then anteriorly through the infraorbital groove, infraorbital canal, and exits onto the face via the infraorbital foramen Within the infraorbital canal, it gives rise to the anterior superior alveolar and middle superior alveolar nn. It exits onto the face and divides into 3 terminal branches: • Inferior palpebral (supplies the skin of the lower eyelid) • Nasal (supplies the ala of the nose) • Superior labial (supplies the skin of the upper lip)



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

SENSORY INNERVATION *CONTINUED*

TRIGEMINAL NERVE: MANDIBULAR DIVISION		
Nerve	**Source**	**Course**
Mandibular division	Trigeminal n. in the middle cranial fossa	The largest of the trigeminal n.'s 3 divisions Created by a large sensory and a small motor root that unite just after passing through the foramen ovale to enter the infratemporal fossa It immediately gives rise to 4 branches—*meningeal*, *medial pterygoid*, *tensor tympani*, and *tensor veli palatini*—before it divides into an anterior and a posterior division • Anterior division—smaller and mainly motor, with 1 sensory branch (buccal n.) • Posterior division—larger and mainly sensory, with 1 motor branch (mylohyoid n.)
Auriculo-temporal	Posterior part of mandibular division	Normally arises by 2 roots, between which the middle meningeal a. passes Runs posteriorly just inferior to the lateral pterygoid and continues to the medial aspect of the neck of the mandible Turns superiorly with the superficial temporal vessels between the auricle and the condyle of the mandible deep to the parotid gland On exiting the substance of the parotid gland, it ascends over the zygomatic arch and divides into superficial temporal branches
Buccal	Anterior part of the mandibular division	Passes anterior between the 2 heads of the lateral pterygoid m. Descends inferiorly along the lower part of the temporalis to emerge deep to the anterior border of the masseter m. Supplies the skin over the buccinator m. before passing through it to supply the mucous membrane lining its inner surface and the gingiva along the mandibular molars
Mental	1 of the 2 terminal branches of the inferior alveolar n.	Emerges through the mental foramen of the mandible in the region of the 2nd mandibular premolar Supplies the skin of the lower lip, chin, and facial gingiva as far posteriorly as the 2nd mandibular premolar

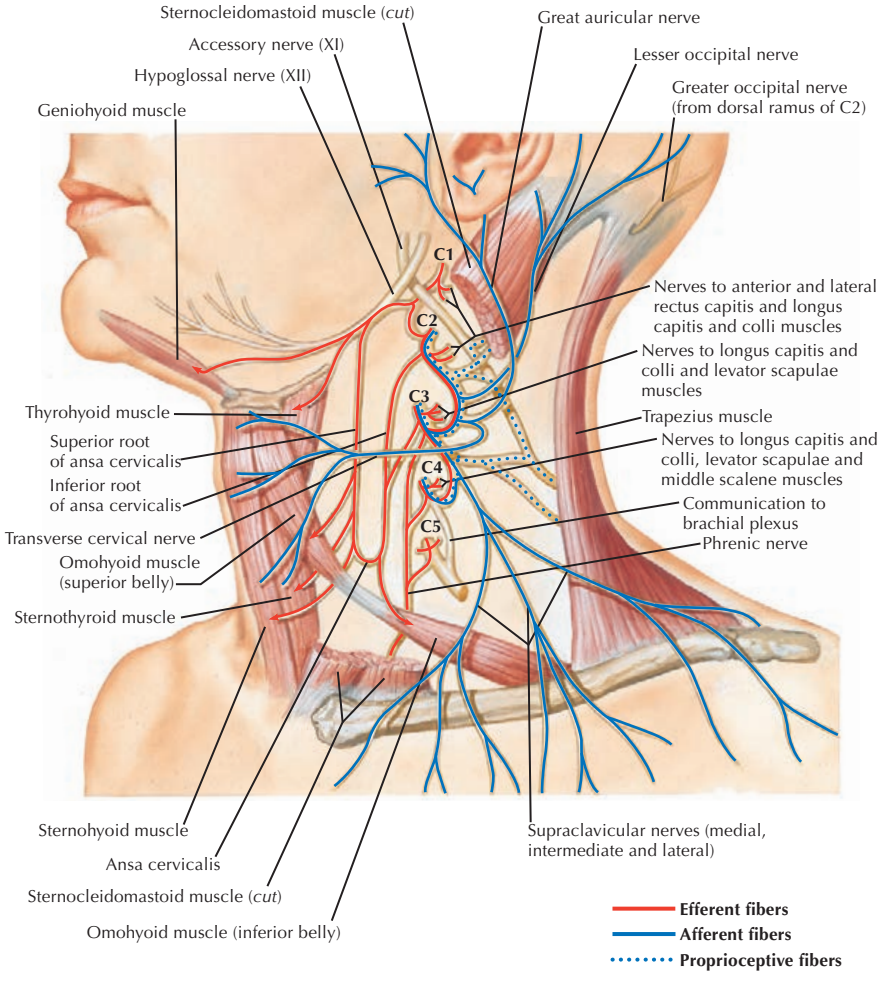


WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Nerve Supply of the Face

SENSORY INNERVATION *CONTINUED*

CERVICAL PLEXUS		
Nerve	**Source**	**Course**
Great auricular	Arises from the cervical plexus formed by contributions of C2 and C3 ventral rami	After passing posterior to the sternocleidomastoid at Erb's point, it ascends along the sternocleidomastoid dividing into anterior and posterior branches Anterior branch continues along the superficial aspect of the parotid gland's inferior part Innervates the superficial and inferior portions of the parotid gland
Transverse cervical		After passing posterior to the sternocleidomastoid at Erb's point, it crosses the sternocleidomastoid to pass anteriorly toward the neck Perforates the investing layer of deep cervical fascia, dividing deep to the platysma m. into ascending and descending branches Innervates the skin to the anterolateral region of the neck and lower face around the mandible



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

5 Nerve Supply of the Face

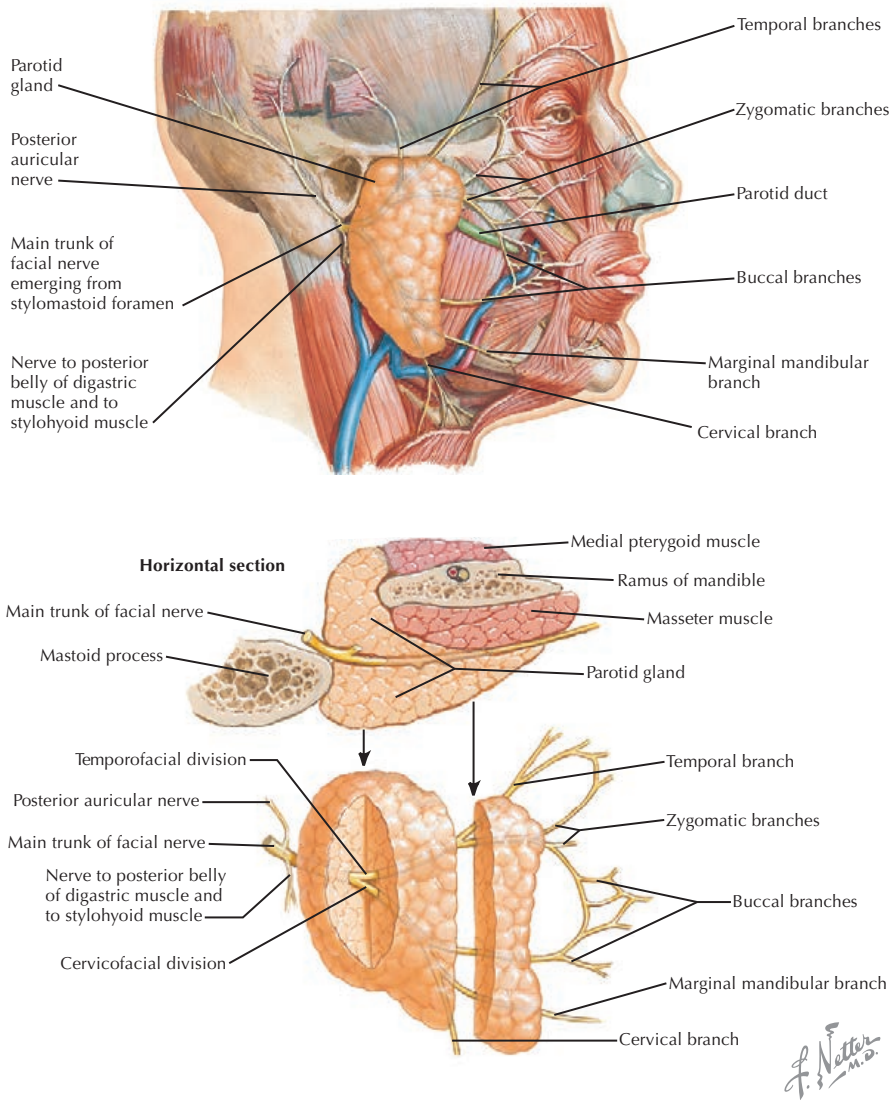
MOTOR INNERVATION

Nerve	Course
Facial	Exits the stylomastoid foramen and gives rise to the posterior auricular n. Enters the parotid fossa by passing between the stylohyoid m. and posterior belly of the digastric m. Small muscular branches innervate the stylohyoid m., the posterior belly of the digastric m., and the auricularis mm. Once in the fossa, it splits the parotid gland into a superficial lobe and a deep lobe that are connected by an isthmus Within the gland, it divides into temporofacial and cervicofacial trunks The trunks form a loop anterior to the gland superficial to the parotid duct and give rise to 5 major branches before emerging from the gland: *temporal*, *zygomatic*, *buccal*, *mandibular*, and *cervical*
Temporal	Exits the superior portion of the parotid gland from the temporofacial trunk Crosses the zygomatic arch along the temporal fossa to innervate the forehead
Zygomatic	The zygomatic branches from the temporofacial trunk pass across the zygomatic bone to the lateral angle of the orbit Innervates muscles in the region
Buccal	Branches arise from both the temporofacial and the cervicofacial trunks Innervates muscles of the cheek
Mandibular	Branches arise from the cervicofacial trunk and pass anteriorly Innervates muscles of the lower lip and chin
Cervical	Branches arise from the cervicofacial trunk and pass anteriorly and inferiorly to innervate the platysma m.

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Nerve Supply of the Face

MOTOR INNERVATION *CONTINUED*



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

5 Clinical Correlate

TRIGEMINAL NEURALGIA

Also called tic douloureux

Usually affects the maxillary (V_2) or mandibular (V_3) division of the trigeminal nerve; rarely affects the ophthalmic division (V_1)

Bilateral involvement suggests other factors such as multiple sclerosis

More common in the 5th and 6th decades of life

Cause is unknown—theories involve nerve irritation from abnormal vascularity or tumor compression, or a nerve injury

CLINICAL MANIFESTATIONS

Periods of intense (lasting 1 to 2 minutes), paroxysmal pain along one of the divisions of the trigeminal nerve

Usually unilateral

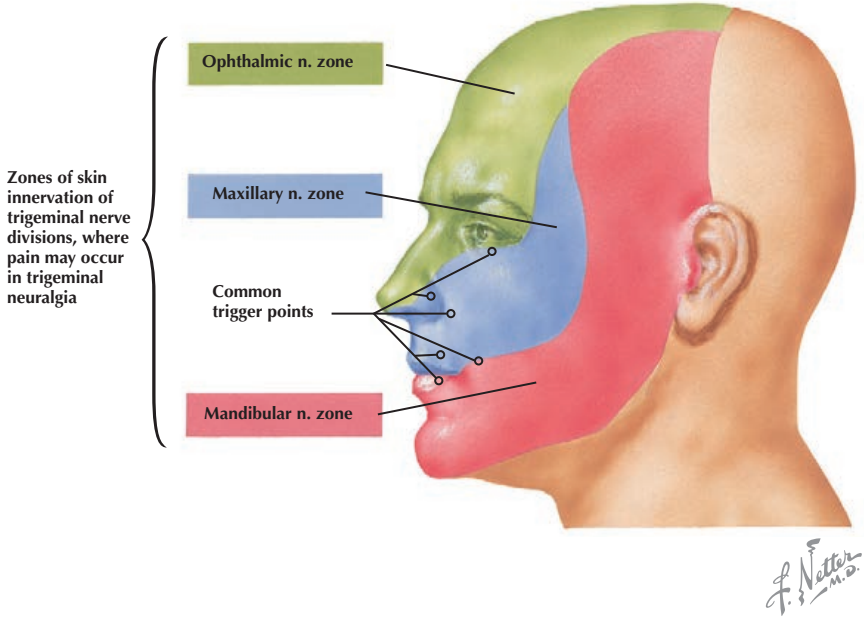
Pain normally is initiated by a particular sensory stimulus, such as light touch (putting on makeup, washing the face, shaving, a light breeze), mastication, or brushing teeth

TREATMENT

Commonly, trigeminal neuralgia is treated pharmacologically with anticonvulsants, such as carbamazepine (Tegretol)

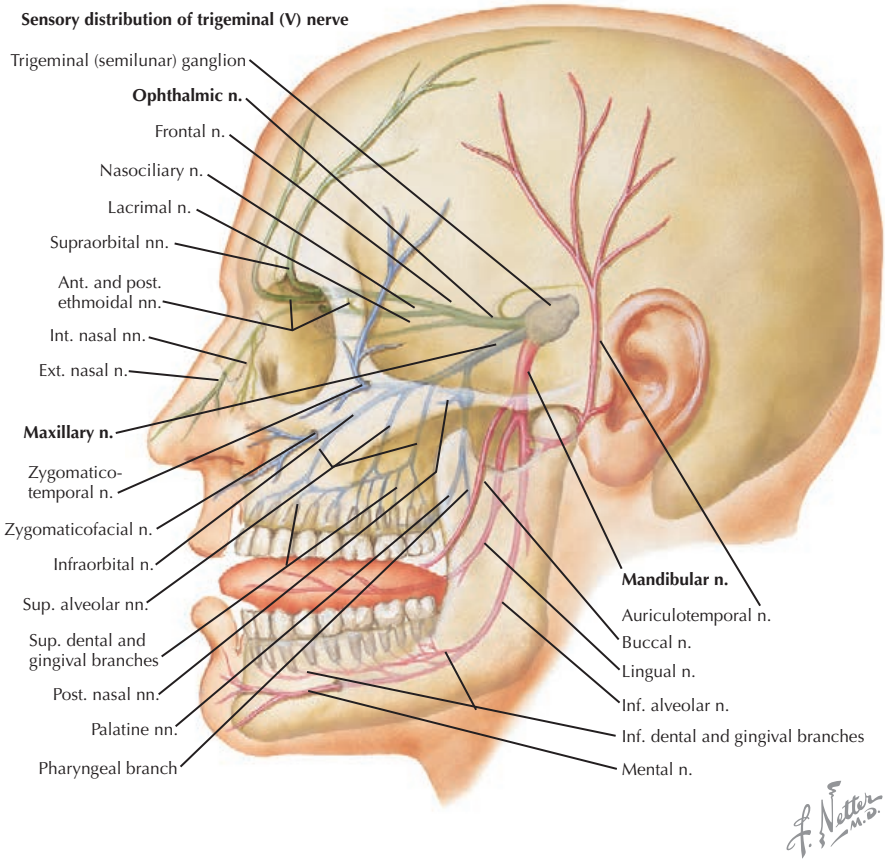
If drug therapy is unsuccessful, neurosurgery may be required, such as percutaneous radiofrequency rhizotomy of the nerve, glycerol injection of the trigeminal ganglion, or nerve decompression

Alternative and complementary medicine treatments have included acupuncture and meditation



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

TRIGEMINAL NEURALGIA *CONTINUED*



CAVERNOUS SINUS SYNDROME

Pathologic condition involving the cavernous sinus that is often caused by a thrombosis, tumor, aneurysm, fistula, or trauma

When caused by a thrombosis, the syndrome usually occurs as a sepsis from the central portion of the face or paranasal sinuses from their connection to the cavernous sinus

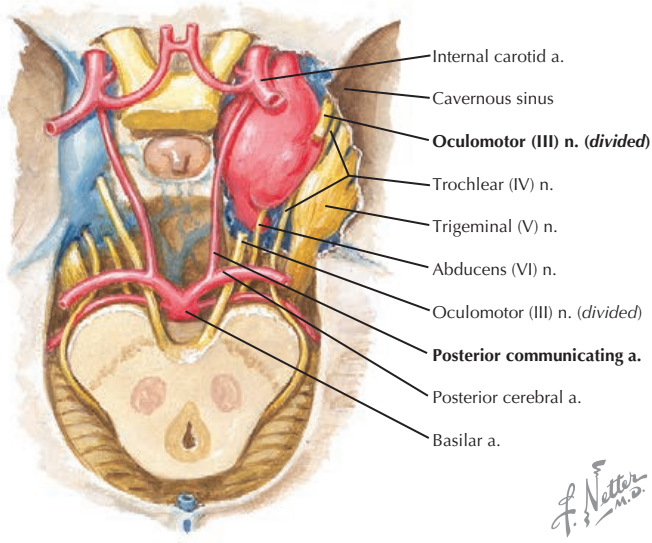
Before the advent of antibiotics, death was the normal outcome from the sepsis

It affects the contents of the cavernous sinus, including:
- Internal carotid artery with sympathetics
- Cranial nerve III
- Cranial nerve IV
- Cranial nerve V_1
- Cranial nerve V_2
- Cranial nerve VI

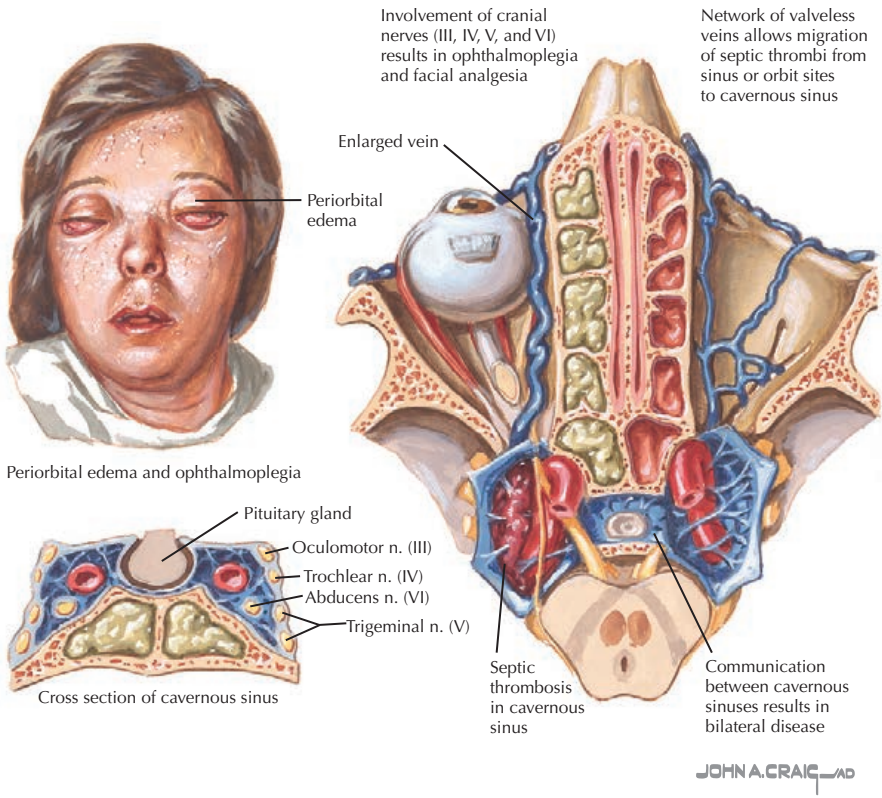
Common clinical manifestations include:
- Ophthalmoplegia with diminished pupillary light reflexes
- Venous congestion leading to periorbital edema
- Exophthalmos

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

CAVERNOUS SINUS SYNDROME *CONTINUED*



Cavernous sinus thrombosis



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

CHAPTER 6

PAROTID BED AND GLAND

Overview and Topographic Anatomy 186

Recess of the Parotid Bed 187

Contents of the Parotid Bed 188

Clinical Correlates 196

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

GENERAL INFORMATION

The largest of all the major salivary glands

Entirely serous in secretion

Pyramidal in shape, with up to 5 processes (or extensions)

The gland's capsule is from the deep cervical fascia

ANATOMIC LANDMARKS

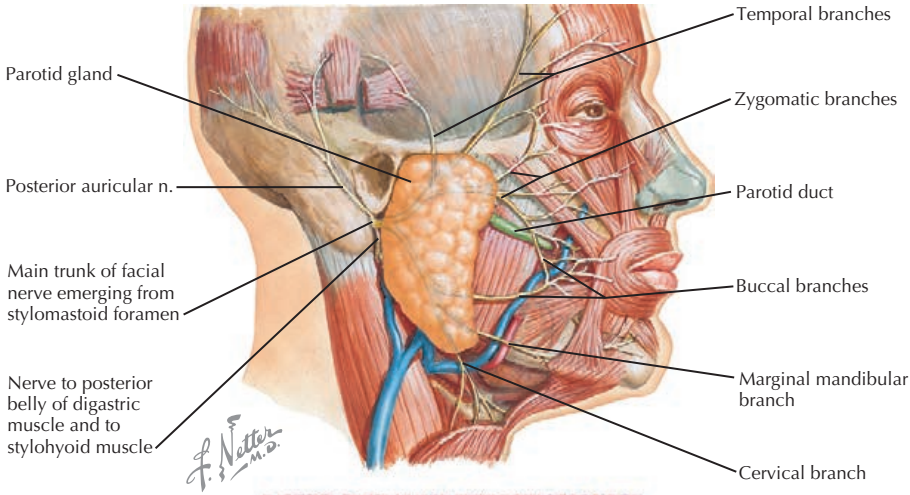
Approximately 75% or more of the parotid gland overlies the masseter muscle; the rest is retromandibular

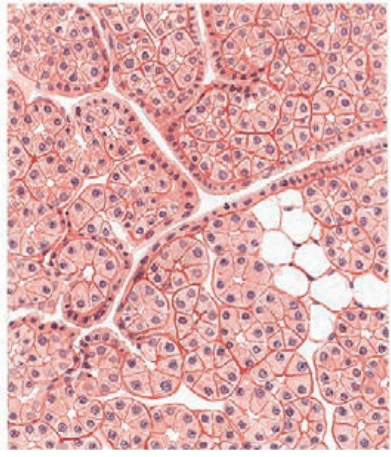
Facial nerve enters the parotid fossa by passing between the stylohyoid muscle and the posterior belly of the digastric muscle, then splits the gland into a superficial lobe and a deep lobe that are connected by an isthmus

Deep lobe lies adjacent to the lateral pharyngeal space

Transverse facial artery parallels the parotid duct slightly superior to the duct

Buccal and zygomatic branches of the facial nerve form an anastomosing loop superficial to the parotid duct





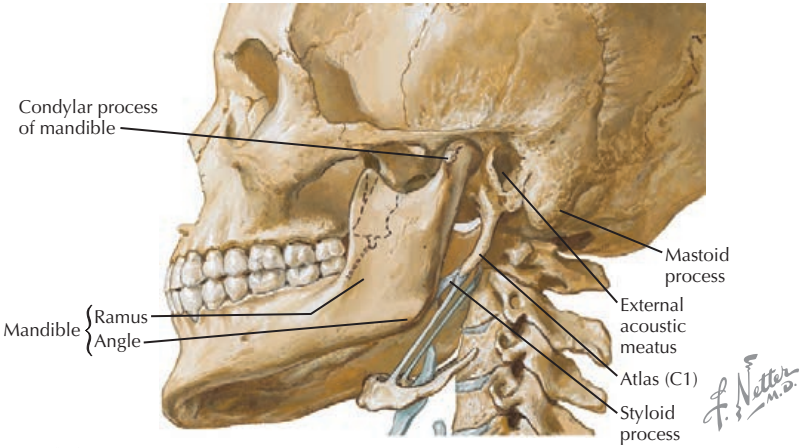
Parotid gland: totally serous

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

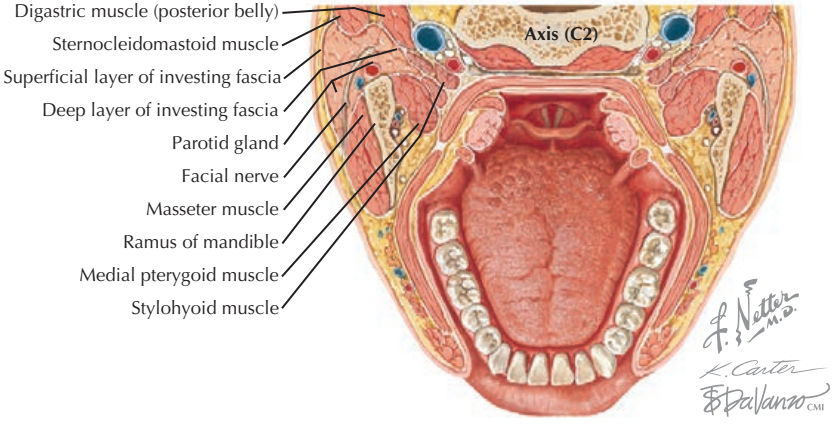
Recess of the Parotid Bed

BORDERS AND STRUCTURES

Borders	Structures
Anterior	Masseter m. Ramus of mandible
Anteromedial	Medial pterygoid m. Stylomandibular fascia
Medial	Styloid process superomedially Transverse process of the atlas inferomedially
Posteromedial	Stylohyoid m. Posterior belly of the digastric m.
Posterior	Mastoid process of the temporal bone Sternocleidomastoid m.
Lateral	Investing layer of deep cervical fascia helping form the capsule
Superior	External acoustic meatus Condylar head of the mandible articulating in the glenoid fossa
Inferior	Angular tract of Eisler between the angle of the mandible and the sternocleidomastoid m.



Horizontal section below lingula of mandible (superior view) demonstrating bed of parotid gland



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Contents of the Parotid Bed

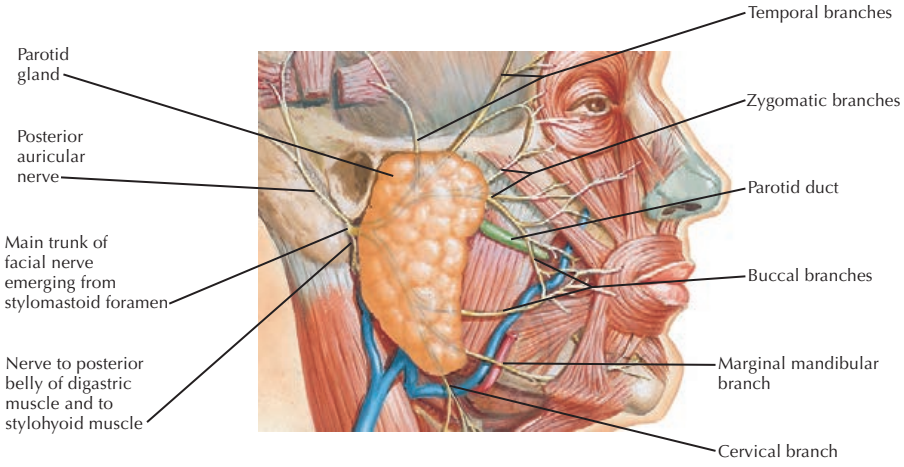
MAJOR STRUCTURES

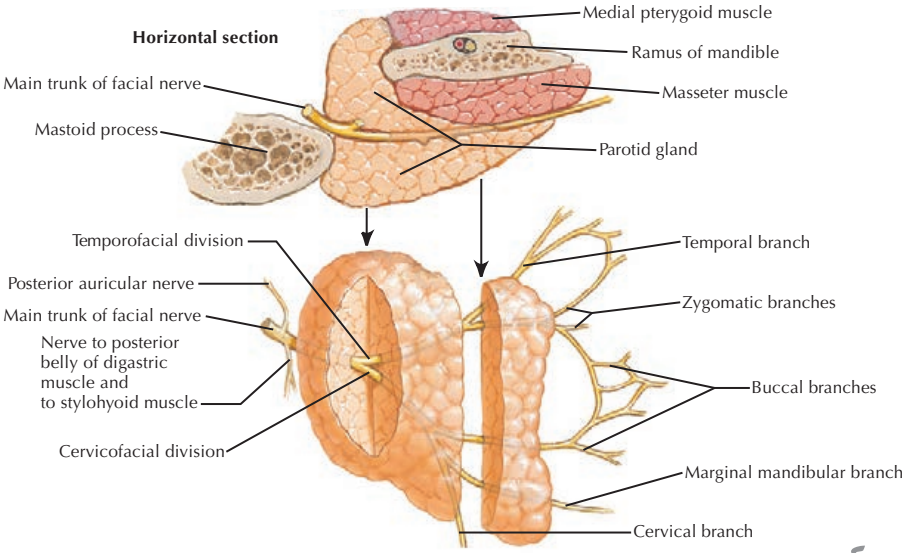
Structure	Features
Parotid gland	The largest of all of the major salivary glands, entirely serous in secretion Pyramidal in shape, with up to 5 processes (or extensions) The gland's capsule is from the deep cervical fascia About 75% or more of the parotid gland overlies the masseter m.; the rest is retromandibular
Facial nerve	Facial n. exits the stylomastoid foramen and gives rise to the posterior auricular n. Enters the parotid fossa by passing between the stylohyoid m. and the posterior belly of the digastric m. Small muscular branches innervate the stylohyoid m., the posterior belly of the digastric m., and the auricularis mm. Once in the fossa, it splits the parotid gland into a superficial lobe and a deep lobe that are connected by an isthmus Parotid gland's deep lobe lies adjacent to the lateral pharyngeal space Within the gland, the facial n. divides into temporofacial and cervicofacial trunks The trunks form a loop anterior to the gland superficial to the parotid duct and give rise to 5 major branches before emerging from the gland: temporal, zygomatic, buccal, mandibular, and cervical Although it passes through the parotid gland, the facial n. does not provide any innervation to it Buccal and zygomatic branches of the facial n. form an anastomosing loop superficial to the parotid duct
Parotid duct	Also known as Stensen's duct Forms within the deep lobe and passes from the anterior border of the gland across the masseter superficially, through the buccinator into the oral cavity opposite the 2nd maxillary molar Accessory parotid tissue often follows the parotid duct

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Contents of the Parotid Bed

MAJOR STRUCTURES *CONTINUED*



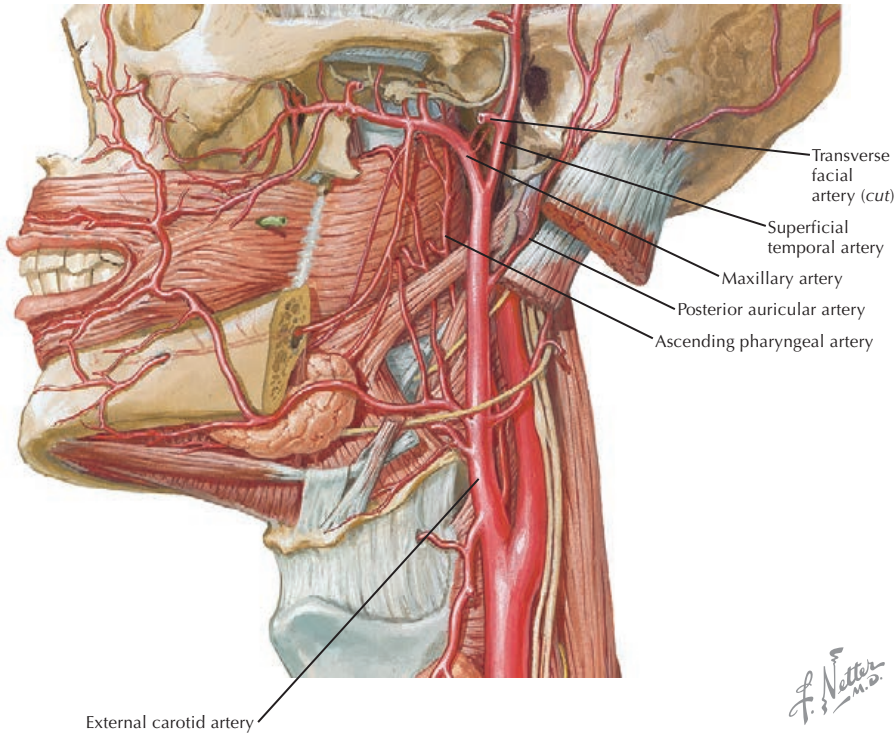


WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Contents of the Parotid Bed

VASCULAR SUPPLY

ARTERIAL SUPPLY		
Artery	**Source**	**Course**
External carotid	The bifurcation of the common carotid a. at vertebral level C3	Ascends superiorly posterior to the mandible and deep to the posterior belly of the digastric m. and the stylohyoid m. to enter the parotid gland Within the parotid gland, it gives branches to the gland and the posterior auricular a. Then branches into the superficial temporal and maxillary aa. within the gland The transverse facial a. arises from the superficial temporal a. within the gland
Posterior auricular	External carotid a. within the parotid gland	Passes superiorly between the mastoid process and cartilage of the ear
Maxillary	The 2 terminal branches of the external carotid a.	Begins posterior to the neck of the mandible and travels anteromedially between the sphenomandibular lig. and the ramus of the mandible On exiting the parotid gland, passes either superficial or deep to the lateral pterygoid muscle
Superficial temporal		Begins posterior to the neck of the mandible and travels superiorly as a continuation of the external carotid Joined by the auriculotemporal n.
Transverse facial	Superficial temporal a. before it exits the parotid gland	Passes transversely to exit the gland Passes immediately superior to the parotid duct across the masseter m. and face

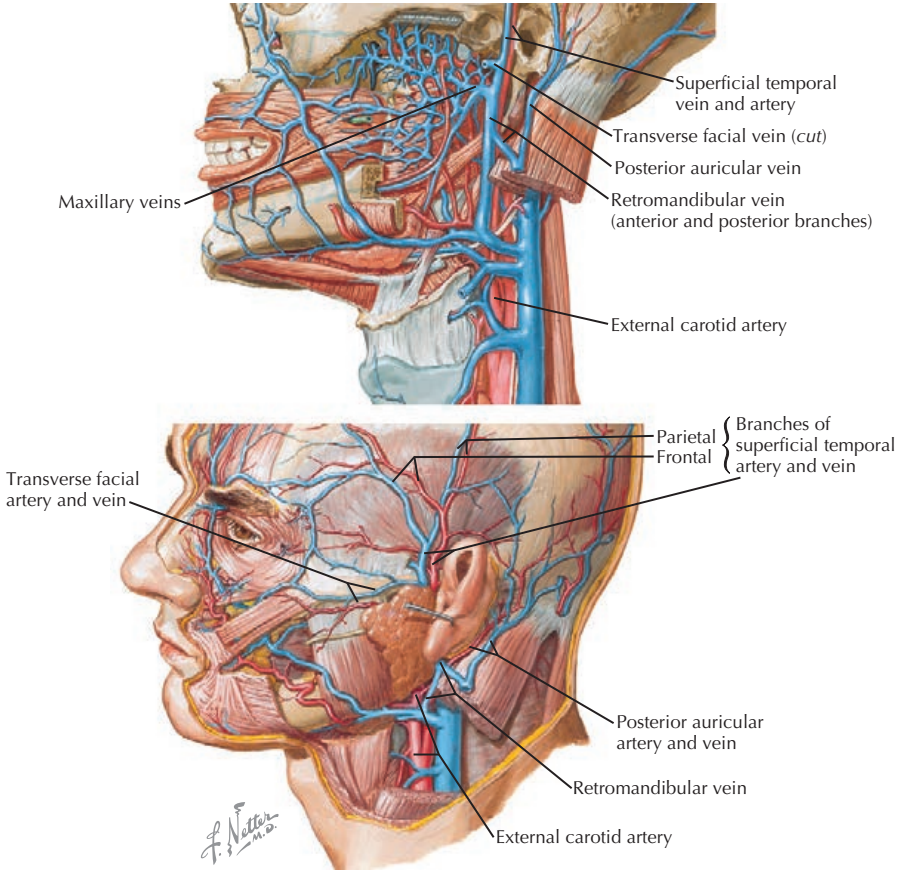


WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Contents of the Parotid Bed

VASCULAR SUPPLY *CONTINUED*

VENOUS DRAINAGE	
Vein	**Course**
Superficial temporal	Descends posterior to the zygomatic root of the temporal bone alongside the auriculotemporal n. to enter the parotid gland Unites with the maxillary v. to form the retromandibular v.
Transverse facial	Travels posteriorly to enter the parotid gland and join the superficial temporal v.
Maxillary	A short, sometimes paired vein, formed by the convergence of the tributaries of the pterygoid plexus Enters the parotid gland traveling posteriorly between the sphenomandibular lig. and the neck of the mandible Unites with the superficial temporal v. to form the retromandibular v.
Retromandibular	Arises from the joining of the superficial temporal and maxillary vv. within the parotid gland Descends superficial to the external carotid a. in the gland, where it branches into the anterior and posterior divisions of the retromandibular vv.
Posterior auricular	Arises from a plexus of veins created by the occipital and superficial temporal vv. Descends posterior to the auricle to unite with the posterior division of the retromandibular v. to form the external jugular v.

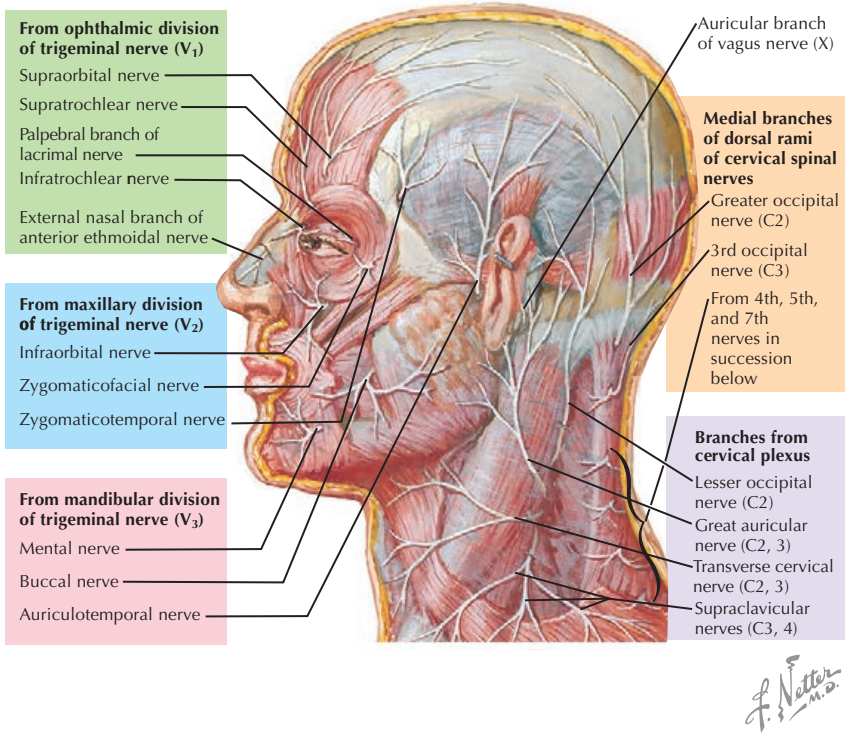


WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Contents of the Parotid Bed

NERVE SUPPLY

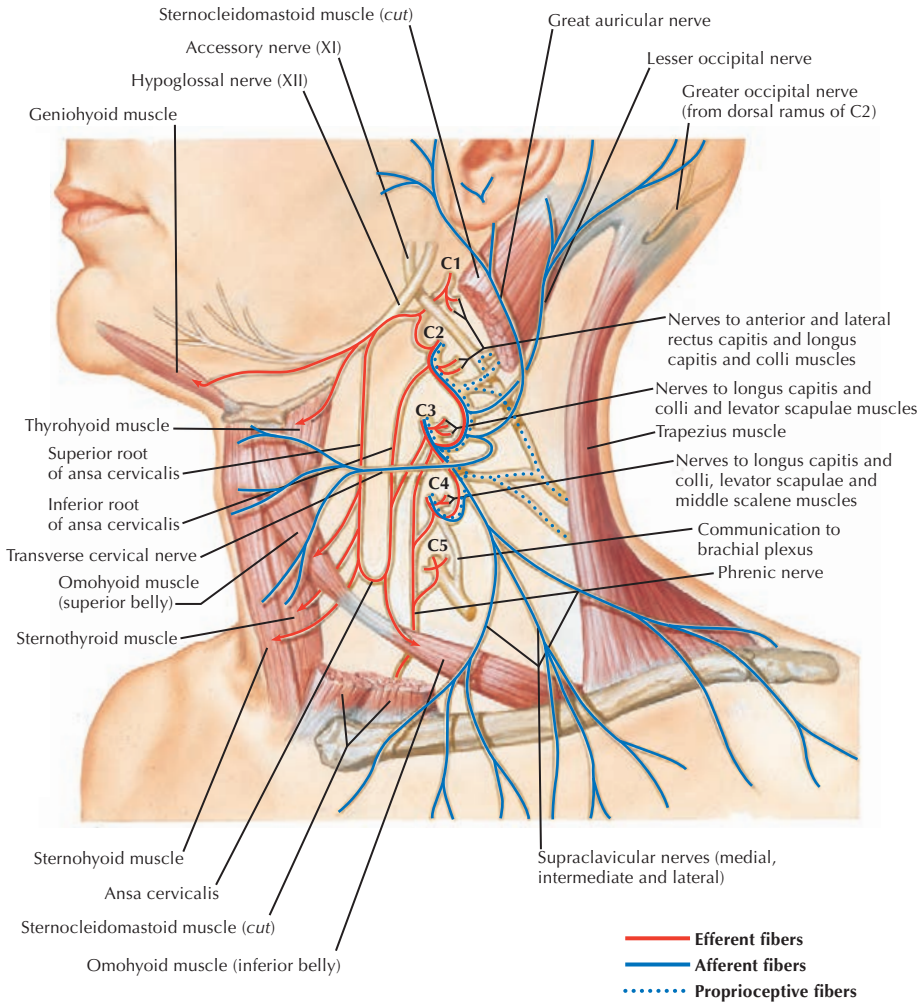
SENSORY NERVES OF THE PAROTID		
Nerve	**Source**	**Course**
Auriculotemporal	Mandibular division of the trigeminal n.	Often arises as 2 roots surrounding the middle meningeal a. that unite Passes inferior to the lateral pterygoid toward the neck of the mandible Passes posterior to the neck of the mandible to ascend with the superficial temporal a. Supplies the parotid gland's deep and superior portions
Great auricular	The cervical plexus formed by contributions of C2 and C3 ventral rami	After passing posterior to the sternocleidomastoid at Erb's point, it ascends along the sternocleidomastoid m., dividing into anterior and posterior branches The anterior branch continues along the superficial aspect of the inferior part of the parotid gland Supplies the parotid gland's superficial and inferior portions



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Contents of the Parotid Bed

NERVE SUPPLY *CONTINUED*



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Contents of the Parotid Bed

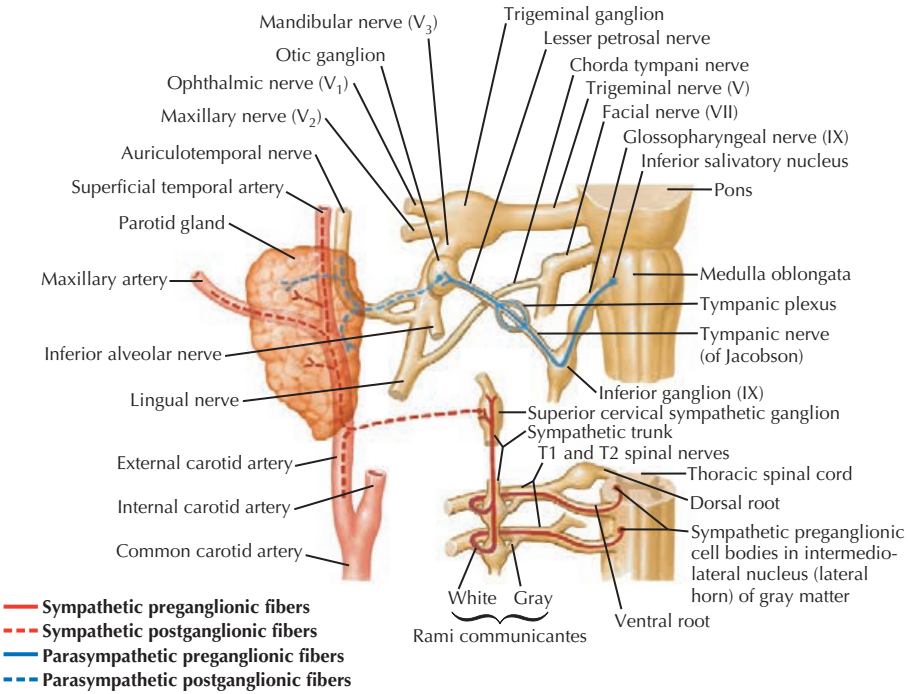
NERVE SUPPLY *CONTINUED*

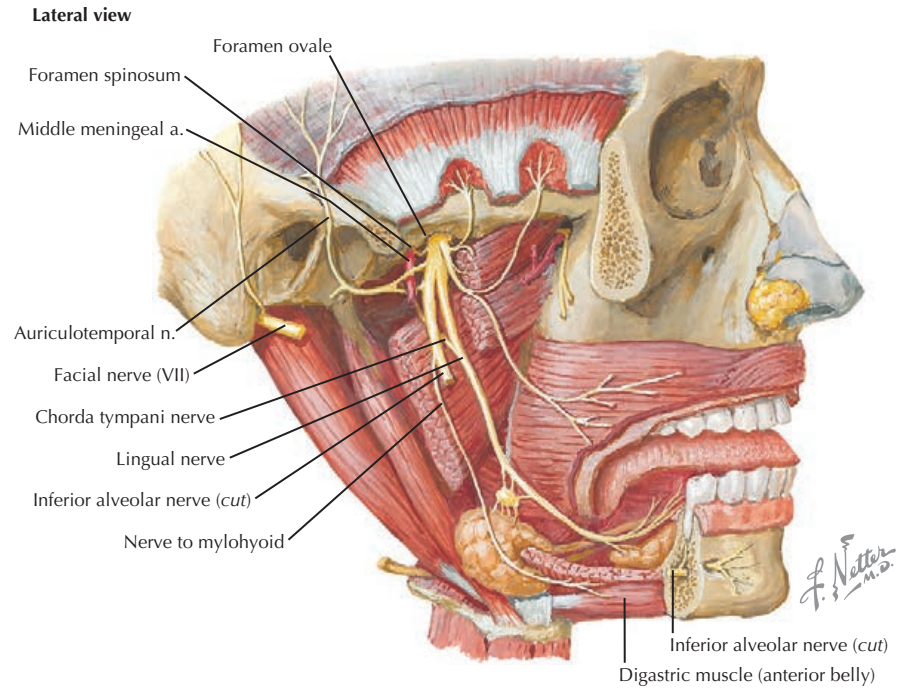
ANATOMIC PATHWAY FOR PARASYMPATHETICS OF THE PAROTID GLAND			
Type of Neuron	**Name of Cell Body**	**Characteristics of the Cell Body**	**Course of the Neuron**
Preganglionic neuron	Inferior salivatory nucleus	A collection of nerve cell bodies located in the medulla	Preganglionic parasympathetic fibers arise from the inferior salivatory nucleus in the medulla These fibers travel through the glossopharyngeal n. and exit the jugular foramen Gives rise to the tympanic branch of IX, which reenters the skull via the tympanic canaliculus Tympanic branch of IX forms the tympanic plexus along the promontory of the ear The plexus re-forms as the lesser petrosal n., typically exiting the foramen ovale to enter the infratemporal fossa Lesser petrosal n. joins the otic ganglion
Postganglionic neuron	Otic ganglion	A collection of nerve cell bodies located inferior to the foramen ovale medial to the mandibular division of the trigeminal n.	Postganglionic parasympathetic fibers arise in the otic ganglion These fibers travel to the auriculotemporal branch of the trigeminal n. Auriculotemporal n. travels to the parotid gland Postganglionic parasympathetic fibers innervate the parotid gland
ANATOMIC PATHWAY FOR SYMPATHETICS OF THE PAROTID GLAND			
Type of Neuron	**Name of Cell Body**	**Characteristics of the Cell Body**	**Course of the Neuron**
Preganglionic neuron	Intermediolateral horn nucleus	Collection of nerve cell bodies located in the lateral horn nucleus of the spinal cord between spinal segments T1 and T3 (and possibly T4)	Arise from the intermediolateral horn nuclei from T1 and T3(4) Travel through the ventral root of the spinal cord to the spinal nerve Enter the sympathetic chain via white rami communicantes Once in the sympathetic chain, the preganglionic fibers for the eye will ascend and synapse with postganglionic fibers in the superior cervical ganglion
Postganglionic neuron	Superior cervical ganglion	Collection of nerve cell bodies located in the superior cervical ganglion, which is located at the base of the skull	Arise in the superior cervical ganglion Postganglionic fibers will follow the external carotid a. Branches from the external carotid follow the arteries that supply the parotid gland

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Contents of the Parotid Bed

NERVE SUPPLY *CONTINUED*





WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

6 Clinical Correlate

BELL'S PALSY

Unilateral facial paralysis from facial nerve (cranial nerve VII) damage

CAUSES

Approximately 80% of cases have unclear etiology

Evidence suggests herpes simplex virus (HSV-1) infection is a cause

- *Proposed mechanism*: When the virus becomes active at the facial nerve, if the inflammation is in the bony facial canal, limited room for expansion results in nerve compression

Bacterial infections also have been implicated

- In some cases of otitis media, bacteria may enter the facial canal, and any resulting inflammatory response could compress the facial nerve

Temporary Bell's palsy can result from dental procedures if inferior alveolar nerve block anesthetic is improperly administered in the parotid fossa; signs and symptoms disappear when the anesthetic effects wear off

PROGNOSIS

Mild cases produce a facial nerve neurapraxia; the prognosis for complete recovery is very good, usually within 2 to 3 weeks

In more moderate cases, an axonotmesis may occur, producing wallerian degeneration; full recovery may take 2 to 3 months

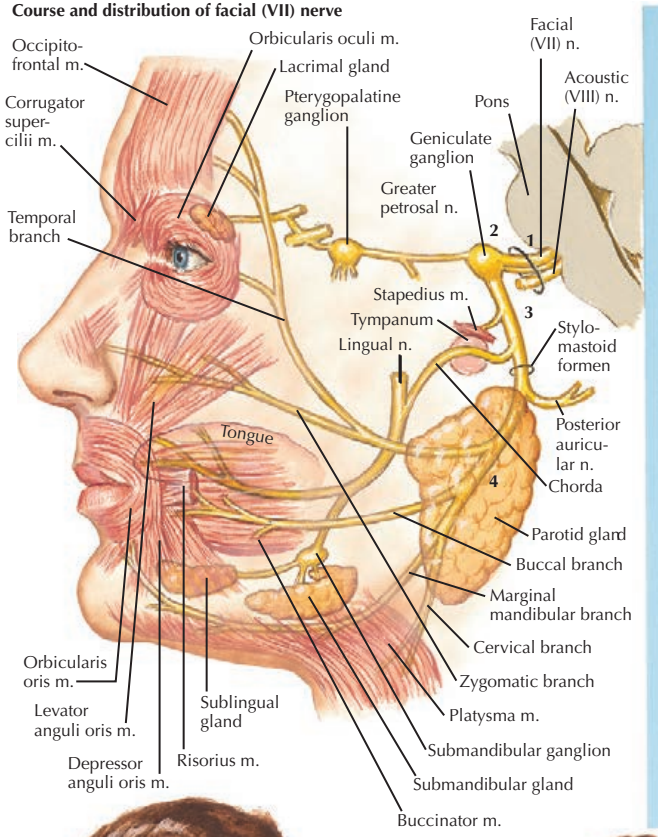
In a small percentage of cases, function is never completely recovered

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Clinical Correlate

BELL'S PALSY *CONTINUED*

Course and distribution of facial (VII) nerve



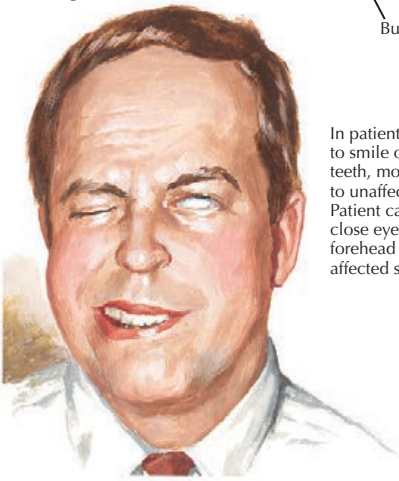
Sites of lesions and their manifestations

1. Intracranial and/or internal auditory meatus.
All symptoms of 2, 3, and 4, plus deafness due to involvement of eighth cranial nerve.

2. Geniculate ganglion.
All symptoms of 3 and 4, plus pain behind ear. Herpes of tympanum and of external auditory meatus may occur.

3. Facial canal.
All symptoms of 4, plus loss of taste in anterior tongue and decreased salivation on affected side due to chorda tympani involvement. Hyperacusia due to effect on nerve branch to stapedius muscle.

4. Below stylomastoid foramen (parotid gland tumor, trauma)
Facial paralysis (mouth draws to opposite side; on affected side, patient unable to close eye or wrinkle forehead; food collects between teeth and cheek due to paralysis of buccinator muscle).



In patient's attempts to smile or bare teeth, mouth draws to unaffected side. Patient cannot wink, close eye, or wrinkle forehead on affected side.



Hyperacusia: patient holds phone away from ear because of painful sensitivity to sound

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

6 Clinical Correlate

FREY'S SYNDROME

Caused by regeneration of the auriculotemporal autonomic fibers in an abnormal fashion, innervating the sweat glands near the parotid gland after a parotidectomy

Symptoms include sweating and redness in the distribution of the auriculotemporal nerve during eating

Diagnosis is via Minor's starch iodine test—creates a dark spot over the gustatory sweating area

Treatments include tympanic neurectomy (severing the parasympathetic component) and the topical anticholinergic glycopyrrolate (Robinul)



Frey's Syndrome

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Clinical Correlate

TUMORS OF THE PAROTID GLAND

80% of parotid tumors are benign

The most common benign tumor is a pleomorphic adenoma, which, if present for many years, can convert to a highly malignant carcinoma

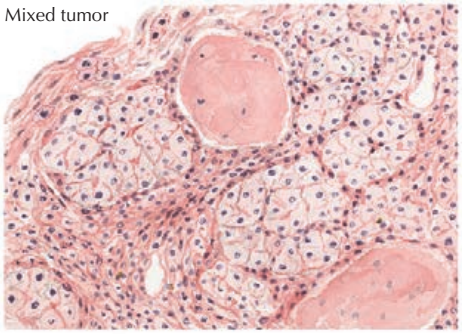
When pleomorphic adenomas extend through the capsule, they must be removed to reduce recurrence

Because of the proximity, these tumors can extend into the lateral pharyngeal space

Removal of the tumor with its surrounding capsule and tissue is important to obtain a low recurrence rate

- Histologically, pleomorphic adenomas have extensions through the tumor capsule into adjacent tissue, so simple enucleation would allow recurrence from tumor cells left behind

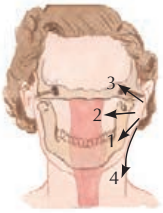
Mixed tumor



Lymphosarcoma

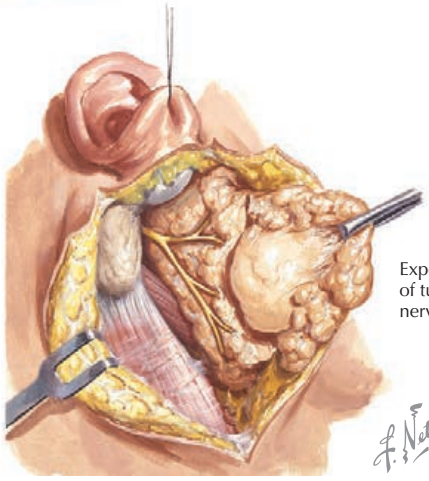


Adenocarcinoma of parotid gland



Local spread of carcinoma of parotid

1. Mandible
2. Pharynx
3. Base of skull and middle ear
4. Cervical lymph nodes



Exposure and resection of tumor sparing facial nerve branches

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Clinical Correlate

PAROTITIS/MUMPS

An inflammation of the parotid glands that typically is caused by a bacterial or viral infection

Can also be caused by other diseases, such as Sjögren's syndrome, tuberculosis, and human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection

Pain through mandibular movement is the result of the compression of the deep lobe of the gland by the mandibular ramus

BACTERIAL PAROTITIS

Less common since the introduction of antibiotics, proper hydration, and better oral hygiene

Mortality rate in the early 19th century was as high as 70% to 80%

Most cases now seen in patients on anticholinergic medication, especially the elderly, because it inhibits the salivary flow, which makes it easier for the bacteria to be transported in retrograde fashion along the parotid duct into the gland, where they may settle to cause an infection

VIRAL PAROTITIS

Known as mumps

Causative virus is a paramyxovirus that infects different body parts, notably the parotid glands

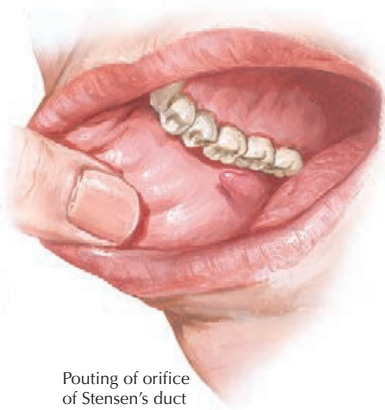
Usually is spread through saliva, coughing, and sneezing

Parotid glands typically swell and become very painful

With the introduction of mumps vaccination in the 1970s, now rare in most developed nations



Parotitis (obstruction or ascending infection)



Pouting of orifice of Stensen's duct

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Clinical Correlate

XEROSTOMIA

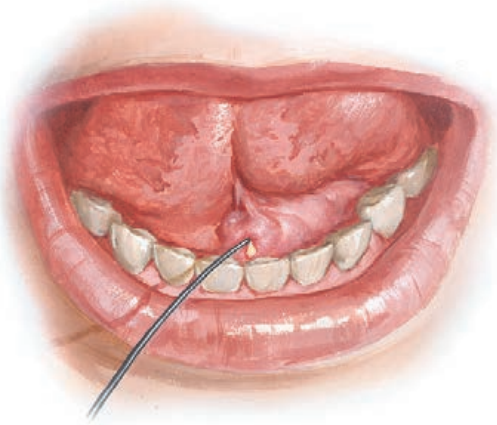
Xerostomia: "dry mouth"

Dry mouth is a symptom that increases the affected person's susceptibility to dental caries

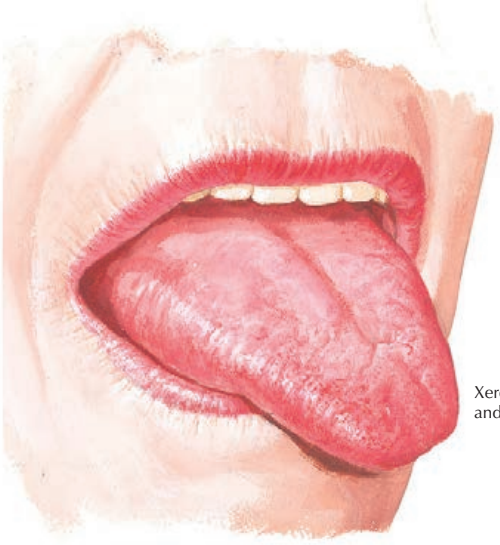
Can be caused by any medication that reduces salivary outflow, commonly: many antihistamines, antidepressants, chemotherapeutic agents (including radiation therapy), antihypertensives, and analgesics

Occurs in disease processes such as depression, stress, endocrine disorders, Sjögren's syndrome, and improper nutrition

Can lead to the formation of sialoliths, calculi that form in the duct or gland, although they are more commonly associated with infections of the submandibular gland than of the parotid gland and duct



Calculus in Wharton's duct probe inserted and drop of pus exuding



Xerostomia and glossitis

F. Netter M.D.

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

FISTULAS AND SIALOCELES

Parotid fistula: a communication between the skin and the parotid gland or duct that may lead to the formation of a *sialocele*, a cyst filled with a collection of mucoid saliva in the tissues surrounding the gland

CAUSES

Both parotid fistulas and sialoceles often occur as the result of trauma

May also be caused by:

- Section or injury of the duct or one of its branches during operation for cancer of the cheek or face
- Removal of parotid tumors, especially those of the accessory lobe
- Primary or secondary malignant tumors that ulcerate the skin
- Incision and drainage for acute bacterial parotitis
- Ulceration and infection associated with large salivary calculi
- Fistula may develop after a mastoid or fenestration operation
- Congenital
- Infection (actinomycosis, tuberculosis, syphilis, cancrum oris)

TREATMENT

Fistulas that lead directly into the oral cavity need no treatment

Fistulas on the skin may or may not need surgical intervention

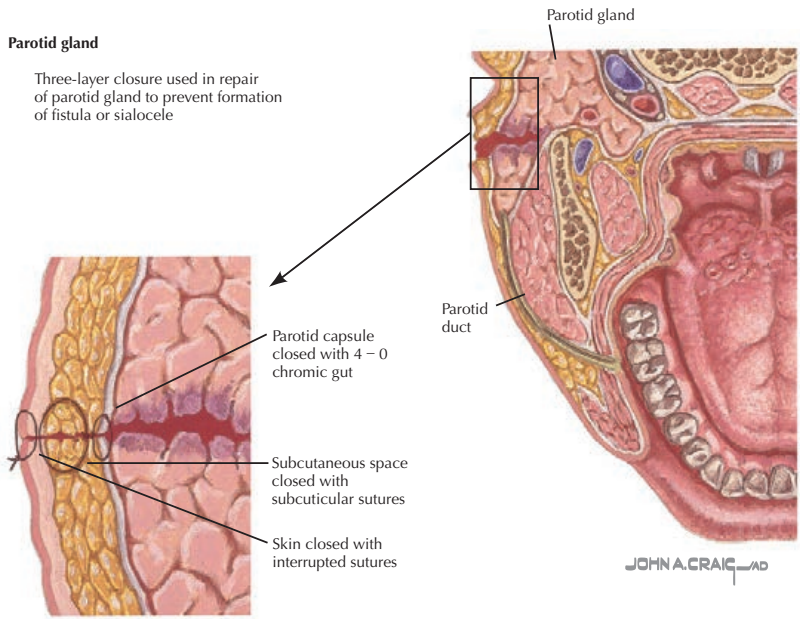
Anticholinergics are useful agents to diminish the salivation during treatment

Sialoceles often resolve with aspiration or compression and normally do not require drain placement

Injury to the parotid gland or duct should be repaired to prevent formation of fistulas and sialoceles

3 COMMON REPAIRS

- Repair of the duct using a stent
- Ligation of the duct
- Creating a fistula from the duct into the oral cavity



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

CHAPTER 7

TEMPORAL AND INFRATEMPORAL FOSSAE

Overview and Topographic Anatomy 204

Borders of the Temporal Fossa 205

Contents of the Temporal Fossa 206

Borders of the Infratemporal Fossa 210

Contents of the Infratemporal Fossa 212

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Overview and Topographic Anatomy

GENERAL INFORMATION

TEMPORAL FOSSA

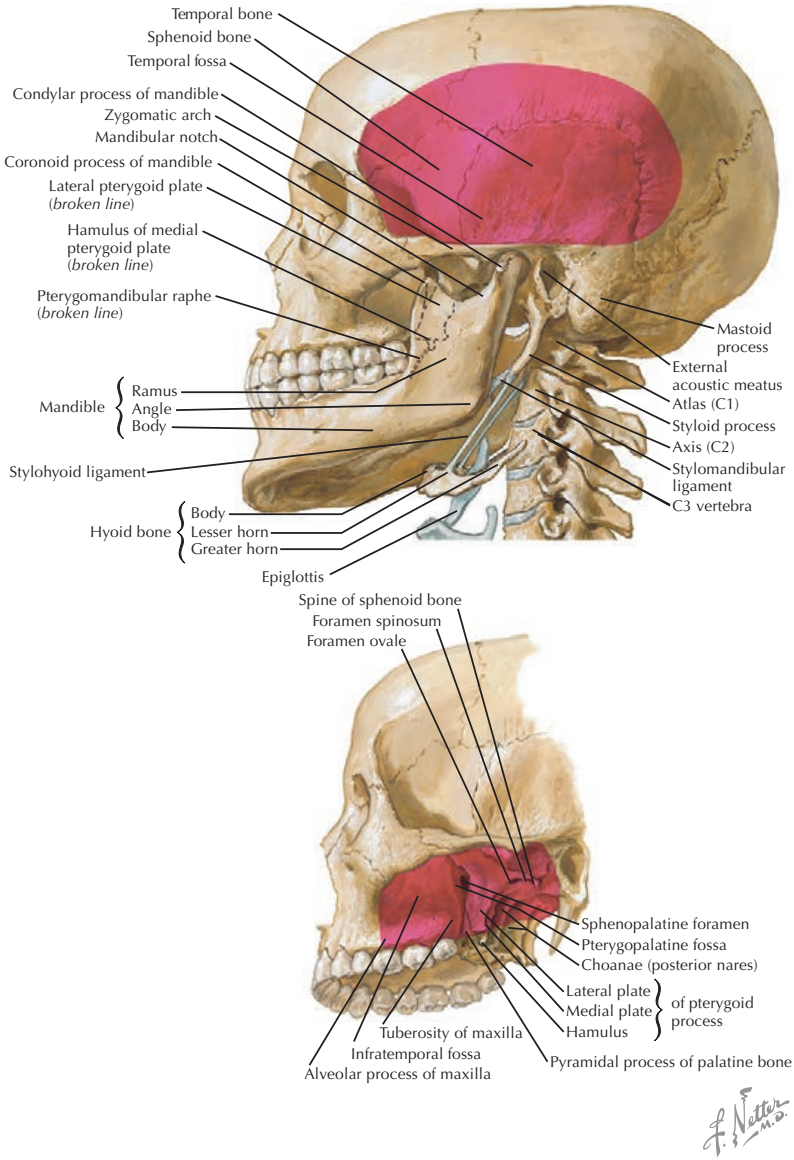
Related to the temple of the head

Communicates with the infratemporal fossa beneath the zygomatic arch

INFRATEMPORAL FOSSA

An irregularly shaped fossa inferior and medial to the zygomatic arch

Communicates with the pterygopalatine fossa at the pterygomaxillary fissure

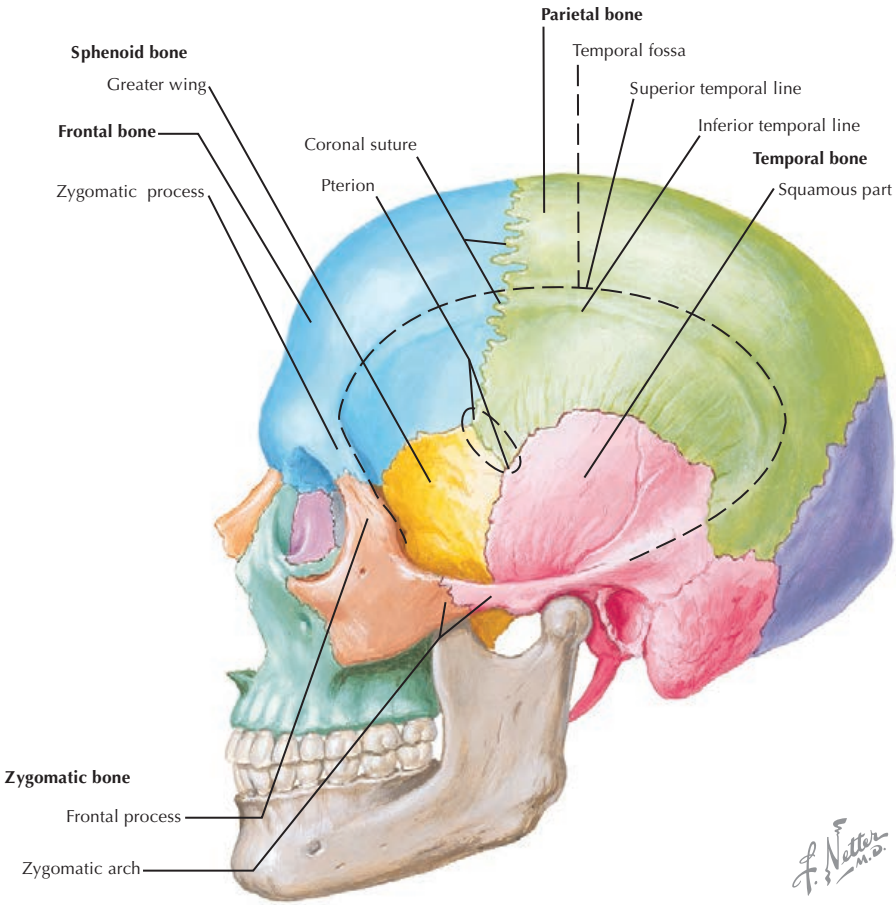


WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Borders of the Temporal Fossa

OVERVIEW

Border	Structures
Superior	Superior temporal line of the skull
Inferior	Zygomatic arch
Anterior	Frontal process of the zygoma Zygomatic process of the frontal bone
Posterior	Superior temporal line of the skull
Floor	Frontal, greater wing of the sphenoid Parietal and squamous part of the temporal bones (including the pterion)

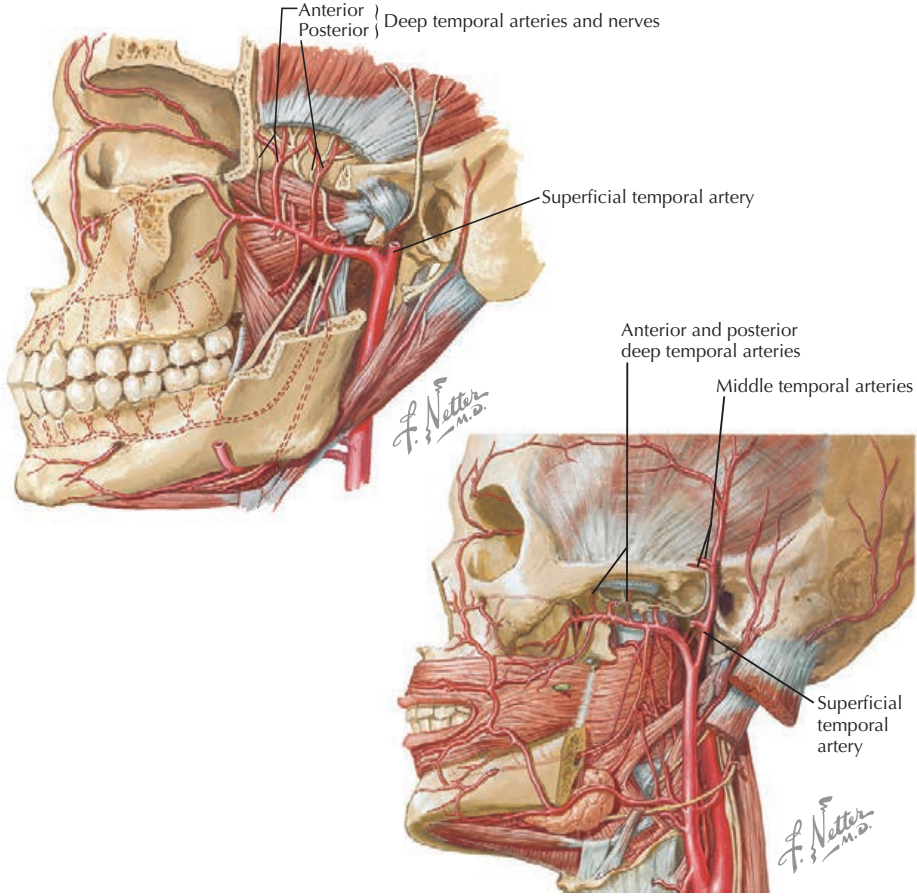


WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Contents of the Temporal Fossa

VASCULAR SUPPLY

ARTERIAL SUPPLY		
Artery	**Source**	**Course**
Superficial temporal	A terminal branch of the external carotid a. that arises within the parotid gland	Within the substance of the parotid gland, it gives off a transverse facial a. Emerges from the superior part of the parotid gland immediately posterior to the temporomandibular joint and anterior to the external auditory meatus Passes superficial to the root of the zygomatic arch just anterior to the auriculotemporal n. and the auricle Immediately superior to the root of the zygomatic arch, it gives rise to the middle temporal a. that pierces deep into the temporalis fascia and muscle As it continues to pass superiorly, it divides into anterior and posterior branches
Middle temporal	Superficial temporal a. after it passes superior to the root of the zygomatic arch	Passes deep into the temporalis fascia and temporalis m., where it anastomoses with the anterior and posterior deep temporal vessels
Anterior and posterior deep temporal	Branches of the 2nd part of the maxillary a.	Pass between the skull and the temporalis m. Supply the temporalis throughout their course While ascending, they anastomose with the middle temporal a.

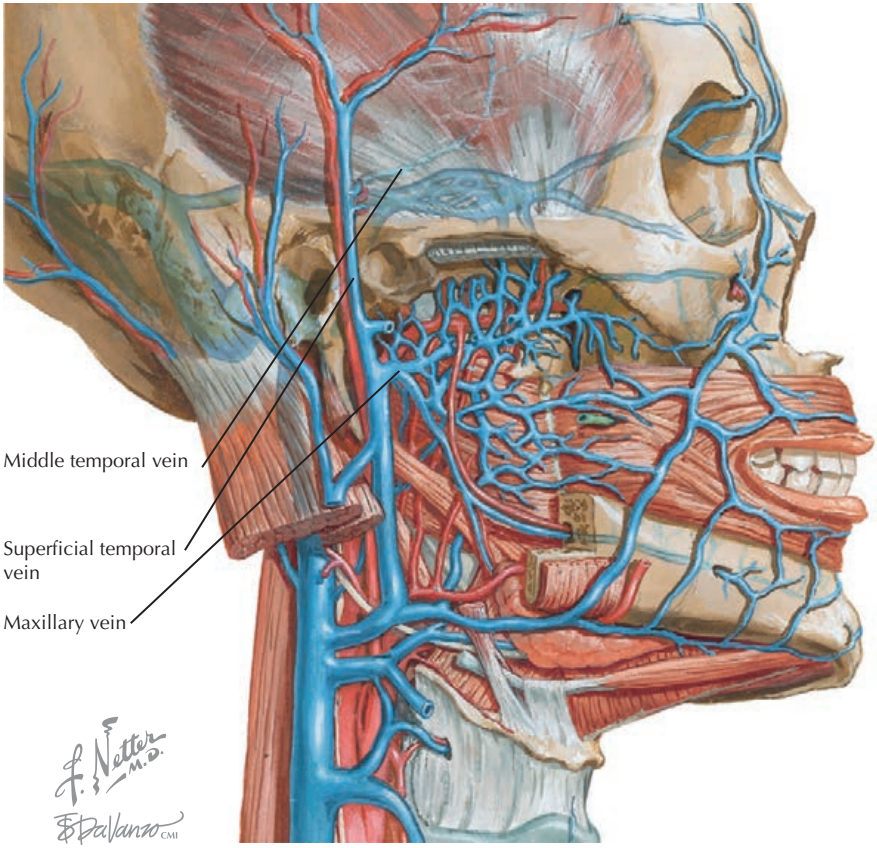


WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Contents of the Temporal Fossa

VASCULAR SUPPLY

VENOUS DRAINAGE	
Vein	**Course**
Superficial temporal	Begins at the vertex and lateral aspect of the skull Forms a venous plexus along the scalp by communicating with the supraorbital, posterior auricular, occipital vv. and corresponding veins from the opposite side Forms an anterior and a posterior branch of the superficial temporal v. that pass inferiorly immediately anterior to the artery A middle temporal v. joins the superficial temporal before the vessel passes inferior to the root of the zygomatic arch Enters the parotid gland, where it receives the transverse facial v. Joins the maxillary v. to form the retromandibular v.
Middle temporal	Arises deep within the temporalis m. and fascia Within the temporalis m. and fascia, it anastomoses with the anterior and posterior deep temporal vessels Joins the superficial temporal a. immediately before it passes inferior to the root of the zygomatic arch
Anterior and posterior deep temporal	Drain into the pterygoid plexus of veins Also communicate with the middle temporal v.
Maxillary	A short branch formed by a confluence of the pterygoid plexus of veins Joins the superficial temporal v. to form the retromandibular v.

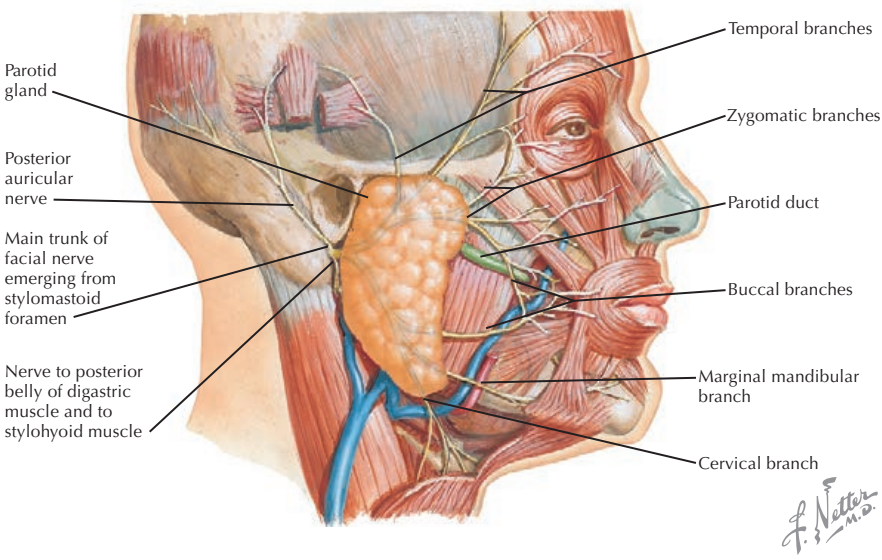


WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Contents of the Temporal Fossa

NERVE SUPPLY

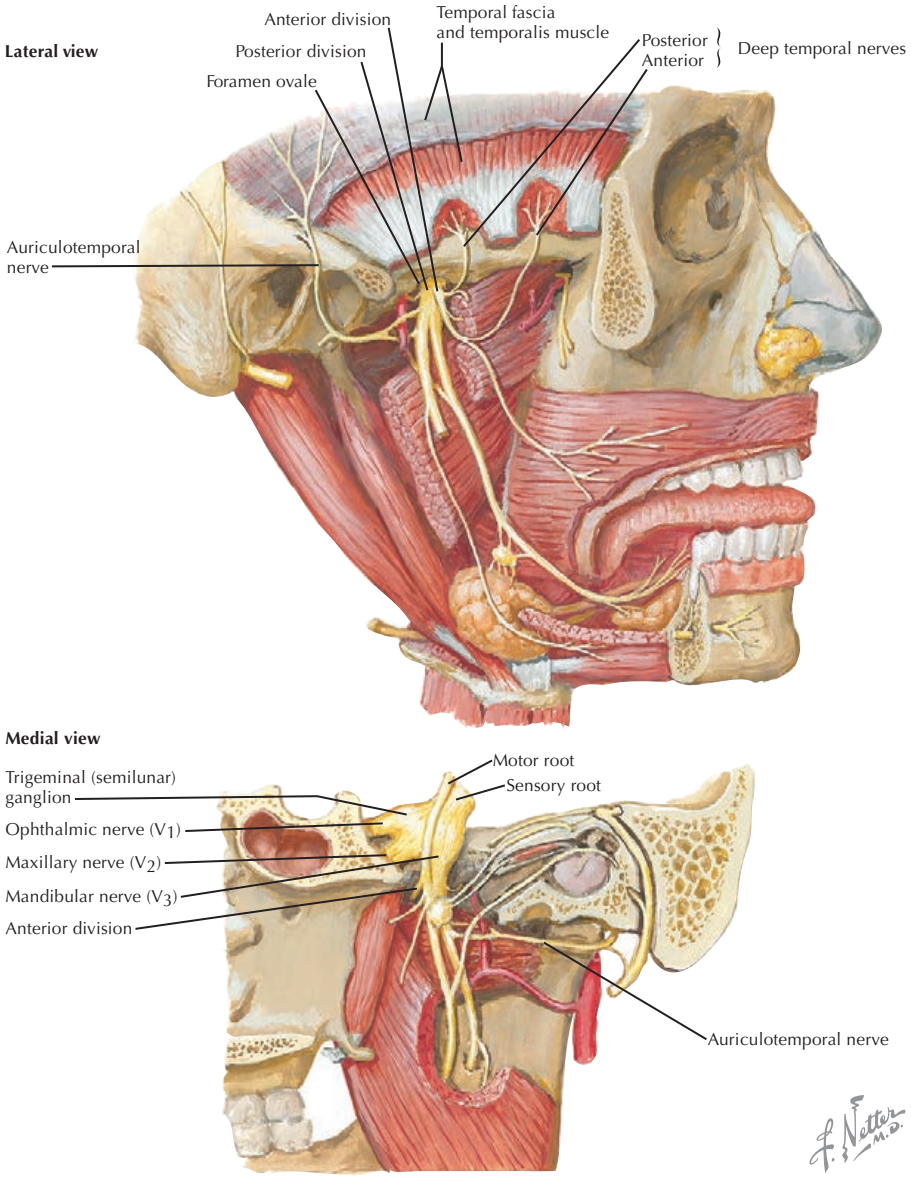
Nerve	Source	Course
Mandibular division of the trigeminal	The largest of the 3 divisions of the trigeminal n. Created by a large sensory and small motor root that unite just after passing through the foramen ovale to enter the infratemporal fossa	Immediately gives rise to a meningeal branch, medial pterygoid branch, tensor tympani branch, and tensor veli palatini branch before it divides into anterior and posterior divisions The anterior division is smaller and mainly motor, with 1 sensory branch (buccal n.) The posterior division is larger and mainly sensory, with 1 motor branch (mylohyoid n.)
Anterior and posterior deep temporal	Arise from the anterior part of the mandibular division of the trigeminal n.	Pass superior to the lateral pterygoid m. between the skull and the temporalis m. while passing deep to the muscle to innervate it
Auriculotemporal	Arises from the posterior part of the mandibular division of the trigeminal n.	Normally arises from 2 roots, between which the middle meningeal a. passes Runs posteriorly just inferior to the lateral pterygoid and continues to the medial side of the neck of the mandible Turns superiorly with the superficial temporal vessels between the auricle and the condyle of the mandible deep to the parotid gland On exiting the substance of the parotid gland, it ascends over the zygomatic arch and divides into superficial temporal branches
Temporal branches of the facial	Motor branches that arise in the substance of the parotid gland	Cross the zygomatic arch to the temporal region Supply the muscles in the area, including the auricularis frontalis, orbicularis oculi, and the corrugator supercilii mm.



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Contents of the Temporal Fossa

NERVE SUPPLY *CONTINUED*



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

7 Borders of the Infratemporal Fossa

OVERVIEW

Borders	Structures
Lateral	Ramus of the mandible and coronoid process of the mandible
Medial	Lateral pterygoid plate of the sphenoid, the superior constrictor m., and the pyramidal process of the palatine bone
Superior	Infratemporal surface of the greater wing of the sphenoid with the foramen ovale and foramen spinosum
Anterior	Posterior portion of the maxilla
Posterior	Styloid process and condylar process of the mandible
Inferior	No anatomic floor as the boundary of the fossa ends where the medial pterygoid attaches to the mandible

CONTENTS OF THE INFRATEMPORAL FOSSA

MUSCLES

- Temporalis
- Lateral pterygoid
- Medial pterygoid

ARTERIES

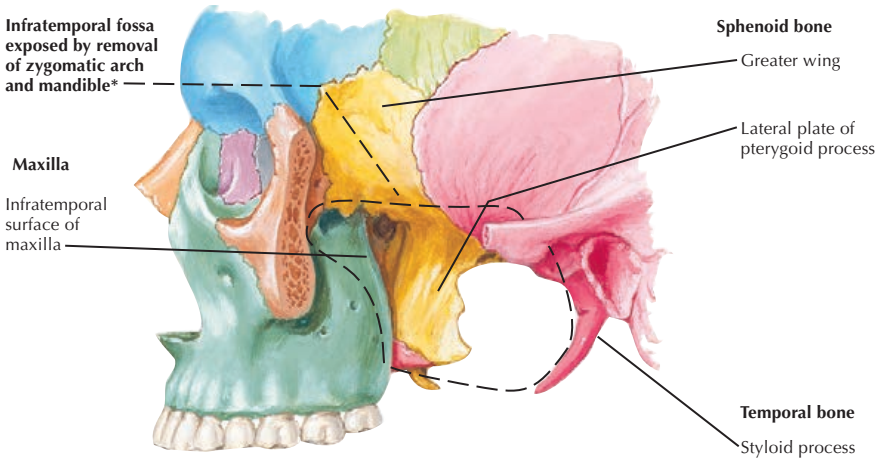
- Maxillary and its branches

VEINS

- Pterygoid plexus of veins and tributaries

NERVES

- Mandibular division of the trigeminal and branches
- Posterior superior alveolar
- Chorda tympani branch of the facial
- Otic ganglion
- Lesser petrosal

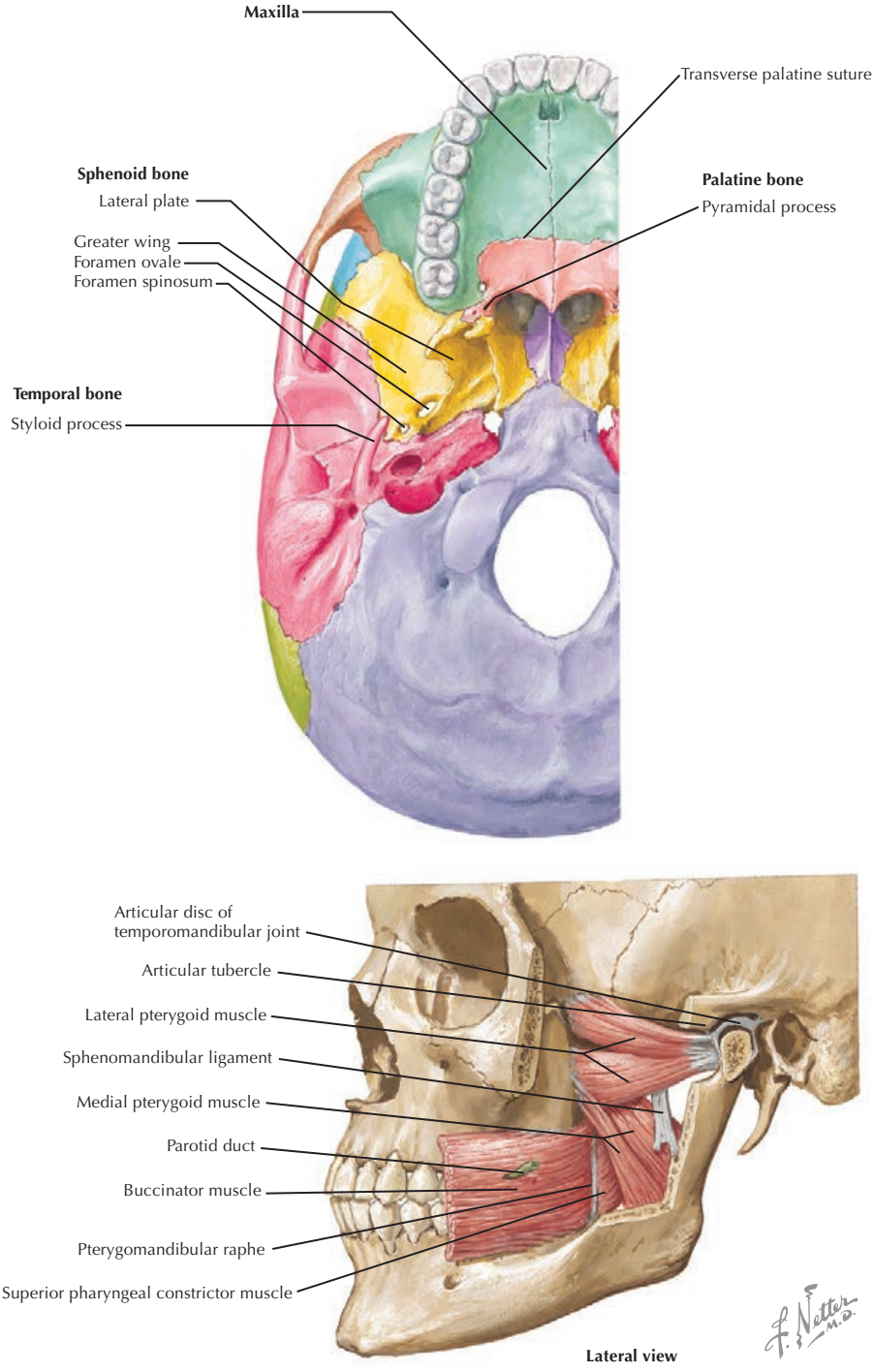


*Superficially, mastoid process forms posterior boundary

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Borders of the Infratemporal Fossa

OVERVIEW *CONTINUED*



Lateral view

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Contents of the Infratemporal Fossa

VASCULAR SUPPLY

MAXILLARY ARTERY
The larger of the 2 terminal branches of the external carotid a. (superficial temporal a.)
Arises posterior to the condylar neck of the mandible within the parotid gland
Exits the parotid gland and passes anteriorly between the ramus of the mandible and the sphenomandibular lig. within the infratemporal fossa
Takes a course that is either superficial or deep to the lateral pterygoid until reaching the pterygopalatine fossa via the pterygomaxillary fissure
Supplies the deep structures of the face and may be divided into 3 parts as it passes medially through the infratemporal fossa: • 1st part—mandibular part • 2nd part—pterygoid part • 3rd part—pterygopalatine part

MAXILLARY ARTERY: 1ST PART (MANDIBULAR PART)	
Artery	**Course**
1st part (mandibular part)	Passes between the ramus of the mandible and the sphenomandibular lig. Lies parallel to and inferior to the auriculotemporal n. Crosses the inferior alveolar n. and passes on the inferior border of the lateral pterygoid Gives rise to 5 branches: anterior tympanic, deep auricular, middle meningeal, accessory meningeal, and the inferior alveolar
Deep auricular	Given off in the same area as the anterior tympanic Lies in the parotid gland, posterior to the temporomandibular joint, where it gives branches to supply the temporomandibular joint
Anterior tympanic	Given off in the same area as for the the deep auricular a. Passes superiorly immediately posterior to the temporomandibular joint, where it gives branches to supply the temporomandibular joint Enters the tympanic cavity through the petrotympanic fissure and aids in supplying the tympanic membrane, along with branches of the posterior auricular a., artery of the pterygoid canal, and caroticotympanic branch from the internal carotid a.
Middle meningeal	Passes superiorly between the sphenomandibular lig. and the lateral pterygoid between the 2 roots of the auriculotemporal n. to the foramen spinosum of the sphenoid bone In the middle cranial fossa, passes anteriorly in a groove on the greater wing of the sphenoid, dividing into an anterior and posterior branch
Accessory meningeal	Arises from the maxillary or middle meningeal Enters the skull through the foramen ovale to supply the trigeminal ganglion and dura mater
Inferior alveolar	Descends inferiorly following the inferior alveolar n. to enter the mandibular foramen

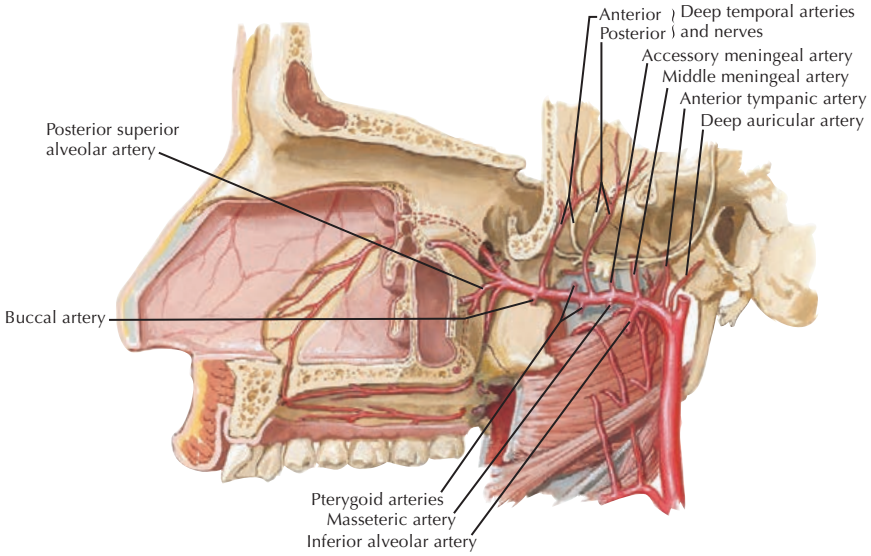
MAXILLARY ARTERY: 2ND PART (PTERYGOID PART)	
Artery	**Course**
2nd part (pterygoid part)	Passes obliquely and anterosuperiorly between the ramus of the mandible and insertion of the temporalis m. Then passes on the superficial surface of the lateral pterygoid to travel between the muscle's 2 heads Has 5 branches: anterior and posterior deep temporal, masseteric, pterygoid, and buccal
Anterior and posterior deep temporal	Pass between the skull and the temporalis m. Supply the temporalis throughout their course While ascending, these arteries anastomose with the middle temporal a. from the superficial temporal a.
Masseteric	Small; passes laterally through the mandibular notch to supply the deep surface of the masseter m.
Pterygoid	An irregular number of arteries supplying the pterygoid mm.
Buccal	A small artery that runs obliquely in an anterior direction between the medial pterygoid m. and the insertion of the temporalis m. until it reaches the outer surface of the buccinator m. to supply it

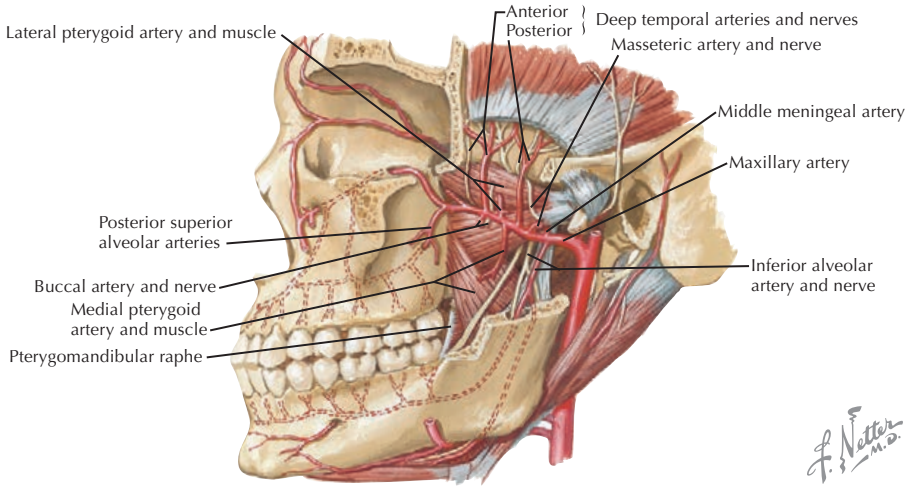
WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Contents of the Infratemporal Fossa

VASCULAR SUPPLY *CONTINUED*

MAXILLARY ARTERY: 3RD PART (PTERYGOPALATINE PART)	
Artery	**Course**
3rd part (pterygopalatine part)	Passes from the infratemporal fossa into the pterygopalatine fossa via the pterygomaxillary fissure Before passing through the pterygomaxillary fissure, it gives off the posterior superior alveolar a. (the only artery off the 3rd part of the maxillary a. that does not normally branch off within the pterygopalatine fossa)
Posterior superior alveolar	Arises in the infratemporal fossa Descends on the maxillary tuberosity to enter the posterior surface of the maxilla to supply the molars and premolars, lining of the maxillary sinus, and the gums

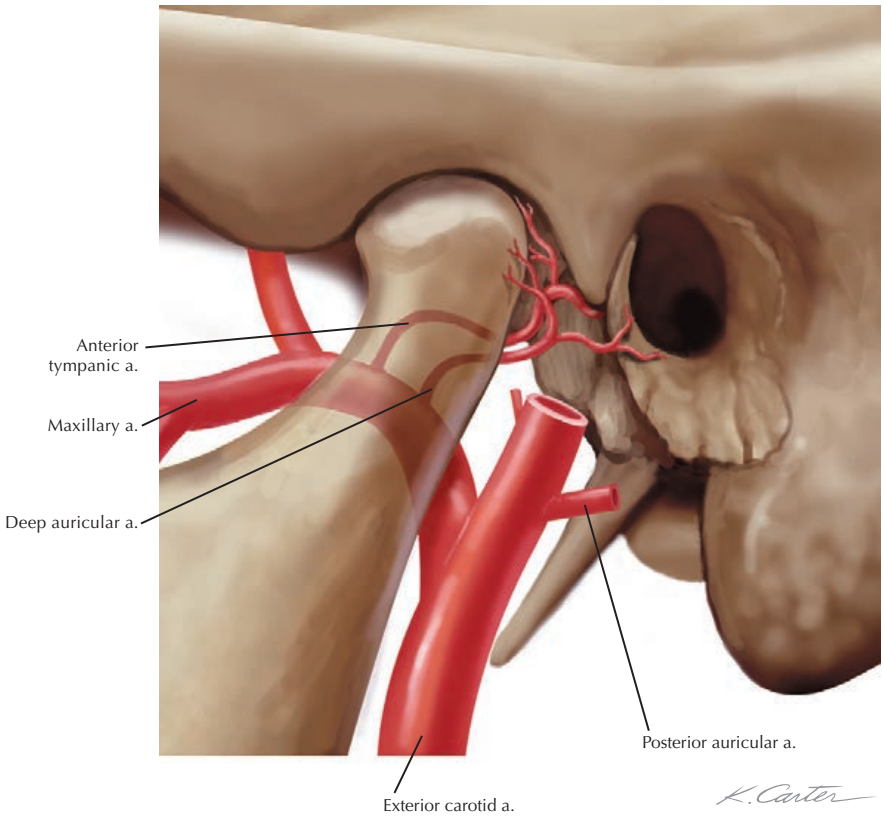




WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Contents of the Infratemporal Fossa

VASCULAR SUPPLY *CONTINUED*

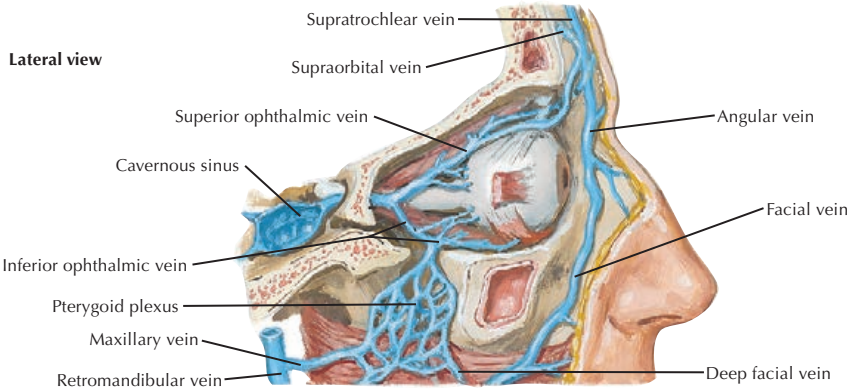


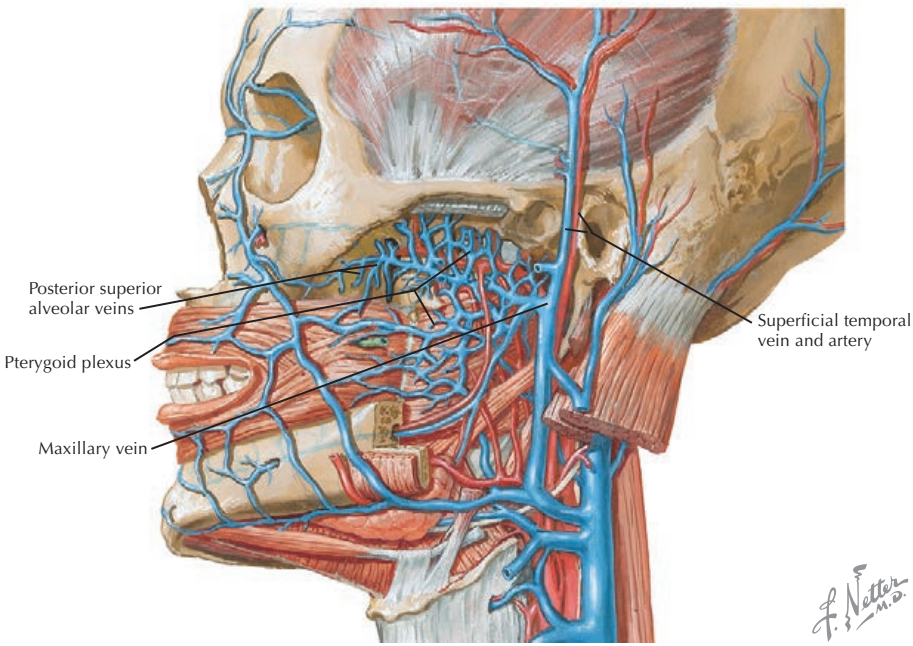
WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Contents of the Infratemporal Fossa

VASCULAR SUPPLY *CONTINUED*

VENOUS DRAINAGE	
Vein	**Course**
Pterygoid plexus	An extensive network of veins that parallel the 2nd and 3rd parts of the maxillary a. Receives branches that correspond with the same branches of the maxillary a. The tributaries of the pterygoid plexus eventually converge to form a short maxillary v. Communicates with the cavernous sinus, pharyngeal venous plexus, facial v. via the deep facial v., and ophthalmic vv.





WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Contents of the Infratemporal Fossa

NERVOUS STRUCTURES

MANDIBULAR NERVE

The largest of the 3 divisions of the trigeminal n.

Has motor *and* sensory functions

Created by a large sensory and a small motor root that unite just after passing through the foramen ovale to enter the infratemporal fossa

Immediately gives rise to a meningeal branch and then divides into anterior and posterior divisions

Anterior Division

Smaller; mainly motor with 1 sensory branch (buccal):
- Masseteric
- Anterior and posterior deep temporal
- Medial pterygoid
- Lateral pterygoid
- Buccal

Posterior Division

Larger, mainly sensory with 1 motor branch (mylohyoid n.):
- Auriculotemporal
- Lingual
- Inferior alveolar
- Mylohyoid n.

ANTERIOR DIVISION OF THE MANDIBULAR NERVE

Branch	Course
Masseteric	Passes laterally superior to the lateral pterygoid Lies anterior to the temporomandibular joint and posterior to the tendon of the temporalis m. Crosses the mandibular notch with the masseteric a. to innervate the masseter m. Also provides a small branch to the temporomandibular joint
Anterior and posterior deep temporal	Pass superior to the lateral pterygoid m. between the skull and the temporalis m. while passing deep to the muscle to innervate it
Medial pterygoid	Enters the deep surface of the muscle
Lateral pterygoid	Passes into the deep surface of the muscle Often arises from the buccal n.
Buccal	Passes anteriorly between the 2 heads of the lateral pterygoid m. Descends inferiorly along the lower part of the temporalis m. to appear from deep to the anterior border of the masseter m. Supplies the skin over the buccinator m. before passing through it to supply the mucous membrane lining its inner surface and the gingiva along the mandibular molars

POSTERIOR DIVISION OF THE MANDIBULAR NERVE

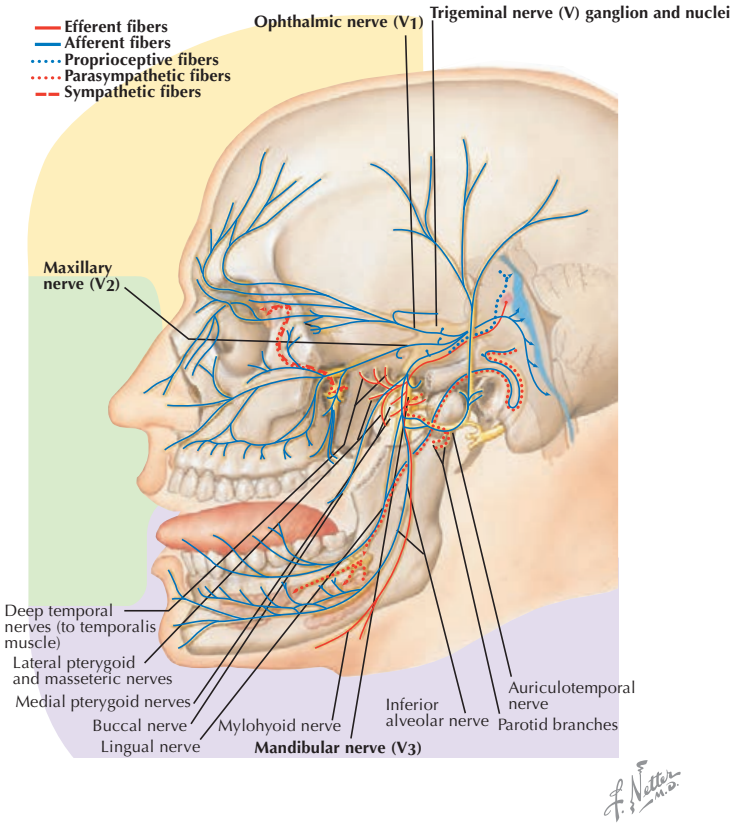
Branch	Course
Auriculotemporal	Normally arises from 2 roots, between which the middle meningeal a. passes Runs posteriorly just inferior to the lateral pterygoid and continues to the medial aspect of the neck of the mandible Then it turns superiorly with the superficial temporal vessels between the auricle and condyle of the mandible deep to the parotid gland On exiting the parotid gland, it ascends over the zygomatic arch and divides into superficial temporal branches
Lingual	Lies inferior to the lateral pterygoid and medial and anterior to the inferior alveolar n. The chorda tympani n. also joins the posterior part The lingual n. passes between the medial pterygoid and the ramus of the mandible to pass obliquely to enter the oral cavity bounded by the superior pharyngeal constrictor m., medial pterygoid m., and the mandible Supplies the mucous membrane of the anterior 2/3 of the tongue and gingiva on the lingual aspect of the mandibular teeth

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Contents of the Infratemporal Fossa

NERVOUS STRUCTURES *CONTINUED*

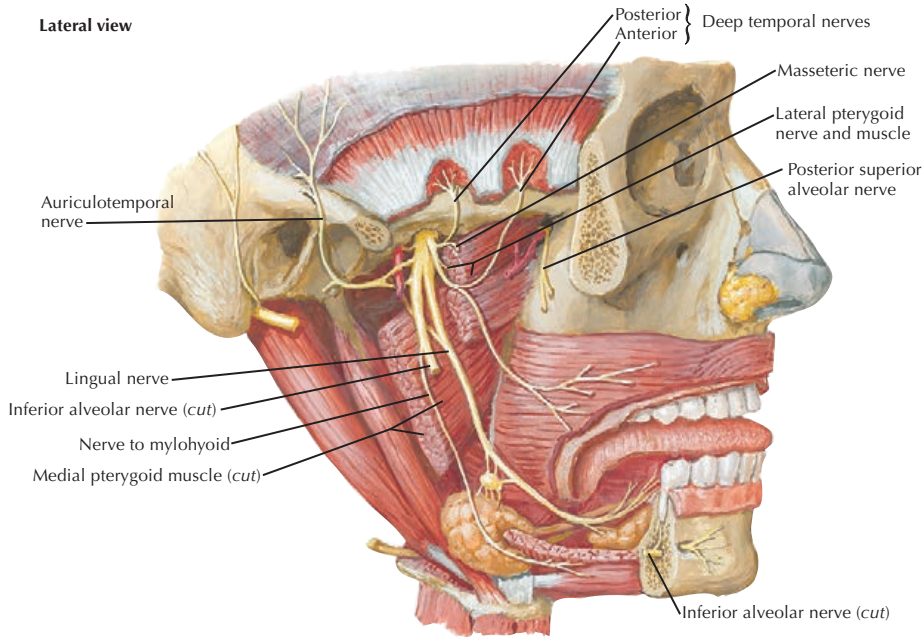
POSTERIOR DIVISION OF THE MANDIBULAR NERVE *CONTINUED*	
Branch	**Course**
Inferior alveolar	The largest branch of the mandibular division Descends following the inferior alveolar a. inferior to the lateral pterygoid and, finally, between the sphenomandibular lig. and the ramus of the mandible until it enters the mandibular foramen Innervates all mandibular teeth and the gingiva from the premolars anteriorly to the midline
Mylohyoid	Branches from the inferior alveolar n. immediately before it enters the mandibular foramen Descends in a groove on the deep side of the ramus of the mandible until it reaches the superficial surface of the mylohyoid m. Supplies the mylohyoid m. and the anterior belly of the digastric m.
MAXILLARY NERVE	
Branch	**Course**
Posterior superior alveolar	Passes through the pterygomaxillary fissure to enter the infratemporal fossa In the infratemporal fossa, it passes on the posterior surface of the maxilla along the region of the maxillary tuberosity Gives rise to a gingival branch that innervates the buccal gingiva alongside the maxillary molars Enters the posterior surface of the maxilla and supplies the maxillary sinus and the maxillary molars with the possible exception of the mesiobuccal root of the first maxillary molar

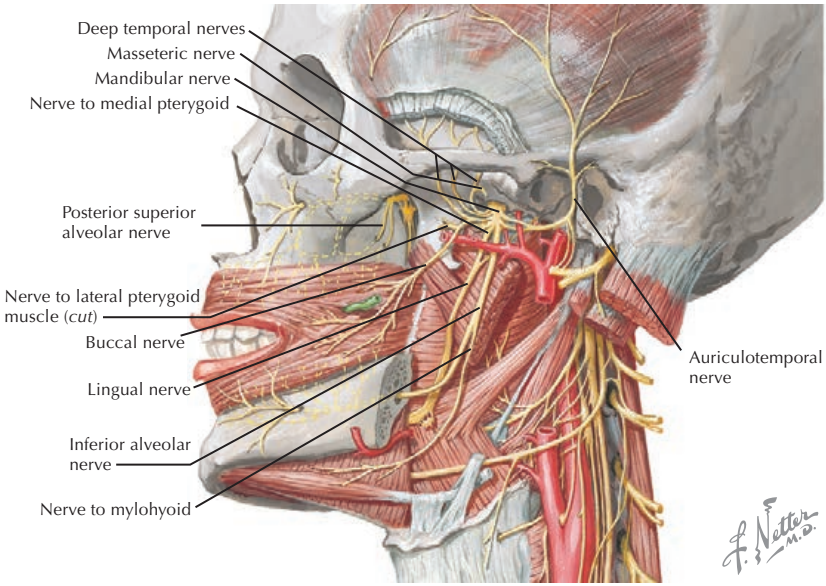


WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Contents of the Infratemporal Fossa

NERVOUS STRUCTURES *CONTINUED*





WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Contents of the Infratemporal Fossa

NERVOUS STRUCTURES *CONTINUED*

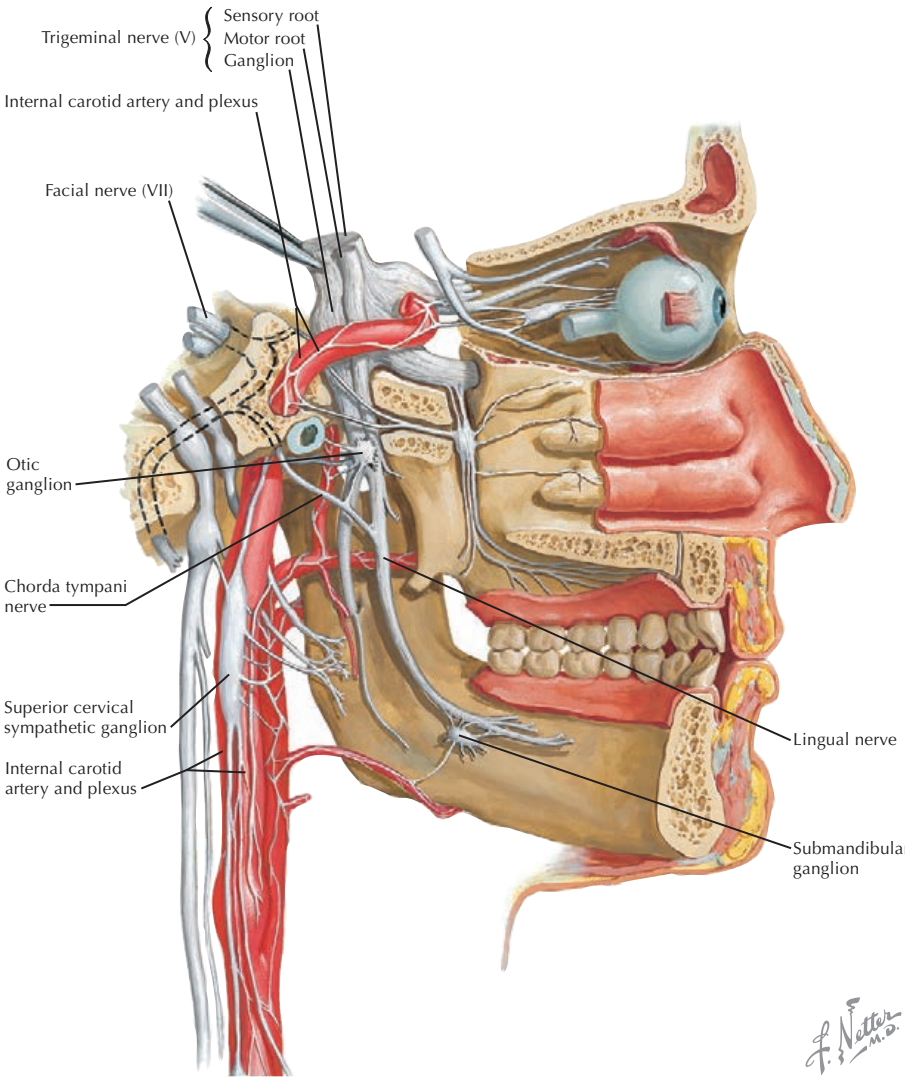
CHORDA TYMPANI, LESSER PETROSAL NERVE, AND OTIC GANGLION		
Nerve	**Source**	**Course**
Chorda tympani	Branch from the facial n. in the tympanic cavity	Carries the preganglionic parasympathetic fibers to the submandibular ganglion and taste fibers to the anterior 2/3 of the tongue Passes anteriorly to enter the tympanic cavity and lies along the tympanic membrane and malleus until exiting the petrotympanic fissure Once it exits the petrotympanic fissure, it joins the posterior border of the lingual n. in the infratemporal fossa The lingual n. is distributed to the anterior 2/3 of the tongue and the SVA* fibers from the chorda tympani travel to the taste buds in this region
Lesser petrosal	Tympanic plexus along the promontory of the ear re-forms as the lesser petrosal n.	Forms in the middle ear cavity Carries the preganglionic parasympathetic (from the tympanic branch of IX) and postganglionic sympathetic (from the caroticotympanic branch of the internal carotid a. plexus) that are traveling to the parotid gland The nerve passes along the groove for the lesser petrosal n. on the petrous portion of the temporal bone toward the foramen ovale Normally enters the infratemporal fossa by passing through the foramen ovale Joins the otic ganglion
Nerve Cell Body	**Characteristics of the Cell Body**	**Course**
Otic ganglion	A collection of nerve cell bodies located in the infratemporal fossa This very small stellate-shaped ganglion is inferior to the foramen ovale and medial to the mandibular division of the trigeminal n.	Postganglionic parasympathetic fibers arise in the otic ganglion and travel to the auriculotemporal branch of the trigeminal n. Auriculotemporal n. travels to the parotid gland These postganglionic parasympathetic fibers innervate the: • Parotid gland—secretion of saliva

*SVA, special visceral afferent. See Chapter 3 for a discussion of the SVA and other functional columns.

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Contents of the Infratemporal Fossa

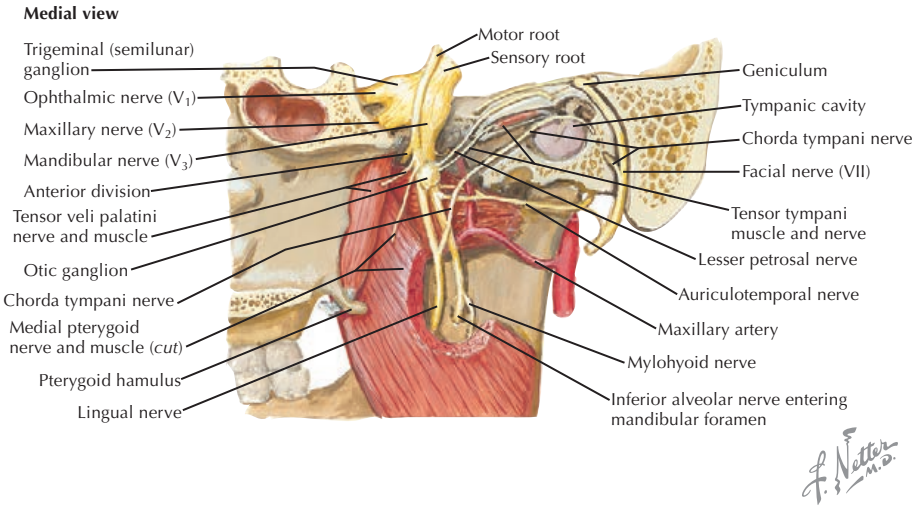
NERVOUS STRUCTURES *CONTINUED*



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Contents of the Infratemporal Fossa

NERVOUS STRUCTURES *CONTINUED*

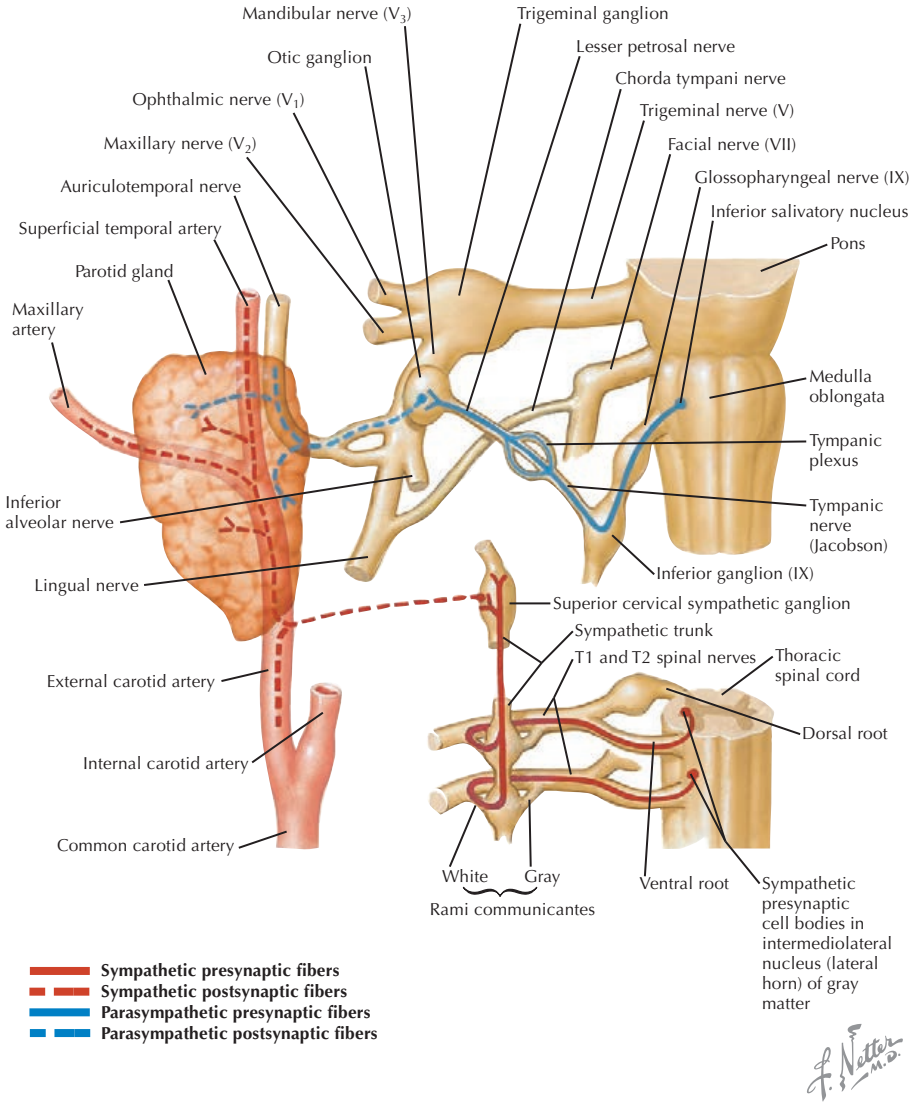


ANATOMIC PATHWAY FOR PARASYMPATHETICS OF THE PAROTID GLAND			
Type of Neuron	**Name of Cell Body**	**Characteristics of the Cell Body**	**Course of the Neuron**
Preganglionic neuron	Inferior salivatory nucleus	A collection of nerve cell bodies located in the medulla	Preganglionic parasympathetic fibers arise from the inferior salivatory nucleus in the medulla Travel through the glossopharyngeal n. and exit the jugular foramen The glossopharyngeal n. gives rise to the tympanic branch of IX, which reenters the skull via the tympanic canaliculus Tympanic branch of IX forms the tympanic plexus along the promontory of the ear The plexus re-forms as the lesser petrosal n., which typically exits the foramen ovale to enter the infratemporal fossa Lesser petrosal n. joins the otic ganglion
Postganglionic neuron	Otic ganglion	A collection of nerve cell bodies This very small stellate-shaped ganglion is located inferior to the foramen ovale, medial to the mandibular division of the trigeminal n.	Postganglionic parasympathetic fibers arise in the otic ganglion These fibers travel to the auriculotemporal branch of the trigeminal n. Auriculotemporal n. travels to the parotid gland These postganglionic parasympathetic fibers innervate the: • Parotid gland—secretion of saliva

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Contents of the Infratemporal Fossa

NERVOUS STRUCTURES *CONTINUED*



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

CHAPTER 8

MUSCLES OF MASTICATION

Overview and Topographic Anatomy 224
Muscles of Mastication 225
Vascular Supply 228
Nerve Supply 231
Clinical Correlate 233

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Overview and Topographic Anatomy

GENERAL INFORMATION

Mastication is the process of chewing food in preparation for deglutition (swallowing) and digestion

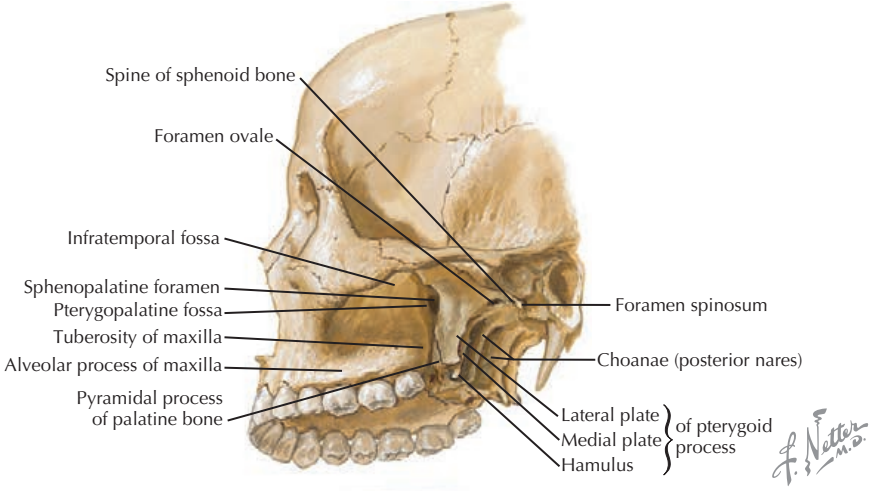
All muscles of mastication originate on the skull and insert on the mandible

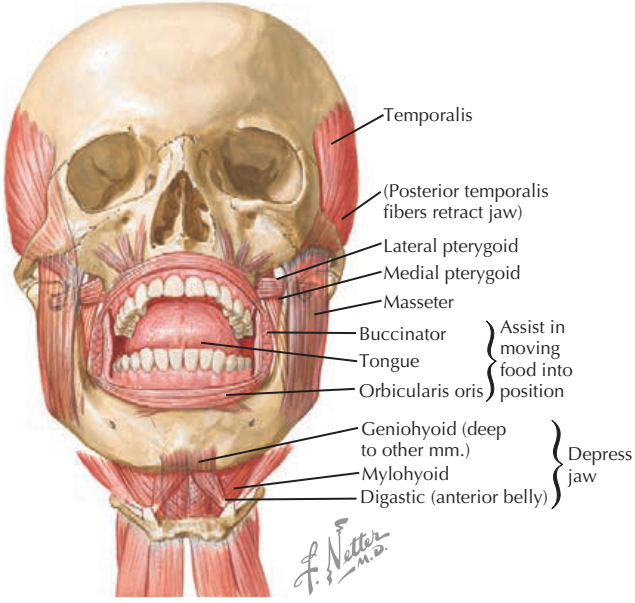
All muscles of mastication are innervated by the mandibular division of the trigeminal nerve

All muscles of mastication are derivatives of the 1st pharyngeal arch

Movements of the mandible are classified as:

- Elevation
- Depression
- Protrusion
- Retrusion
- Side-to-side (lateral) excursion





WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Muscles of Mastication

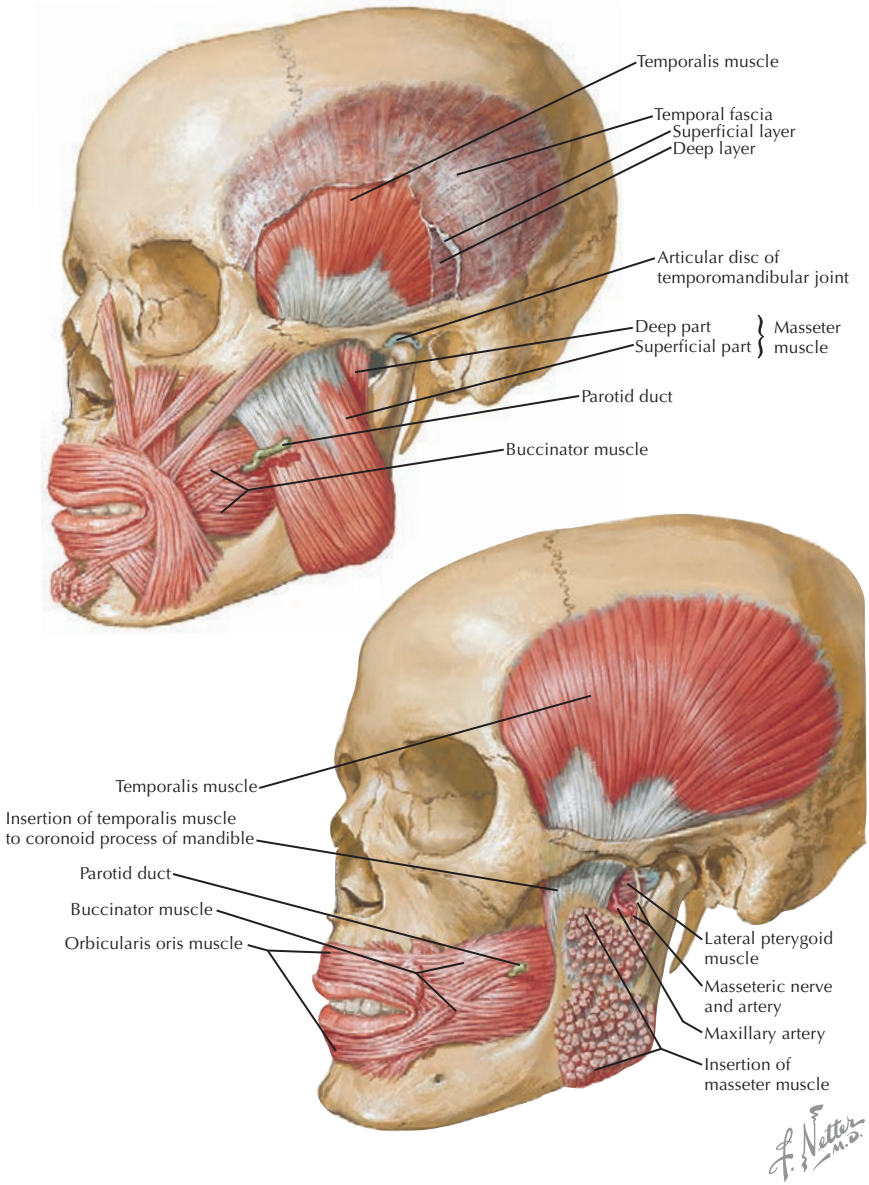
OVERVIEW

Muscle	Origin	Insertion	Main Actions	Nerve Supply	Comments
Masseter: superficial head (larger part)	Inferior border of the anterior 2/3 of the zygomatic arch	Angle of mandible Inferior and lateral parts of the mandibular ramus	Elevates mandible Protrudes mandible (superficial head) Aids in lateral excursion of the mandible	Masseteric branch from the mandibular division of the trigeminal n.	Superficial head's fibers run posteroinferiorly The parotid duct, transverse facial a., and branches of the facial n. pass superficial to the masseter m.
Masseter: deep head (smaller part)	Medial border of the zygomatic arch Inferior border of the posterior 1/3 of the zygomatic arch	Superolateral mandibular ramus Coronoid process			
Temporalis	Entire temporal fossa: along the inferior temporal line including the temporal fascia	Coronoid process: along the apex, anterior and posterior borders, medial surface extending inferiorly on the anterior border of the mandibular ramus (temporal crest) to the 3rd molar tooth	Elevates mandible Retrudes mandible (posterior fibers) Aids in lateral excursion of the mandible	Anterior and posterior deep temporal branches from the mandibular division of the trigeminal n.	The main postural muscle—maintains the mandible in rest position
Medial pterygoid: deep head	Medial surface of lateral pterygoid plate	Medial surface of ramus and angle of the mandible (pterygoid tubercles)	Elevates mandible Protrudes mandible Lateral excursion of the mandible	Medial pterygoid branch from the mandibular division of the trigeminal n.	The deepest muscle of mastication
Medial pterygoid: superficial head	Maxillary tuberosity Pyramidal process of the palatine				
Lateral pterygoid: upper head	Greater wing of the sphenoid Infratemporal crest	Articular disc and capsule of the temporomandibular joint	Depresses mandible Protrudes mandible Lateral excursion of the mandible	Lateral pterygoid branches (for each head) from the mandibular division of the trigeminal n., which exits the foramen ovale, lying medial to the lateral pterygoid	Maxillary a. runs either superficial or deep to it Surrounded by the pterygoid venous plexus Buccal branch of the trigeminal n. passes between the 2 heads
Lateral pterygoid: lower head	Lateral surface of the lateral pterygoid plate	Pterygoid fovea on the neck of the condyle of the mandible			

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Muscles of Mastication

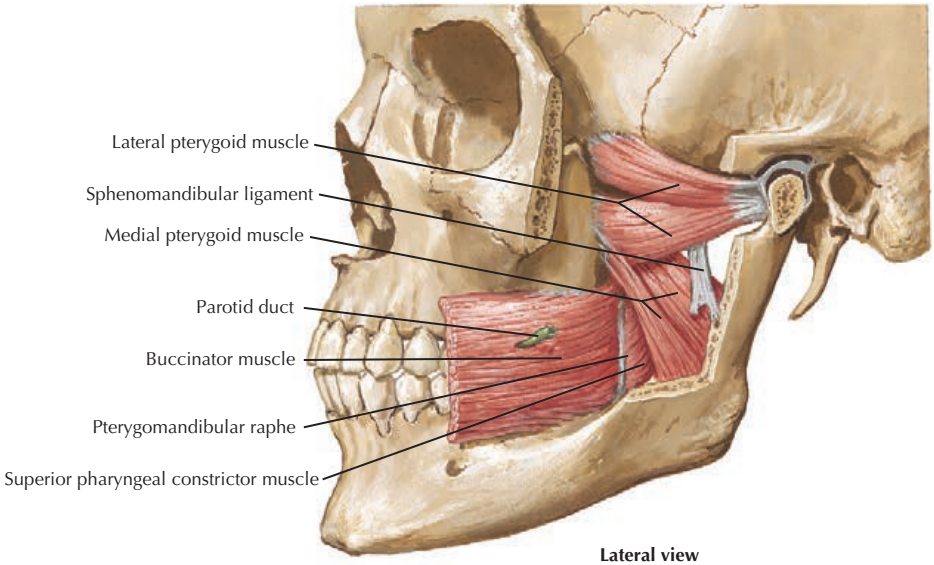
OVERVIEW *CONTINUED*



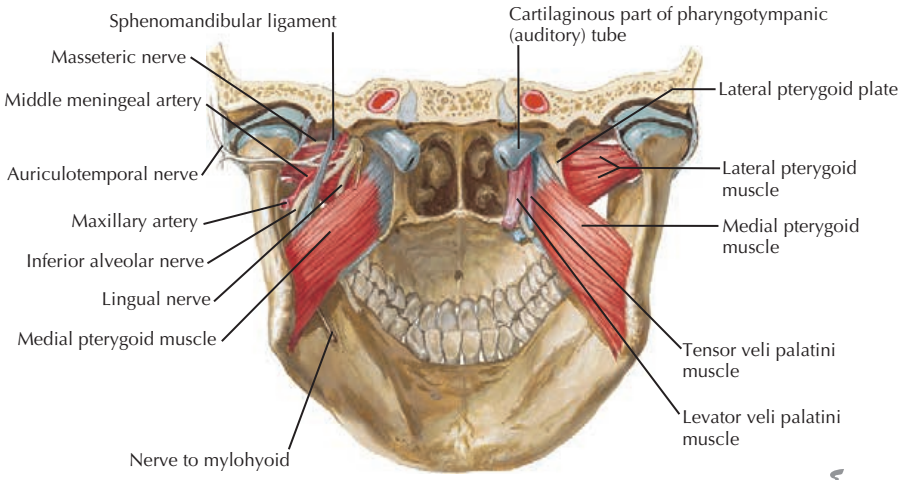
WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Muscles of Mastication

OVERVIEW *CONTINUED*



Lateral view



Posterior view

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Vascular Supply

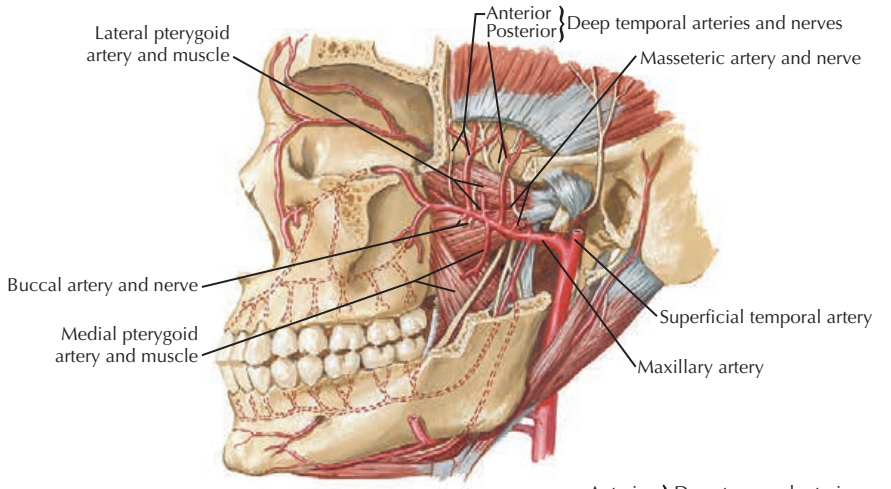
ARTERIAL SUPPLY

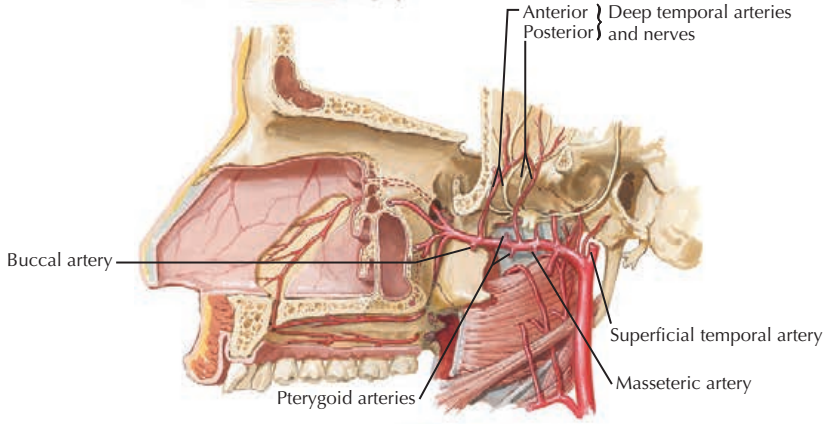
Artery	Source	Course
Maxillary	Larger of the 2 terminal branches of the external carotid a. (superficial temporal a. is the other terminal branch)	Arises posterior to the condylar neck of the mandible within the parotid gland Exits the parotid gland and passes anteriorly between the ramus of the mandible and the sphenomandibular ligament within the infratemporal fossa Takes a course that is either superficial or deep to the lateral pterygoid until reaching the pterygopalatine fossa via the pterygomaxillary fissure Supplies the deep structures of the face and is divided into 3 parts as it passes medially through the infratemporal fossa: • 1st part: mandibular • 2nd part: pterygoid • 3rd part: pterygopalatine 1st and 3rd parts do not supply the muscles of mastication 2nd part also feeds the buccinator m., which is not a muscle of mastication
2nd part: (pterygoid part)	External carotid a.	Passes obliquely in an anterior and superior direction between the ramus of the mandible and insertion of the temporalis m. Courses on the superficial surface of the lateral pterygoid m. to travel between the 2 heads of the muscle Provides the muscular branches to the muscles of mastication and the buccinator m. Gives rise to 5 branches: anterior and posterior deep temporal, masseteric, pterygoid branches, and buccal
Anterior and posterior deep temporal	Pterygoid (2nd part of the maxillary a.)	Pass between the skull and the temporalis m. Supply the temporalis throughout their course While ascending, they anastomose with the middle temporal a. from the superficial temporal a.
Masseteric		Typically arises between the neck of the mandible and the sphenomandibular lig. Passes laterally through the mandibular notch with the nerve Supplies the deep surface of the masseter
Pterygoid		A branch of the pterygoid a. (2nd part of the maxillary a.) An irregular number of branches supply the medial and lateral pterygoids
Buccal		A branch of the pterygoid a. (2nd part of the maxillary a.) A small artery that runs obliquely in an anterior direction between the medial pterygoid and the insertion of the temporalis m. until it reaches the outer surface of the buccinator, which it supplies
Middle temporal	Superficial temporal a. after it passes superior to the root of the zygomatic arch	Passes deep into the temporalis fascia and temporalis m. Anastomoses with the anterior and posterior deep temporal vessels
Transverse facial	Superficial temporal a. before it exits the parotid gland	Passes transversely to exit the gland Passes immediately superior to the parotid duct across the masseter m. and face, providing vascular supply along the way

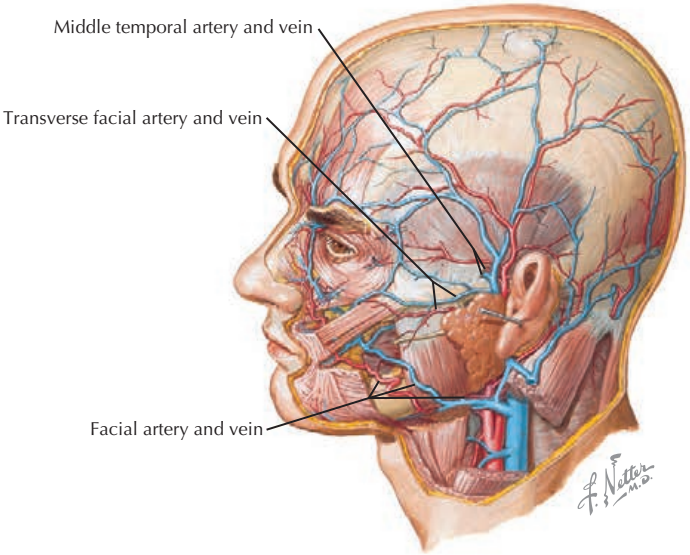
WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Vascular Supply

ARTERIAL SUPPLY *CONTINUED*



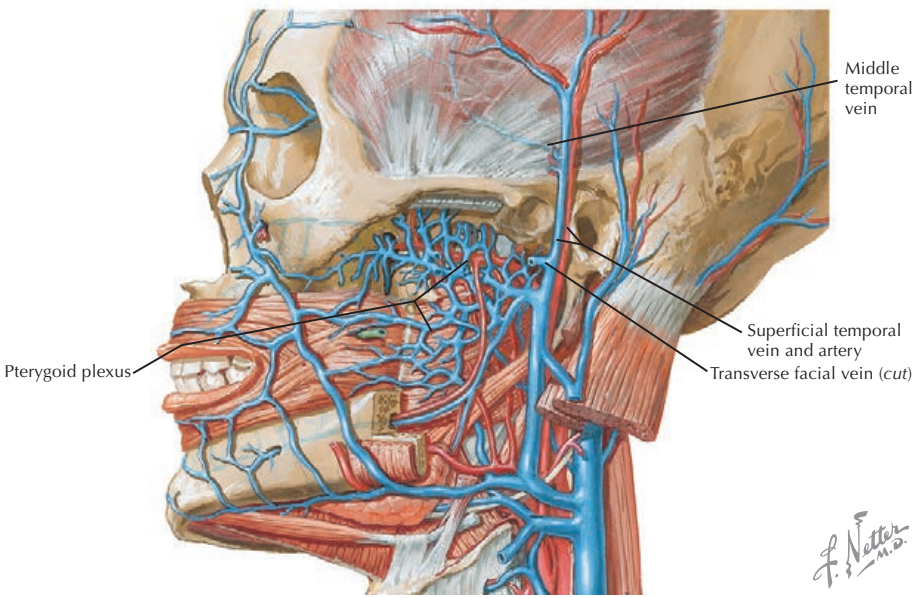




WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

VENOUS DRAINAGE

Vein	Course
Pterygoid plexus	An extensive network of veins that parallel the 2nd and 3rd parts of the maxillary a. Receives branches that correspond with the same branches of the maxillary a. Tributaries of the pterygoid plexus eventually converge to form a short maxillary v. Communicates with the cavernous sinus, pharyngeal venous plexus, facial v. via the deep facial v., and ophthalmic vv.
Middle temporal	Arises from deep within the temporalis m. and fascia, where it anastomoses with the anterior and posterior deep temporal vessels Joins the superficial temporal v. immediately before it passes inferior to the root of the zygomatic arch
Transverse facial	Travels posteriorly to enter the parotid gland and join the superficial temporal v.
Anterior and posterior deep temporal	Join the pterygoid plexus of veins Also communicate with the middle temporal v.
Masseteric	Join the pterygoid plexus of veins
Pterygoid	
Buccal	



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

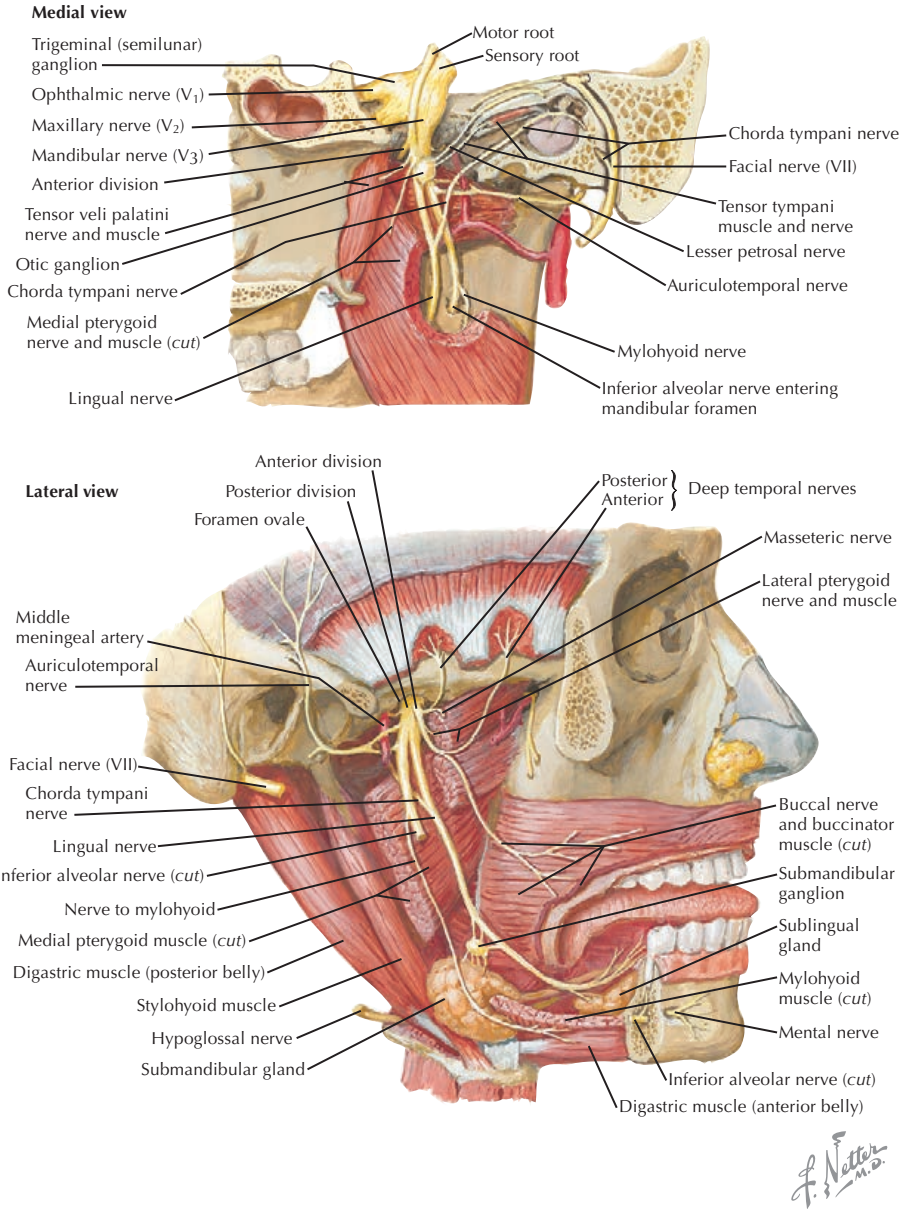
Nerve Supply

MOTOR BRANCHES OF THE TRIGEMINAL NERVE

Nerve	Source	Course
Mandibular division of the trigeminal	Largest of the 3 divisions of the trigeminal n. Created by a large sensory and a small motor root that unite just after passing through the foramen ovale to enter the infratemporal fossa	Immediately gives rise to 4 branches: meningeal, medial pterygoid, tensor tympani, and tensor veli palatini Divides into anterior and posterior divisions Anterior division (smaller)—mainly motor with 1 sensory branch (buccal n.) Posterior division (larger)—mainly sensory with 1 motor branch (mylohyoid n.)
Anterior and posterior deep temporal	The anterior part of the mandibular division of the trigeminal n. The anterior deep temporal n. sometimes arises from the buccal n.	Pass superior to the lateral pterygoid m. between the skull and the temporalis m. while passing deep to the temporalis to innervate it Innervates the temporalis
Masseteric	Arises from the anterior part of the mandibular division of the trigeminal n., but occasionally arises from a common branch with the posterior deep temporal n.	Runs superior to the lateral pterygoid m. and continues on the lateral aspect of the muscle as it approaches the mandible Lies anterior to the temporomandibular joint and posterior to the tendon of the temporalis m. Passes though the masseteric notch with the masseteric vessels Enters the masseter m.'s deep surface to innervate it Also provides a small branch to the temporomandibular joint
Medial pterygoid	Arises from the undivided trunk created by the large sensory and the small motor root of the mandibular division of the trigeminal n.	Passes through the otic ganglion to provide motor and proprioceptive innervation to the medial pterygoid m. Passes anteriorly and inferiorly to enter the medial pterygoid Connected to the otic ganglion but does not form a synapse at the ganglion
Lateral pterygoid	Arises from the anterior part of the mandibular division of the trigeminal n., but sometimes arises as a branch from the buccal n.	These branches, 1 for each muscular head, enter the deep surface of the lateral pterygoid m. to innervate it

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

MOTOR BRANCHES OF THE TRIGEMINAL NERVE *CONTINUED*



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

MASTICATION

Mastication prepares food by chewing for deglutition and digestion

It is the first step in the breakdown of food by:

- Making smaller pieces from larger pieces (thus increasing the surface area for digestive breakdown)
- Helping soften and lubricate the food with saliva

BONES INVOLVED

Base of the skull and the mandible

They articulate at the temporomandibular joint (between the squamous portion of the temporal bone [skull] and the condyle of the mandible)

MUSCLES INVOLVED

4 muscles of mastication:

- Masseter
- Temporalis
- Medial pterygoid
- Lateral pterygoid

All muscles of mastication are innervated by the mandibular division of the trigeminal nerve (nerve of the first pharyngeal arch)

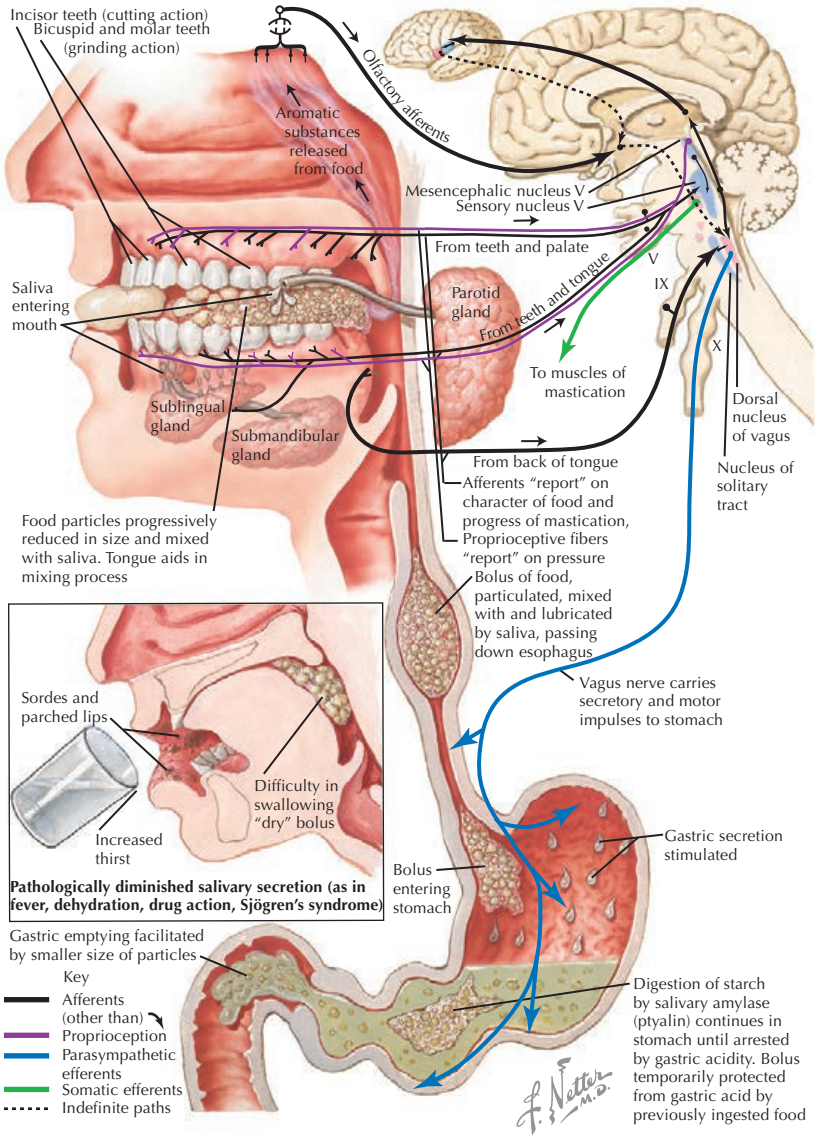
Mastication involves using the muscles of mastication to move the mandible in 1 of 3 planes in an antagonistic fashion:

- Elevation/depression
- Protrusion/retrusion
- Side-to-side excursion

Although the buccinator is not a muscle of mastication, it aids in keeping the bolus of food against the teeth to help in mastication

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

MASTICATION *CONTINUED*



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

CHAPTER 9

TEMPOROMANDIBULAR JOINT

Overview and Topographic Anatomy 236
Anatomy 237
Vascular Supply 240
Nerve Supply 242
Clinical Correlates 243

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Overview and Topographic Anatomy

GENERAL INFORMATION

The *temporomandibular joint* (TMJ) is the articulation between the squamous portion of the temporal bone and the condyle of the mandible

Structural Components

The TMJ comprises 2 types of synovial joints—*hinge* and *sliding*—and consists of the following:

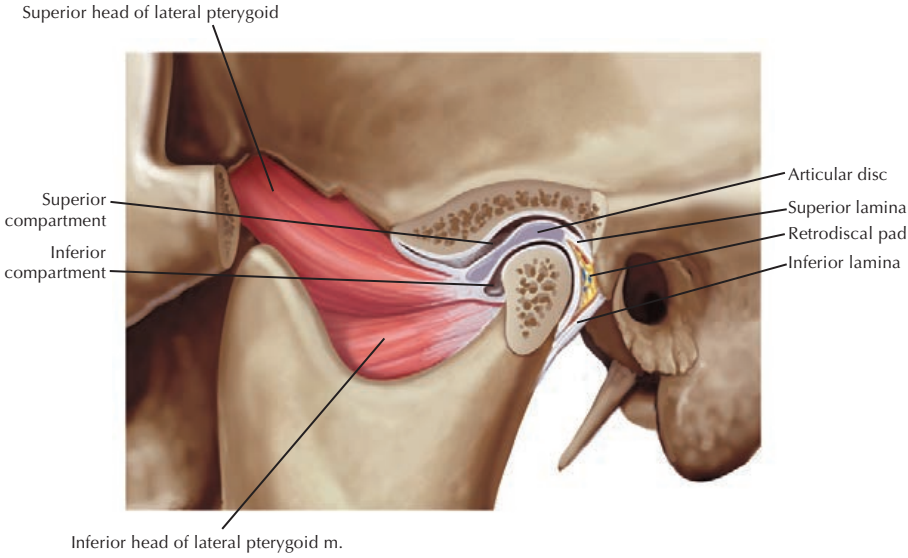
- Squamous portion of the temporal bone
- Articular disc (contained within the TMJ)
- Condyle of the mandible
- Ligaments (serve as boundaries)

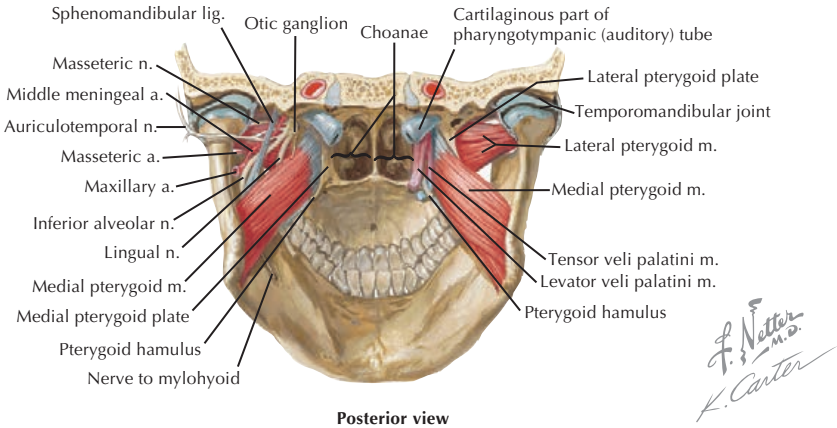
TMJ Dysfunction

Affects approximately 25% of the population and may be severe in a small subgroup

Causes include arthritis, trauma, infection, bruxism, and disc displacement

More common in females





Posterior view

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

ANATOMIC FEATURES

Feature	Comments
Squamous portion of the temporal bone	The TMJ articulation is located on the squamous portion of the temporal bone Has an avascular articular surface composed of fibrous connective tissue instead of hyaline cartilage The main load-bearing areas are on the lateral aspect of the squamous portion, condyle, and articular disc The dense fibrous connective tissue is thickest in the load-bearing areas Relations of the squamous portion of the temporal bone: • Anterior—articular eminence becoming the articular tubercle • Intermediate—glenoid fossa • Posterior—tympanic plate tapering to the postglenoid tubercle Articular Eminence The strong bony prominence on the base of the zygomatic process Articular Tubercle Located on the lateral part of the articular eminence Provides attachment for the capsule and lateral temporomandibular ligament Glenoid Fossa The depression into which the condyle is located Superior to this thin plate of bone is the middle cranial fossa Tympanic Plate The vertical plate located anterior to the external auditory meatus Postglenoid Tubercle An inferior extension of the squamous portion of the temporal bone Makes the posterior aspect of the glenoid fossa Provides attachment for the capsule and retrodiscal pad
Mandibular condyles	Articulate with the articular disc Shaped like footballs: • Mediolateral—20 mm • Anteroposterior—10 mm Articular surface is avascular fibrous connective tissue instead of hyaline cartilage The main load-bearing areas are on the lateral aspect
Articular disc	Composed of dense fibrous connective tissue Located between the squamous portion of the temporal bone and the condyle Is avascular and aneural in its central part but is vascular and innervated in the peripheral areas, where load-bearing is minimal The main load-bearing areas are located on the lateral aspect; this is an area of potential perforation Merges around its periphery, attaching to the capsule Divided into 3 bands: • Anterior—this thick band lies just anterior to the condyle with the mouth closed • Intermediate—this band, the thinnest part, is located along the articular eminence with the mouth closed • Posterior—this thick band is located superior to the disc with the mouth closed Additional attachments: • Medial/lateral—strong medial and lateral collateral ligaments anchor the disc to the condyle • Anterior—the disc is attached to the capsule and the superior head of the lateral pterygoid, but not the condyle, allowing the disc to rotate over the condyle in an anteroposterior direction • Posterior—the disc is contiguous with the bilaminar zone that blends with the capsule

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

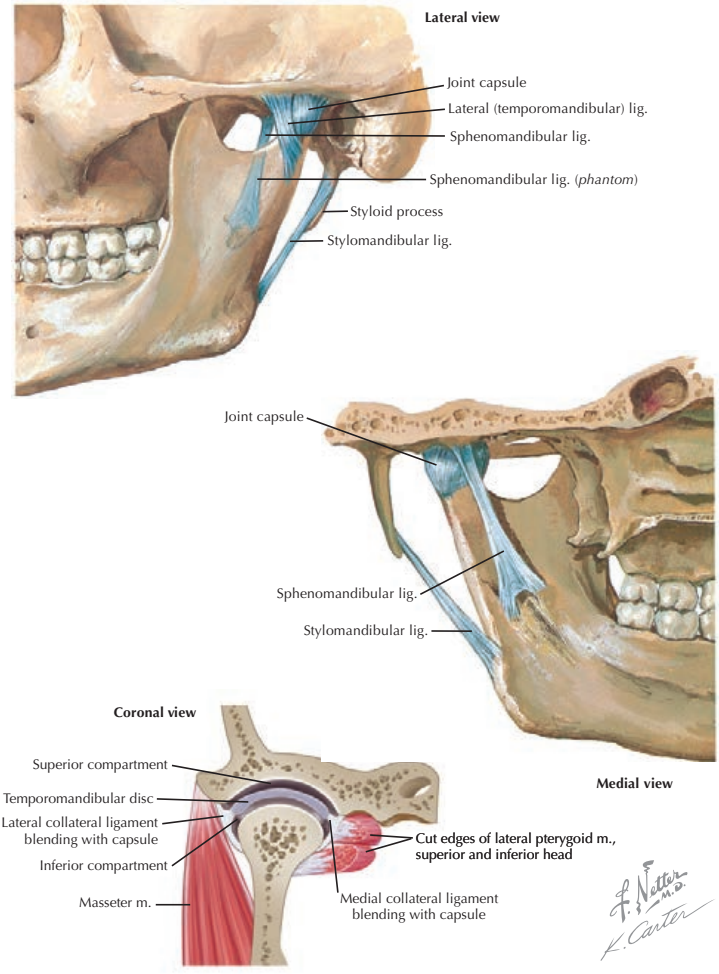
ANATOMIC FEATURES *CONTINUED*

Feature	Comments
Bilaminar zone (posterior attachment complex)	A bilaminar structure located posterior to the articular disc Highly distortable, especially on opening the mouth Composed of: • Superior lamina—contains elastic fibers and anchors the superior aspect of the posterior portion of the disc to the capsule and bone at the postglenoid tubercle and tympanic plate • Retrodiscal pad—the highly vascular and neural portion of the TMJ, made of collagen, elastic fibers, fat, nerves, and blood vessels (a large venous plexus fills with blood when the condyle moves anteriorly) • Inferior lamina—contains mainly collagen fibers and anchors the inferior aspect of the posterior portion of the disc to the condyle
TMJ compartments	**Overview** The articular disc divides the TMJ into superior and inferior compartments The internal surface of both compartments contains specialized endothelial cells that form a synovial lining that produces synovial fluid, making the TMJ a synovial joint Synovial fluid acts as: • A lubricant • An instrument for providing the metabolic requirements to the articular surfaces of the TMJ **Superior Compartment** Between the squamous portion of the temporal bone and the articular disc Volume = 1.2 mL Provides for the translational movement of the TMJ **Inferior Compartment** Between the articular disc and the condyle Volume = 0.9 mL Provides for the rotational movement of the TMJ
Capsule	Completely encloses the articular surface of the temporal bone and the condyle Composed of fibrous connective tissue Toughened along the medial and lateral aspects by ligaments Lined by a highly vascular synovial membrane Has various sensory receptors including nociceptors Attachments: • Superior—along the rim of the temporal articular surfaces • Inferior—along the condylar neck • Medial—blends along the medial collateral lig. • Lateral—blends along the lateral collateral lig. • Anterior—blends with the superior head of the lateral pterygoid m. • Posterior—along the retrodiscal pad
Ligaments	**Collateral Ligaments** • Composed of 2 ligaments: *Medial collateral ligament*—connects the medial aspect of the articular disc to the medial pole of the condyle *Lateral collateral ligament*—connects the lateral aspect of the articular disc to the lateral pole of the condyle • Frequently called the discal ligaments • Composed of collagenous connective tissue; thus, they do not stretch **Temporomandibular (Lateral) Ligament** • The thickened ligament on the lateral aspect of the capsule • Prevents lateral and posterior displacement of the condyle • Composed of 2 separate bands: *Outer oblique part*—largest portion; attached to the articular tubercle; travels posteroinferiorly to attach immediately inferior to the condyle; this limits the opening of the mandible

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

ANATOMIC FEATURES *CONTINUED*

Feature	Comments
Ligaments	*Inner horizontal part*—smaller band attached to the articular tubercle running horizontally to attach to the lateral part of the condyle and disc; this limits posterior movement of the articular disc and the condyle **Stylomandibular Ligament** • Composed of a thickening of deep cervical fascia • Extends from the styloid process to the posterior margin of the angle and the ramus of the mandible • Helps limit anterior protrusion of the mandible **Sphenomandibular Ligament** • Remnant of Meckel's cartilage • Extends from the spine of the sphenoid to the lingula of the mandible • May help act as a pivot on the mandible by maintaining the same amount of tension during both opening and closing of the mouth

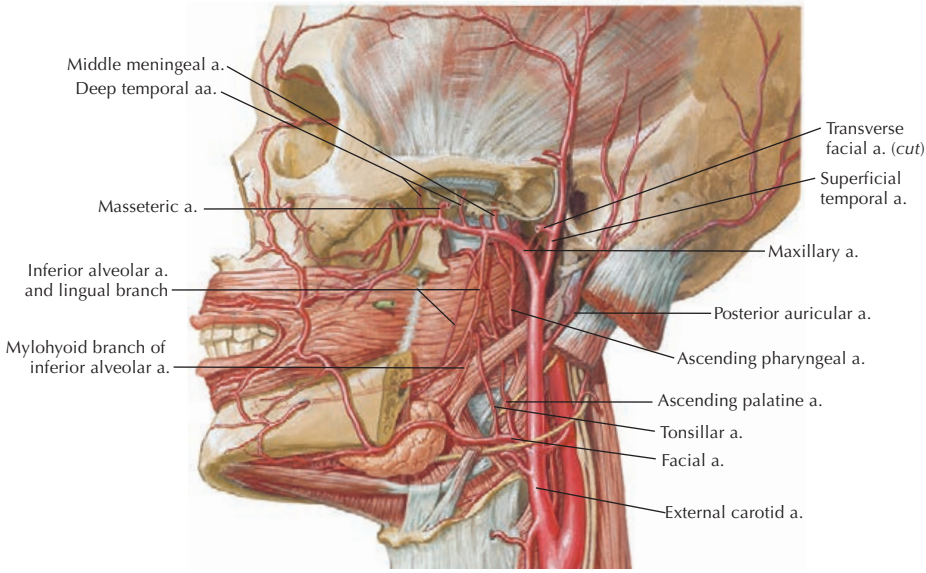


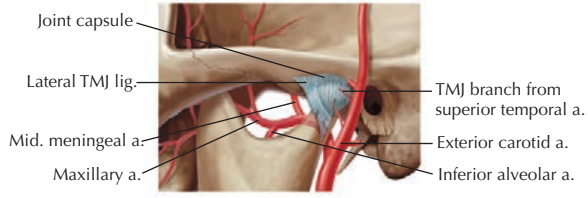
WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

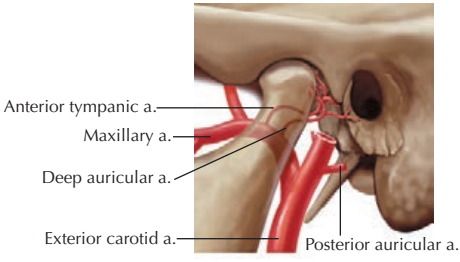
Vascular Supply

ARTERIAL SUPPLY

Artery	Source	Course
Superficial temporal	Terminal branch of the external carotid a.	Begins in the parotid gland and initially is located posterior to the mandible, where it provides small branches to the TMJ
Deep auricular	Maxillary a.	Arising in the same area as that of the anterior tympanic a. Lies in the parotid gland, posterior to the TMJ, where it gives branches to the TMJ
Anterior tympanic		Arising in the same area as that of the deep auricular a. Passes superiorly behind the TMJ to enter the tympanic cavity through the petrotympanic fissure, where it gives branches to the TMJ





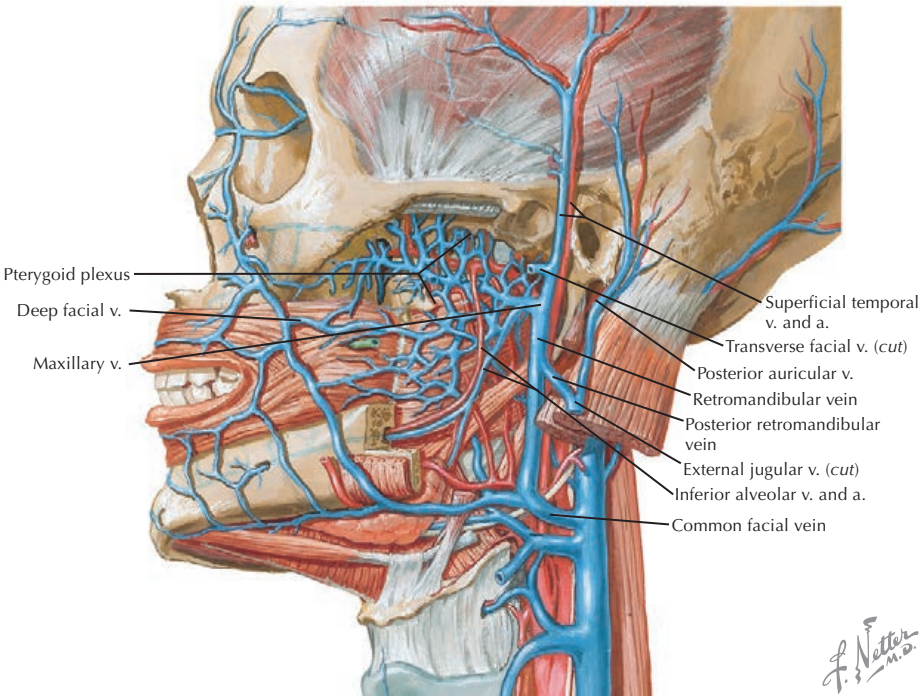


WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Vascular Supply

VENOUS DRAINAGE

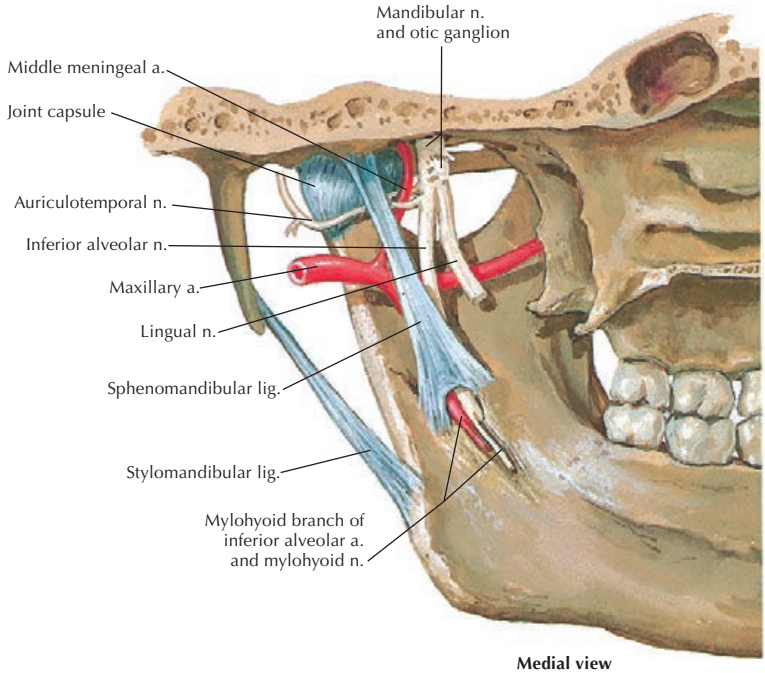
Vein	Course
Superficial temporal	Receives some branches from the TMJ Then joins the maxillary v. to form the retromandibular v.
Maxillary	Receives some branches from the TMJ Joins the superficial temporal v. to form the retromandibular v.



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

SENSORY INNERVATION

Nerve	Source	Comment
Auriculotemporal	Mandibular division of the trigeminal n.	From the posterior division of the mandibular division of the trigeminal n. Splits around the middle meningeal a. and passes between the sphenomandibular lig. and the condylar neck Supplies sensory branches all along the capsule Sensory but carries autonomic function to the parotid gland
Masseteric	Anterior division of the mandibular division of the trigeminal n.	Lies anterior to the TMJ and provides branches to the joint before passing over the masseteric notch to reach the masseter m. Sensory branches aid the auriculotemporal n.
Posterior deep temporal		Lies anterior to the TMJ and provides branches to the joint before innervating the temporalis m. Sensory branches aid the auriculotemporal n. in supplying the anterior part of the TMJ Mainly motor, but carries additional sensory function to the TMJ



Medial view

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

OPENING THE MANDIBLE

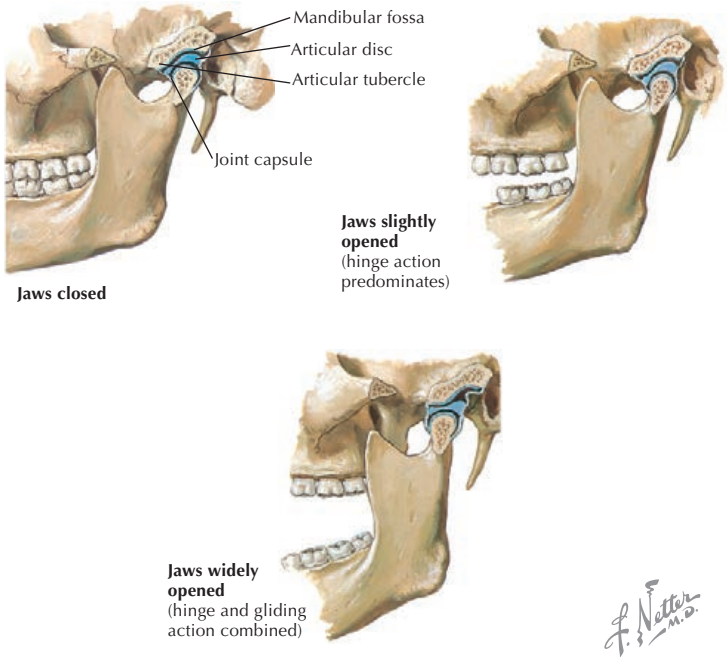
Opening the mandible involves a complex series of movements

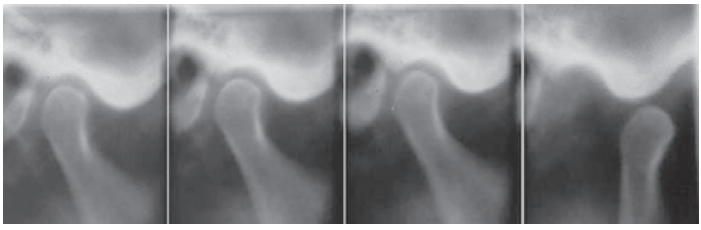
Initial movement is *rotational,* which occurs in the lower TMJ compartment:

- Lateral pterygoid (inferior head) initiates the opening of the jaw (the superior head of the lateral pterygoid is described as being active during elevation of the mandible in a "power stroke")
- As the mandible is depressed, the medial and collateral ligaments tightly attach the condyle to the articular disc, thereby allowing only for rotational movement
- Once the TMJ becomes taut, no further rotation of the condyle can occur
- Normally, rotational movement continues until the upper and the lower teeth are about 20 mm away from each other

For additional movement of the mandible, *translational* movement must occur:

- A translational movement occurs in the upper TMJ compartment and provides for most of the mandible's ability to open
- In this movement, the articular disc and the condyle complex slide inferiorly on the articular eminences, allowing for maximum depression of the mandible





WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

MANDIBULAR DISLOCATION

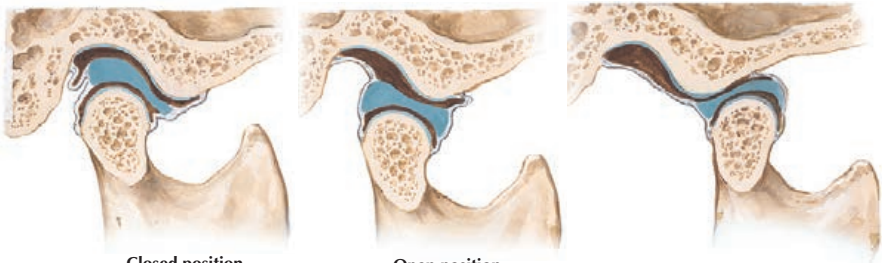
Mandibular dislocation (or subluxation of the TMJ) occurs when the condyle moves anterior to the articular eminence

- With dislocation, the mouth appears "wide open"
- Because the condyle is displaced anterior to the articular eminence, a depression can be palpated posterior to the condyle

Spontaneous dislocations can occur from a variety of actions ranging from an extended dental treatment to a simple yawn

Because the mandible is dislocated, the patient has a great deal of difficulty verbalizing his or her predicament

Relocation involves repositioning the condyle posterior to the articular eminence



Closed position | Open position | Anterior dislocation

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

ARTHRITIS AND ANKYLOSIS

ARTHRITIS

Arthritis is the most common cause of pathologic changes in the TMJ

When rheumatoid arthritis occurs, usually both TMJs are affected, and other joints tend to be affected before the TMJ

Radiologic images in the *initial* disease stages show decreased joint space without osseous changes

Radiologic images in the *late* disease stages show decreased joint space with osseous changes, possibly including ankylosis

In osteoarthritis, causes include normal wear, trauma, and bruxism, and clinical manifestations may range from mild to severe

ANKYLOSIS

Ankylosis is an obliteration of the TMJ space with abnormal osseous morphologic features, which often occurs as a result of trauma or infection

Classified as either true (intracapsular) or false ankylosis (extracapsular condition usually associated with an abnormally large coronoid process or zygomatic arch)

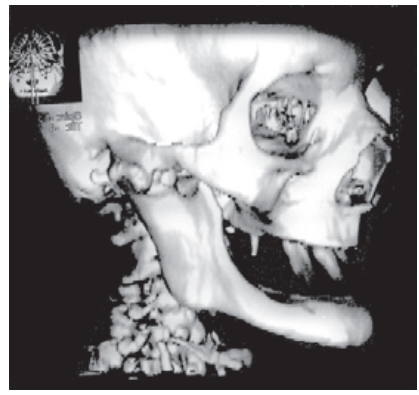
Treatment varies in accordance with the cause but may include a prosthetic replacement or condylectomy

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

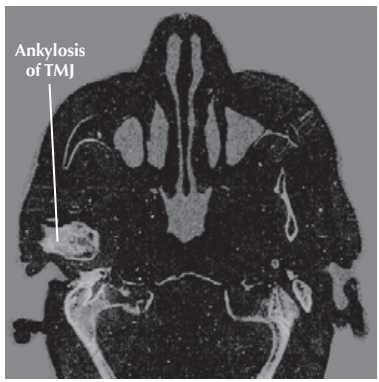
ARTHRITIS AND ANKYLOSIS *CONTINUED*

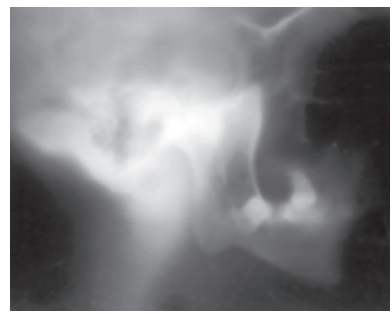


Unilateral ankylosis

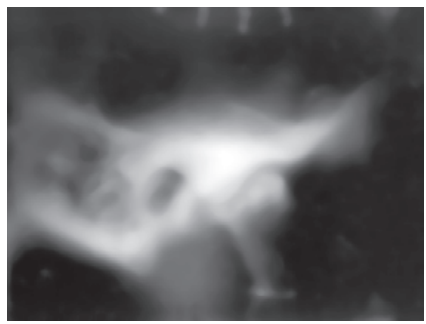


Ankylosis





Ankylosis



Osteoarthritis

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

CHAPTER 10

PTERYGOPALATINE FOSSA

Overview and Topographic Anatomy 248

Borders and Openings 249

Contents of the Pterygopalatine Fossa 252

Imaging 263

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Overview and Topographic Anatomy

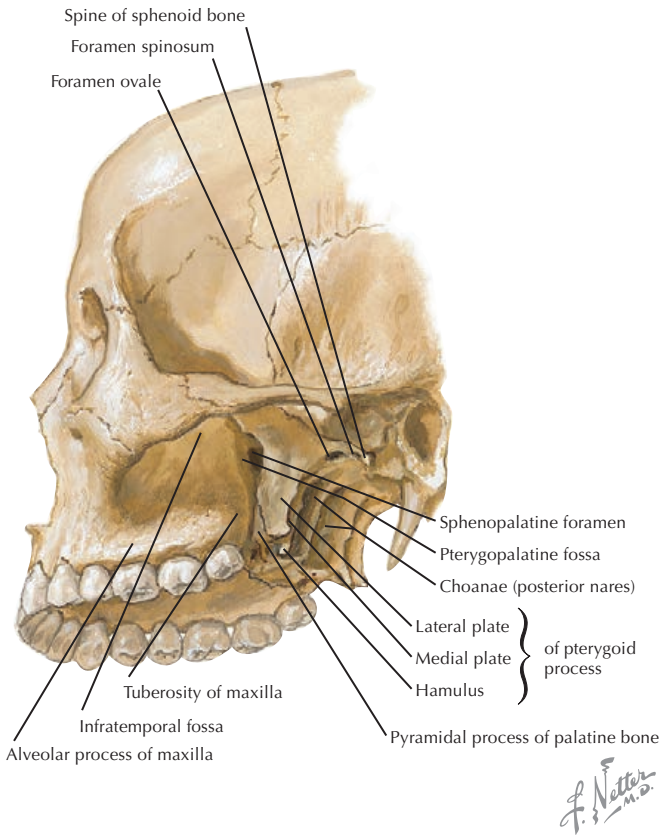
GENERAL INFORMATION

Pyramid-shaped fossa on the lateral aspect of the skull between the maxilla's infratemporal surface and the pterygoid process of the sphenoid

Contains major nerves and blood vessels that supply the nasal cavity, upper jaw, hard palate, and soft palate: the maxillary division of the trigeminal nerve, pterygopalatine (sphenopalatine, Meckel's) ganglion, and 3rd portion of the maxillary artery

Allows the infratemporal fossa, middle cranial fossa, foramen lacerum, nasopharynx, nasal cavity, orbital cavity, and oral cavity to communicate

7 foramina/fissures allow passage of nerves and vessels



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Borders and Openings

BORDERS

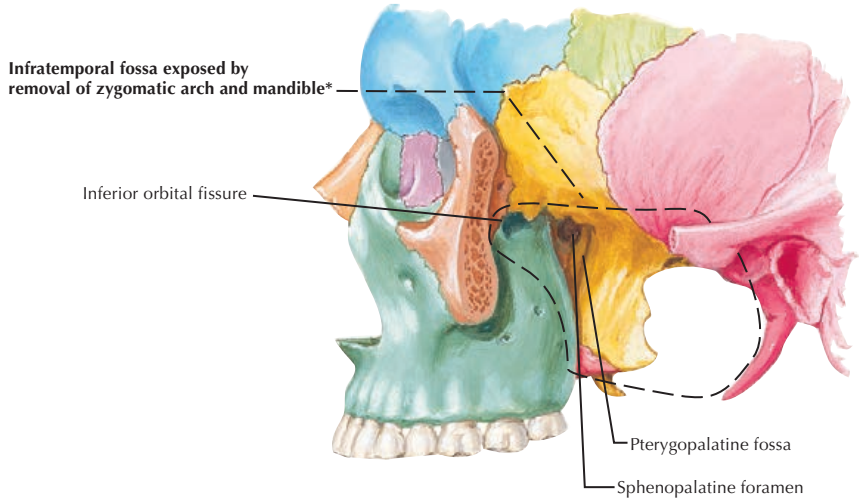
Border	Structures
Anterior wall	Infratemporal surface of the maxilla
Posterior wall	Pterygoid process of the sphenoid
Medial wall	Perpendicular plate of the palatine
Lateral wall	None (open to the pterygomaxillary fissure)
Superior wall	Inferior surface of the sphenoid and the orbital plate of the palatine bone
Inferior wall	Pyramidal process of the palatine

OPENINGS

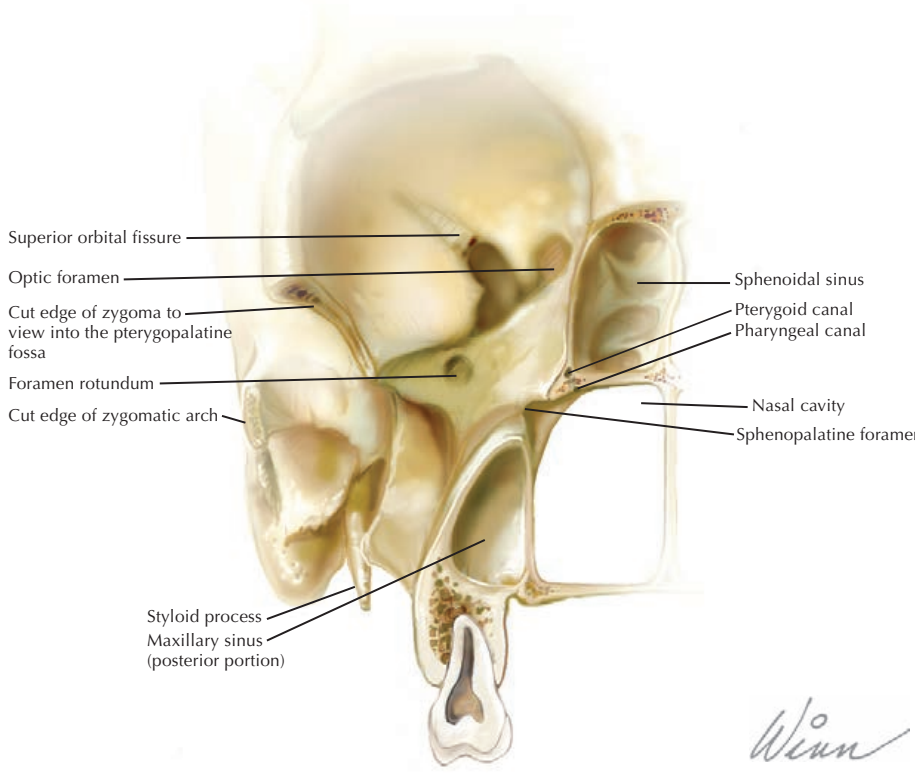
Opening	Location	Transmitted Structures
Pterygomaxillary fissure	Lateral part of the pterygopalatine fossa Between the infratemporal fossa and the pterygopalatine fossa	Posterior superior alveolar n. from the pterygopalatine fossa into the infratemporal fossa 3rd part of the maxillary a. from the infratemporal fossa into the pterygopalatine fossa A variable network of veins, such as the sphenopalatine, into the pterygoid plexus of vv.
Sphenopalatine foramen	Medial wall of the pterygopalatine fossa Between the nasal cavity and the pterygopalatine fossa Often located posterior to the middle nasal concha	Nasopalatine n. Posterior superior nasal nn. Sphenopalatine vessels
Inferior orbital fissure	Superior part of the pterygopalatine fossa Between the pterygopalatine fossa and the orbit Continues posteriorly with the superior part of the pterygomaxillary fissure	Infraorbital n. from the maxillary division of the trigeminal n. Zygomatic n. from the maxillary division of the trigeminal Infraorbital vessels Inferior ophthalmic v. that connects with the pterygoid plexus of veins
Palatine canal	Inferior part of the pterygopalatine fossa Between the pterygopalatine fossa and the hard and the soft palate Eventually terminates into the greater and lesser palatine foramina	Greater palatine n. and vessels (through the greater palatine foramen) onto the hard palate Lesser palatine n. and vessels (through the lesser palatine foramen) onto the soft palate
Foramen rotundum	Posterolateral part of the pterygopalatine fossa Between the pterygopalatine fossa and the middle cranial fossa	Maxillary division of the trigeminal n.
Pterygoid canal	Posterior part of the pterygopalatine fossa Between the pterygopalatine fossa and the foramen lacerum Inferior and medial to the foramen rotundum	Nerve of the pterygoid canal (vidian n.) An accompanying artery
Pharyngeal canal	Posteromedial part of the pterygopalatine fossa Between the pterygopalatine fossa and the nasopharynx Medial to the pterygoid canal	Pharyngeal n. Pharyngeal vessels

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

OPENINGS *CONTINUED*

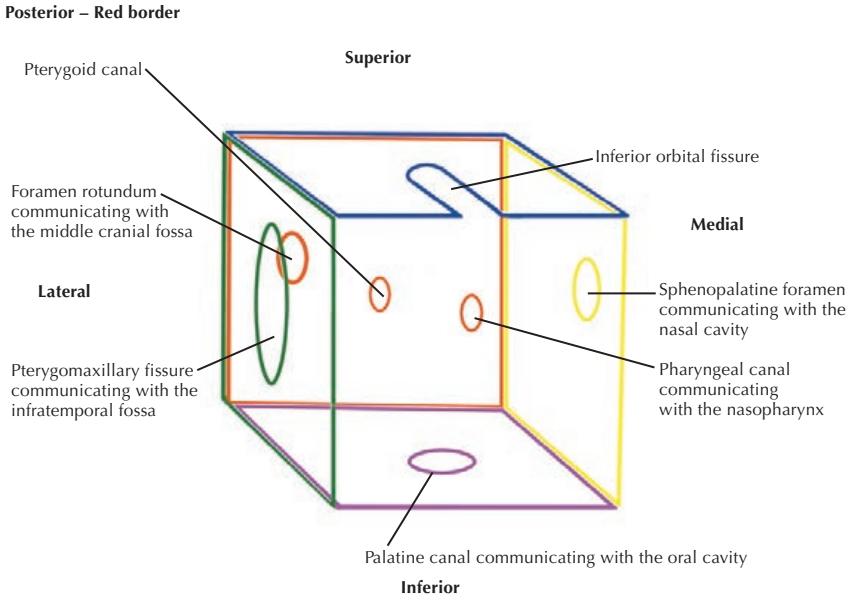


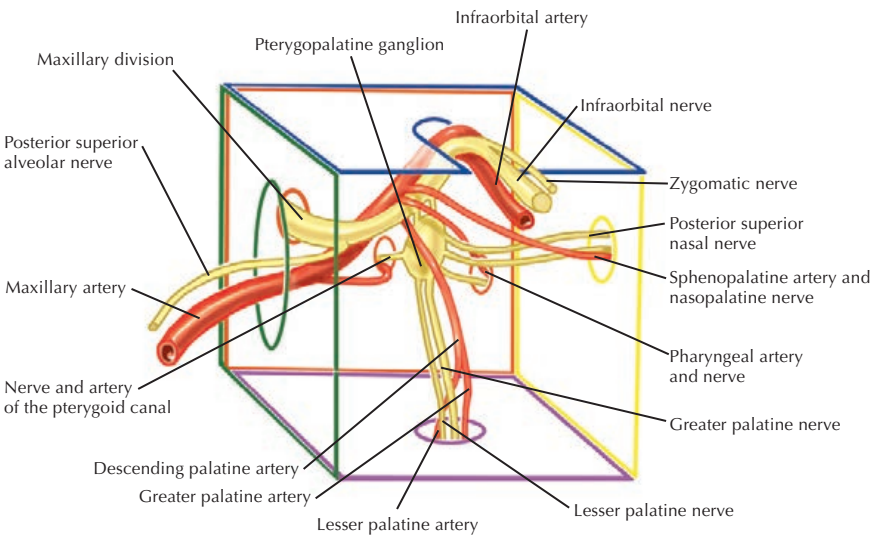
*Superficially, mastoid process forms posterior boundary



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

OPENINGS *CONTINUED*





WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Contents of the Pterygopalatine Fossa

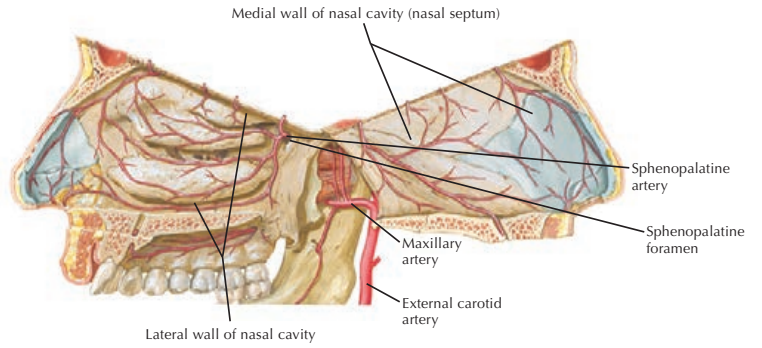
VASCULAR SUPPLY

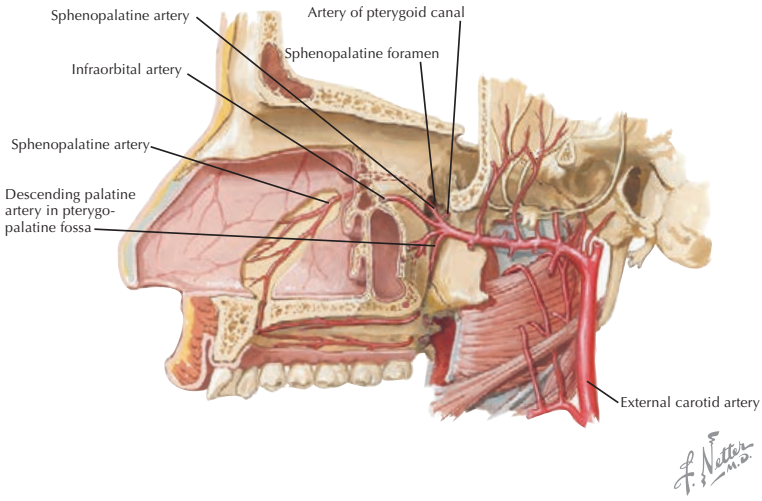
ARTERIAL SUPPLY		
Artery	**Source**	**Course**
Maxillary (3rd part)	External carotid a.	Passes from the infratemporal fossa into the pterygopalatine fossa via the pterygomaxillary fissure Prior to passing through the pterygomaxillary fissure, it gives off the posterior superior alveolar a. (the only artery from the 3rd part of the maxillary a. that does not normally branch off within the pterygopalatine fossa)
Infraorbital	The continuation of the 3rd part of the maxillary a.	Accompanied by the infraorbital n. and v. The artery passes forward in the infraorbital groove, infraorbital canal, and exits the infraorbital foramen In the infraorbital canal, it gives rise to various orbital branches that aid in supplying the lacrimal gland and extraocular muscles In the infraorbital canal, it also gives rise to the anterior and middle (if present) superior alveolar aa. that supply the maxillary teeth from the central incisors to the premolars (where they anastomose with the posterior superior alveolar a.) and the mucous membrane of the maxillary sinus On exiting the infraorbital foramen, the artery is located between the levator labii superioris and levator anguli oris mm. and follows the branching pattern of the nerve: • Inferior palpebral branch (supplies the lower eyelid) • Nasal branch (supplies the lateral side of the nose) • Superior labial branch (supplies the upper lip)
Descending palatine	3rd part of the maxillary a.	Descends into the palatine canal Within the canal, the artery splits into the greater and lesser palatine aa. Greater palatine a. exits the greater palatine foramen and passes anteriorly toward the incisive foramen and supplies the hard palate gingiva, mucosa, and palatal glands and anastomoses with the terminal branch of the sphenopalatine a. that exits the incisive foramen Lesser palatine a. supplies the soft palate and palatine tonsil
Artery of the pterygoid canal		Passes posteriorly into the pterygoid canal, accompanying the nerve of the pterygoid canal (vidian n.) Helps supply the auditory tube and sphenoid sinus
Pharyngeal		Passes posteromedially into the pharyngeal canal Helps supply the auditory tube and nasopharynx
Sphenopalatine		Passes medially into the sphenopalatine foramen to enter the nasal cavity It then gives rise to the posterior lateral nasal branches and posterior septal branches, which supply the nasal concha, mucous membranes, and nasal septum The sphenopalatine a. continues along the nasal septum to enter the hard palate via the incisive canal

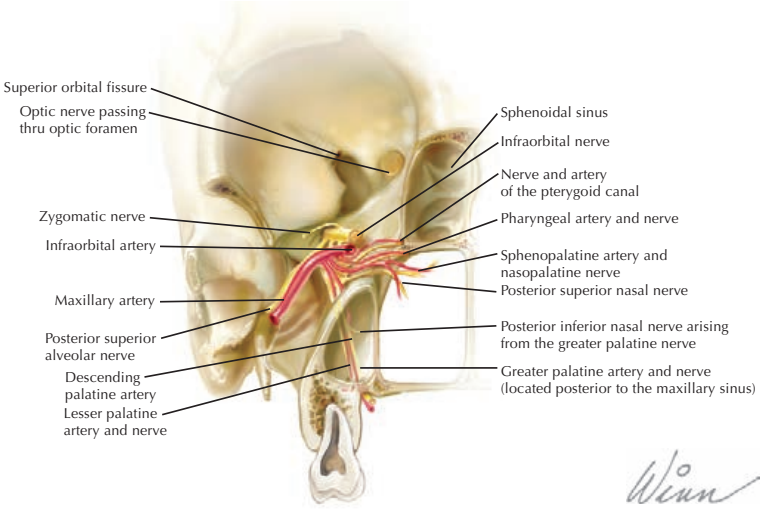
WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Contents of the Pterygopalatine Fossa

VASCULAR SUPPLY *CONTINUED*





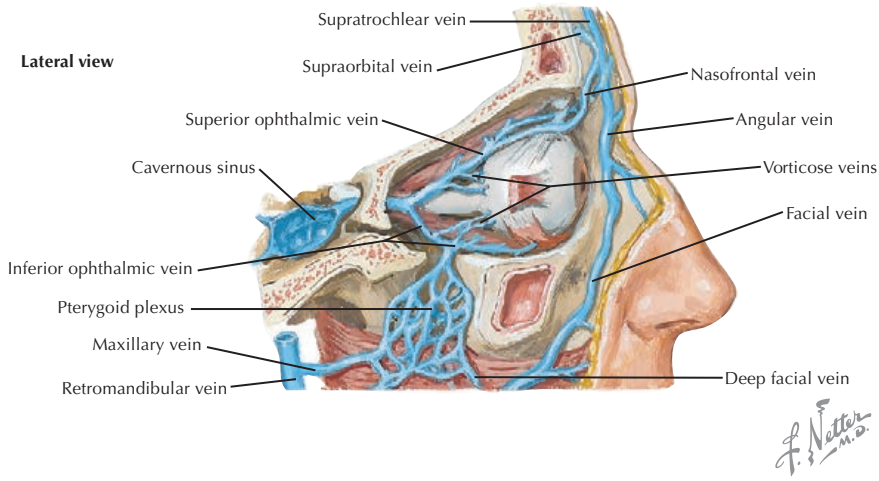


WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Contents of the Pterygopalatine Fossa

VASCULAR SUPPLY *CONTINUED*

VENOUS DRAINAGE		
Vein	**Course**	
Posterior superior alveolar	Receives blood from the posterior teeth and soft tissue	Eventually communicate with the pterygoid plexus of veins
Pharyngeal	Receives blood from the nasopharynx	
Descending palatine	Receives blood from the hard and soft palate	
Infraorbital	Receives blood from the midface via the lower eyelid, lateral side of the nose, and the upper lip	
Sphenopalatine	Receives blood from the nasal cavity and the nasal septum	
Vein of the pterygoid canal	Receives blood from the foramen lacerum region and the sphenoid sinus	
Inferior ophthalmic	Receives blood from the floor of the orbit Branches into 2 parts The first branch travels posteriorly with the infraorbital v. that passes through the inferior orbital fissure to communicate with the pterygoid plexus and the cavernous sinus The main branch travels posteriorly to communicate with the superior ophthalmic vein in the superior orbital fissure or travels posteriorly in the fissure to join the cavernous sinus	
Pterygoid plexus	An extensive network of veins that parallels the 2nd and 3rd parts of the maxillary a. The tributaries of the pterygoid plexus eventually converge to form a short maxillary v.	



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Contents of the Pterygopalatine Fossa

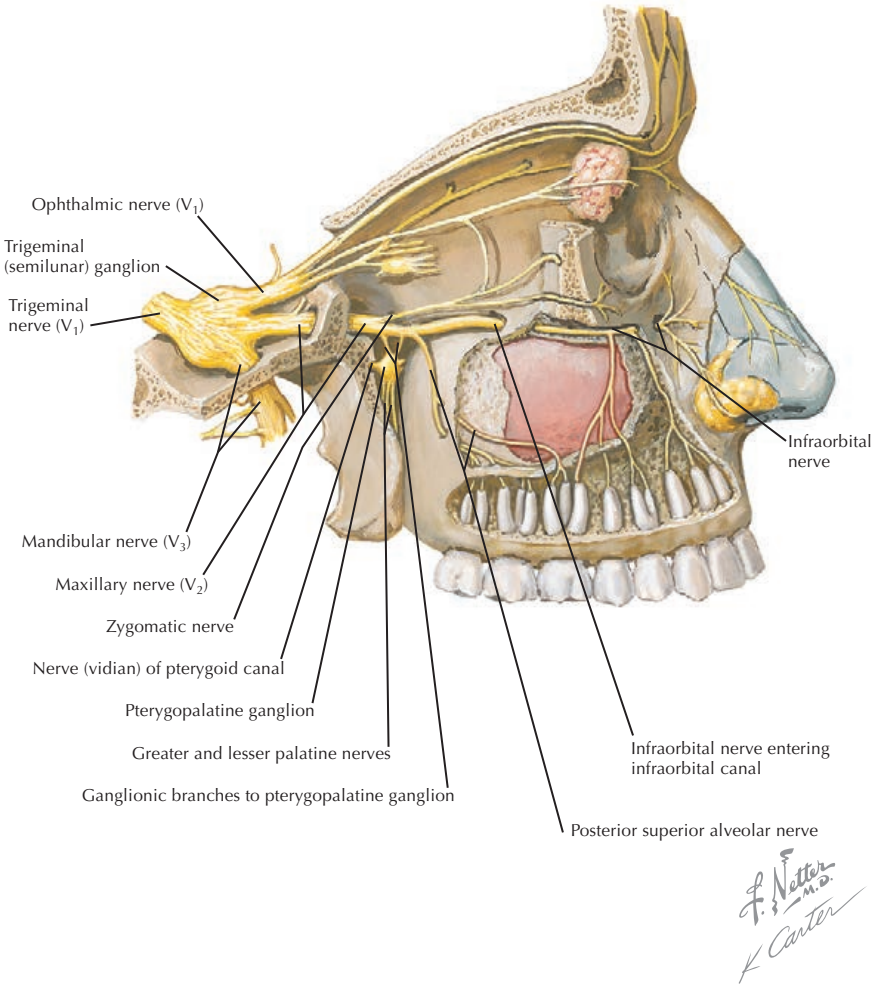
NERVE SUPPLY

MAXILLARY NERVE		
Nerve	**Source**	**Course**
Maxillary division of the trigeminal n.	Trigeminal n.	Sensory in function Travels along the lateral wall of the cavernous sinus Before exiting the middle cranial fossa, it gives off a meningeal branch that innervates the dura mater Passes from the middle cranial fossa into the pterygopalatine fossa via the foramen rotundum Within the pterygopalatine fossa, gives rise to 4 branches: • Posterior superior alveolar n. • Zygomatic n. • Ganglionic branches • Infraorbital n.
Posterior superior alveolar	Maxillary division of the trigeminal n. in pterygopalatine fossa	Passes through the pterygomaxillary fissure to enter the infratemporal fossa In the infratemporal fossa, it passes on the posterior surface of the maxilla along the region of the maxillary tuberosity Gives rise to a gingival branch that innervates the buccal gingiva alongside the maxillary molars Enters the posterior surface of the maxilla and supplies the maxillary sinus and the maxillary molars with the possible exception of the mesiobuccal root of the 1st maxillary molar
Zygomatic		Passes through the inferior orbital fissure to enter the orbit Passes on the lateral wall of the orbit and branches into the zygomaticotemporal and zygomaticofacial branches A communicating branch from it joins the lacrimal n. from the ophthalmic division of the trigeminal to carry autonomics to the lacrimal gland
Ganglionic branches		Usually 1 or 2 ganglionic branches that connect the maxillary division of the trigeminal to the pterygopalatine ganglion Contain sensory fibers that pass through the pterygopalatine ganglion (without synapsing) to be distributed with the nerves that arise from the pterygopalatine ganglion Also contain postganglionic autonomic fibers to the lacrimal gland that pass through the pterygopalatine ganglion (Parasympathetic fibers form a synapse here between the preganglionic fibers from the vidian n. and the postganglionic fibers)
Infraorbital	Considered the continuation of the maxillary division of the trigeminal n.	Passes through the inferior orbital fissure to enter the orbit Passes anteriorly through the infraorbital groove, infraorbital canal, and exits onto the face via the infraorbital foramen Within the infraorbital canal, it gives rise to: • Anterior superior alveolar (supplies the maxillary sinus; maxillary central incisor, lateral incisor, and canine; gingiva and mucosa alongside the same teeth) • A small branch of the anterior superior alveolar (supplies the nasal cavity) • Middle superior alveolar (present about 70% of the time; supplies the maxillary sinus, maxillary premolars and often the mesiobuccal root of the 1st maxillary molar, and gingiva and mucosa alongside the same teeth)

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

10 Contents of the Pterygopalatine Fossa

NERVE SUPPLY *CONTINUED*



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Contents of the Pterygopalatine Fossa

NERVE SUPPLY *CONTINUED*

BRANCHES OF THE MAXILLARY DIVISION OF THE TRIGEMINAL NERVE ASSOCIATED WITH THE PTERYGOPALATINE GANGLION

A parasympathetic ganglion named because it is a collection of cell bodies in the peripheral nervous system (postganglionic cell bodies)

The ganglionic branches are of the maxillary division of the trigeminal n. that pass through the pterygopalatine ganglion

The vidian n. connects to the pterygopalatine ganglion

3 sets of nerve fibers travel through the pterygopalatine ganglion:
- General sensory fibers from the trigeminal n. (without synapsing)
- Postganglionic sympathetic fibers (carried to the pterygopalatine ganglion via the vidian n, without synapsing)
- Preganglionic parasympathetic fibers (carried to the pterygopalatine ganglion via the vidian n. and formed by synapsing in the pterygopalatine ganglion with the postganglionic parasympathetic fibers)

All branches arising from the pterygopalatine ganglion carry these 3 sets of fibers to the areas where they terminate

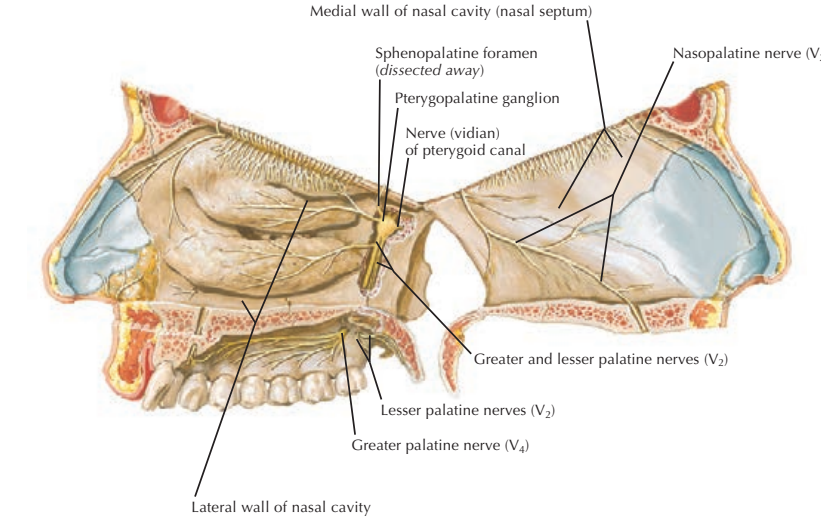
These nerves of the maxillary division travel through the pterygopalatine ganglion:
- Nasopalatine n.
- Posterior superior nasal n.
- Greater palatine n.
- Lesser palatine n.
- Pharyngeal n.

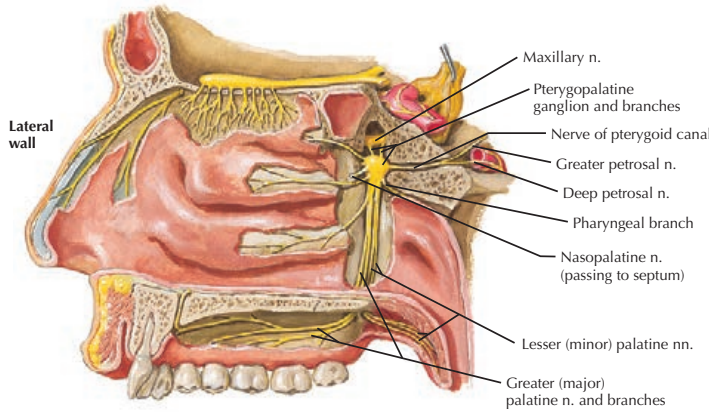
Branch	Source	Course
Vidian (nerve of the pterygoid canal)	Formed by the greater and deep petrosal nn.	An autonomic nerve: • Greater petrosal n. carries the preganglionic parasympathetic fibers • Deep petrosal n. carries the postganglionic sympathetic fibers Communicates with the pterygopalatine ganglion, which allows the autonomics to be distributed along any nerve connected to the ganglion
Nasopalatine	Branches of the pterygopalatine ganglion in the pterygopalatine fossa	Passes through the sphenopalatine foramen to enter the nasal cavity Passes along the superior portion of the nasal cavity to the nasal septum; then travels anteroinferiorly to the incisive canal Exits the incisive foramen on the hard palate and supplies the palatal gingiva and mucosa from the region of the central incisors to the canines
Posterior superior nasal		Passes through the sphenopalatine foramen to enter the nasal cavity, where it divides into 2 nerves: • Lateral posterior superior (supplies the lateral wall of the nasal cavity) • Medial posterior superior nasal (supplies the posterosuperior portion of the nasal septum)
Greater palatine		Passes through the palatine canal to enter the hard palate via the greater palatine foramen Supplies the palatal gingiva and mucosa from the area in the premolar region to the posterior border of the hard palate to the midline
Lesser palatine		Passes through the palatine canal to enter and supply the soft palate via the lesser palatine foramen
Pharyngeal		Passes through the pharyngeal canal to enter and supply the nasopharynx

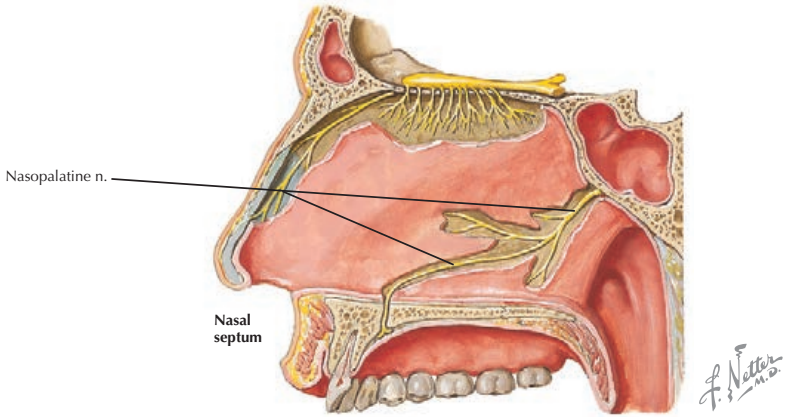
WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Contents of the Pterygopalatine Fossa

NERVE SUPPLY *CONTINUED*







WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

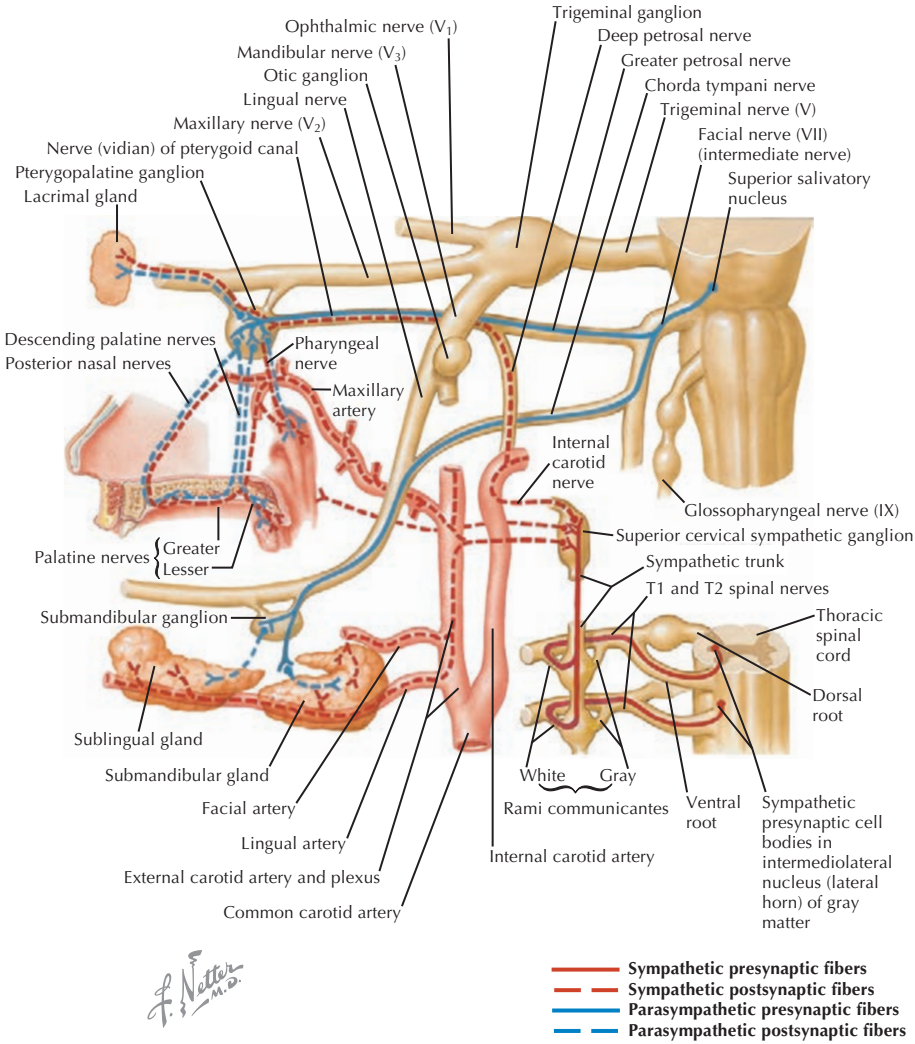
NERVE SUPPLY *CONTINUED*

AUTONOMICS TRAVERSING THE PTERYGOPALATINE FOSSA			
Type of Neuron	**Name of Cell Body**	**Characteristics of the Cell Body**	**Course of the Neuron**
Anatomic Pathway for Parasympathetics Associated with the Maxillary Division of the Trigeminal Nerve			
Preganglionic neuron	Superior salivatory nucleus	A collection of nerve cell bodies located in the pons Travel through the nervus intermedius of the facial n. into the internal acoustic meatus In the facial canal, the facial n. gives rise to 2 parasympathetic branches: • Greater petrosal n. • Chorda tympani n.	**Greater Petrosal Nerve** Greater petrosal n. exits along the hiatus for the greater petrosal n. toward the foramen lacerum, where it joins the deep petrosal n. (sympathetics) to form the nerve of the pterygoid canal (vidian n.) Vidian n. passes through the pterygoid canal and enters the pterygopalatine fossa, where it joins with the pterygopalatine ganglion
Postganglionic neuron	Pterygopalatine ganglion	Pterygopalatine ganglion is a collection of nerve cell bodies located in the pterygopalatine fossa Postganglionic parasympathetic fibers that arise in the pterygopalatine ganglion are distributed to the ophthalmic and maxillary divisions of the trigeminal n. to the: • Lacrimal gland • Nasal glands • Palatine glands • Pharyngeal glands	**Ophthalmic Division Distribution** Postganglionic fibers travel along the zygomatic branch of the maxillary division for a short distance to enter the orbit A short communicating branch joins the lacrimal n. of the ophthalmic division of the trigeminal n. These fibers innervate the lacrimal gland to cause the secretion of tears **Maxillary Division Distribution** Postganglionic fibers travel along the maxillary division of the trigeminal n. to be distributed along its branches that are located in the nasal cavity, oral cavity, and pharynx (e.g., nasopalatine, greater palatine) These fibers innervate: • Nasal glands • Palatine glands • Pharyngeal glands

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Contents of the Pterygopalatine Fossa

NERVE SUPPLY *CONTINUED*



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

NERVE SUPPLY *CONTINUED*

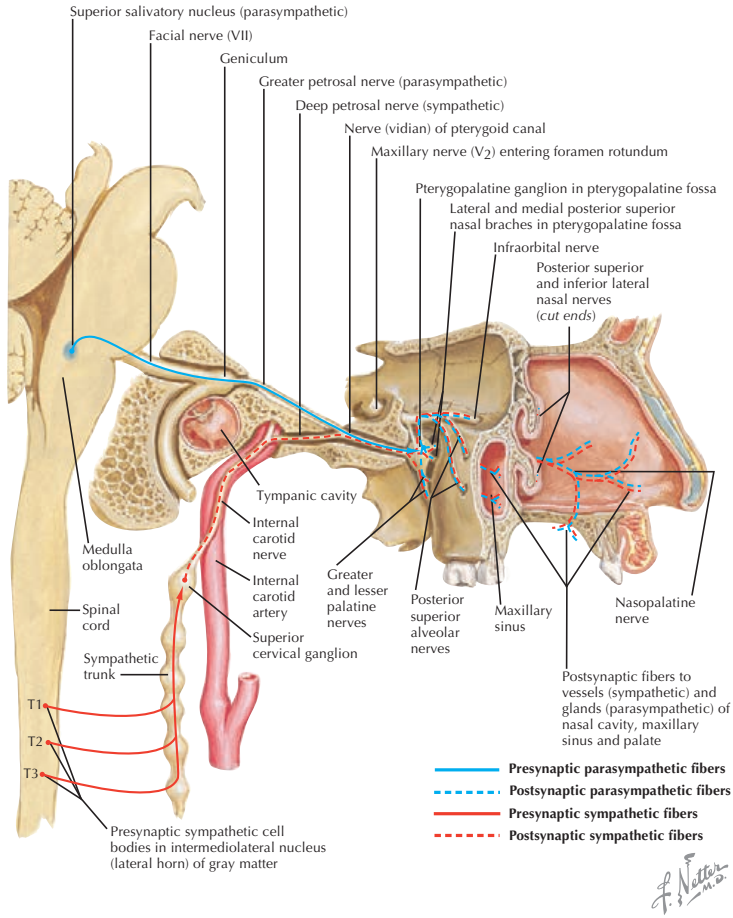
AUTONOMICS TRAVERSING THE PTERYGOPALATINE FOSSA *CONTINUED*			
Type of Neuron	**Name of Cell Body**	**Characteristics of the Cell Body**	**Course of the Neuron**
Anatomic Pathway for Sympathetics Associated with the Maxillary Division of the Trigeminal Nerve			
Preganglionic neuron	Intermediolateral horn nucleus	Collection of nerve cell bodies located in the lateral horn nucleus of the spinal cord between spinal segments T1 and T3 (and possibly T4)	Arise from the intermediolateral horn nuclei from T1 to T3 (4) Travel through the ventral root of the spinal cord to the spinal n. Enter the sympathetic chain via a white ramus communicantes Once in the sympathetic chain, the preganglionic fibers for the eye will ascend and synapse with postganglionic fibers in the superior cervical ganglion
Postganglionic neuron	Superior cervical ganglion	Collection of nerve cell bodies located in the superior cervical ganglion, which is located at the base of the skull Postganglionic sympathetic fibers follow the internal carotid or external carotid a. to pass near their respective effector organs (e.g., nasal cavity)	**Nasal Cavity and Palate** Postganglionic sympathetic fibers follow both the internal and external carotid aa. Postganglionic sympathetic fibers from the internal carotid branch in the region of the foramen lacerum to form the deep petrosal n. The deep petrosal n. joins the greater petrosal n. (parasympathetics) to form the nerve of the pterygoid canal (vidian n.) Postganglionic sympathetic fibers travel along the branches of the maxillary division of the trigeminal n. associated with the pterygopalatine ganglion to be distributed along its branches in the nasal cavity and palate Postganglionic sympathetic fibers from the external carotid branch and follow the maxillary a. These fibers travel along the branches of the maxillary a. to be distributed along the nasal cavity and palate **Lacrimal Gland** Postganglionic sympathetic fibers follow the internal carotid a. Postganglionic sympathetic fibers from the internal carotid branch off in the region of the foramen lacerum to form the deep petrosal n.

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

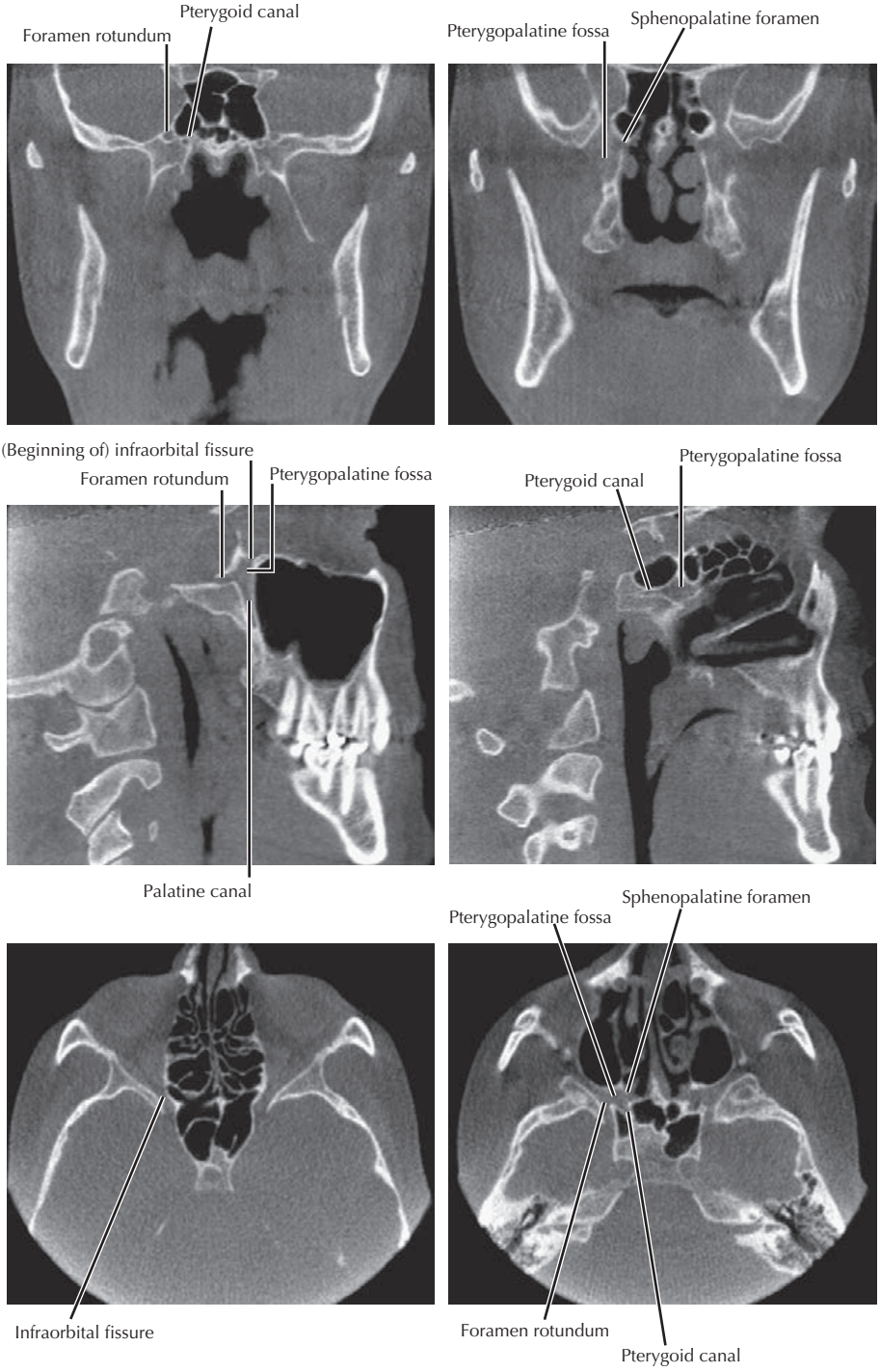
Contents of the Pterygopalatine Fossa

NERVE SUPPLY *CONTINUED*

AUTONOMICS TRAVERSING THE PTERYGOPALATINE FOSSA *CONTINUED*			
Type of Neuron	**Name of Cell Body**	**Characteristics of the Cell Body**	**Course of the Neuron**
Anatomic Pathway for Sympathetics Associated with the Maxillary Division of the Trigeminal Nerve			
Postganglionic neuron			The deep petrosal n. joins the greater petrosal n. (parasympathetics) to form the nerve of the pterygoid canal (vidian n.) Postganglionic fibers travel along the zygomatic branch of the maxillary division for a short distance to enter the orbit A short communicating branch joins the lacrimal n. of the ophthalmic division of the trigeminal n. These fibers are distributed to the lacrimal gland



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

CHAPTER 11

NOSE AND NASAL CAVITY

Overview and Topographic Anatomy 266

Nose 268

Nasal Cavity 276

Clinical Correlates 294

Imaging 298

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

11 Overview and Topographic Anatomy

GENERAL INFORMATION

Nose

The prominent anatomic structure located inferior and medial to the eyes

Helps in breathing and olfaction

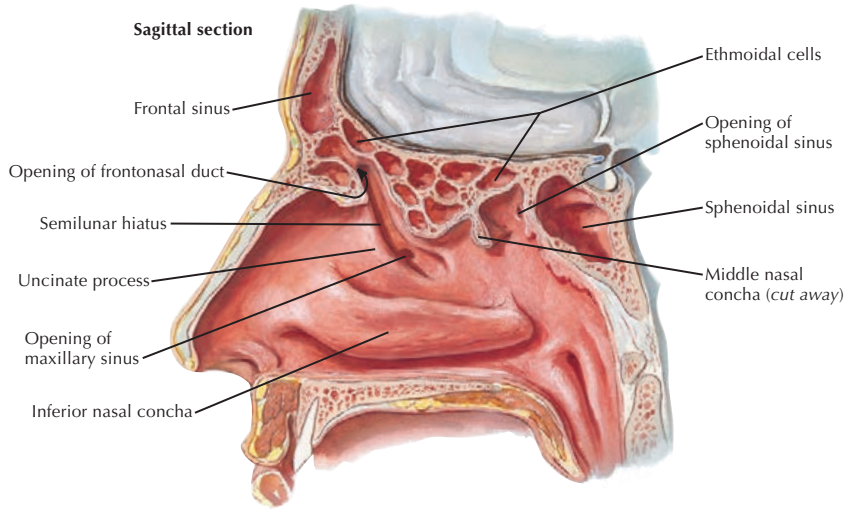
Nasal Cavity

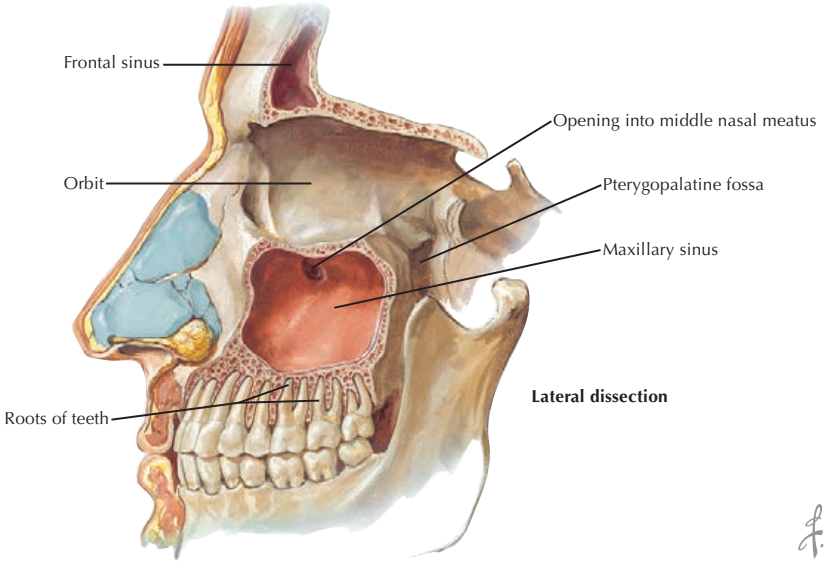
The complex chamber located posterior to the vestibule and atrium of the nose

Respiratory Epithelium

Highly vascular and easily congested

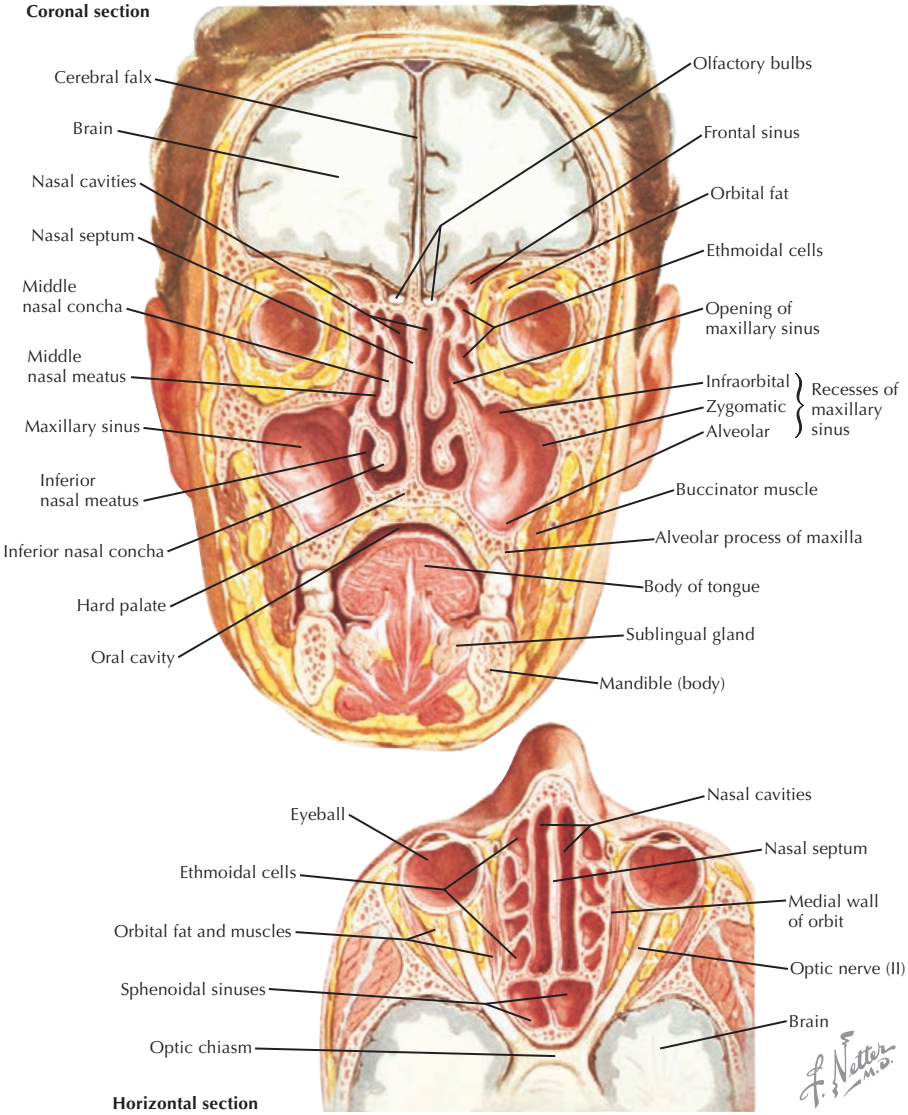
When this tissue is irritated, its blood vessels reflexively dilate and the glands secrete, normally leading to sneezing





WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

GENERAL INFORMATION *CONTINUED*



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

11 Nose

ANATOMY OF THE NOSE

The nose is pyramidal in form

3 pairs of *bones* form the root of the nose:
- Frontal (nasal process)
- Maxilla (frontal process)
- Nasal

Because the root of the nose is made of bone, it is fixed

3 different *cartilages* form the dorsum and apex of the nose:
- Septal
- Lateral nasal
- Alar

Because the dorsum and apex are cartilaginous, the nose is quite mobile

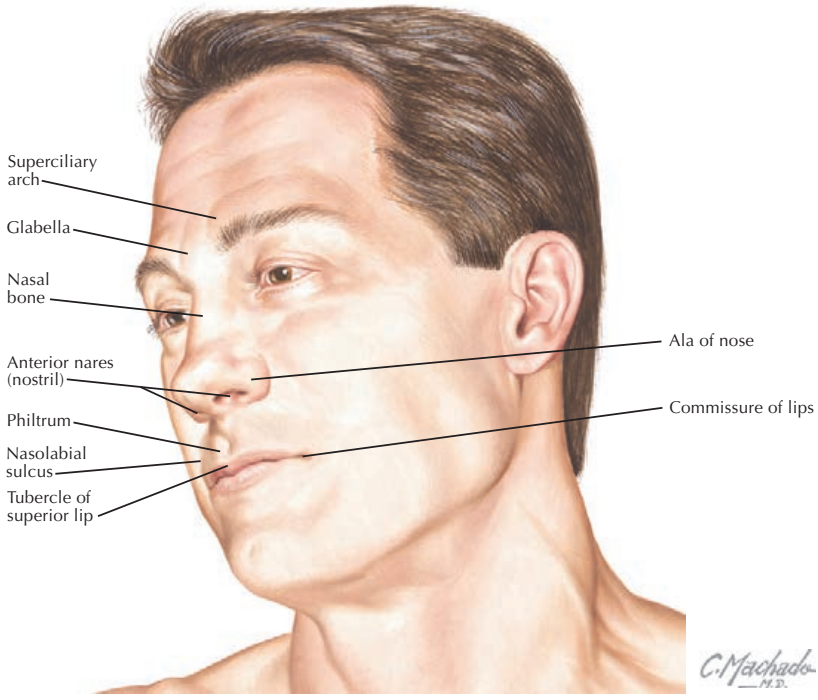
The cavity of the nose opposite the alar cartilage is called the vestibule and is lined by many coarse hairs called vibrissae

The cavity superior to the vestibule is the atrium

At the apex are found the 2 nostrils, or anterior nares, which are separated by the septum connecting the apex to the philtrum of the upper lip

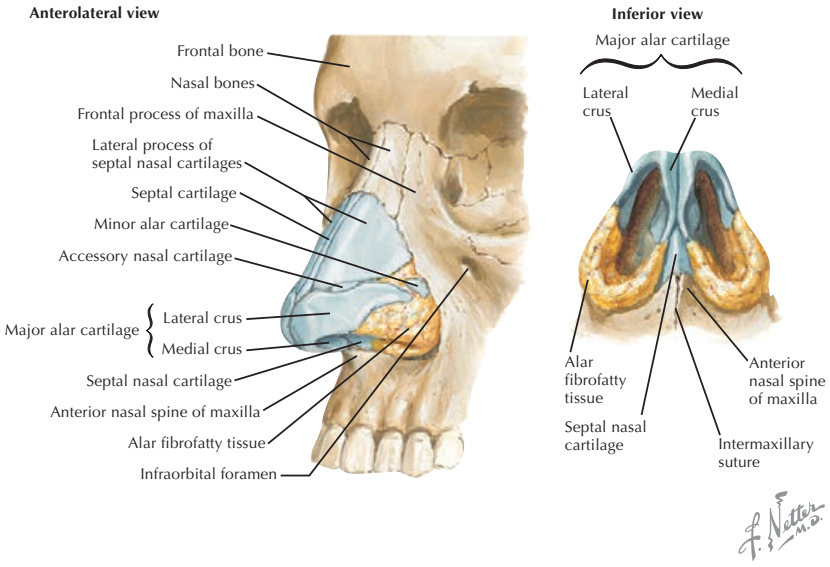
Fibrous tissue helps connect the cartilages together and posteriorly to the maxilla

The primary lymphatic drainage of the nose is into the submandibular lymph nodes



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

ANATOMY OF THE NOSE *CONTINUED*



VASCULAR SUPPLY OF THE NOSE

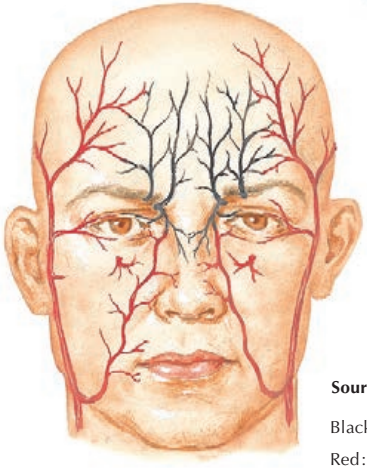
The blood supply to the nose arises from 3 major *arteries:*

- Ophthalmic
- Maxillary
- Facial

These vessels are derived from the external and internal carotid arteries

These arteries anastomose along the nose

Many nosebleeds are due to trauma to the septal branch of the superior labial artery from the facial artery



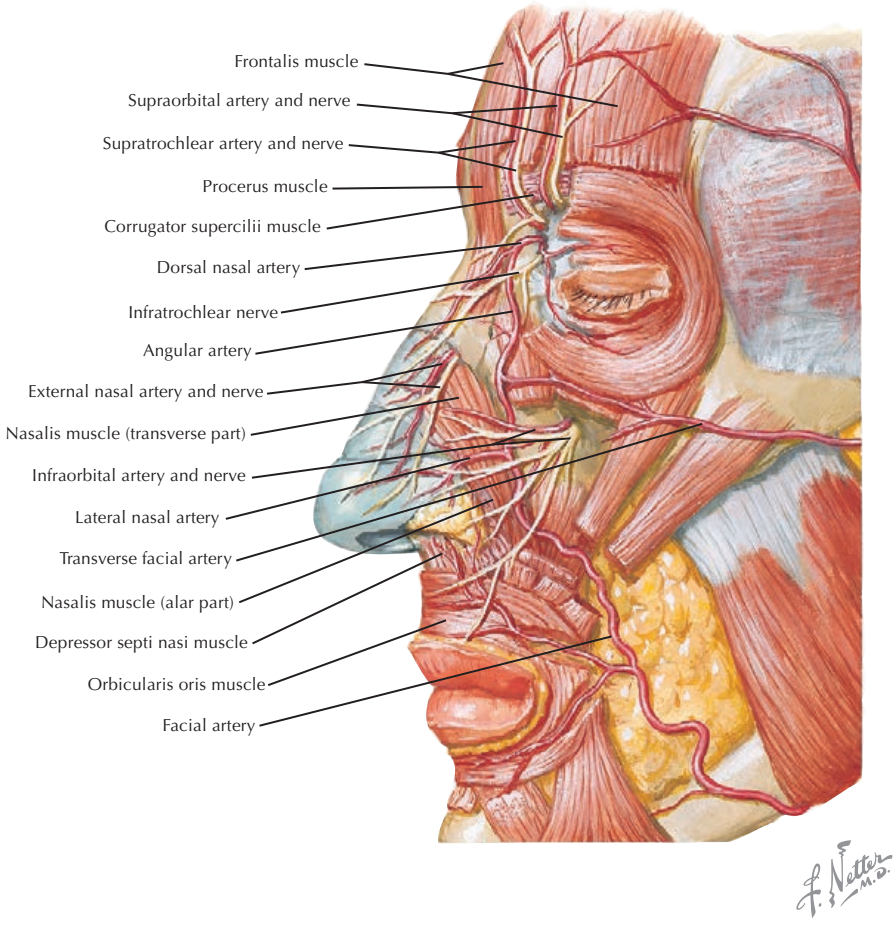
Sources of arterial supply of face

Black: from internal carotid artery (via ophthalmic artery)

Red: from external carotid artery

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

VASCULAR SUPPLY OF THE NOSE *CONTINUED*

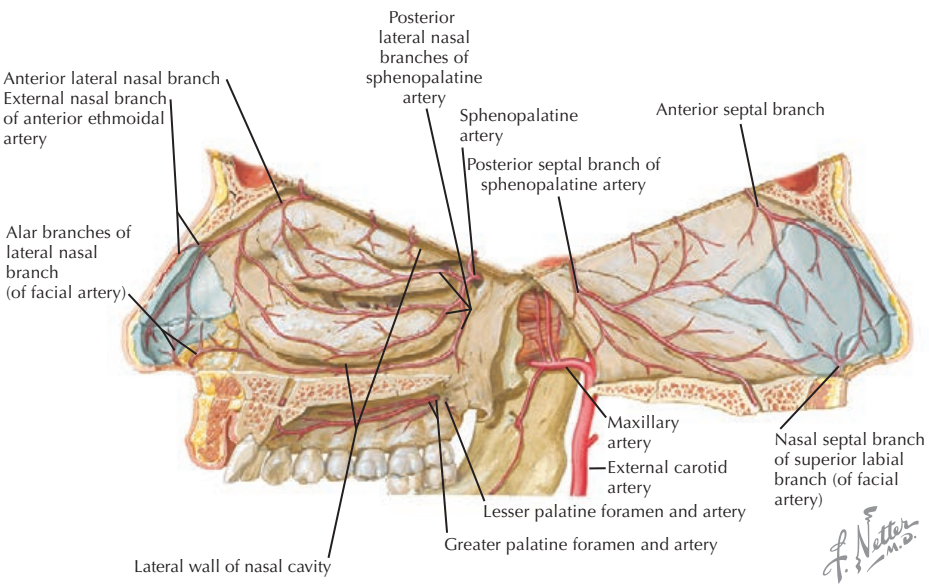


ARTERIAL SUPPLY		
Artery	**Source**	**Course**
Ophthalmic	Internal carotid a.	Enters the orbit through the optic foramen immediately inferior and lateral to the optic n. Crosses the optic n. to reach the medial part of the orbit While in the orbit, besides other branches including the orbital vessels, it gives rise to 2 major branches that supply the nose: • Dorsal nasal • External nasal from the anterior ethmoidal a.
Dorsal nasal (infratrochlear)	1 of the terminal branches of the ophthalmic a.	Exits the orbit along the superomedial border along with the infratrochlear n. Supplies the area along the bridge of the nose
External nasal	A terminal branch of the anterior ethmoid a.	Supplies the area along the external nose at the junction between the nasal bone and the lateral nasal cartilage

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

VASCULAR SUPPLY OF THE NOSE *CONTINUED*

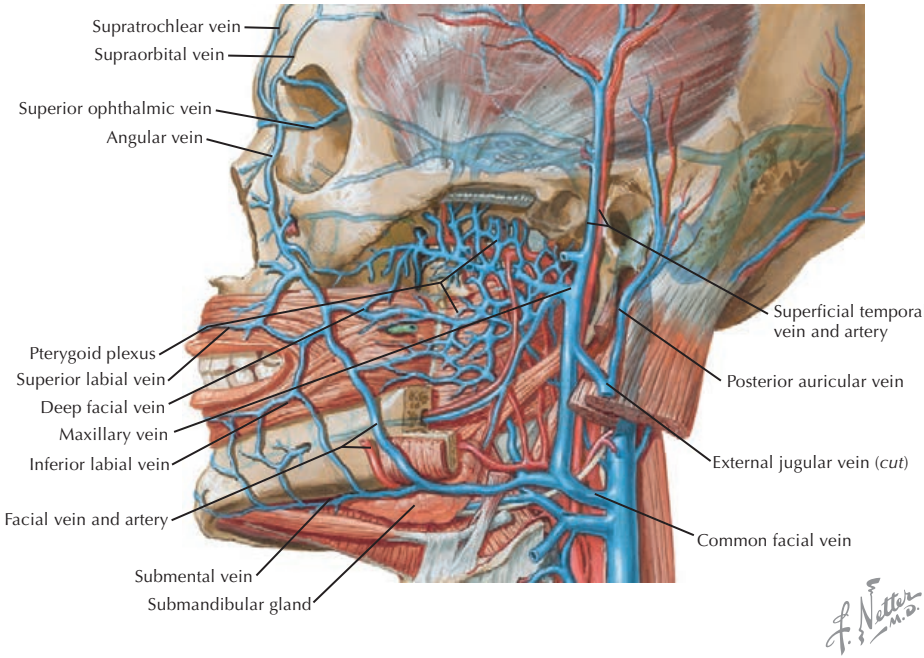
ARTERIAL SUPPLY *CONTINUED*		
Artery	**Source**	**Course**
Maxillary	1 of 2 terminal branches of the external carotid a.	Gives rise to a series of branches; only 1 provides blood supply to the nose: nasal branch of the infraorbital a.
Nasal branch of the infraorbital	Infraorbital, the continuation of the 3rd part of the maxillary a.	Arises with the inferior palpebral branch and the superior labial branch Supplies the lateral aspect of the nose
Facial	External carotid a. in the carotid triangle of the neck	Passes superiorly immediately deep to the posterior belly of the digastric m. and the stylohyoid m. Passes along the submandibular gland, giving rise to the submental a., which helps supply the gland Passes superiorly over the body of the mandible at the masseter Continues anterosuperiorly across the cheek to the angle of the mouth, giving rise to the superior and inferior labial aa. Passes superiorly along the side of the nose, giving rise to the lateral nasal a. Continues on the side of the nose as the angular a. that terminates along the medial side of the eye Tortuous
Septal	Superior labial a.	Supplies the septum
Alar	Superior labial a. off of the facial a.	Supplies the ala of the nose
Lateral nasal	Facial a.	Supplies the ala and dorsal surface of nose



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

VASCULAR SUPPLY OF THE NOSE *CONTINUED*

VENOUS DRAINAGE	
Vein	**Course**
Facial	Begins as the angular v. Passes inferiorly along the side of the nose, receiving the lateral nasal v. Continues in a posteroinferior path across the angle of the mouth to the cheek, receiving the superior and inferior labial vv. While passing toward the mandible, the deep facial v. connects the facial vein to the pterygoid plexus In the submandibular triangle, the facial v. joins the anterior branch of the retromandibular to form the common facial v. Has no valves that can allow blood to backflow
Angular	From the confluence of the supraorbital and supratrochlear vv. along the medial part of the eye Travels along the lateral side of the nose to become the facial v.
Superior ophthalmic	Receives blood from the roof of the orbit and the scalp Anastomoses with the angular v. Travels posteriorly to communicate with the pterygoid plexus
Inferior ophthalmic	Receives blood from the floor of the orbit Anastomoses with the angular v. Travels posteriorly with the infraorbital v. that passes through the inferior orbital fissure to communicate with the pterygoid plexus



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

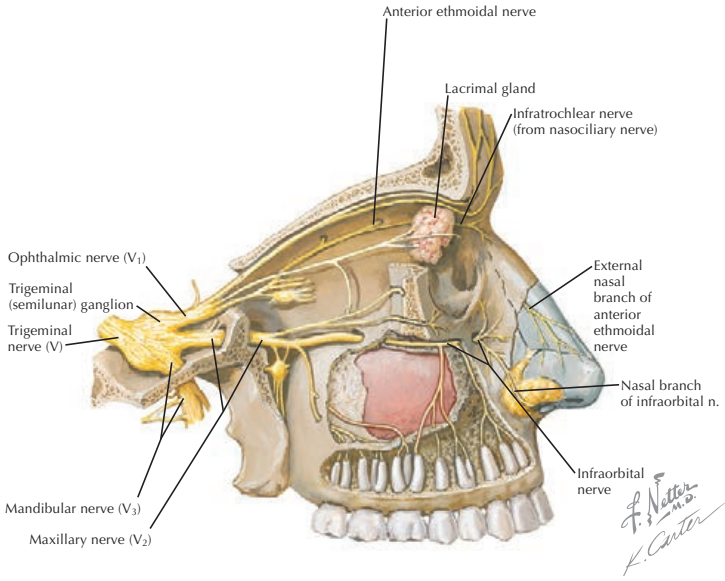
NERVE SUPPLY OF THE NOSE

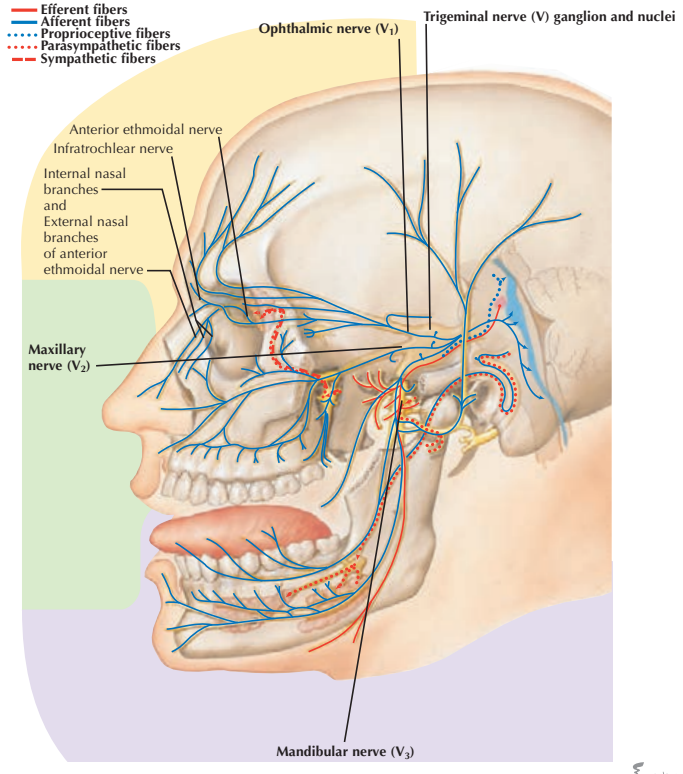
The sensory supply to the nose arises from branches of the ophthalmic and maxillary divisions of the trigeminal nerve

Nerve	Source	Course
Ophthalmic division of the trigeminal	Trigeminal n. Arises from the main nerve in the middle cranial fossa	Passes anterior on the lateral wall of the cavernous sinus immediately inferior to the oculomotor and trochlear nn., but superior to the maxillary division of the trigeminal n. Immediately prior to entering the orbit, through the superior orbital fissure, the ophthalmic division divides into 3 major branches: lacrimal, frontal, and nasociliary
External nasal	Terminal branches of the anterior ethmoid nerve from the ophthalmic division of the trigeminal n.	Exits between the lateral nasal cartilage and the inferior border of the nasal bone Supplies the skin of the ala and apex of the nose around the nares
Internal nasal		Supplies the skin on the internal surface of the vestibule
Infratrochlear	One of the terminal branches of the nasociliary branch of the ophthalmic division of the trigeminal n.	Passes anteriorly on the superior border of the medial rectus m. Passes inferior to the trochlea toward the medial angle of the eye Supplies the skin of the bridge of the nose, in addition to the eyelids, the conjunctiva, and all lacrimal structures
Maxillary division of the trigeminal	Trigeminal n.	Travels along the lateral wall of the cavernous sinus Passes from the middle cranial fossa into the pterygopalatine fossa via the foramen rotundum *4 branches*: • Infraorbital—this is the continuation of the maxillary division • Posterior superior alveolar • Zygomatic • Ganglionic
Infraorbital	The continuation of the maxillary division of the trigeminal n.	Passes through the inferior orbital fissure to enter the orbit Passes anteriorly through the infraorbital groove and infraorbital canal and exits onto the face via the infraorbital foramen Once it exits onto the face, it divides into *3 terminal branches*: • Nasal (supplies the ala of the nose) • Inferior palpebral (supplies the skin of the lower eyelid) • Superior labial (supplies the skin of the upper lip)
Nasal branch of the infraorbital	Infraorbital n.	Supplies the ala of the nose

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

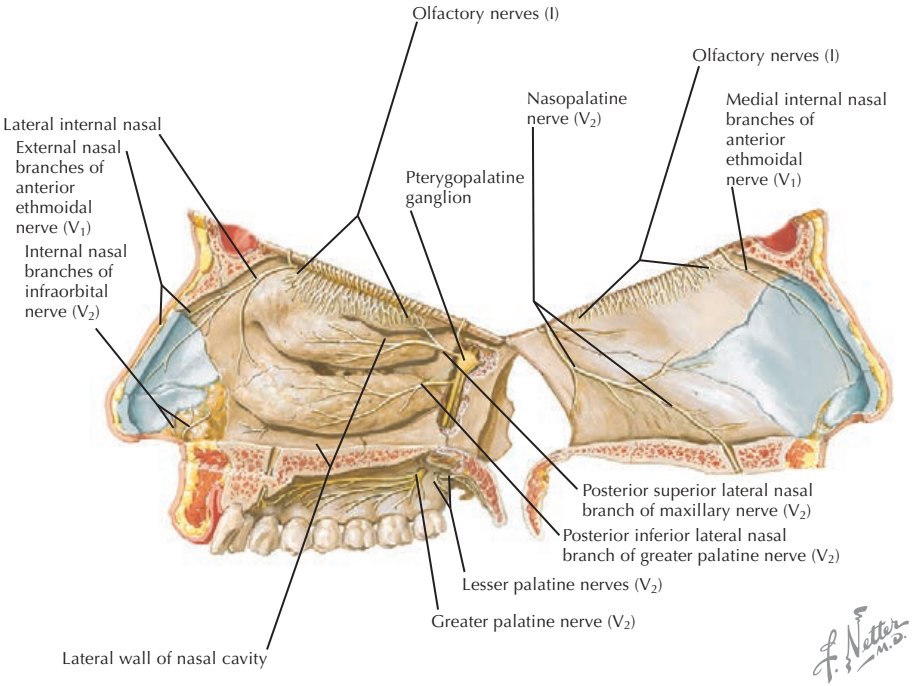
NERVE SUPPLY OF THE NOSE *CONTINUED*





WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

NERVE SUPPLY OF THE NOSE *CONTINUED*



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

11 Nasal Cavity

ANATOMY

Lined by pseudostratified columnar epithelium with cilia

Inferior portion is larger than superior portion

Olfactory epithelium is located at the superior part of the nasal cavity around the cribriform plate

Piriform Aperture
Anterior opening bounded by the nasal bones and maxilla

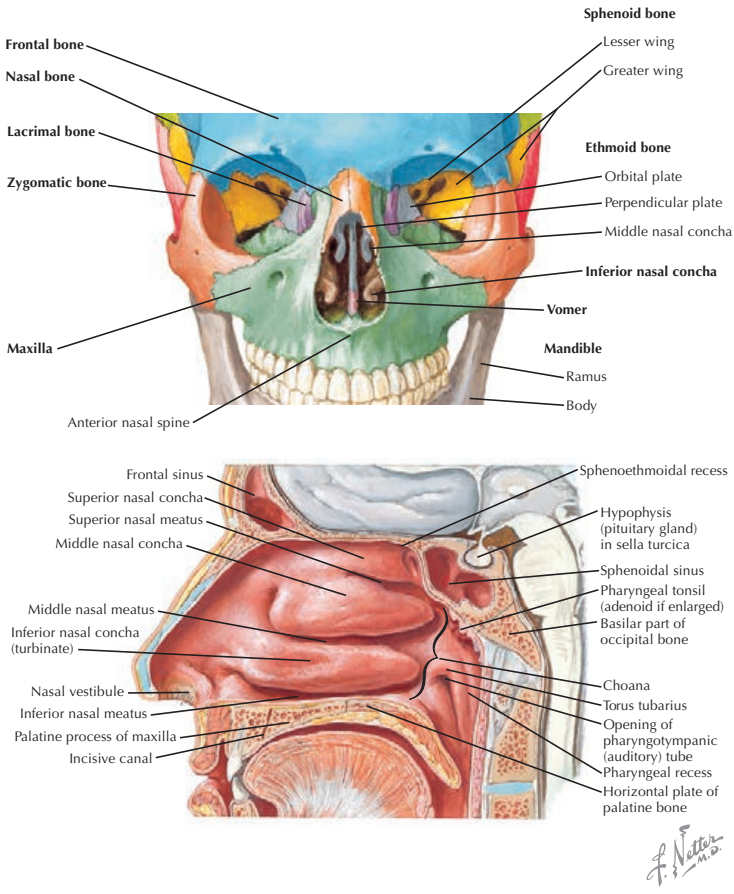
Nasal Septum
Frequently deviates to 1 side, giving rise to unequal chambers

Lateral Walls
Composed of large venous plexuses that have the appearance of erectile tissue

3 large elevations, known as conchae, protrude from the lateral wall

All of the paranasal sinuses and the nasolacrimal duct drain into the lateral walls of the nasal cavity

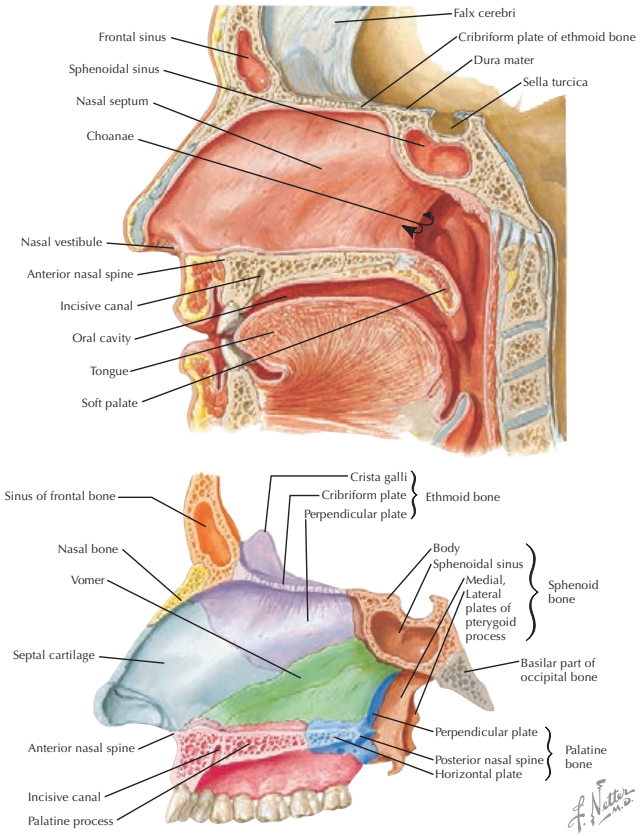
The sphenopalatine foramen, located in the posterior portion of the lateral walls, connects the nasal cavity to the pterygopalatine fossa



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

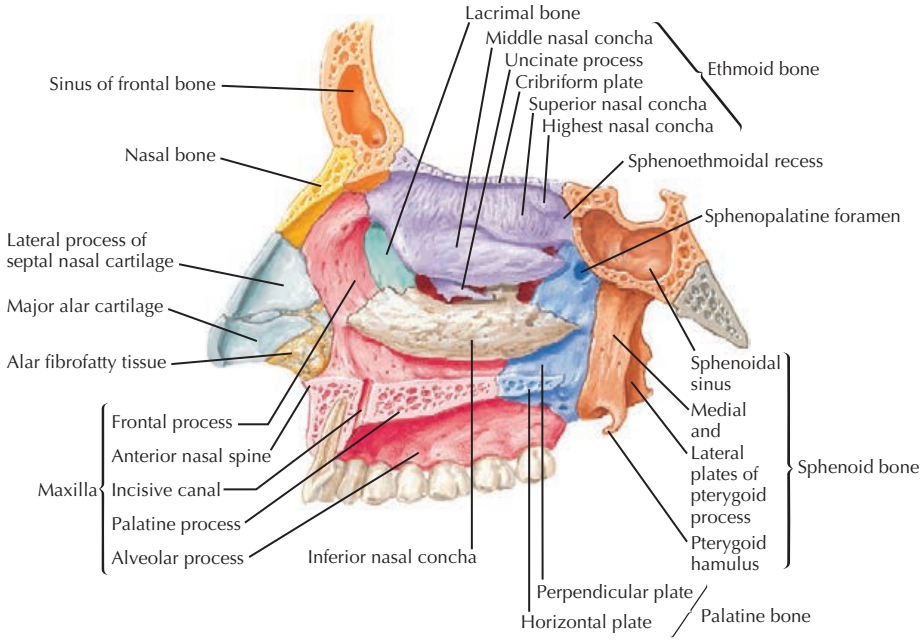
BOUNDARIES AND RELATIONS OF THE NASAL CAVITY

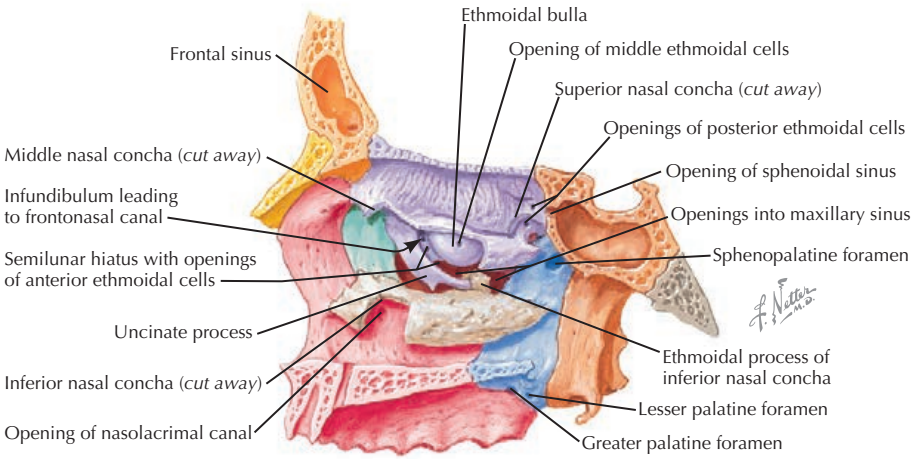
RELATIONS	
Border	**Structures**
Superior	Frontal sinus, sphenoid sinus, anterior cranial fossa with frontal lobe of the brain
Inferior	Palate, oral cavity
Medial	Other half of nasal cavity
Lateral	Maxillary sinus, ethmoid sinuses, orbit, and pterygopalatine fossa
BOUNDARIES	
Border	**Structures**
Superior	Nasal, frontal, cribriform plate of the ethmoid, body of the sphenoid
Inferior	Palatine process of the maxilla, horizontal plate of the palatine
Anterior	External nose
Posterior	Choanae
Septum	Ethmoid (perpendicular plate), vomer, septal cartilage
Lateral	Maxilla, ethmoid, palatine, sphenoid (medial pterygoid plate), and inferior nasal concha, lacrimal



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

BOUNDARIES AND RELATIONS OF THE NASAL CAVITY *CONTINUED*

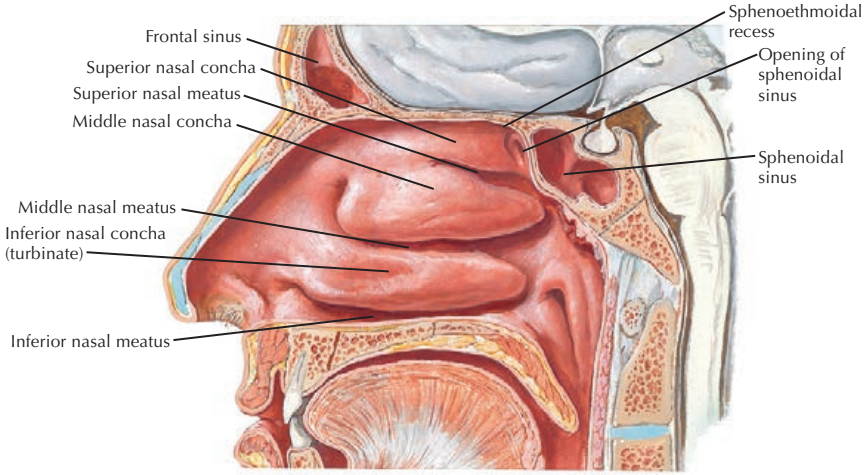


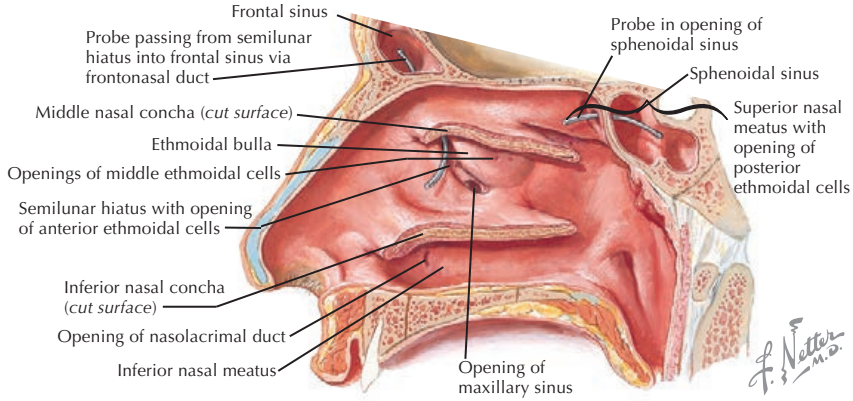


WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

CONCHAE OF THE NASAL CAVITY

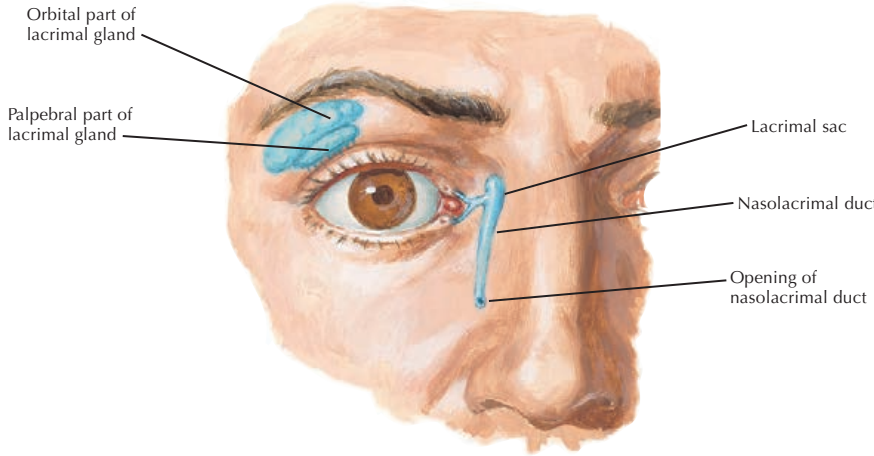
Concha	Regions Drained	Location	Structures Drained
Superior	Sphenoethmoidal recess	Superior to the superior meatus	Sphenoidal sinus
	Superior meatus	Inferior to the superior meatus	Posterior ethmoid sinus
Middle	Middle meatus	Inferior to the middle meatus	Anterior ethmoidal sinus Middle ethmoidal sinus Maxillary sinus Frontal sinus
Inferior	Inferior meatus	Inferior to the inferior meatus	Nasolacrimal duct

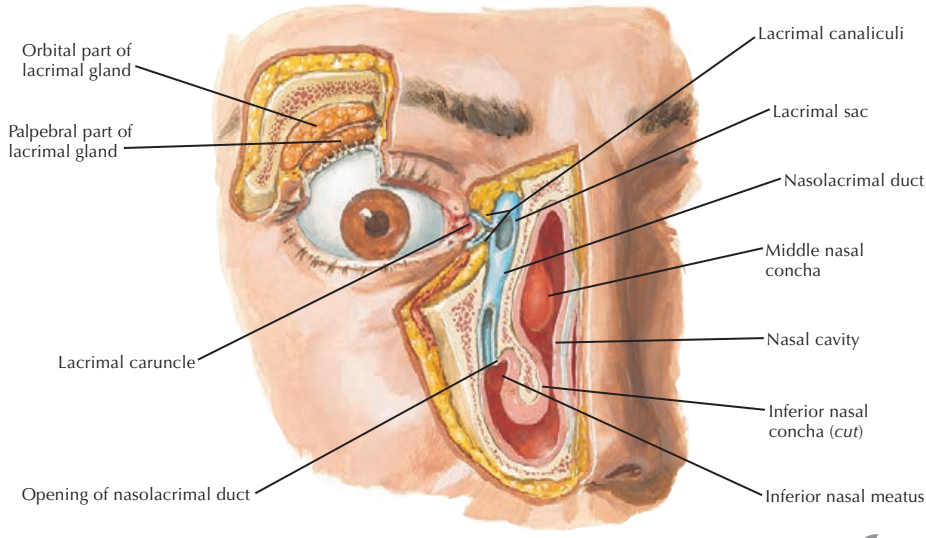




WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

CONCHAE OF THE NASAL CAVITY *CONTINUED*





WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

VASCULAR SUPPLY OF THE NASAL CAVITY

The blood supply to the nasal cavity arises from 3 major *arteries*:

- Ophthalmic
- Maxillary
- Facial

These 3 vessels are derived from the external and internal carotid arteries and generally follow the paths of the nerves

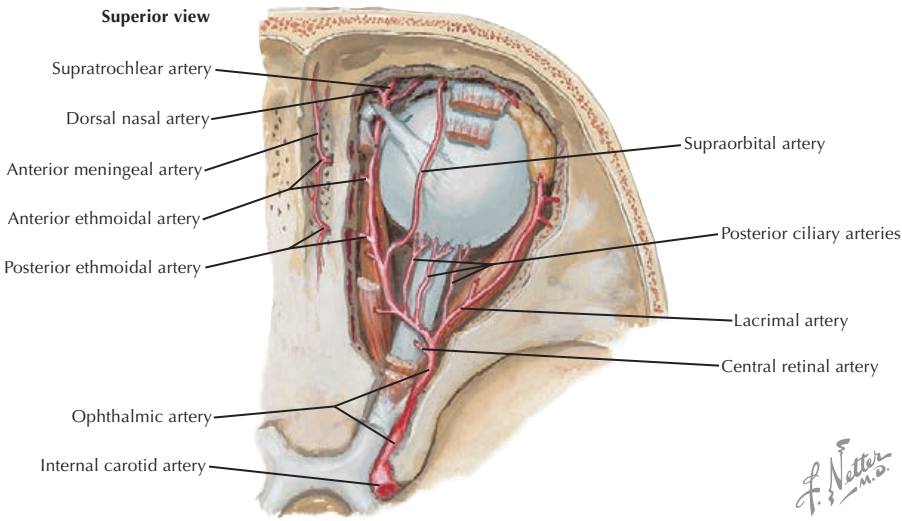
The *veins* generally correspond to the arteries

ARTERIAL SUPPLY		
Artery	**Source**	**Course**
Ophthalmic	Internal carotid a.	Enters the orbit through the optic foramen immediately inferior and lateral to the optic n. Crosses the optic n. to reach the medial part of the orbit While in the orbit, besides the orbital branches, it gives rise to 2 major branches that supply the nasal cavity: • Anterior ethmoid • Posterior ethmoid
Anterior ethmoid	Ophthalmic a.	Travels with the nasociliary n. through the anterior ethmoidal foramen Enters the anterior cranial fossa, where it gives rise to a meningeal branch and nasal branches that descend into the nasal cavity Supplies branches to the lateral wall and septum of the nose before giving rise to the external nasal a., which supplies the nose
Posterior ethmoid	Ophthalmic a.	Travels through the posterior ethmoidal foramen Enters the anterior cranial fossa, where it gives rise to a meningeal branch and nasal branches that descend into the nasal cavity through the cribriform plate Supplies part of the lateral wall near the superior nasal concha and the posterosuperior portion of the nasal septum
Maxillary	1 of 2 terminal branches of the external carotid a.	Gives rise to a series of branches; 2 provide blood supply to the nasal cavity: • Sphenopalatine • Greater palatine
Sphenopalatine	3rd part of the maxillary a.	After passing through the sphenopalatine foramen, enters the nasal cavity, where it gives rise to the posterior superior nasal branches • The posterior superior *lateral* branch supplies the nasal concha, mucous membranes, and lateral wall • The posterior superior *medial* branch continues along the nasal septum to enter the hard palate via the incisive canal
Greater palatine	A branch of the descending palatine, arising from the 3rd part of the maxillary a.	Travels in the palatine canal, where it splits into the lesser palatine a. (supplies the soft palate and palatine tonsil), and greater palatine a., which exits the greater palatine foramen and passes anteriorly toward the incisive foramen (supplies the hard palate gingiva, mucosa, and palatal glands) and anastomoses with the terminal branch of the sphenopalatine a. that exits the incisive foramen Also provides branches that supply the area of the inferior meatus

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

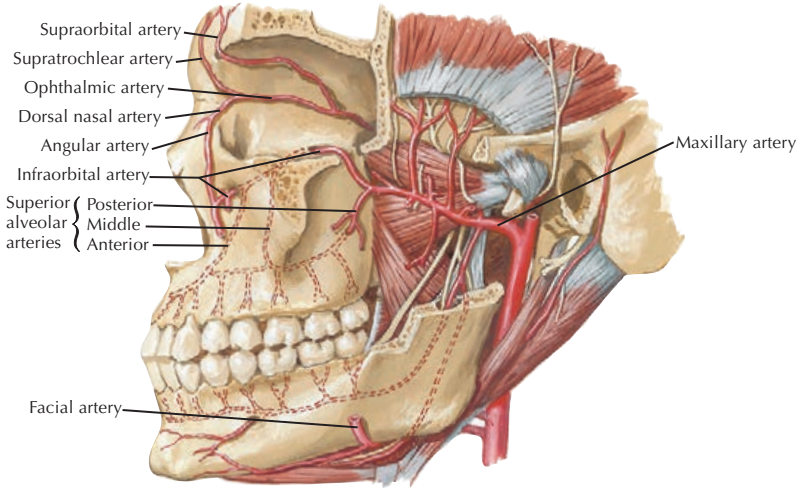
VASCULAR SUPPLY OF THE NASAL CAVITY *CONTINUED*

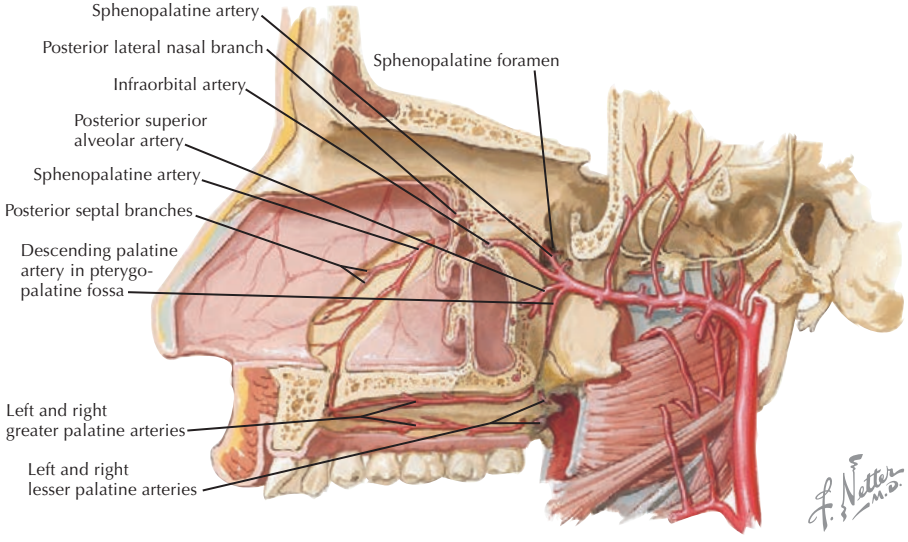
ARTERIAL SUPPLY *CONTINUED*		
Artery	**Source**	**Course**
Facial	External carotid a. in the carotid triangle of the neck	Tortuous Passes superiorly immediately deep to the posterior belly of the digastric and the stylohyoid mm. Passes along the submandibular gland giving rise to the submental a. that helps supply the gland Passes superiorly over the body of the mandible at the masseter m. Continues anterosuperiorly across the cheek to the angle of the mouth, giving rise to the superior and inferior labial aa. Passes superiorly along the side of the nose, giving rise to the lateral nasal a. Continues on the side of the nose as the angular a. that terminates along the medial side of the eye
Superior labial	Facial	Supplies the upper lip Gives rise to the septal branch that travels to the nasal septum The major blood supply to the anterior part of the nasal septum



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

VASCULAR SUPPLY OF THE NASAL CAVITY *CONTINUED*

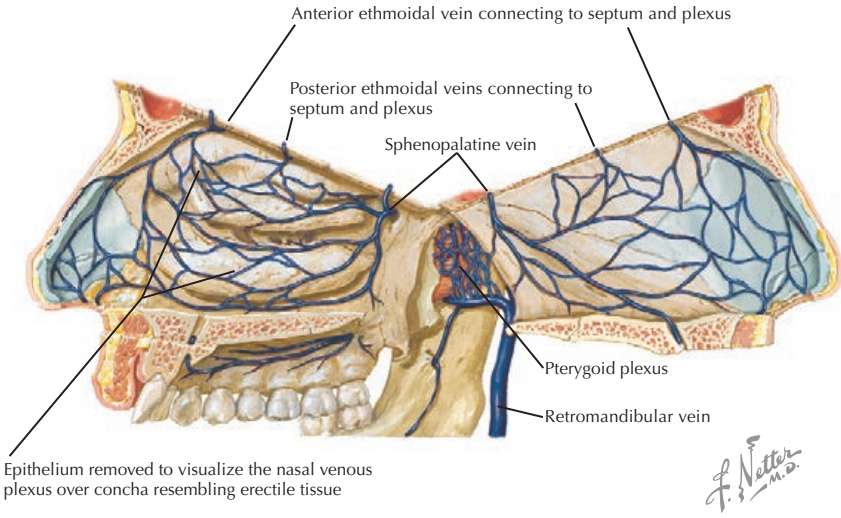




WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

VASCULAR SUPPLY OF THE NASAL CAVITY *CONTINUED*

VENOUS DRAINAGE	
Vein	**Course**
A well-developed cavernous plexus lies deep to the mucous membrane The plexus drains into the following series of veins	
Emissary	Vein from the cavernous plexus in the nasal cavity passes through the foramen cecum to drain into the superior sagittal sinus
Sphenopalatine	Blood from the venous plexus along the posterior portion of the nasal cavity drains to the sphenopalatine v. Travels through the sphenopalatine foramen to enter the pterygoid plexus
Ethmoidal branches	Blood from the venous plexus in the anterior portion of the nasal cavity drains into ethmoid branches, which follow the ethmoid aa. to terminate in the ophthalmic v. and/or facial v.

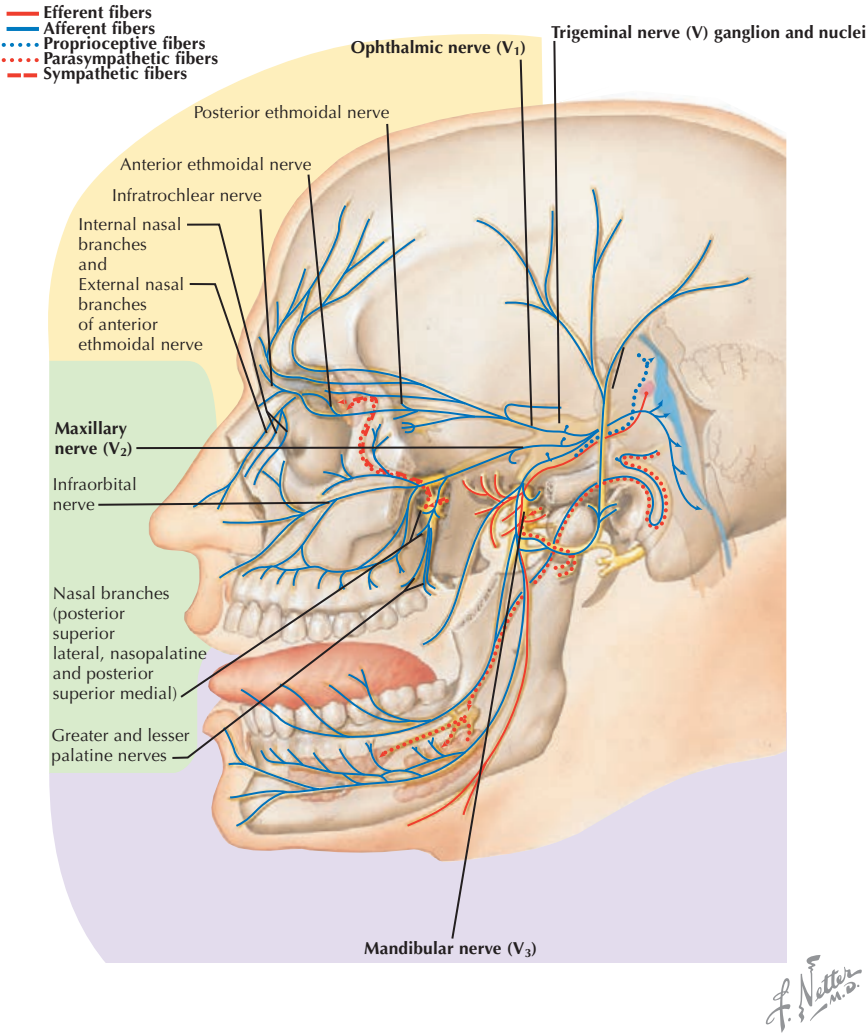


WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

NERVE SUPPLY OF THE NASAL CAVITY

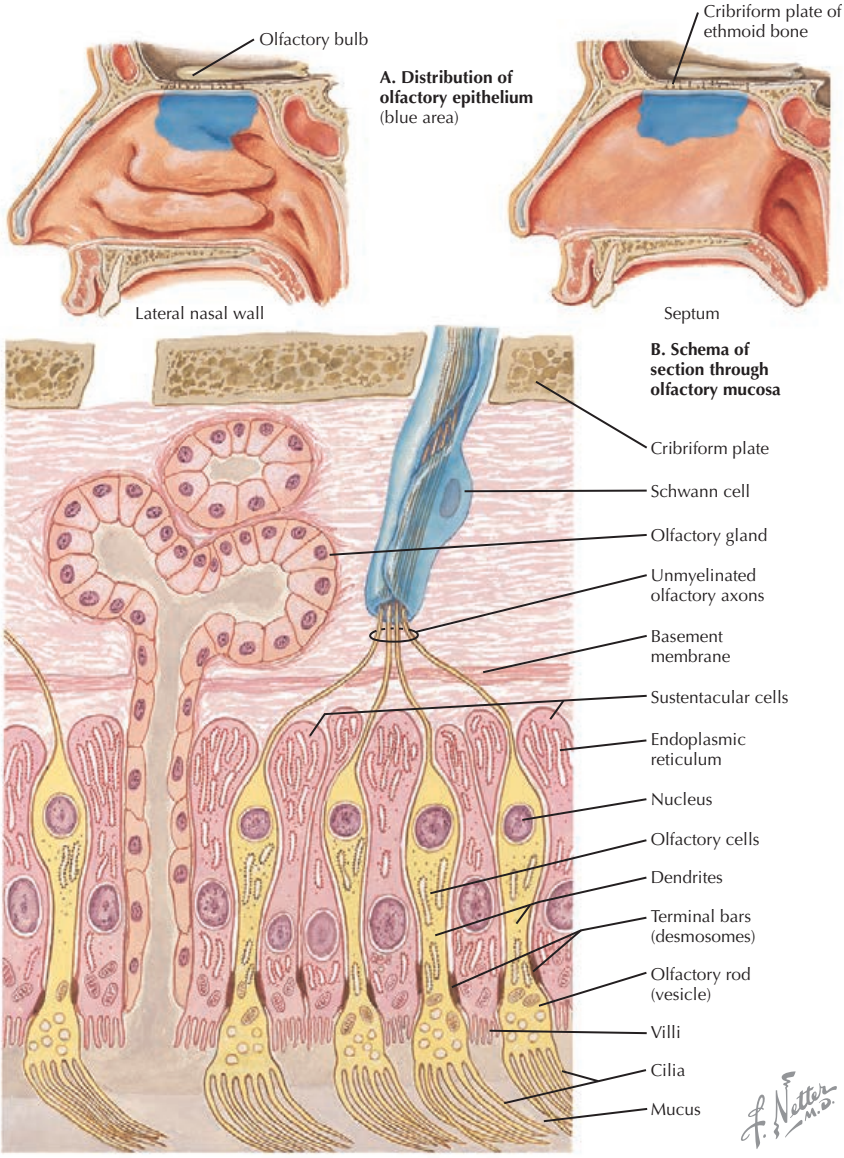
2 major types of sensory innervation to the nasal cavity:

- Olfaction (special visceral afferent) via the olfactory nerve
- General sensation (general somatic afferent) via ophthalmic and maxillary divisions of the trigeminal nerve



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

NERVE SUPPLY OF THE NASAL CAVITY *CONTINUED*



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

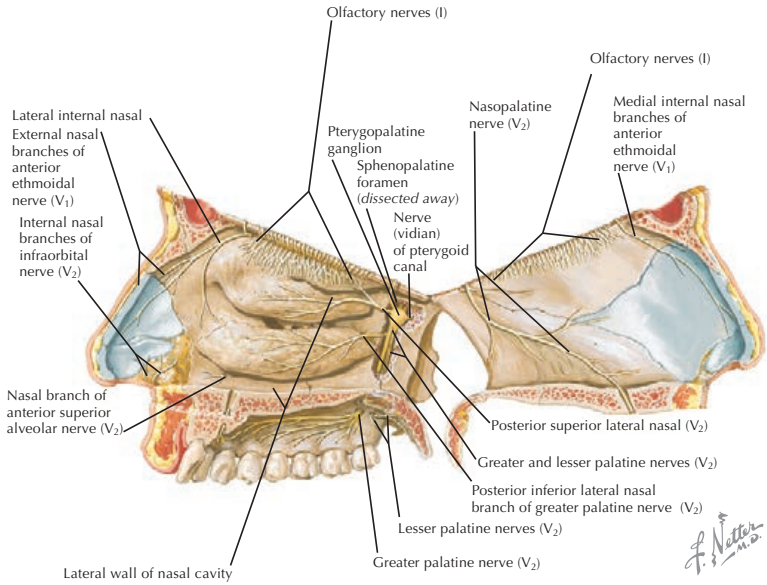
NERVE SUPPLY OF THE NASAL CAVITY *CONTINUED*

SENSORY INNERVATION		
Olfaction		
The olfactory epithelium is found in the roof of the nasal cavity including the adjacent superior portions of the lateral wall of the nasal cavity and the nasal septum Roughly 20 to 25 small olfactory n. fibers, which collectively form the olfactory nerves per side, travel superiorly through the cribriform plate into the anterior cranial fossa to join the olfactory bulb		
GENERAL SENSATION		
Nerve	**Source**	**Course**
Ophthalmic division of the trigeminal	Trigeminal n.	Sensory Arises from the main nerve in the middle cranial fossa Passes anterior on the lateral wall of the cavernous sinus immediately inferior to the oculomotor and trochlear nn., but superior to the maxillary division of the trigeminal n. Immediately before entering the orbit, through the superior orbital fissure, it divides into 3 major branches: • Lacrimal • Frontal • Nasociliary
Anterior ethmoid	Nasociliary n. on the medial wall of the orbit	Enters the anterior ethmoid foramen and travels through the canal to enter the anterior cranial fossa While descending toward the nasal cavity, it provides innervation to the anterior parts of the middle and inferior conchae, as well as the region anterior to the nasal concha
Maxillary division of the trigeminal	Trigeminal n.	Sensory Travels along the lateral wall of the cavernous sinus Passes from the middle cranial fossa into the pterygopalatine fossa via the foramen rotundum Within the pterygopalatine fossa, it gives rise to 4 branches: • Infraorbital—this is the continuation of the maxillary • Posterior superior alveolar • Zygomatic • Ganglionic
Infraorbital	Maxillary division of the trigeminal n.	Passes through the inferior orbital fissure to enter the orbit Passes anteriorly through the infraorbital groove and infraorbital canal and exits onto the face via the infraorbital foramen While in the infraorbital canal, it gives rise to the anterior superior alveolar n., which has a small branch that supplies the nasal cavity in the region of the inferior meatus and inferior corresponding portion of the nasal septum (in addition to supplying the maxillary sinus; the maxillary central incisor, lateral incisor, and canine teeth; and the gingiva and mucosa alongside these teeth)
Nasopalatine	Pterygopalatine ganglion in the pterygopalatine fossa	Passes through the sphenopalatine foramen to enter the nasal cavity Passes along the superior portion of the nasal cavity to the nasal septum, where it travels anteroinferiorly to the incisive canal supplying the septum
Posterior inferior nasal branch of the greater palatine		Passes through the palatine canal to enter the hard palate via the greater palatine foramen While descending in the palatine canal, it gives rise to a posterior inferior nasal branch Supplies the posterior part of the lateral wall of the nasal cavity in the region of the middle meatus

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

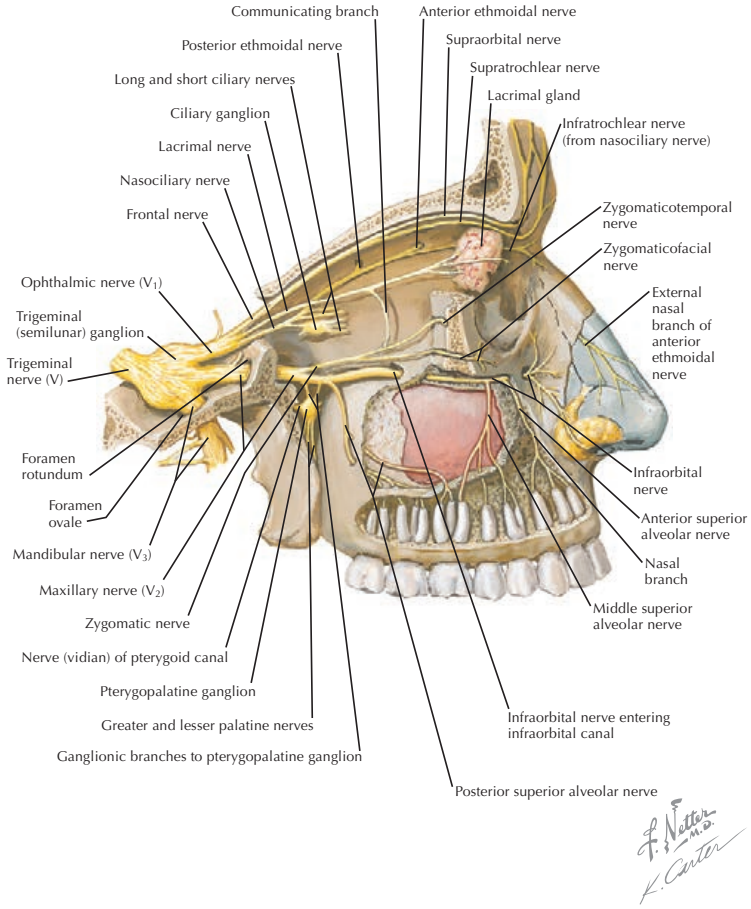
NERVE SUPPLY OF THE NASAL CAVITY *CONTINUED*

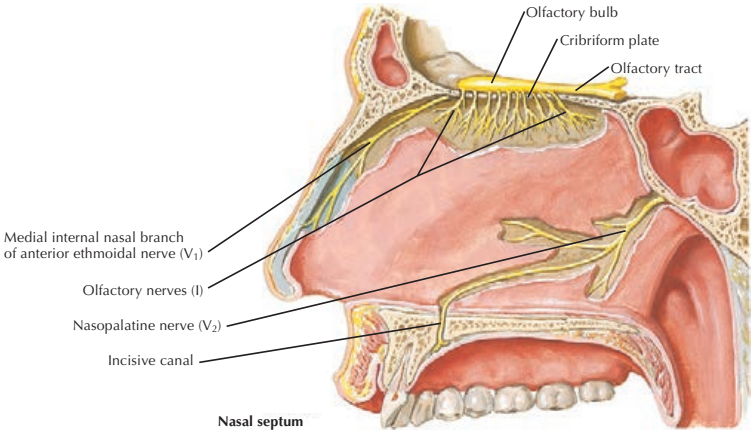
GENERAL SENSATION *CONTINUED*		
Nerve	**Source**	**Course**
Posterior superior nasal	Arises from the pterygopalatine ganglion in the pterygopalatine fossa	Passes through the sphenopalatine foramen to enter the nasal cavity and branches into 2 nerves: • Posterior medial superior nasal • Posterior lateral superior nasal
Posterior lateral superior nasal	Posterior superior nasal n. from the pterygopalatine ganglion	Supplies the posterosuperior portion of the lateral wall of the nasal cavity in the region of the superior and middle concha
Posterior medial superior nasal		Supplies the posterior portion of the nasal septum



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

NERVE SUPPLY OF THE NASAL CAVITY *CONTINUED*





WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

NERVE SUPPLY OF THE NASAL CAVITY *CONTINUED*

Autonomic fibers are distributed through the sensory branches of the maxillary division of the trigeminal nerve via the pterygopalatine ganglion (parasympathetics) and the superior cervical ganglion (sympathetics)

Autonomics travel to the glands and blood vessels of the nasal cavity

AUTONOMIC INNERVATION			
ANATOMIC PATHWAY FOR PARASYMPATHETICS OF THE NASAL CAVITY			
Type of Neuron	**Name of Cell Body**	**Characteristics of the Cell Body**	**Course of the Neuron**
Preganglionic neuron	Superior salivatory nucleus	A collection of nerve cell bodies located in the pons Travel through the nervus intermedius of the facial nerve into the internal acoustic meatus In the *facial canal,* the facial nerve gives rise to 2 parasympathetic branches: • Greater petrosal n. • Chorda tympani n.	**Greater Petrosal Nerve** Greater petrosal n. exits the hiatus for the greater petrosal n. toward the foramen lacerum, where it joins the deep petrosal n. (sympathetics) to form the nerve of the pterygoid canal (vidian n.) Vidian n. passes through the pterygoid canal and enters the pterygopalatine fossa, where it joins with the pterygopalatine ganglion
Postganglionic neuron	Pterygopalatine ganglion	Pterygopalatine ganglion is a collection of nerve cell bodies located in the pterygopalatine fossa Postganglionic parasympathetic fibers that arise in the pterygopalatine ganglion are distributed to the ophthalmic and maxillary divisions of the trigeminal n. to the: • Lacrimal gland • Nasal glands • Palatine glands • Pharyngeal glands	**Maxillary Division Distribution** Postganglionic fibers travel along the maxillary division of the trigeminal n. to be distributed along its branches that are located in the nasal cavity, oral cavity, and pharynx (e.g., nasopalatine, greater palatine) These fibers innervate: • Nasal glands • Palatine glands • Pharyngeal glands
ANATOMIC PATHWAY FOR SYMPATHETICS OF THE NASAL CAVITY			
Type of Neuron	**Name of Cell Body**	**Characteristics of the Cell Body**	**Course of the Neuron**
Preganglionic neuron	Intermediolateral horn nucleus	Collection of nerve cell bodies located in the lateral horn nucleus of the spinal cord between spinal segments T1 and T3 (and possibly T4)	Arise from the intermediolateral horn nuclei from T1 to T3 (4) Travel through the ventral root of the spinal cord to the spinal nerve Enter the sympathetic chain via a white ramus communicantes Once in the sympathetic chain, the preganglionic fibers for the eye ascend and synapse with postganglionic fibers in the superior cervical ganglion

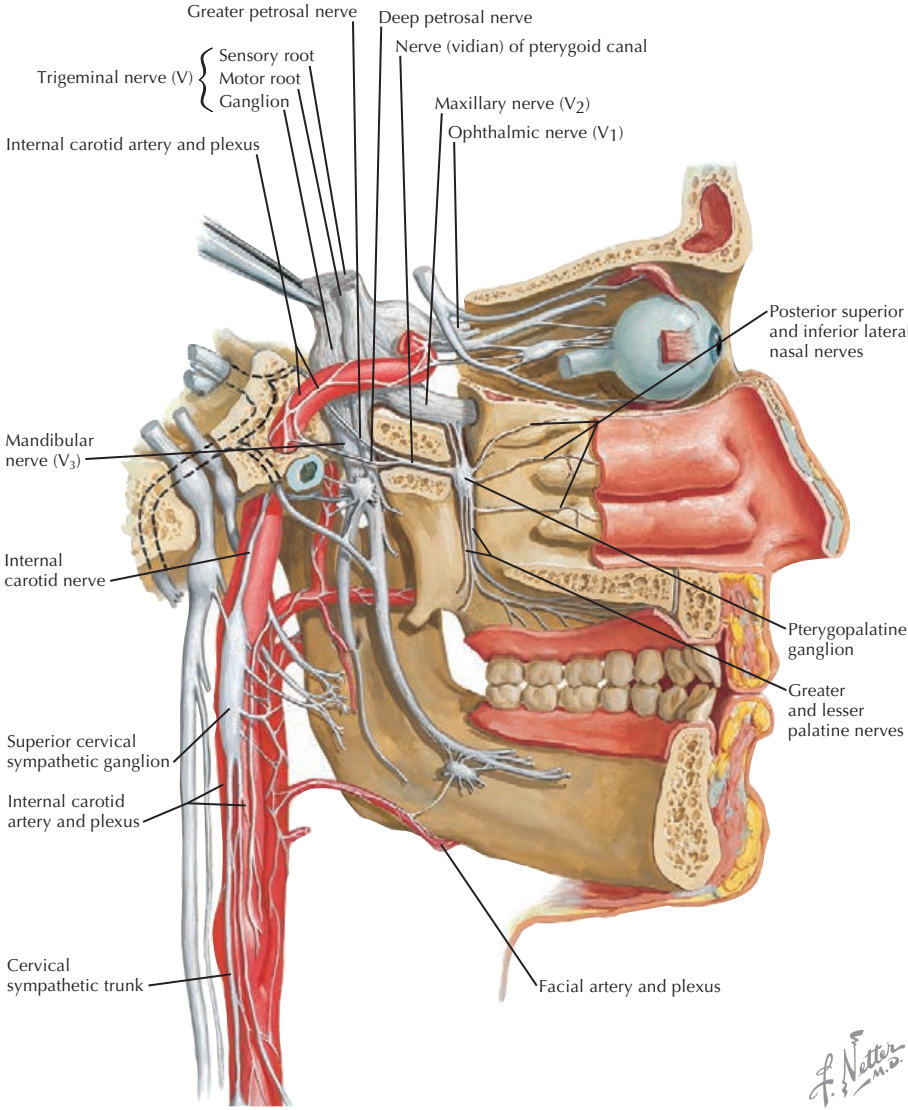
WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

NERVE SUPPLY OF THE NASAL CAVITY *CONTINUED*

ANATOMIC PATHWAY FOR SYMPATHETICS OF THE NASAL CAVITY			
Type of Neuron	**Name of Cell Body**	**Characteristics of the Cell Body**	**Course of the Neuron**
Postganglionic neuron	Superior cervical ganglion	Collection of nerve cell bodies located in the superior cervical ganglion, which is located at the base of the skull Postganglionic sympathetic fibers follow the internal carotid or external carotid a. to pass near their respective effector organs (e.g., nasal cavity)	**Nasal Cavity and Palate** Postganglionic sympathetic fibers follow both the *internal* and *external* carotid aa.: • Postganglionic sympathetic fibers from the internal carotid branch in the region of the foramen lacerum to form the deep petrosal n. The deep petrosal n. joins the greater petrosal n. (parasympathetics) to form the nerve of the pterygoid canal (vidian n.) Postganglionic sympathetic fibers travel along the branches of the maxillary division of the trigeminal n., associated with the pterygopalatine ganglion, to be distributed along its branches in the nasal cavity and palate • Postganglionic sympathetic fibers from the external carotid branch and follow the maxillary a. These fibers travel along the branches of the maxillary a., to be distributed along the nasal cavity and palate

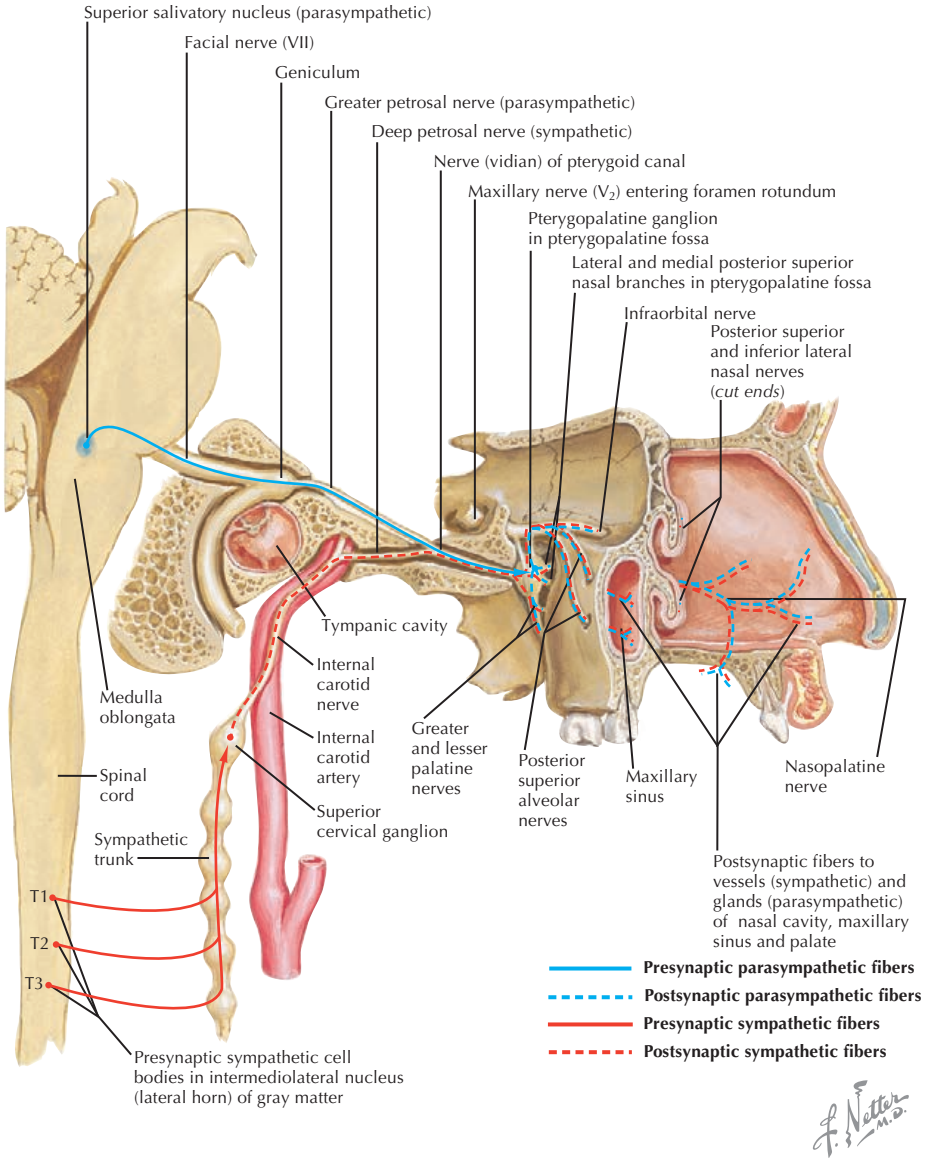
WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

NERVE SUPPLY OF THE NASAL CAVITY *CONTINUED*



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

NERVE SUPPLY OF THE NASAL CAVITY *CONTINUED*



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

11 Clinical Correlate

EPISTAXIS

Epistaxis, or nosebleed, is a hemorrhage from the nasal cavity or nose

Classified by bleeding location:
- Anterior
- Posterior

Causes
- Trauma (blows to the face, fractures, nose picking)
- Sinus infections
- Rhinitis
- Arid environment
- Hypertension
- Hematologic disorders
- Neoplasms

Anterior Epistaxis

The most common form (in about 90% of cases)

Usually found along the nasal septum and results from bleeding along Kiesselbach's plexus

Many nosebleeds are due to trauma to the septal branch of the superior labial artery from the facial artery

Typically managed with local pressure

May be controlled with cautery via a silver nitrate stick or anterior nasal packing if bleeding is persistent

With anterior epistaxis, another treatment, although somewhat drastic, is septal dermoplasty
- The thin septal mucosa is replaced by a thicker graft of skin
- Often used to treat nosebleeds caused by hereditary hemorrhagic telangiectasia or septal perforations

Posterior Epistaxis

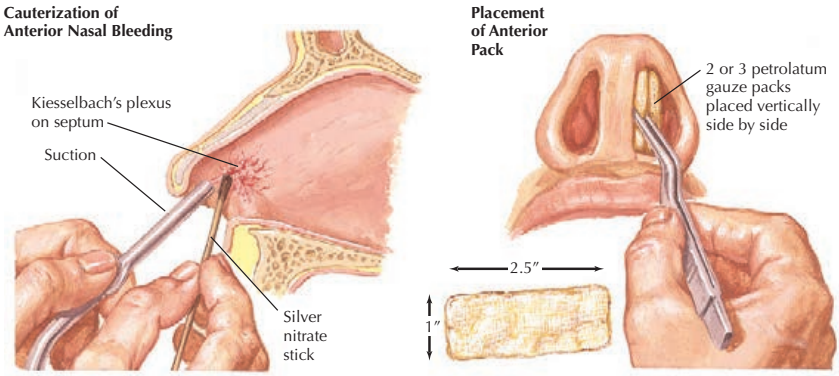
Usually found along the posterior part of the nasal cavity

More difficult to treat and may be accomplished with posterior nasal packing or a balloon catheter

Severe posterior epistaxis may require ligation of the maxillary artery

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

EPISTAXIS *CONTINUED*



Septal Dermoplasty for Recurrent Severe Anterior Epistaxis



A. Incision

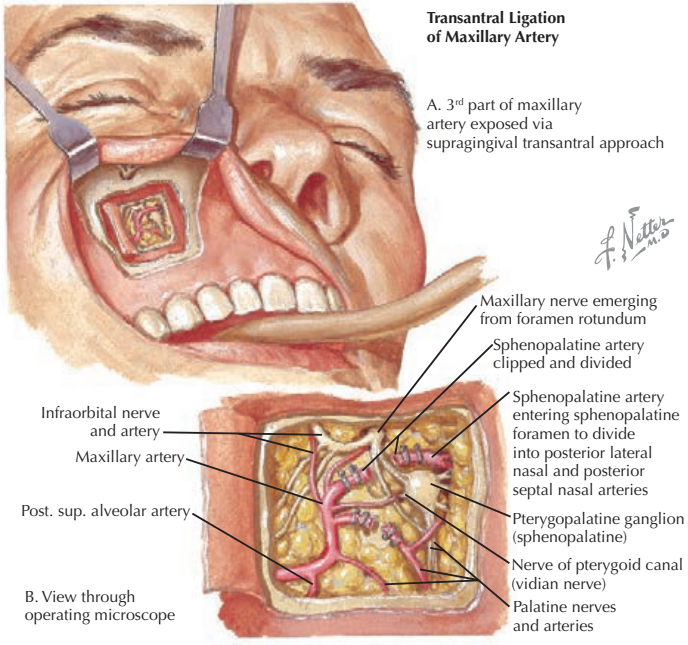
B. Flap elevated exposing telangiectasia on septal mucosa

C. Septal mucosa excised in area of telangiectasia; perichondrium preserved

D. Split-thickness skin graft applied

E. Flap sutured; intranasal pack (finger cot) then applied over Silastic sheet

Transantral Ligation of Maxillary Artery



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

DEVIATED SEPTUM

A severe shift of the nasal septum from the midline

Causes

- Trauma
- Birth defects

Results

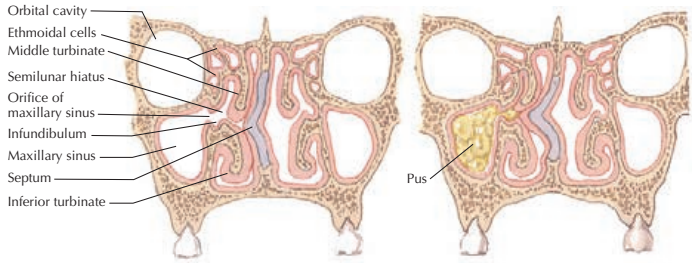
Occlusion of one side, either partial or complete, producing difficulty in breathing or blocked air flow on that side

May also cause:

- Sinusitis
- Epistaxis
- Nasal congestion

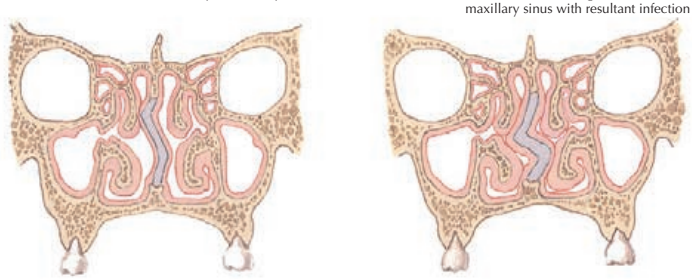
Treatment

May be treated by septoplasty



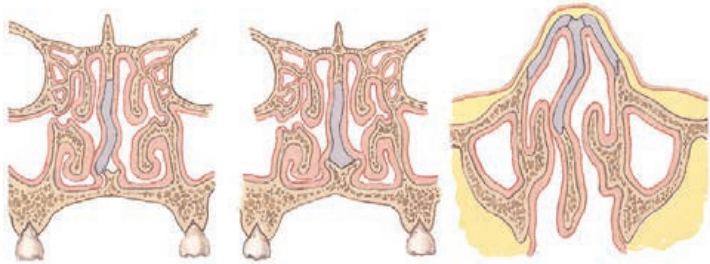
A. Septal bulge occluding airway unilaterally

B. Septum occluding semilunar hiatus and obstructing outflow from maxillary sinus with resultant infection



C. Septum impinging on middle turbinate and causing pain via maxillary division of trigeminal nerve

D. S-shaped septal deformity occluding airway bilaterally



E. Septum dislocated from maxillary crest

F. Excessive "wings" on maxillary crest

G. Anteroposterior S-shaped septal bulge (horizontal section)

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Clinical Correlate

RHINITIS

An inflammation of the mucosa of the nasal cavity that results in:

- Nasal congestion
- Sneezing
- Rhinorrhea
- Nasal itching

May involve the eyes, ears, sinuses, and throat and cause headaches

Most commonly caused by allergic rhinitis

Allergic Rhinitis

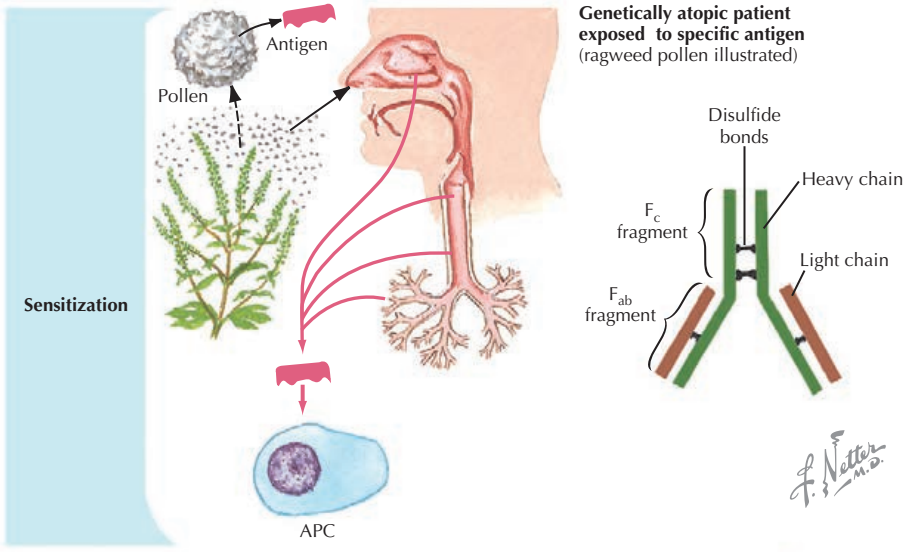
Can be associated with nasal polyps, deviated septum, and asthma

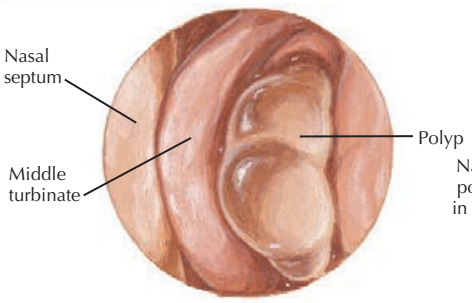
Caused by an allergen inducing an immunoglobulin E (IgE)-mediated response on the mast cells

Because mast cells are located on the nasal mucosa, an allergen can bind to the mast cell, resulting in the release of histamines, prostaglandins, cytokines, and leukotrienes

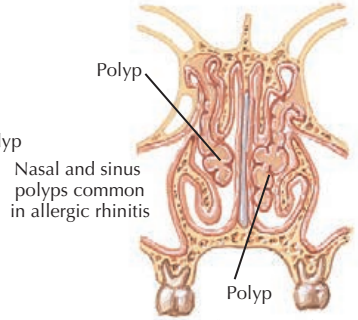
Typically treated with decongestants, antihistamines, and steroids

Mechanism of Type 1 (Immediate) Hypersensitivity



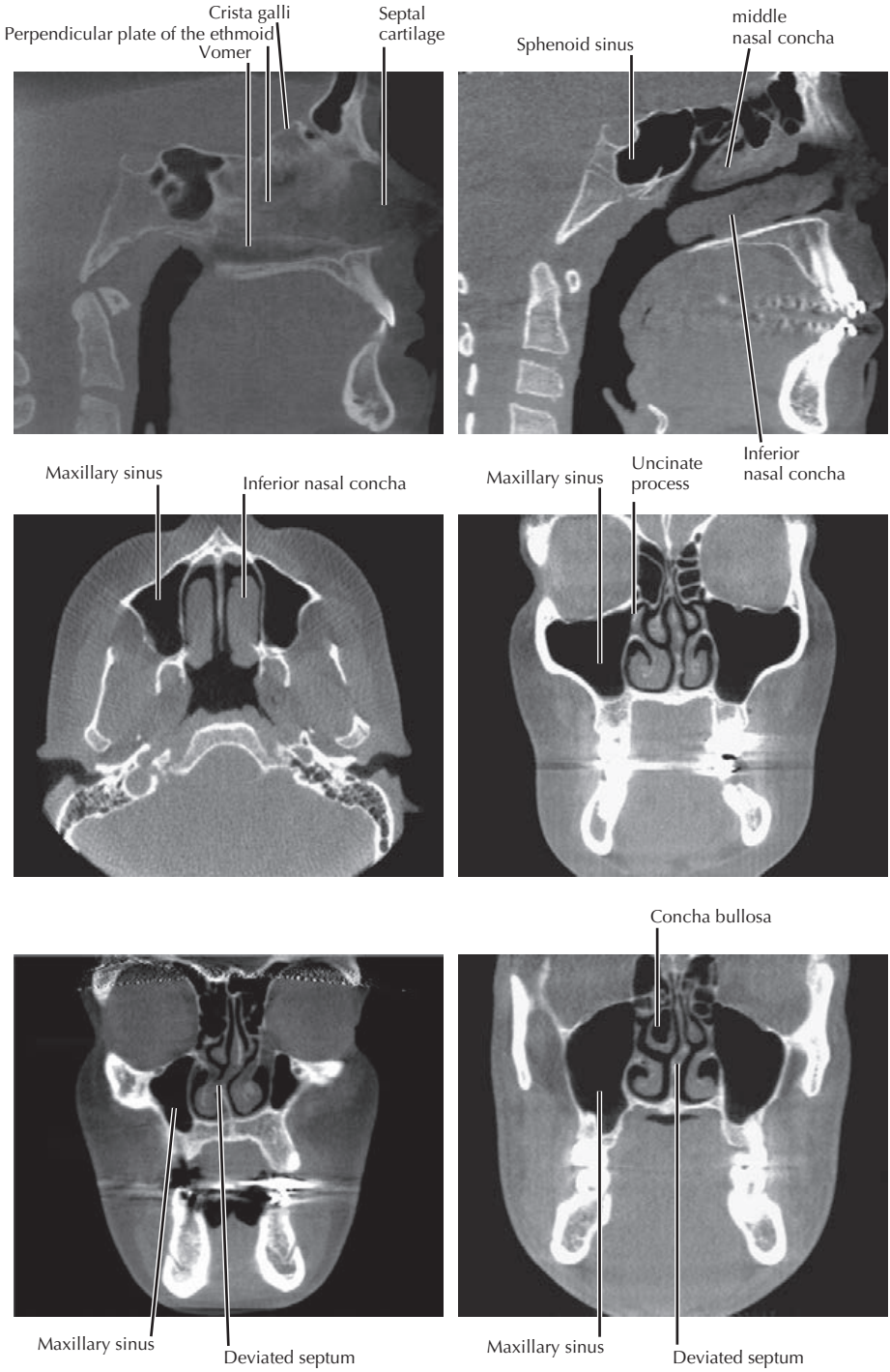


Endoscopic view of nasal polyp protruding from middle meatus



Nasal polyps most often bilateral in allergic sinusitis

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

CHAPTER 12

PARANASAL SINUSES

Overview and Topographic Anatomy 300
Frontal Sinus 304
Ethmoid Sinus 307
Maxillary Sinus 311
Sphenoid Sinus 314
Clinical Correlates 317
Imaging 324

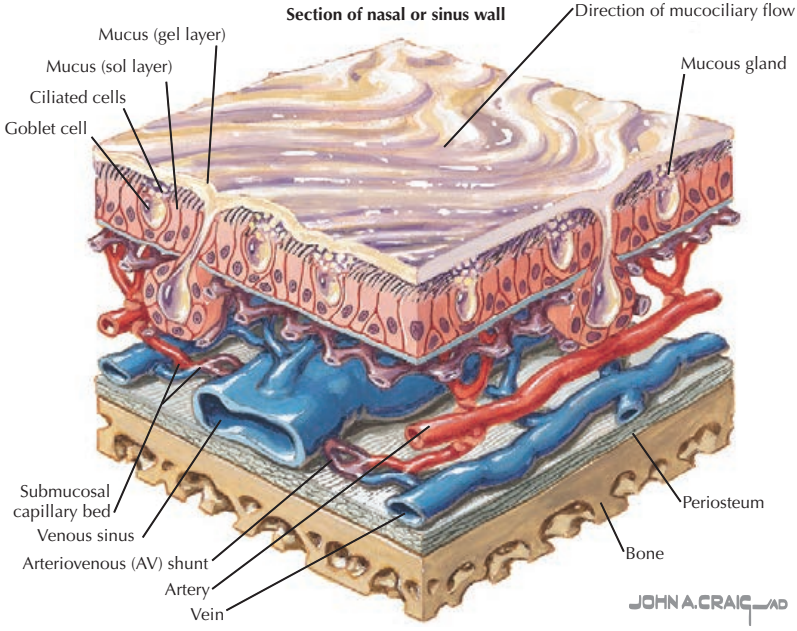
WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

GENERAL INFORMATION

Paranasal sinuses: invaginations from the nasal cavity that drain into spaces associated with the lateral nasal wall

Each is lined by a respiratory epithelium

Morphology of the sinuses is highly variable

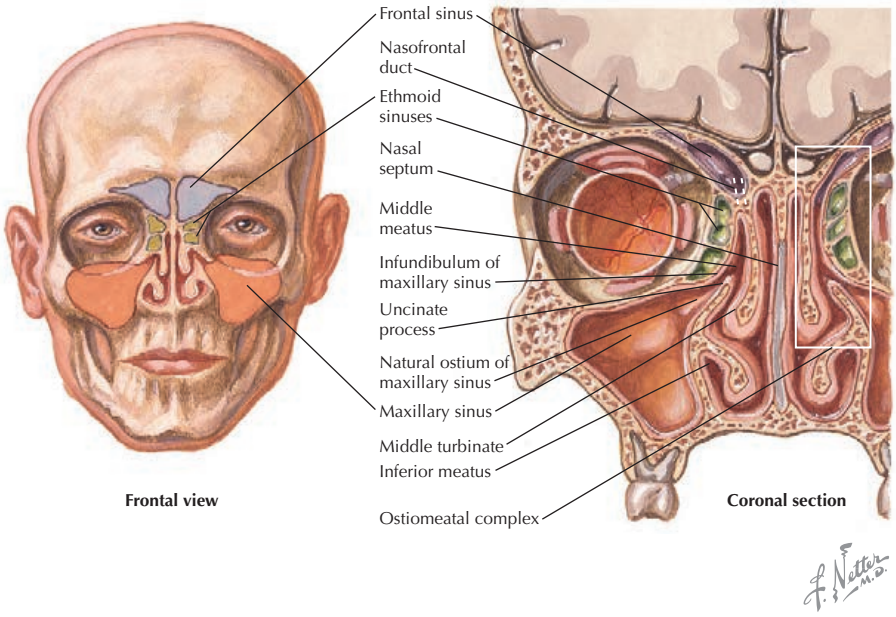




Paranasal sinus infection that spreads to skull bones

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

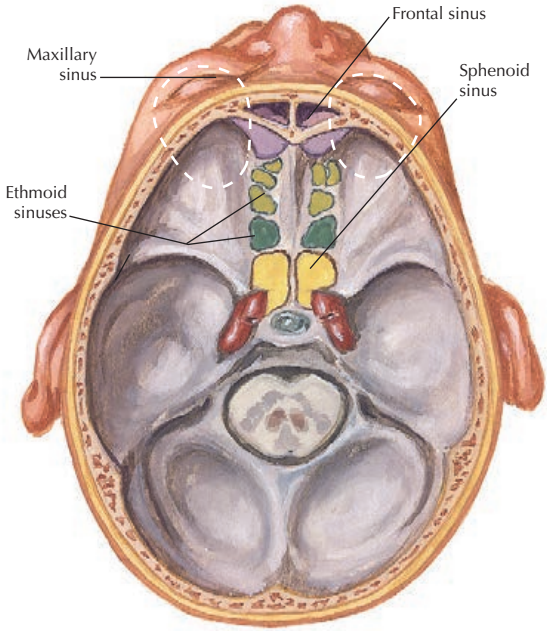
GENERAL INFORMATION *CONTINUED*



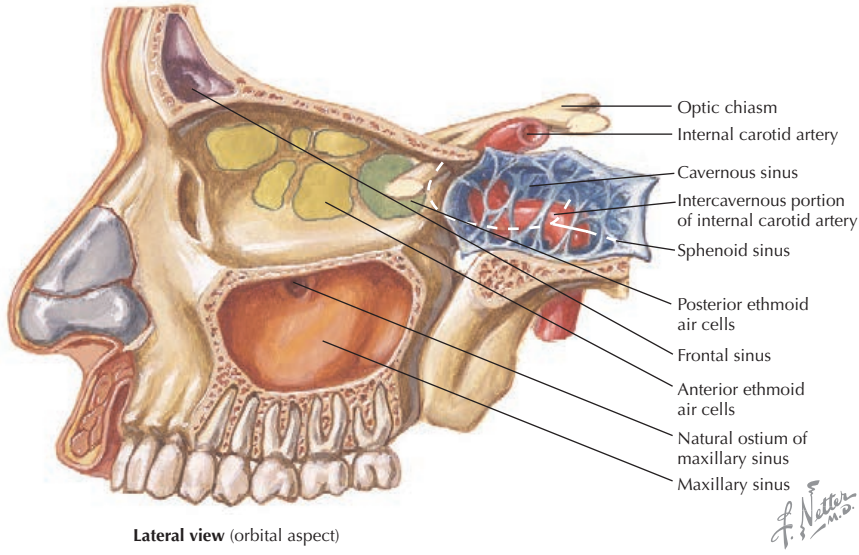
FEATURES OF THE PARANASAL SINUSES				
Sinus	**Location**	**Comment**	**Artery**	**Nerve**
Frontal	Within frontal bone	Flattened triangular shape	Ophthalmic branches	Ophthalmic division of the trigeminal n.
Maxillary	Within maxillary bone	Pyramidal shape, 1st to develop	Maxillary branches	Maxillary division of the trigeminal n.
Ethmoid	Within ethmoid bone	3 to 18 irregularly shaped cells	Ophthalmic and maxillary branches	Ophthalmic and maxillary divisions of the trigeminal n.
Sphenoid	Within sphenoid bone	Cuboid shape		

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

GENERAL INFORMATION *CONTINUED*



Superior view



Lateral view (orbital aspect)

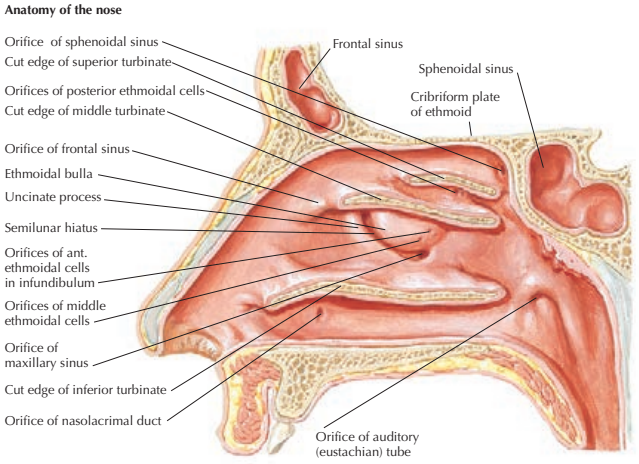
WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

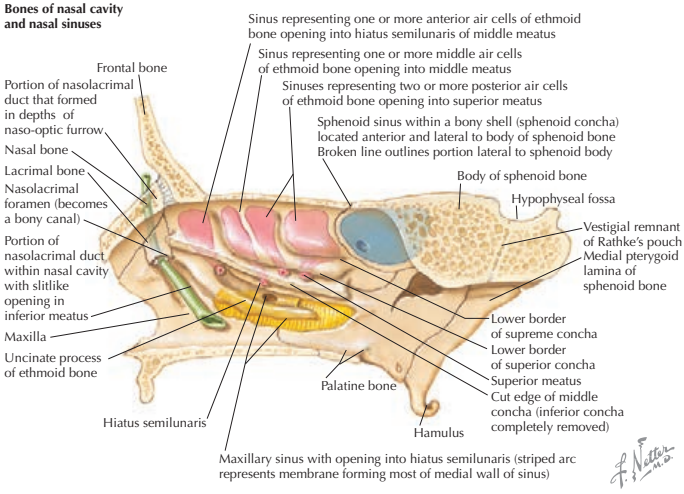
DRAINAGE OF THE PARANASAL SINUSES AND ASSOCIATED STRUCTURES

All paranasal sinuses drain into the nasal cavity

Different sinuses serve as drainage conduits for different regions

SUMMARY OF PARANASAL SINUS DRAINAGE		
Region Drained	**Location**	**Structure(s) Drained**
Sphenoethmoidal recess	Superior to the superior concha	Sphenoid sinus
Superior meatus	Inferior to the superior concha	Posterior ethmoid sinus
Middle meatus	Inferior to the middle concha	Anterior ethmoid sinus Middle ethmoid sinus Maxillary sinus Frontal sinus
Inferior meatus	Inferior to the inferior concha	Nasolacrimal duct





WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

12 Frontal Sinus

GENERAL INFORMATION

The two frontal sinuses typically are asymmetrical

Rudimentary at birth and usually well-developed by the age of 7 or 8 years

Display a prime expansion when the 1st deciduous molars erupt and another when the permanent molars begin to appear at about age 6

Drainage varies; often drain in front of, above, or into the ethmoidal infundibulum

Primary lymphatic drainage is to the submandibular lymph nodes

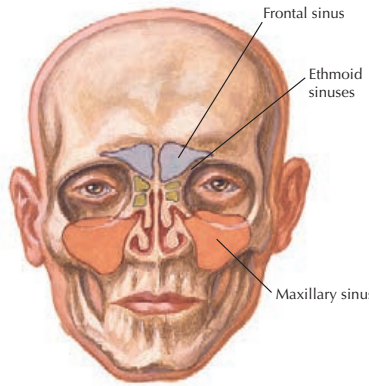
The frontal sinus receives its nerve supply from branches of the ophthalmic division of the trigeminal nerve

Relations of Sinus

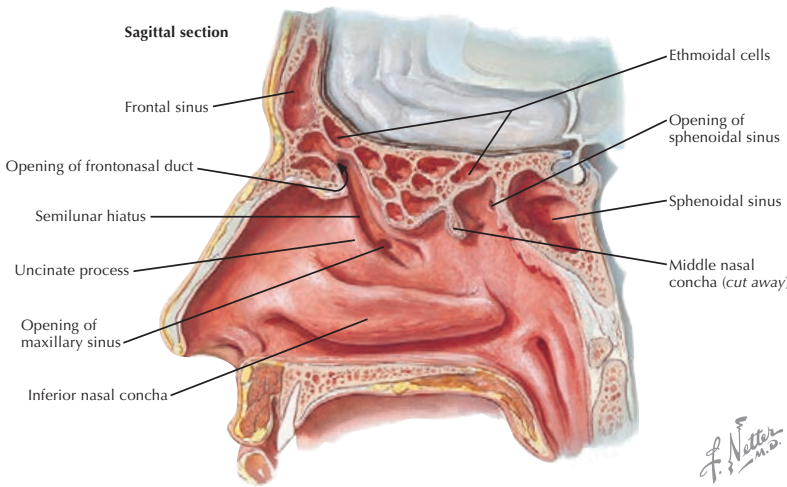
- *Superior:* anterior cranial fossa and contents
- *Inferior:* orbit, anterior ethmoidal sinuses, nasal cavity
- *Anterior:* forehead, superciliary arches
- *Posterior:* anterior cranial fossa and contents
- *Medial:* other frontal sinus

Location of Ostium

Middle meatus



Frontal view

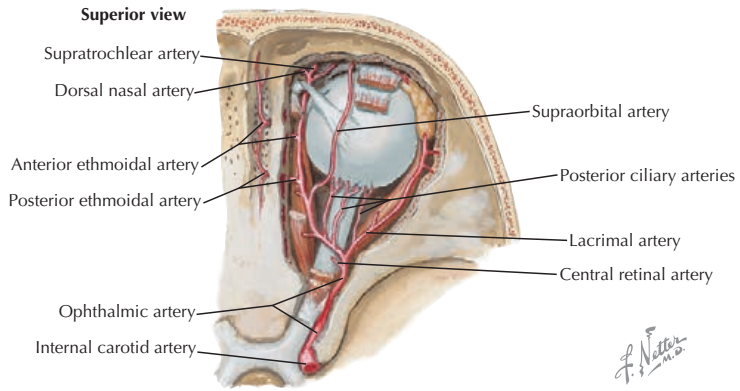


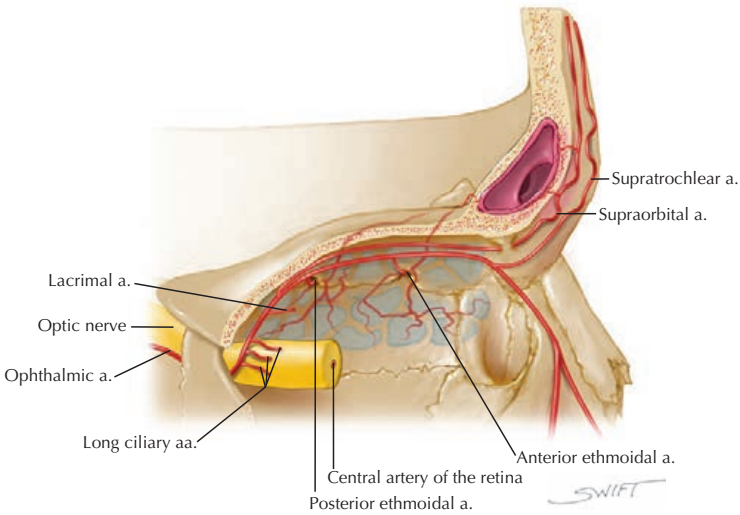
WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Frontal Sinus

ARTERIAL SUPPLY

Artery	Source	Course
Anterior ethmoid	Ophthalmic a. (from the internal carotid a.)	Enters the anterior ethmoid foramen with the nerve to pass through the canal At this location, it supplies the anterior and middle ethmoid air cells and the frontal sinus
Supraorbital		Branches from the ophthalmic a. when crossing the optic n. Ascends medial to both the levator palpebrae superioris and the superior rectus mm. At this location, it runs with the supraorbital n. and is found between the levator palpebrae superioris m. and the periosteum of the orbit Travels to the supraorbital foramen (notch) At the level of the supraorbital margin, it supplies the frontal sinus
Supratrochlear		One of the terminal branches of the ophthalmic a. in the orbit Ascends to meet the supratrochlear n. While passing anteriorly in the orbit toward the trochlea, the supratrochlear a. supplies the frontal sinus



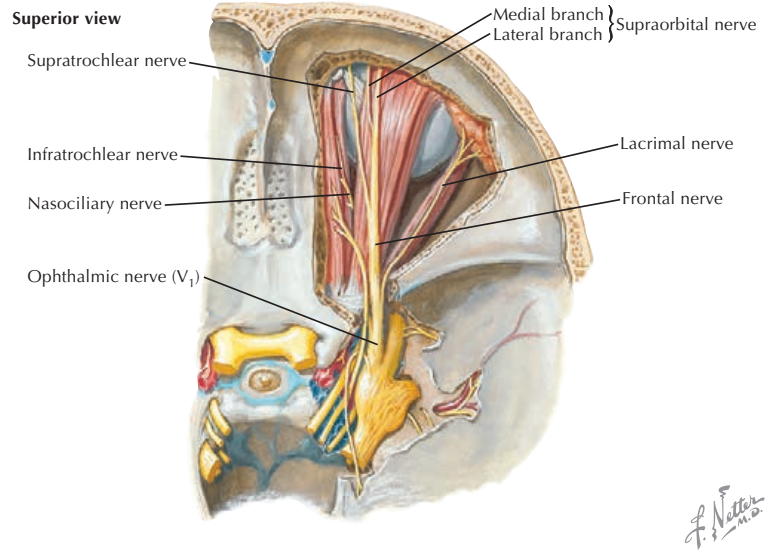


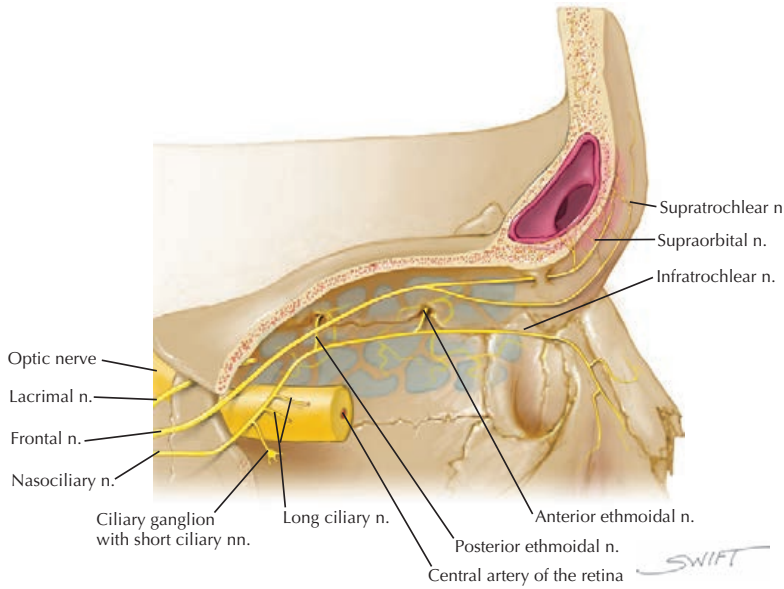
WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Frontal Sinus

NERVE SUPPLY

Nerve	Source	Course
Supraorbital	Ophthalmic division of the trigeminal n.	Passes between the levator palpebrae superioris m. and periosteum of the orbit Continues anteriorly to the supraorbital foramen (notch) At the level of the supraorbital margin, it sends nerve supply to the frontal sinus
Supratrochlear		Once the supratrochlear a. joins it, the nerve continues to pass anteriorly toward the trochlear n. There it often supplies the frontal sinus





WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Ethmoid Sinus

GENERAL INFORMATION

May find 3 to 18 ethmoid air cells on each side

Ethmoid air cells may invade any of the other 3 sinuses

The middle ethmoid air cells produce the swelling on the lateral wall of the middle meatus called the ethmoid bulla

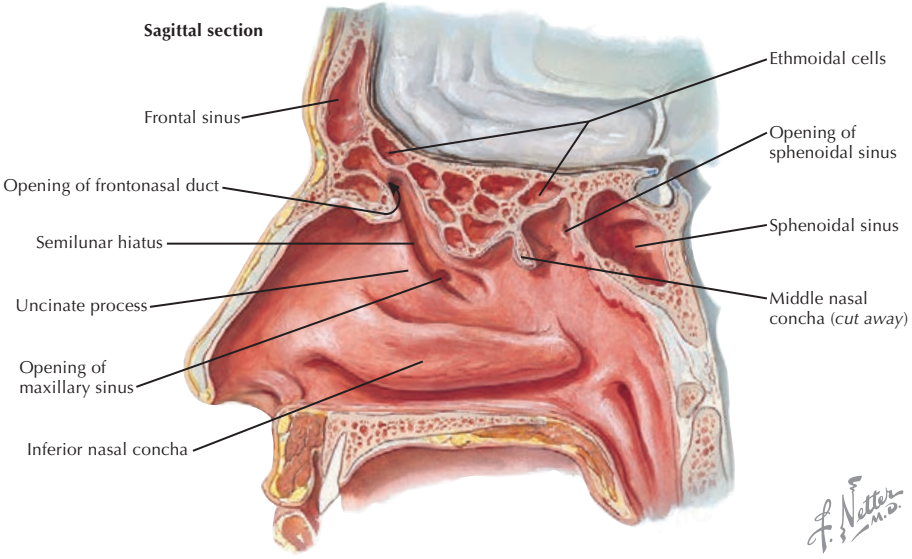
Primary lymphatic drainage is to the submandibular lymph nodes for the anterior and middle ethmoid sinuses; and the retropharyngeal lymph nodes for the posterior ethmoid sinus

Relations of Sinus

- *Superior:* anterior cranial fossa and contents, frontal bone with sinus
- *Medial:* nasal cavity
- *Lateral:* orbit

Location of Ostium

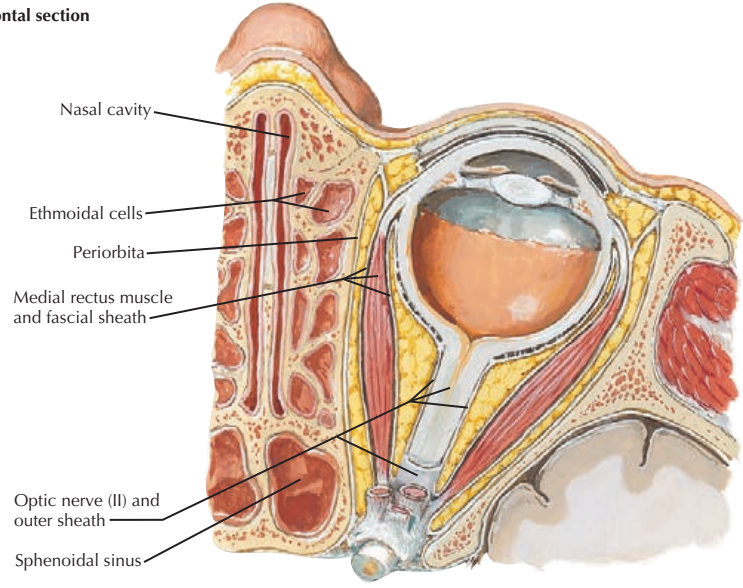
- *Anterior:* middle meatus (frontonasal duct or ethmoidal infundibulum)
- *Middle:* middle meatus (on or above ethmoid bulla)
- *Posterior:* superior meatus



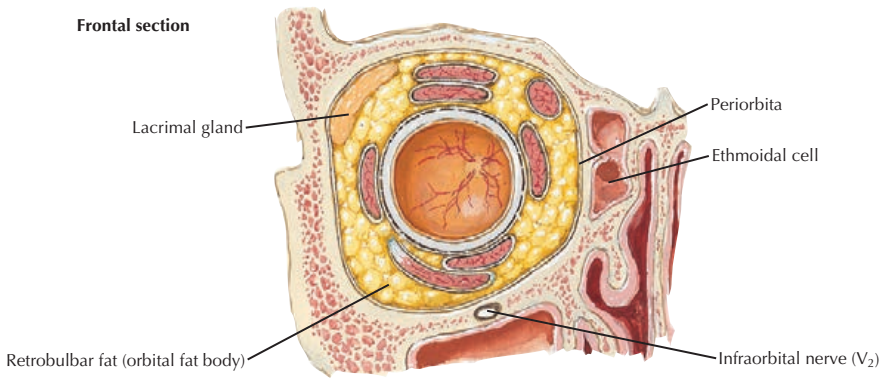
WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

GENERAL INFORMATION *CONTINUED*

Horizontal section



Frontal section

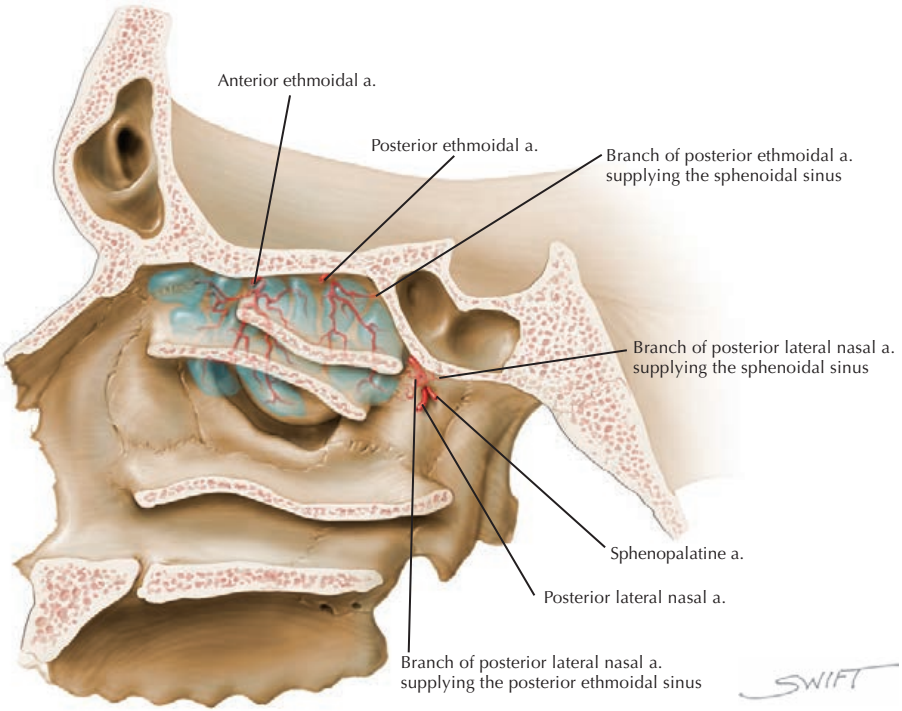


WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Ethmoid Sinus

ARTERIAL SUPPLY

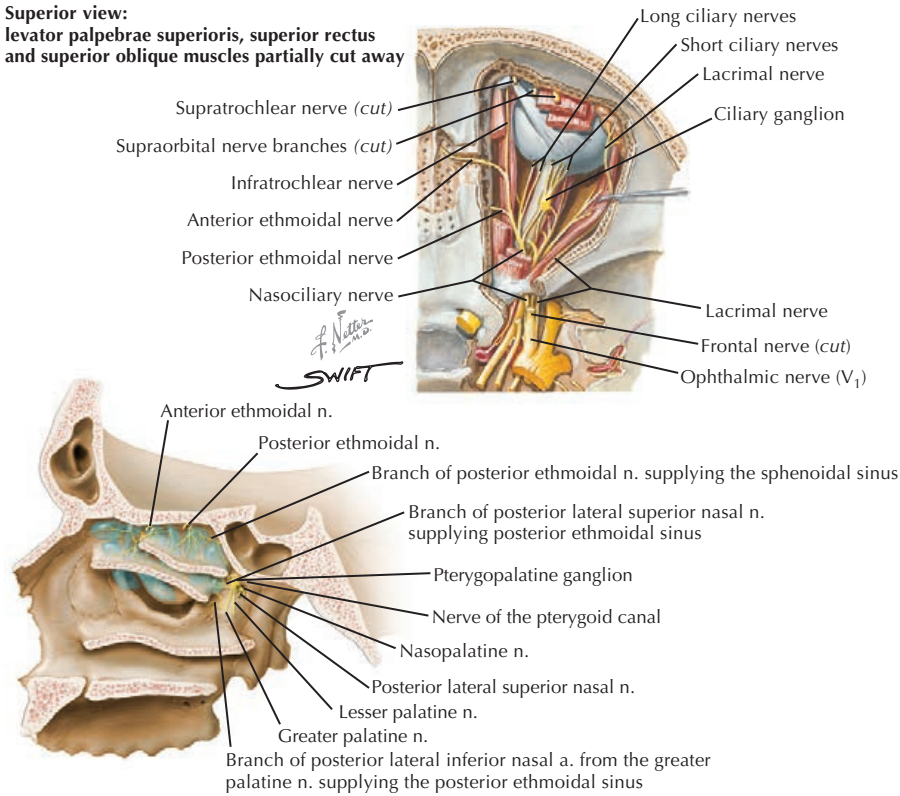
Artery	Source	Course
Anterior ethmoid	Ophthalmic a. (from the internal carotid)	Enters the anterior ethmoid foramen with the nerve to pass though the canal There it supplies the anterior and middle ethmoid air cells and sometimes the frontal sinus
Posterior ethmoid		Passes through the posterior ethmoid foramen to enter the canal There it supplies the posterior ethmoid air cells and sphenoid sinus
Posterior lateral nasal branches	Sphenopalatine a. (from the maxillary a. from the external carotid a.)	Anastomose with the ethmoidal arteries to help supply the ethmoid air cells and sphenoid sinus



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

NERVE SUPPLY

Nerve	Source	Course
Anterior ethmoid	Nasociliary n. on the medial wall of the orbit (from the ophthalmic division of the trigeminal n.)	Enters the anterior ethmoid foramen and travels through the canal to enter the anterior cranial fossa While descending toward the nasal cavity, it provides innervation to the anterior and middle ethmoid air cells
Posterior ethmoid		Enters the posterior ethmoid foramen to supply the posterior ethmoid air cells Also innervates the sphenoid sinus at this location
Posterior lateral superior nasal	Pterygopalatine ganglion in the pterygopalatine fossa (from the maxillary division of the trigeminal n.)	Pass through the sphenopalatine foramen to enter the nasal cavity Branches supply the posterior ethmoid air cells at this location
Posterior lateral inferior nasal	Greater palatine n. as it descends through the palatine canal (from the maxillary division of the trigeminal n.)	May send branches to the ethmoid air cells



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Maxillary Sinus

GENERAL INFORMATION

Large pyramidal cavity

Thin walls

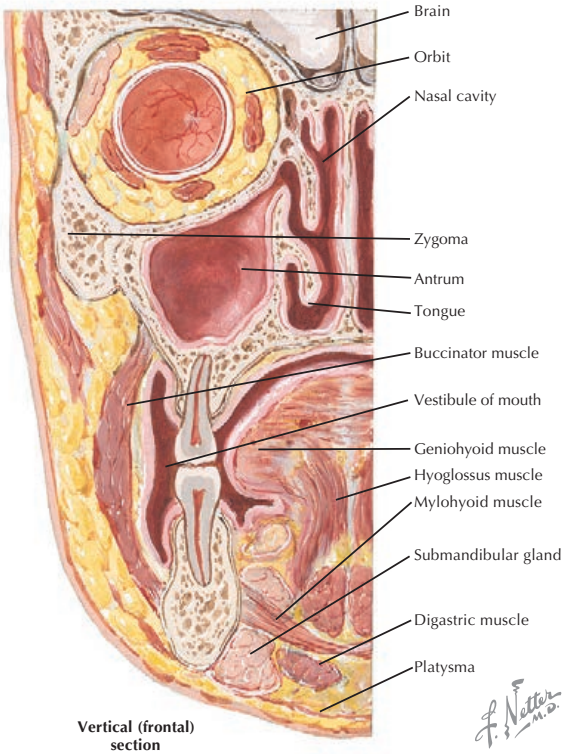
Primary lymphatic drainage is to the submandibular lymph nodes

Relations of Sinus

- *Superior:* orbit, infraorbital nerve and vessels
- *Inferior:* roots of molars and premolars
- *Medial:* nasal cavity
- *Lateral and anterior:* cheek
- *Posterior:* infratemporal fossa, pterygopalatine fossa and contents

Location of Ostium

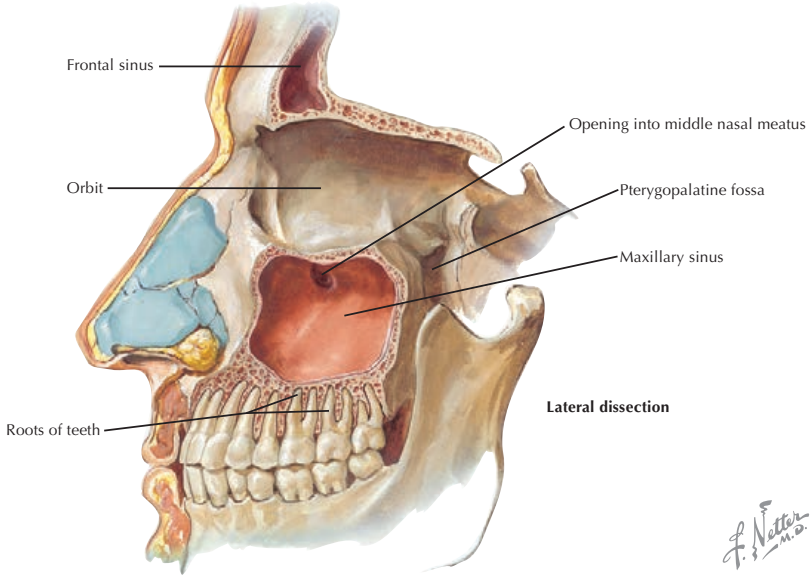
Middle meatus



Vertical (frontal) section

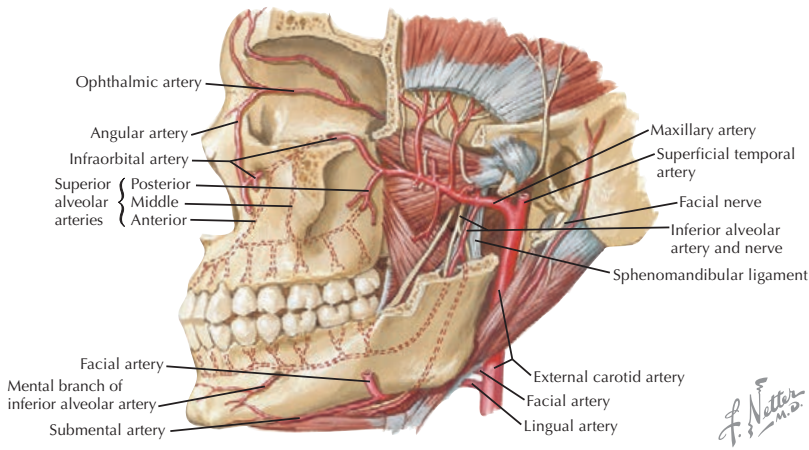
WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

GENERAL INFORMATION *CONTINUED*



ARTERIAL SUPPLY

Artery	Source	Course
Anterior superior alveolar	Maxillary a. from the external carotid a.	Arises from the infraorbital a. of the maxillary a. after it passes through the inferior orbital fissure and into the infraorbital canal Descends via the alveolar canals to supply the sinus
Middle superior alveolar		When present, it arises from the infraorbital a. of the maxillary a. after passing through the inferior orbital fissure and into the infraorbital canal Descends via the alveolar canals to supply the sinus
Posterior superior alveolar		Arises from the 3rd part of the maxillary a. before the maxillary a. enters the pterygopalatine fossa Enters the infratemporal surface of the maxilla to supply the sinus

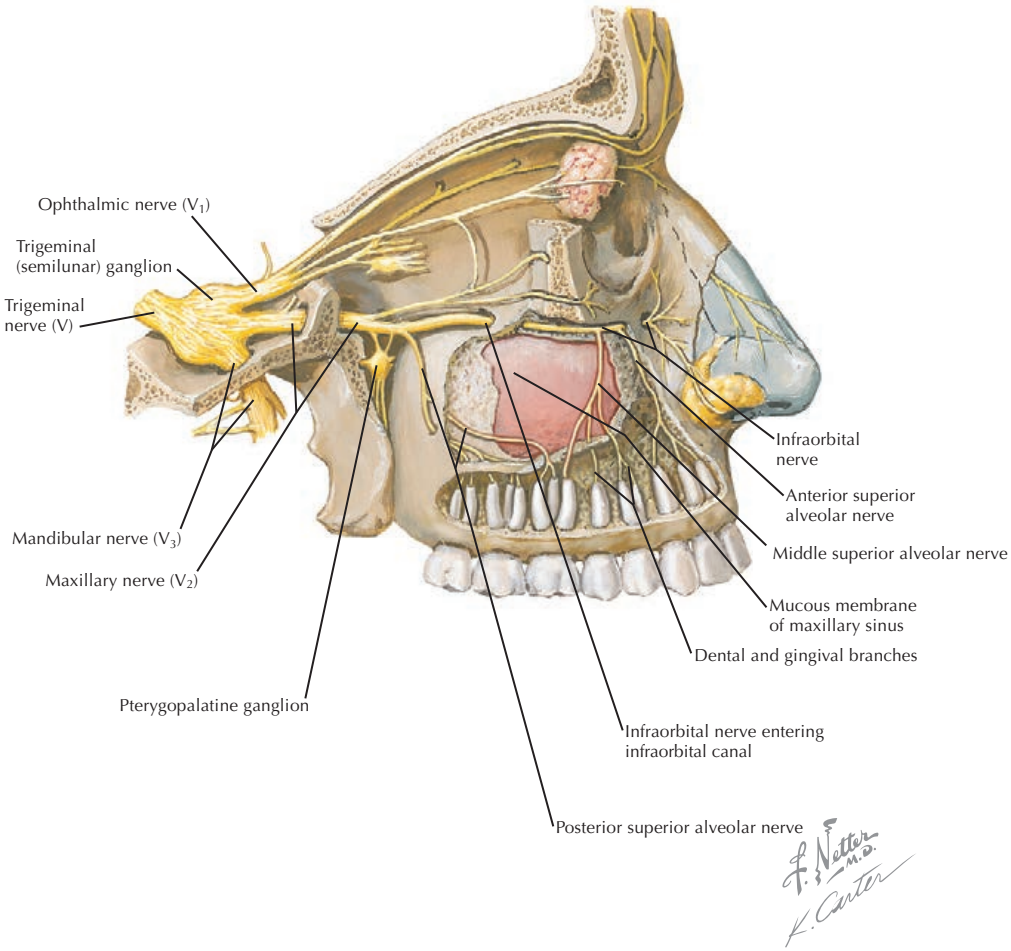


WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Maxillary Sinus

NERVE SUPPLY

Nerve	Source	Course
Anterior superior alveolar	Infraorbital n., which is the continuation of the maxillary division of the trigeminal n.	Branches from the infraorbital n. as it travels in the infraorbital canal As it descends to form the superior dental plexus, it innervates part of the maxillary sinus
Middle superior alveolar		When present, it branches from the infraorbital n. as it travels in the infraorbital canal As it descends to form the superior dental plexus, it innervates part of the maxillary sinus
Posterior superior alveolar	Maxillary division of the trigeminal n.	Arises in the pterygopalatine fossa Travels laterally through the pterygomaxillary fissure to enter the infratemporal fossa Enters the infratemporal surface of the maxilla As it descends to form the superior dental plexus, it innervates part of the maxillary sinus



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

12 Sphenoid Sinus

GENERAL INFORMATION

Two large, irregularly shaped cavities

Separated by an irregular septum

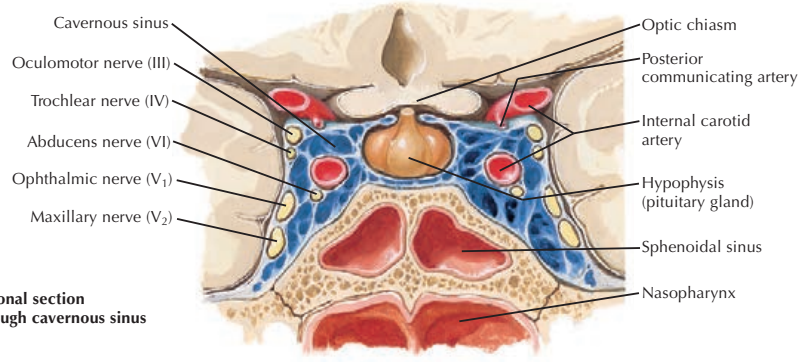
Primary lymphatic drainage is to the retropharyngeal lymph nodes

Relations of Sinus

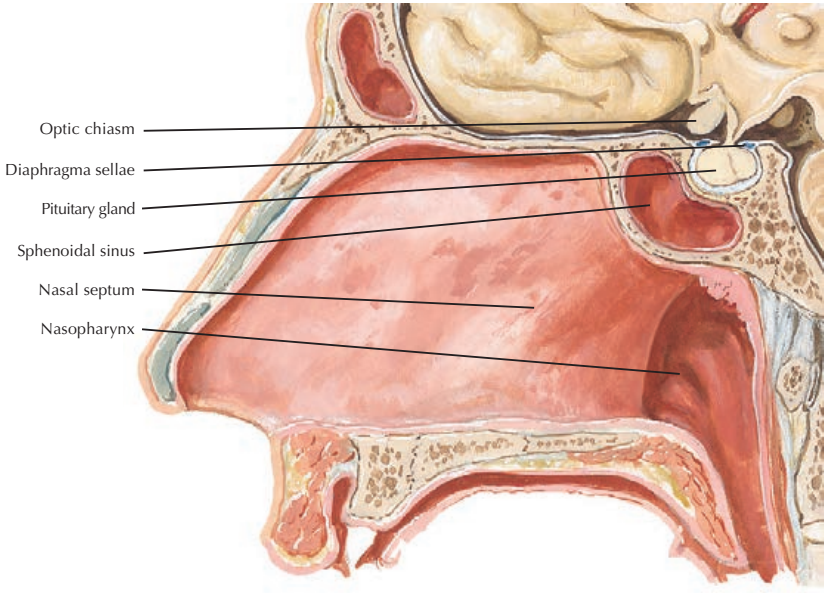
- *Superior:* hypophyseal fossa, pituitary gland, optic chiasm
- *Inferior:* nasopharynx, pterygoid canal
- *Medial:* other sphenoid bone
- *Lateral:* cavernous sinus, internal carotid artery, cranial nerves III, IV, V_1, V_2, and VI
- *Anterior:* nasal cavity

Location of Ostium

Sphenoethmoidal recess



Coronal section through cavernous sinus



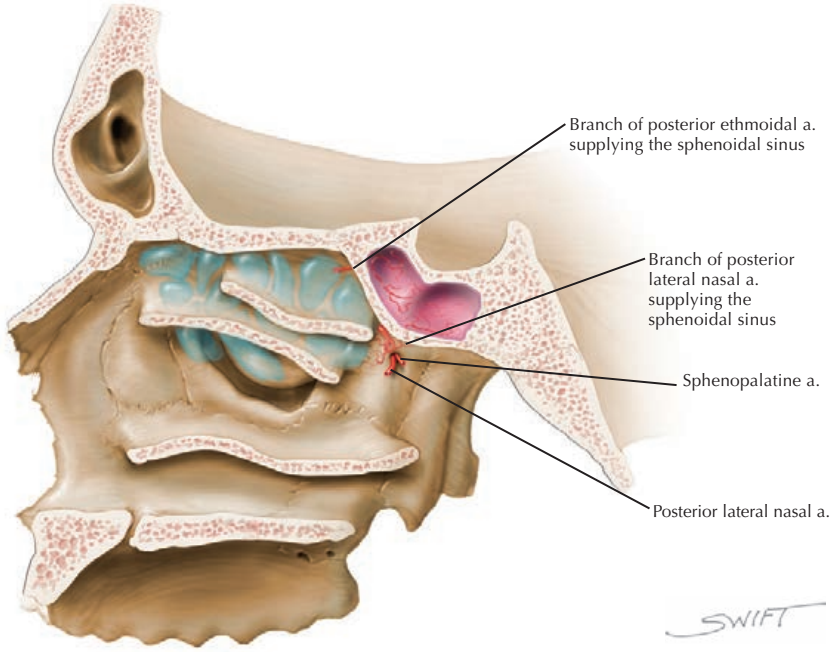
Anatomy and relations of the pituitary gland

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Sphenoid Sinus

ARTERIAL SUPPLY

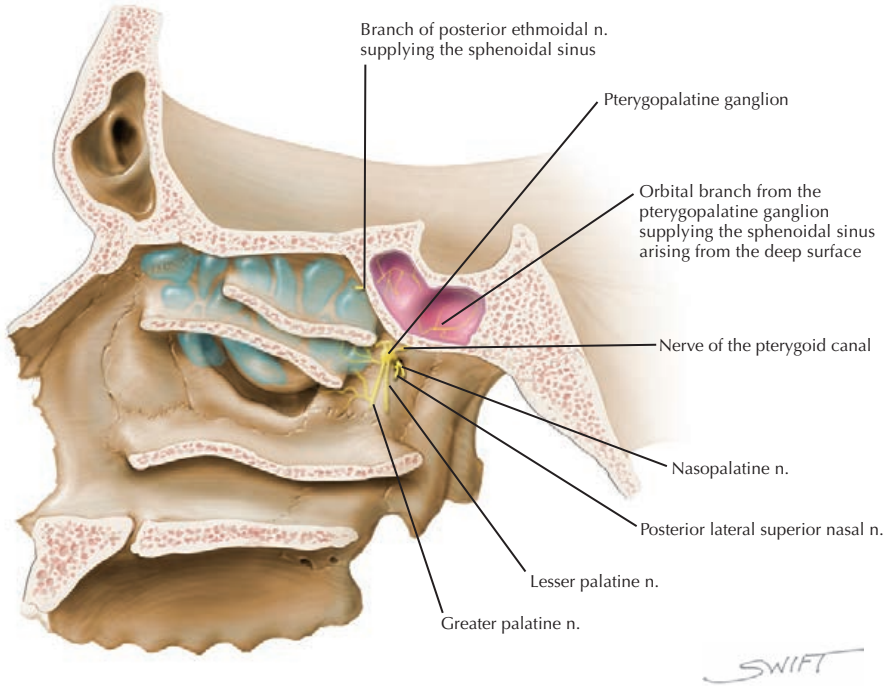
Artery	Source	Course
Posterior ethmoid	Ophthalmic a. (from the internal carotid a.)	Passes through the posterior ethmoid foramen to enter the canal There it supplies the sphenoid sinus and the posterior ethmoid air cells
Posterior lateral nasal branches	Sphenopalatine a. from the maxillary a. (from the external carotid a.)	These branches anastomose with the ethmoidal arteries to help supply the sphenoid sinus and the ethmoid air cells



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

NERVE SUPPLY

Nerve	Source	Course
Posterior ethmoid	Ophthalmic division of the trigeminal n.	A branch of the nasociliary n. that lies on the medial wall of the orbit Enters the posterior ethmoid foramen to supply the sphenoid sinus Also innervates the posterior ethmoid air cell at this location
Orbital branch from the pterygopalatine ganglion	Maxillary division of the trigeminal n.	Orbital branches arising from the pterygopalatine ganglion enter the orbit through the inferior orbital fissure Some of these branches supply the sphenoid sinus at this location



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Clinical Correlate

SINUSITIS

An inflammation of the membrane of the sinus cavities caused by infections (by bacteria or viruses) or noninfectious means (such as allergy)

2 types of sinusitis: acute and chronic

Common clinical manifestations include sinus congestion, discharge, pressure, face pain, headaches

Acute Sinusitis

The most common form of sinusitis

Typically caused by a cold that results in inflammation of the sinus membranes

Normally resolves in 1 to 2 weeks

Sometimes a secondary bacterial infection may settle in the passageways after a cold; bacteria normally located in the area (*Streptococcus pneumoniae* and *Haemophilus influenzae*) may then begin to increase, producing an acute bacterial sinusitis

Chronic Sinusitis

An infection of the sinuses that is present for longer than 1 month and requires longer-duration medical therapy

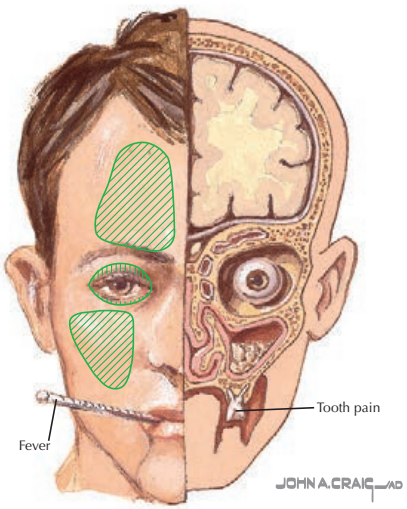
Typically either chronic bacterial sinusitis or chronic noninfectious sinusitis

Chronic bacterial sinusitis is treated with antibiotics

Chronic noninfectious sinusitis often is treated with steroids (topical or oral) and nasal washes

Locations

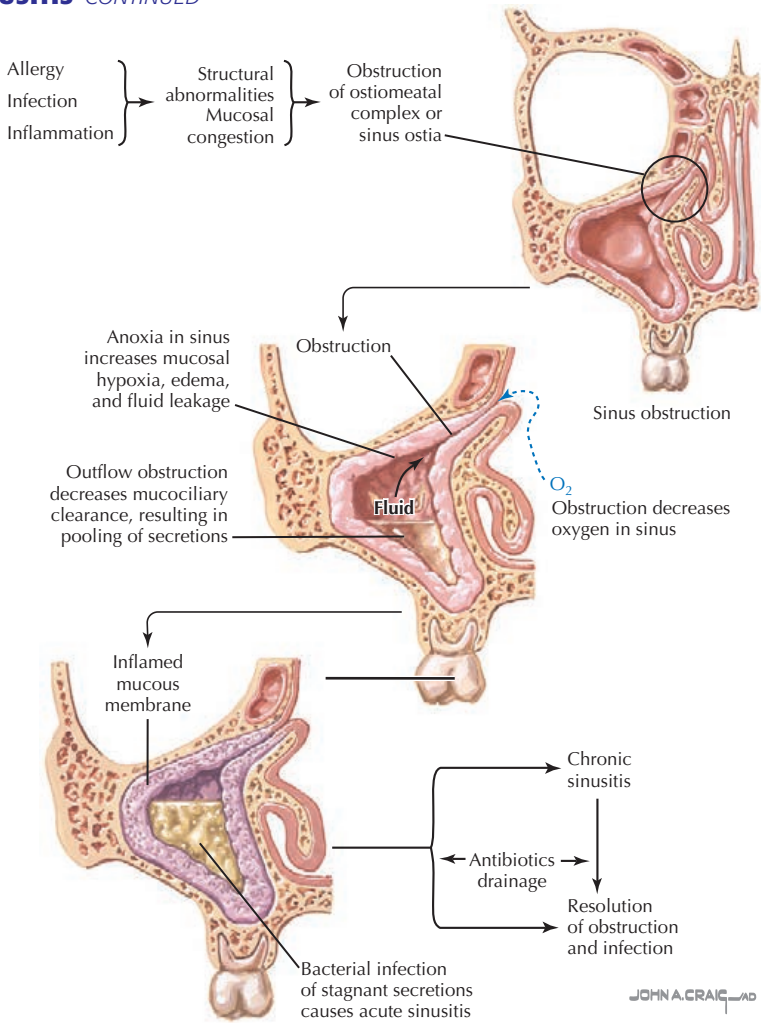
- Maxillary: the most common location for sinusitis; associated with all of the common signs and symptoms but also results in tooth pain, usually in the molar region
- Sphenoid: rare, but in this location can result in problems with the pituitary gland, cavernous sinus syndrome, and meningitis
- Frontal: usually associated with pain over the forehead and possibly fever; rare complications include osteomyelitis
- Ethmoid: potential complications include meningitis and orbital cellulitis

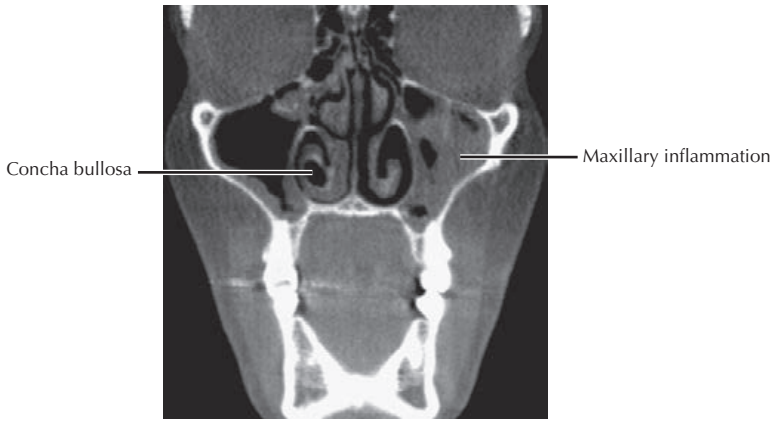


Areas of pain and tenderness (*green*). Pain caused by pressure in obstructed sinus

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

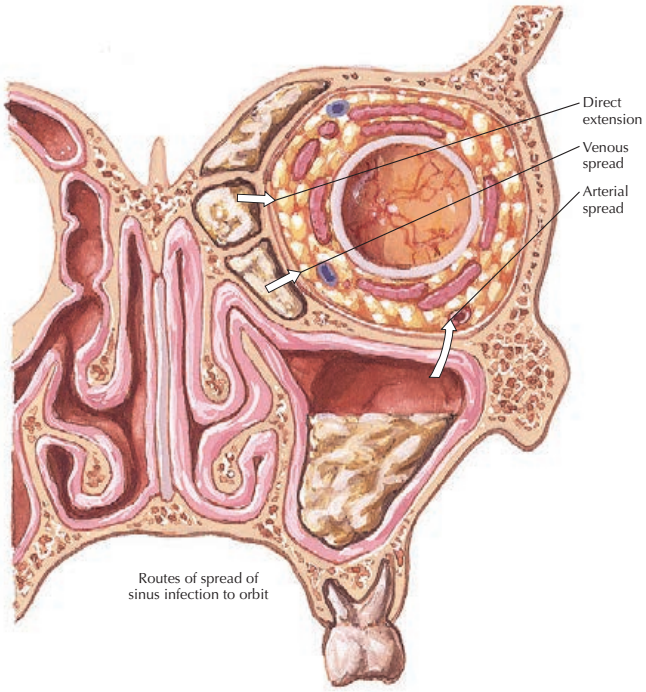
SINUSITIS *CONTINUED*



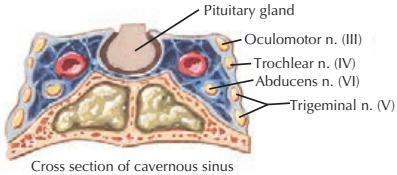


WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

POTENTIAL SPREAD OF INFECTION VIA THE PARANASAL SINUSES

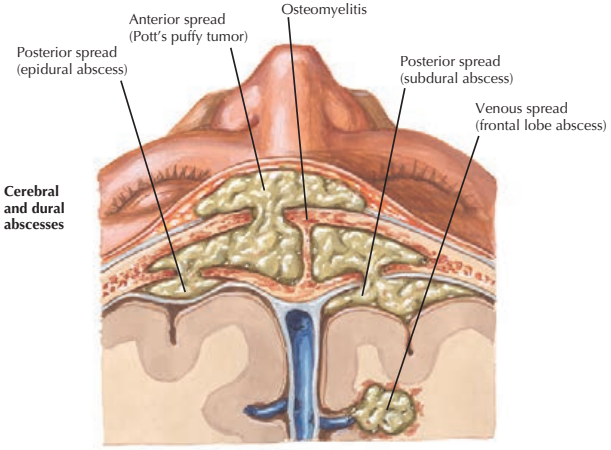


Routes of spread of sinus infection to orbit



Cross section of cavernous sinus

JOHN A. CRAIG, MD



Routes of intracranial spread of frontal sinusitis

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

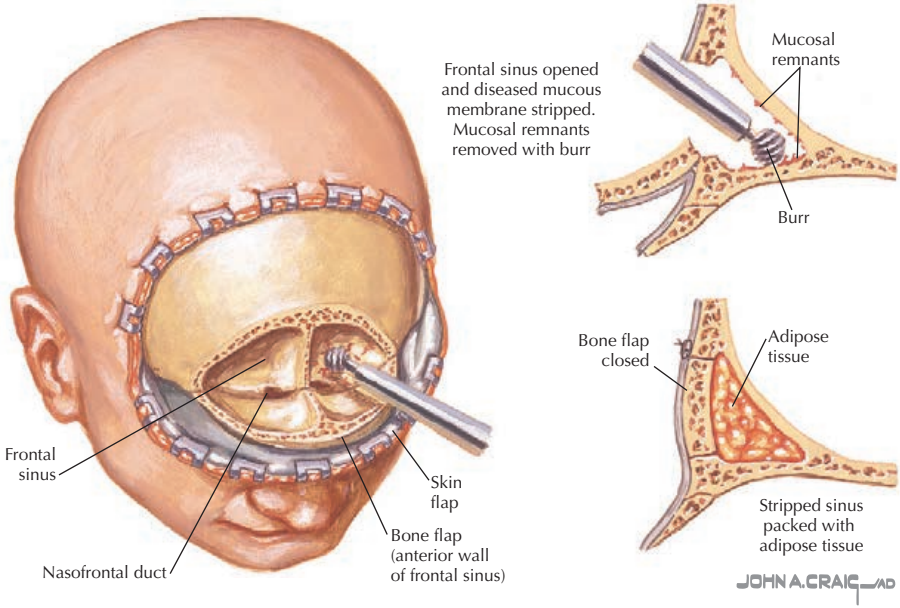
SURGICAL PROCEDURES

FRONTAL SINUS OBLITERATION

A procedure in which the frontal sinus is completely removed to treat problematic cases of frontal sinus infection, osteomyelitis, and trauma

Once the sinus is opened, all of the sinus membrane is removed with a burr; otherwise, any remaining membrane may form a mucocele

The remaining area often is filled with adipose tissue from the patient because it is thought to impede regrowth of the mucoperiosteum



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

SURGICAL PROCEDURES *CONTINUED*

CALDWELL-LUC PROCEDURE

This intraoral procedure allows direct entry into the maxillary sinus

Also provides access to the ethmoid sinus

The maxillary sinus is entered through the canine fossa above the maxillary premolar teeth

The maxillary antrum is opened, the sinus membrane is stripped, and an additional antrostomy is made between the maxillary sinus and the inferior meatus

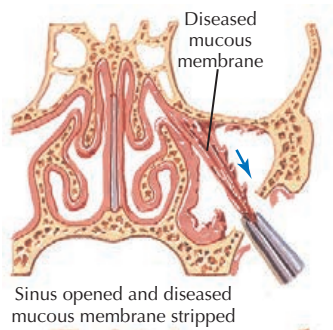
Conditions Treated

The antrostomy allows drainage of the maxillary sinus into the nasal cavity

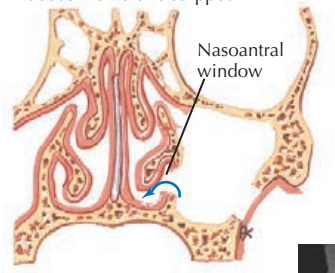
With the advent of functional endoscopic sinus surgery for antrostomies, the Caldwell-Luc procedure often is used for exposure and removal of tumors

Used to be commonly performed to treat chronic maxillary sinusitis

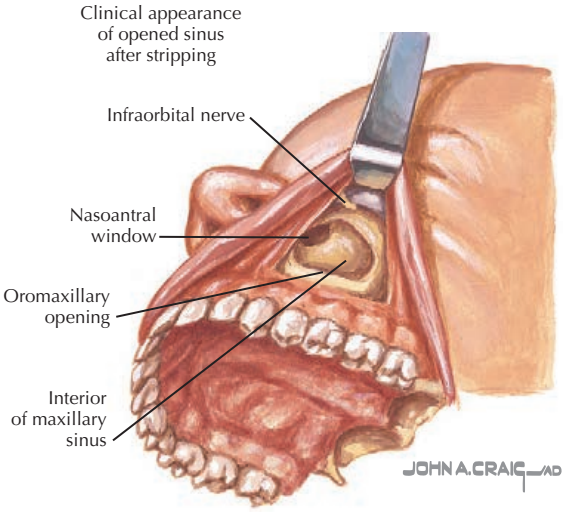
Was also used for procedures such as removal of benign tumors and foreign bodies, access to the pterygopalatine fossa, and closure of dental fistulas into the maxillary sinus

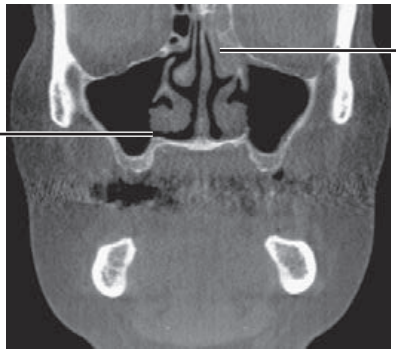


Sinus opened and diseased mucous membrane stripped



Nasoantral window created and oromaxillary opening closed





WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

SURGICAL PROCEDURES *CONTINUED*

MAXILLARY IMPLANTS

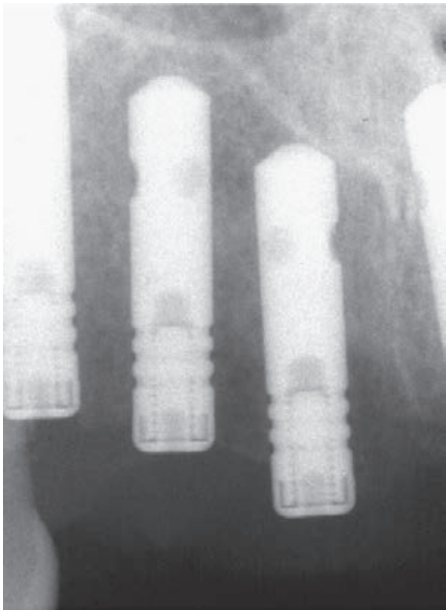
Common dental procedure to add fixed maxillary teeth to the oral cavity

Patient should be in relatively good health

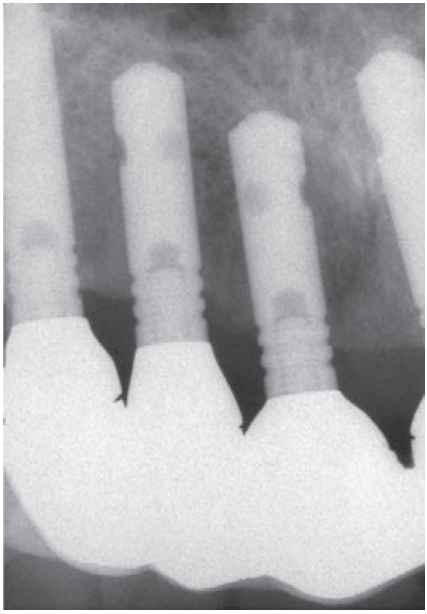
Patient must have sufficient bone in a location suitable for placing an implant

It is becoming more common to use bone grafting before the surgical implant is placed

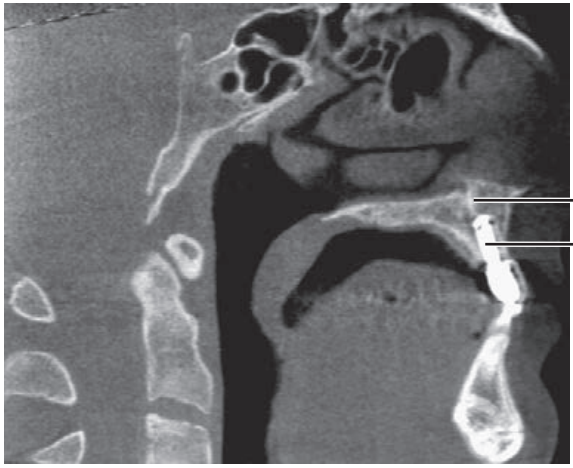
Bone grafts to provide adequate bed for implants may be harvested from the body or as allografts, or may be supplied as xenografts or synthetic bone substitutes



Maxillary implants before teeth are placed



Maxillary implants after teeth are placed on the implant



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

SURGICAL PROCEDURES *CONTINUED*

FUNCTIONAL ENDOSCOPIC SINUS SURGERY

Uses an endoscope inserted into the nose to view the nasal cavity and sinuses, thereby eliminating an external incision

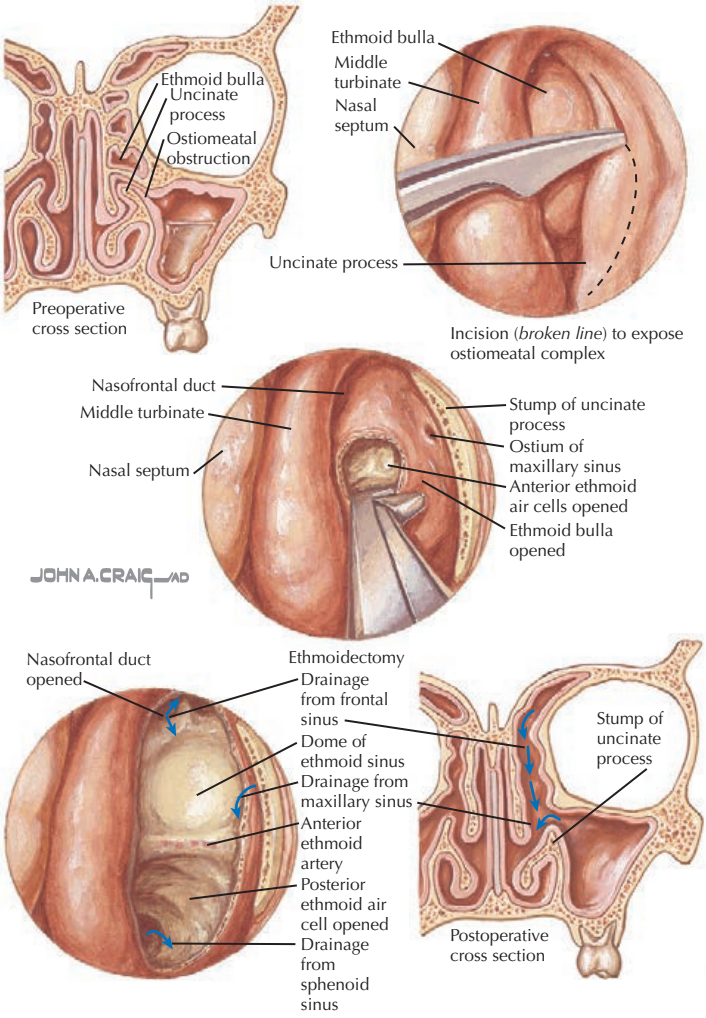
Often an outpatient procedure

Provides increased visualization of the area, making it easier to remove diseased tissue and leave a greater amount of normal tissue intact

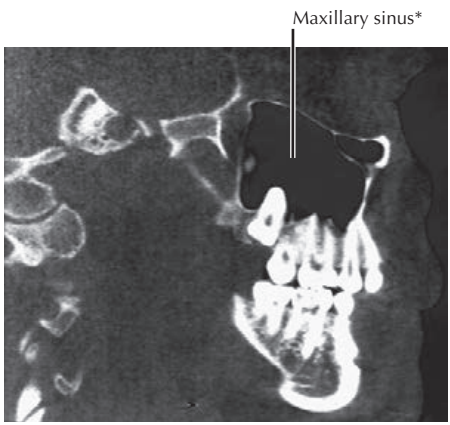
Standard surgical treatment for sinusitis for people whose chronic sinus problems do not respond to medical therapy

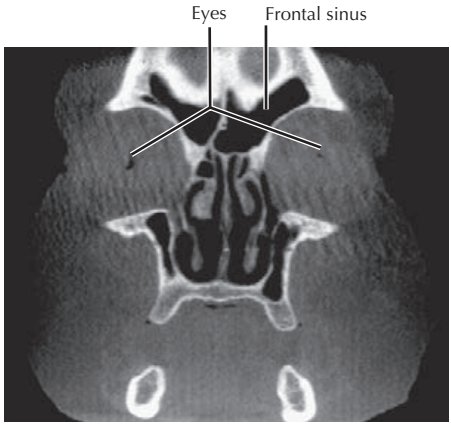
Also used for removal of polyps, mucoceles, tumors, and foreign bodies and for control of epistaxis

Functional Endoscopic Sinus Surgery

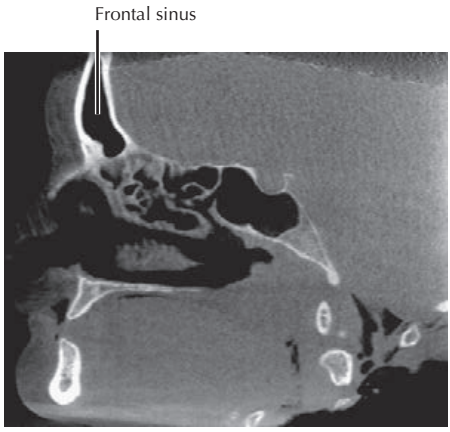


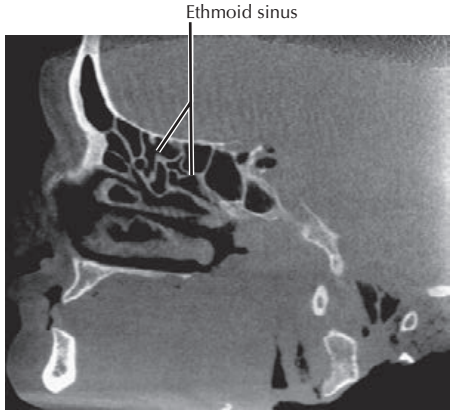
WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

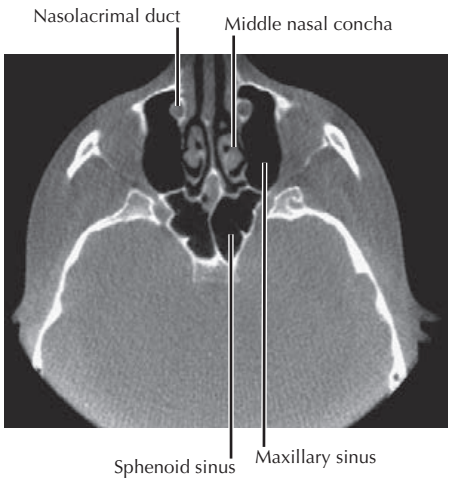




*Root of third maxillary molar protruding into sinus









WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

CHAPTER 13
ORAL CAVITY

Overview and Topographic Anatomy 326
External Anatomy 327
Boundaries of the Oral Cavity 332
Teeth 341
Vascular Supply of the Oral Cavity 352
Nerve Supply of the Oral Cavity 358
Salivary Glands 366
Clinical Correlates 372
Imaging 378

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

13 Overview and Topographic Anatomy

GENERAL INFORMATION

Oral cavity: the space located between the lips and cheeks on the external surface to the palatoglossal fold on the internal surface

The oral cavity is important in mastication, tasting, and talking

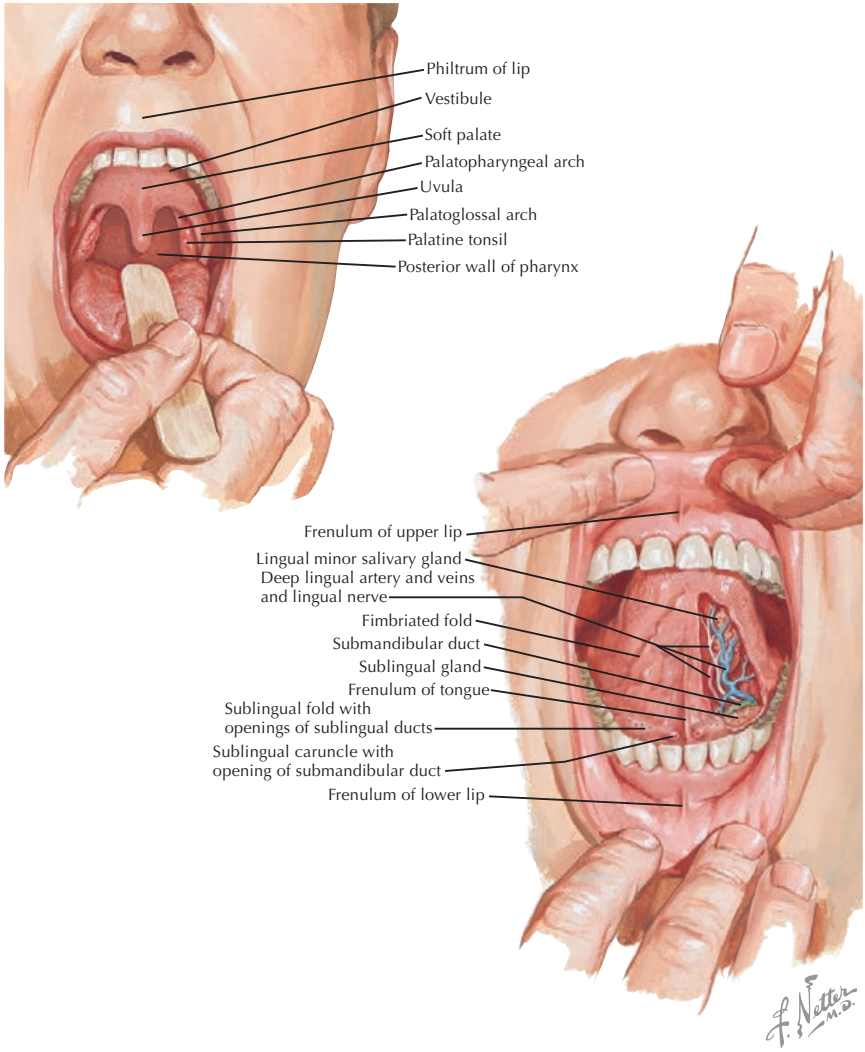
The area of the oral cavity can be divided into:
- Vestibule—the area between the teeth and lips or cheek
- Oral cavity proper—the area located internal to the teeth

Posteriorly, the oral cavity is continuous with the oropharynx

The hard palate and the soft palate are important boundaries within the oral cavity

The tongue is a major structure located on the oral cavity floor

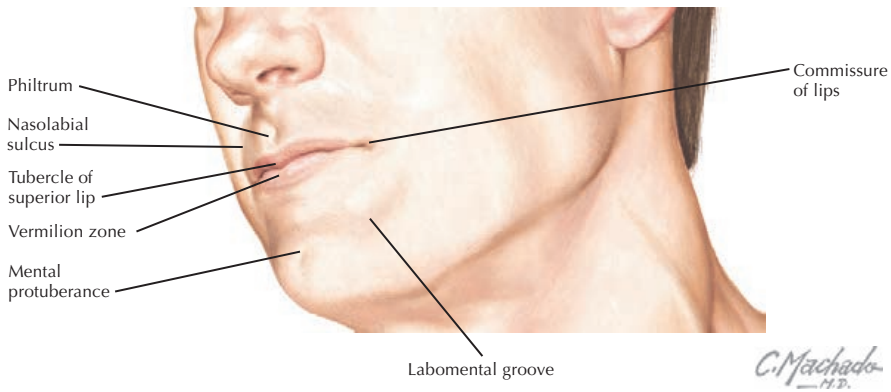
All of the major salivary glands—parotid, submandibular, and sublingual—drain into the oral cavity



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

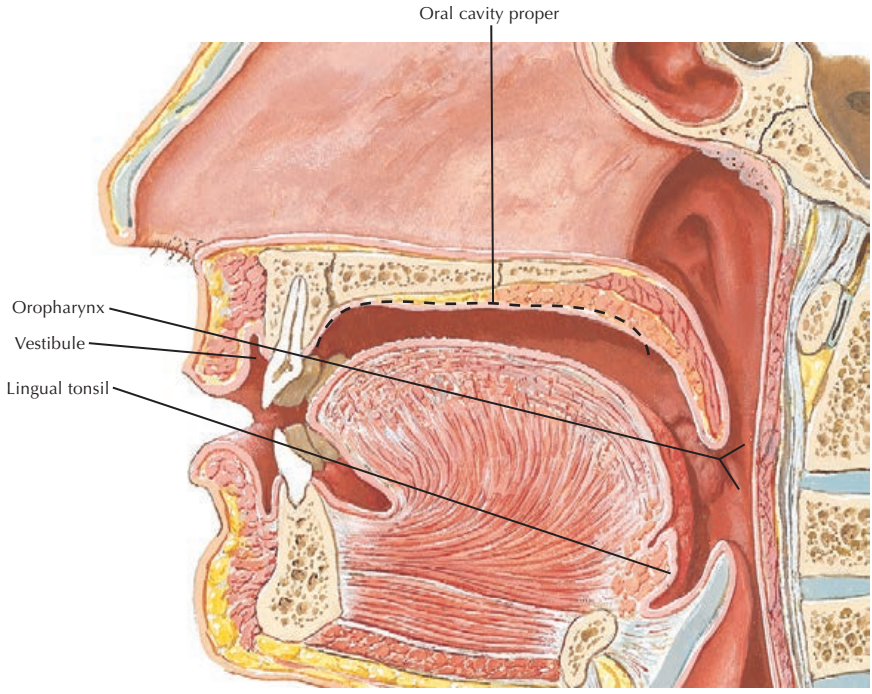
EXTERNAL FEATURES

Structure	Comments
Lips	Divided into an upper and a lower lip that surround the opening of the oral cavity Both lips have a muscular "skeleton" composed of the orbicularis oris m. Upper lip is separated from the cheek by the nasolabial groove Lower lip is separated from the chin by the labiomental groove Upper and lower lips meet at the labial commissures *Vermilion zone*—the red area of the lip that is clearly demarcated from the skin of the face at the vermilion border; also known as the red zone *Philtrum*—the depressed area located between the base of the nose and the vermilion border of the upper lip Many mucus-secreting labial glands are located within the submucosal layer of the lips at the area of transition to mucous membrane of the oral cavity, which is nonkeratinized stratified squamous epithelium *Vestibule*—the region between the lips and cheeks and the teeth The fold of tissue created by the vestibule between the lip and teeth is called the vestibular or mucolabial fold As the vestibular fold reflects on the alveolar bone holding the teeth, the mucous membrane abruptly changes into the gingiva Within the vestibular fold are bands of tissue known as labial frenula The labial frenula are pronounced at the maxillary and mandibular midline as the upper and lower frenula, respectively Other accessory frenula also are located in the vestibule
Cheek	Located between the labial commissure and the mucosa overlying the ramus of the mandible Has a muscular "skeleton" composed of the buccinator m. Many mucus-secreting glands, known as molar glands, are located within the submucosal layer of the inside of the cheeks, which is lined by mucous membrane of the oral cavity (nonkeratinized stratified squamous epithelium) Vestibule continues from the region between the lips and teeth posteriorly, to be located between the cheek and the teeth The fold of tissue created by the vestibule between the lip and the teeth is called the vestibular or mucobuccal fold The retromolar region is the only area in which the vestibule and the oral cavity proper communicate The parotid duct drains into the oral cavity at the parotid papilla, located along the mucous membrane of the cheek opposite the 2nd maxillary molar Fordyce's spots, ectopic sebaceous glands found in the mucosa of the cheeks appearing as yellowish spots, can be observed in the cheek



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

EXTERNAL FEATURES *CONTINUED*

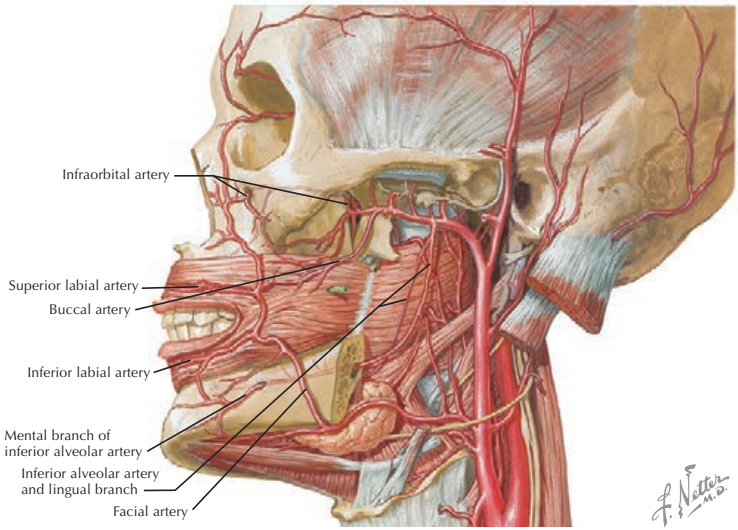


VASCULAR SUPPLY OF THE LIPS AND CHEEK

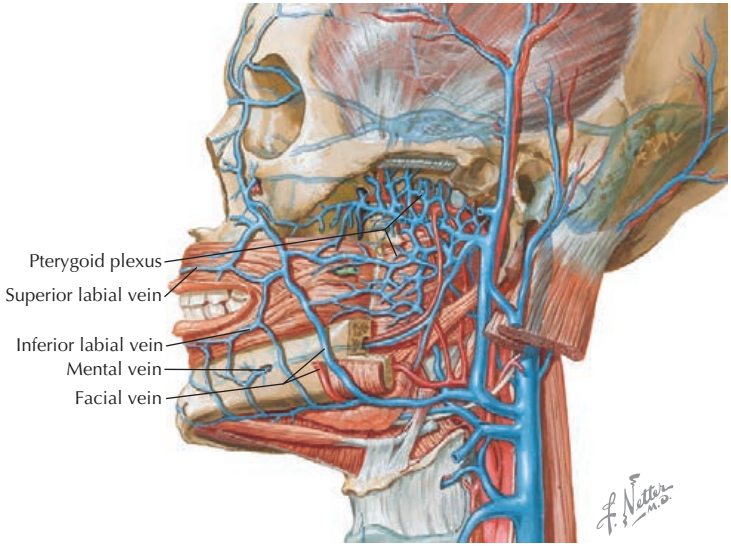
ARTERIAL SUPPLY		
Artery	**Source**	**Comments**
Superior labial branch of the facial	Facial a. off the external carotid a.	Supplies the structures associated with the upper lip Gives rise to the septal branch that travels to the nasal septum
Superior labial branch of the infraorbital	Infraorbital a. off the maxillary a.	A continuation of the 3rd part of the maxillary a. One of the 3 terminal branches of the infraorbital a., along with the inferior palpebral branch and the nasal branch Accompanied by the nerve and vein of the same name Helps supply the upper lip
Inferior labial branch of the facial	Facial a. off the external carotid a.	Supplies the structures associated with the lower lip
Mental	Inferior alveolar a.	A terminal branch from the inferior alveolar a., which arises from the 1st part of the maxillary a. Emerges from the mental foramen to supply the chin region
Buccal	Maxillary a.	A branch of the 2nd part of the maxillary a. A small artery that runs obliquely in an anterior direction between the medial pterygoid and the insertion of the temporalis m. until it reaches the outer surface of the buccinator m. to supply that muscle and the face

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

VASCULAR SUPPLY OF THE LIPS AND CHEEK *CONTINUED*



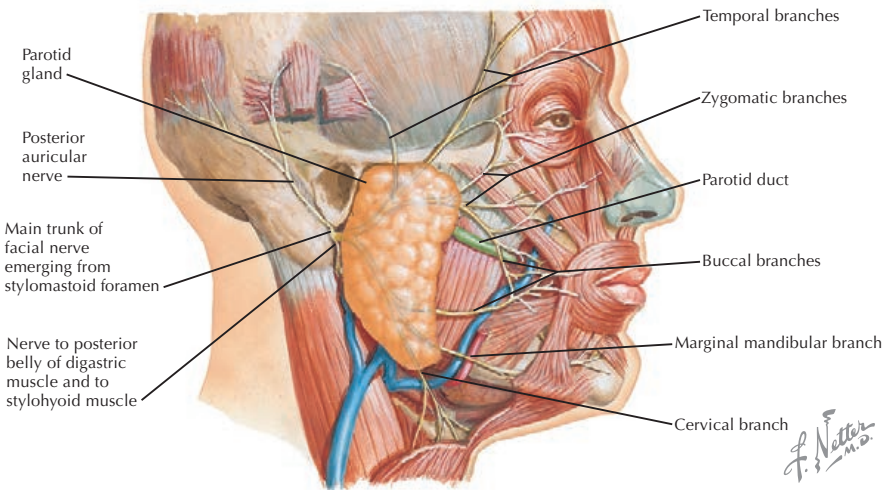
VENOUS DRAINAGE	
Vein	**Comments**
Superior labial branch of the facial	Drains the upper lip and joins the facial v.
Inferior labial branch of the facial	Drains the lower lip and joins the facial v.
Mental	Drains the chin and lower lip and joins the pterygoid plexus of veins
Buccal	Drains the cheek and joins the pterygoid plexus of veins



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

NERVE SUPPLY

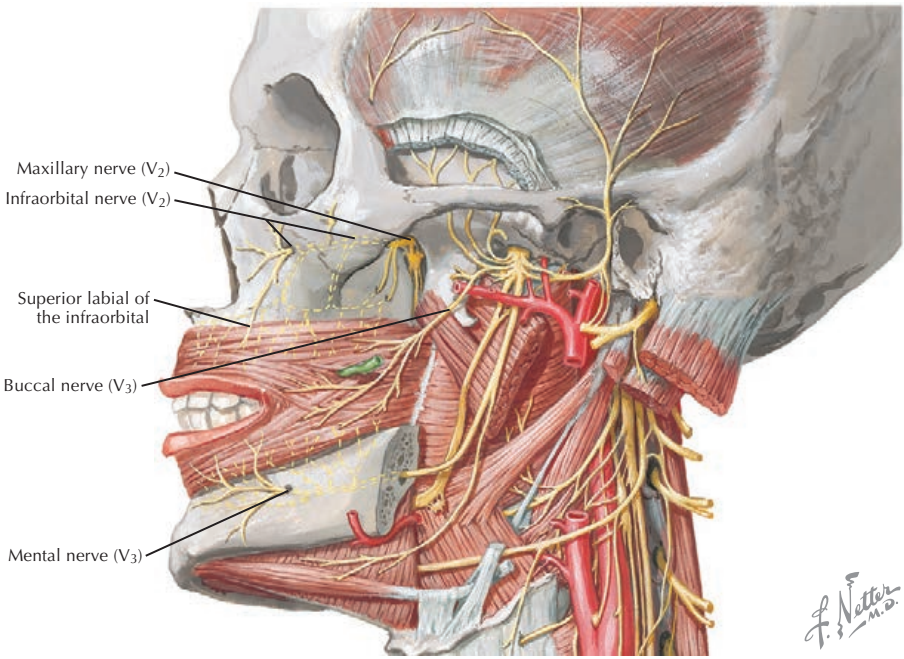
MOTOR INNERVATION		
Nerve	**Source**	**Course**
All muscles of facial expression are innervated by the facial n.		
Buccal branch of the facial	Facial n.	Arise from both the temporofacial and cervicofacial trunks of the facial n. These branches supply the muscles along the muscular part of the cheek, including the buccinator and the orbicularis oris mm.
Mandibular branch of the facial		Arises from the cervicofacial trunk and passes anteriorly, supplying the muscles of the lower lip and chin, including the orbicularis oris m.



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

NERVE SUPPLY *CONTINUED*

SENSORY INNERVATION		
Nerve	**Source**	**Course**
All sensory innervation to the skin of this region is supplied by the trigeminal n.		
Superior labial branch of the infraorbital	Infraorbital n. (a continuation of the maxillary division of the trigeminal n.)	One of the 3 terminal branches of the infraorbital n., along with the inferior palpebral and the nasal, as it exits onto the face via the infraorbital foramen Supplies the skin of the upper lip
Mental	Inferior alveolar n.	1 of the 2 terminal branches of the inferior alveolar n. Emerges through the mental foramen of the mandible in the region of the 2nd mandibular premolar Supplies the skin of the lower lip, chin, and facial gingiva as far posteriorly as the 2nd mandibular premolar
Buccal branch of the mandibular division of the trigeminal	Mandibular division of the trigeminal n.	Passes anteriorly between the 2 heads of the lateral pterygoid m. Descends inferiorly along the lower part of the temporalis m. to emerge from deep to the anterior border of the masseter m. Supplies the skin over the buccinator m. before passing through it to supply the mucous membrane lining its inner surface and the gingiva along the mandibular molars

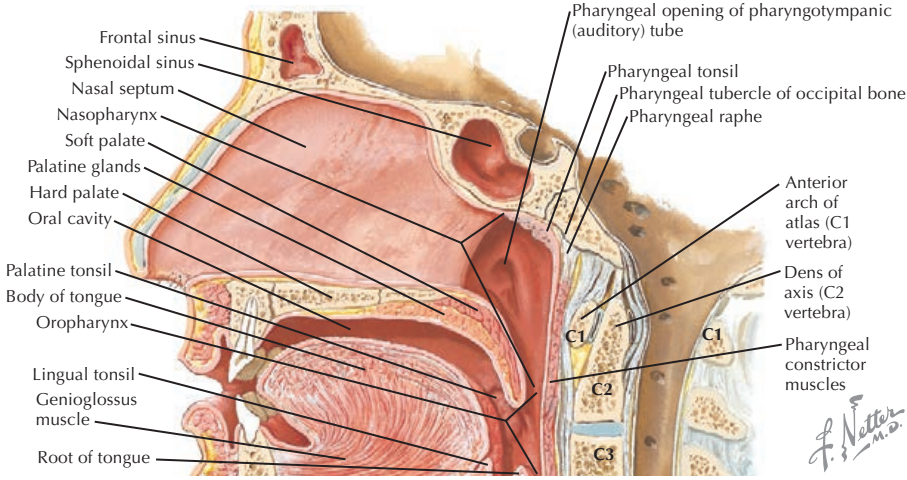


WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

13 Boundaries of the Oral Cavity

GENERAL INFORMATION

Boundary	Structure
Superior	The roof is the hard palate
Posterosuperior	Soft palate
Lateral	Cheeks
Inferior	The floor is located along the lingual border of the mandible forming a horseshoe-shaped region



SUPERIOR BORDER: HARD PALATE

The superior border (or roof) of the oral cavity is the hard palate, comprising the anterior 2/3 of the entire palate

Separates the oral cavity from the nasal cavity

Composed of:
- Palatal process of the maxilla
- Horizontal process of the palatine

In the anterior midline, an incisive foramen is located on the right and left sides that transmits the terminal branches of the nasopalatine nerve and sphenopalatine vessels

In the posterolateral region of the hard palate, the greater and lesser palatine foramina are located on the right and left sides; these openings transmit the greater and lesser palatine nn. and vessels

The bones of the hard palate are covered by a thick mucous membrane

The mucous membrane has a small elevation in the anterior midline called the incisive papilla that overlies the incisive foramen

Moving posteriorly from the incisive papilla, the mucous membrane has a thick midline palatal raphe

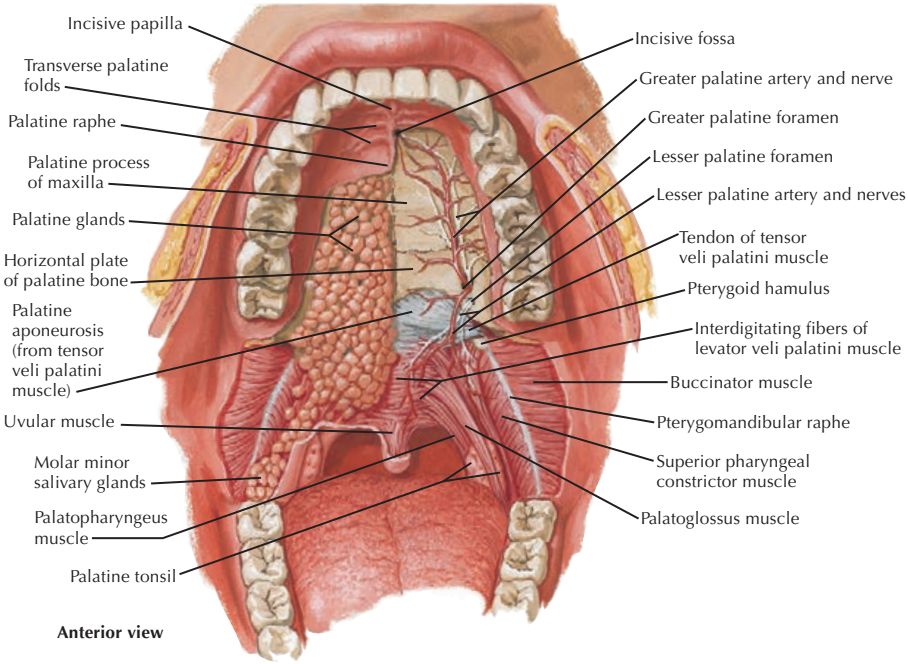
Lateral transverse ridges called transverse rugae (plicae) are located along the mucous membrane of the hard palate

Deep to the mucous membrane of the hard palate are numerous mucus-secreting glands called palatal glands

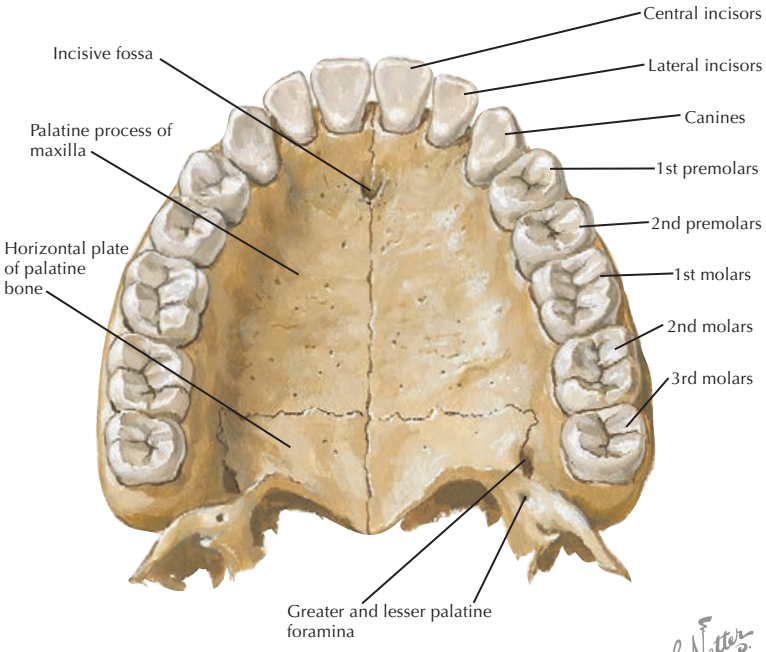
WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Boundaries of the Oral Cavity

SUPERIOR BORDER: HARD PALATE *CONTINUED*



Anterior view



Upper permanent teeth

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

POSTEROSUPERIOR BORDER: SOFT PALATE

The posterosuperior border of the oral cavity is the soft palate

The soft palate is the continuation of the palate posteriorly and makes up approximately 1/3 of the entire palate

The soft palate separates the oral cavity from the nasopharynx

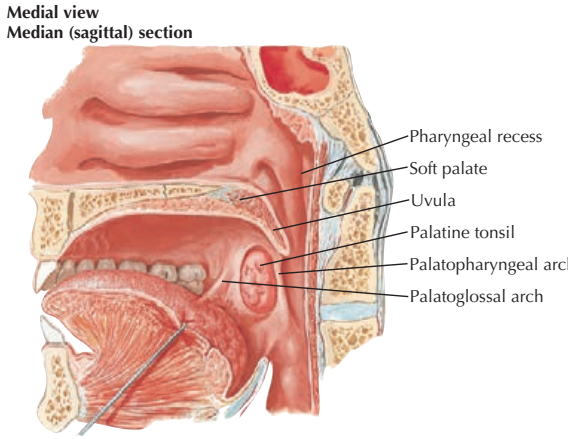
An abundance of mucus-secreting palatal glands, which are continuous with the hard palate, are located in the soft palate

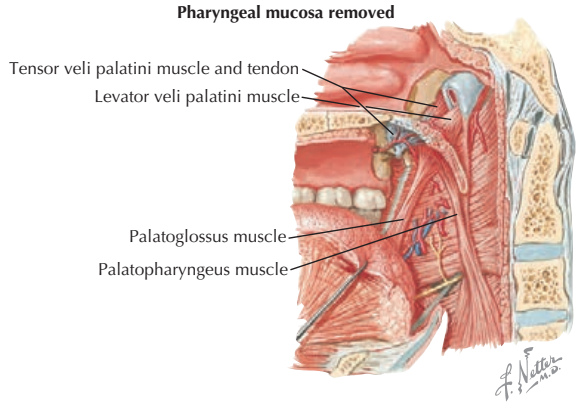
The soft palate has 3 margins:
- Anteriorly, it is continuous with the hard palate at the vibrating line
- Posterolaterally, it forms the superior portion of the palatoglossal and palatopharyngeal folds
- Posteriorly, the uvula hangs in the center of the posterior free margin

The thick palatine aponeurosis forms the foundation of the soft palate

The soft palate is composed of 5 muscles:
- Musculus uvulae
- Tensor veli palatini
- Levator veli palatini
- Palatopharyngeus
- Palatoglossus (sometimes considered in the grouping of tongue muscles)

The soft palate helps close off the nasopharynx during deglutition by forming a seal at the fold of Passavant





WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

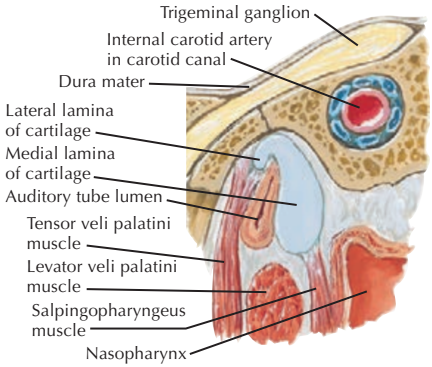
POSTEROSUPERIOR BORDER: SOFT PALATE *CONTINUED*

MUSCLES OF THE SOFT PALATE					
Muscle	**Origin**	**Insertion**	**Actions**	**Nerve Supply**	**Comment**
Tensor veli palatini	Cartilaginous part of the auditory tube Scaphoid fossa of the sphenoid	Palatine aponeurosis	Pulls the soft palate laterally, which broadens it	A muscular branch from the mandibular division of the trigeminal n.	The tendon of the tensor veli palatini m. wraps around the pterygoid hamulus
Musculus uvulae	Posterior nasal spine Palatine aponeurosis	Fibers insert into the muscle of the opposite side	Elevates uvula Pulls uvula laterally	Pharyngeal plexus (motor portion from the vagus n. and cranial part of the accessory nn.)	May be bifid
Levator veli palatini	Cartilaginous portion of the auditory tube Petrous portion of the temporal bone	Palatine aponeurosis Fibers also insert into the muscle of the opposite side	Elevates soft palate Pulls soft palate posteriorly, which acts to help close the nasopharynx		The levator veli palatini m. passes through an aperture superior to the superior constrictor m.
Palatopharyngeus	Posterior border of hard palate Palatine aponeurosis	Posterior border of the lamina of the thyroid cartilage	Elevates the pharynx and larynx Acts to help close the nasopharynx		Grouped either with soft palate muscles or with muscles of the pharynx
Palatoglossus	Palatine aponeurosis	Side of the tongue where the fibers mix with the intrinsic muscles of the tongue	Elevates the tongue Narrows the oropharyngeal isthmus for deglutition		Grouped either with extrinsic muscles of the tongue or with muscles of the soft palate

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

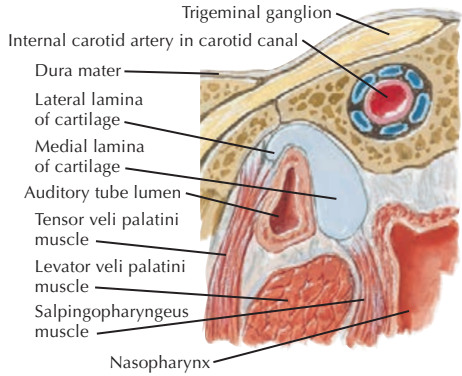
POSTEROSUPERIOR BORDER: SOFT PALATE *CONTINUED*

Section through cartilaginous part of pharyngotympanic (auditory) tube, with tube closed

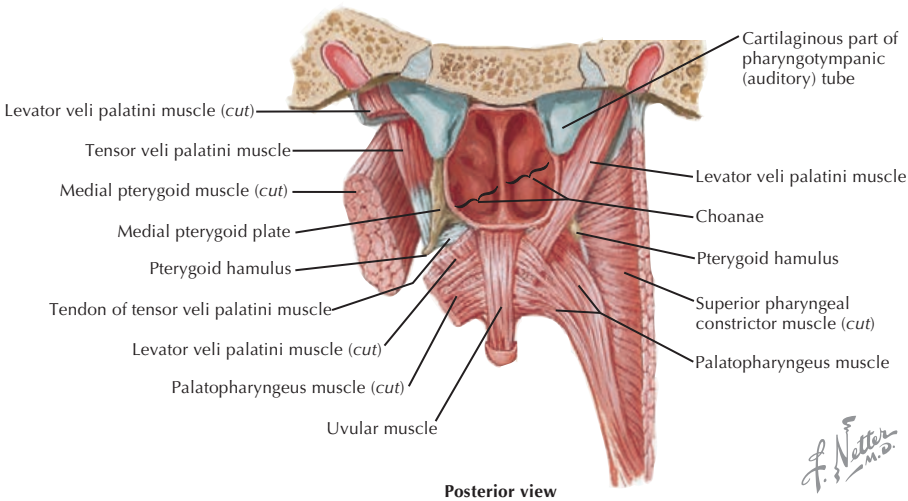


Pharyngotympanic (auditory) tube closed by elastic recoil of cartilage, tissue turgidity and tension of salpingopharyngeus muscles

Section through cartilaginous part of pharyngotympanic (auditory) tube, with tube open



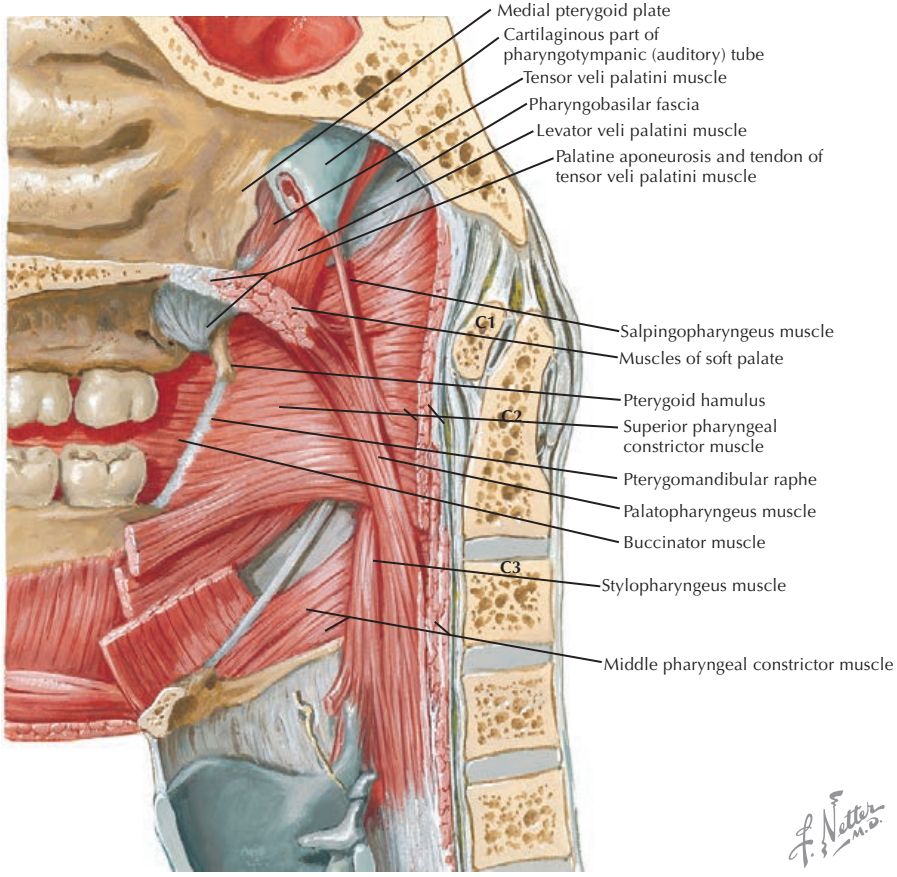
Lumen opened chiefly when attachment of tensor veli palatini muscle pulls wall of tube laterally during swallowing



Posterior view

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

POSTEROSUPERIOR BORDER: SOFT PALATE *CONTINUED*



LATERAL BORDER: CHEEK

The lateral border of the oral cavity extends anteriorly from the labial commissure, posteriorly to the ramus of the mandible

Superior limit of the cheek is the maxillary vestibule; inferior limit is the mandibular vestibule

Mucous membrane of the cheek is stratified squamous epithelium

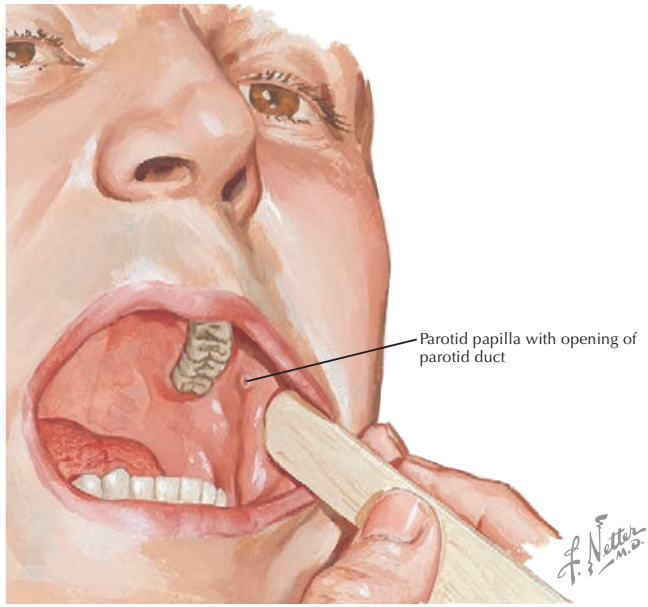
Fordyce's spots are ectopic sebaceous glands that may be observed on the inner surface of the cheek

Parotid papilla is located in the cheek opposite the maxillary 2nd molar

Pterygomandibular raphe is located in the posterior portion and serves as a landmark for the pterygomandibular space

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

LATERAL BORDER: CHEEK *CONTINUED*



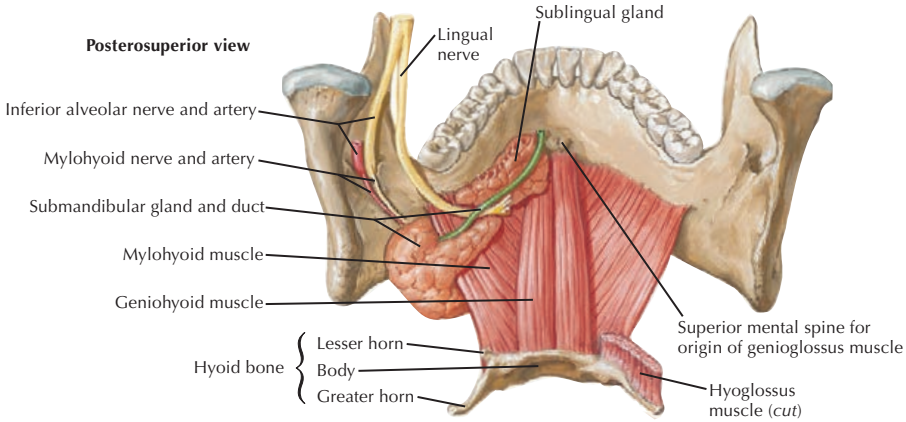
INFERIOR BORDER: FLOOR OF THE ORAL CAVITY

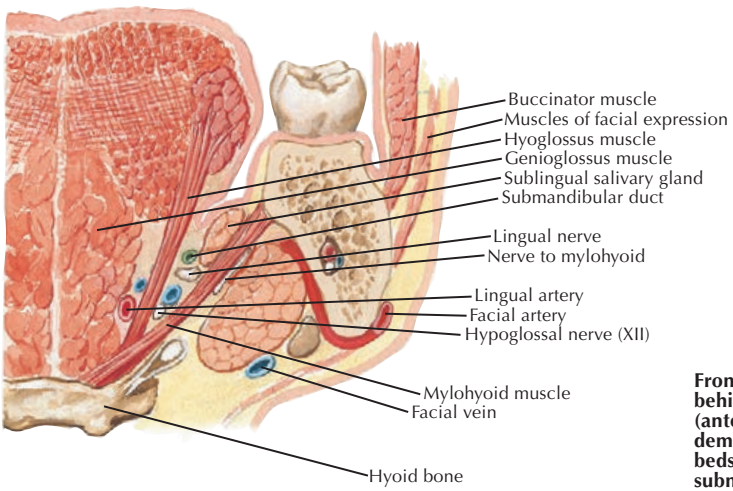
Structure	Comments
Floor	Inferior border of the oral cavity Located along the lingual border of the mandible forming a horseshoe-shaped region
Tongue	Largest structure in the floor
Lingual frenulum	A midline fold of tissue located at the base of the tongue and extends along the inferior surface of the tongue
Mucous membrane	Stratified squamous epithelium that extends from the tongue to the mandible
Sublingual papilla	A swelling located on both sides of the lingual frenulum at the base of the tongue Marks the entrance of the saliva from the submandibular glands into the oral cavity Continuous with the sublingual folds overlying the sublingual glands on the floor of the oral cavity
Submandibular duct	Lies along the sublingual gland
Lingual n.	Crosses the submandibular duct passing lateral, inferior, and medial to the duct to reach the tongue
Plica fimbriata	Fimbriated folds located lateral to the lingual frenulum
Mylohyoid m.	Forms the muscular sling of the floor of the oral cavity Passes from the mylohyoid line of the mandible to the opposite mylohyoid m. in the midline at the mylohyoid raphe and attaches posteriorly to the hyoid bone
Geniohyoid mm.	Lie superior to the mylohyoid mm. Attach from the inferior genial tubercles of the mandible to the hyoid bone

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

INFERIOR BORDER: FLOOR OF THE ORAL CAVITY *CONTINUED*

MUSCLES OF THE FLOOR OF THE ORAL CAVITY					
Muscle	**Origin**	**Insertion**	**Actions**	**Nerve Supply**	**Comment**
Mylohyoid	Mylohyoid line of the mandible	Symphysis menti Mylohyoid raphe Body of the hyoid bone	Raises the floor of the oral cavity Can elevate the hyoid bone	Mylohyoid n. from the inferior alveolar branch of the mandibular division of the trigeminal n.	Forms the sling of the oral cavity
Geniohyoid	Inferior genial tubercle	Body of the hyoid bone	Elevates the hyoid bone	C1 ventral ramus, which follows the hypoglossal n.	Superior to the mylohyoid m.

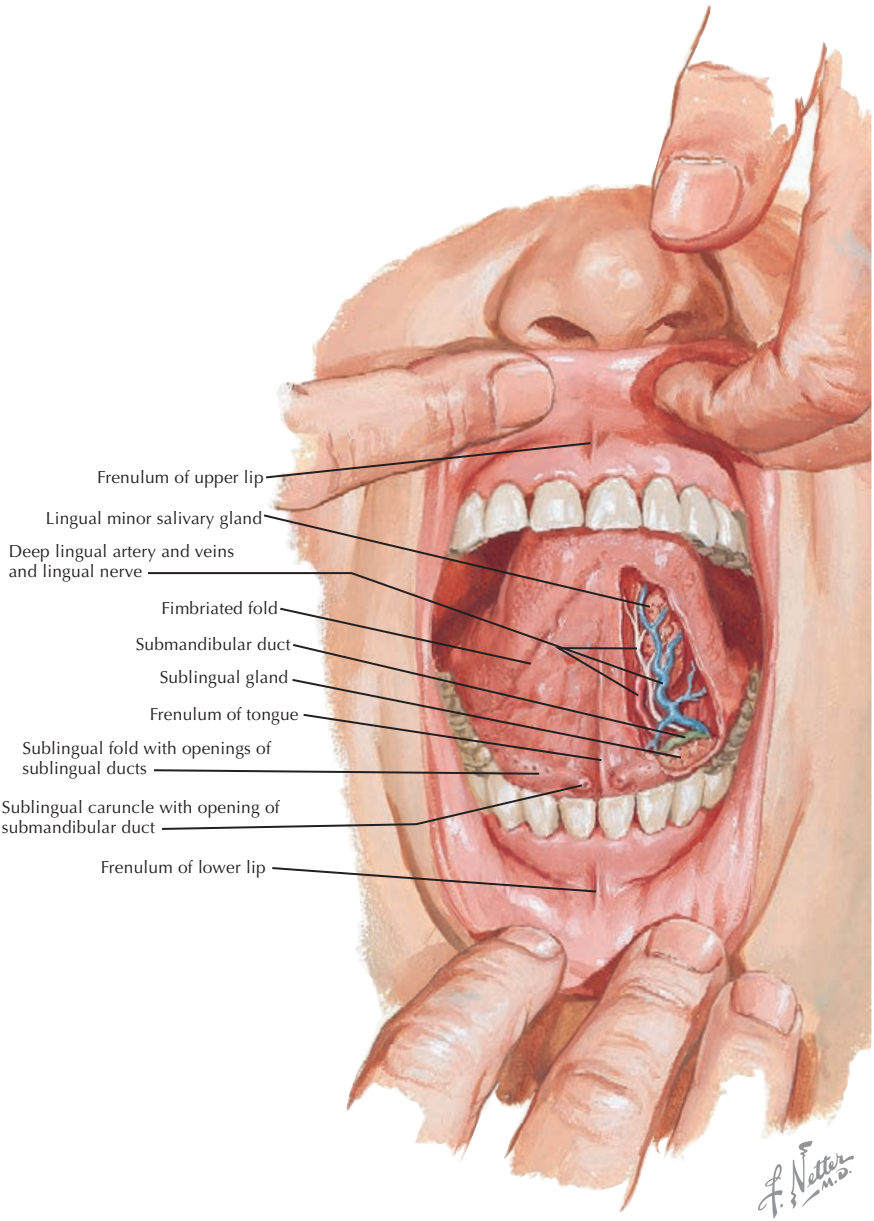




Frontal section behind 1st molar tooth (anterior view) demonstrating beds of sublingual and submandibular glands

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

INFERIOR BORDER: FLOOR OF THE ORAL CAVITY *CONTINUED*



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Teeth

GENERAL INFORMATION

Teeth are hard structures attached to the jaws and involved primarily in eating

2 arches contain the teeth:
- Maxillary arch
- Mandibular arch

Humans have 2 sets of teeth during a lifetime:
- Deciduous teeth—the primary dentition
- Permanent teeth—the secondary dentition

Between the ages of 6 and 12 years, there is a mixed dentition, in which both primary and permanent teeth are present in the oral cavity at the same time

Deciduous Teeth

There are 20 total deciduous teeth: 2 incisors, 1 canine, and 2 molars in each of the 4 quadrants of the oral cavity

The primary dentition is represented by the formula $I\frac{2}{2}C\frac{1}{1}M\frac{2}{2}$, which specifies the total number of teeth (10) on each side of the oral cavity

No deciduous teeth are present at birth; however, by the 3rd year of life, all 20 deciduous teeth have erupted

Permanent Teeth

There are 32 total permanent teeth: 2 incisors, 1 canine, 2 premolars, and 3 molars in each of the 4 quadrants of the oral cavity

The permanent dentition is represented by the formula $I\frac{2}{2}C\frac{1}{1}P\frac{2}{2}M\frac{3}{3}$, which specifies the total number of teeth (16) on each side of the oral cavity

The first permanent tooth to erupt into the oral cavity normally is the mandibular 1st molar
- This eruption occurs at about 6 years of age
- It erupts distal to the primary dentition

The primary teeth eventually are replaced by the permanent teeth

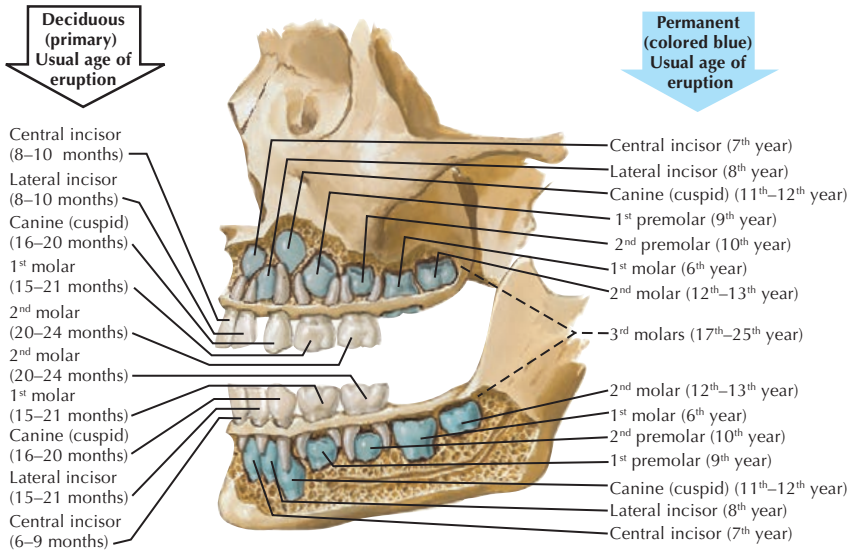
The replacement teeth are termed succedaneous teeth

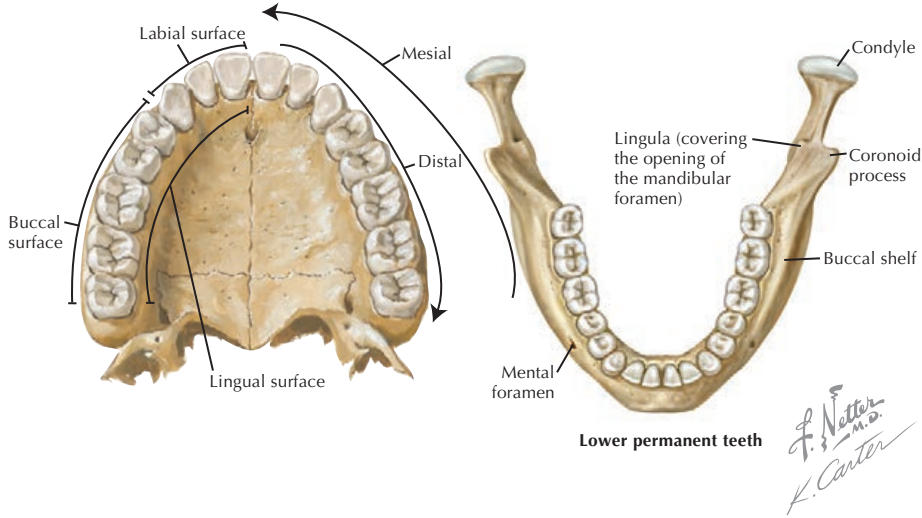
SURFACES OF A TOOTH

Labial	The surface of the anterior teeth that is closest to the lip
Buccal	The surface of the posterior teeth that is closest to the cheek
Facial	Used as a synonym for labial or buccal
Lingual	Opposite the tongue in the mandibular arch and opposite the hard palate of the maxillary arch
Mesial	Closest to the midline of the dental arch
Distal	Farthest from the midline of the dental arch
Occlusal	Used for chewing in posterior teeth
Incisal	The cutting edge of anterior teeth

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

SURFACES OF A TOOTH *CONTINUED*





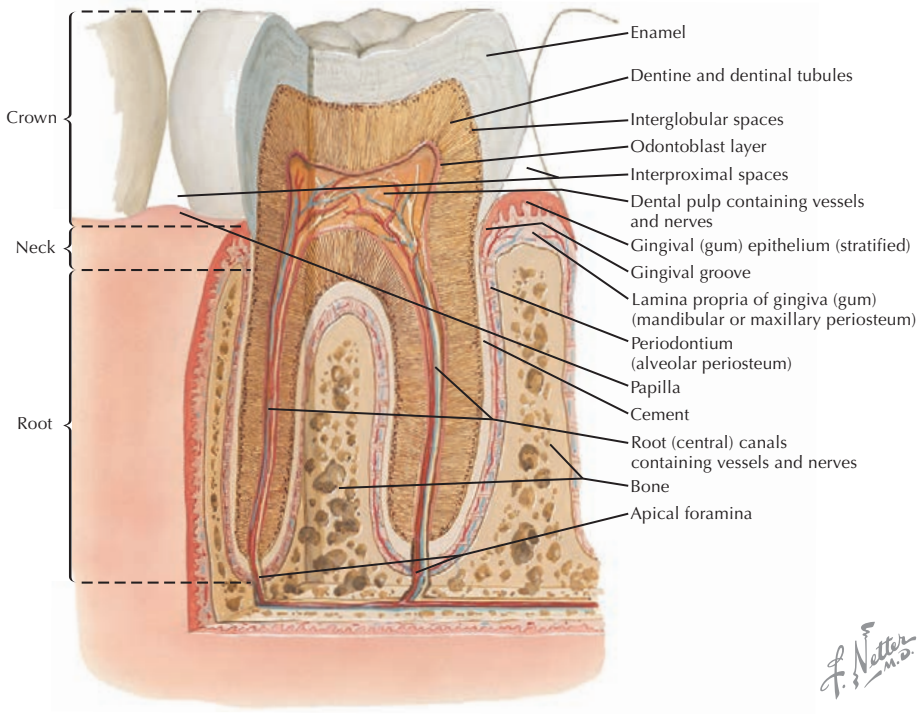
BASIC ANATOMY OF A TOOTH

Crown	*Anatomic crown*: the portion of the tooth that has a surface of enamel *Clinical crown*: the portion of the tooth that is exposed within the oral cavity
Root	*Anatomic root*: the portion of the tooth that has a surface of cementum *Clinical root*: the portion of the tooth that is entrenched within the maxilla or mandible and is not exposed to the oral cavity
Apex of the root	The end tip of the root, which also is the location of a small aperture at the point of each root, which provides an entrance for the neurovascular connective tissue into the pulp cavity

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

BASIC ANATOMY OF A TOOTH *CONTINUED*

Cervical line	The anatomic demarcation between the crown and the root It often is termed the cementoenamel junction (CEJ)
Enamel	The hard, shiny surface of the anatomic crown The hardest portion of the tooth Made of small hexagonal rods, called enamel prisms, that are parallel to one another
Cementum	A thin, dull layer on the surface of the anatomic root Similar in structure and chemical composition to bone With age, cementum increases in thickness
Dentin	The hard tissue that underlies both the enamel and cementum and constitutes the major portion of the tooth A modification of osseous tissue Composed of a number of dental tubules (small wavy and branching tubes) that are located in a dense matrix
Cusp	An elevation on the occlusal surface of molars and premolars that makes up a divisional part of the tooth The incisal edge of canines is referred to as a cusp and is used for prehension (grasping and tearing) of food
Pulp cavity	Contains the dental pulp (highly neurovascular connective tissue) Separated into the *pulp chamber*, located in the coronal portion of the tooth, and the *pulp canal*, located in the root portion of the tooth
Cingulum	A convex elevation that is located on the lingual surface of the crowns of anterior teeth just incisal to the CEJ



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

TYPES OF TEETH IN THE PERMANENT DENTITION

MAXILLARY INCISORS				
Tooth	**Crown**	**Surfaces**	**Root(s)**	**Comments**
Central incisor	The widest of all of the anterior teeth, nearly as wide as it is long *Cingulum:* well-developed	From a labial view, the distal surface is more convex than the mesial surface *Mamelons:* 3 elevations on the incisal edge of anterior teeth that denote centers of formation Observed in central incisors before they are worn away during function	1 conical root that is triangular in cross section	Incisors are cutting teeth
Lateral incisor	More narrow than the central incisor in a mesial-to-distal measurement	*Labial surface:* convex *Incisal edges* on the mesial and distal surfaces: more convex than central incisors *Mamelons:* tend to be less prominent on the lateral incisor *Lingual surface:* more concave than on the central incisors *Mesial and distal marginal ridges* more prominent than central incisor and typically demonstrate a lingual pit	One conical root that is oval in cross section	
MAXILLARY CANINE				
Tooth	**Crown**	**Surfaces**	**Root(s)**	**Comments**
Canine	*Cingulum:* prominent	*Labial surface:* convex *Incisal edge:* rounded into a cusp that displays a mesial and distal cusp ridge *Lingual surface:* exhibits a strong ridge from the cusp tip to the cingulum, which divides the lingual surface into a mesial and a distal fossa	1 long and conical root that is rectangular in cross section, with depressions on the mesial and distal surfaces	Also called cuspid; longest tooth in the oral cavity Prehensile tooth

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

TYPES OF TEETH IN THE PERMANENT DENTITION *CONTINUED*



Maxillary central incisor (right side)



Maxillary lateral incisor (right side)

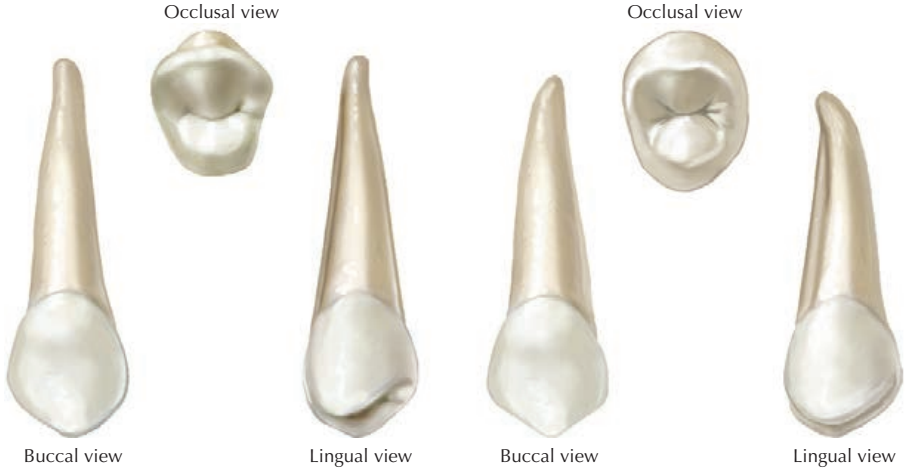


Maxillary canine (right side)

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

TYPES OF TEETH IN THE PERMANENT DENTITION *CONTINUED*

MAXILLARY PREMOLARS				
Tooth	**Crown**	**Surfaces**	**Root(s)**	**Comments**
1st premolar	Shorter than the anterior teeth Wider in a facial-lingual dimension than in a mesial-distal dimension	Has a lingual and a facial cusp *Facial surface:* convex *Facial cusp:* long and similar in appearance to the cusp of the canine *Lingual cusp:* shorter than the facial cusp and positioned mesial of the mesial distal midline Displays a mesial marginal developmental groove	Usually 2 roots—a facial and a lingual root	Often referred to as bicuspid teeth, but a more accepted designation would be premolar teeth Prehensile tooth
2nd premolar	Not as angular in shape as the 1st premolar	*Facial surface:* convex Has a lingual and a facial cusp • *Facial cusp:* not as sharp as the facial cusp of the 1st premolar • *Lingual cusp:* nearly equal in size and similar in shape to the facial cusp	Usually 1 root	Occlusal surface contains supplemental grooves, which gives it a wrinkled appearance Supplements the molars in function



Maxillary 1st premolar (right side) **Maxillary 2nd premolar (right side)**

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

TYPES OF TEETH IN THE PERMANENT DENTITION *CONTINUED*

MAXILLARY MOLARS				
Tooth	**Crown**	**Surfaces**	**Root(s)**	**Comments**
The molar teeth are used for crushing and chewing				
1st molar	Larger in a facial-lingual dimension than it is in a mesial-distal dimension From an occlusal view, the crown is rhomboidal in form	5 cusps: • Mesiobuccal cusp • Distobuccal cusp • Mesiolingual cusp • Distolingual cusp • 5th cusp: present on the lingual surface of the mesiolingual cusp and termed the cusp of Carabelli	3 roots: • Mesiobuccal root • Distobuccal root (smallest) • Lingual root (largest)	Usually the largest of the molar teeth
2nd molar	Supplements the 1st molar in function 2 forms: • Resembles the 1st molar with a more extreme rhomboidal form • A heart-shaped form with a poorly developed distolingual cusp	4 cusps: • Mesiobuccal cusp • Distobuccal cusp • Mesiolingual cusp • Distolingual cusp (sometimes absent) There is no fifth cusp	3 roots: • Mesiobuccal root • Distobuccal root • Lingual root	Smaller than the 1st molar
3rd molar	Great variation in the crown (it may resemble the 1st or 2nd molar)	3-cusp form is more common: • Mesiobuccal cusp • Distobuccal cusp • Mesiolingual cusp	3 roots: • Mesiobuccal root • Distobuccal root • Lingual root The roots usually are fused, functioning as 1 large root	Variable in size Often extracted as a preventive measure



Maxillary 1st molar (right side)



Maxillary 2nd molar (right side)



Maxillary 3rd molar (right side)

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

TYPES OF TEETH IN THE PERMANENT DENTITION *CONTINUED*

MANDIBULAR CANINE				
Tooth	**Crown**	**Surfaces**	**Root(s)**	**Comments**
Canine	Longer than the maxillary canine *Cingulum:* not as prominent as on the maxillary canine	*Incisal edge:* rounded into a cusp *Mamelons:* not usually located on canine teeth *Mesial surface* of crown and root: relatively straight, without much convexity	1 long and conical root	Also called cuspids Smaller and more symmetrical than the maxillary canine

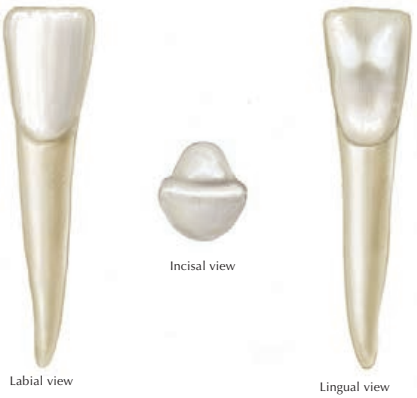


Mandibular canine (right side)

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

TYPES OF TEETH IN THE PERMANENT DENTITION *CONTINUED*

MANDIBULAR INCISORS				
Tooth	**Crown**	**Surfaces**	**Root(s)**	**Comments**
Central incisor	2/3 the width of the maxillary central incisor Appears bilaterally symmetrical *Cingulum:* small and poorly developed	*Labial surface:* convex *Lingual surface:* concave *Mamelons:* observed in central incisors before wear *Lingual fossa:* poorly developed	1 root that is flattened and is wide in a facial-lingual direction	Incisors are cutting teeth
Lateral incisor	Not bilaterally symmetrical	*Labial surface:* convex *Lingual fossa:* poorly developed	1 root similar in shape to the central incisor	When viewed from the incisal aspect, the crown appears twisted distally on the root Incisors are cutting teeth



Mandibular central incisor (right side)

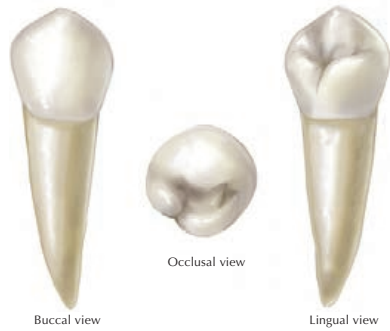


Mandibular lateral incisor (right side)

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

TYPES OF TEETH IN THE PERMANENT DENTITION *CONTINUED*

MANDIBULAR PREMOLARS				
Tooth	**Crown**	**Surfaces**	**Root(s)**	**Comments**
1st premolar	Diamond-shaped	*Facial surface:* convex Has a lingual and a buccal cusp • Buccal cusp—well developed • Lingual cusp—small and not well developed Displays a mesial lingual developmental groove	1 root that is oval in cross section, with a slight lingual taper	The smallest of the premolar teeth
2nd premolar	Convex	Demonstrates either of 2 occlusal schemes: • A 2-cusp form, with a facial and a lingual cusp • A 3-cusp form, with 2 lingual cusps and a single facial cusp—predominant form Facial and lingual surfaces are convex *Facial cusp* is not as sharp as that of the 1st premolar *Lingual cusp(s)* are smaller than the facial cusp	1 root that is oval in cross section, with a slight lingual taper	Differs in appearance from the 1st premolar Much larger than the 1st premolar



Mandibular 1st premolar (right side)

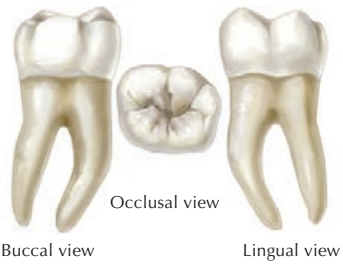


Mandibular 2nd premolar (right side)

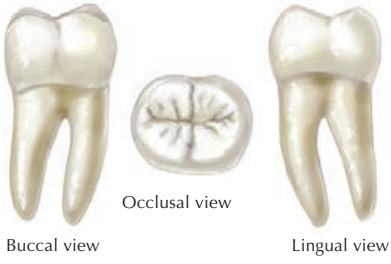
WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

TYPES OF TEETH IN THE PERMANENT DENTITION *CONTINUED*

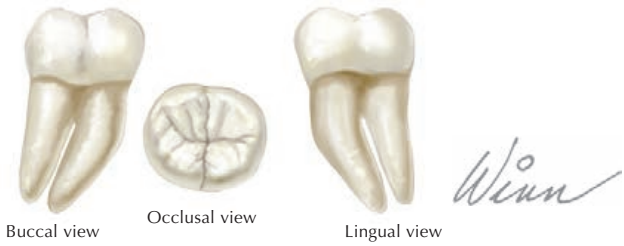
MANDIBULAR MOLARS				
Tooth	**Crown**	**Surfaces**	**Root(s)**	**Comments**
1st molar	Wider in a mesial-distal dimension than in a facial-lingual length	5 cusps: • Mesiobuccal cusp (largest) • Distobuccal cusp • Distal cusp (smallest) • Mesiolingual cusp • Distolingual cusp	2 roots: • Mesial root (containing 2 pulp canals) • Distal root (containing 1 pulp canal)	Used for crushing and chewing
2nd molar	Normally the 2nd molar is smaller than the 1st molar	4 cusps: • Mesiobuccal cusp • Distobuccal cusp • Mesiolingual cusp • Distolingual cusp	2 roots: • Mesial root (containing 2 pulp canals) • Distal root (containing 1 pulp canal)	Supplements the 1st molar in function
3rd molar	Development is similar to that of the 2nd molar	4 cusps of variable shape and size	2 roots: • Mesial root • Distal root Roots are often fused	Variable, but not as variable as the maxillary 3rd molar Often the smallest of the molar teeth Often extracted as a preventive measure



Mandibular 1st molar (right side)



Mandibular 2nd molar (right side)



Mandibular 3rd molar (right side)

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

13 Vascular Supply of the Oral Cavity

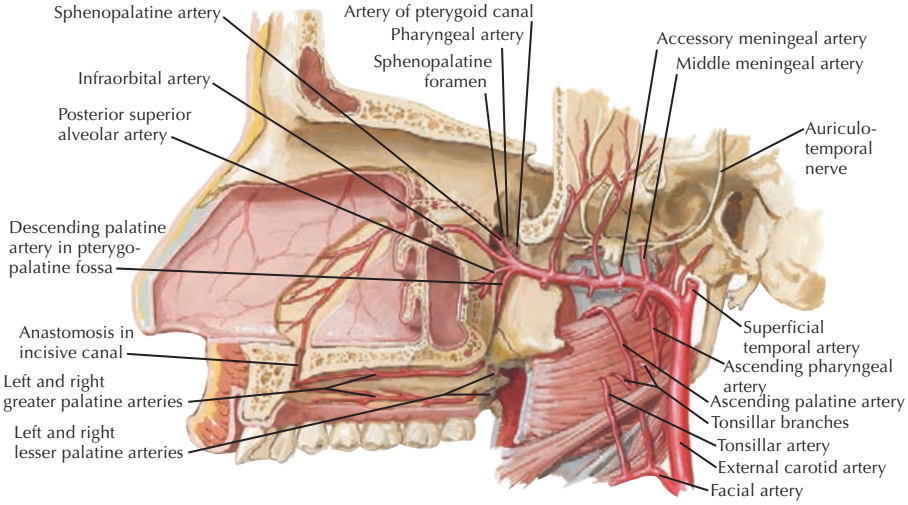
ARTERIAL SUPPLY

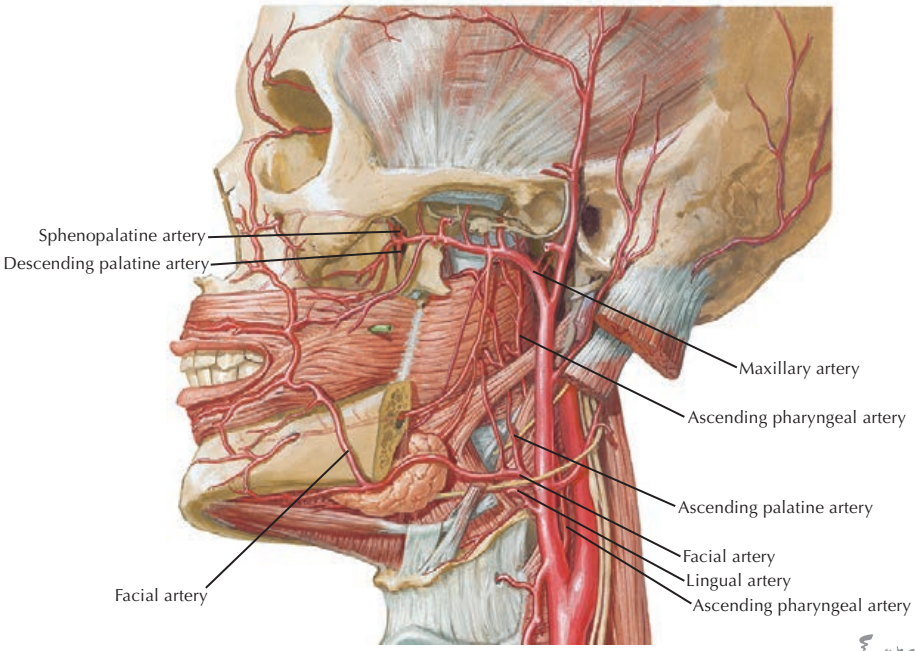
ARTERIAL SUPPLY OF THE PALATE		
Artery	**Source**	**Course**
Maxillary	External carotid a.	Gives rise to a series of branches; 3 supply the palate: • Sphenopalatine • Greater palatine • Lesser palatine Gives rise to 3 branches that supply the maxillary arch: • Anterior superior alveolar • Middle superior alveolar • Posterior superior alveolar Gives rise to 1 branch that supplies the mandibular arch: • Inferior alveolar
Sphenopalatine	3rd part of the maxillary a.	Enters the nasal cavity after passing through the sphenopalatine foramen On entering the nasal cavity, gives rise to the posterior superior nasal branches: • Posterior superior lateral branch • Posterior superior medial branch, which continues along the nasal septum to enter the hard palate via the incisive canal
Greater palatine	Descending palatine a. from the 3rd part of the maxillary a.	A branch of the descending palatine a. that travels in the palatine canal Within the canal, the descending palatine a. splits into the: • Lesser palatine a. • Greater palatine a. The greater palatine a. exits the greater palatine foramen and passes anteriorly toward the incisive foramen to supply the hard palate gingiva, mucosa, and palatal glands and anastomose with the terminal branch of the sphenopalatine a., which exits the incisive foramen
Lesser palatine	Descending palatine a. from the 3rd part of the maxillary a.	A branch of the descending palatine a. that travels in the palatine canal Within the canal, the descending palatine a. splits into the: • Greater palatine a. • Lesser palatine a. Lesser palatine a. supplies the soft palate and palatine tonsil
Facial	External carotid a.	Arises in the carotid triangle of the neck Passes superiorly immediately deep to the posterior belly of the digastric m. and the stylohyoid m. Passes along the submandibular gland, giving rise to the submental a., which helps supply the gland Passes superiorly over the body of the mandible at the masseter
Ascending palatine	Facial a.	Supplies the soft palate Ascends between the styloglossus and stylopharyngeus mm. along the side of the pharynx Divides near the levator veli palatini m. A branch follows the levator veli palatini, supplying the soft palate and the palatine glands A 2nd branch pierces the superior constrictor m. to supply the palatine tonsil and auditory tube Anastomoses with the ascending pharyngeal and tonsillar aa.
Ascending pharyngeal	External carotid a.	Arises in the carotid triangle of the neck Lies deep to the other branches of the external carotid a. and under the stylopharyngeus m. Gives rise to pharyngeal, inferior tympanic, posterior meningeal, and palatine branches The palatine branch passes over the superior constrictor m. and sends branches to the soft palate, tonsil, and auditory tube

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Vascular Supply of the Oral Cavity

ARTERIAL SUPPLY *CONTINUED*



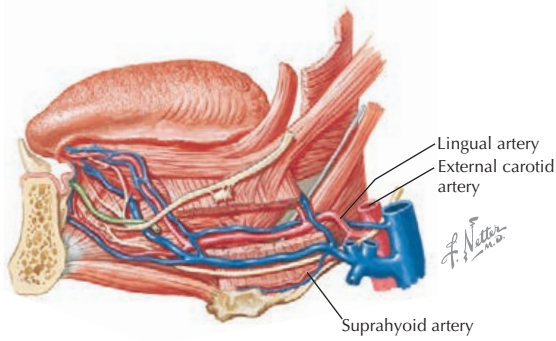


WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Vascular Supply of the Oral Cavity

ARTERIAL SUPPLY *CONTINUED*

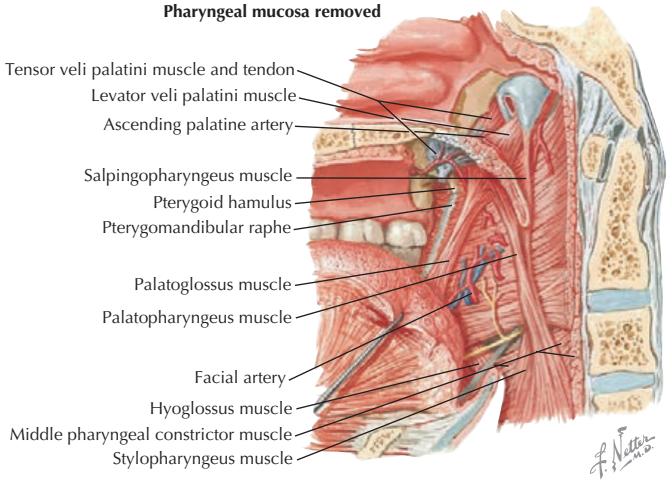
ARTERIAL SUPPLY OF THE FLOOR OF THE ORAL CAVITY		
Artery	**Source**	**Course**
Facial	External carotid a.	Arises in the carotid triangle of the neck Passes superiorly immediately deep to the posterior belly of the digastric m. and the stylohyoid m. Passes along the submandibular gland, giving rise to the submental a. that helps supply the gland Passes superiorly over the body of the mandible at the masseter m.
Ascending palatine	Facial a.	Supplies the soft palate Ascends between the styloglossus and stylopharyngeus mm. along the side of the pharynx Divides near the levator veli palatini m. A branch follows the levator veli palatini, supplying the soft palate and the palatine glands A 2nd branch pierces the superior constrictor m. to supply the palatine tonsil and auditory tube Anastomoses with the ascending pharyngeal and tonsillar aa.
Submental	Facial a.	Arises in the submandibular triangle of the neck Supplies the submandibular gland and surrounding muscles
Lingual	External carotid a.	Passes superiorly and medially toward the hyoid bone Curves inferiorly and anteriorly, forming a loop that lies on the middle constrictor m. and is passed superficially by the hypoglossal n. Passes deep to the posterior belly of the digastric m. and the stylohyoid m., traveling anteriorly Passes deep to the hyoglossus m. and ascends along the tongue Gives rise to dorsal lingual branches, a sublingual branch, and the deep lingual branch Sublingual branch begins at the anterior margin of the hyoglossus and travels anteriorly between the genioglossus and mylohyoideus mm. to supply the sublingual gland, surrounding muscles, and mucous membrane of the oral cavity and gingiva Deep lingual branch passes anteriorly under the surface of the tongue, then anastomoses with the opposite deep lingual a. at the tip of the tongue



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Vascular Supply of the Oral Cavity

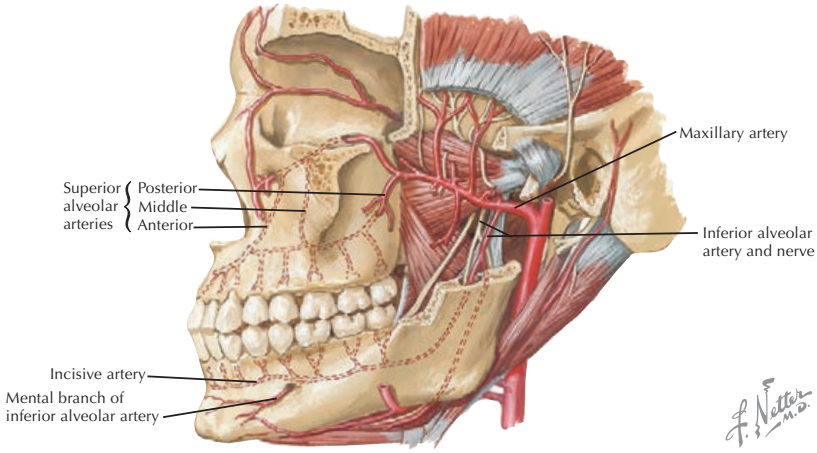
ARTERIAL SUPPLY *CONTINUED*



ARTERIAL SUPPLY OF THE MAXILLARY AND MANDIBULAR TEETH		
Artery	**Source**	**Course**
Maxillary	External carotid a.	Gives rise to 3 branches that form a plexus to supply the maxillary arch: • Anterior superior alveolar • Middle superior alveolar • Posterior superior alveolar Gives rise to 1 branch that supplies the mandibular arch: • Inferior alveolar
MAXILLARY TEETH		
Anterior superior alveolar	Infraorbital a. (of the maxillary a.)	Arises after the infraorbital a. passes through the inferior orbital fissure and into the infraorbital canal Descends via the alveolar canals to supply part of the maxillary arch Supplies the maxillary sinus and the anterior teeth
Middle superior alveolar	Infraorbital a.	May or may not be present If present, arises from the infraorbital a. of the maxillary after it passes through the inferior orbital fissure and into the infraorbital canal Descends via the alveolar canals to supply the maxillary sinus and supplies the plexus at the canine
Posterior superior alveolar	3rd part of the maxillary a.	Arises before the maxillary a. enters the pterygopalatine fossa Enters the infratemporal surface of the maxilla to supply the maxillary sinus, premolars, and molars
MANDIBULAR TEETH		
Inferior alveolar	3rd part of the maxillary a.	Descends inferiorly following the inferior alveolar n. to enter the mandibular foramen Terminates into the mental and incisive aa. at the region of the 2nd premolar Supplies all of the mandibular teeth
Mental	Inferior alveolar a.	Supplies the labial gingiva of the anterior teeth
Incisive	Inferior alveolar a.	Supplies the anterior teeth

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

ARTERIAL SUPPLY *CONTINUED*

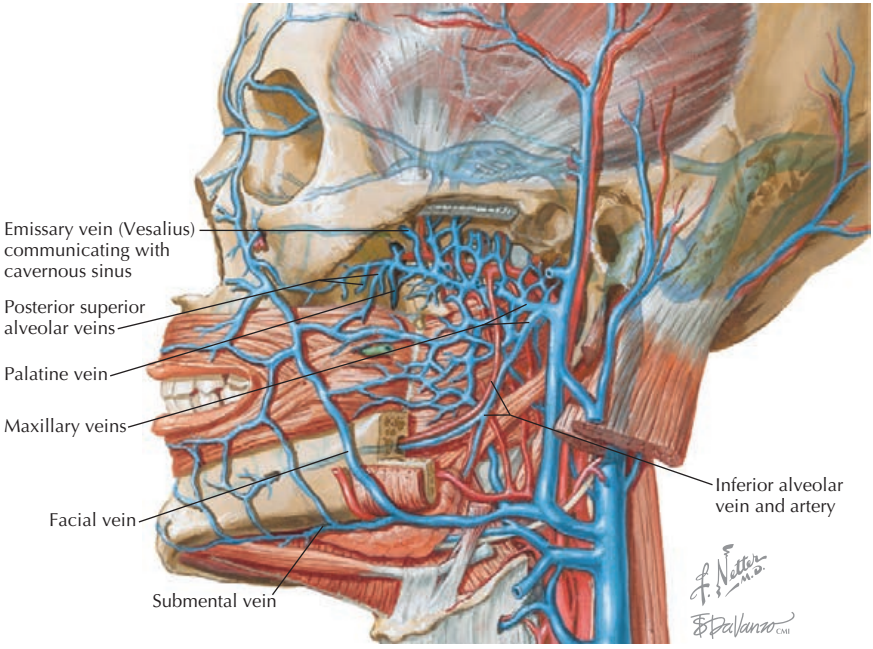


VENOUS DRAINAGE OF THE ORAL CAVITY

VENOUS DRAINAGE OF THE PALATE AND FLOOR OF THE ORAL CAVITY	
Vein	**Course**
Greater palatine	Connect to the pterygoid plexus
Lesser palatine	
Sphenopalatine	
Lingual	Receives tributaries from the deep lingual vv. on the ventral surface, and dorsal lingual vv. from the dorsal surface of the tongue Passes with the lingual a., deep to the hyoglossus m., and ends in the internal jugular v. The vena comitans nervi hypoglossi, or accompanying vein of the hypoglossal n., begins at the apex of the tongue and may either join the lingual v. or accompany the hypoglossal n. and enter the common facial v., which empties into the internal jugular v.
Submental	Anastomoses with the branches of the lingual v. and the inferior alveolar v. Parallels the submental a. on the superficial surface of the mylohyoid m. Ends in the facial v.
Pharyngeal plexus	Located along the lateral pterygoid m. Most of the vessels in the infratemporal fossa and oral cavity drain into the pterygoid plexus Connected to the cavernous sinus, the pterygoid plexus of veins, and the facial v. Valveless Eventually drains into the maxillary v.
VENOUS DRAINAGE OF THE TEETH	
Vein	**Course**
Anterior superior alveolar	Drain onto the pterygoid plexus of veins
Middle superior alveolar	
Posterior superior alveolar	
Inferior alveolar	

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

VENOUS DRAINAGE OF THE ORAL CAVITY *CONTINUED*

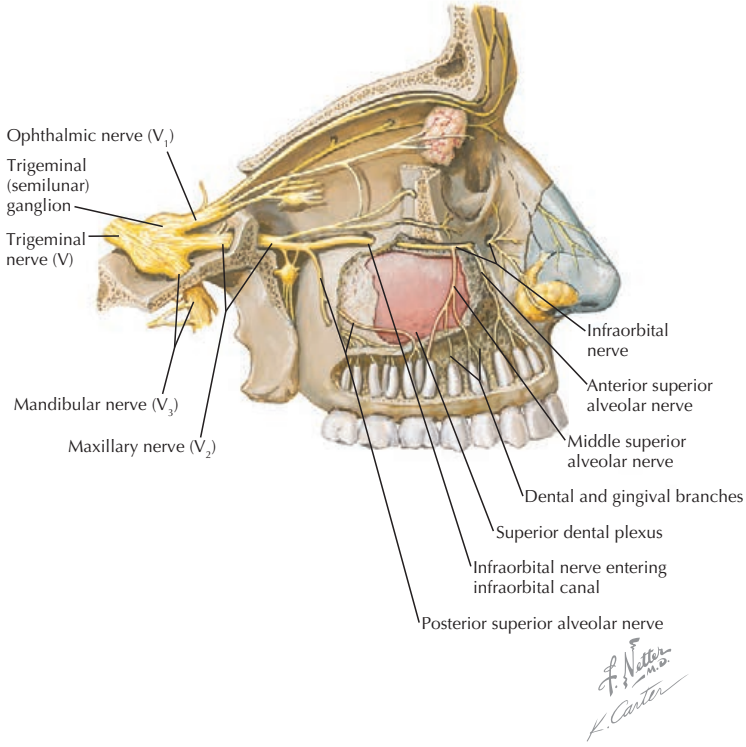


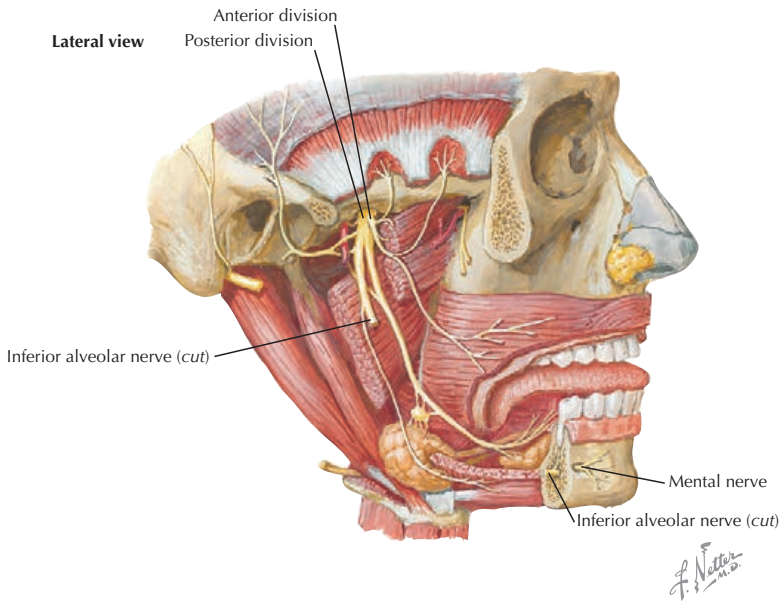
WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

13 Nerve Supply of the Oral Cavity

GENERAL INFORMATION

The oral cavity receives its sensory innervation from branches of the maxillary and mandibular divisions of the trigeminal nerve





WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

SENSORY INNERVATION OF THE MAXILLARY TEETH

Nerve	Source	Course
Maxillary	Trigeminal n.	Sensory in function Travels along the lateral wall of the cavernous sinus Passes from the middle cranial fossa into the pterygopalatine fossa via the foramen rotundum Within the pterygopalatine fossa, it gives rise to 4 branches: • Infraorbital (continuation of the maxillary) • Ganglionic • Posterior superior alveolar • Zygomatic The infraorbital n. gives rise to 2 branches that form a plexus with the posterior superior alveolar to supply the maxillary arch: • Anterior superior alveolar • Middle superior alveolar
Infraorbital	Continuation of the maxillary division of the trigeminal n.	Passes through the inferior orbital fissure to enter the orbit Passes anteriorly through the infraorbital groove and infraorbital canal and exits onto the face via the infraorbital foramen Once the infraorbital n. exits onto the face, it divides into 3 terminal branches: • Nasal—supplies the ala of the nose • Inferior palpebral—supplies the skin of the lower eyelid • Superior labial—supplies the skin of the upper lip
Anterior superior alveolar	Infraorbital n. as it travels in the infraorbital canal	As it descends to form the superior dental plexus, it innervates part of the maxillary sinus and generally the incisors and canines
Middle superior alveolar		A variable nerve As it descends to form the superior dental plexus, it innervates part of the maxillary sinus and the premolars and possibly the mesiobuccal root of the 1st molar
Posterior superior alveolar	Maxillary n. in the pterygopalatine fossa	Travels laterally through the pterygomaxillary fissure to enter the infratemporal fossa Enters the infratemporal surface of the maxilla As it descends to form the superior dental plexus, it innervates part of the maxillary sinus and the molars, with the possible exception of the mesiobuccal root of the 1st molar

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

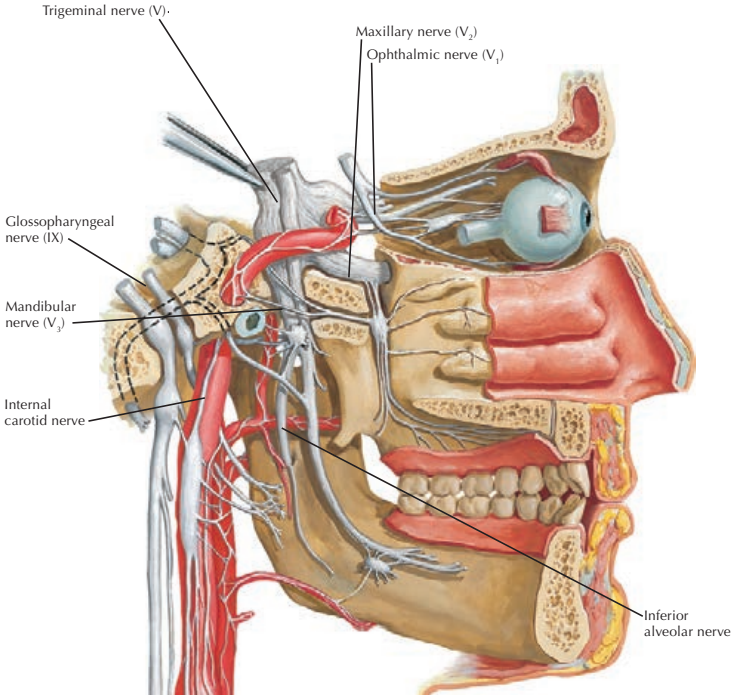
SENSORY INNERVATION OF THE MANDIBULAR TEETH

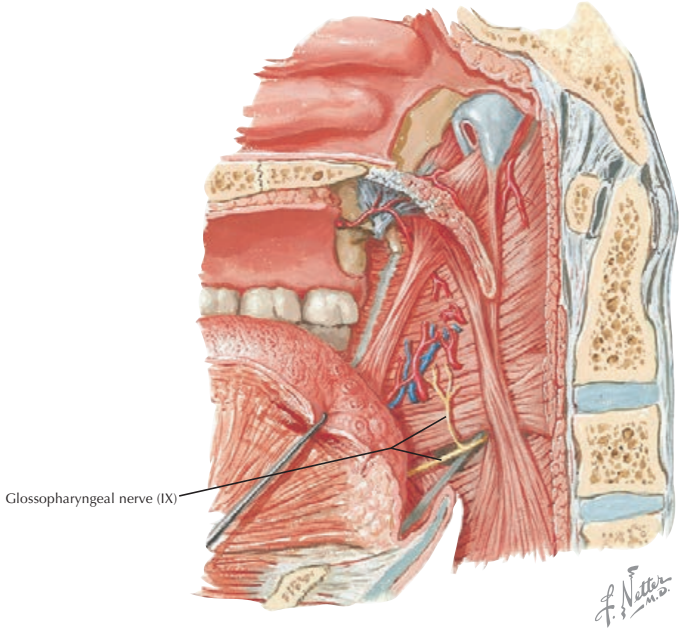
Nerve	Source	Course
Mandibular	Trigeminal n.	This division has motor function in addition to sensory function The largest of the 3 divisions of the trigeminal n. Created by a large sensory and a small motor root that unite just after passing through the foramen ovale to enter the infratemporal fossa Immediately gives rise to a meningeal branch and divides into an anterior and a posterior division Anterior division is smaller and mainly motor, with 1 sensory branch (buccal): • Masseteric • Anterior and posterior deep temporal • Medial pterygoid • Lateral pterygoid • Buccal Posterior division is larger and mainly sensory, with 1 motor branch (mylohyoid): • Auriculotemporal • Lingual • Inferior alveolar • Mylohyoid
Inferior alveolar	The largest branch of the mandibular division	Descends following the inferior alveolar a. inferior to the lateral pterygoid and, last, between the sphenomandibular ligament and the ramus of the mandible until it enters the mandibular foramen, where it terminates as the mental and incisive nn. in the area of the 2nd premolar Innervates all mandibular teeth (via inferior alveolar and incisive nn.), periodontal ligaments (via inferior alveolar and incisive nn.), and the gingiva from the premolars anteriorly to the midline (via the mental branch)
Mental	Inferior alveolar n.	Supplies the chin, lip, and facial gingiva and mucosa from the 2nd premolar anteriorly
Incisive		Supplies the teeth and periodontal ligaments from the 1st premolar anteriorly (depends on the location of the branching of the inferior alveolar n. into the incisive and mental nn.)

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Nerve Supply of the Oral Cavity

SENSORY INNERVATION OF THE MANDIBULAR TEETH *CONTINUED*





WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Nerve Supply of the Oral Cavity

FLOOR OF THE ORAL CAVITY

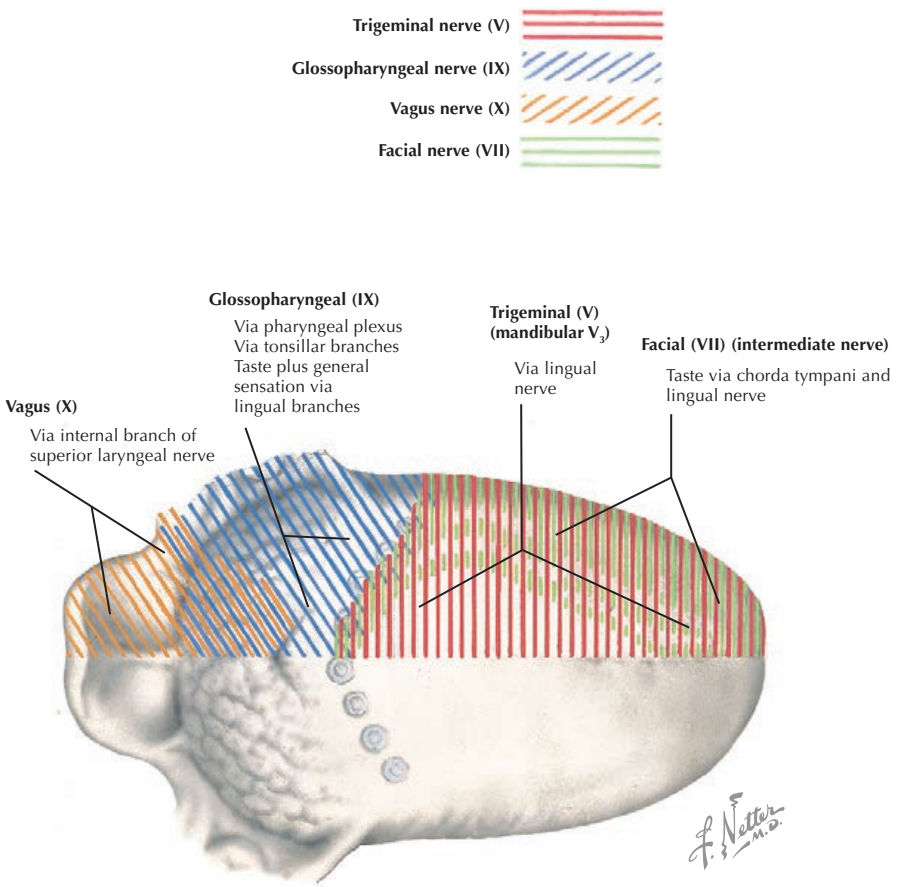
Nerve	Source	Course
Lingual	Mandibular division of the trigeminal n.	Lies inferior to the lateral pterygoid and medial nn. and anterior to the inferior alveolar n. within the infratemporal fossa The chorda tympani branch of the facial n. also joins the posterior part of the lingual n. Passes between the medial pterygoid m. and the ramus of the mandible to pass obliquely to enter the oral cavity, bounded by the superior pharyngeal constrictor m., the medial pterygoid, and the mandible Enters the oral cavity lying against the lingual tuberosity of the mandible The submandibular ganglion is suspended from the lingual n. at the posterior border of the hyoglossus Continues anteriorly and passes on the lateral surface of the hyoglossus Passes from the lateral side, inferiorly, and medially to the submandibular duct to reach the mucosa of the tongue Supplies general somatic afferent (GSA) fibers to the mucous membrane and papilla of the anterior 2/3 of the tongue and gingiva and mucosa on the lingual side of the mandibular teeth
Glossopharyngeal	Medulla oblongata	Passes through the jugular foramen with the vagus and accessory nn. As it passes through the foramen, it passes between the internal carotid a. and the internal jugular v. Continues to pass inferiorly and travels posterior to the stylopharyngeus m. Passes anteriorly with the stylopharyngeus m. and travels between the superior and middle constrictor mm. to be located by the palatine tonsils Small lingual branches arise from it and distribute GSA fibers to the mucous membrane of the posterior 1/3 of the tongue, in addition to the pillars of the fauces In addition, small lingual branches arise from it and distribute special visceral afferent (SVA) fibers to the taste buds in the mucous membrane of the posterior 1/3 of the tongue and the circumvallate papillae
Internal laryngeal	Superior laryngeal branch of the vagus n.	Vagus n. branches from the medulla oblongata and passes through the jugular foramen with the glossopharyngeal and accessory nn. As the vagus n. passes through the foramen, it passes between the internal carotid a. and the internal jugular v. A series of nerves branch from the vagus in the neck, including the superior laryngeal n. Superior laryngeal n. travels inferiorly posterior to the internal carotid a. and on the side of the pharynx and divides into the internal and external laryngeal nn. Internal laryngeal n. passes inferiorly to the larynx and passes through the thyrohyoid membrane along with the superior laryngeal vessels Branches of the internal laryngeal n. distribute the GSA fibers to the base of the tongue at the epiglottic region and to the mucous membranes of the larynx as far inferiorly as the false vocal folds In addition, the branches distribute SVA fibers to the taste buds scattered at the base of the tongue at the epiglottic region

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Nerve Supply of the Oral Cavity

FLOOR OF THE ORAL CAVITY *CONTINUED*

Nerve	Source	Course
Chorda tympani	Facial n. in the tympanic cavity	Carries the preganglionic parasympathetic fibers to the submandibular ganglion and taste fibers to the anterior 2/3 of the tongue Passes anteriorly to enter the tympanic cavity and lies along the tympanic membrane and malleus until exiting the petrotympanic fissure Once it exits the petrotympanic fissure, the chorda tympani joins the posterior border of the lingual n. The lingual n. is distributed to the anterior 2/3 of the tongue and the SVA fibers from the chorda tympani travel to the taste buds in this region



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Nerve Supply of the Oral Cavity

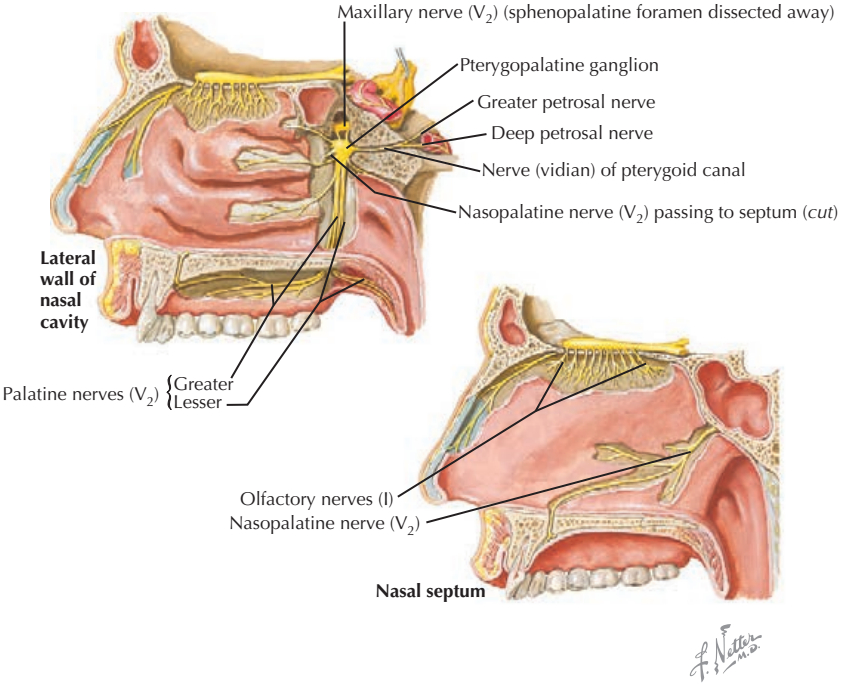
PALATE

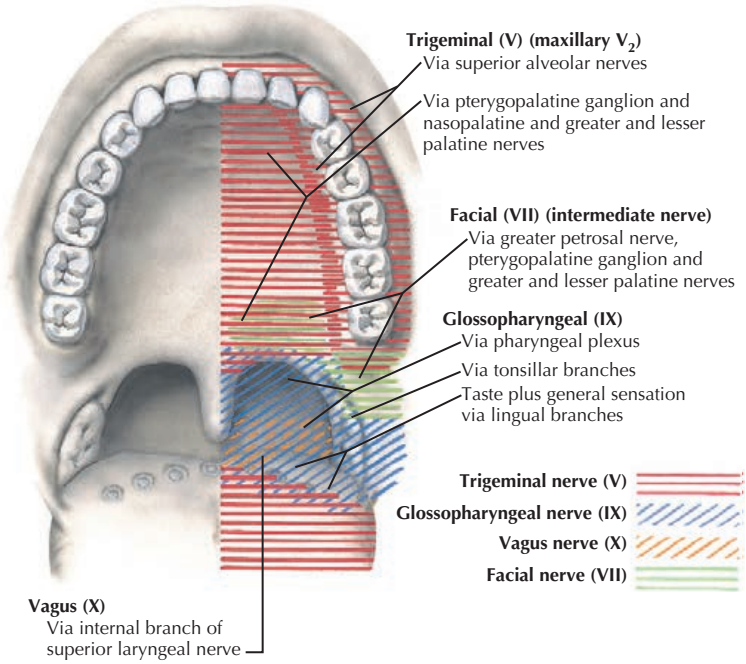
Nerve	Source	Course
Maxillary	Trigeminal n.	Sensory in function Travels along the lateral wall of the cavernous sinus Passes from the middle cranial fossa into the pterygopalatine fossa via the foramen rotundum Within the pterygopalatine fossa, it gives rise to 4 branches: • Infraorbital (considered the continuation of the maxillary) • Ganglionic • Posterior superior alveolar • Zygomatic The infraorbital passes through the inferior orbital fissure to enter the orbit and passes anteriorly through the infraorbital groove and canal and exits onto the face via the infraorbital foramen Once the infraorbital n. exits onto the face, it divides into 3 terminal branches: • Nasal—supplies the ala of the nose • Inferior palpebral—supplies the skin of the lower eyelid • Superior labial—supplies the skin of the upper lip; 3 of its branches form a plexus to supply the maxillary arch: • Anterior superior alveolar • Middle superior alveolar • Posterior superior alveolar
Nasopalatine	Maxillary division of the trigeminal n. via the pterygopalatine ganglion in the pterygopalatine fossa	Passes through the sphenopalatine foramen to enter the nasal cavity Passes along the superior portion of the nasal cavity to the nasal septum, where it travels anteroinferiorly to the incisive canal supplying the septum Once entering the oral cavity, it provides sensory innervation to the palatal gingiva and mucosa from the area anterior to the premolars
Greater palatine		Passes through the palatine canal to enter the hard palate via the greater palatine foramen Provides sensory innervation to the palatal gingiva and mucosa from the premolars to the posterior border of the hard palate
Lesser palatine		Passes through the palatine canal to enter the hard palate via the lesser palatine foramen Provides sensory innervation to the soft palate
Glossopharyngeal	Medulla oblongata	Passes through the jugular foramen with the vagus and accessory nn. As it passes through the foramen, it passes between the internal carotid a. and internal jugular v. Continues to pass inferiorly and travels posterior to the stylopharyngeus m. Passes anteriorly with the stylopharyngeus and travels between the superior and middle constrictor mm. to be located by the palatine tonsils Small lingual branches arise from it and distribute general somatic afferent fibers to the mucous membrane of the posterior 1/3 of the tongue, in addition to the pillars of the fauces

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Nerve Supply of the Oral Cavity

PALATE *CONTINUED*





WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

13 Salivary Glands

GENERAL INFORMATION

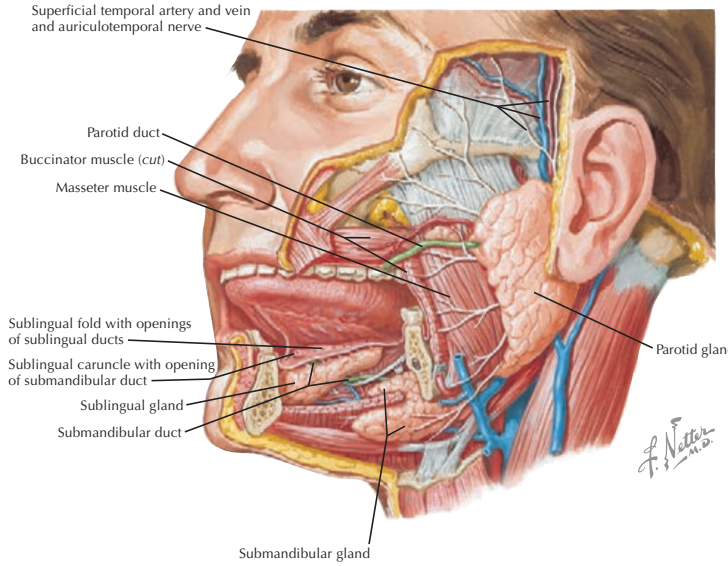
There are 3 pairs of major salivary glands:

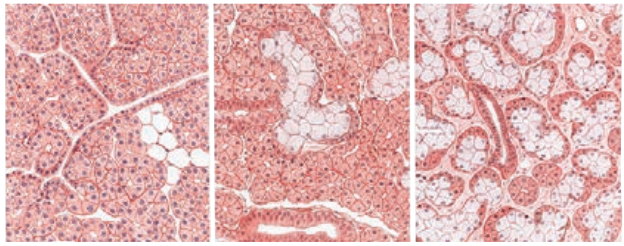
- Parotid gland
- Submandibular gland
- Sublingual gland

They secrete saliva into the oral cavity to aid in the digestion, mastication, and deglutition of food

Saliva is mucous or serous in consistency

Many minor salivary glands are ubiquitously distributed throughout the oral mucosa of the oral cavity





Parotid gland: totally serous

Submandibular gland: mostly serous, partially mucous

Sublingual gland: almost completely mucous

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

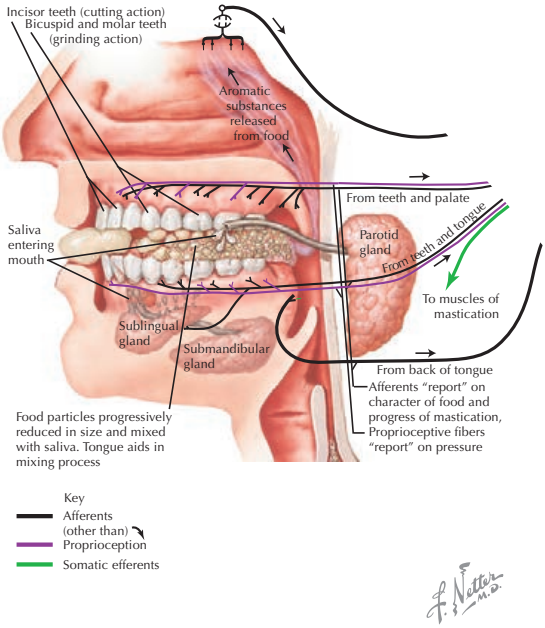
GENERAL INFORMATION *CONTINUED*

FEATURES OF THE MAJOR SALIVARY GLANDS

Gland	Duct	Comment	Autonomic Innervation
Parotid	Parotid duct (Stensen's duct)	The largest salivary gland Pyramidal in shape, with up to 5 processes (or extensions) Saliva created by the parotid is serous Facial n. splits the parotid gland into a superficial lobe and a deep lobe, which are connected by an isthmus The parotid duct (Stensen's duct) forms within the deep lobe and passes from the anterior border of the gland across the masseter m. superficially, through the buccinator m. into the oral cavity opposite the 2nd maxillary molar	Glossopharyngeal n.
Submandibular	Submandibular duct (Wharton's duct)	2nd largest salivary gland A mixed salivary gland, secreting both serous and mucous saliva, but predominantly serous-secreting Wraps around the posterior border of the mylohyoid m., to be located in the submandibular triangle of the neck and the floor of the oral cavity The part of the submandibular gland located in the submandibular triangle is referred to as the superficial portion and is surrounded by the investing layer of deep cervical fascia Facial a. crosses between the submandibular gland and the mandible before giving off the submental a., while the facial v. normally lies superficial to the gland Deep portion of the submandibular gland lies in the oral cavity between the hyoglossus m. and the mandible and ends at the posterior border of the sublingual gland The submandibular duct lies along the sublingual gland and empties into the oral cavity at the sublingual papilla	Facial n.
Sublingual	Numerous small ducts opening along the sublingual fold	Smallest of the 3 major salivary glands A mixed salivary gland, secreting both mucous and serous saliva, but predominantly mucus-secreting Located in the oral cavity between the mucosa of the oral cavity and the mylohyoid m. Creates a sublingual fold in the floor of the oral cavity Lies between the sublingual fossa of the mandible and the genioglossus m. of the tongue The submandibular duct lies on the sublingual gland Bartholin's duct, a common duct that drains the anterior part of the gland in the region of the sublingual papilla, may be present	

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

GENERAL INFORMATION *CONTINUED*

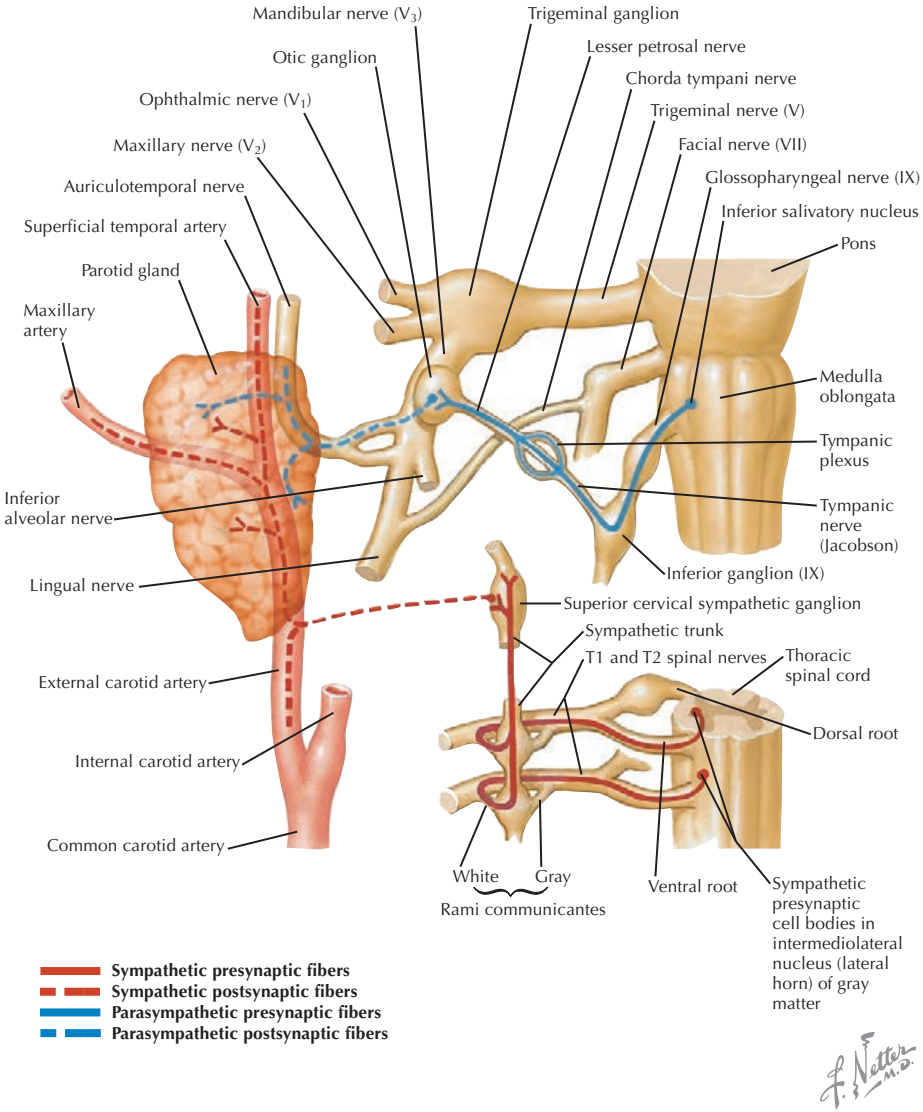


AUTONOMICS OF THE SALIVARY GLANDS

PARASYMPATHETICS OF THE PAROTID GLAND			
Type of Neuron	**Name of Cell Body**	**Characteristics of the Cell Body**	**Course of the Neuron**
Preganglionic neuron	Inferior salivatory nucleus	A collection of nerve cell bodies located in the medulla	Preganglionic parasympathetic fibers arise from the inferior salivatory nucleus in the medulla Travel through the glossopharyngeal n. and exit the jugular foramen Gives rise to the tympanic branch of cranial n. IX, which reenters the skull via the tympanic canaliculus The tympanic branch of IX forms the tympanic plexus along the promontory of the ear The plexus re-forms as the lesser petrosal n., typically exiting the foramen ovale to enter the infratemporal fossa Lesser petrosal n. joins the otic ganglion
Postganglionic neuron	Otic ganglion	A collection of nerve cell bodies located inferior to the foramen ovale, medial to the mandibular division of the trigeminal	Postganglionic parasympathetic fibers arise in the otic ganglion These fibers travel to the auriculotemporal branch of the trigeminal n. Auriculotemporal n. travels to parotid gland Postganglionic parasympathetic fibers innervate the: • Parotid gland

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

AUTONOMICS OF THE SALIVARY GLANDS *CONTINUED*



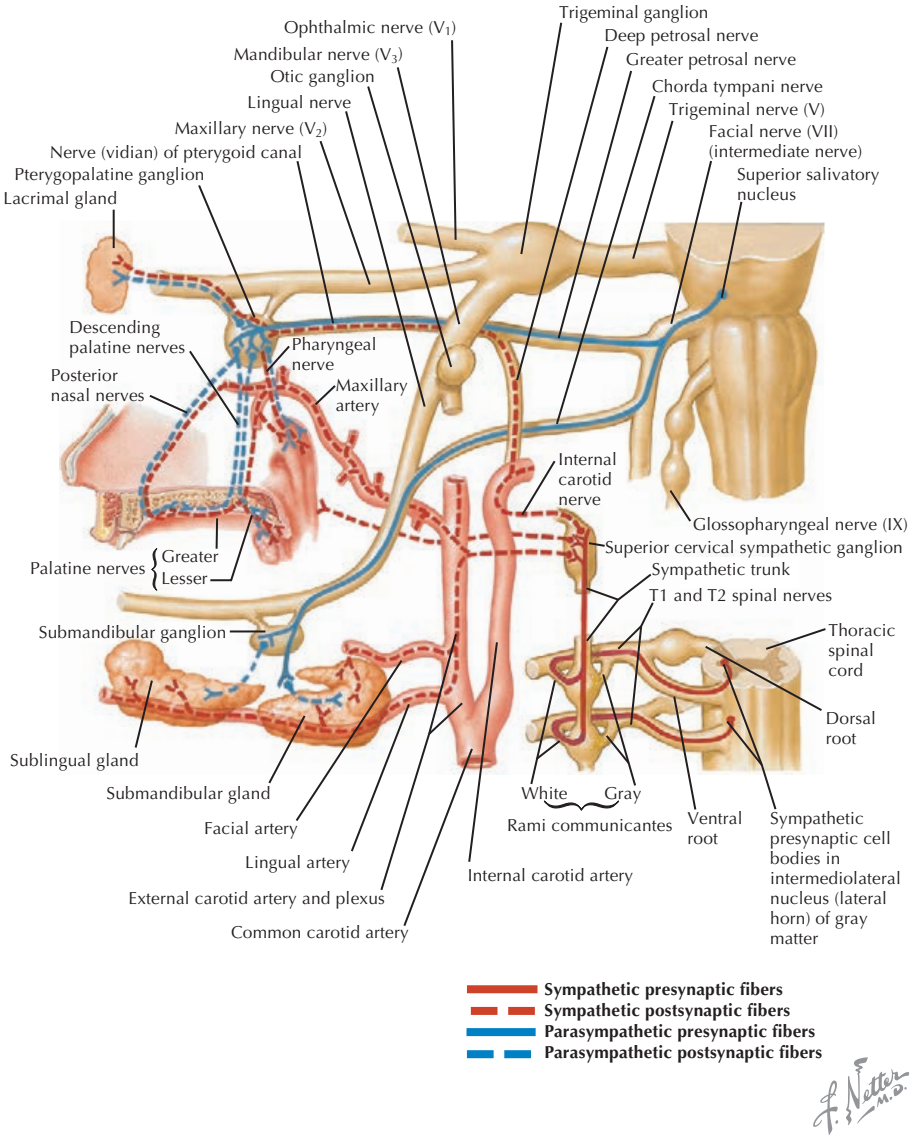
WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

AUTONOMICS OF THE SALIVARY GLANDS *CONTINUED*

PARASYMPATHETICS OF THE SUBMANDIBULAR, SUBLINGUAL, AND MINOR SALIVARY GLANDS			
Type of Neuron	**Name of Cell Body**	**Characteristics of the Cell Body**	**Course of the Neuron**
Preganglionic neuron	Superior salivatory nucleus	A collection of nerve cell bodies located in the pons Travel through the nervus intermedius of the facial n. into the internal acoustic meatus In the facial canal, the facial n. gives rise to 2 parasympathetic branches: • Greater petrosal n. • Chorda tympani n.	**Greater Petrosal Nerve** • Exits along the hiatus for the greater petrosal n. toward the foramen lacerum, where it joins the deep petrosal n. (sympathetics) to form the nerve of the pterygoid canal (vidian n.) • Vidian n. passes through the pterygoid canal and enters the pterygopalatine fossa, where it joins with the pterygopalatine ganglion **Chorda Tympani Nerve** • Exits the petrotympanic fissure to enter the infratemporal fossa, where it joins the lingual n. • Preganglionic fibers travel with the lingual n. into the floor of the oral cavity, where it joins with the submandibular ganglion
Postganglionic neuron	Pterygopalatine ganglion	A collection of nerve cell bodies located in the pterygopalatine fossa Postganglionic parasympathetic fibers that arise in the pterygopalatine ganglion are distributed to the ophthalmic and maxillary divisions of the trigeminal n. to the: • Lacrimal gland • Nasal glands • Palatine glands • Pharyngeal glands	**Ophthalmic and Maxillary Division Distribution** Postganglionic fibers travel along the zygomatic branch of the maxillary division for a short distance to enter the orbit A short communicating branch joins the lacrimal n. of the ophthalmic division of the trigeminal n. These fibers innervate: • Lacrimal gland, to cause the secretion of tears **Maxillary Division Distribution** Postganglionic fibers travel along the maxillary division of the trigeminal n. to be distributed along its branches that are located in the nasal cavity, oral cavity, and pharynx (e.g., nasopalatine, greater palatine) These fibers innervate: • Nasal glands • Palatine glands • Pharyngeal glands
	Submandibular ganglion	A collection of nerve cell bodies in the oral cavity Suspended from the lingual n. at the posterior border of the mylohyoid m. immediately superior to the deep portion of the submandibular gland	Postganglionic parasympathetic fibers arise in the submandibular ganglion and are distributed to the: • Submandibular gland • Sublingual gland

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

AUTONOMICS OF THE SALIVARY GLANDS *CONTINUED*



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

GINGIVITIS

Gingivitis: an inflammation of the gingiva that occurs when bacteria accumulate between the teeth and gingiva

In addition to the inflammation, the gums may demonstrate irritation and bleeding

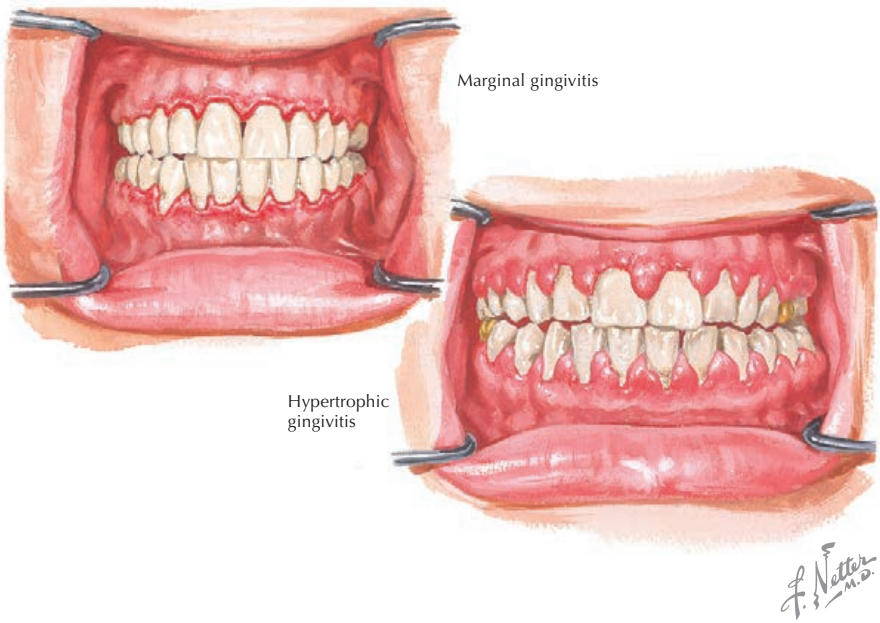
When plaque (composed of bacteria, food debris, and saliva) is deposited on the teeth, it can form tartar if it is not removed

Plaque and tartar cause irritation to the gingiva, and the bacteria (and their toxins) further irritate the gingiva, leading to bleeding and swelling

If gingivitis remains untreated, it may progress to more serious gingival diseases, such as periodontitis

Long-term untreated gingivitis may lead to damage of bone and loss of teeth

Risk factors for gingivitis include poor dental hygiene, pregnancy, diabetes, illness, and human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Clinical Correlate

DENTAL CARIES

Dental caries (tooth decay), leading to "cavities," is caused by bacteria in the oral cavity

The bacteria convert foods into acids and help form plaque (made of bacteria, food debris, and saliva), which is deposited on the teeth

Plaque that is not removed from the teeth can mineralize to form tartar

Plaque is most prominent on difficult-to-reach teeth, such as the posterior molars

Acids formed in the plaque begin to erode the enamel on the surface of the tooth, causing a "cavity"

If not treated, the cavity grows in size, with onset of pain as the nerves and blood vessels of the affected teeth become irritated

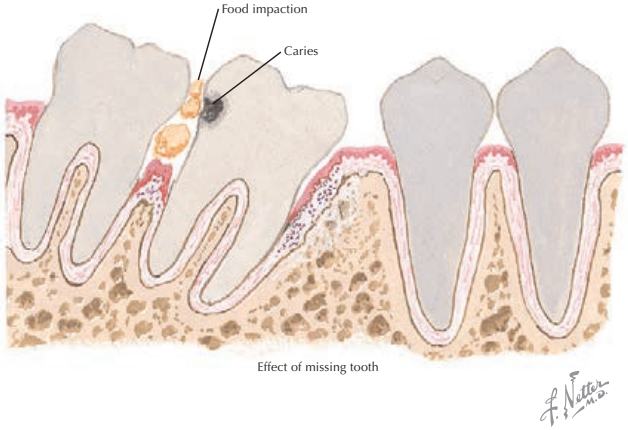
Consuming foods rich in sugar and starch increases the risk of dental caries

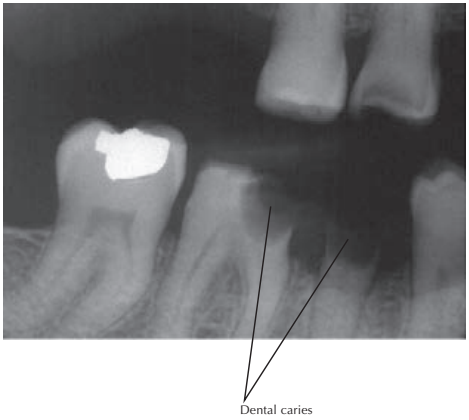
Dental caries can be detected on routine dental examinations

The damage associated with dental caries cannot be repaired by the affected tooth, which now must be restored

Fluoride is used to reduce the risk of dental caries by inhibiting demineralization and promoting remineralization of tooth structure

Saliva helps promote the remineralization process; medications that decrease salivary flow (such as anticholinergics) promote dental caries





WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Clinical Correlate

TORUS

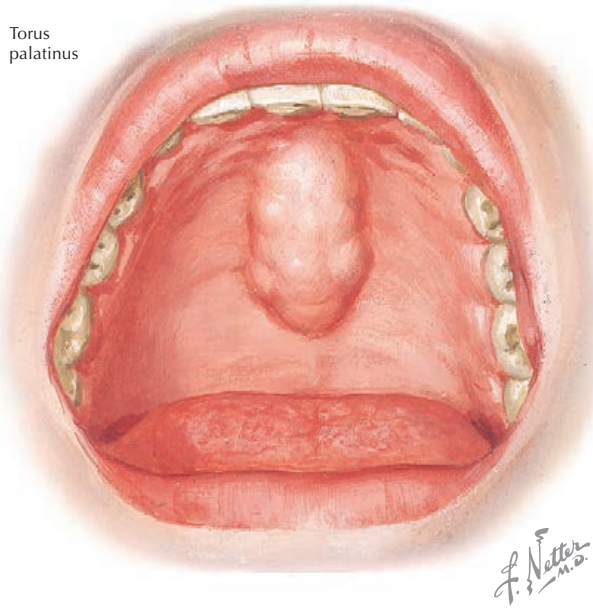
Torus: a nonpathologic bony elevation that occurs in the oral cavity

The presence of a torus does not impede eating or verbal communication but can cause difficulty in the application of a dental appliance, such as a denture

2 major types:

- Palatine—a downgrowth of bone in the midline of the hard palate
- Mandibular—an outgrowth of bone that occurs on the lingual surface of the mandible

A torus does not require treatment unless it interferes with normal function or application of dental appliances



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Clinical Correlate

MUCOCELE

Mucocele: a mucous cyst that results from obstruction of the ducts of minor salivary glands (this lesion also can be associated with blockage of the major salivary glands)

Often caused by trauma to the duct system

Usually located on the lingual aspect of the lip

These lesions contain mucin and granulation tissue

Persistent mucoceles often are excised



Mucocele of lip

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Clinical Correlate

HERPES SIMPLEX

Herpes simplex is the most common cause of viral stomatitis

Caused by exposure to herpes simplex virus type 1 (HSV-1)

HSV-1 usually affects the regions above the waist, causing fever blisters

Most affected people acquire the infection as a child

During the primary infection with HSV-1, multiple vesicles appear on the lips, gingiva, hard palate, and tongue

These vesicles rupture, producing ulcers that heal in 7 to 10 days

After initial exposure, the virus is transported along a retrograde path into the trigeminal ganglion, where it stays inactive and does not replicate

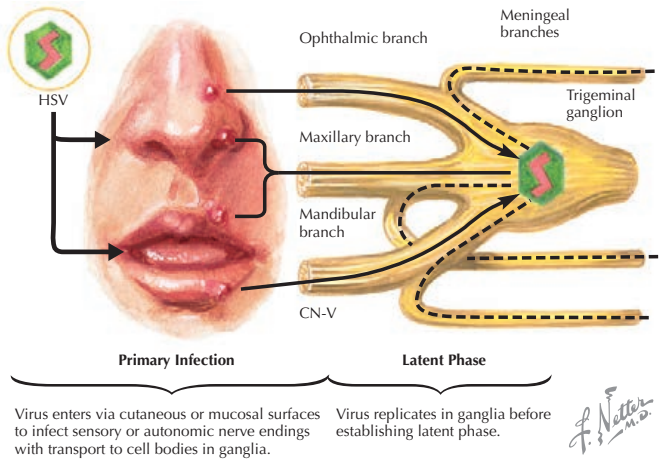
Episodes may recur

Some recurrence triggers:

- Stress
- Fever
- Anxiety
- Exposure to the sun
- Suppressed immune system

Infection can be spread through contact with infected lips

Systemic administration of antiviral agents, such as acyclovir, decreases the duration of the recurrent episodes



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Clinical Correlate

TONSILLITIS

Tonsillitis: an inflammation of the tonsils, the lymph nodes located in the oral cavity and pharynx

There are 3 sets of tonsils:
- Pharyngeal (adenoids)
- Palatine (between the palatoglossal and palatopharyngeal arches)
- Lingual (on posterior 1/3 of the tongue)

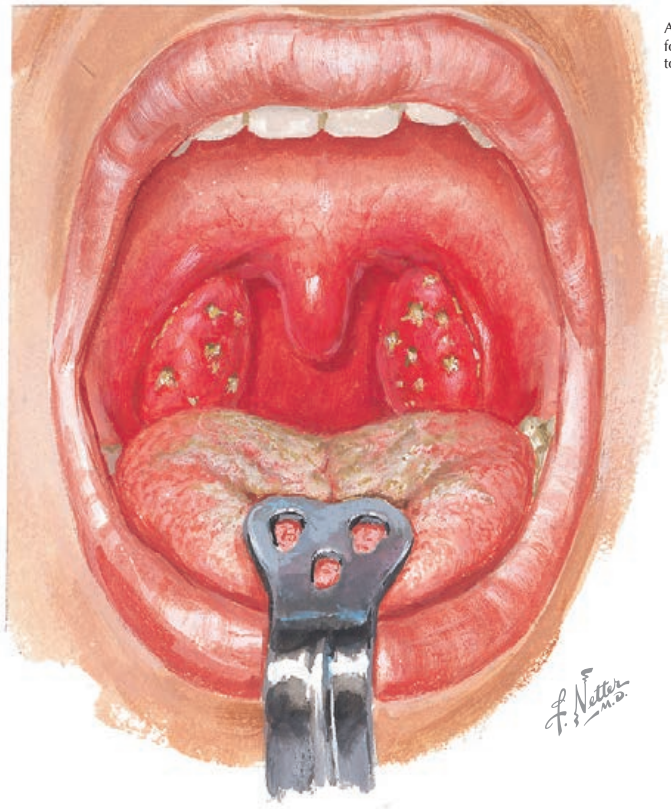
These 3 sets of tonsils form Waldeyer's ring

Symptoms of tonsillitis:
- Sore throat
- Dysphagia
- Fever
- Headache

Tonsillitis often is caused by a virus or bacterium

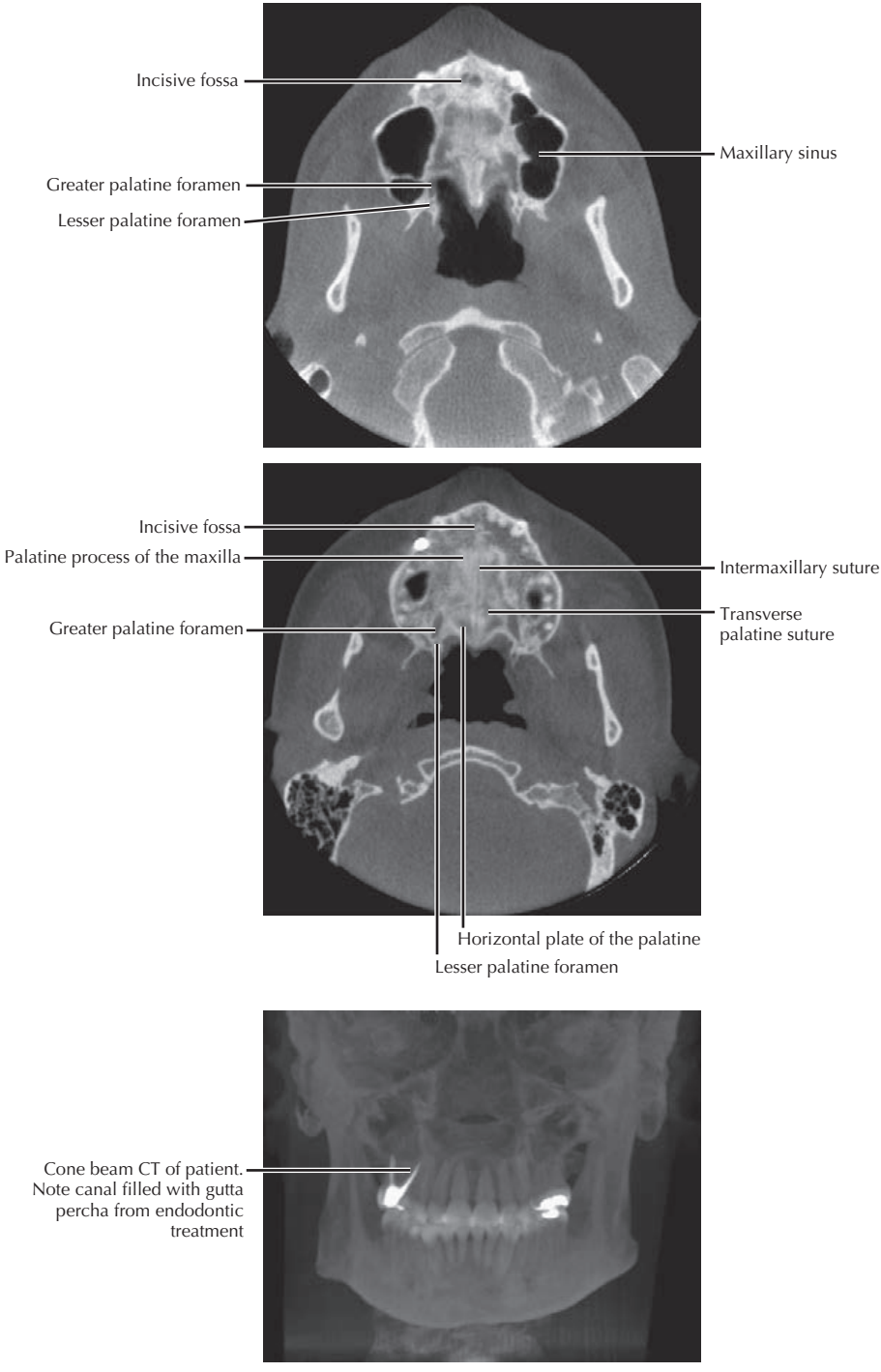
When caused by a bacterial infection, it may be treated by antibiotics

If necessary, a tonsillectomy is performed to remove the tonsils. Palatine tonsils are removed in a tonsillectomy (although the pharyngeal tonsils also may be removed at the same time, especially if they are obstructing nasal breathing)



Acute follicular tonsillitis

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

CHAPTER 14
TONGUE

Overview and Topographic Anatomy 380
Gross Anatomy 382
Muscles 385
Nerve Supply 388
Vascular Supply 394
Clinical Correlates 397

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Overview and Topographic Anatomy

GENERAL INFORMATION

Tongue: a muscular structure in the oral cavity, divided into 2 parts:

- Oral, movable part
- Pharyngeal, nonmovable part

Median fibrous septum is thick tissue separating the tongue into halves

Functions

- Mastication
- Taste
- Talking
- Deglutition

Appearance

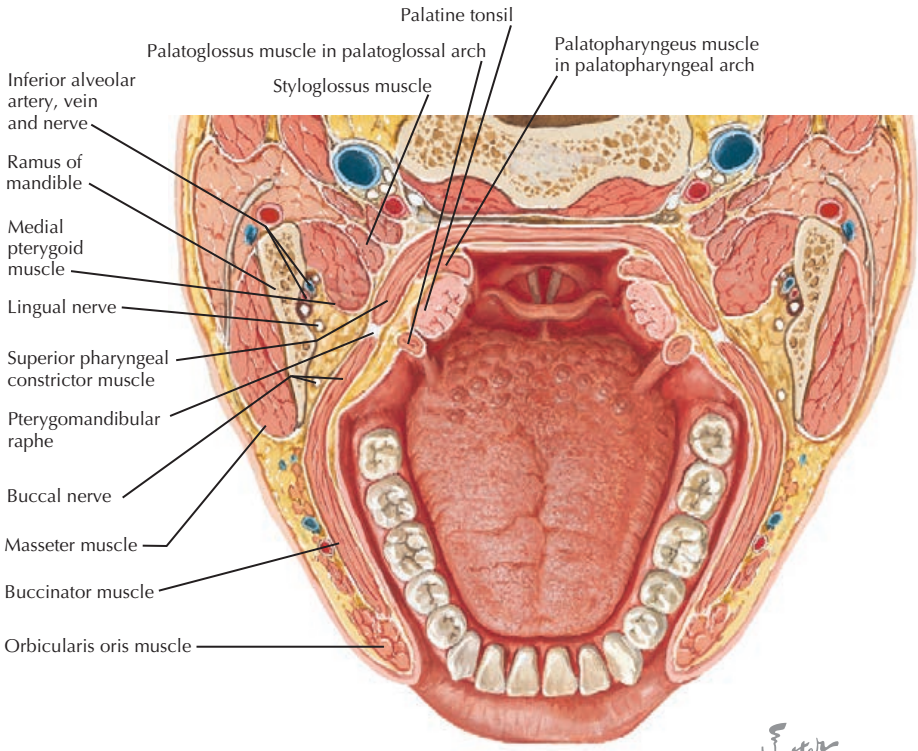
The appearance of the tongue may reflect health problems:

- Fissured tongue
- Black hairy tongue
- Geographic tongue

Muscle Types

Extrinsic—move the tongue in the oral cavity

Intrinsic—change the tongue's shape



Horizontal section below lingula of mandible (superior view) demonstrating bed of parotid gland

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

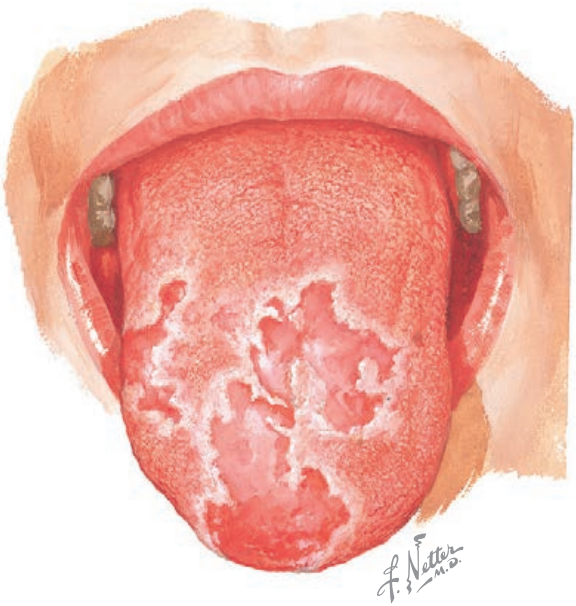
GENERAL INFORMATION *CONTINUED*



Fissured tongue



Hairy tongue



Geographic tongue

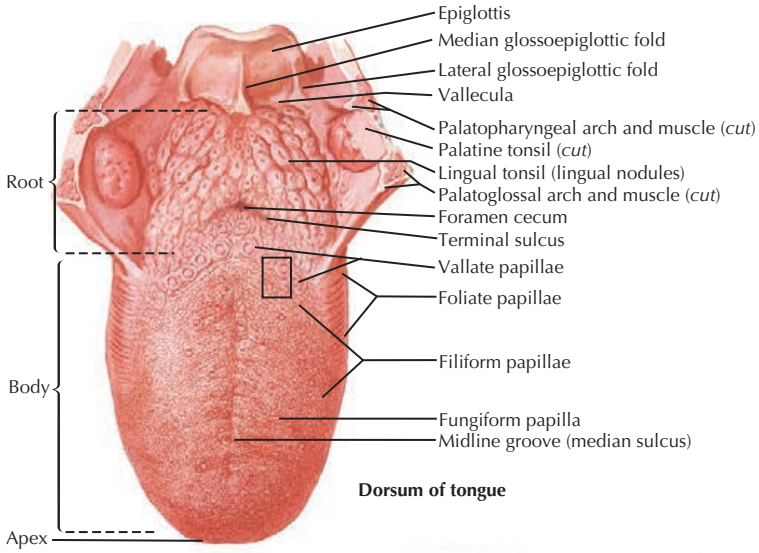
WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

DORSAL SURFACE

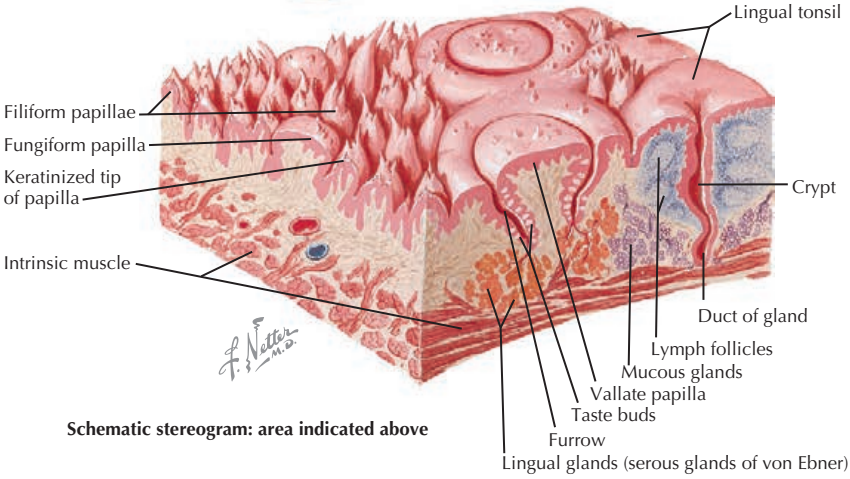
Structure	Description	Comments
Oral portion	Occupies tongue's anterior 2/3	Covered with keratinized stratified squamous epithelium
Pharyngeal portion	Occupies tongue's posterior 1/3	Covered with nonkeratinized stratified squamous epithelium
Sulcus terminalis	A V-shaped groove immediately posterior to the circumvallate papillae	Demarcates junction between the oral and the pharyngeal portions
Foramen cecum	The initial developmental site for the thyroid gland	Located at the angle of the V
Midline septum	Fibrous	Divides tongue into halves
Lingual tonsils	Large nodules of lymphatic tissue	Cover the pharyngeal surface of the tongue
Types of papillae on the tongue's oral portion	Filiform	Most numerous but lack taste buds
	Fungiform—have taste buds	Scattered throughout the dorsum of the tongue
	Foliate—have taste buds	Fairly rudimentary in humans
	Circumvallate—have taste buds	Lie in a row immediately anterior to the sulcus terminalis
Glossoepiglottic folds	Mucous membranes	Connect the posterior portion of the pharyngeal part of the tongue with the epiglottis of the larynx
Palatoglossal arches	Pass from the soft palate to the lateral aspects of the tongue	Also known as the anterior pillar of the fauces
Glands	Mucous and serous	Numerous

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

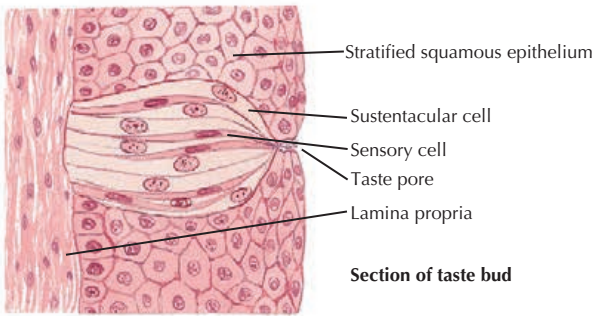
DORSAL SURFACE *CONTINUED*



Dorsum of tongue



Schematic stereogram: area indicated above

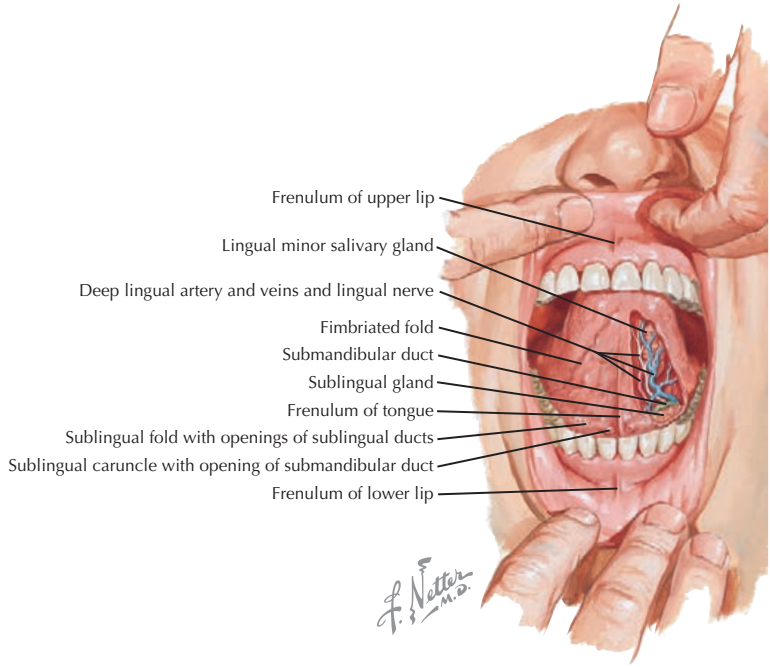


Section of taste bud

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

VENTRAL SURFACE

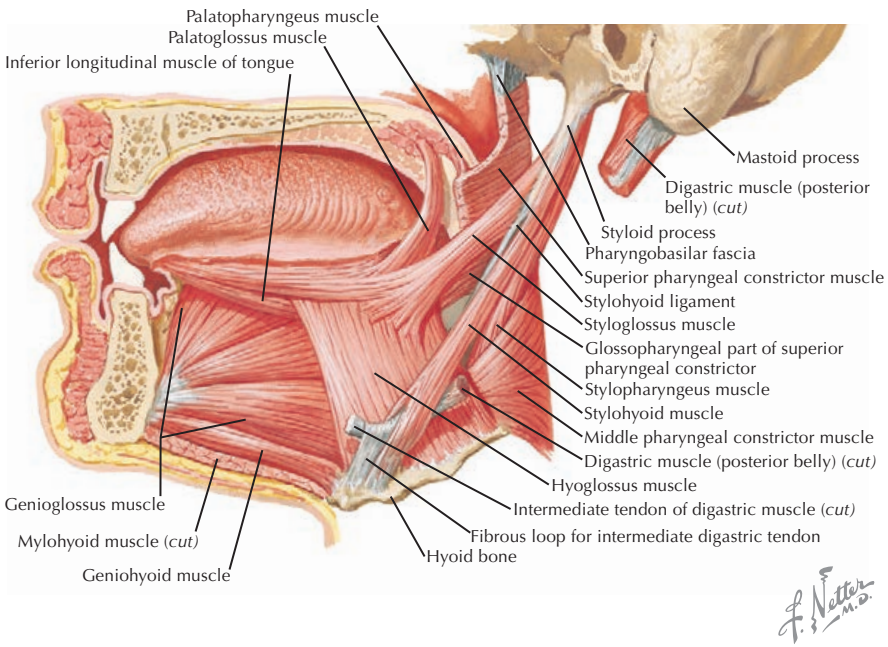
Structure	Description	Comments
Epithelium	Nonkeratinized stratified squamous	Covers ventral surface
Lingual frenulum	A midline fold	Connects the ventral surface of the tongue to the floor of the oral cavity
Sublingual papilla	A swelling on both sides of the lingual frenulum at the tongue base	Marks the entrance of saliva from the submandibular glands into the oral cavity Continuous with the sublingual folds overlying the sublingual glands on the floor of the oral cavity
Plica fimbriata	Fimbriated folds	Lateral to the lingual frenulum
Deep lingual veins	(See table on Venous Drainage)	Can be observed through the mucosa between the plica fimbriata and the lingual frenulum



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

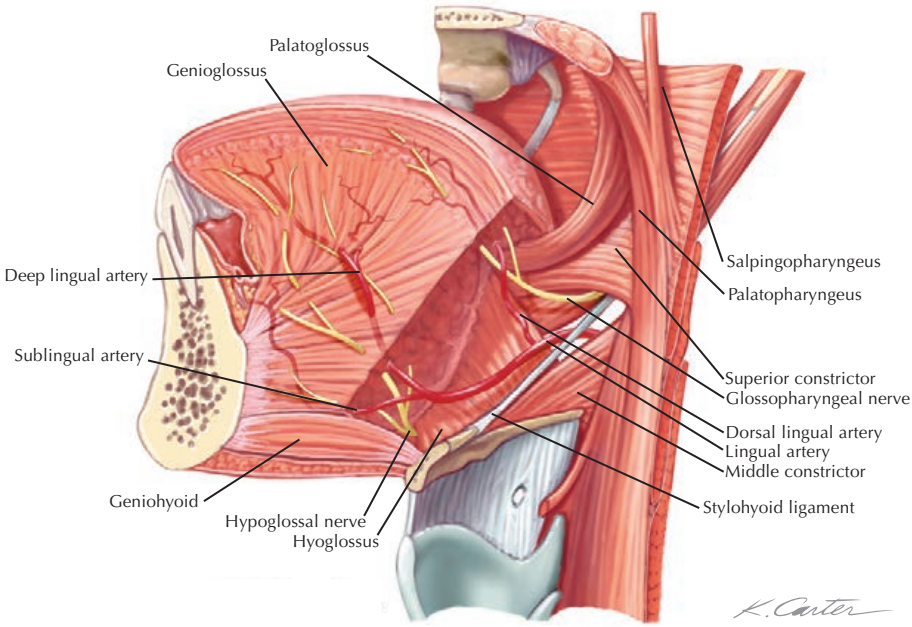
EXTRINSIC TONGUE MUSCLES

Muscle	Origin	Insertion	Actions	Nerve	Comment
Genioglossus	Superior genial tubercle of the mandible	Fibers fan into the tongue substance Some fibers insert into the body of the hyoid	Protracts Depresses	Hypoglossal n.	The lingual a. is located between the genioglossus and hyoglossus mm.
Hyoglossus	Greater and lesser cornu and body of the hyoid	Side of the tongue where fibers mix with the styloglossus m.	Depresses		The lingual n., hypoglossal n., and submandibular duct are located on the lateral surface of the hyoglossus m.
Styloglossus	Tip of styloid process	Side of the tongue where fibers mix with the hyoglossus m.	Retracts Elevates		Smallest of the extrinsic tongue muscles
Palatoglossus	Palatine aponeurosis	Side of the tongue where fibers mix with the intrinsic muscle	Elevates Narrows the oropharyngeal isthmus for deglutition	Pharyngeal plexus (motor portion from the vagus n. and cranial part of the accessory n.)	Grouped as either an extrinsic tongue muscle or a muscle of the soft palate



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

EXTRINSIC TONGUE MUSCLES *CONTINUED*

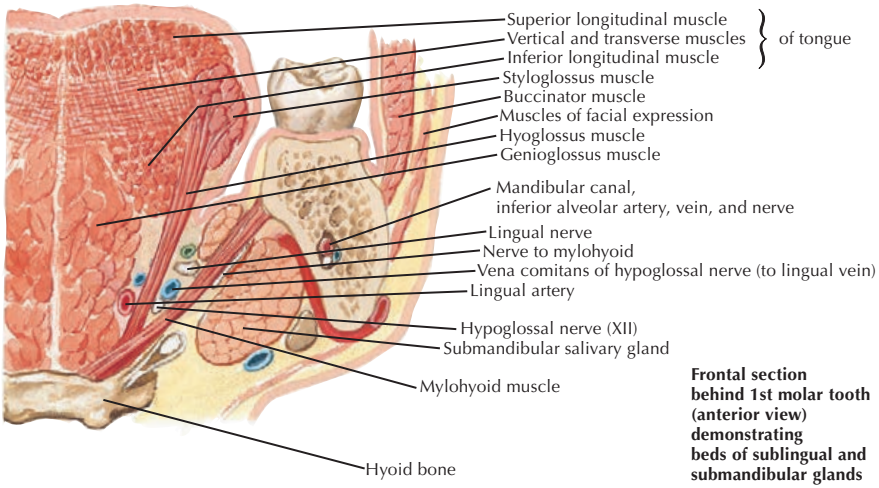


INTRINSIC TONGUE MUSCLES

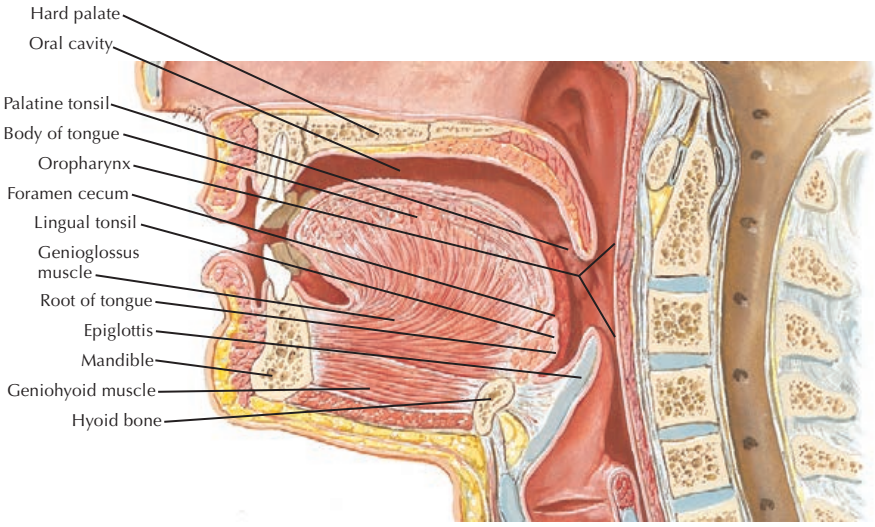
Muscle	Origin	Insertion	Actions	Nerve	Comment
Superior longitudinal	Median fibrous septum Submucous layer near epiglottis	Submucosa along edges of the tongue	Shortens Curls the tongue's apex *upward*	Hypoglossal n.	Located immediately deep to the mucous membrane of the tongue's dorsal surface
Inferior longitudinal	Root of the tongue Body of the hyoid	Submucosa at the apex of the tongue	Shortens Curls the tongue's apex *downward*		Runs the length of the tongue between the hyoglossus and genioglossus mm.
Transverse	Median fibrous septum	Fibrous tissue in the submucosa of the sides of the tongue	Narrows Lengthens		Runs the width of the tongue
Vertical	Submucosa of upper layer of tongue	Submucosa of lower layer of tongue	Broadens Flattens		Runs from the superior to the inferior tongue surface

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

INTRINSIC TONGUE MUSCLES *CONTINUED*



Frontal section behind 1st molar tooth (anterior view) demonstrating beds of sublingual and submandibular glands

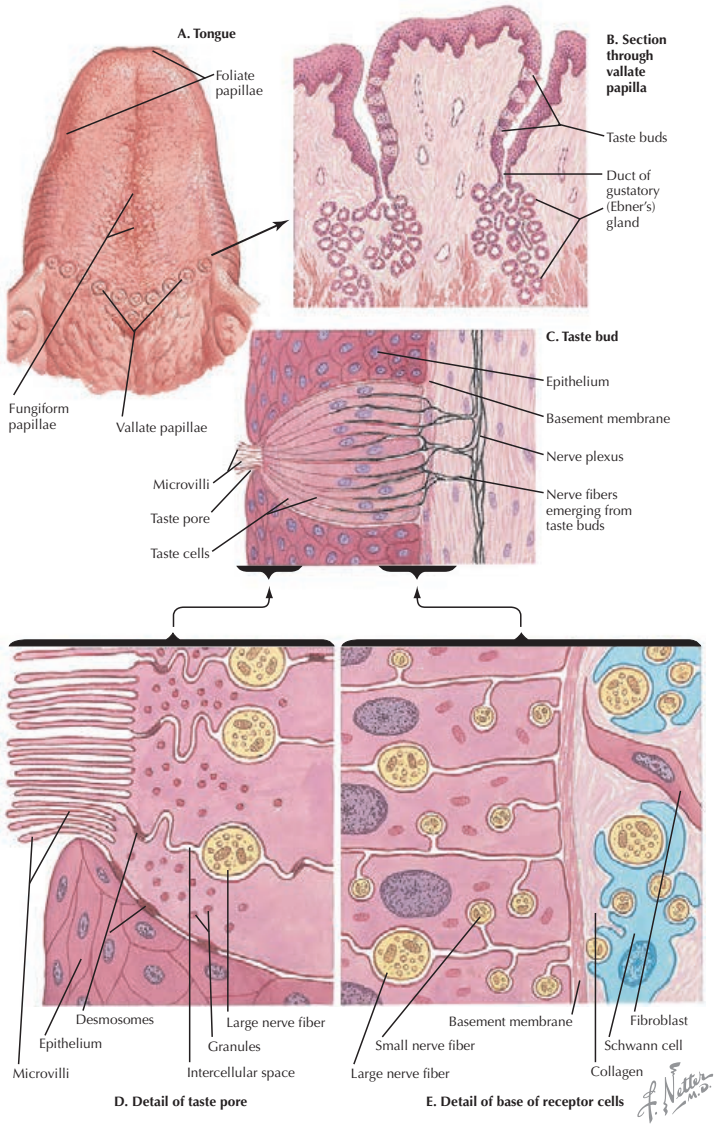


F. Netter M.D.

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

SENSORY INNERVATION

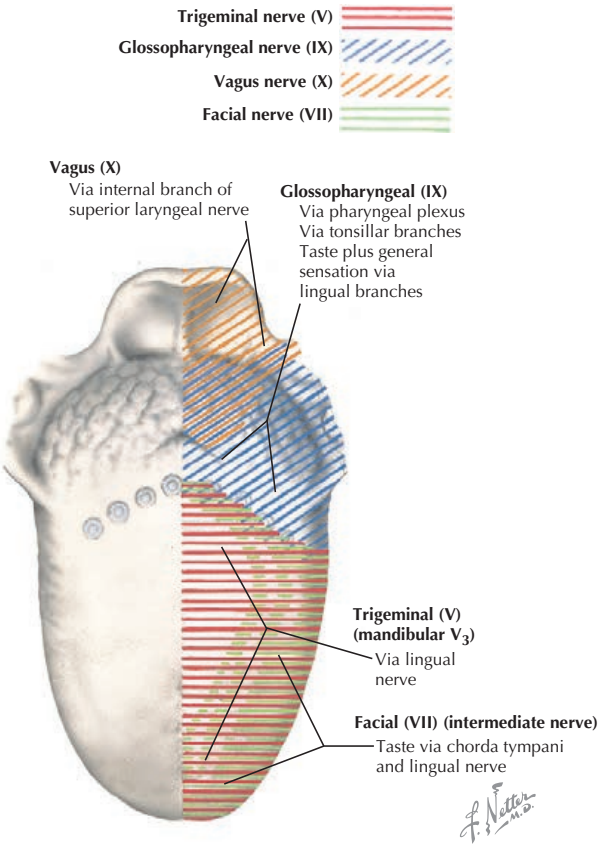
TYPES OF SENSORY NERVE SUPPLY		
Type	**Function**	**Nerves**
General somatic afferent (GSA)	Pain, temperature, discriminative touch	Trigeminal (via lingual), glossopharyngeal, and vagus (via internal laryngeal), to innervate the epithelium and mucosa
Special visceral afferent (SVA)	Taste	Facial (via chorda tympani), glossopharyngeal, and vagus (via internal laryngeal), to innervate the taste buds



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Nerve Supply

SENSORY INNERVATION *CONTINUED*

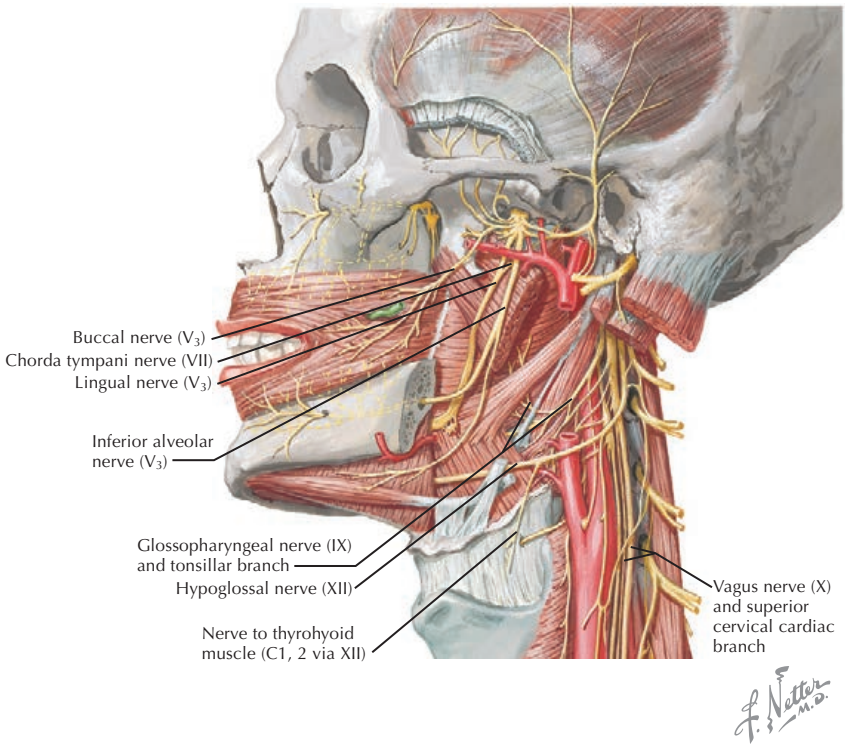


GENERAL SENSORY INNERVATION		
Nerve	**Source**	**Course**
Lingual	Mandibular division of the trigeminal n.	Lies inferior to the lateral pterygoid m. and medial and anterior to the inferior alveolar nn. within the infratemporal fossa Chorda tympani branch of the facial n. joins its posterior part Lingual n. passes between the medial pterygoid m. and the ramus of the mandible to pass obliquely, entering the oral cavity bounded by the superior pharyngeal constrictor m., the medial pterygoid, and the mandible Enters the oral cavity lying against the lingual tuberosity of the mandible The submandibular ganglion is suspended from the lingual n. at the posterior border of the hyoglossus m. Continues anteriorly and passes on the lateral surface of the hyoglossus Passes from the lateral side inferiorly and medial to the submandibular duct to reach the mucosa of the tongue Supplies GSA fibers to the epithelium and papillae of the tongue's anterior 2/3, mucosa along the floor of the oral cavity (linguoalveolar ridge), and gingiva on the lingual aspect of the mandibular teeth

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

SENSORY INNERVATION *CONTINUED*

GENERAL SENSORY INNERVATION *CONTINUED*		
Nerve	**Source**	**Course**
Glossopharyngeal	Arises as a cranial nerve from the medulla oblongata	Passes through the jugular foramen with the vagus and accessory nn. Within the foramen, it passes between the internal carotid a. and the internal jugular v. Continues inferiorly and posteriorly relative to the stylopharyngeus m. Passes anteriorly with the stylopharyngeus and travels between the superior and middle constrictor mm. to be located by the palatine tonsils Small lingual branches distribute GSA fibers to the epithelium of the tongue's posterior 1/3, in addition to the fauces
Internal laryngeal	Superior laryngeal branch of the vagus n.	Vagus n. branches from the medulla oblongata and passes through the jugular foramen with the glossopharyngeal and accessory nn. Within the foramen, it passes between the internal carotid a. and the internal jugular v. A series of nerves branch from the vagus in the neck, including the superior laryngeal n., which travels inferiorly posterior to the internal carotid a. on the side of the pharynx and divides into the internal and external laryngeal nn. The internal laryngeal n. passes inferior to the larynx and passes through the thyrohyoid membrane with the superior laryngeal vessels Distributes GSA fibers to the tongue's base at the epiglottic region and the mucous membranes of the larynx as far inferiorly as the false vocal folds

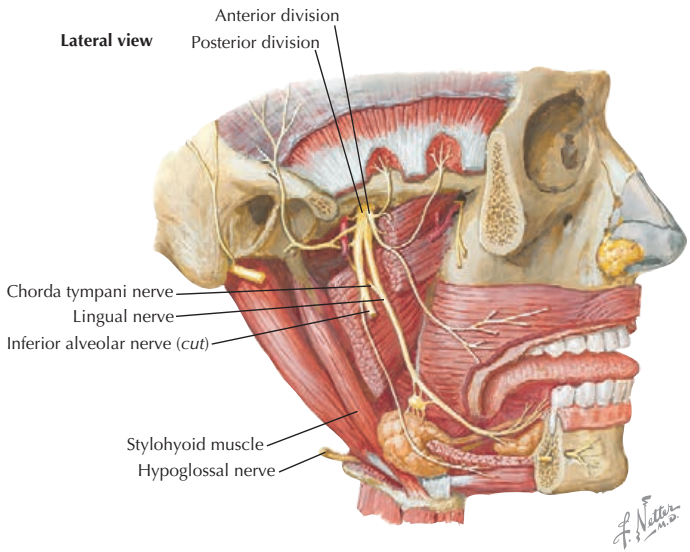


WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Nerve Supply

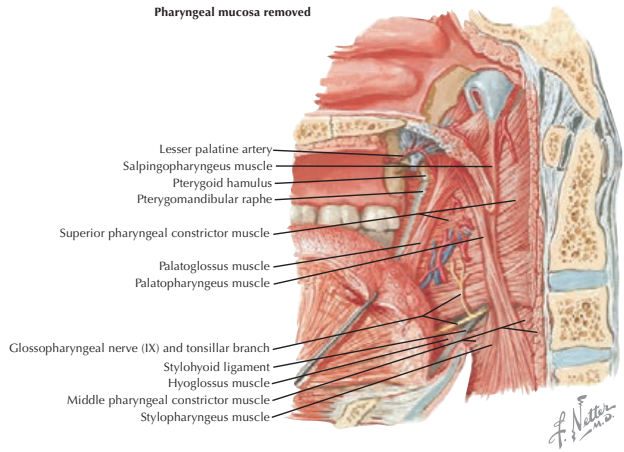
SENSORY INNERVATION *CONTINUED*

SPECIAL SENSORY INNERVATION		
Nerve	**Source**	**Course**
Chorda tympani	Facial n. in the tympanic cavity	Carries preganglionic parasympathetic fibers to the submandibular ganglion and taste fibers to the anterior 2/3 of the tongue Passes anteriorly to enter the tympanic cavity and lies along the tympanic membrane and malleus until exiting the petrotympanic fissure Joins the posterior border of the lingual n. Lingual n. is distributed to the anterior 2/3 of the tongue, and the SVA fibers from the chorda tympani travel to the taste buds in this region
Glossopharyngeal	Arises as a cranial nerve from the medulla oblongata	Passes through the jugular foramen with the vagus and accessory nn. Within the foramen, it passes between the internal carotid a. and the internal jugular v. Continues inferiorly and travels posterior to the stylopharyngeus m. Passes anteriorly with the stylopharyngeus and travels between the superior and middle constrictor mm., to be located by the palatine tonsils Small lingual branches distribute SVA fibers to the taste buds in the mucous membrane of the tongue's posterior 1/3 and the circumvallate papilla
Internal laryngeal	Superior laryngeal branch of the vagus n.	Vagus n. branches from the medulla oblongata and passes through the jugular foramen with the glossopharyngeal and accessory nn. Within the foramen, it passes between the internal carotid a. and the internal jugular v. A series of nerves branch from the vagus in the neck, including the superior laryngeal n., which travels inferiorly posterior to the internal carotid on the side of the pharynx and divides into the internal and external laryngeal nn. The internal laryngeal n. passes inferior to the larynx and passes through the thyrohyoid membrane with the superior laryngeal vessels Distributes SVA fibers to the taste buds scattered at the base of the tongue at the epiglottic region



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

SENSORY INNERVATION *CONTINUED*



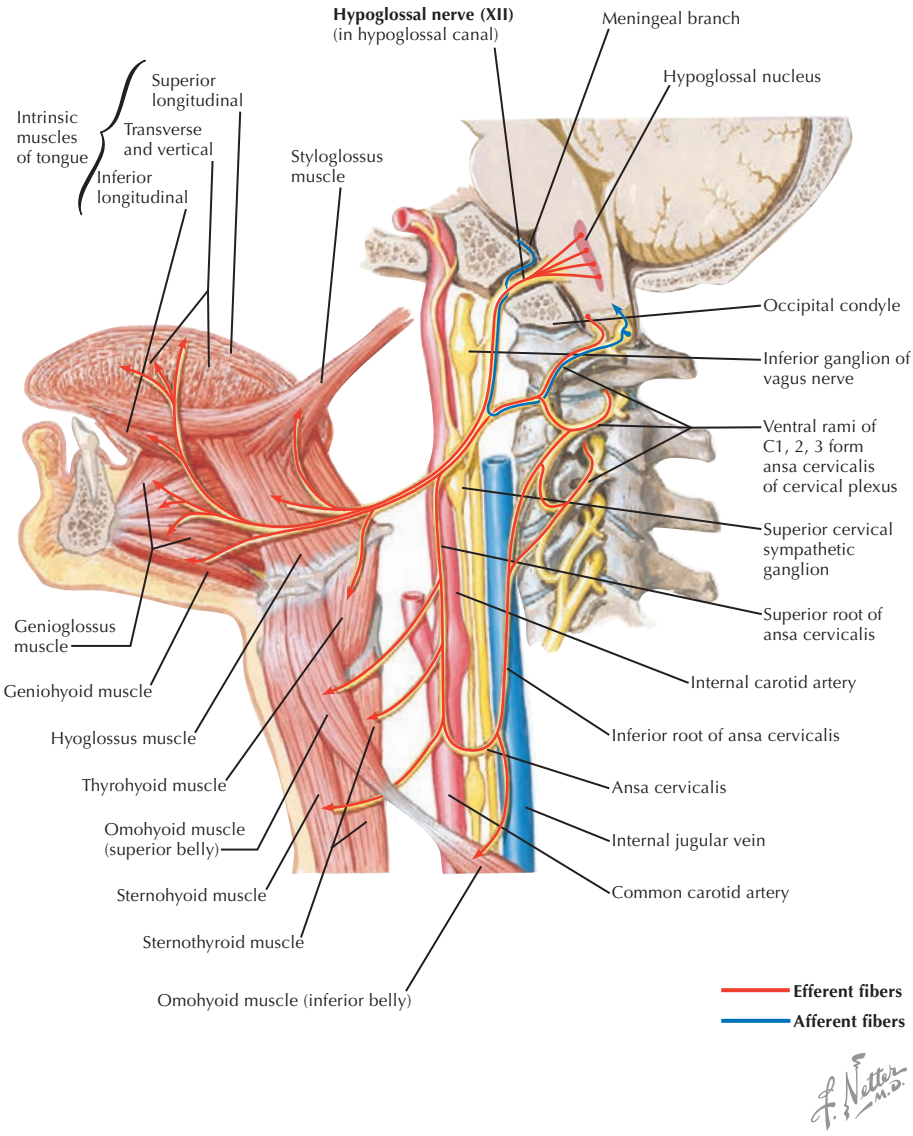
MOTOR INNERVATION

Nerve	Source	Course
Hypoglossal	Arises as a series of rootlets from the medulla oblongata and passes through the hypoglossal canal	Travels inferiorly and is located between the internal carotid a. and the internal jugular v. Passes anteriorly as it wraps around the occipital a. Passes superficial to the external carotid and the loop of the lingual a. in its anterior path Passes deep to the posterior belly of the digastric and the stylohyoid m. and lies superficial to the hyoglossus m. with the accompanying vein of the hypoglossal n. Passes deep to the mylohyoid m. and continues anterior in the genioglossus m. Muscular branches supply all intrinsic tongue muscles: hyoglossus, genioglossus, and styloglossus
Pharyngeal plexus	The motor part of the pharyngeal plexus arises from the pharyngeal branch of the vagus n. and the cranial part of the accessory n.	In the tongue, it innervates the palatoglossus m.
Pharyngeal branch of the vagus	Arises from the upper part of the inferior ganglion of the vagus n. and contains filaments from the cranial portion of the spinal accessory n.	Lies along the upper border of the middle constrictor m., where it forms the pharyngeal plexus Motor branches from the plexus are distributed to the muscles of the pharynx and soft palate (with the exception of the tensor veli palatini m.)
Cranial part of the spinal accessory n.	Emerges as 4 or 5 branches just inferior to the vagus n.'s roots	Passes laterally to the jugular foramen, where it merges with the fibers of the spinal part of the spinal accessory n. While united at this point for a short distance, it also is connected by 1 or 2 branches with the inferior ganglion of the vagus n. Exits through the jugular foramen, separates from the spinal part, and continues over the surface of the inferior ganglion of the vagus Distributed mainly to the pharyngeal branches of the vagus

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Nerve Supply

MOTOR INNERVATION *CONTINUED*

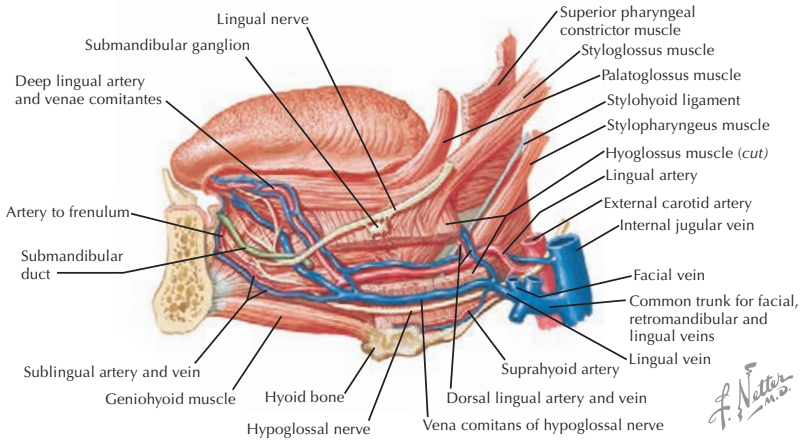


WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

14 Vascular Supply

ARTERIAL SUPPLY

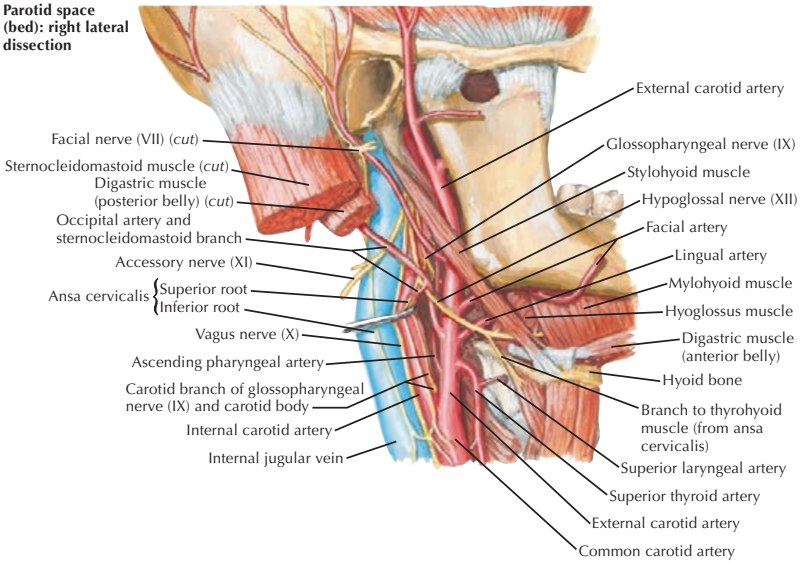
Artery	Source	Course
Lingual	External carotid a. within the carotid triangle	Passes superiorly and medially (obliquely) toward the greater cornu of the hyoid bone and makes a loop by passing anteriorly and inferiorly while traveling superficial to the middle constrictor m. While forming a loop, the artery is crossed superficially by the hypoglossal n. Passes deep to the posterior belly of the digastric m. and the stylohyoid m. as it travels anteriorly, where it gives off a suprahyoid branch that travels on the superior surface of the hyoid bone, supplying the muscles in that area The lingual a. passes deep to the hyoglossus m. and travels anteriorly between it and the genioglossus m. After passing deep to the hyoglossus, 2 to 3 small dorsal lingual aa. are given off at the posterior border of the hyoglossus; they pass in a superior direction to the posterior 1/3 of the dorsum of the tongue and provide vascular supply to the mucous membrane in this region, the palatoglossal arch, the palatine tonsil, the epiglottis, and the surrounding soft palate The lingual a. continues to pass anteriorly and gives off the sublingual branch at the anterior border of the hyoglossus; the sublingual a. passes anteriorly between the genioglossus and mylohyoid mm. to the sublingual gland and provides vascular supply to the gland and the muscles in the area The deep lingual a., the terminal branch or continuation of the lingual a. once the sublingual a. is given off, travels superiorly to reach the tongue's ventral surface Located between the inferior longitudinal m. of the tongue and the mucous membrane, the deep lingual is accompanied by branches of the lingual n., and it anastomoses with the deep lingual a. from the other side
Submental	A branch of the facial a. from the external carotid a.	Given off at the submandibular gland, travels anteriorly superficial to the mylohyoid m. Anastomoses with the sublingual branch of the lingual a. to help supply the tongue

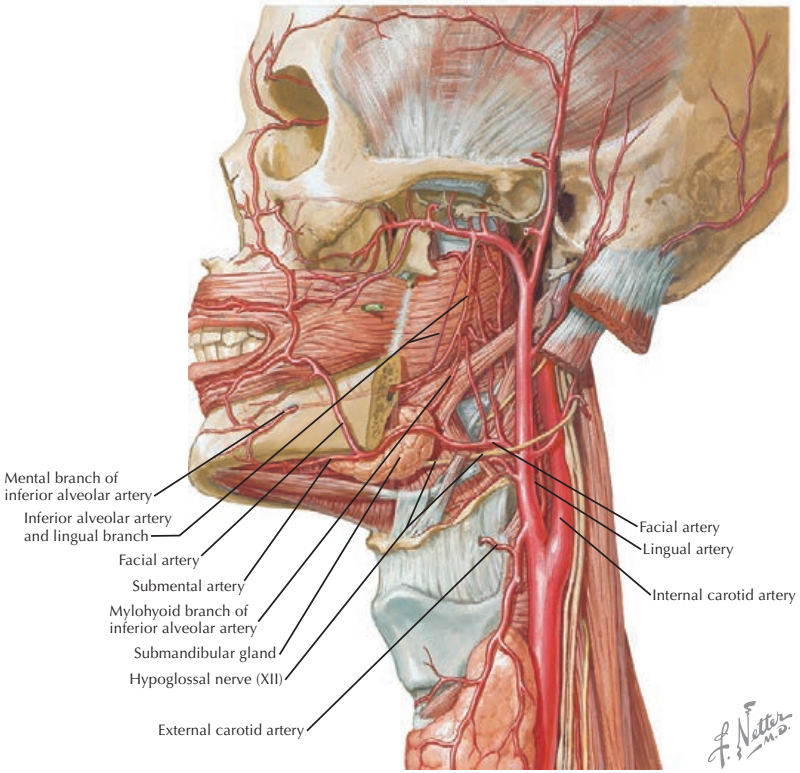


WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

ARTERIAL SUPPLY *CONTINUED*

Parotid space (bed): right lateral dissection

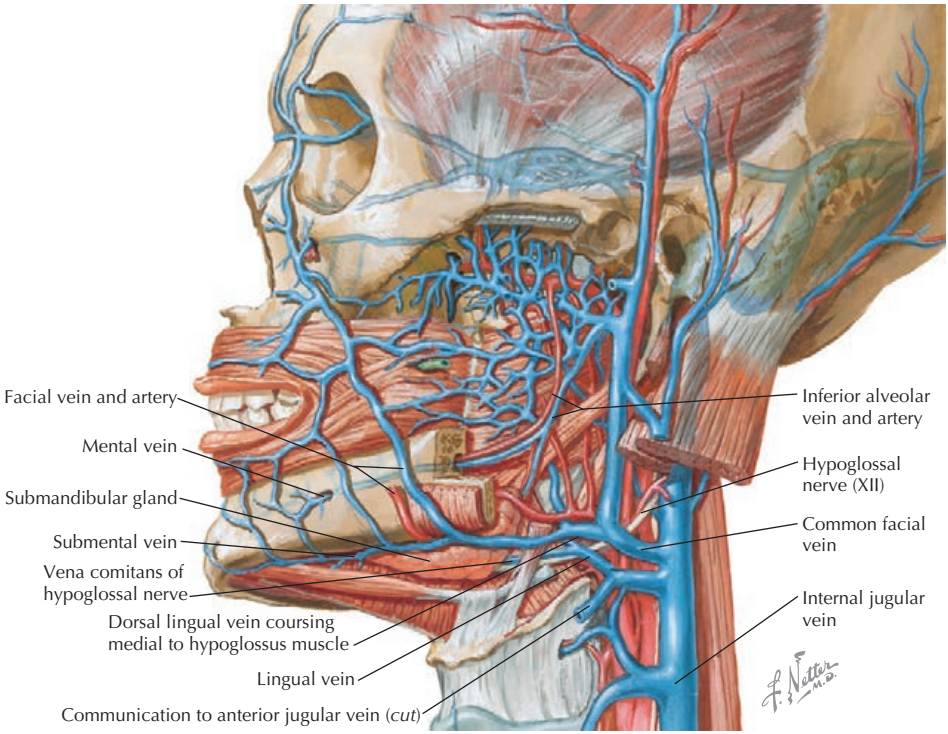




WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

VENOUS DRAINAGE

Vein	Course
Lingual	Receives tributaries from the deep lingual vv. on the ventral surface, and dorsal lingual vv. from the dorsal surface Passes with the lingual a., deep to the hyoglossus m., and ends in the internal jugular v. The vena comitans nervi hypoglossi, or accompanying vein of the hypoglossal n., begins at the tongue's apex and may either join the lingual v. or accompany the hypoglossal n. and enter the common facial v., which empties into the internal jugular
Submental	Anastomoses with the lingual v.'s branches Parallels the submental a. on the superficial surface of the mylohyoid m. and ends in the facial v.



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Clinical Correlate

ANKYLOGLOSSIA

Also known as tongue-tie

Condition in which the lingual frenulum is restricted because of an increase in tissue, which leads to reduced tongue mobility

Presentations

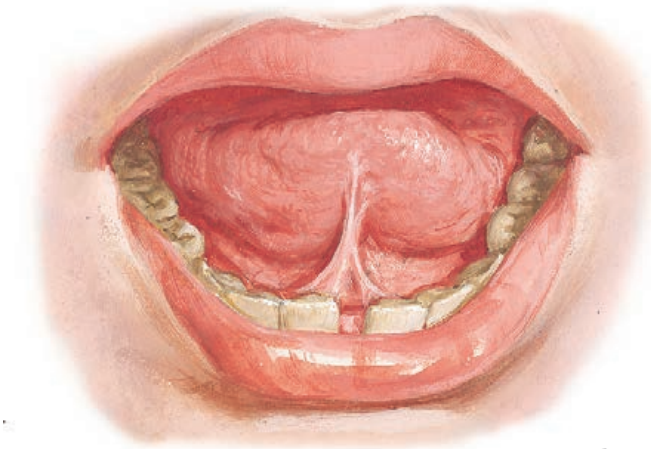
- Tongue may not be capable of protrusion beyond the incisors
- Tongue may not be capable of touching the palate
- Tongue may manifest a V-shaped notch or may appear bilobed on protrusion

Complications

- Causes problems for babies who breastfeed
- If the tongue cannot clear the oral cavity of food, caries, periodontal disease, and halitosis can result
- If condition is severe, can cause a speech impediment

Treatment

If necessary, the lingual frenulum may be cut (frenectomy)



Ankyloglossia

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

HYPOGLOSSAL NERVE PARALYSIS

Hypoglossal nerve lesions paralyze the tongue on 1 side

On protrusion, the tongue deviates to the ipsilateral (same) or contralateral side, depending on the lesion site

LOWER MOTOR NEURON LESION

Lesions to the hypoglossal nerve cause paralysis on the ipsilateral side:

- Tongue deviates to the paralyzed side on protrusion (the paralyzed muscles will lag, causing the tip to deviate)
- Musculature atrophies on the paralyzed side
- Tongue fasciculations occur on the paralyzed side

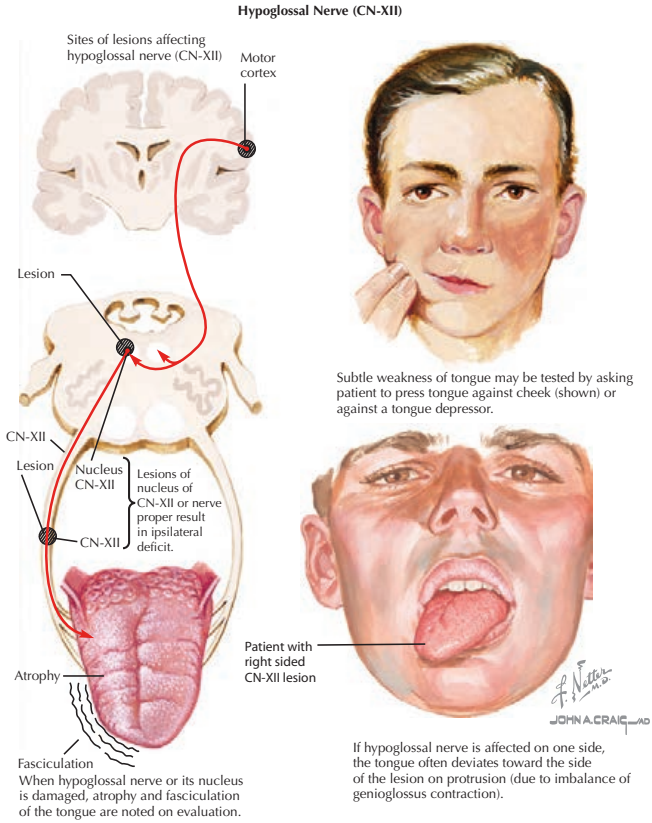
Example: With a neck wound that cuts the right hypoglossal nerve, the tongue deviates to the right on protrusion, and the right half of the tongue will later demonstrate atrophy and fasciculations

UPPER MOTOR NEURON LESION

Causes paralysis on the contralateral side:

- Tongue deviates to the side *opposite* the lesion
- Musculature atrophies on side *opposite* the lesion

Example: After a stroke on the right side of the brain that affects the right upper motor neurons, the tongue deviates to the left on protrusion, and the left half of the tongue will atrophy



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Clinical Correlate

SQUAMOUS CELL CARCINOMA

Accounts for most cancers of the oral cavity

In the tongue, usually on the anterolateral aspect

Alcohol and tobacco use are risk factors

Premalignant lesions, such as erythroplasia and leukoplakia, should be identified, because early diagnosis and treatment are paramount in long-term survival

Radiographic imaging helps reveal the tumor's extent and location

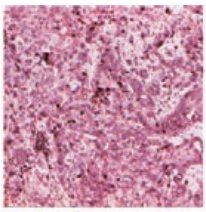
Staging of the tumor guides prognosis

Treatment

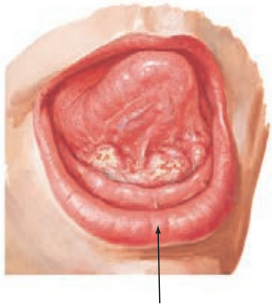
Excision or radiation therapy, or possibly a combination with chemotherapy

If lesion is detected early, excision may suffice

With later tumor stages, a second primary squamous cell carcinoma must be excluded



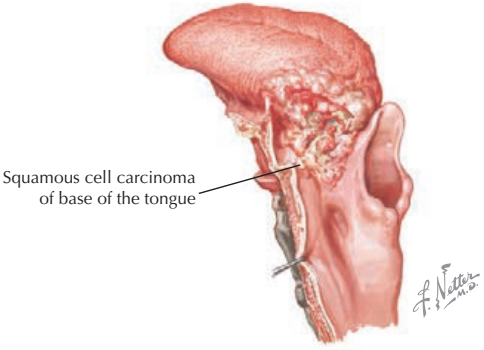
Squamous cell carcinoma



Squamous cell carcinoma of floor of mouth invading mandible



Squamous cell carcinoma of tongue



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

LEUKOPLAKIA

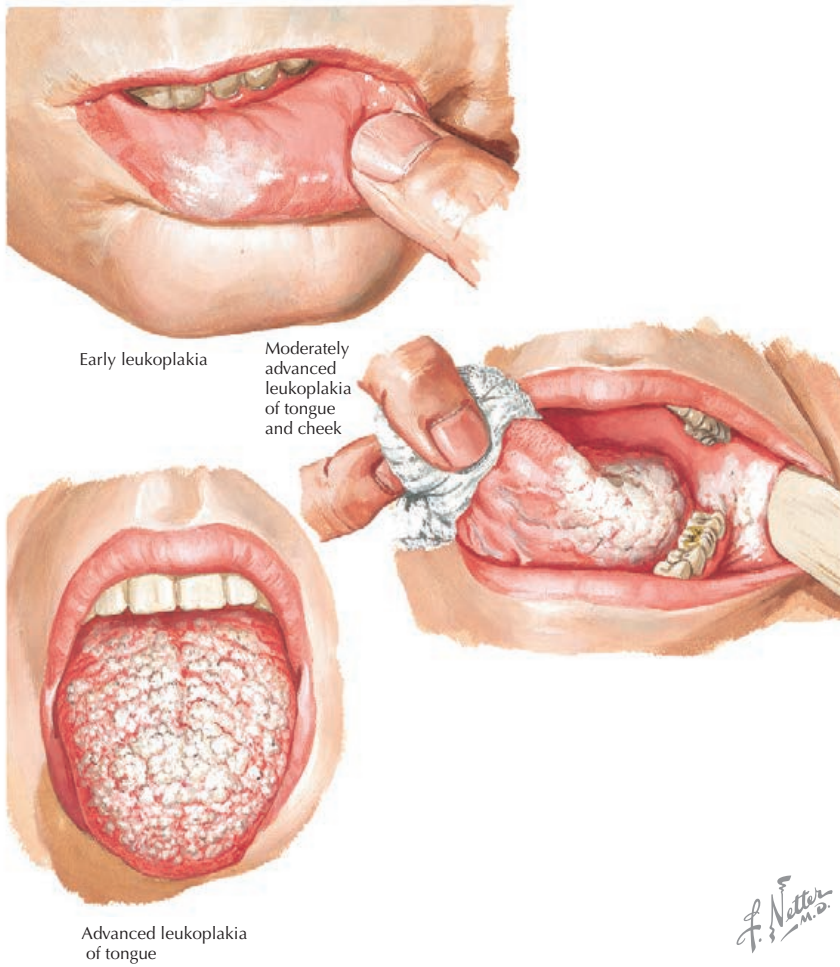
A common premalignant condition of the oral cavity involving the formation of white spots on the mucous membranes of the tongue and inside the mouth

Hairy leukoplakia is a type observed in persons with compromised immune systems

Risk factors:

- Tobacco use
- Alcohol use
- Human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection
- Epstein-Barr virus infection

Although a precancerous lesion, it may not progress to oral cancer



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

CHAPTER 15
PHARYNX

Overview and Topographic Anatomy 402
Parts of the Pharynx 404
Muscles 406
Potential Apertures in Pharyngeal Wall 410
Vascular Supply 411
Nerve Supply 414
Clinical Correlate 417

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

15 Overview and Topographic Anatomy

GENERAL INFORMATION

Pharynx: 5-inch muscular tube from base of the skull to the lower border of the cricoid cartilage (C6)

Posterior portion of the pharynx lies against the prevertebral fascia

Lies posterior to the nasal and oral cavities and the larynx and thus is divided into 3 parts:

- Nasopharynx
- Oropharynx
- Laryngopharynx

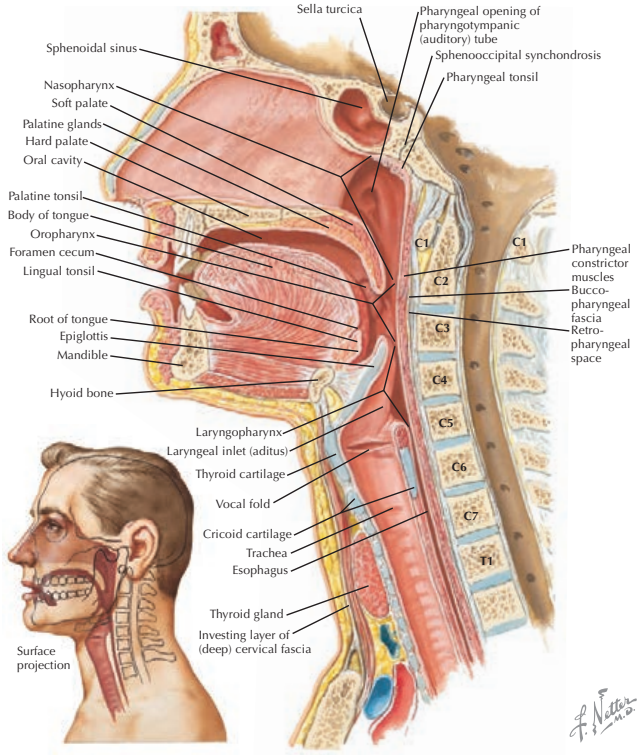
Responsible for properly conducting food to the esophagus and air to the lungs

Composed of:

- Three constrictor muscles
- Three longitudinal muscles
- Cartilaginous part of the pharyngotympanic tube
- Soft palate

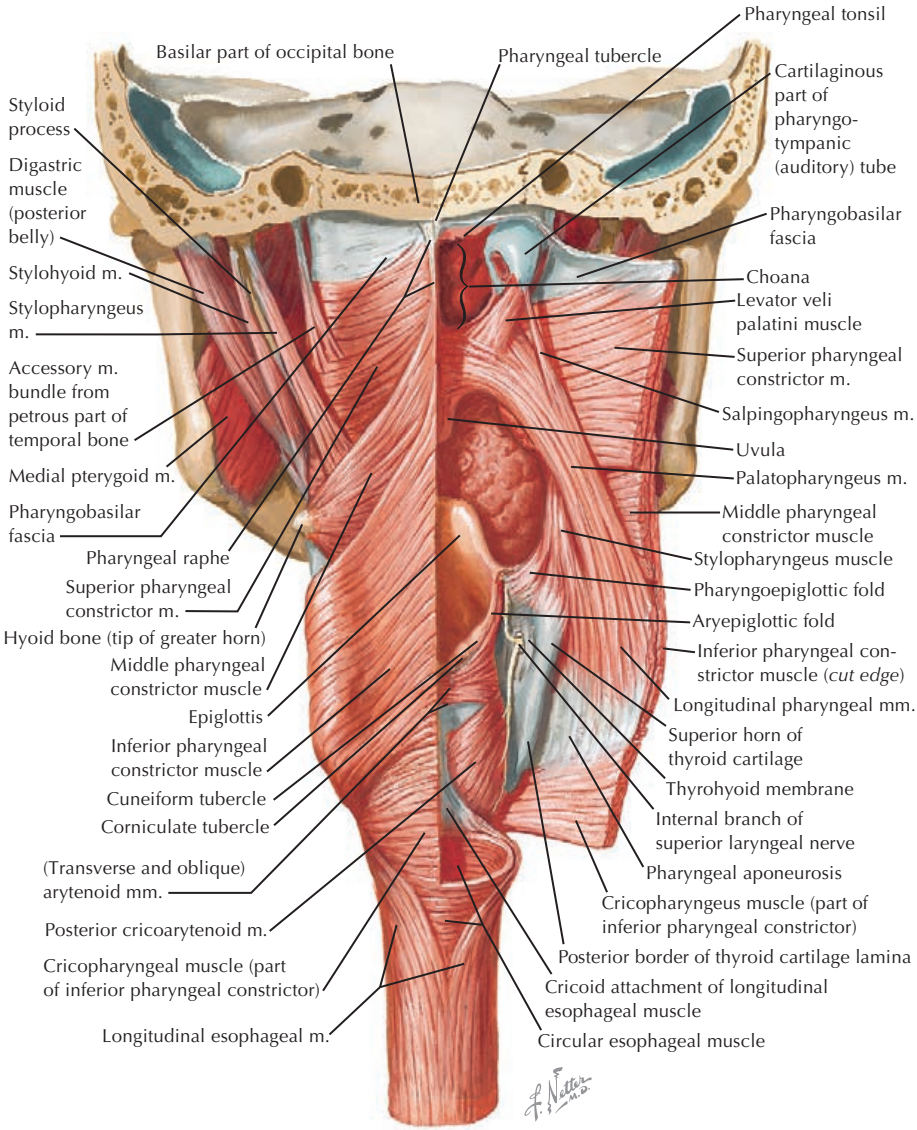
The wall of the pharynx has 5 layers:

- Mucous membrane—the innermost layer
- Submucosa
- Pharyngobasilar fascia—the fibrous layer attached to the skull anchoring the pharynx
- Muscular—3 inner longitudinal and 3 outer circular (constrictor) muscles that overlap such that the superior constrictor is the innermost, whereas the inferior constrictor is the outermost muscle
- Buccopharyngeal fascia—loose layer of connective tissue continuous with the fascia over the buccinator and pharyngeal muscles, and the location of the pharyngeal plexus of nerves and the pharyngeal plexus of veins



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

GENERAL INFORMATION *CONTINUED*



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

15 Parts of the Pharynx

NASOPHARYNX

Boundaries	Major Anatomic Features	Comments
Roof—fornix *Floor*—soft palate *Anterior*—choanae of the nasal cavity *Posterior*—mucosa covering superior constrictor *Lateral*—mucosa covering superior constrictor	Ostium of the auditory tube opens into the nasopharynx Torus tubarius is an elevation formed by the base of the cartilaginous portion of the auditory tube, which lies superior to the ostium of the tube Salpingopharyngeal fold is mucous membrane that lies over the salpingopharyngeus m., connecting the torus tubarius to the lateral wall of the pharynx Pharyngeal recess is located posterior to the salpingopharyngeal fold and contains the pharyngeal tonsils (adenoids)	Has a respiratory function The auditory tube connects the middle ear with the nasopharynx and helps equalize air pressure on both sides of the tympanic membrane The cartilaginous portion of the auditory tube normally is closed, except during deglutition and yawning The auditory tube allows spread of infections between the middle ear and the nasopharynx

OROPHARYNX

Boundaries	Major Anatomic Features	Comment
Superior—nasopharynx *Inferior*—posterior 1/3 of the tongue *Anterior*—palatoglossal fold of the oral cavity *Posterior*—mucosa covering the superior and middle constrictor mm. *Lateral*—mucosa covering the superior and middle constrictors	Palatine tonsils are located in the oropharynx between the palatoglossal and palatopharyngeal folds Epiglottic vallecula—the depression immediately posterior to the root of the tongue	Has a respiratory and a digestive function

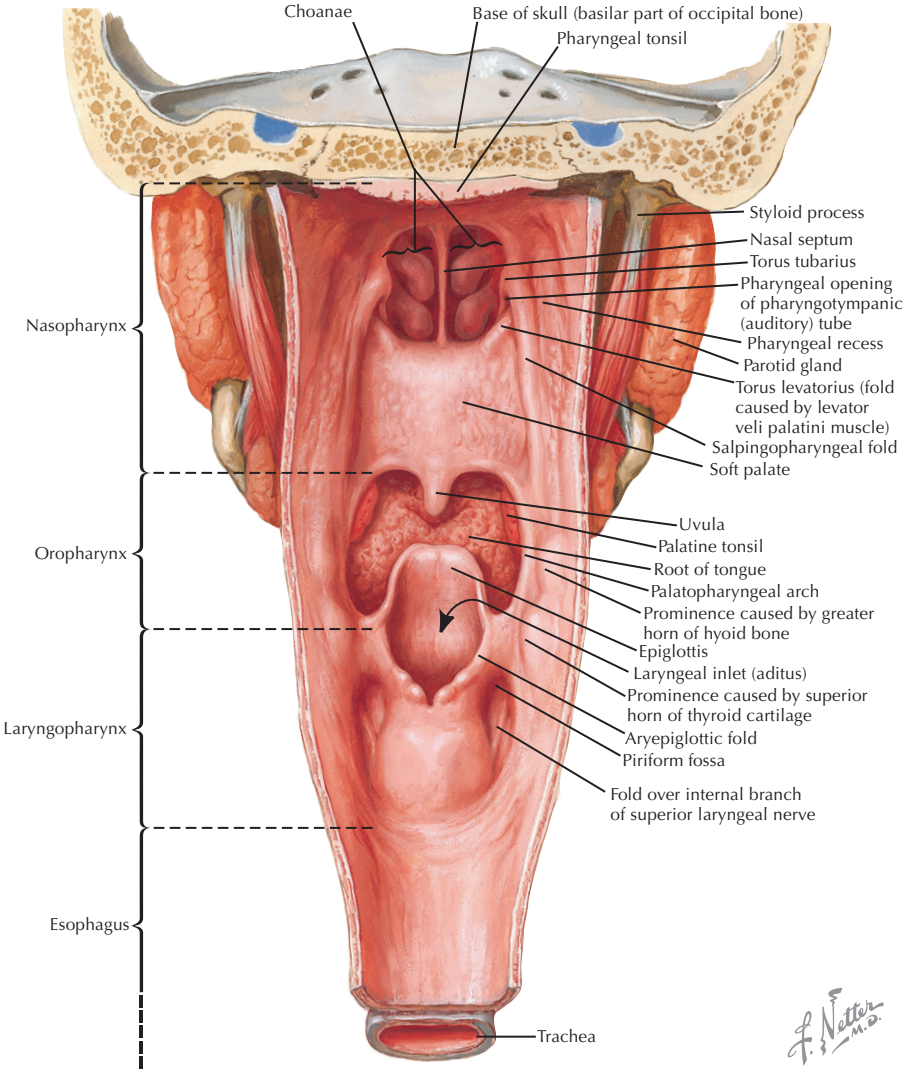
LARYNGOPHARYNX

Boundaries	Major Anatomic Features	Comment
Superior—oropharynx *Anterior*—larynx and epiglottis *Posterior*—mucosa covering middle and inferior constrictor mm. *Lateral*—mucosa covering middle and inferior constrictors	Piriform recess is a small depression located on the lateral wall of the laryngopharyngeal cavity on either side of the entrance to the larynx	Communicates with the larynx The piriform recess is a potential location for objects to become lodged

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Parts of the Pharynx

LARYNGOPHARYNX *CONTINUED*



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

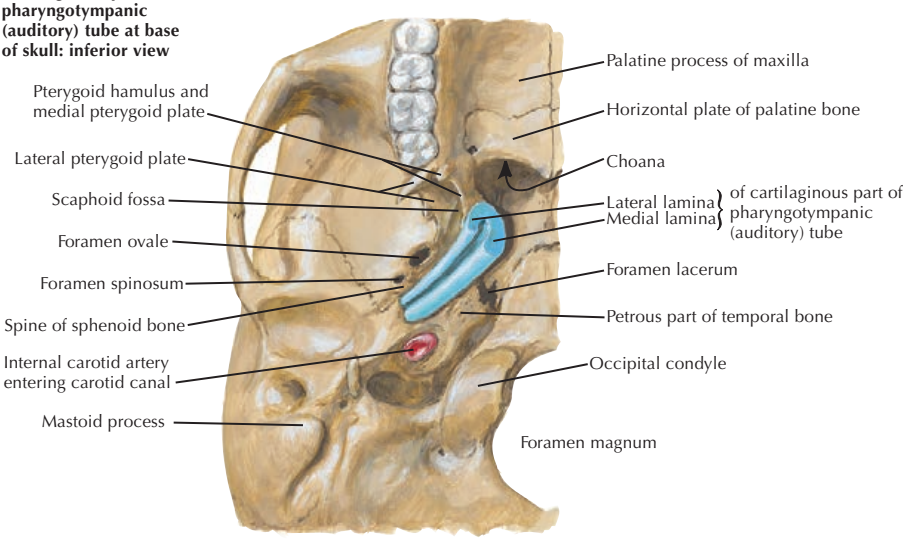
OVERVIEW

Muscle	Origin	Insertion	Actions	Nerve Supply
Superior constrictor	Pterygoid hamulus Pterygomandibular raphe Retromolar trigone of mandible Side of tongue	Pharyngeal tubercle Pharyngeal raphe	Constricts the *upper* portion of the pharynx	Pharyngeal plexus (the motor portion of this plexus is formed by the pharyngeal branch of the vagus n. and the cranial part of the spinal accessory n.)
Middle constrictor	Stylohyoid lig. Lesser cornu of hyoid Greater cornu of hyoid	Pharyngeal raphe	Constricts the *middle* portion of the pharynx	
Inferior constrictor	Oblique line of thyroid cartilage Side of cricoid cartilage		Constricts the *lower* portion of the pharynx	Pharyngeal plexus External laryngeal n. of the vagus Recurrent laryngeal n. of the vagus
Palatopharyngeus	Posterior border of hard palate Palatine aponeurosis	Posterior border of the lamina of the thyroid cartilage	Elevates pharynx Helps close the nasopharynx	Pharyngeal plexus (the motor portion of this plexus is formed by the pharyngeal branch of the vagus n. and the cranial part of the spinal accessory n.)
Salpingopharyngeus	Cartilage of auditory tube		Elevates the upper and lateral portions of the pharynx	
Stylopharyngeus	Medial aspect of base of styloid process		Elevates pharynx Expands the sides of the pharynx	Glossopharyngeal n.

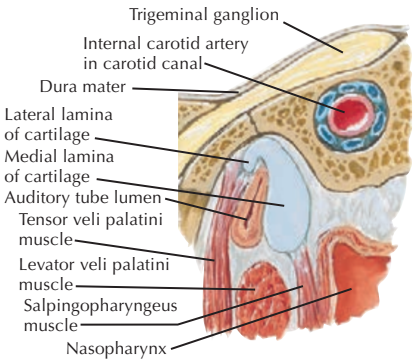
WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

OVERVIEW *CONTINUED*

Cartilaginous part of pharyngotympanic (auditory) tube at base of skull: inferior view

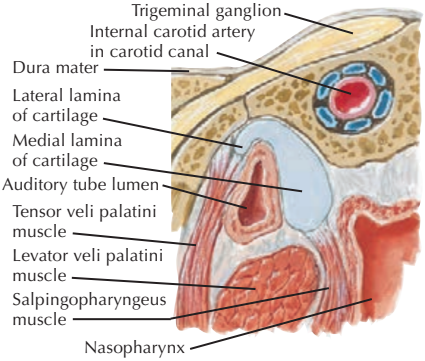


Section through cartilaginous part of pharyngotympanic (auditory) tube, with tube closed



Pharyngotympanic (auditory) tube closed by elastic recoil of cartilage, tissue turgidity and tension of salpingopharyngeus muscles

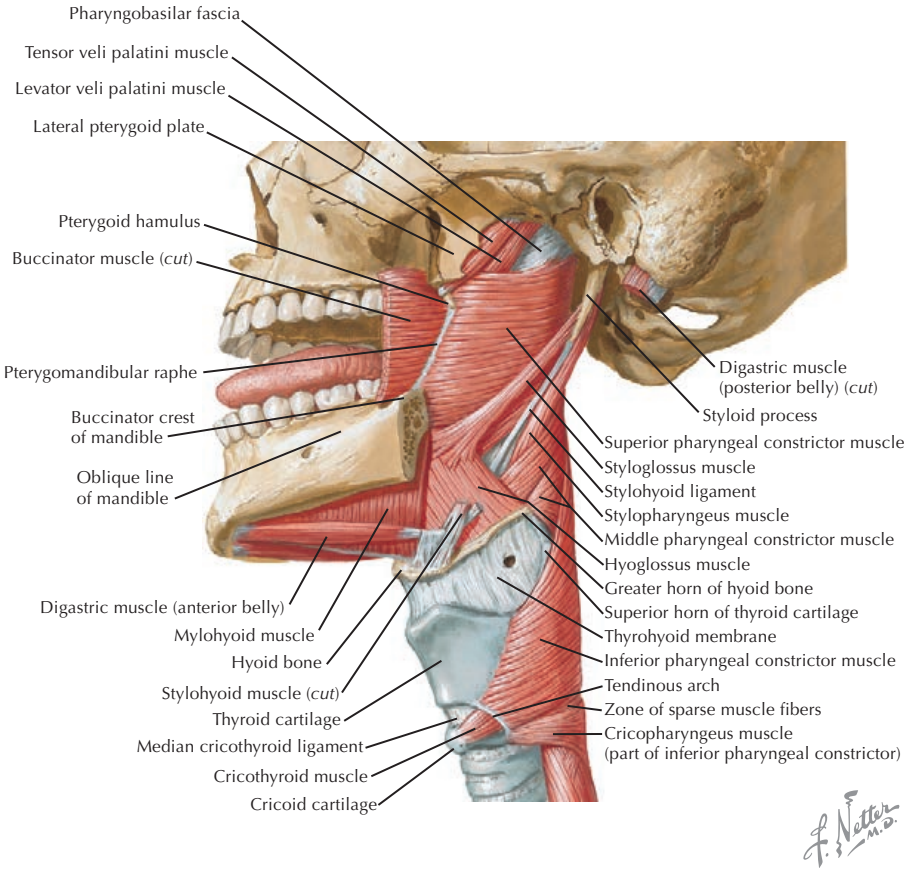
Section through cartilaginous part of pharyngotympanic (auditory) tube, with tube open



Lumen opened chiefly when attachment of tensor veli palatini muscle pulls wall of tube laterally during swallowing

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

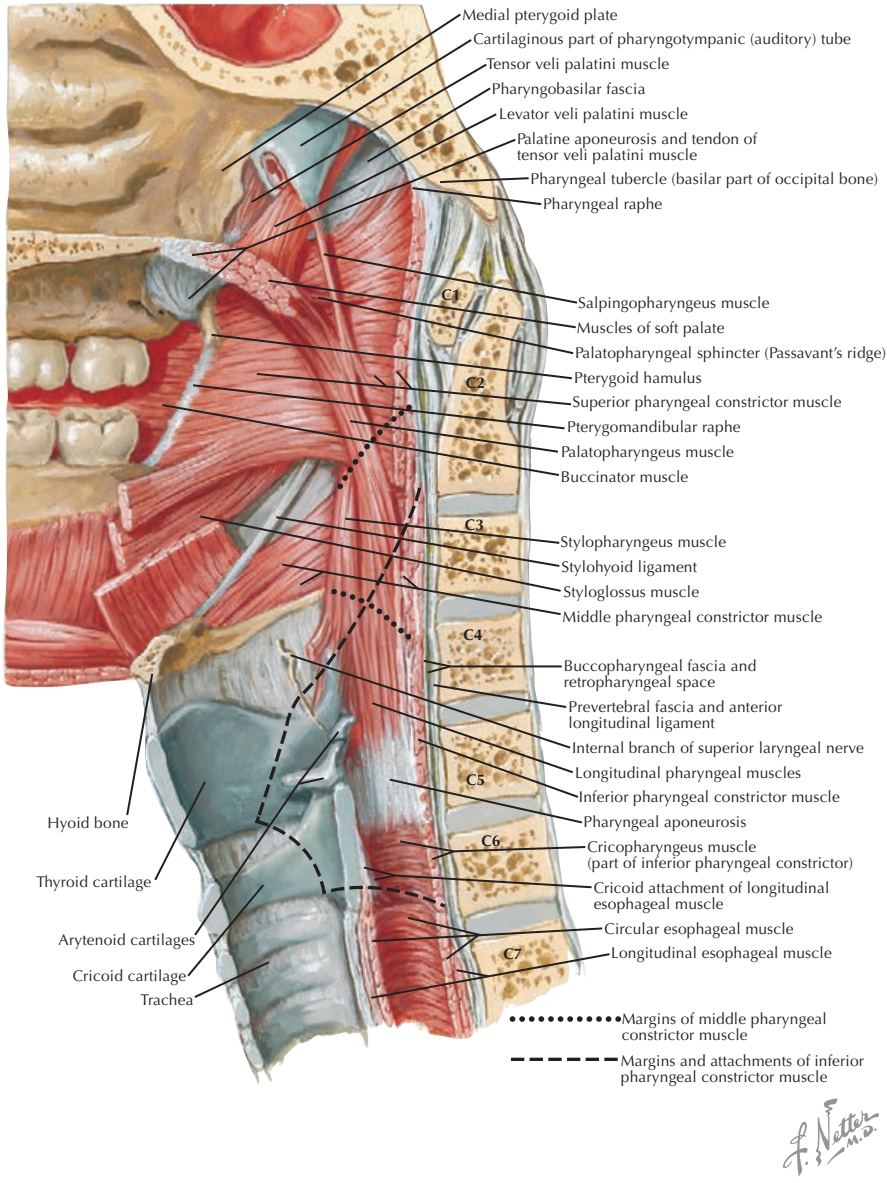
OVERVIEW *CONTINUED*



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Muscles

OVERVIEW *CONTINUED*



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

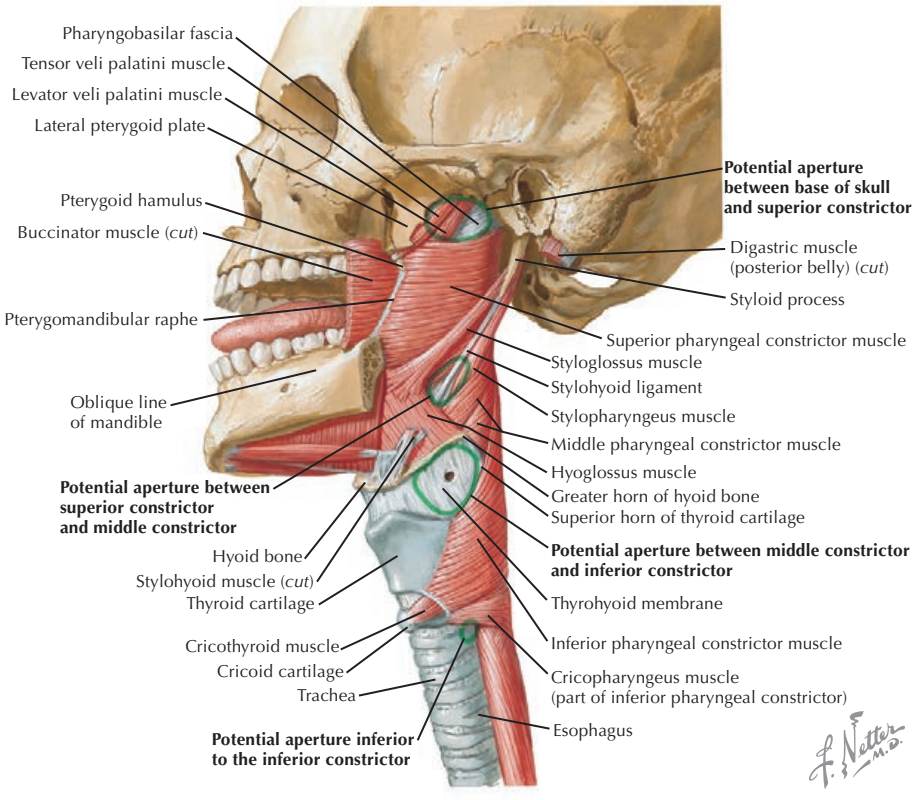
15 Potential Apertures in Pharyngeal Wall

LOCATIONS AND STRUCTURES

The overlapping arrangement of the 3 constrictor muscles leaves 4 potential apertures in the pharyngeal musculature

Anatomic structures enter and exit the pharynx through these potential apertures

OVERVIEW OF POTENTIAL APERTURES	
Location	**Anatomic Structures That Pass Through**
Between base of the skull and the superior constrictor m.	Auditory tube Levator veli palatini m. Ascending pharyngeal a. Ascending palatine a.
Between the superior and middle constrictor mm.	Stylopharyngeus m. Glossopharyngeal n. Tonsillar branch of the ascending palatine a. Stylohyoid lig.
Between the middle and inferior constrictor mm.	Internal laryngeal n. Superior laryngeal a. and v.
Inferior to the inferior constrictor m.	Recurrent laryngeal n. Inferior laryngeal a. and v.



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

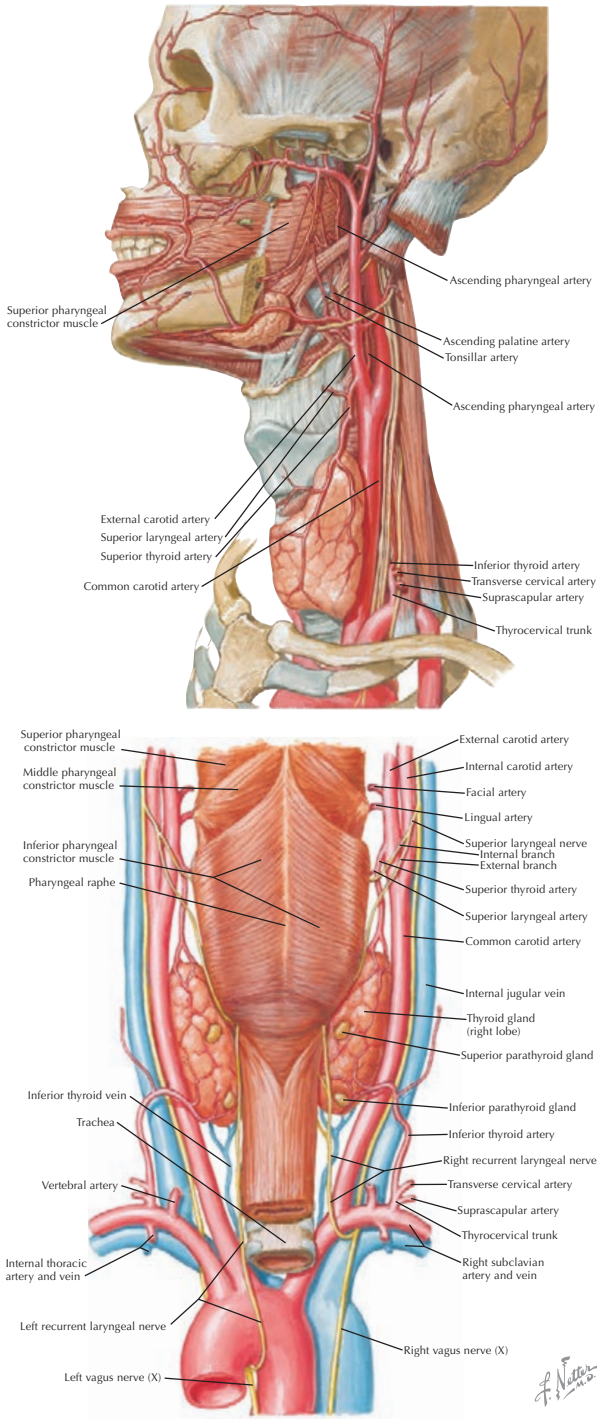
Vascular Supply

ARTERIAL SUPPLY

Artery	Source	Course
Ascending pharyngeal	The posterior portion of the external carotid a. near the bifurcation of the common carotid a.	The smallest branch arising from the external carotid a. Ascends superiorly between the lateral aspect of the pharynx and the internal carotid a. *Has 2 major sets of branches:* • Pharyngeal—a series of 3 small branches that supplies the stylopharyngeus and the middle and inferior constrictor mm. • Palatine—supplies the superior constrictor, palatine tonsil, soft palate, and auditory tube
Ascending palatine	Facial a.	Ascends superiorly along the lateral side of the pharynx, typically between the stylopharyngeus and the styloglossus mm. Passes through the aperture between the base of the skull and the superior constrictor m. to supply it and the soft palate
Tonsillar		While ascending superiorly along the lateral side of the pharynx, it passes into and supplies the superior constrictor m. until reaching the palatine tonsil and root of the tongue
Pharyngeal	The 3rd part of the maxillary a. in the pterygopalatine fossa	Passes posteriorly with the pharyngeal n. into the pharyngeal canal Emerges to supply the superior portion of the nasopharynx and the auditory tube
Superior thyroid	The 1st branch of the external carotid a.	Passes inferiorly along the inferior constrictor m. to supply the thyroid gland
Inferior thyroid	Thyrocervical trunk	Has a series of branches The pharyngeal branch supplies the pharynx

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

ARTERIAL SUPPLY *CONTINUED*

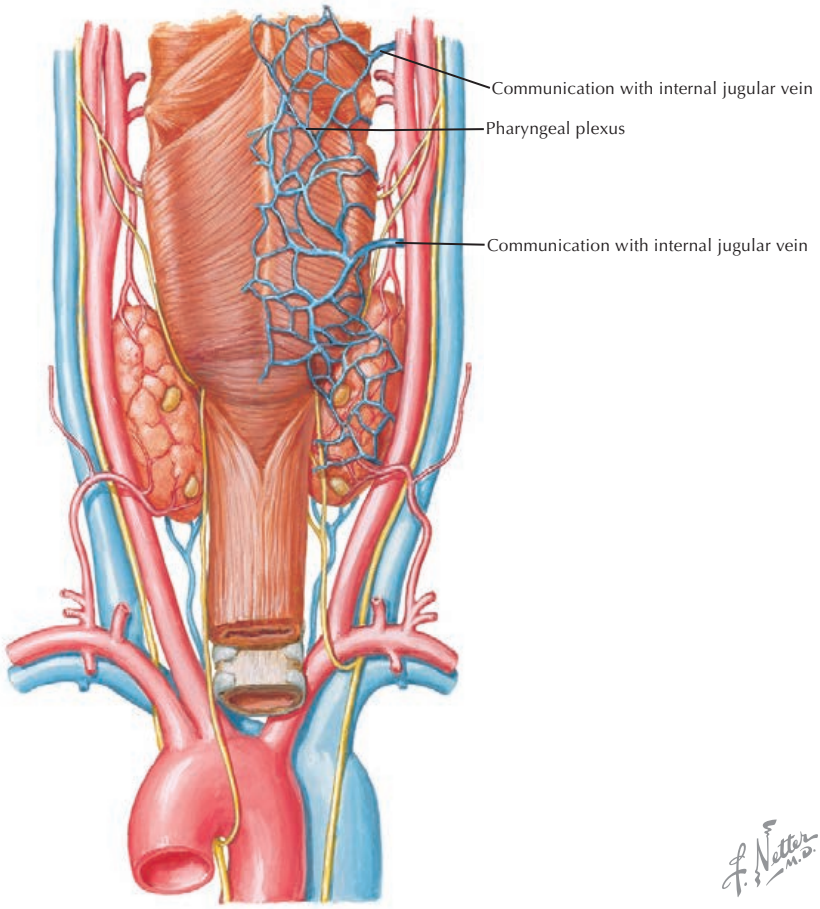


WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Vascular Supply

VENOUS DRAINAGE

Vein	Course
Pharyngeal plexus	Located on the outer surface of the pharynx in the buccopharyngeal fascia Gives rise to pharyngeal vv., which drain into the internal jugular v. and also into the pterygoid plexus of veins along the lateral pterygoid m. The pharyngeal vv. also may drain into the facial, lingual, or superior thyroid v.



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

15 Nerve Supply

GENERAL INFORMATION

Supplies motor and sensory innervation to most of the pharynx

Composed of:

- Pharyngeal branch of the glossopharyngeal nerve
- Pharyngeal branch of the vagus nerve
- Cranial part of the spinal accessory nerve

PHARYNGEAL PLEXUS

Nerve	Function	Course	Sensory	Motor
Pharyngeal branch of the glossopharyngeal	The major branch of the glossopharyngeal n. that contributes to the pharyngeal plexus Mainly sensory, but has motor function	3 or 4 filaments unite to form 1 pharyngeal branch opposite the middle constrictor m. This branch, along with the pharyngeal branch of the vagus and spinal accessory nn., forms the pharyngeal plexus	Sensory branches contributing to the plexus perforate the pharyngeal muscles and supply its mucous membranes (mainly oropharynx region)	Aids the pharyngeal branch of the vagus n. and cranial part of the spinal accessory n.
Pharyngeal branch of the vagus	The major branch of the vagus n. that contributes to the pharyngeal plexus Mainly motor, but has sensory function	Arises from the upper part of the inferior ganglion of the vagus n. and contains filaments from the cranial portion of the spinal accessory n. (cranial n. XI) Lies along the upper border of the middle constrictor m., where it forms the pharyngeal plexus From the plexus, the motor branches are distributed to the pharyngeal and soft palate muscles (with the exception of the tensor veli palatini m.)	Sensory branches contributing to the plexus perforate the pharyngeal muscles and supply the remainder of the pharyngeal mucous membranes	Superior constrictor, middle constrictor, inferior constrictor, palatopharyngeus, salpingopharyngeus mm.

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

PHARYNGEAL PLEXUS *CONTINUED*

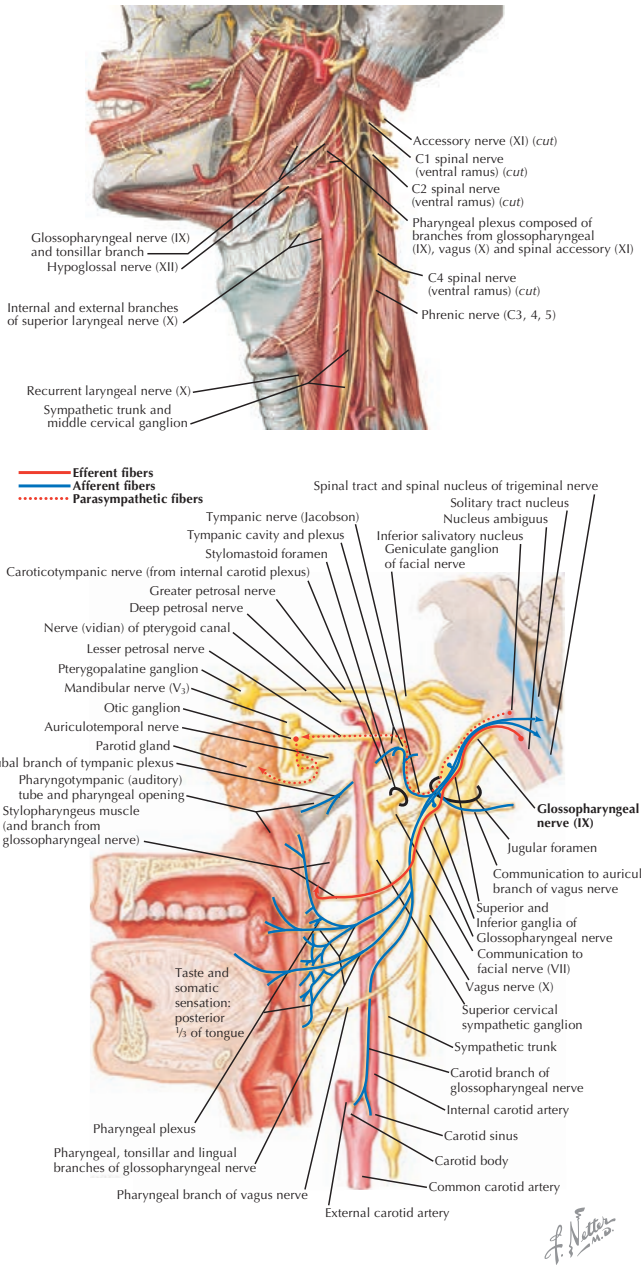
Nerve	Function	Course	Sensory	Motor
Cranial part of the spinal accessory	Contributes with the pharyngeal branch of the vagus to supply the major portion of the motor innervation of the muscles of the pharynx	Emerges as 4 or 5 branches just inferior to the roots of the vagus n. Passes laterally to the jugular foramen, where it merges with fibers of the spinal part of the spinal accessory While united for a short distance, it also is connected by 1 or 2 branches with the inferior ganglion of the vagus It then exits through the jugular foramen, separates from the spinal part, and continues over the surface of the inferior ganglion of the vagus to be distributed mainly to the pharyngeal branches of the vagus		Aids the pharyngeal branch of the vagus n.

OTHER INNERVATION OF THE PHARYNX

Nerve	Function	Course	Sensory	Motor
Recurrent laryngeal branch of the vagus	A small contributor to the motor innervation of the muscles of the pharynx Provides significant innervation to the larynx	Branch of the vagus Wraps around the aorta posterior to the ligamentum arteriosum on the left side Wraps around the right subclavian a. on the right side Ascends on the lateral side of the trachea until reaching the pharynx, where it passes deep to the inferior constrictor to reach the larynx		Part of the inferior constrictor
Pharyngeal	A small sensory nerve	Arises from the maxillary division of the trigeminal in the pterygopalatine fossa Passes posteriorly through the pharyngeal canal with the artery to enter the nasopharynx	Supplies sensory fibers to the nasopharynx and the auditory tube	

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

OTHER INNERVATION OF THE PHARYNX *CONTINUED*



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

DEGLUTITION

Deglutition, or swallowing, is a combination of voluntary and involuntary muscular contractions to move a bolus of food from the oral cavity to the esophagus

Deglutition begins when the tip of the tongue is placed into contact with the anterior portion of the palate and the bolus is pushed posteriorly

The soft palate begins to elevate, and Passavant's ridge starts to form in the posterior wall of the pharynx and moves closer to the soft palate

As more of the tongue is pushed against the hard palate, the bolus is moved into the oropharynx, and the soft palate makes contact with Passavant's ridge to close off the nasopharynx from the oropharynx

Once the bolus reaches the epiglottic vallecula, the hyoid and larynx are elevated and the tip of the epiglottis is tipped down slightly over the laryngeal aditus

A "stripping wave" is created on the posterior wall of the pharynx to help move the bolus

Bolus splits into 2 streams that flow on either side of the epiglottis and unite to enter the esophagus

The soft palate is pulled down by the palatopharyngeus muscles and the pressure of the wave from the movement of the bolus, while the stripping wave continues to help move the bolus from the oropharynx

The cricopharyngeal portion of the inferior constrictor relaxes to help the bolus enter the esophagus

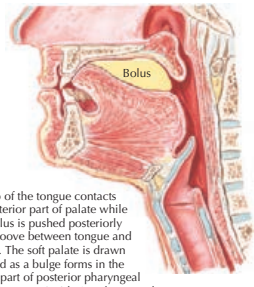
Laryngeal vestibule and rima glottidis are closed to prevent the bolus from entering the larynx

Stripping wave empties the last of the bolus from the epiglottic vallecula, and the major portion of the bolus is already in the esophagus

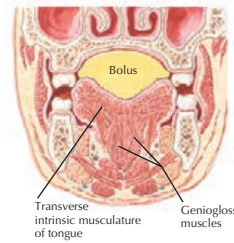
All structures return to their initial position as the stripping wave moves into the esophagus

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

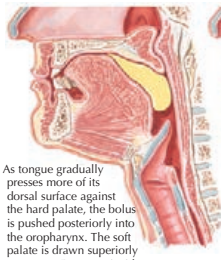
DEGLUTITION *CONTINUED*



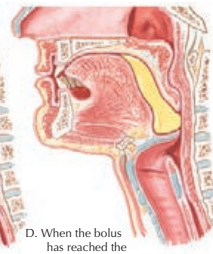
A. The tip of the tongue contacts the anterior part of palate while the bolus is pushed posteriorly in a groove between tongue and palate. The soft palate is drawn upward as a bulge forms in the upper part of posterior pharyngeal wall (Passavant's ridge) and approaches the rising soft palate.



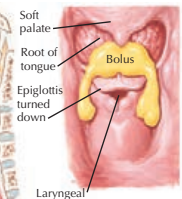
B. The bolus lies in a groove on the dorsal surface of the tongue created by contraction of genioglossus and transverse intrinsic mm.



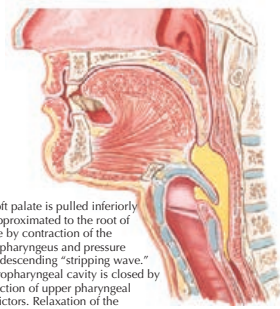
C. As tongue gradually presses more of its dorsal surface against the hard palate, the bolus is pushed posteriorly into the oropharynx. The soft palate is drawn superiorly to contact Passavant's ridge and closes off the nasopharynx. A receptive space is created in the oropharynx as the root of the tongue moves slightly anterior. The stylopharyngeus and upper pharyngeal constrictor mm. contract to raise the pharyngeal wall over the bolus.



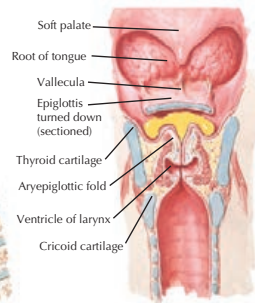
D. When the bolus has reached the vallecula, the hyoid and larynx move superior and anterior while the epiglottis is tipped inferiorly. A "stripping wave" on the posterior pharyngeal wall moves inferiorly.



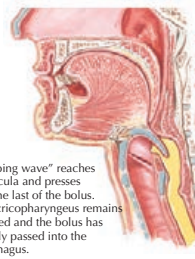
E. The epiglottis is tipped inferiorly over the laryngeal aditus but does not completely close it. The bolus flows in two streams around each side of epiglottis to the piriform fossae and unite to enter the esophagus. A trickle of food may enter the laryngeal aditus.



F. The soft palate is pulled inferiorly and approximated to the root of tongue by contraction of the palatopharyngeus and pressure of the descending "stripping wave." The oropharyngeal cavity is closed by contraction of upper pharyngeal constrictors. Relaxation of the cricopharyngeus permits entry of the bolus into the esophagus. A trickle of food may enter the laryngeal aditus.



G. Laryngeal vestibule is closed by approximation of aryepiglottic and ventricular folds, preventing entry of food beyond aditus into the larynx.



H. "Stripping wave" reaches vallecula and presses out the last of the bolus. The cricopharyngeus remains relaxed and the bolus has largely passed into the esophagus.



I. "Stripping wave" passes the pharynx and the epiglottis begins to turn superiorly as the hyoid and larynx descend. Communication with the nasopharynx is re-established.



J. All structures of the pharynx return to their resting position as the "stripping wave" passes into the esophagus, pushing the bolus before it.

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

CHAPTER 16
LARYNX

Overview and Topographic Anatomy 420
Cartilages 422
Membranes and Ligaments 428
Muscles 429
Vascular Supply 431
Nerve Supply 433
Clinical Correlates 435

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

16 Overview and Topographic Anatomy

GENERAL INFORMATION

Larynx: connection between the pharynx and the trachea

Prevents foreign bodies from entering the airways

Designed for the production of sound (phonation)

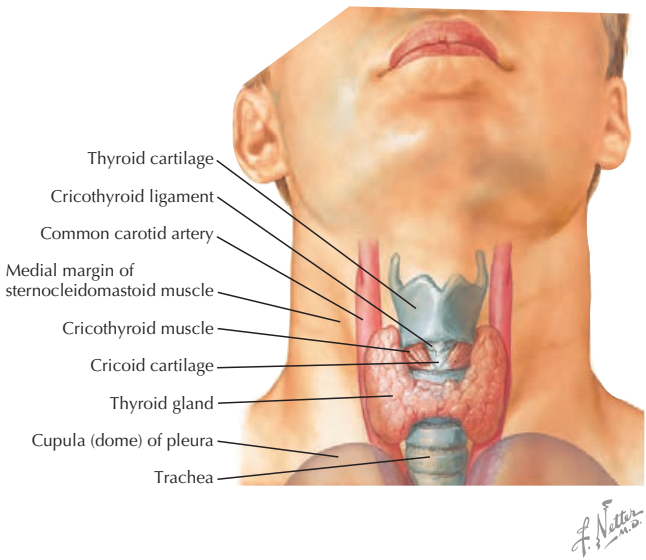
Shorter in women and children

Formed by 9 cartilages: 3 paired and 3 unpaired

Located in the midline opposite the 3rd to the 6th cervical vertebrae

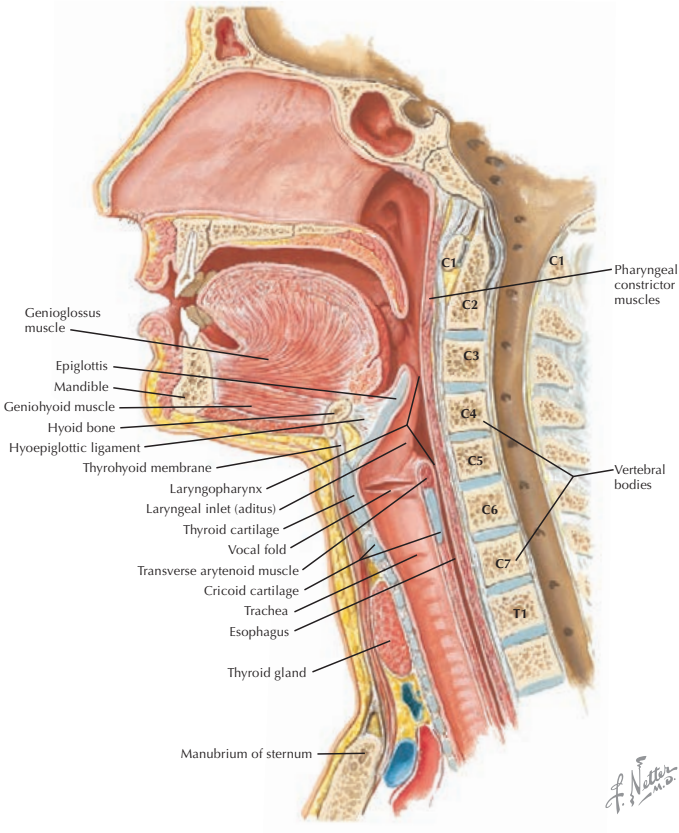
Regions of the larynx:
- Vestibule
- Ventricle
- Infraglottic

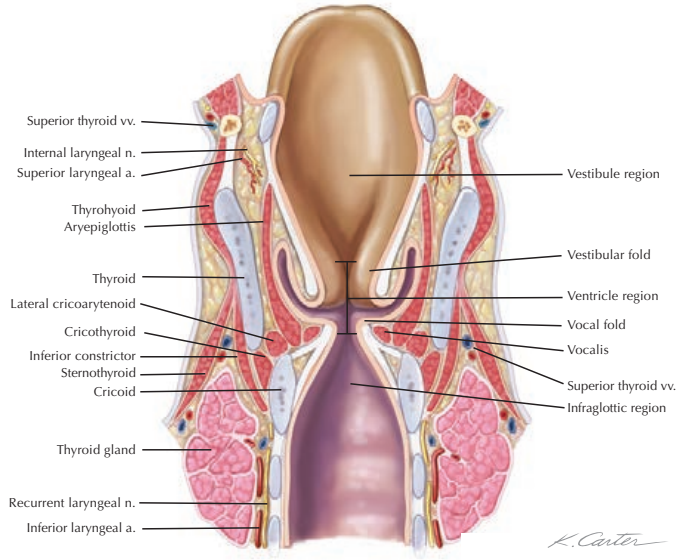
Relations of the Larynx
- Anterolateral—infrahyoid muscles, platysma
- Lateral—lobes of the thyroid gland, carotid sheath
- Posterior—it forms the anterior wall of the laryngopharynx
- Superior—base of tongue and vallecula
- Inferior—trachea



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

GENERAL INFORMATION *CONTINUED*

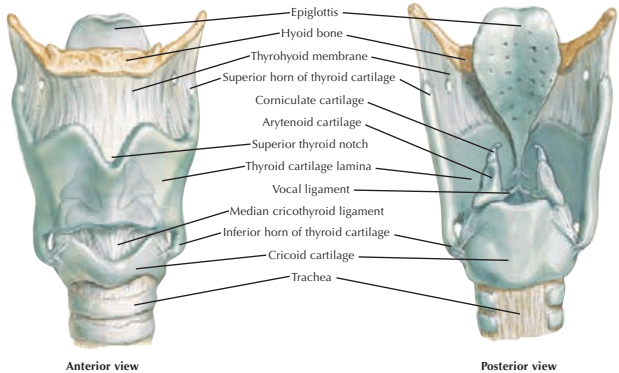


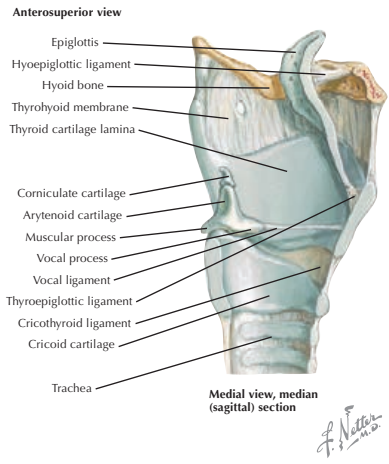


WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

GENERAL INFORMATION

Cartilage	Cartilage Type	Paired	Comments
Thyroid	Hyaline	No	Largest of the laryngeal cartilages Connects to the hyoid bone via the thyrohyoid membrane, which allows the internal laryngeal n. and superior laryngeal vessels to pass through to enter the larynx Lies between C4 and C6
Cricoid			Only complete ring of cartilage in the respiratory system Signet in shape Both intrinsic and extrinsic laryngeal muscles attach to the cricoid Lies at C6
Arytenoid		Yes	Forms framework of the true vocal cord
Epiglottis	Elastic	No	Helps prevent foreign bodies from entering the larynx
Corniculate (minor)		Yes	Minor cartilages that lie in the aryepiglottic fold
Cuneiform (minor)			

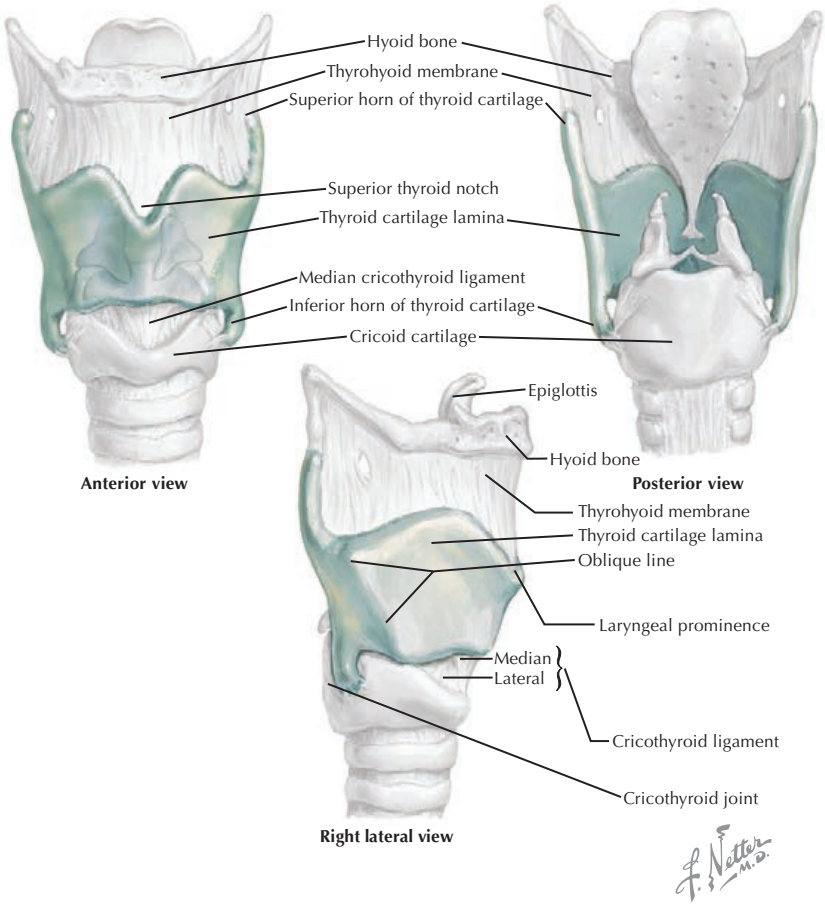




WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

THYROID CARTILAGE

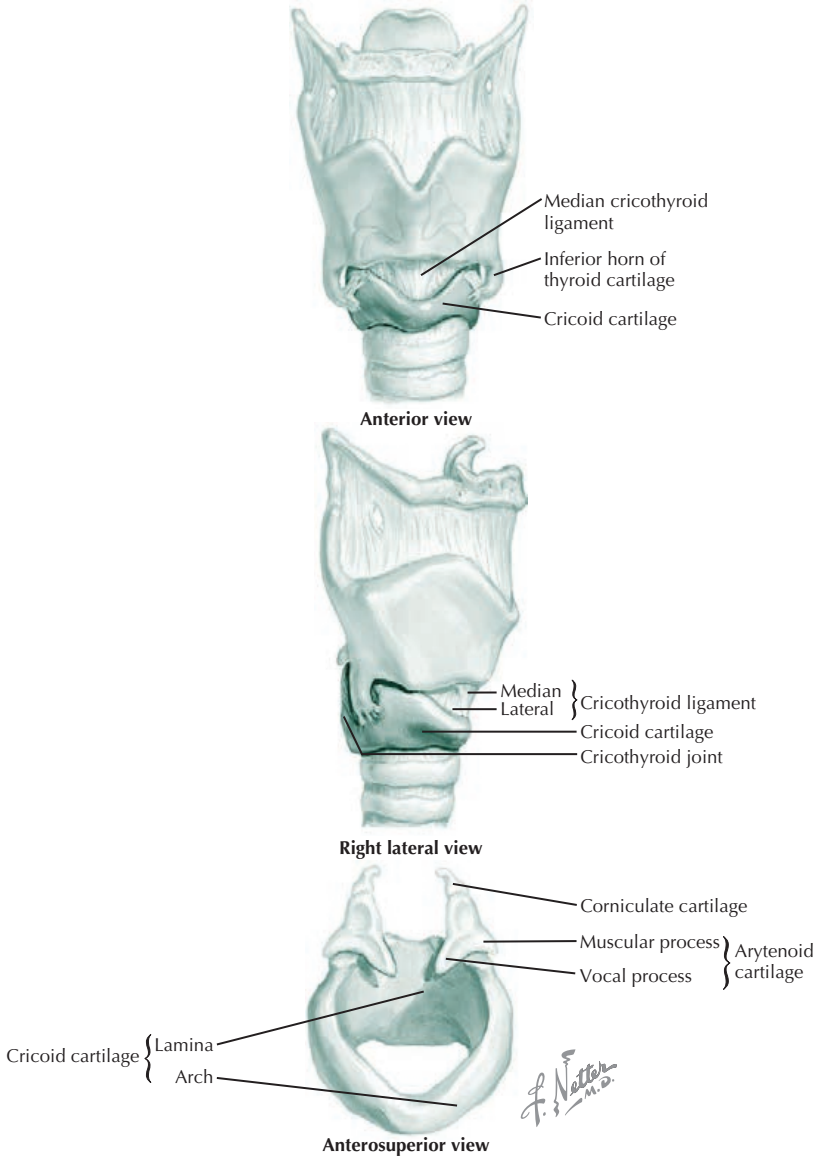
Anatomic Feature	Comments
2 lateral laminae	2 plates that meet at an acute angle in the anterior midline
Laryngeal prominence	Also known as the Adam's apple Formed by the fusion of the 2 lateral lamina Larger in males than in females
Thyroid notch	Superior portion of the laryngeal prominence, which forms a V shape
Superior tubercle	Superior border of the oblique line
Oblique line	Attachment for sternothyroid, thyrohyoid, and inferior constrictor mm. (extrinsic muscles of the larynx)
Inferior tubercle	Inferior border of the oblique line
Superior horn	Provides lateralmost attachment for the thyrohyoid membrane
Inferior horn	Articulates with the cricoid to form the cricothyroid joint



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

CRICOID CARTILAGE

Anatomic Feature	Comments
Arch (anteriorly)	1 cm long Narrow
Lamina (posteriorly)	2 to 3 cm long
Superior border (on the lamina)	Articulates with the arytenoid cartilage to form the cricoarytenoid joint
Inferior border (on the lamina)	Articulates with the inferior cornu of the thyroid cartilage to form the cricothyroid joint

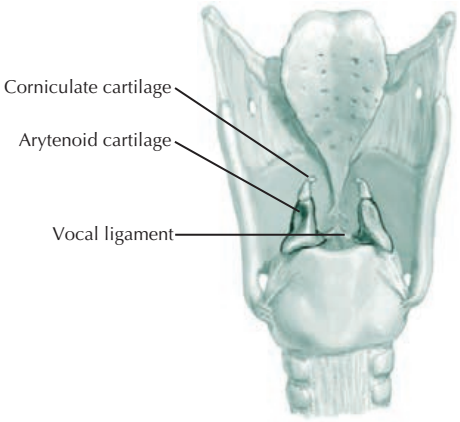


WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

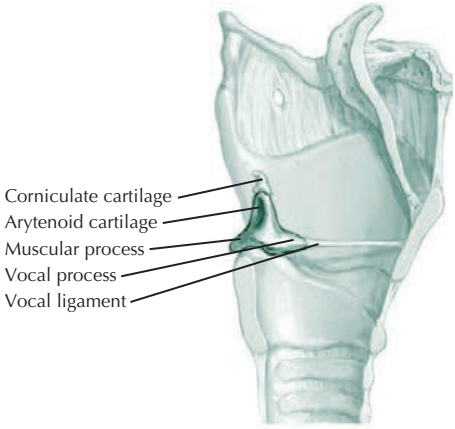
Cartilages

ARYTENOID CARTILAGE

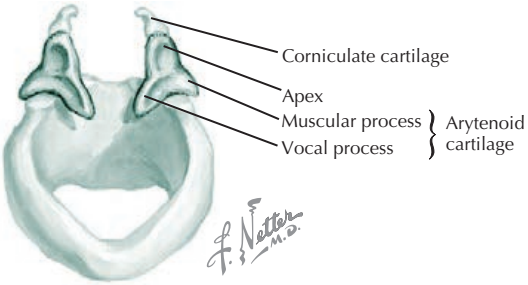
Anatomic Feature	Comments
3 processes: • Muscular (lateral) • Vocal (anterior) • Apex (superior)	Base articulates with cricoid to form the cricoarytenoid joint Vocal process gives rise to true vocal cord



Posterior view



Medial view, median (sagittal) section

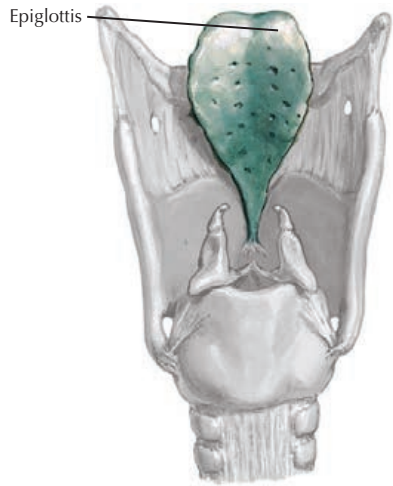


Anterosuperior view

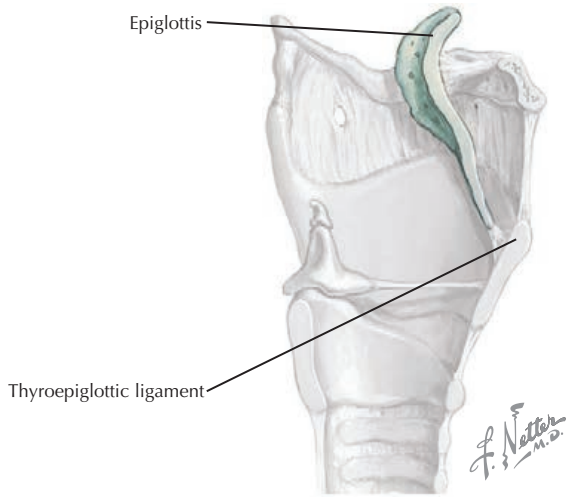
WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

EPIGLOTTIS

Anatomic Feature	Comment
Epiglottic tubercle	Pear-shaped



Posterior view



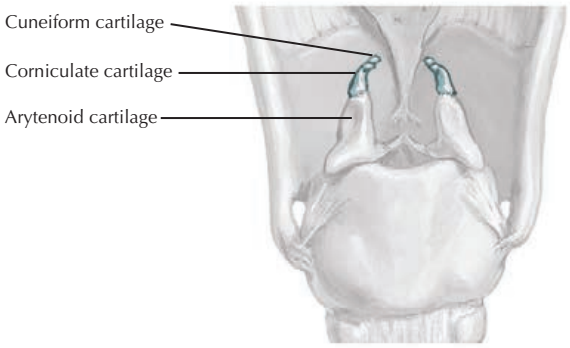
Medial view, median (sagittal) section

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

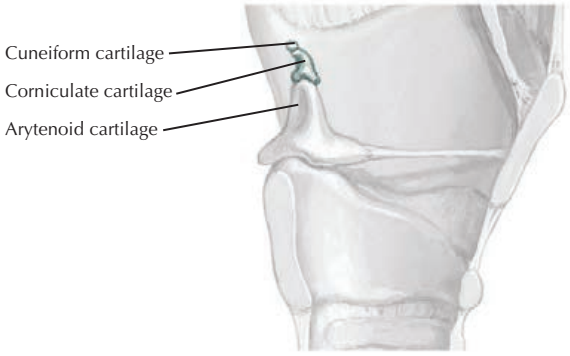
Cartilages

MINOR CARTILAGES

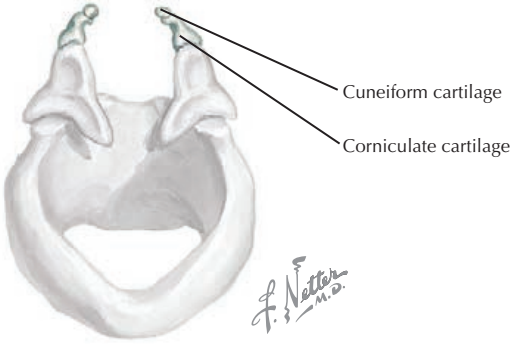
Cartilage	Comments
Corniculate	Lies on the apex of the arytenoid cartilage Helps support the aryepiglottic fold
Cuneiform	Lies superior to the corniculate cartilage Helps support the aryepiglottic fold



Posterior view



Medial view, median (sagittal) section



Anterosuperior view

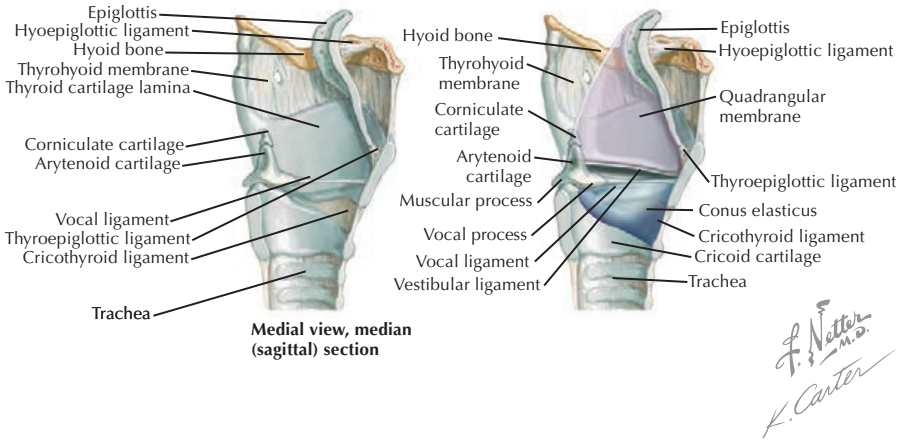
WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

MAJOR EXTRINSIC LIGAMENTS

Ligament(s)	Location	Comments
2 lateral thyrohyoid ligaments 1 median thyrohyoid ligament Thyrohyoid membrane	Thyroid cartilage to hyoid bone	The thyrohyoid membrane allows passage of the internal laryngeal n. and superior laryngeal vessels
Median cricothyroid ligament	Cricoid cartilage to thyroid cartilage	Primary site for establishing an emergency airway
Cricotracheal ligament	Cricoid cartilage to trachea	Attaches the cricoid cartilage to the first tracheal ring May be used in establishing an emergency airway

MAJOR INTRINSIC LIGAMENTS

Ligament	Location	Comments
Vocal ligament	Arytenoid (vocal) to thyroid cartilage	Help form *true* vocal cord
Conus elasticus	Superior—thyroid, vocal lig., arytenoid (vocal) Inferior—upper border of cricoid	
Quadrangular membrane	Arytenoid to epiglottis	Help form *false* vocal cord
Vestibular ligament	Free edge of quadrangular membrane	



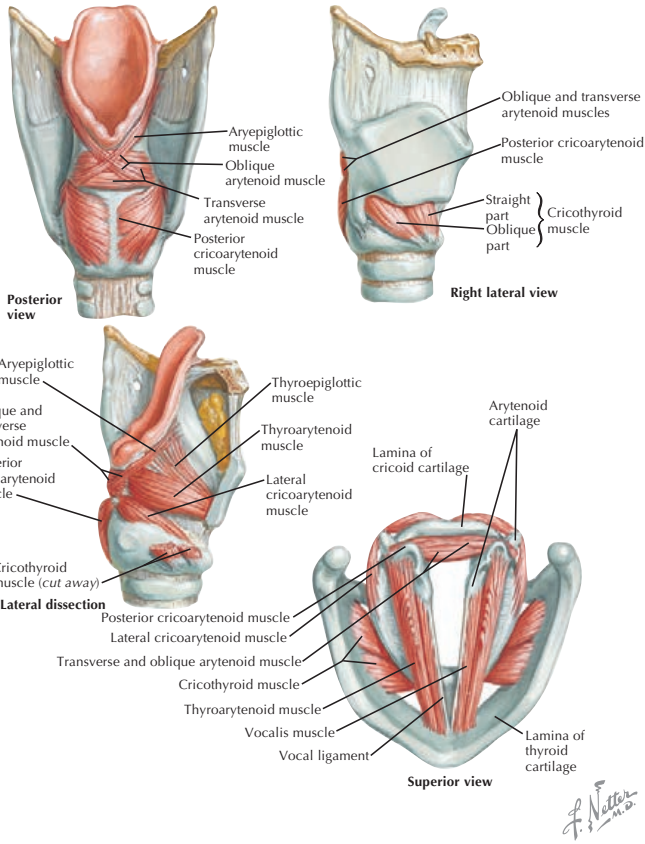
Medial view, median (sagittal) section

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Muscles

OVERVIEW

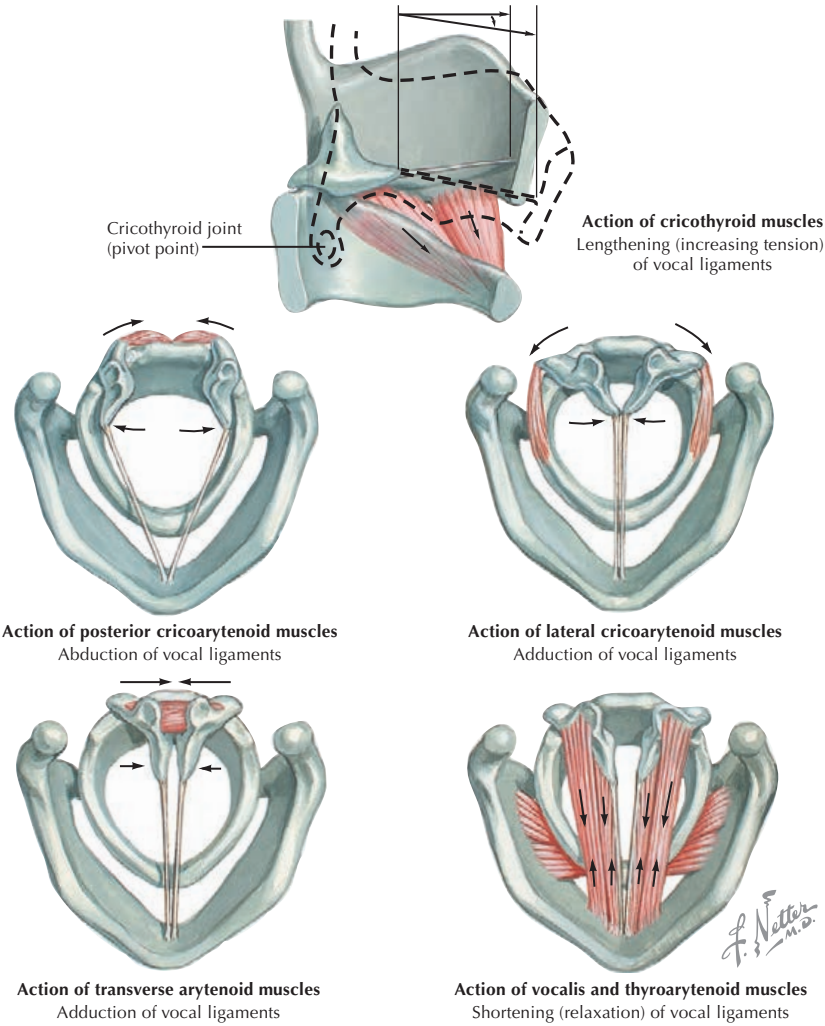
Muscle	Origin	Insertion	Action(s)	Nerve Supply
Cricothyroid	Arch of cricoid	Lamina and inferior cornu of thyroid	Increases tension on vocal ligaments	External laryngeal n.
Thyroarytenoid	Angle of thyroid cartilage	Arytenoid (vocal process)	Decreases tension on vocal ligaments	Recurrent laryngeal n.
Posterior cricoarytenoid	Lamina of cricoid	Arytenoid (muscular process)	Opens rima glottidis	
Lateral cricoarytenoid	Arch of cricoid (lateral portion)		Closes rima glottidis	
Transverse arytenoid	Arytenoid (muscular process)	Opposite arytenoid (muscular process)		
Oblique arytenoid		Opposite arytenoid (apex)		
Aryepiglotticus	Arytenoid (apex)	Epiglottis	Helps close laryngopharyngeal opening	
Thyroepiglotticus	Thyroid lamina			



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

OVERVIEW *CONTINUED*

SUMMARY OF MUSCLE ACTIONS			
Altering the Rima Glottidis		**Altering Tension on the Vocal Cords**	
Muscle	**Action**	**Muscle**	**Action**
Posterior cricoarytenoid	*Opens* the rima glottidis	Cricothyroid	*Increasing* tension
Transverse arytenoids Oblique arytenoids Lateral cricoarytenoid	*Closes* the rima glottidis	Thyroarytenoid	*Decreasing* tension

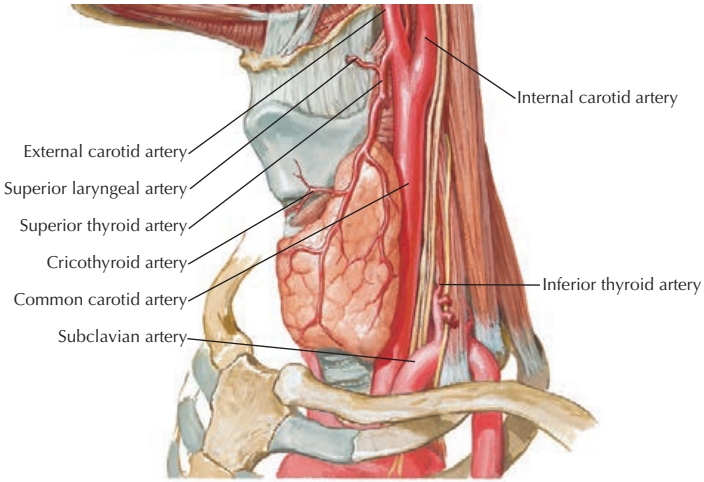


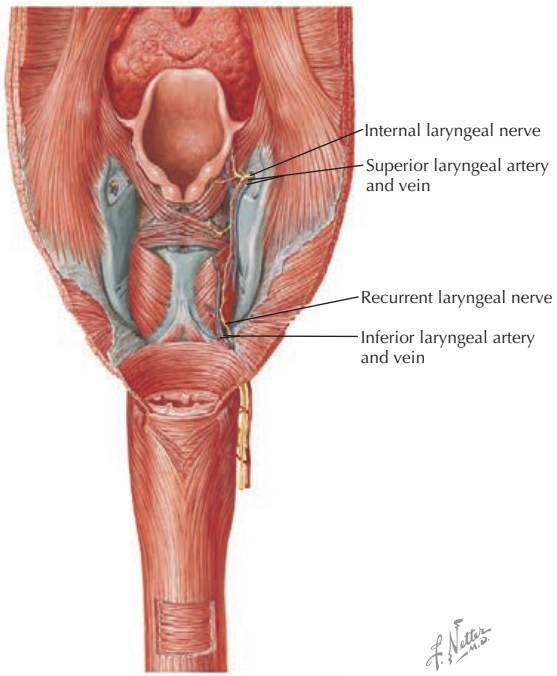
WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Vascular Supply

ARTERIAL SUPPLY

Artery	Source	Course
Superior laryngeal	Superior thyroid a., which arises from the external carotid a.	Passes through the thyrohyoid membrane with the internal laryngeal n. to enter the deep surface of the larynx
Inferior laryngeal	Inferior thyroid a., which arises from the thyrocervical trunk	Passes superiorly on the trachea to reach the posterior border of the larynx Lies immediately deep to the inferior constrictor m. traveling beside the recurrent laryngeal n.

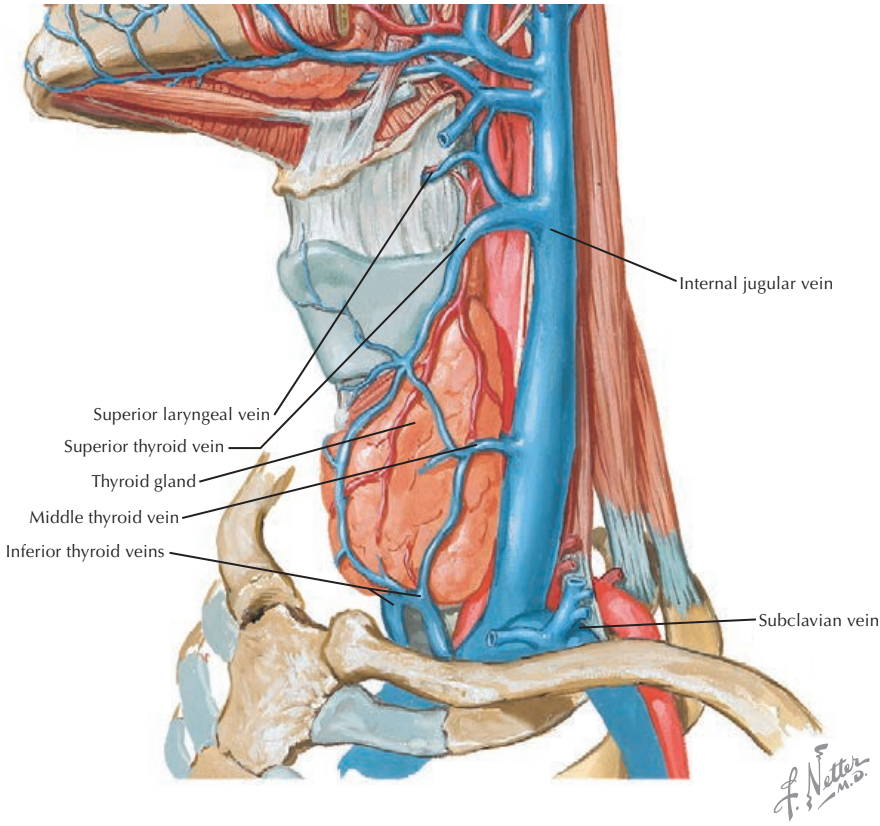




WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

VENOUS DRAINAGE

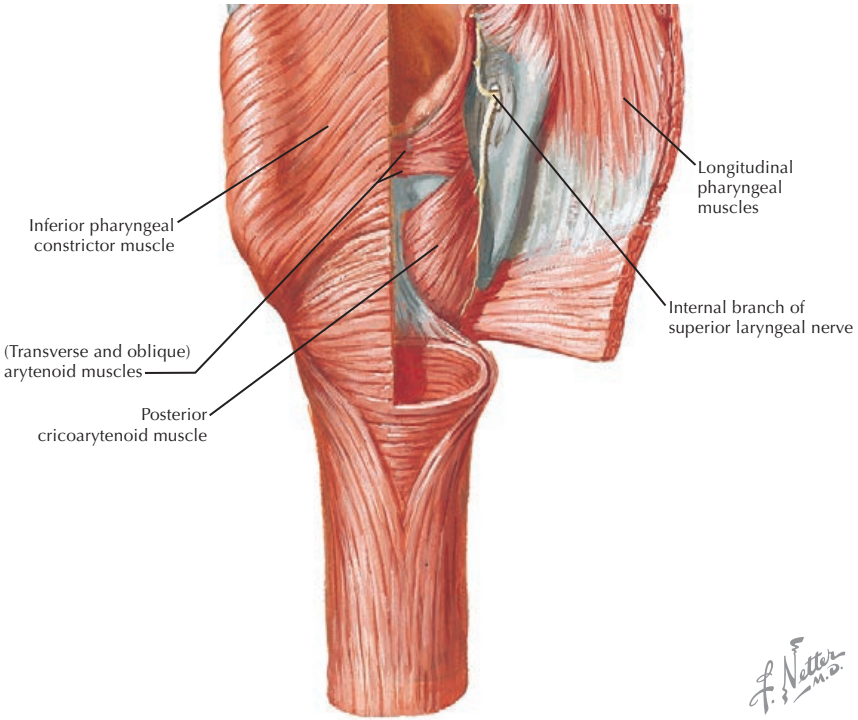
Vein	Course
Superior laryngeal	Begins in the deep surface of the superior part of the larynx Passes with the superior laryngeal a. and the internal laryngeal n. Passes through the thyrohyoid membrane to lie on the superficial surface of the larynx Drains into the superior thyroid v., which drains into the internal jugular v.
Inferior laryngeal	Arises within the deep surface of the inferior part of the larynx Passes with the inferior laryngeal a. and the recurrent laryngeal n. Passes inferiorly deep to the inferior constrictor to exit the larynx Drains into the inferior thyroid v., which drains into the brachiocephalic vv.



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

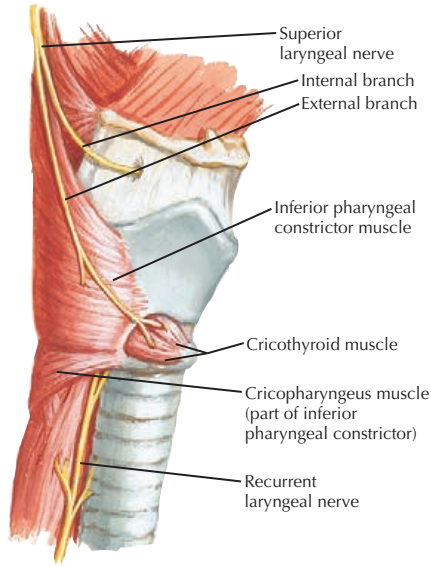
MOTOR AND SENSORY BRANCHES FROM THE VAGUS NERVE

Nerve	Type	Sensory Target	Muscles Innervated	Comments
Internal laryngeal	Sensory	Membranes above the false vocal folds		Branch of superior laryngeal nerve from the vagus
Recurrent laryngeal	Sensory and motor	Membranes below the false vocal folds	Thyroarytenoid Posterior cricoarytenoid Lateral cricoarytenoid Transverse arytenoid Oblique arytenoid Aryepiglotticus Thyroepiglotticus	Branch of the vagus Wraps around the aorta posterior to the ligamentum arteriosum on the left side Wraps around the right subclavian artery on the right side Ascends on the lateral aspect of the trachea until reaching the pharynx, where it passes deep to the inferior constrictor to reach the larynx
External laryngeal	Motor		Cricothyroid	Branch of superior laryngeal nerve from the vagus

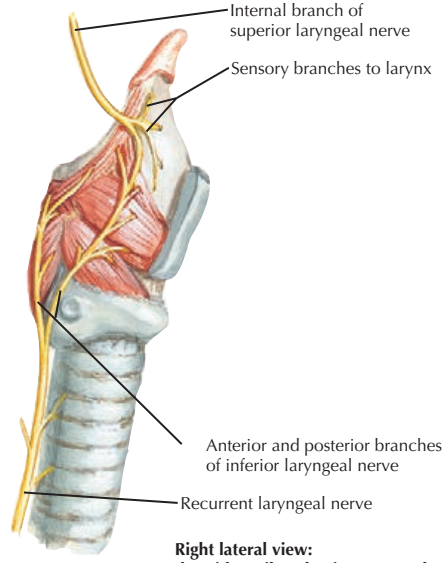


WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

MOTOR AND SENSORY BRANCHES FROM THE VAGUS NERVE *CONTINUED*



Right lateral view



Right lateral view: thyroid cartilage lamina removed

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

EMERGENCY AIRWAY: CRICOTHYROTOMY

Cricothyrotomy: a procedure for establishing an emergency airway when other methods are unsuitable

Once the anatomy of the larynx is identified, the procedure can be performed with 2 incisions:

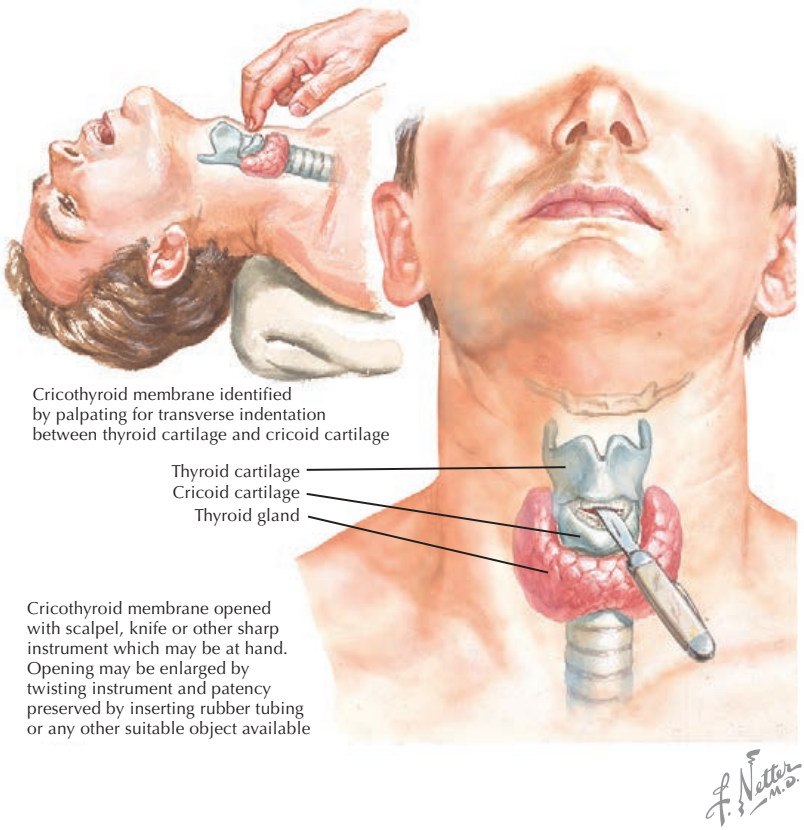
- Incision through the skin
- Incision through the cricothyroid membrane

The correct location for the incision is easiest to find by identifying the thyroid notch on the thyroid cartilage

By sliding the examining finger in an inferior direction, the groove between the thyroid and cricoid cartilages can be located

A 3-cm vertical incision is made through the skin, and the thyrohyoid membrane is located

A small midline incision is made, and a tracheostomy tube is inserted to establish an airway



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

16 Clinical Correlate

LARYNGITIS

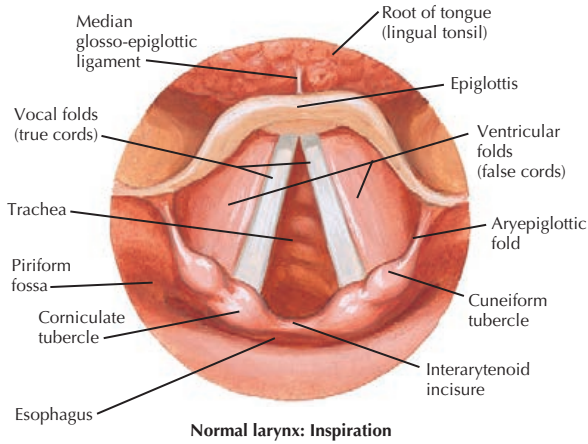
Laryngitis: an inflammation of the vocal cords in the larynx that typically does not persist longer than 7 days

Characterized by a weak and hoarse voice, sore throat, and cough

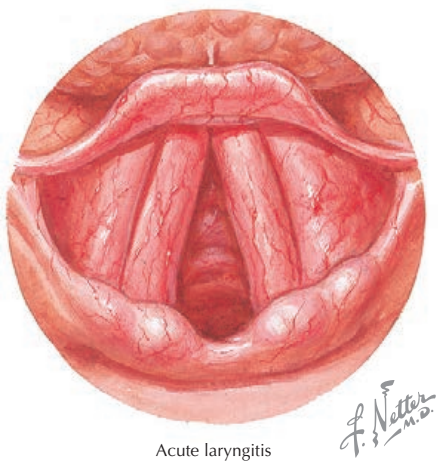
Most common cause is a viral infection, although it may be caused by a bacterial infection

Can also be caused by excessive yelling (such as cheering at a sporting event) and smoking

Because most cases of laryngitis are viral in nature, antibiotics generally are not used as treatment



Normal larynx: Inspiration



Acute laryngitis

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

CHAPTER 17
CERVICAL FASCIA

Overview and Topographic Anatomy 438
Fascia of the Neck 440
Fascial Spaces 443
Clinical Correlates 448

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

17 Overview and Topographic Anatomy

GENERAL INFORMATION

Fascia: a band of connective tissue that surrounds structures (such as enveloping muscles), giving rise to potential tissue spaces and pathways that allow infection to spread

Superficial Fascia

Immediately deep to the skin

Contains fat

Deep Fascia

Deep to the superficial fascia

Aids muscle movements

Provides passageways for nerves and vessels

Provides attachment for some muscles

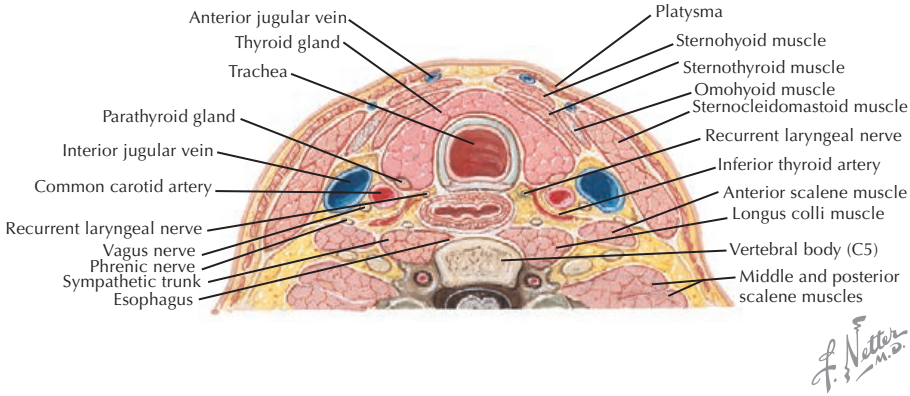
In the neck, it is divided into *4 regions:*

- Visceral region
- Musculoskeletal region
- 2 neurovascular compartments

Also divided into *4 layers:*

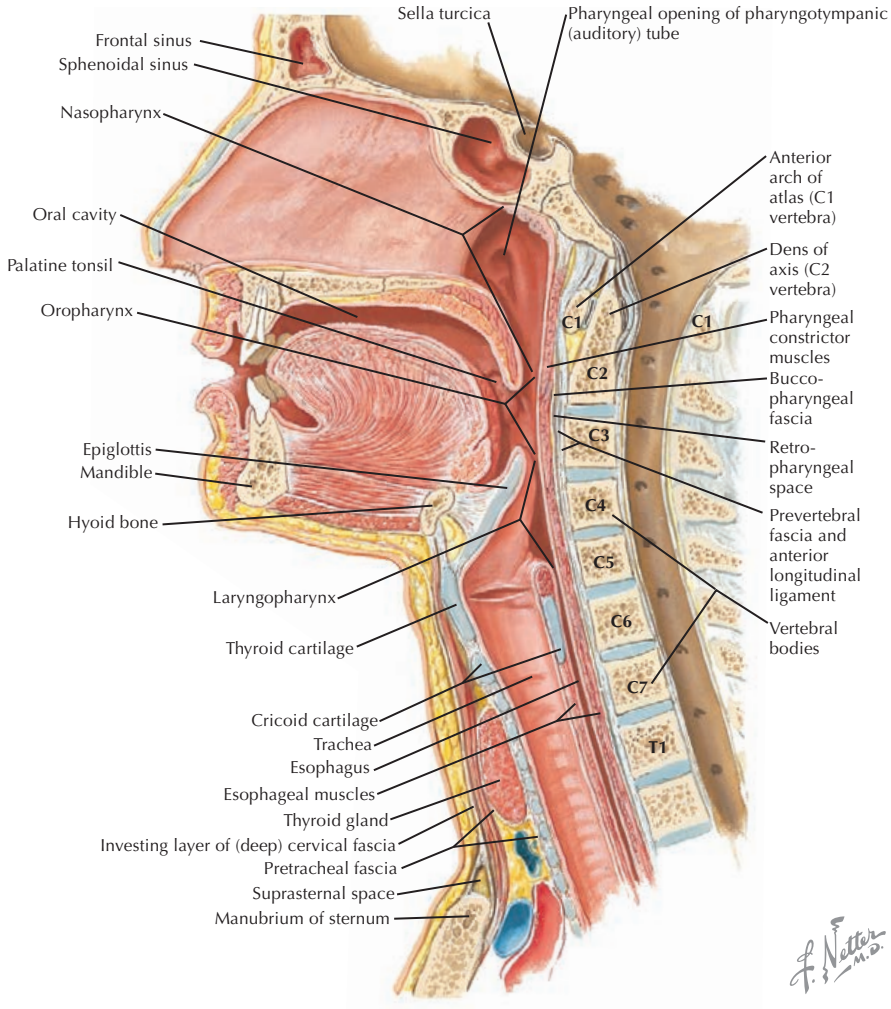
- Superficial layer of deep cervical fascia (investing layer of deep cervical fascia)
- Middle layer of deep cervical fascia
- Deep layer of deep cervical fascia
- Carotid sheath (composed by the contribution of all 3 layers of deep cervical fascia)

There is no deep fascia in the face, which allows free spread of fluid



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

GENERAL INFORMATION *CONTINUED*

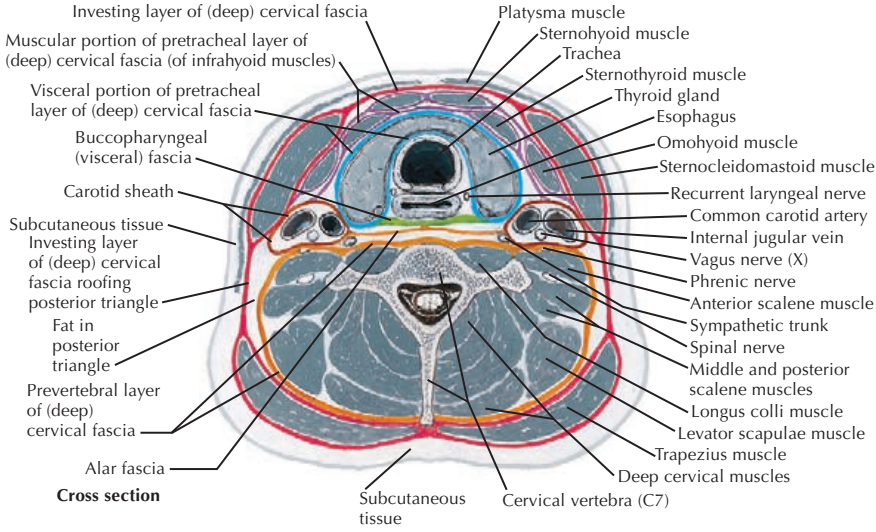


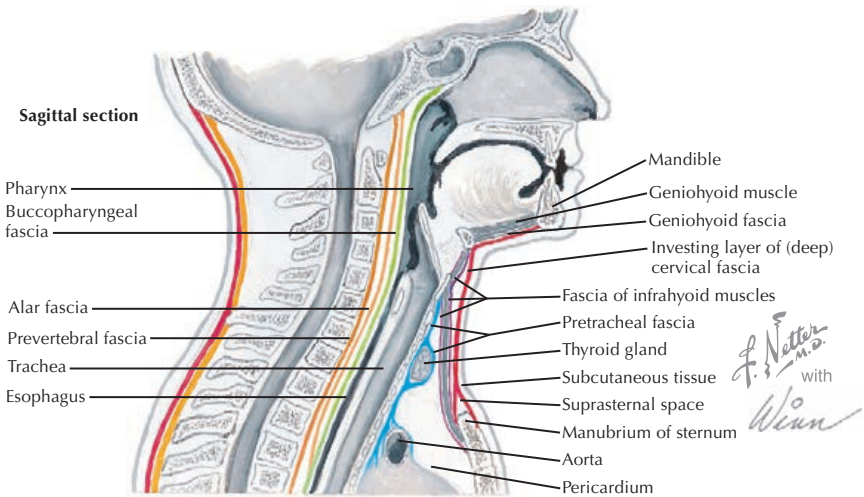
WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

17 Fascia of the Neck

SUPERFICIAL FASCIA

Superficial fascia lies deep to the skin and contains the cutaneous vessels and nerves
In the neck, the platysma muscle lies within the superficial fascia





WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Fascia of the Neck

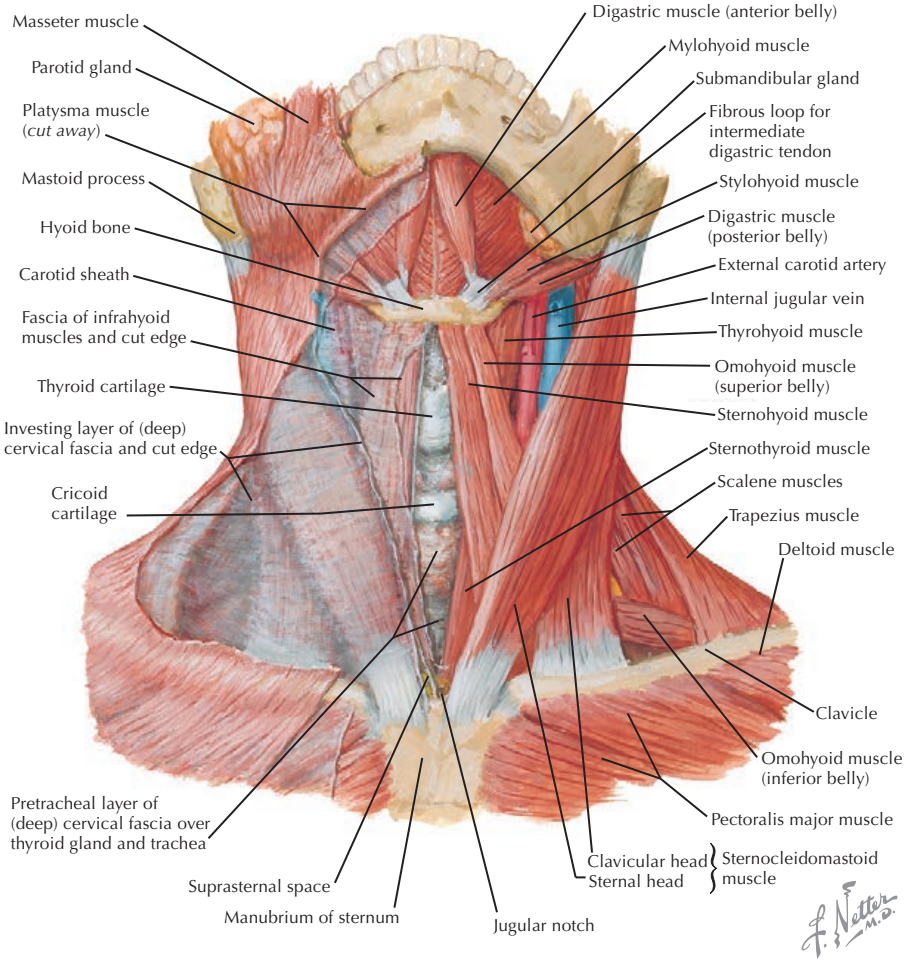
DEEP FASCIA

SUPERFICIAL LAYER OF DEEP CERVICAL FASCIA			
Layer	**Location**	**Attachment**	**Comments**
Superficial layer of deep cervical fascia (also known as the investing layer of deep cervical fascia)	Immediately deep to the superficial fascia Encircles the neck completely When the layer approaches the sternocleidomastoid and the trapezius mm., it splits to lie on the superficial and deep surfaces	Anterior—chin, hyoid, sternum Posterior—spinous process of cervical vertebra and the ligamentum nuchae Superior—external occipital protuberance, superior nuchal line, mastoid process, inferior border of the zygomatic arch, inferior border of the mandible from the angle to the midline Inferior—sternum (splitting into anterior and posterior parts), clavicle, acromion of the scapula	Forms the roof of the posterior triangle In the area between the mastoid process and the angle of the mandible, this layer splits around the parotid gland to form the parotid fascia Helps define the masticator space
MIDDLE LAYER OF DEEP CERVICAL FASCIA			
Layer	**Location**	**Attachment**	**Comments**
Muscular portion: *infrahyoid fascia*	Completely surrounds the strap muscles of the neck	Superior—hyoid bone and thyroid cartilage Inferior—sternum	Is continuous across the midline
Visceral portion: *buccopharyngeal fascia*	Deep to the superficial layer of deep cervical fascia posterior to the pharynx	Superior—base of the skull Inferior—superior mediastinum where the middle layer of deep cervical fascia joins the alar fascia	Posterior to the pharynx and the esophagus
Pretracheal layer of fascia	Deep to the superficial layer of deep cervical fascia	Superior—larynx Inferior—fibrous pericardium in the superior mediastinum of the thorax	Forms a covering around the visceral structures in the neck, such as the thyroid gland, esophagus, and trachea
DEEP LAYER OF DEEP CERVICAL FASCIA			
Layer	**Location**	**Attachment**	**Comments**
Prevertebral layer of fascia	Completely encircles the cervical portion of the vertebral column with its associated pre- and postvertebral muscles	Superior—base of skull Inferior—coccyx	Forms the floor of the posterior triangle Encloses the vertebral muscles Forms the axillary sheath
Alar fascia	An anterior slip of prevertebral fascia found between the middle layer of deep cervical fascia and prevertebral layers of deep cervical fascia	Superior—base of skull Inferior—merges with visceral portion of the middle layer of deep cervical fascia at about the level of T2	Separates the retropharyngeal space from the danger space

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

DEEP FASCIA *CONTINUED*

COMBINATION OF ALL 3 LAYERS			
Layer	**Location**	**Attachment**	**Comments**
Carotid sheath	In the neck between the investing layer, pretracheal layer, and the prevertebral layer	Superior—base of skull Inferior—merges with connective tissue around arch of the aorta	Contains the internal or common carotid a., internal jugular v., and vagus n.



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Fascial Spaces

GENERAL INFORMATION

Layers of fascia "create" potential fascial spaces

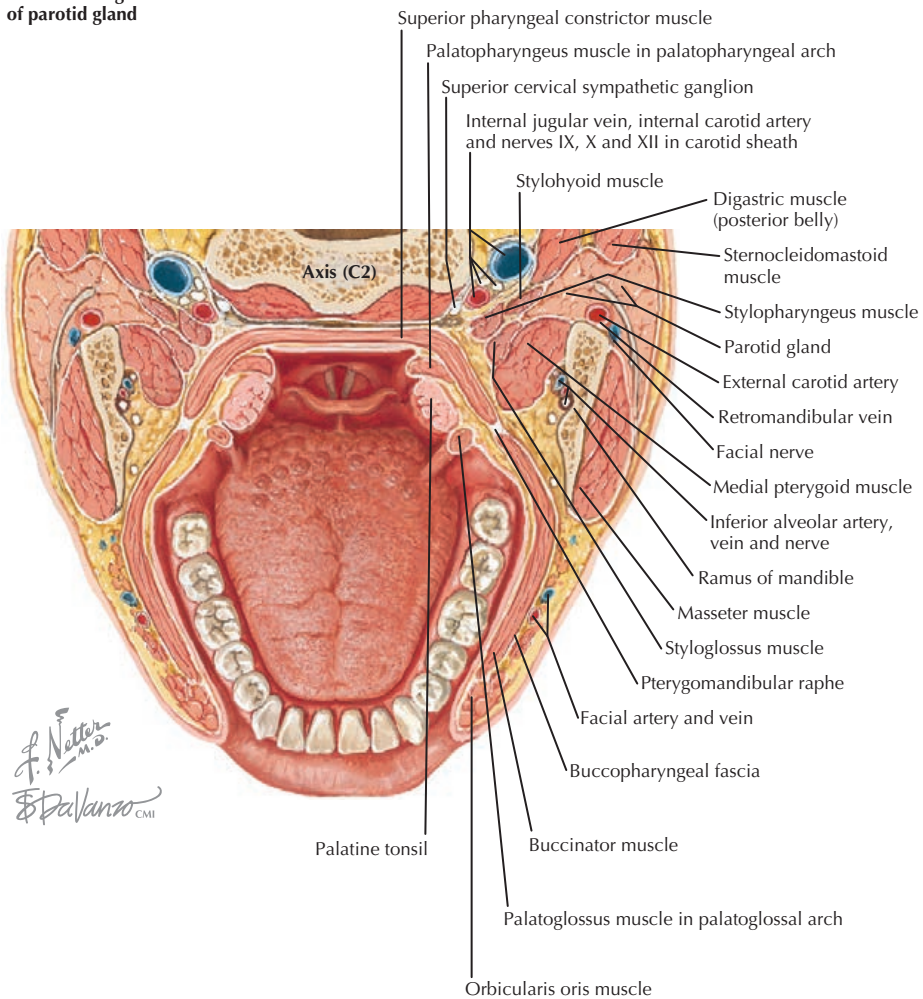
All are filled by loose areolar connective tissue

The hyoid bone is the most important anatomic structure in the neck that limits the spread of infection

Most are divided into spaces in relation to the hyoid bone:
- Suprahyoid
- Infrahyoid
- Entire length of the neck

Infections or other inflammatory conditions spread by the path of least resistance to reach the fascial spaces

Horizontal section below lingula of mandible (superior view) demonstrating bed of parotid gland



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

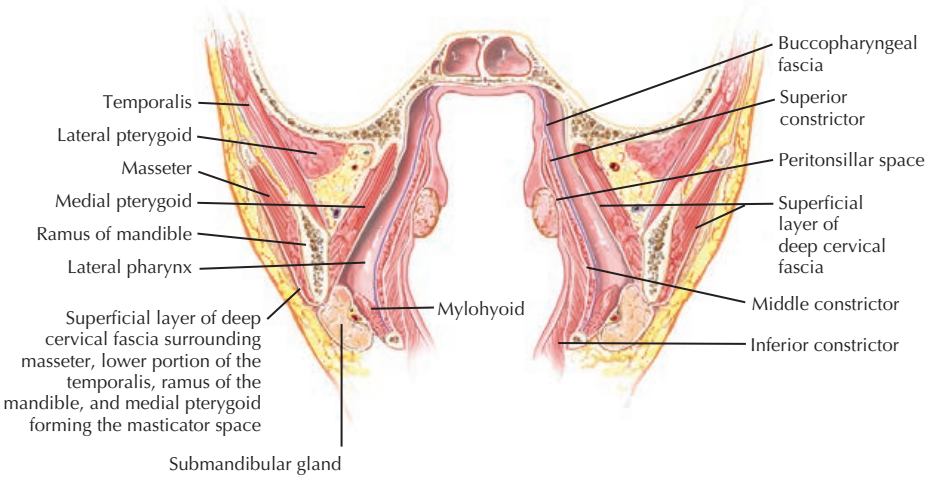
SUPRAHYOID FASCIAL SPACES

Space	Location	Comments and Potential for Infection
Submandibular	Anterior and lateral—mandible Posterior—hyoid bone Superior—mucosa of the floor of the oral cavity and the tongue Inferior—superficial layer of deep cervical fascia	The anterior part of the peripharyngeal spaces, which create a ring around the pharynx (the retropharyngeal and lateral pharyngeal spaces are the other components) Submandibular space is continuous with the lateral pharyngeal space Divided into *2 parts:* • Sublingual space • Submaxillary space
Sublingual	Between the mucosa and the mylohyoid m. Anterior and lateral—mandible Posterior—muscles along the base of the tongue Superior—mucosa of the floor of the oral cavity and the tongue Inferior—mylohyoid m.	Contains the: • Hypoglossal n. • Lingual n. • Sublingual gland • Deep part of the submandibular gland • Submandibular duct Continuous with the submaxillary space along the posterior free border on the mylohyoid m.
Submaxillary	Between the mylohyoid m. and the superficial layer of deep cervical fascia On the superficial surface of the mylohyoid between the anterior and posterior bellies of the digastric m. and the mandible	Contains the: • Submandibular gland • Anterior digastric m. Continuous with the sublingual space along the posterior free border of the mylohyoid m. Because the roots of the 1st, 2nd, and 3rd molars are inferior to the attachment of the mylohyoid on the mandible, infections of these teeth may pass into the submandibular space, which is continuous with the lateral pharyngeal space
Lateral pharyngeal	On the lateral aspect of the pharynx, continuous with the retropharyngeal space posteriorly and the submandibular space anteriorly Extends from the base of the skull to the hyoid bone Extends in an anterosuperior direction to the pterygomandibular raphe Bounded medially by the middle layer of deep cervical fascia (buccopharyngeal fascia) covering the superior constrictor m. of the pharynx and laterally by the superficial layer of deep cervical fascia covering the medial pterygoid m. and the deep portion of the parotid gland	Continuous with the submandibular space anteriorly Continuous with the retropharyngeal space posteriorly Very susceptible to the spread of infections from the teeth, jaws, and pharynx, including the nasopharynx, adenoids, and tonsils
Masticator	Formed when the superficial layer of deep cervical fascia splits to enclose the ramus of the mandible and overlies the masseter m. on the lateral surface and the medial pterygoid m. and lower portion of the temporalis m. on the medial surface	Contains the: • Masseter m. • Medial pterygoid m. • Lateral pterygoid m. • Lower portion (insertion) of the temporalis m. • Contents of the pterygomandibular space Continuous with the temporal space
Temporal	Formed when the superficial layer of deep cervical fascia encloses the temporalis m.	Can be further subdivided into a superficial and a deep space Continuous with the masticator space

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

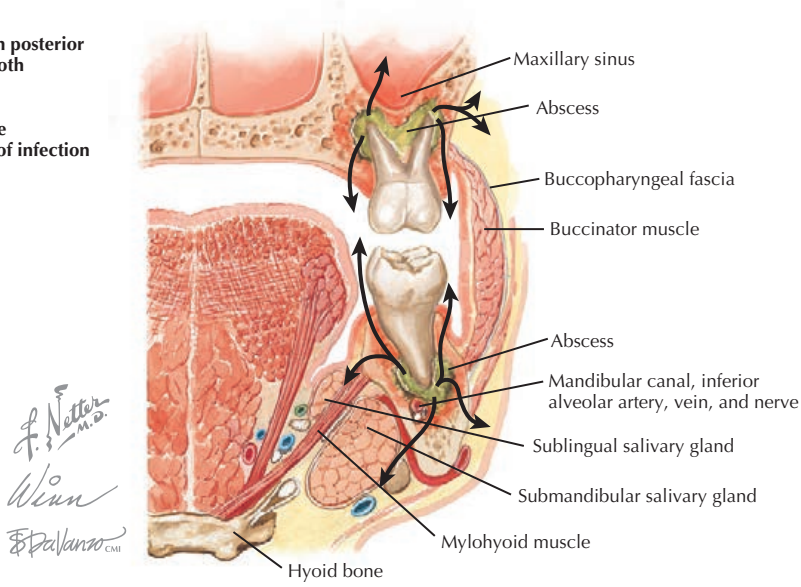
SUPRAHYOID FASCIAL SPACES *CONTINUED*

Space	Location	Comments and Potential for Infection
Peritonsillar	Anterior—palatoglossal fold Posterior—palatopharyngeal fold Medial—palatine tonsil capsule Lateral—superior constrictor m.	Located within the wall of the pharynx Infections of the peritonsillar space may extend into the lateral pharyngeal space
Parotid gland [space]	Formed when the superficial layer of deep cervical fascia encloses the parotid gland as a capsule	The parotid fascia is weaker on the medial side, and infections of this space can break through the fascia to enter the lateral pharyngeal space
Submandibular gland [space]	Formed when the superficial layer of deep cervical fascia encloses the submandibular gland as a capsule	The inner layer of the capsule is weaker, and infections of this space tend to break through the fascia to this side



Coronal section posterior to 1st molar tooth (anterior view)

Arrows indicate possible paths of infection



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

INFRAHYOID FASCIAL SPACES

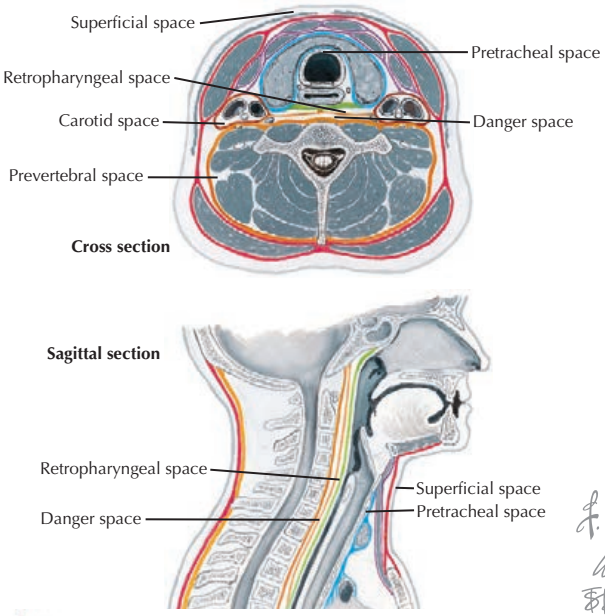
Space	Location	Comments and Potential for Infection
Pretracheal (anterior visceral)	Superior—larynx Inferior—superior mediastinum Completely surrounds the trachea and also contains the thyroid and esophagus	Usually infections spread to the pretracheal space only by puncturing the esophagus anteriorly or by a perforation in the retropharyngeal space

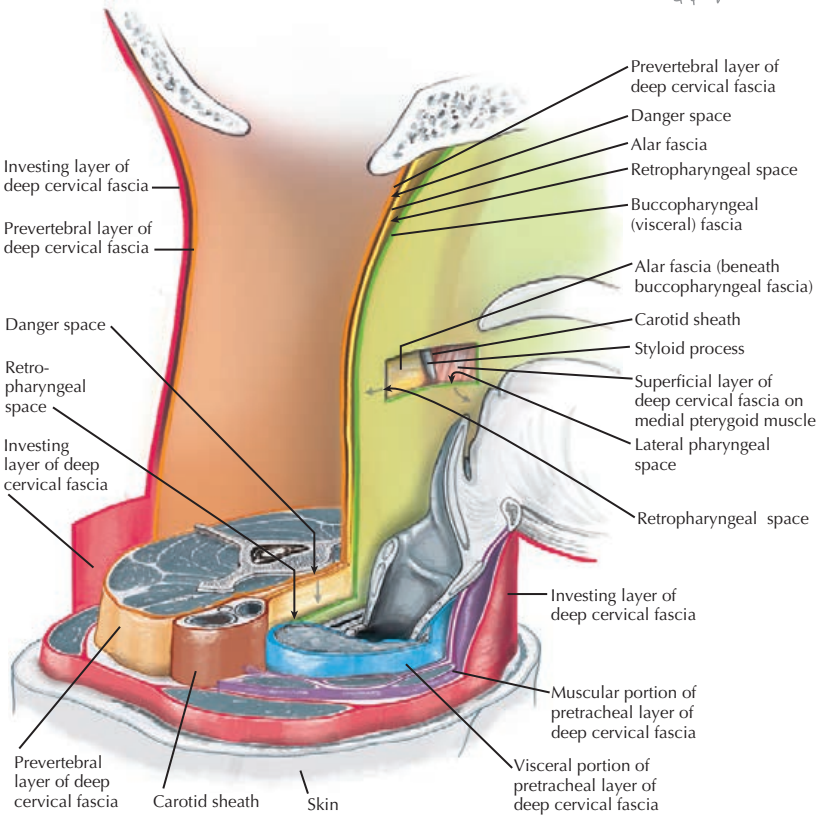
FASCIAL SPACES TRAVERSING THE LENGTH OF THE NECK

Space	Location	Comments and Potential for Infection
Superficial	Between the superficial fascia and the superficial layer of deep cervical fascia Surrounds the platysma m.	Infections are superficial and often observed early Continuous with the face
Retropharyngeal	Posterior to the buccopharyngeal layer of the middle layer of cervical fascia covering the pharynx and esophagus, and anterior to the alar fascia Extends from the base of the skull to about the level of T2, where the 2 layers of fascia fuse The inferior portion of the retropharyngeal space (posterior to the esophagus) is sometimes called the retrovisceral space Continuous with the: • Lateral pharyngeal space • Sublingual space	Infections in this space often are the result of infections in Waldeyer's ring that spread to the retropharyngeal lymph nodes A cellulitis or abscess may eventually result Retropharyngeal infections may continue to spread posteriorly into the danger space
"Danger space"	Posterior to the alar fascia (and fascia where the alar fascia and middle layer of the cervical fascia fuse) and anterior to the prevertebral fascia Extends from the base of the skull to the diaphragm	Via the superior mediastinum, it allows infection to spread into the thorax
Prevertebral	Between the prevertebral fascia and the vertebral column	Closed off superiorly, laterally, and inferiorly, so spread of infections in this space is not common
Carotid sheath	A potential space is created by the carotid sheath Bounded superiorly by the skull base, inferiorly it merges with connective tissue around the aortic arch	Infections from visceral spaces may enter and pass within the carotid sheath

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

FASCIAL SPACES TRAVERSING THE LENGTH OF THE NECK *CONTINUED*





WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

LUDWIG'S ANGINA

A severe cellulitis due to bacterial infection (usually from *Streptococcus, Actinomyces, Prevotella, Fusobacterium,* or *Staphylococcus*) in the floor of the oral cavity under the tongue

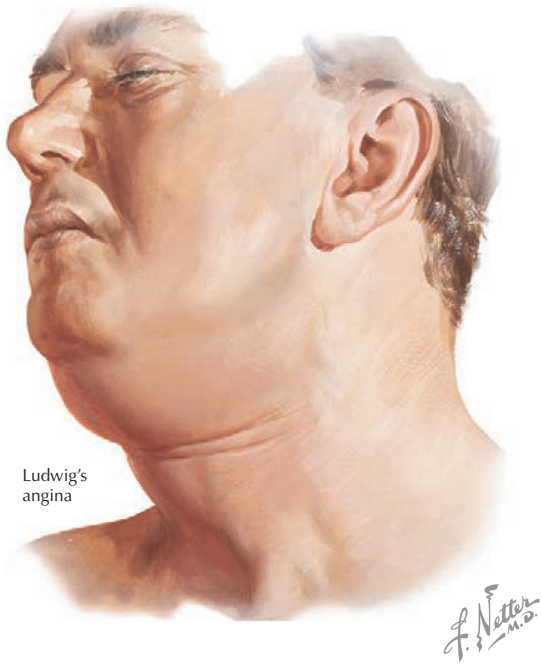
Often begins in the sublingual and submandibular spaces after infection of the premolar teeth or, more commonly, molar teeth (such as an abscess of a mandibular molar) because their roots extend inferior to the mylohyoid line of the mandible

May follow the planes of the fascial spaces to spread in the neck

May cause sufficient neck swelling to block the airway

More common in children

Antibiotic therapy, incision of the neck to drain the infection, and excision of the infected tooth are the possible treatments.



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Clinical Correlate

ABSCESSES

May spread via the fascial planes of the neck to become more serious, such as in Ludwig's angina

Dentoalveolar Abscess (Periapical Abscess)

An acute lesion characterized by localization of pus in the structures surrounding the apex of a tooth

May originate in the dental pulp and be secondary to dental caries with erosion of enamel and dentin, or to traumatic injury to tooth, allowing bacteria to invade the dental pulp

Resulting pulpitis can progress to necrosis as bacteria invade the surrounding alveolar bone, causing formation of a local abscess

Periodontal Abscess

Typically involves the supporting structures of the teeth, such as the periodontal ligaments and alveolar bone, leading to formation of a local abscess

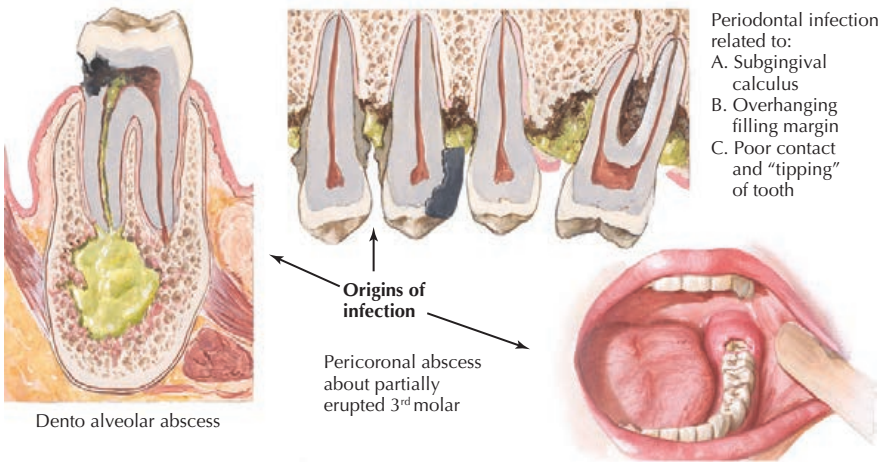
PERICORONITIS

An inflammation around the crown of a tooth from an infection of the gingiva, leading to formation of an abscess

Most commonly affected tooth is a partially erupted 3rd mandibular molar



Abscess of the submandibular region



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

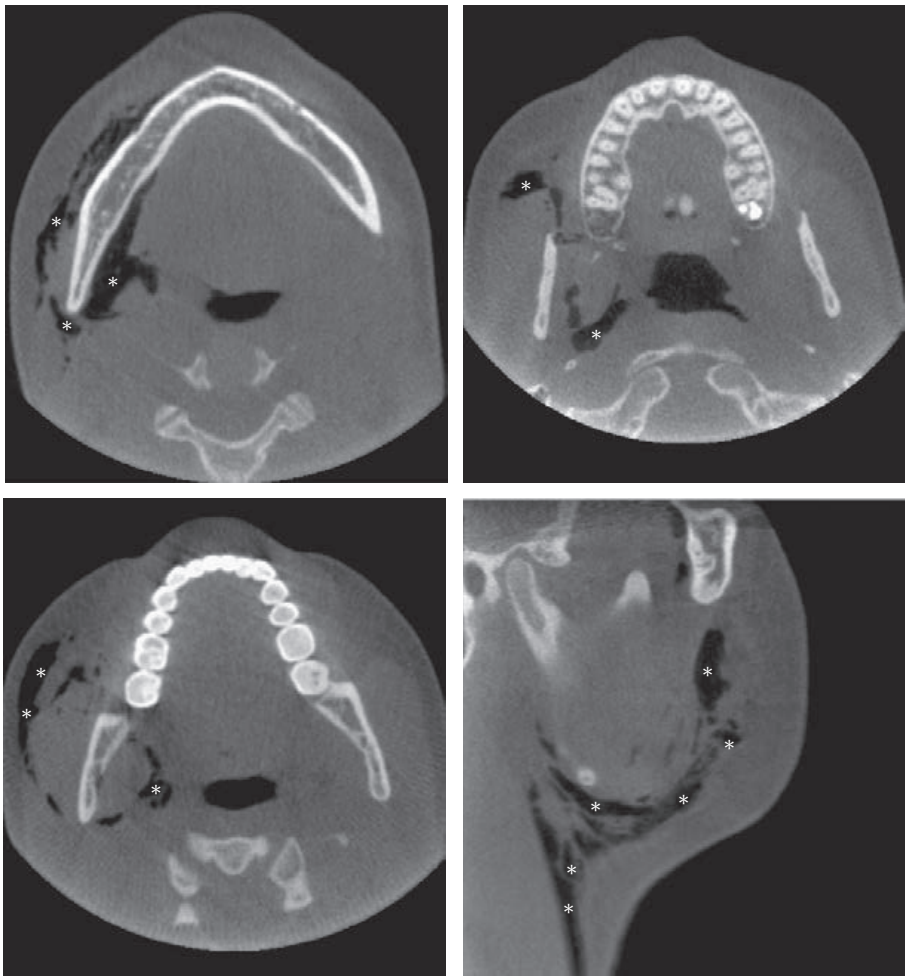
CERVICAL EMPHYSEMA

Introduction of gas deep to the skin which may be due to trauma, iatrogenic, or infection.

Some causes include fractures of the head and neck, introduction of air from a high speed dental drill, and surgical procedures such as root canals and extractions of mandibular 3rd molars

In the head and neck, cervical emphysema can spread via the fascial planes

May be benign or fatal, depending on the spread



* Presence of air displaying extension of cervical emphysema

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

CHAPTER 18
EAR

Overview and Topographic Anatomy 452
Structures and Boundaries 455
Muscles 462
Nerve Supply 463
Vascular Supply 468
Clinical Correlates 476

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

18 Overview and Topographic Anatomy

GENERAL INFORMATION

Dual functions:
- Maintains the balance of the body (vestibular)
- Perceives sound (auditory)

3 divisions:
- external ear
- middle ear
- inner ear

External Ear

The most superficial portion of the ear, the external ear includes the auricle, external acoustic meatus, and the tympanic membrane

Helps gather sound and direct it to the tympanic membrane

Middle Ear

Transmits sound vibrations from the tympanic membrane to the inner ear via the ear ossicles: malleus, incus, and stapes

Mainly within the petrous portion of the temporal bone

General shape resembles a biconcave lens

Composed of the tympanic cavity that connects anteriorly with the nasopharynx via the auditory tube and the mastoid air cells posteriorly

Tympanic cavity contains the ear ossicles (malleus, incus, and stapes), muscles (tensor tympani and stapedius muscles), nerves (chorda tympani, tympanic branch of the glossopharyngeal nerve, and lesser petrosal nerve), and tympanic plexus (parasympathetics from the glosspharyngeal nerve plus sympathetics from the superior cervical ganglion via the carotid plexus)

Inner Ear

Vestibular and auditory structures, which are filled with fluid, make up the inner ear:
- Auditory portion (cochlea) is stimulated by the movement of the fluid
- Vestibular portion (utricle, saccule, and semicircular canals) is stimulated by fluid movement within these chambers

Consists of a membranous labyrinth that lies within an osseous labyrinth

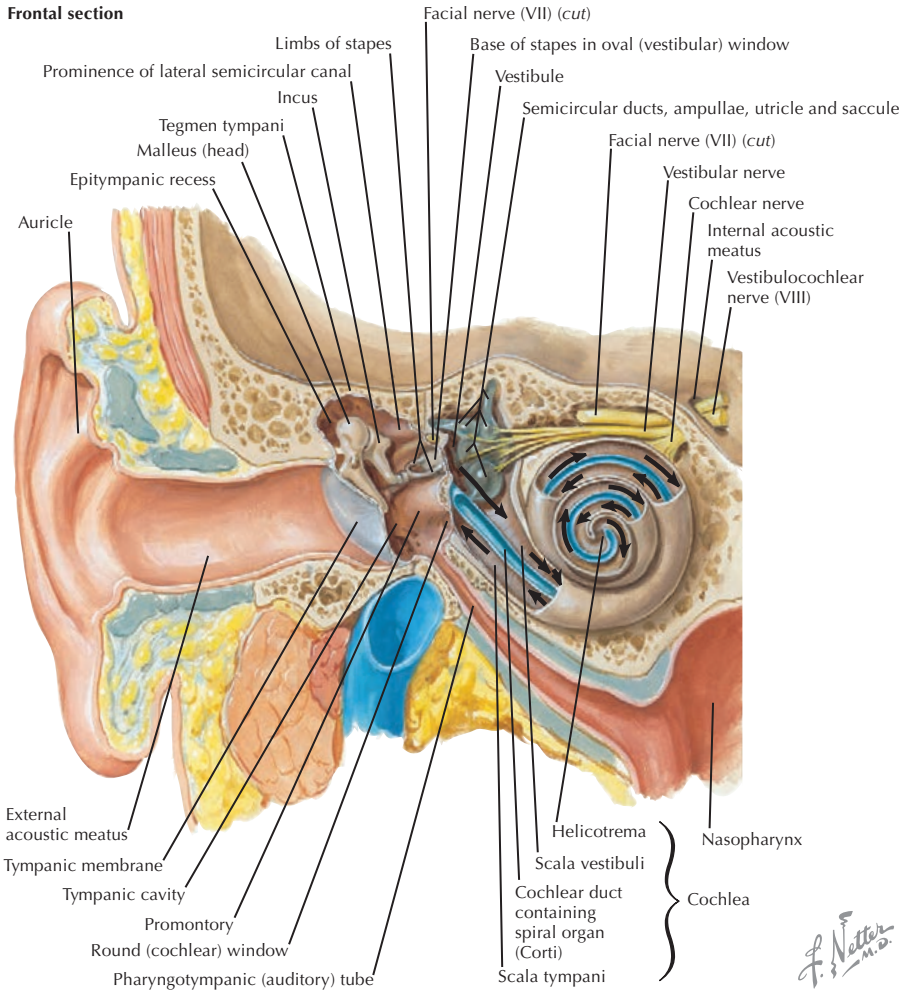
The receptors for auditory and vestibular function are located within the membranous labyrinth

Fluids located in the membranous labyrinth (endolymph) and osseous labyrinth (perilymph) stimulate the auditory and vestibular receptors

The vestibulocochlear nerve enters the internal ear via the internal acoustic meatus

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

GENERAL INFORMATION *CONTINUED*

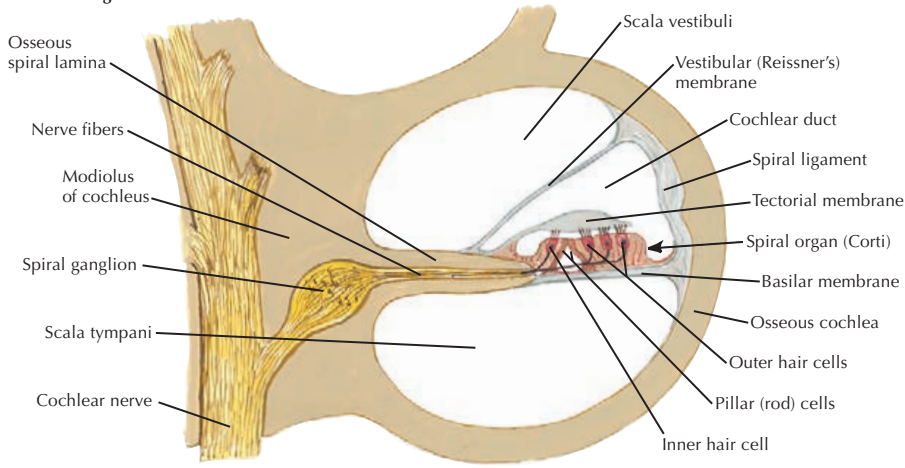


Note: Arrows indicate course of sound waves

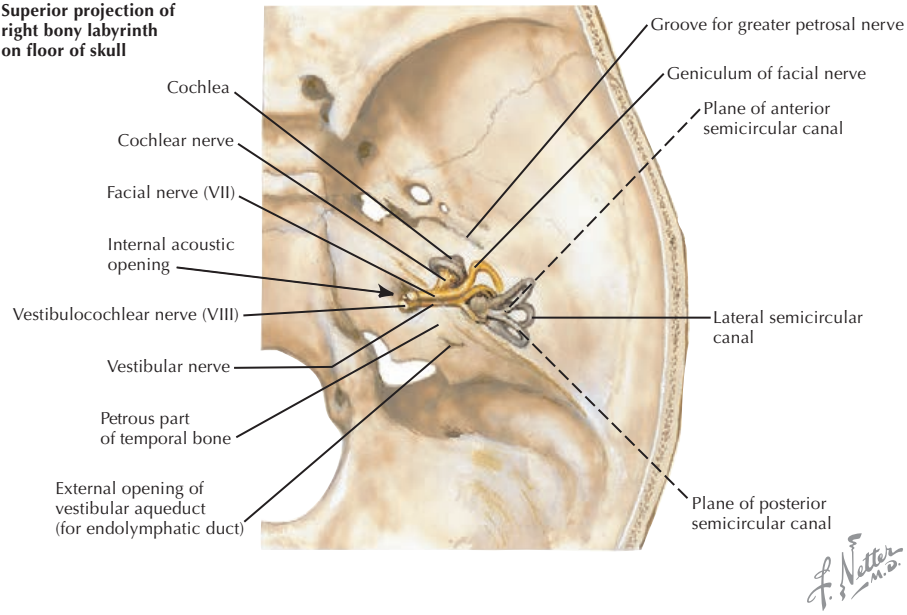
WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

GENERAL INFORMATION *CONTINUED*

Section through turn of cochlea



Superior projection of right bony labyrinth on floor of skull



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

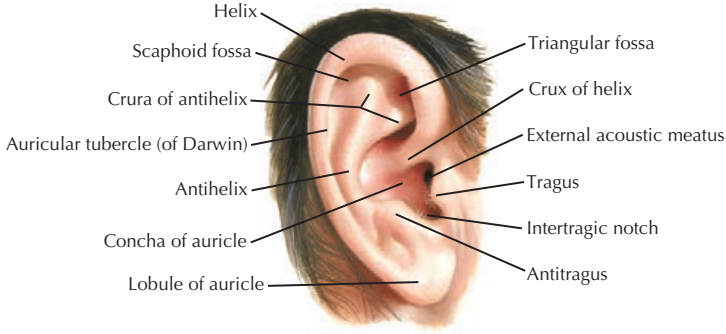
STRUCTURES OF THE EXTERNAL EAR

Structure	Comments
Auricle	An irregularly shaped structure made of elastic cartilage and skin Superior portion has a skeleton of elastic cartilage Inferior portion, the lobule, has no cartilage *Helix:* the outermost curved rim of the auricle, continues anteriorly to blend with the head at the crus helix *Antihelix:* the portion of cartilage that follows along the helix from the inside *Scaphoid fossa:* the depressed area between the helix and antihelix *Concha:* demarcated by the antihelix, it is the depressed area that leads to the external acoustic meatus *Tragus:* extends from the face into the concha *Antitragus:* extends from the inferior portion of the antihelix into the concha and is separated from the tragus by the intertragic notch
External acoustic meatus	The passageway connecting the concha of the auricle to the tympanic membrane Covered by skin rich in sebaceous and cerumen-secreting glands About 2.5 cm in length *Lateral 1/3:* cartilaginous, extends into the temporal bone *Medial 2/3:* osseous, formed by the tympanic, squamous, and petrous portions of the temporal bone
Tympanic membrane	The most medial portion of the external ear that separates it from the middle ear Lies in a groove on the tympanic part of the temporal bone A thin, semitransparent, 3-layered membrane: • *External layer*—derived from skin; composed of stratified squamous epithelium • *Middle layer*—fibrous, with fibers attaching to the malleus • *Inner layer*—continuous with the mucous membrane of the middle ear cavity; composed of columnar epithelium with cilia Anterior and posterior malleolar folds lie on the superior portion of the tympanic membrane Tense and loose portions are called the pars tensa and pars flaccida, respectively

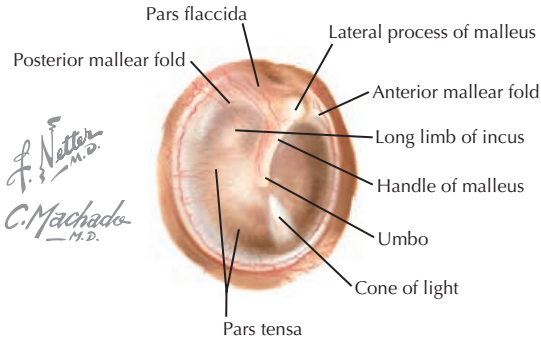
WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

STRUCTURES OF THE EXTERNAL EAR *CONTINUED*

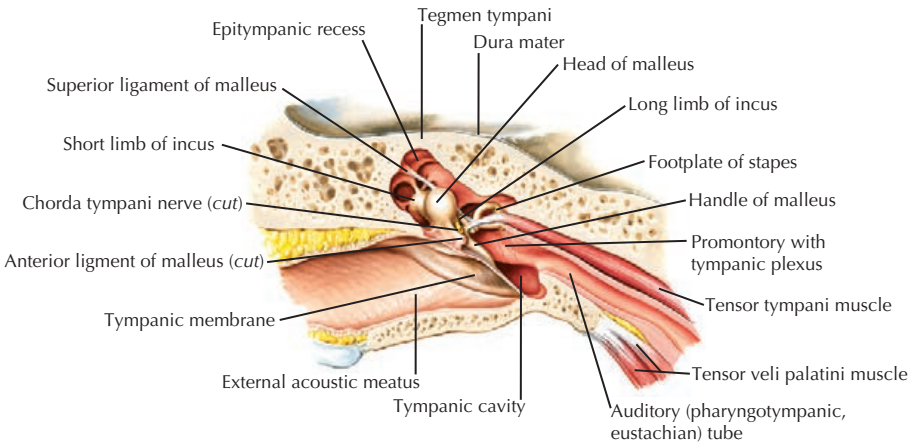
Right auricle (pinna)



Otoscopic view of right tympanic membrane



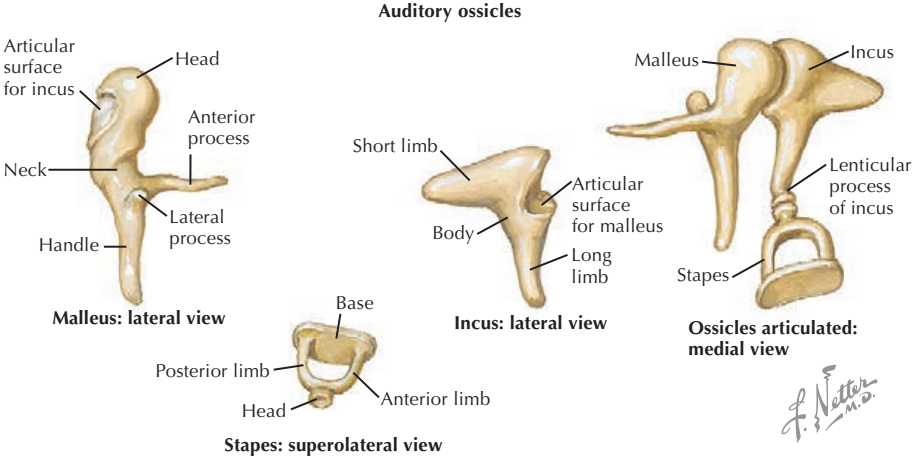
Coronal oblique section of external acoustic meatus and middle ear (tympanic cavity)



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

BOUNDARIES OF THE MIDDLE EAR

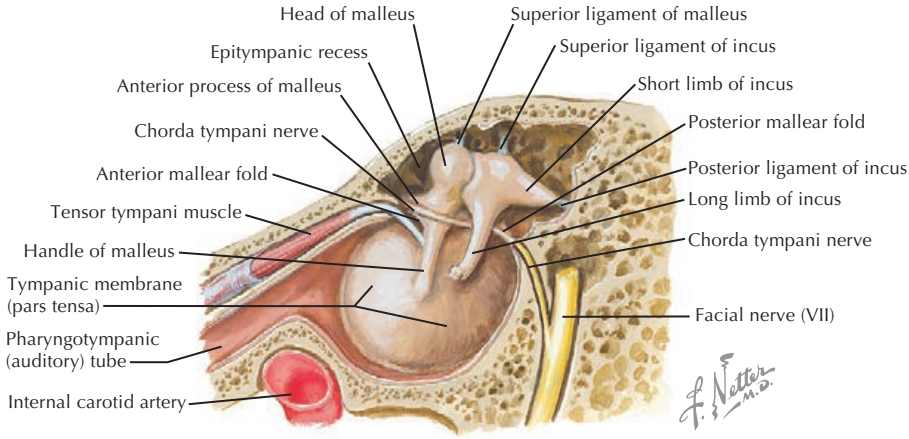
Boundary	Comments
Roof	Made by the tegmen tympani, separating the middle ear from the temporal lobe of the middle cranial fossa
Floor	Thin bone separates the middle ear from the internal jugular v. Tympanic canaliculus, located in the floor of the middle ear; allows the tympanic branch of the glossopharyngeal n. to enter the middle ear
Anterior wall	*Auditory tube:* located in the middle ear's anterior wall; connects the middle ear with the nasopharynx; equilibrates pressure on either side of the tympanic membrane, and allows proper drainage of the middle ear Lesser petrosal n. exits the middle ear through the anterior wall Postganglionic sympathetic nerve fibers from the internal carotid a. pass through the anterior wall to enter the middle ear
Posterior wall	*Facial canal:* passes superoinferiorly immediately posterior to the middle ear until it terminates at the stylomastoid foramen *Mastoid antrum:* located in the superior portion of the posterior wall near the junction with the roof of the middle ear *Pyramid:* a hollow projection from the posterior wall; contains the tendon of the stapedius m. Posterior cranial fossa and sigmoid sinus are located posterior to the posterior wall
Medial wall	The medial wall separates the middle ear from the inner ear *Promontory:* a large protuberance created by the cochlea of the inner ear In the superior portion of the medial wall is a protuberance formed by the lateral semicircular canal Inferior to the lateral semicircular canal on the opposite side of the medial wall is the horizontal portion of the facial canal Fenestra vestibuli (oval window—where the footplate of the stapes is located) and fenestra cochleae (round window—an opening covered by a membrane): located in a superior-inferior relationship on the medial wall posterior to the promontory Tendon of the tensor tympani m. enters the middle ear through the medial wall
Lateral wall	The lateral wall separates the middle ear from the external ear; mainly created by the tympanic membrane, with the malleus attached to the membrane at the umbo *Epitympanic recess:* the region superior to the tympanic membrane that houses portions of the malleus and incus Chorda tympani n. lies along the tympanic membrane and malleus until exiting the petrotympanic fissure



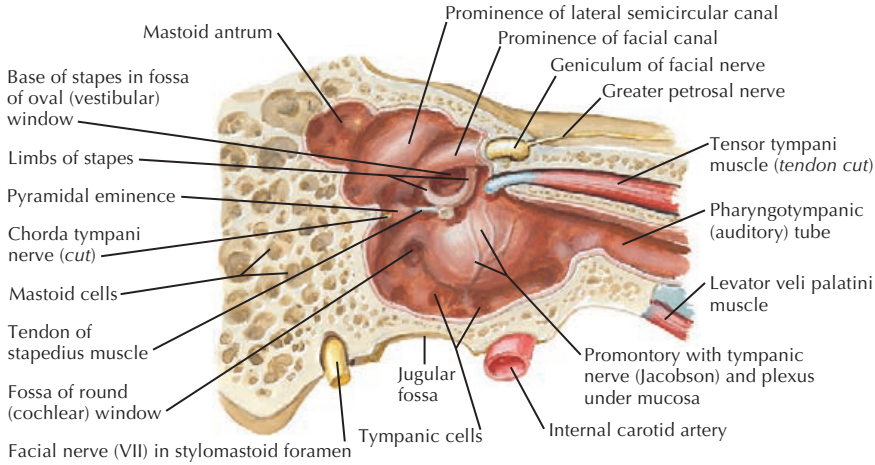
WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

BOUNDARIES OF THE MIDDLE EAR *CONTINUED*

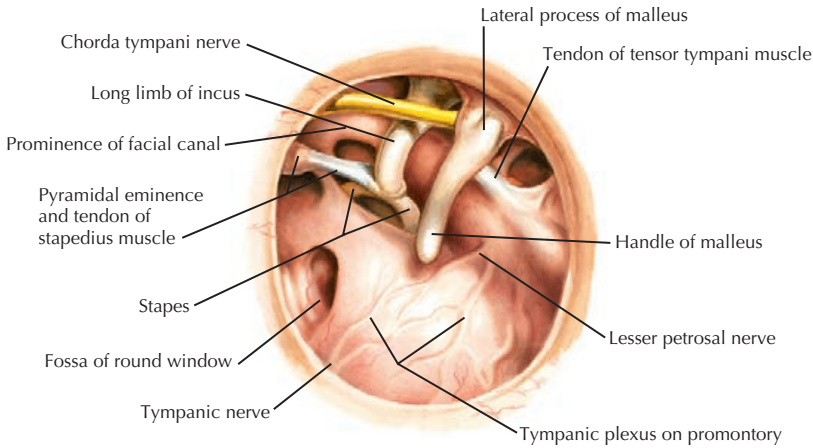
Lateral wall of tympanic cavity: medial (internal) view



Medial wall of tympanic cavity: lateral view



Right tympanic cavity after removal of tympanic membrane (lateral view)



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

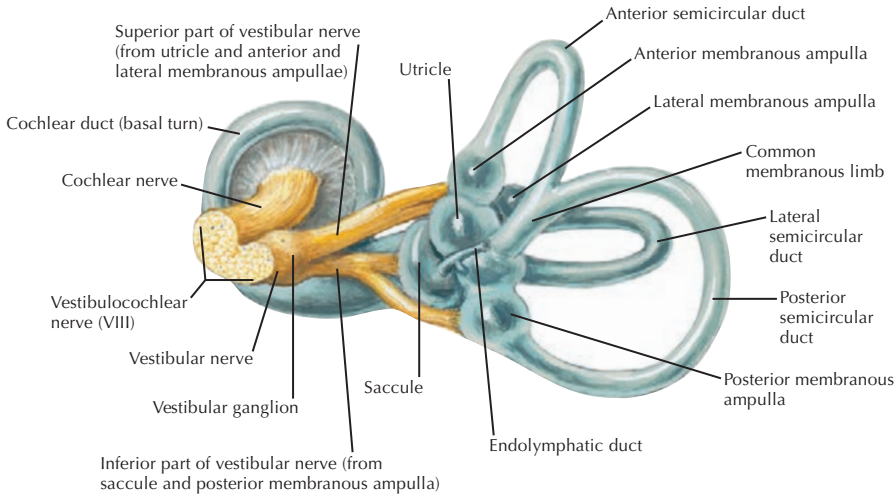
STRUCTURES OF THE INNER EAR

Structure	Description
Osseous labyrinth	Located in the petrous portion of the temporal bone Surrounds the membranous labyrinth and contains perilymph Connects to the middle ear via the fenestra vestibuli and the fenestra cochleae Divided into 3 parts: vestibule, cochlea, and semicircular canals
Vestibule	The middle portion of the osseous labyrinth, it contains the saccule and utricle of the membranous labyrinth Contains an opening for the vestibular aqueduct containing the endolymphatic duct
Cochlea	Anterior portion of the osseous labyrinth contains the cochlear duct of the membranous labyrinth Like a seashell, it spirals around a central point (the modiolus), which carries branches of the cochlear n. to the cochlear duct, for 2 and 3/4 turns, getting progressively smaller while approaching its apex As the cochlea spirals, the spiral lamina is raised from the modiolus Within the spiral lamina, the cochlear duct lies between the scala vestibuli and the scala tympani Scala vestibuli and scala tympani are continuous at the helicotrema at the apex An opening for the aqueduct of the cochlea allows perilymph to drain into the cerebrospinal fluid
Semicircular canals	The posterior portion of the osseous labyrinth *3 semicircular canals:* anterior, posterior, and lateral *Ampulla:* a dilated end of each Anterior and posterior semicircular canals have a common crus
Membranous labyrinth	Located within the osseous labyrinth; contains endolymph Divided into 4 parts: cochlear duct, saccule, utricle, and semicircular ducts
Cochlear duct	A spiral structure located within the cochlea Begins at a blind end of the cochlea at the apex and ends where it joins the saccule via the ductus reuniens Triangular in shape, with a base created by the endosteum of the canal known as the spiral ligament and the stria vascularis Roof is formed by the vestibular membrane that separates the cochlear duct from the scala vestibuli Floor is formed by the basilar membrane, on which lies the organ of Corti; separates the duct from the scala tympani
Saccule	A small structure located within the vestibule of the osseous labyrinth Connected to the utricle via the utriculosaccular duct and the endolymphatic duct Sensory receptors (the maculae) are located in the saccule
Utricle	Located within the vestibule of the osseous labyrinth Sensory receptors (maculae) are located in the utricle
Semicircular ducts	Correspond to the semicircular canals of the osseous labyrinth (anterior, posterior, and lateral) Open into the utricle via 5 openings Sensory receptors known as crista are located in the ampullae of the semicircular ducts

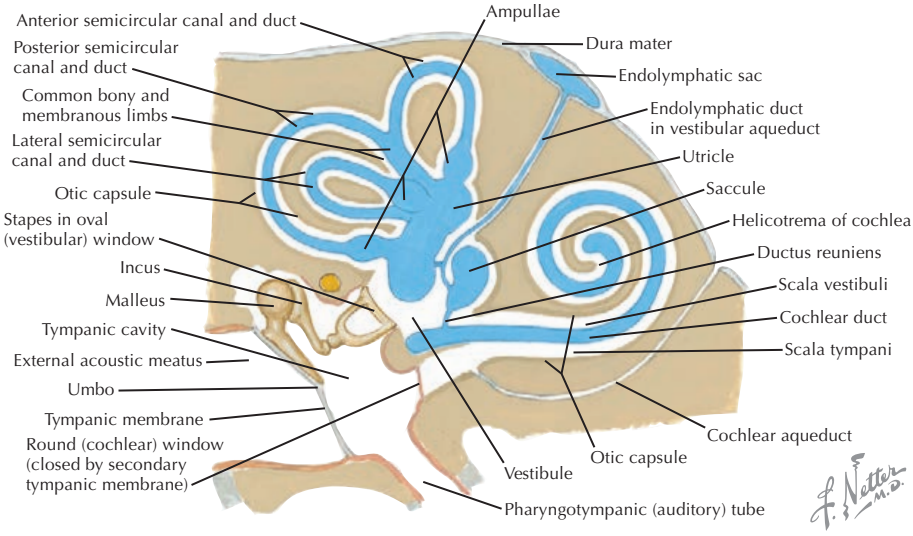
WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

STRUCTURES OF THE INNER EAR *CONTINUED*

Right membranous labyrinth with nerves: posteromedial view

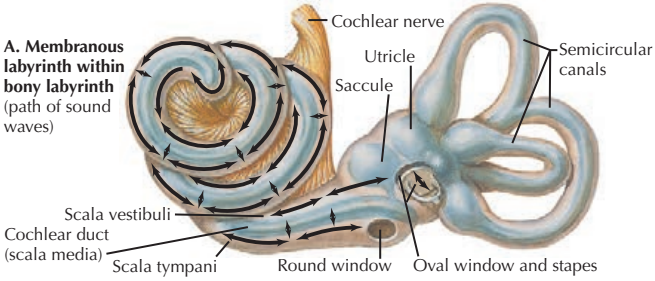


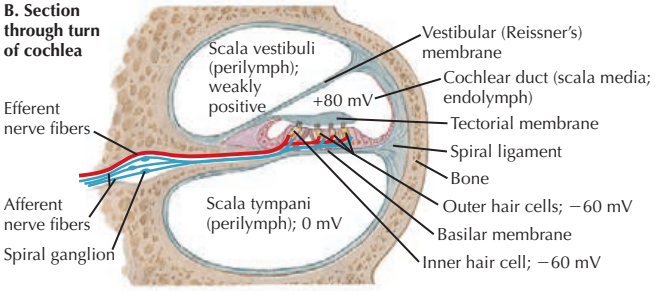
Bony and membranous labyrinths: schema

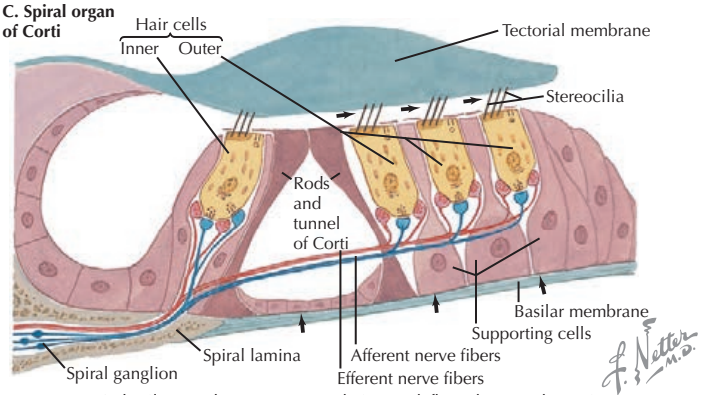


WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

STRUCTURES OF THE INNER EAR *CONTINUED*







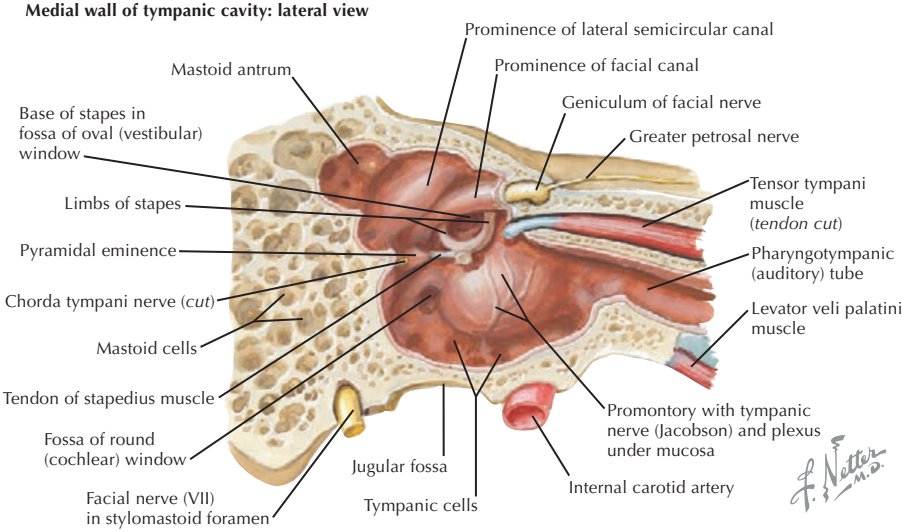
As basilar membrane moves up, hairs are deflected outward, causing depolarization of hair cells and increased firing of afferent nerve fibers

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

OVERVIEW

Muscle	Origin	Insertion	Actions	Nerve Supply
Tensor tympani	Bony canal at auditory tube Cartilaginous part of auditory tube Greater wing of the sphenoid	Handle of the malleus	Tenses the tympanic membrane and helps dampen sound vibrations	Mandibular division of the trigeminal n.
Stapedius	Pyramid on posterior wall of the tympanic cavity	Neck of the stapes	Dampens excessive sound vibrations	Stapedius branch of the facial n.

Medial wall of tympanic cavity: lateral view



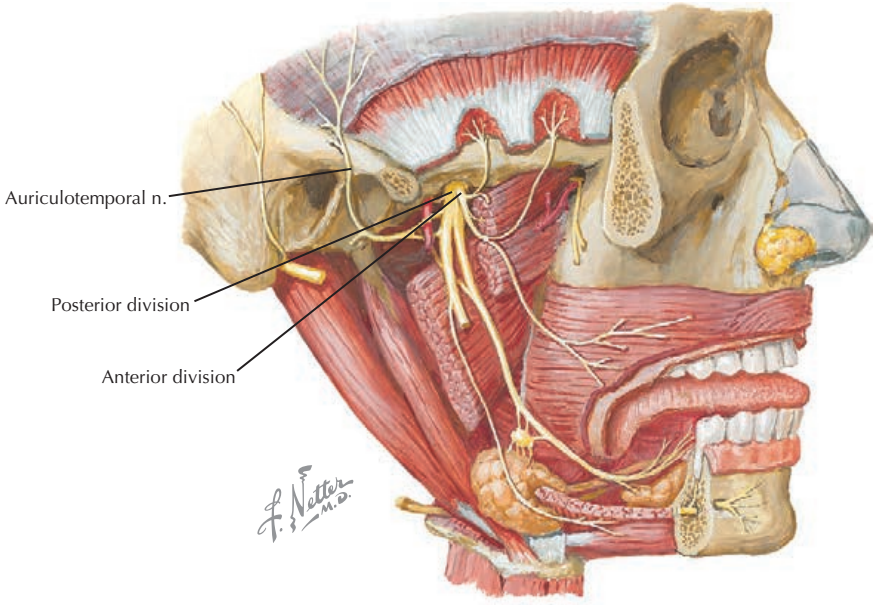
WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

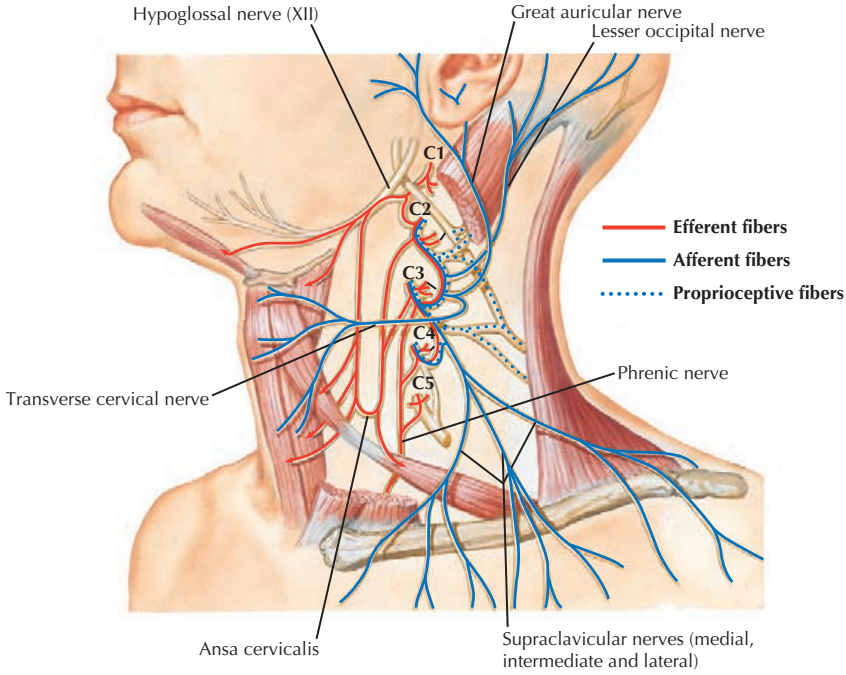
SENSORY INNERVATION OF THE EXTERNAL EAR

Nerve	Source	Course
Great auricular	Cervical plexus, formed by contributions of C2 and C3 ventral rami	After passing posterior to the sternocleidomastoid m. at Erb's point, it ascends along the sternocleidomastoid, dividing into anterior and posterior branches The posterior branch innervates the skin over the mastoid process, the posterior portion of the auricle, and the concha and lobule
Lesser occipital	Cervical plexus, formed by contributions from C2 ventral ramus	After passing posterior to the sternocleidomastoid m. at Erb's point, it ascends posterior to the sternocleidomastoid along the posterior portion of the head Continues on the head posterior to the auricle Supplies the skin posterior to the auricle
Auriculotemporal	Posterior part of the mandibular division of the trigeminal n.	Normally arises by 2 roots, between which the middle meningeal a. passes Runs posteriorly just inferior to the lateral pterygoid m. and continues to the medial aspect of the neck of the mandible Turns superiorly with the superficial temporal vessels between the auricle and condyle of the mandible deep to the parotid gland On exiting the parotid gland, ascends over the zygomatic arch Innervates the skin in the region of the tragus, crus helix, anterior portion of the external acoustic meatus, and outer surface of the tympanic membrane
Auricular branch of the vagus	Superior ganglion of the vagus n.	Travels posterior to the internal jugular v. and passes along the temporal bone Crosses the facial canal superior to the stylomastoid foramen Enters the mastoid canaliculus between the mastoid process and the tympanic part of the temporal bone and gives rise to 2 branches: • 1 branch joins the posterior auricular branch of the facial n. • The 2nd branch innervates the skin of the back of the auricle and the posterior portion of the external acoustic meatus
Tympanic branch of glossopharyngeal	Branches from the inferior ganglion of the vagus n., located in the petrous portion of the temporal bone	Passes superiorly through the tympanic canaliculus to enter the middle ear In the middle ear, it divides into branches that form part of the tympanic plexus Tympanic plexus gives rise to: • Preganglionic parasympathetic fibers to the parotid gland • Postganglionic sympathetic fibers to the parotid gland • Sensory fibers to the middle ear cavity, including the tympanic membrane and auditory tube (mainly from the tympanic branch of the glossopharyngeal n.)

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

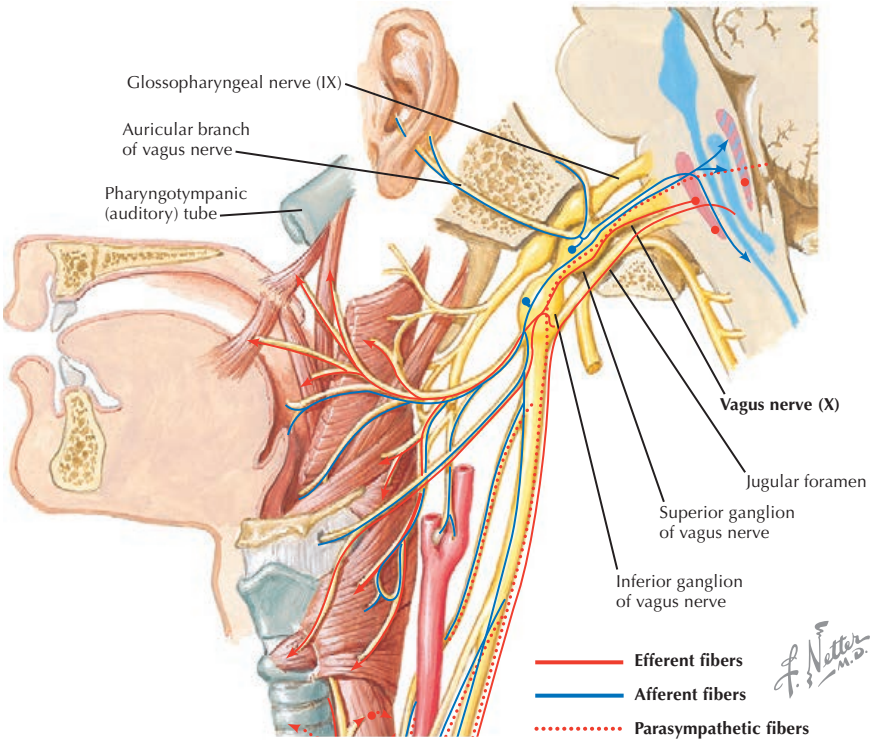
SENSORY INNERVATION OF THE EXTERNAL EAR *CONTINUED*





WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

SENSORY INNERVATION OF THE EXTERNAL EAR *CONTINUED*

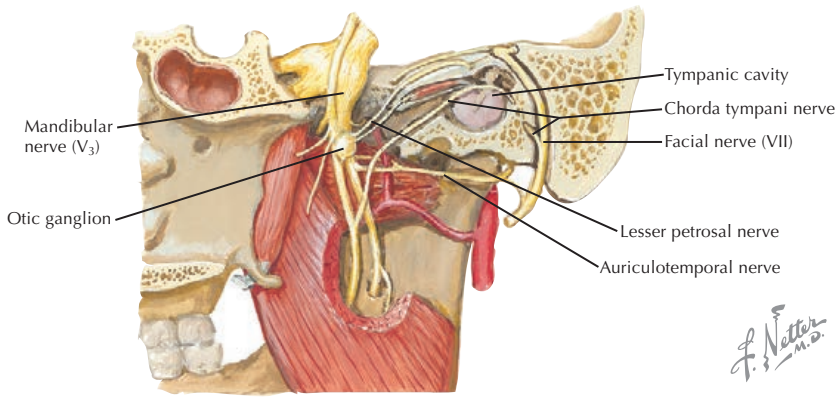


WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

SENSORY INNERVATION OF THE MIDDLE EAR

Nerve	Source	Course
Tympanic plexus	Formed by the: • Tympanic branch of the glossopharyngeal n. (arises from the inferior ganglion located in the petrous portion of the temporal bone) • Caroticotympanic nn. (arise from the carotid plexus on the internal carotid a.)	Tympanic branch of the glossopharyngeal n. passes superiorly through the tympanic canaliculus to enter the middle ear In the middle ear, it divides into branches that form the tympanic plexus Caroticotympanic nn. join the tympanic branch of the glossopharyngeal n. Tympanic plexus gives rise to: • Preganglionic parasympathetic fibers to the parotid gland • Postganglionic sympathetic fibers to the parotid gland • Sensory fibers to the middle ear cavity, including the tympanic membrane and auditory tube (mainly from the tympanic branch of the glossopharyngeal)
Facial	Cranial n. VII has multiple motor and sensory functions Created by: • Nervus intermedius, which contains the sensory fibers and the parasympathetic fibers • Motor portion that innervates the muscles derived from the 2nd pharyngeal arch	Nervus intermedius and motor portions—enter the internal acoustic meatus of the temporal bone Facial n. then passes through the facial canal until it exits the stylomastoid foramen, initially traveling horizontally along the outside of the medial wall of the middle ear; then it bends posteriorly and inferiorly to the middle ear Where the nerve changes direction is in the geniculate ganglion; here the greater petrosal n. is given off to travel anteriorly toward the pterygopalatine fossa Within the facial canal, the nerve gives rise to the nerve to the stapedius m. and the chorda tympani n. Chorda tympani passes anteriorly along the tympanic membrane and the malleus until it exits via the petrotympanic fissure Chorda tympani carries preganglionic parasympathetic fibers to the submandibular ganglion of the oral cavity, and taste fibers to the anterior 2/3 of the tongue Stapedius n. innervates the stapedius m.

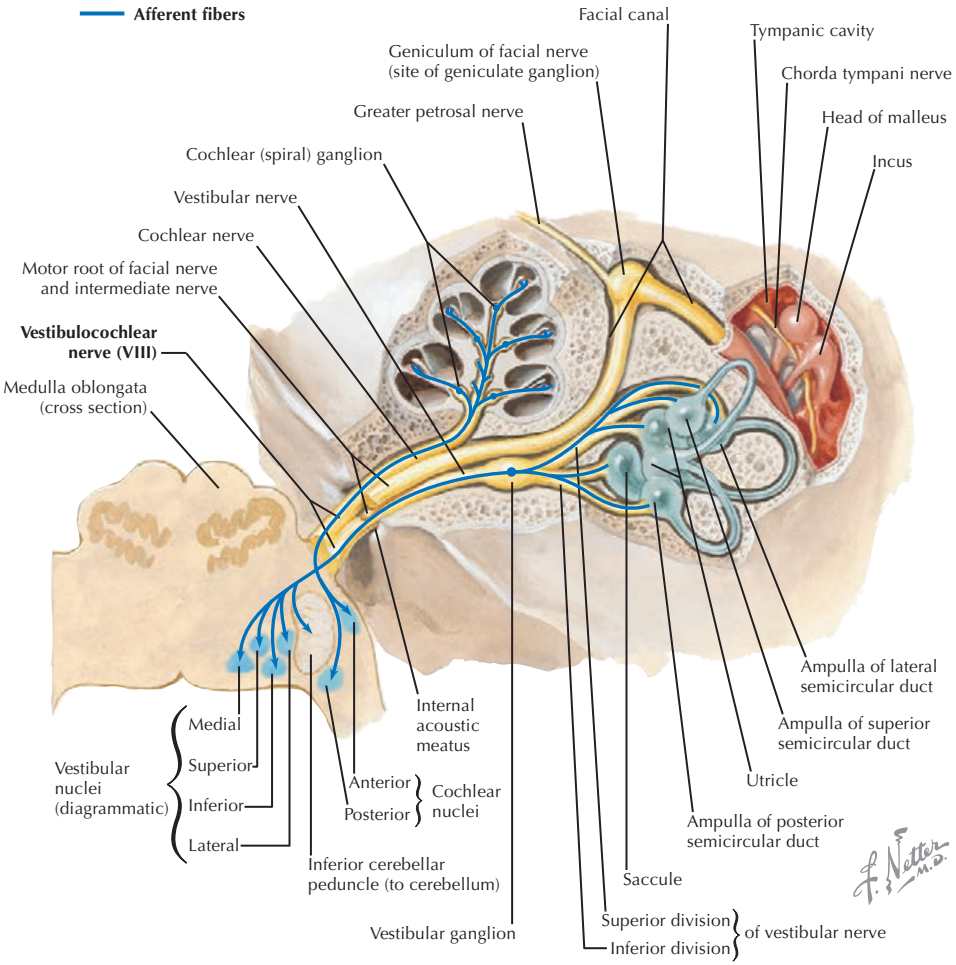
Medial view



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

SENSORY INNERVATION OF THE INNER EAR

Nerve	Source	Course
Vestibulocochlear	Also called cranial n. VIII, it emerges between the pons and the medulla oblongata	Enters the internal acoustic meatus with the facial n. Within the internal acoustic meatus, it divides into vestibular branches and the cochlear branch
Vestibular	The vestibular portion has nerve cell bodies in the vestibular ganglion (Scarpa's ganglion)	Divides into superior and inferior branches: • Superior vestibular branch innervates the maculae of the saccule and utricle and the ampulla of the anterior and lateral semicircular ducts • Inferior vestibular branch innervates the macula of the saccule and the ampulla of the posterior semicircular duct
Cochlear	The cochlear portion has nerve cell bodies in the spiral ganglion	Utilizes the spiral ganglion within the modiolus to pass to the organ of Corti

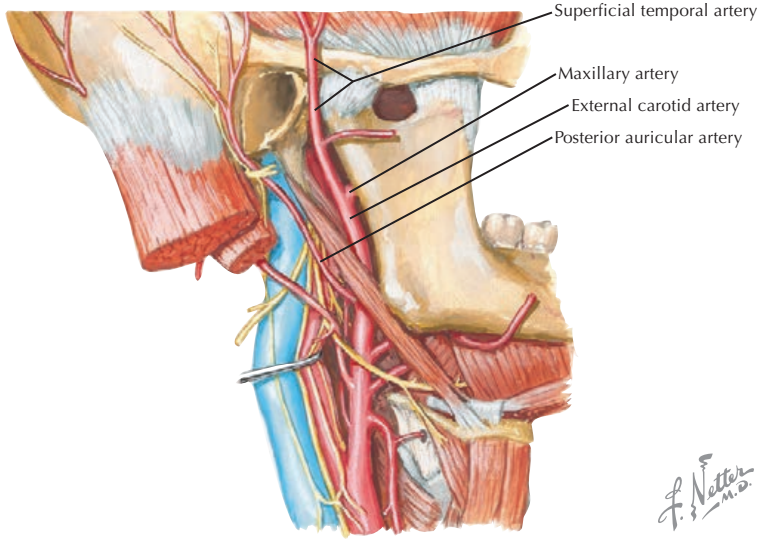


WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

ARTERIAL SUPPLY OF THE EXTERNAL EAR

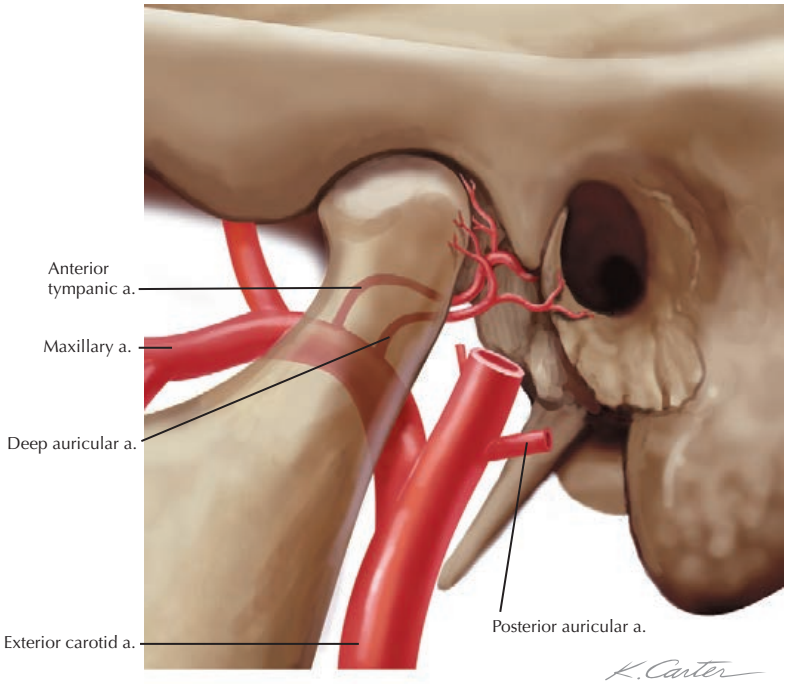
Artery	Source	Course
Superficial temporal	A terminal branch of the external carotid a. that arises within the parotid gland	Within the parotid gland, it gives off a transverse facial a. Emerges from the superior part of the parotid gland immediately posterior to the temporomandibular joint and anterior to the external auditory meatus Passes superficial to the root of the zygomatic arch just anterior to the auriculotemporal n. and the auricle While passing superiorly, it gives off branches that supply the auricle and the external acoustic meatus
Posterior auricular	External carotid a. within the parotid gland	Passes superiorly between the mastoid process and cartilage of the ear During its path to anastomose with the superficial temporal and the occipital aa., it supplies the auricle and external acoustic meatus A stylomastoid branch arises from the posterior auricular and enters the stylomastoid foramen to supply the internal surface of the tympanic membrane
Deep auricular	A branch of the maxillary a. (1 of the terminal branches of the external carotid a.) Arises in the same area as for the anterior tympanic a.	Lies in the parotid gland, posterior to the temporomandibular joint, where it supplies that joint Passes into the external acoustic meatus to supply it; then supplies the outer surface of the tympanic membrane
Anterior tympanic	A branch of the maxillary a. (1 of the terminal branches of the external carotid a.)	Given off in the same area as for the deep auricular a. Passes superiorly immediately posterior to the temporomandibular joint Enters the tympanic cavity through the petrotympanic fissure Aids in supplying the inner surface of the tympanic membrane

Parotid space (bed): right lateral dissection



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

ARTERIAL SUPPLY OF THE EXTERNAL EAR *CONTINUED*



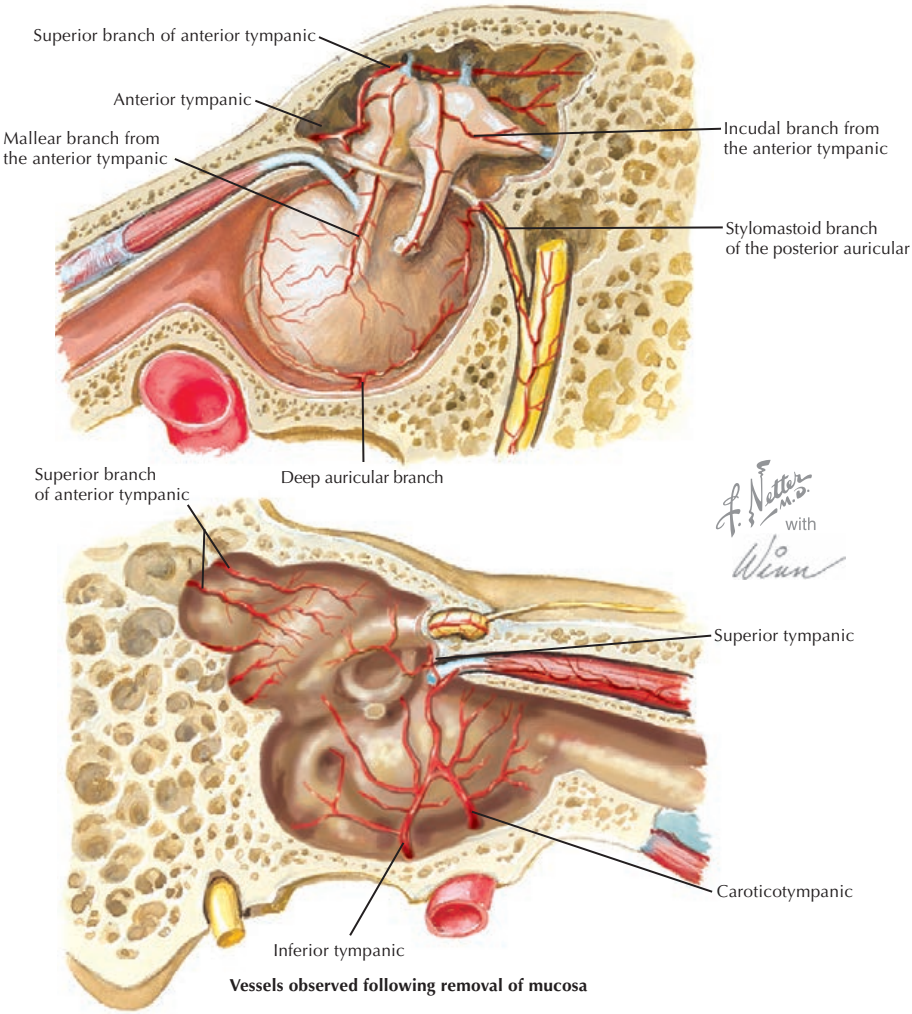
WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

ARTERIAL SUPPLY OF THE MIDDLE EAR

Artery	Source	Course
Posterior auricular	External carotid a. within the parotid gland	Passes superiorly between the mastoid process cartilage of the ear During its path to anastomose with the superficial temporal and the occipital aa., it supplies the auricle and external acoustic meatus A stylomastoid branch arises from the posterior auricular a. and enters the stylomastoid foramen to supply the internal surface of the tympanic membrane
Anterior tympanic	Maxillary a. (1 of the terminal branches of the external carotid a.)	Given off in the same area as for the deep auricular a. Passes superiorly immediately posterior to the temporomandibular joint Enters the tympanic cavity through the petrotympanic fissure Aids in supplying the outer surface of the tympanic membrane and the anterior portion of the tympanic cavity
Inferior tympanic	Ascending pharyngeal a. of the external carotid a.	Ascends deep to the other branches of the external carotid a. and more superiorly to the stylopharyngeus m. Passes into the middle ear through the petrous portion of the temporal bone Helps supply the medial wall of the tympanic cavity
Superior tympanic	Middle meningeal a. of the maxillary a.	Arises from the middle meningeal a. immediately after passing through the foramen spinosum within the middle cranial fossa Passes in the canal of the tensor tympani m. to help supply the tensor tympani and its bony canal
Caroticotympanic branch of the internal carotid	Internal carotid a.	Passes into the tympanic cavity through an aperture in the carotid canal Helps supply the middle ear

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

ARTERIAL SUPPLY OF THE MIDDLE EAR *CONTINUED*

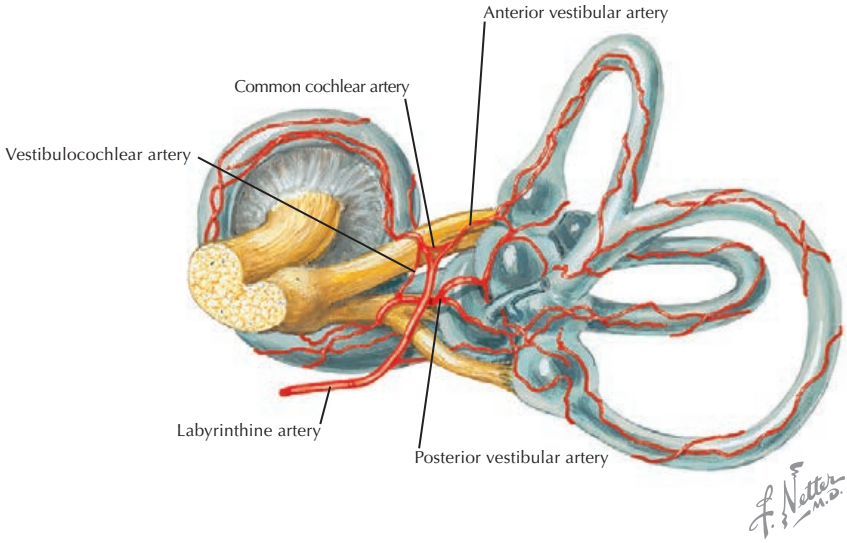


Vessels observed following removal of mucosa

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

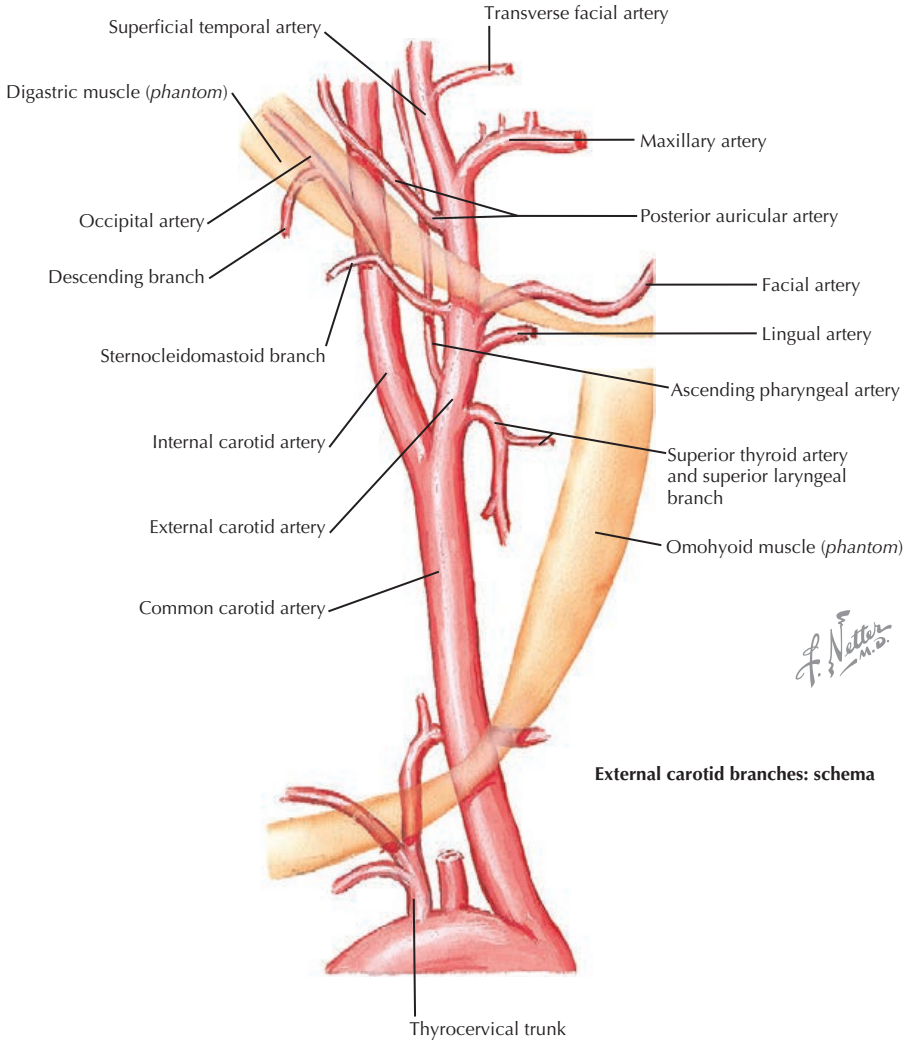
ARTERIAL SUPPLY OF THE INNER EAR

Artery	Source	Course
Labyrinthine	Basilar a., which gives rise to the circle of Willis	Passes through the internal acoustic meatus, where it further divides into cochlear and vestibular branches that supply the cochlear and vestibular structures
Posterior auricular	External carotid a. within the parotid gland	Passes superiorly between the mastoid process and cartilage of the ear Anastomoses with the superficial temporal and the occipital aa. A stylomastoid branch arises from the posterior auricular a., enters the stylomastoid foramen, and continues to the inner ear During its path to anastomose with the superficial temporal and the occipital aa., it supplies the auricle and external acoustic meatus Stylomastoid branch supplies the internal surface of the tympanic membrane and the posterior portion of the tympanic cavity; then helps supply the inner ear



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

ARTERIAL SUPPLY OF THE INNER EAR *CONTINUED*



External carotid branches: schema

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

VENOUS DRAINAGE OF THE EXTERNAL EAR

Vein	Comments
Superficial temporal	Descends posterior to the zygomatic root of the temporal bone alongside the auriculotemporal n. to enter the substance of the parotid gland Unites with the maxillary v. to form the retromandibular v. Along its path, receives tributaries from the auricle
Posterior auricular	Arises from a plexus of veins created by the occipital and superficial temporal vv. Descends posterior to the auricle to unite with the posterior division of the retromandibular v. to form the external jugular v. Along its path, receives blood from the stylomastoid branch of the posterior auricular v., which drains the auricle, external acoustic meatus, and tympanic membrane
Maxillary	A short vein, sometimes paired, formed by the convergence of the tributaries of the pterygoid plexus Enters the substance of the parotid gland, traveling posteriorly between the sphenomandibular lig. and the neck of the mandible Unites with the superficial temporal v. to form the retromandibular v. Helps drain blood from the external acoustic meatus and tympanic membrane
Pterygoid plexus	An extensive network of veins that parallels the 2nd and 3rd parts of the maxillary a. Receives branches that correspond to the same branches of the maxillary a. Tributaries eventually converge to form a short maxillary v. Communicates with the cavernous sinus, pharyngeal venous plexus, and facial vein via the deep facial v. and ophthalmic vv. Helps drain the external acoustic meatus
Transverse sinus	One of the deep venous sinuses that helps drain the brain Aids in receiving blood from the tympanic membrane

VENOUS DRAINAGE OF THE MIDDLE EAR

Pterygoid plexus	An extensive network of veins that parallels the 2nd and 3rd parts of the maxillary a. Receives branches that correspond to the same branches of the maxillary a. Tributaries eventually converge to form a short maxillary v. Communicates with the cavernous sinus, pharyngeal venous plexus, and facial vein via the deep facial v. and ophthalmic vv. Helps drain the tympanic cavity
Superior petrosal sinus	One of the deep venous sinuses that helps drain the brain, running along the superior margin of the petrous portion of the temporal bone Aids in receiving blood from the tympanic cavity

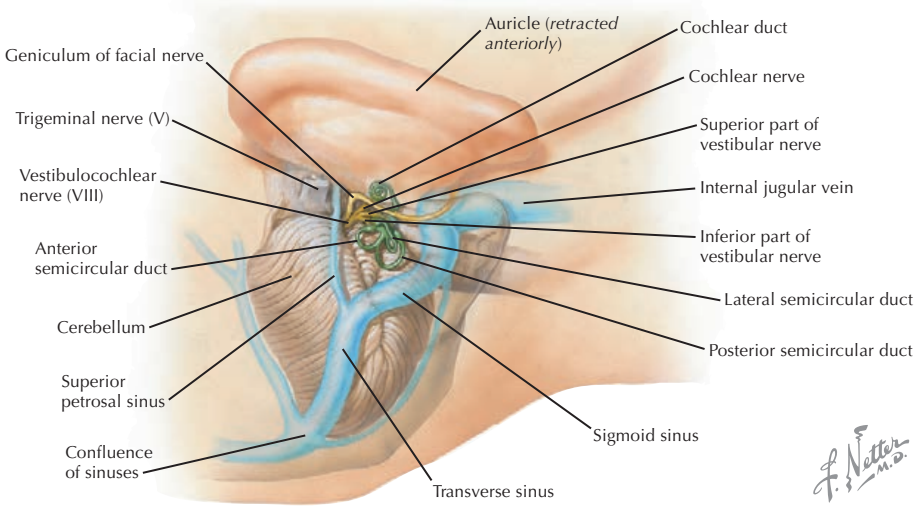
VENOUS DRAINAGE OF THE INNER EAR

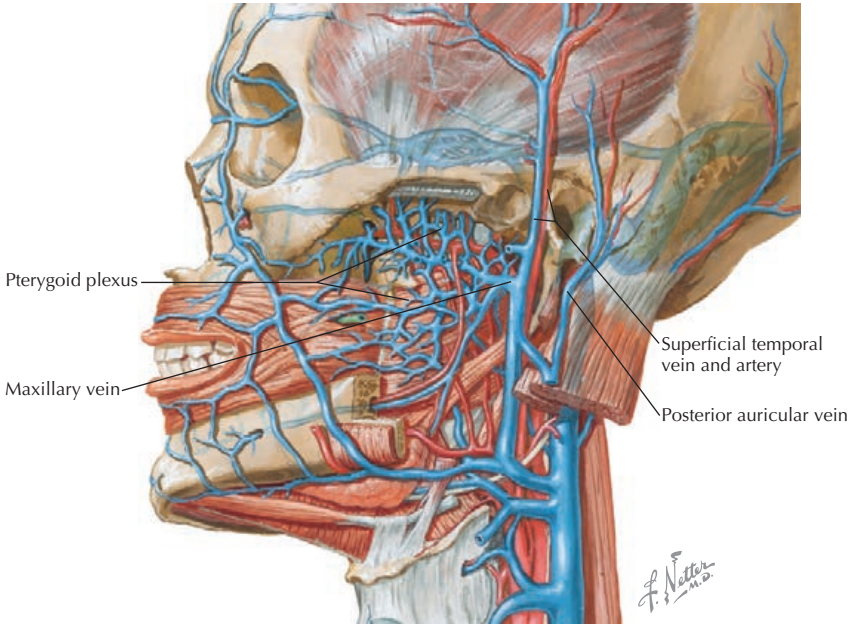
Labyrinthine	Begins in the cochlear and vestibular structures and passes medially through the internal acoustic meatus alongside the labyrinthine a. Drains into the superior petrosal sinus

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

VENOUS DRAINAGE OF THE INNER EAR *CONTINUED*

Lateral projection of right membranous labyrinth





WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Clinical Correlate

ACUTE OTITIS EXTERNA

Infection or inflammation of the auricle and external auditory canal located in the external ear, causing ear pain (otalgia)

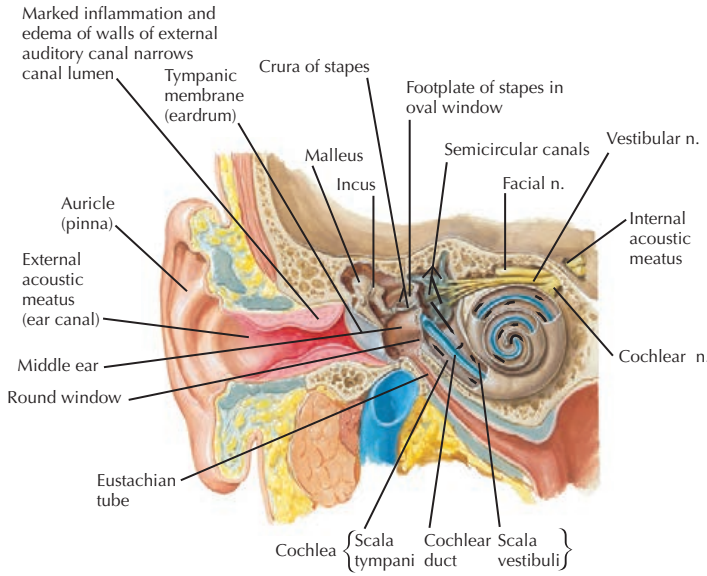
Also called "swimmer's ear"

2 major bacteria are involved: *Staphylococcus aureus* and *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*

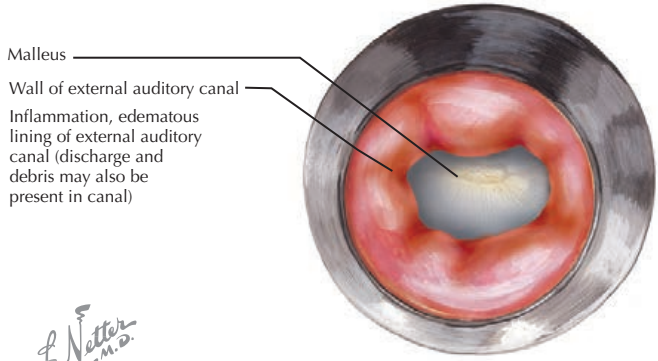
Pathogenesis

Excess water from swimming removes some of the ceruminous wax that lines the external auditory canal

Because the wax helps maintain a healthy canal, loss of the wax predisposes the canal to bacterial infections



In otitis externa, inflammation, edema, and discharge are limited to external auditory canal and its walls



Otoscopic view demonstrating clinical appearance of otitis externa

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Clinical Correlate

ACUTE OTITIS MEDIA

An inflammation of the middle ear cavity

More common in children

2 major bacteria are involved: *Streptococcus pneumoniae* and *Haemophilus influenzae*

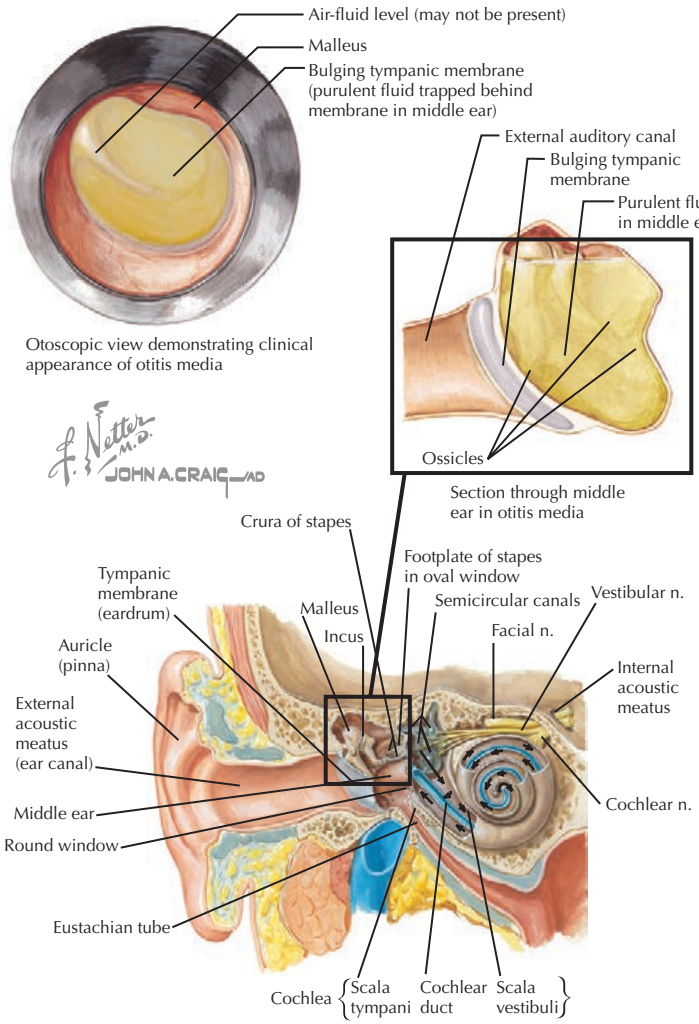
Pathogenesis

Often results from auditory tube dysfunction

Because the auditory tube allows drainage from the tympanic cavity into the nasopharynx, any blockage leads to a buildup of fluid in the tympanic cavity

When the fluid sits in the tympanic cavity, it predisposes the region to a bacterial infection

The resulting inflammation leads to ear pain (otalgia) and often diminished hearing



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

18 Clinical Correlate

MASTOIDITIS

A bacterial infection of the mastoid air cells

More common in children than in adults

Pathogenesis

Although less common since the advent of antibiotics, formerly it often occurred as a complication of acute otitis media, when infection spread from the middle ear cavity to the mastoid air cells

Once within the mastoid air cells, the infection can lead to inflammation and destruction of the mastoid bone

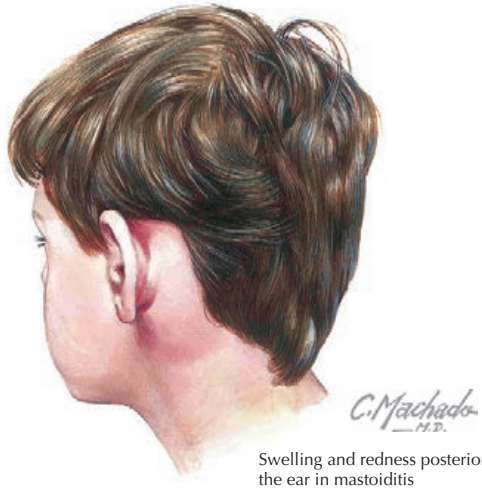
Because of the infection's location, it may lead to partial (or total) hearing loss, damage to the mastoid bone, or formation of an epidural abscess, or it may spread to involve the brain

Treatment

Can be difficult because medications cannot readily reach the mastoid air cells

In some cases, a mastoidectomy may be performed to drain the mastoid if antibiotic therapy is not successful

A myringotomy (creating an opening in the middle ear cavity through the tympanic membrane) is performed to drain the ear in acute otitis media



Swelling and redness posterior to the ear in mastoiditis

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

CHAPTER 19
EYE AND ORBIT

Overview and Topographic Anatomy of the Orbit 480

Osteology of the Orbit 482

Contents of the Orbit 484

Clinical Correlates 507

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

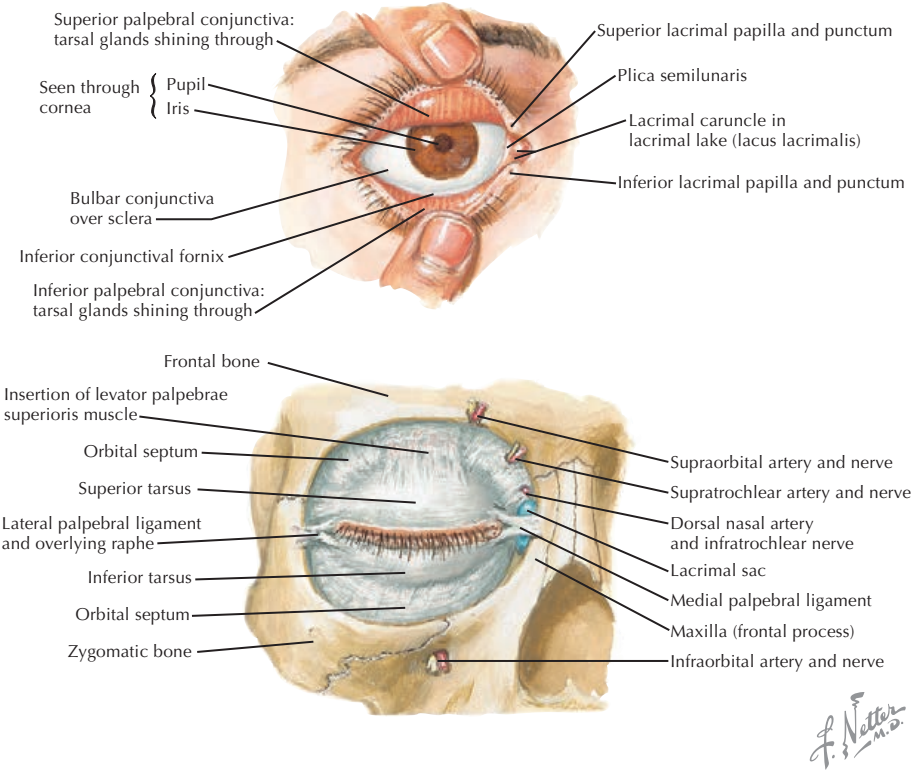
19 Overview and Topographic Anatomy of the Orbit

GENERAL INFORMATION

Orbit: a pyramid-shaped bony recess in the anterior part of the skull, lined by periosteum called the periorbital fascia

Contents include:

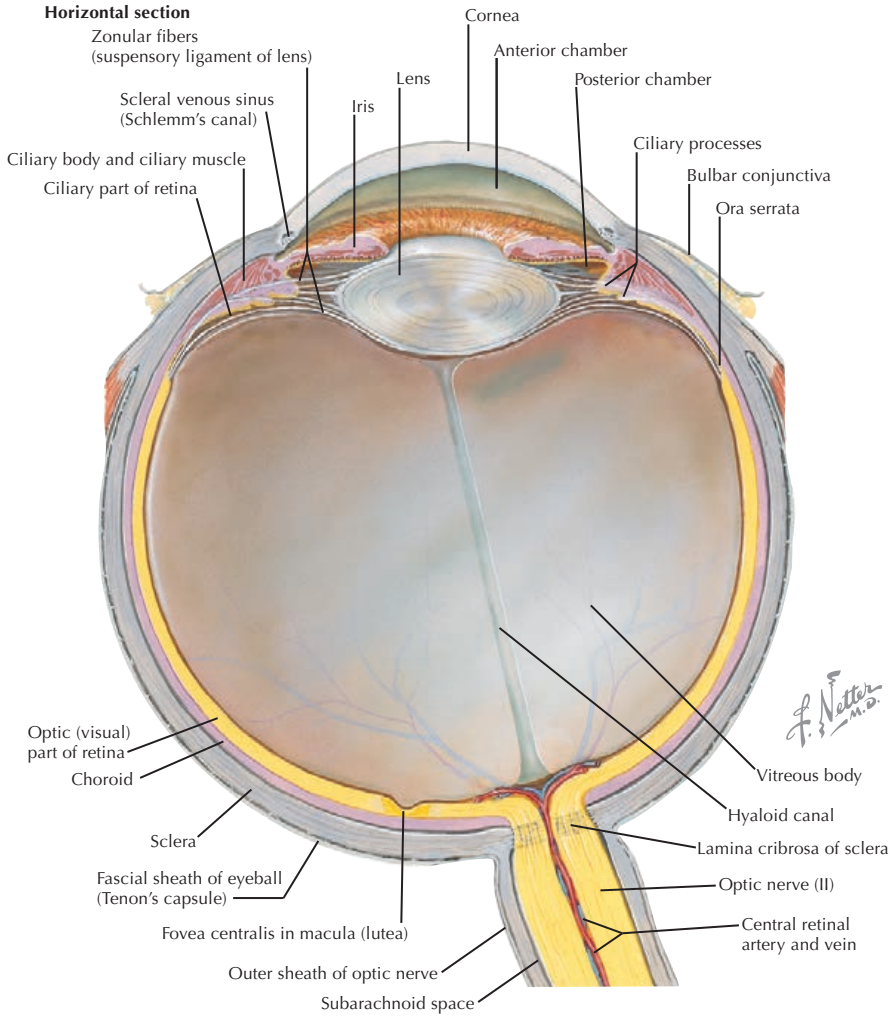
- Eye—organ associated with vision
- Extrinsic muscles
- Optic nerve
- Oculomotor nerve
- Ciliary ganglion
- Trochlear nerve
- Ophthalmic division of the trigeminal nerve
- Abducens nerve
- Ophthalmic artery and branches
- Superior and inferior ophthalmic veins
- Lacrimal apparatus
- Much fatty tissue



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Overview and Topographic Anatomy of the Orbit

GENERAL INFORMATION *CONTINUED*



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

19 Osteology of the Orbit

OPENINGS IN THE ORBIT

Opening	Bony Boundaries	Structures Passing through Opening
Optic foramen	Lesser wing of the sphenoid	Optic n. Ophthalmic a.
Superior orbital fissure	Greater wing of the sphenoid Lesser wing of the sphenoid	Lacrimal branch of the trigeminal n.'s ophthalmic division Frontal branch of the trigeminal n.'s ophthalmic division Nasociliary branch of the trigeminal n.'s ophthalmic division Oculomotor n. Trochlear n. Abducens n. Superior ophthalmic v. Inferior ophthalmic v.
Inferior orbital fissure	Greater wing of the sphenoid Maxilla	Infraorbital n. and vessels Zygomatic n. Branch of inferior ophthalmic v. that connects to the pterygoid plexus
Supraorbital foramen	Frontal	Supraorbital n. and vessels Supratrochlear n. and vessels
Infraorbital groove and canal	Maxilla	Infraorbital n. and vessels
Zygomatic foramen (1or 2 openings)	Zygomatic	Branches of the zygomatic
Nasolacrimal canal	Lacrimal	Nasolacrimal duct
Anterior ethmoidal foramen	Ethmoid Frontal	Anterior ethmoidal n. and vessels
Posterior ethmoidal foramen	Ethmoid Frontal	Posterior ethmoidal n. and vessels

BONES CREATING THE ORBITAL MARGIN

Frontal
Zygomatic
Maxilla

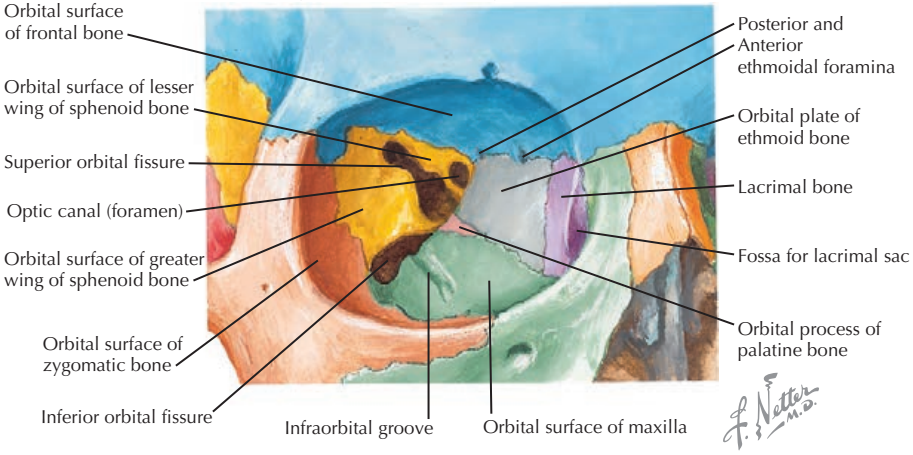
WALLS OF THE ORBIT

Superior	Frontal (orbital plate) Lesser wing of the sphenoid
Inferior	Maxilla Zygomatic Palatine (orbital process)
Medial	Ethmoid (lamina papyracea) Lacrimal Sphenoid Maxilla
Lateral	Zygomatic Greater wing of the sphenoid

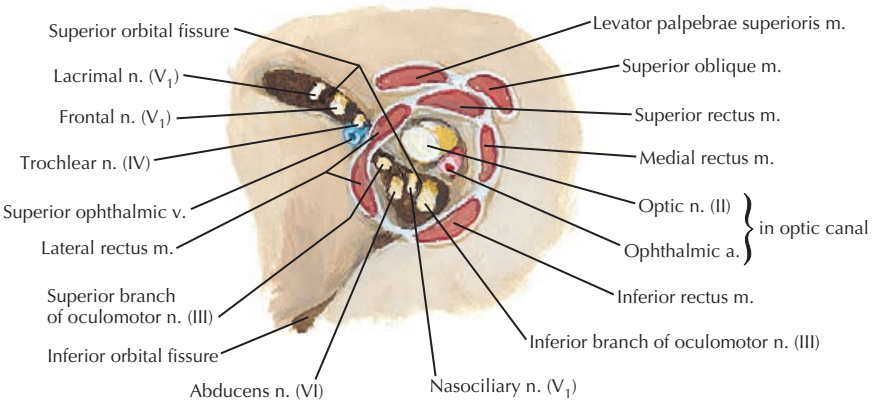
WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

WALLS OF THE ORBIT *CONTINUED*

Right orbit: frontal and slightly lateral view



Muscle attachments and nerves and vessels entering orbit



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

19 Contents of the Orbit

EYE

Eye: a spherical globe with a diameter of approximately 2.5 cm that lies in the orbit's anterior portion

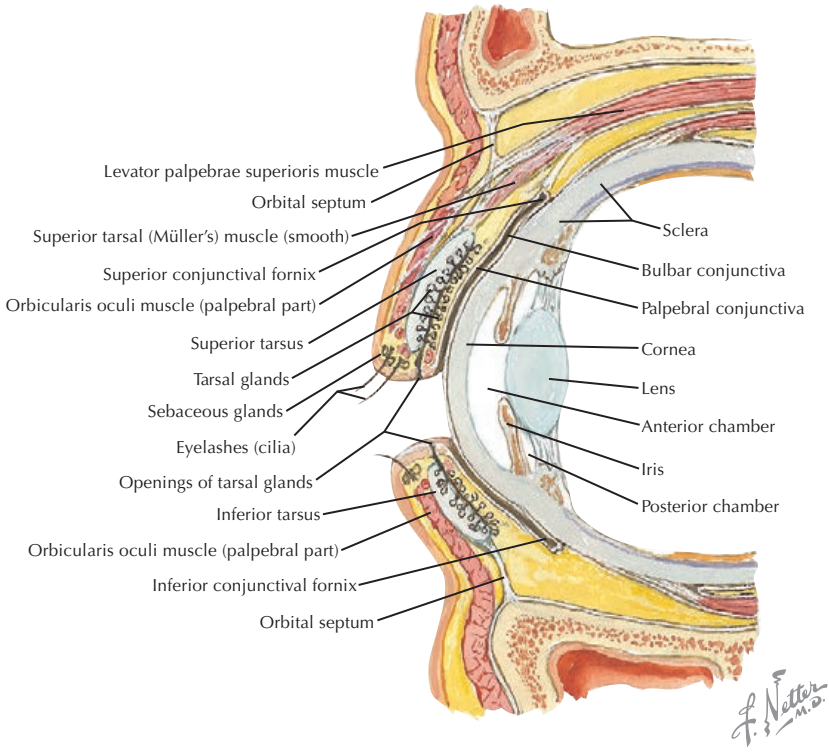
Surrounded by a thin capsule called the fascia bulbi (Tenon's capsule):
- Provides support
- Allows for movement

Composed of 3 coats:
- Sclera
- Uveal tract
- Retina

Divided into an anterior and a posterior segment:

Anterior Segment:
- Filled with aqueous humor
- Separated into anterior and posterior chambers by the iris
- Contains aqueous humor secreted by the ciliary body and drained through a trabeculated network eventually into the superior ophthalmic vein
- Intraocular pressure is measured in the anterior segment, normally 10 to 20 mm Hg

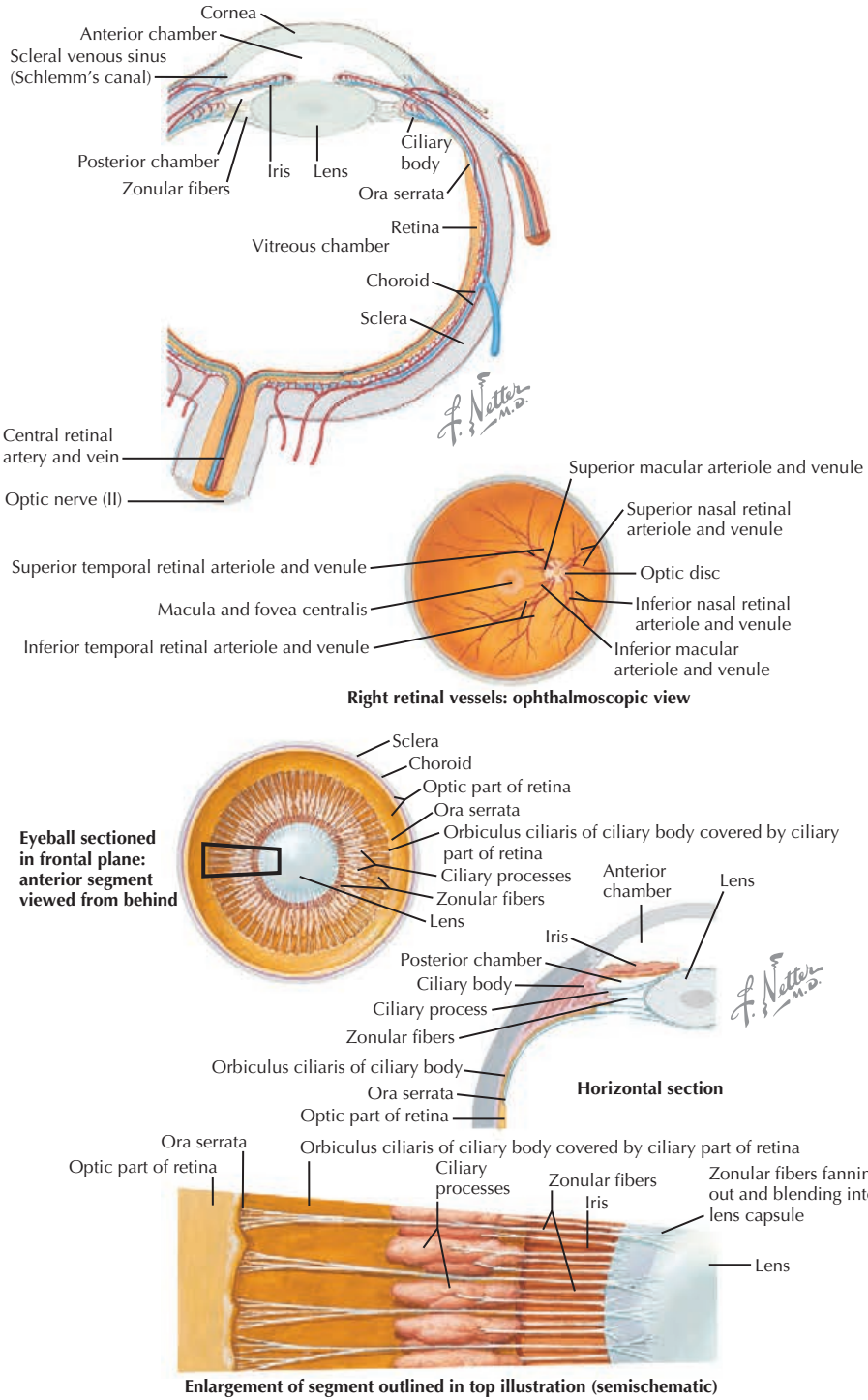
Posterior Segment:
- Filled with vitreous fluid
- Called the vitreous cavity



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Contents of the Orbit

EYE *CONTINUED*



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

EYE *CONTINUED*

COMPONENTS

Sclera

The outermost layer, very fibrous

White along the periphery, except for the anterior portion—the cornea, which is transparent

Uveal Tract

Composed of choroid layer, ciliary body, and iris

Choroid

- The pigmented vascular layer between the sclera and the retina
- Extends posteriorly from the region of the optic nerve anteriorly, where it is continuous with the ciliary body near the ora serrata (anterior margin of the retina)

Ciliary Body

- Located between the choroid and the iris
- Ring-shaped; has a series of transparent fibers that form the suspensory ligament of the lens
- Within it is the ciliary muscle, which changes the shape of the lens

Iris

- A thin disclike structure with a central opening—the pupil
- Separates the aqueous humor into the anterior chamber (anterior to the iris) and the posterior chamber (between the iris and the lens)
- Contains the sphincter and dilator pupillae muscles, which change the pupil's shape in response to light

Lens

Located posterior to the iris

A transparent biconcave structure responsible for focusing

Connected to the ciliary body by the suspensory ligaments

Retina

The innermost coat of the eye

Thin and highly vascular

Three areas located on the retina's posterior portion:

- Optic disc
- Macula lutea
- Fovea centralis

Optic Disc

Area where the optic nerve enters the retina is called the "blind spot"

Retina's central artery enters the eye through the optic disc and divides into superior and inferior branches

Macula Lutea

Lateral to the optic disc

A depressed, yellow-appearing area that contains the fovea centralis in its center

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

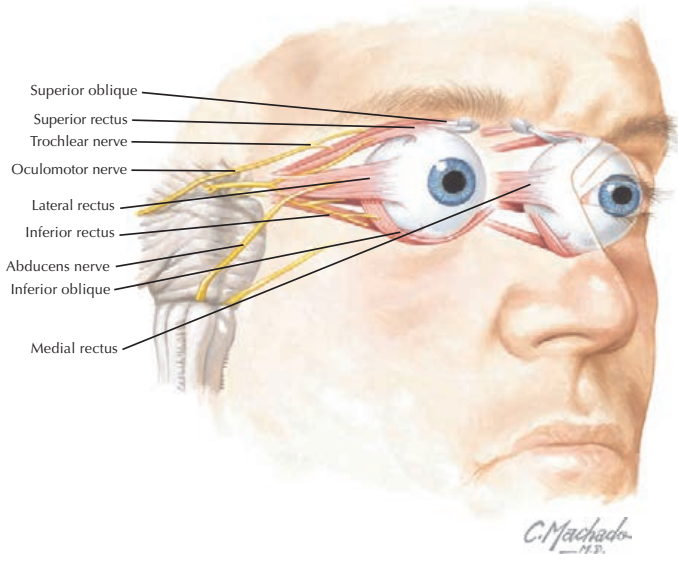
Contents of the Orbit

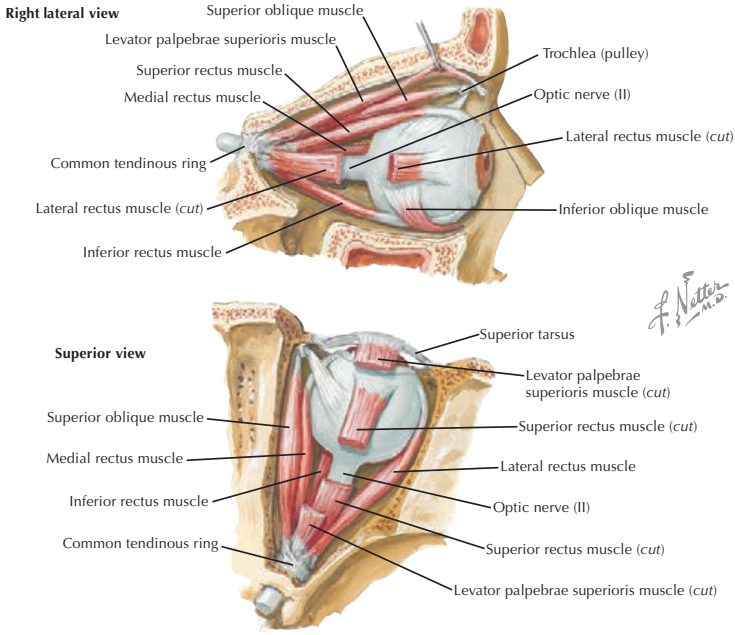
MUSCLES

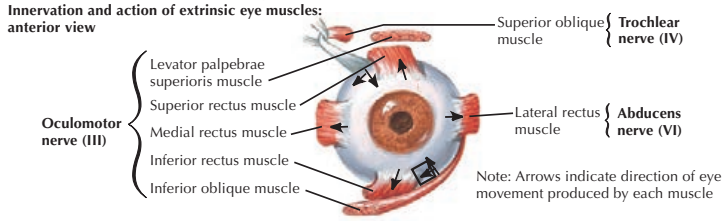
ASSOCIATED EXTRINSIC MUSCLE OF THE ORBIT					
Muscle	**Origin**	**Insertion**	**Actions**	**Nerve**	**Comment**
Levator palpebrae superioris	Roof of the orbit	Skin of the upper eyelid	Raises the upper eyelid	Superior division of the oculomotor Sympathetic fibers to the smooth muscle	Opposed by the palpebral part of the orbicularis oculi m. There are smooth muscle fibers which insert into the superior tarsal plate which are innervated by sympathetic fibers Lesions of the sympathetics will lead to a ptosis, or drooping of the upper eyelid
EXTRINSIC MUSCLES OF THE EYE					
Muscle	**Origin**	**Insertion**	**Actions on Eye**	**Nerve**	**Comment**
Superior rectus	Common tendinous ring on sphenoid	Superior sclera	Elevation Adduction Intorsion	Superior division of the oculomotor	A check ligament attaches it to the levator palpebrae superioris m. to help elevate the upper eyelid
Inferior rectus		Inferior sclera	Depression Adduction Extorsion	Inferior division of the oculomotor	A check ligament attaches it to the inferior tarsal plate to help depress the lower eyelid
Medial rectus		Medial sclera	Adduction		The most medial of the extraocular muscles
Lateral rectus		Lateral sclera	Abduction	Abducens	Impaired in abducens n. palsy
Superior oblique	Body of the sphenoid	Superior portion of the posterolateral sclera	Depression Abduction Intorsion	Trochlear	Tendon passes through the trochlea, a fibrocartilaginous pulley
Inferior oblique	Maxilla (lateral to the lacrimal groove)	Inferior portion of the posterolateral sclera	Elevation Abduction Extorsion	Inferior division of the oculomotor	Only extraocular muscle that attaches to the maxilla

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

MUSCLES *CONTINUED*



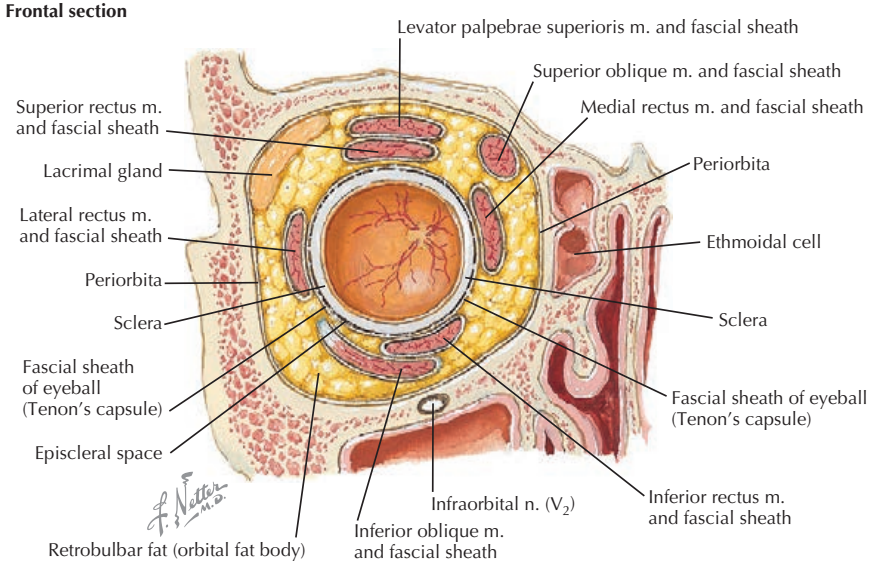




WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Contents of the Orbit

MUSCLES *CONTINUED*

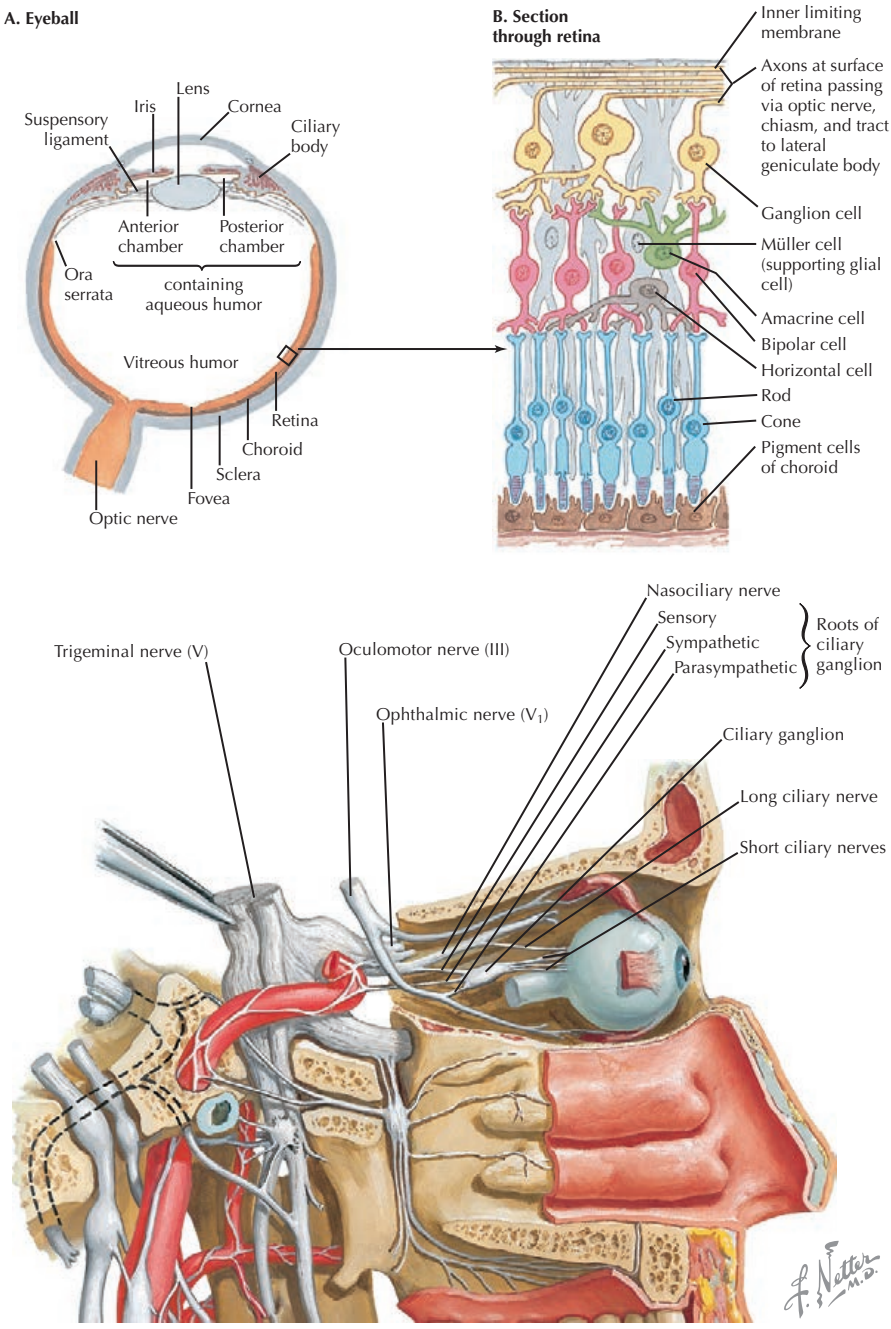


NERVE SUPPLY

ORBITAL INNERVATION	
Orbital Innervation	**Description**
Sensory	**2 Major Types** Vision (special somatic afferent) via the optic n. General sensation (general somatic afferent) via the ophthalmic (and some maxillary) division of the trigeminal n.
Motor	**2 Major Types** Motor to the extraocular muscles (general somatic efferent) via the oculomotor, trochlear, and abducens nn. Autonomics to the intrinsic muscles of the eye (general visceral efferent) via: • Parasympathetics associated with the ciliary ganglion • Sympathetics associated with the superior cervical ganglion
Cranial nn.	5 cranial nerves provide innervation to the orbit: • Optic—vision • Oculomotor—extraocular motor and autonomics to the intrinsic muscles of the eye • Trochlear—extraocular motor • Trigeminal—general sensation • Abducens—extraocular motor

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

NERVE SUPPLY *CONTINUED*

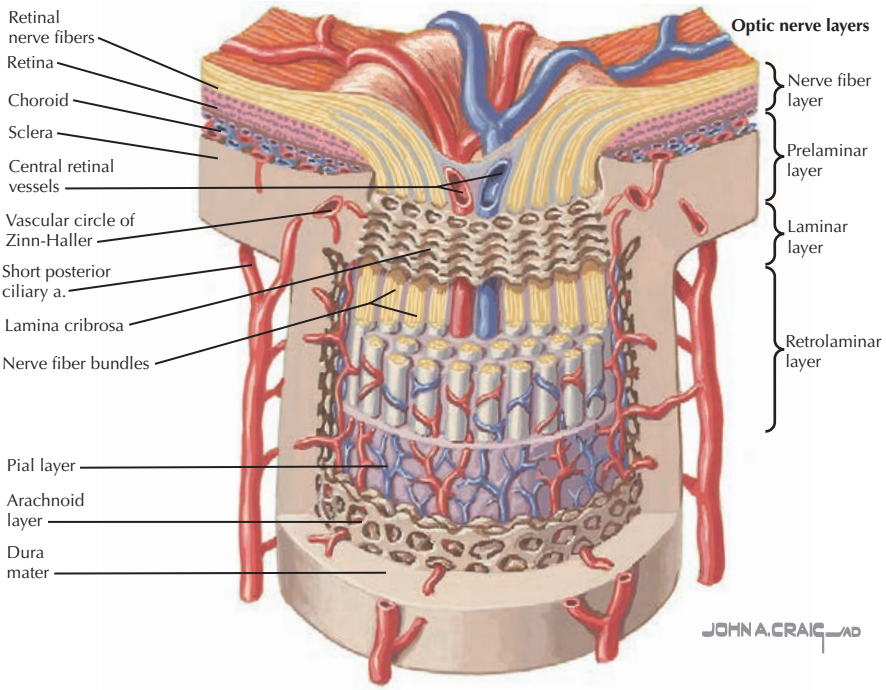


WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Contents of the Orbit

NERVE SUPPLY *CONTINUED*

OPTIC NERVE (VISION)
About 25 mm in length, allows for eye movement via the extraocular muscles Covered by an outer layer of dura mater and an inner layer of arachnoid, which attach anteriorly to the eye, where the optic n. enters the sclera, and posteriorly, where it merges with the periosteum lining the orbit at the optic foramen Central a. of the retina enters the optic n. posterior to the bulb of the eye
Course
Axons from the ganglionic cells of the retina comprise the optic n. and come together at the optic disc They leave the eye and travel as the optic n. posteriorly and medially through the orbit Posteriorly, the optic n. passes through the optic foramen to enter the cranial cavity The 2 optic nn. meet at the optic chiasm, located superior to the hypophyseal fossa Optic chiasm gives rise to the optic tracts, which terminate in the lateral geniculate nucleus of the thalamus before giving rise to the optic radiations that terminate in the occipital lobes



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

NERVE SUPPLY *CONTINUED*

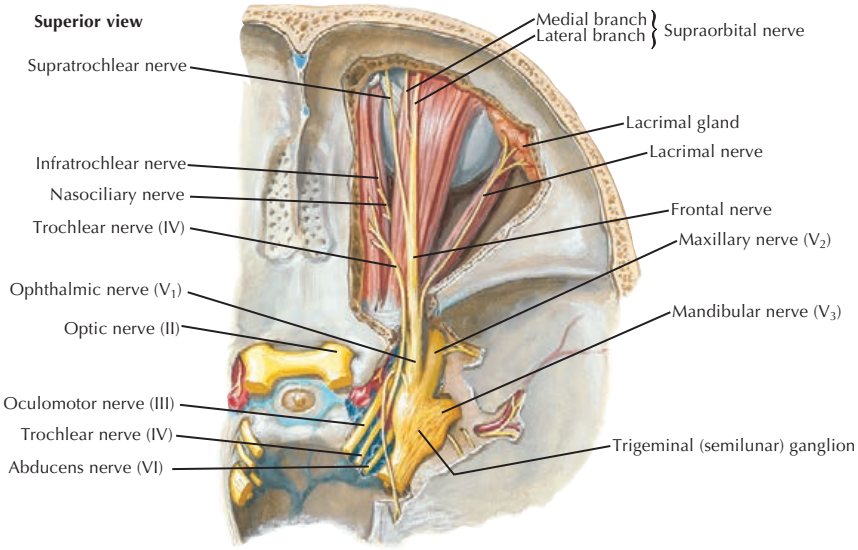
GENERAL SENSATION		
Ophthalmic Division of the Trigeminal Nerve		
This division, being a branch of the trigeminal n., is sensory in function Arises from the main nerve in the middle cranial fossa Passes anterior on the lateral wall of the cavernous sinus immediately inferior to the oculomotor and trochlear nn., but superior to the maxillary division of the trigeminal Immediately before entering the orbit, through the superior orbital fissure, it divides into 3 major branches: lacrimal, frontal, and the nasociliary nn.		
Nerve	**Source**	**Course**
Lacrimal	Ophthalmic division of the trigeminal n.	Smallest branch of the ophthalmic division of the trigeminal n. Passes anteriorly to enter the orbit through the superior orbital fissure In the orbit, it travels on the superior border of the lateral rectus m. with the lacrimal a. Before reaching the lacrimal gland, it communicates with the zygomatic branch of the maxillary division of the trigeminal to receive autonomic nervous fibers Enters the lacrimal gland and supplies it and the conjunctiva before piercing the orbital septum to supply the skin of the upper eyelid
Frontal		Largest branch of the ophthalmic division of the trigeminal n. Passes anteriorly to enter the orbit through the superior orbital fissure In the orbit it passes anteriorly between the periosteum of the orbit and the levator palpebrae superioris m. About halfway in the orbit, it divides into its 2 terminal nerves, the supraorbital and supratrochlear
Supraorbital	Frontal n.: the 2 terminal branches of the frontal n. in the orbit	Passes between the levator palpebrae superioris m. and periosteum of the orbit Continues anteriorly to the supraorbital foramen (notch) At the level of the supraorbital margin, it sends nerve supply to the frontal sinus and ascends superiorly along the scalp Divides into medial and lateral branches, which travel up to the vertex of the scalp
Supratrochlear		Once the supratrochlear a. joins it within the orbit, it continues to pass anteriorly toward the trochlear In the trochlear region, it often supplies the frontal sinus before exiting the orbit Ascends along the scalp, at first deep to the musculature in the region before piercing them to reach the cutaneous innervation along the scalp
Nasociliary	Ophthalmic division of the trigeminal n.	Passes anteriorly to enter the orbit through the superior orbital fissure Enters the orbit lateral to the optic n. Travels across the optic n. anteriorly and medially to lie between the medial rectus and the superior oblique mm. along the medial wall of the orbit All along its path, it gives rise to other nerves, including the sensory root of the ciliary ganglion, and the long ciliary and posterior ethmoidal nn., until terminating into the anterior ethmoidal and infratrochlear nn. near the anterior ethmoidal foramen
Sensory root of the ciliary ganglion	Nasociliary n.	Travels anteriorly on the lateral side of the optic n. to enter the ciliary ganglion Carries general sensory fibers, which are distributed by the short ciliary nn.
Long ciliary		There are 2 to 4 branches that travel anteriorly to enter the posterior part of the sclera of the eye

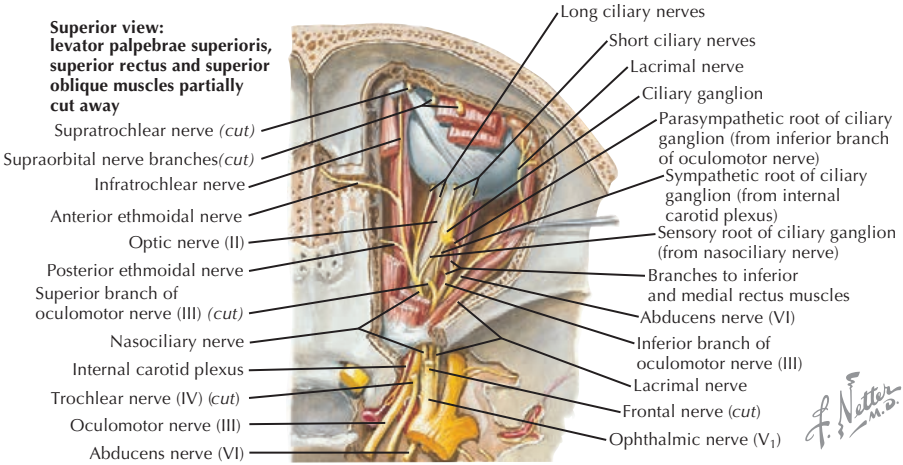
WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Contents of the Orbit

NERVE SUPPLY *CONTINUED*

Nerve	Source	Course
Posterior ethmoidal	Nasociliary n.	Travels deep to the superior oblique m. to pass through the posterior ethmoidal foramen Supplies the sphenoid sinus and the posterior ethmoidal sinus
Anterior ethmoidal		Arises on the medial wall of the orbit Enters the anterior ethmoidal foramen and travels through the canal to enter the anterior cranial fossa Supplies the anterior and middle ethmoidal sinuses before entering and supplying the nasal cavity Terminates as the external nasal n. on the face
Infratrochlear		1 of the terminal branches of the nasociliary n. Passes anteriorly on the superior border of the medial rectus m. Passes inferior to the trochlea toward the medial angle of the eye Supplies the skin of the eyelids and bridge of the nose, the conjunctiva, and all of the lacrimal structures

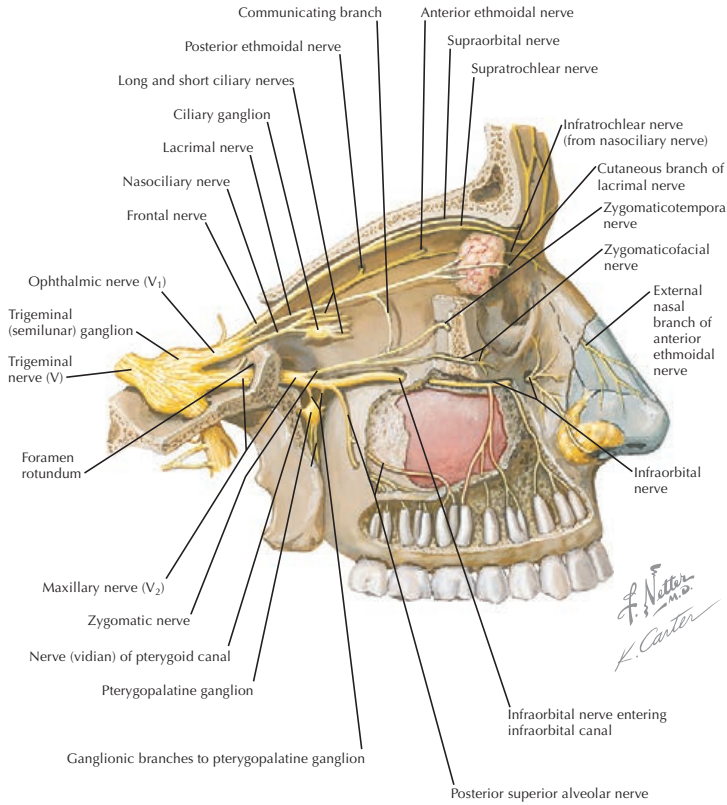




WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

NERVE SUPPLY *CONTINUED*

GENERAL SENSATION		
Maxillary Division of the Trigeminal Nerve		
Travels along the lateral wall of the cavernous sinus Before exiting the middle cranial fossa, it gives off a meningeal branch that innervates the dura mater Passes from the middle cranial fossa into the pterygopalatine fossa via the foramen rotundum Within the pterygopalatine fossa, it gives rise to *4 branches:* posterior superior alveolar n., zygomatic n., ganglionic branches, and the infraorbital n. The zygomatic and infraorbital continue within the orbit		
Nerve	**Source**	**Course**
Zygomatic	Maxillary division of the trigeminal n.	Enters the orbit via the inferior orbital fissure Within the orbit, it divides into the zygomaticotemporal and zygomaticofacial branches, which exit the orbit along the lateral wall via 1 or 2 zygomatic foramen
Infraorbital		Considered the continuation of the maxillary division of the trigeminal n. Passes through the inferior orbital fissure to enter the orbit Passes anteriorly through the infraorbital groove and infraorbital canal and exits onto the face via the infraorbital foramen Within the infraorbital canal, it gives rise to the anterior superior alveolar and middle superior alveolar nn. Once the infraorbital n. exits onto the face, it divides into 3 terminal branches: • Inferior palpebral—supplies the skin of the lower eyelid and conjunctiva • Nasal—supplies the ala of the nose • Superior labial—supplies the skin of the upper lip



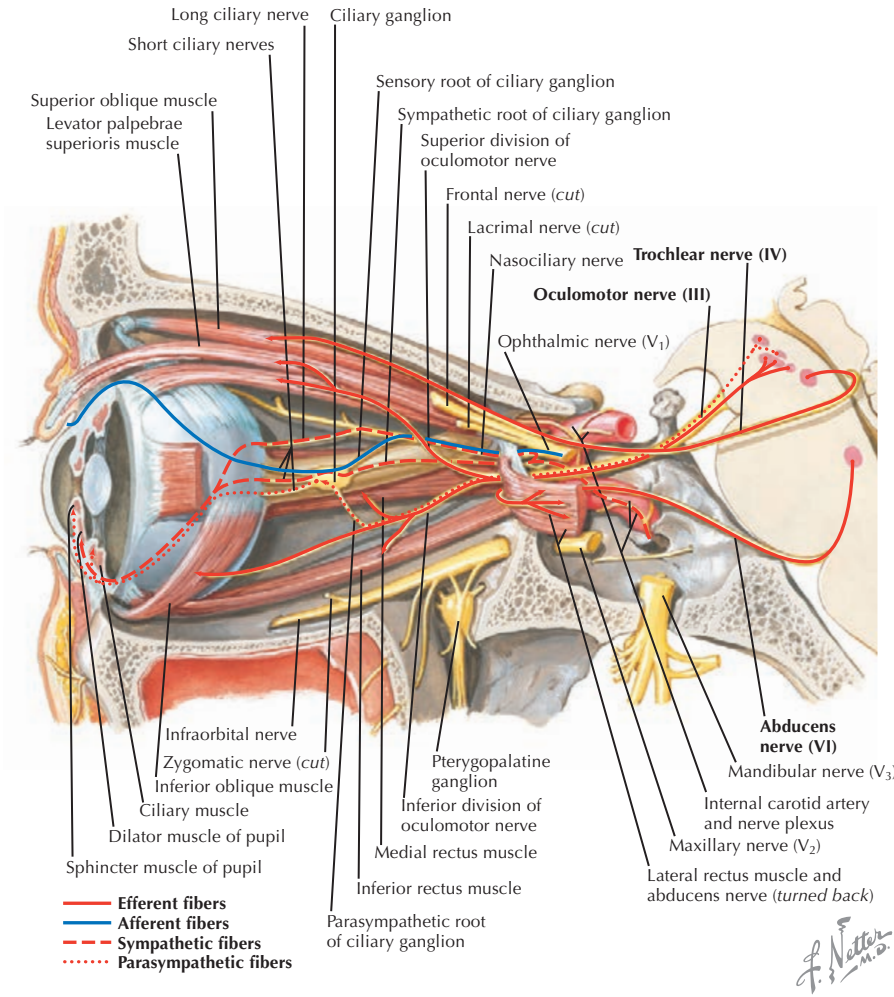
WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

NERVE SUPPLY *CONTINUED*

GENERAL MOTOR		
Nerve	**Source**	**Course**
Oculomotor (cranial n. III)	Ventral surface of the midbrain	Innervates 4 of the extraocular muscles—superior rectus, inferior rectus, medial rectus, and the inferior oblique mm.—as well as the levator palpebrae superioris m. Also provides parasympathetic innervation to the intrinsic muscles of the eye Passes anterior on the lateral wall of the cavernous sinus immediately superior to the trochlear n. Immediately before entering the orbit, it divides into superior and inferior divisions; both enter the orbit through the superior orbital fissure
Superior division of the oculomotor	Oculomotor	Enters the orbit via the superior orbital fissure Travels superior to the optic n. to enter the inferior border of the superior rectus m. Passes through the superior rectus to give rise to a branch that enters the inferior surface of the levator palpebrae superioris m.
Inferior division of the oculomotor		Enters the orbit via the superior orbital fissure Immediately divides into 3 muscular branches that enter: • The lateral surface of the medial rectus • The superior surface of the inferior oblique • The superior surface of the inferior rectus Gives rise to the parasympathetic root of the ciliary ganglion
Trochlear (cranial n. IV)	Dorsal surface of the midbrain	Innervates the superior oblique Passes anterior on the lateral wall of the cavernous sinus immediately inferior to the oculomotor n. Enters the orbit via the superior orbital fissure and immediately enters the superior oblique to innervate it
Abducens (cranial n. VI)	Ventral surface of the pons	Travels anteriorly within the cavernous sinus beside the internal carotid a. Enters the orbit via the superior orbital fissure Travels anteriorly to enter the medial surface of the lateral rectus to innervate it

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

NERVE SUPPLY *CONTINUED*



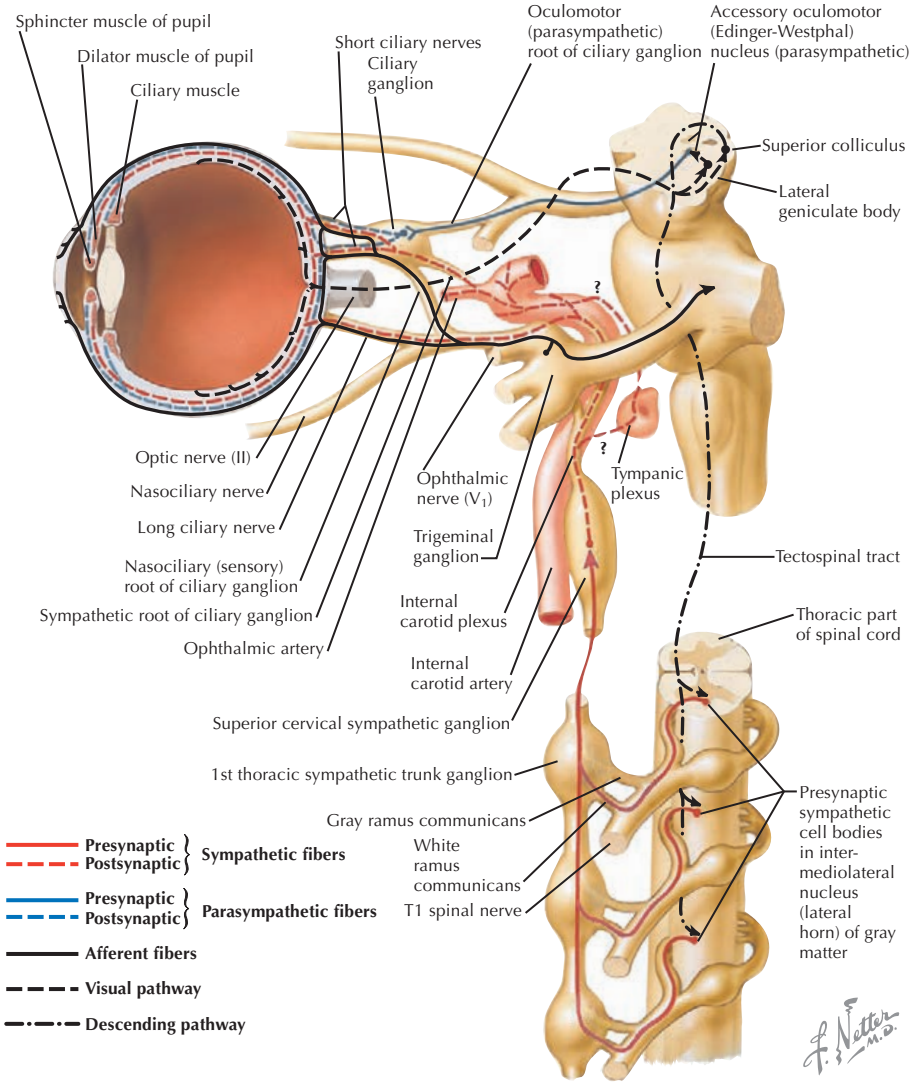
WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

NERVE SUPPLY *CONTINUED*

PARASYMPATHETICS OF THE EYE			
Type of Neuron	**Location of Cell Body**	**Characteristics of the Cell Body**	**Course of the Neuron**
Preganglionic neuron	Edinger-Westphal nucleus	A collection of nerve cell bodies located in the midbrain	Arise from the Edinger-Westphal nucleus in the midbrain from the oculomotor n. Oculomotor n. passes anteriorly on the lateral wall of the cavernous sinus immediately superior to the trochlear n. Immediately before entering the orbit, the nerve divides into the superior and inferior divisions Both the superior and inferior divisions of the oculomotor enter the orbit through the superior orbital fissure Preganglionic parasympathetic fibers travel in the inferior division A small parasympathetic root passes from the inferior division of the oculomotor to the ciliary ganglion, carrying the preganglionic parasympathetic fibers
Postganglionic neuron	Ciliary ganglion	Located anterior to the optic foramen between the optic n. and the lateral rectus *3 roots connect to the ciliary ganglion:* • Sensory root from the ophthalmic division of the trigeminal, which carries general sensation fibers to the eye via the short ciliary nn. • Parasympathetic root from the inferior division of the oculomotor, carrying preganglionic parasympathetic fibers to the ganglion • Sympathetic root that arises from the postganglionic sympathetic fibers, which were carried by the internal carotid a. • The short ciliary nn. usually number about 8 Short ciliary nn. arise from the ciliary ganglion to enter the posterior portion of the eye Fibers from all 3 roots pass through the ciliary ganglion and short ciliary nn. to enter the eye Only the parasympathetic fibers synapse in the ciliary ganglion	Arise in the ciliary ganglion, following a synapse with the preganglionic parasympathetic fibers Travel through the short ciliary nn. to enter the eye's posterior portion Innervate the sphincter pupillae m. and the ciliary muscles

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

NERVE SUPPLY *CONTINUED*



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

NERVE SUPPLY *CONTINUED*

ANATOMIC PATHWAY FOR SYMPATHETICS OF THE EYE			
Type of Neuron	**Name of Cell Body**	**Characteristics of the Cell Body**	**Course of the Neuron**
Preganglionic neuron	Intermediolateral horn nucleus	Collection of nerve cell bodies located in the lateral horn nucleus of the spinal cord between spinal segments T1 and T3 (and possibly T4)	Arise from the intermediolateral horn nuclei from T1 to T3 (4) Travel through the ventral root of the spinal cord to the spinal n. Enter the sympathetic chain via a white ramus communicantes Once in the sympathetic chain, the preganglionic fibers for the eye will ascend and synapse with postganglionic fibers in the superior cervical ganglion
Postganglionic neuron	Superior cervical ganglion	Collection of nerve cell bodies located in the superior cervical ganglion, which is located at the base of the skull	Arise in the superior cervical ganglion Postganglionic fibers will follow the internal carotid a. on the carotid plexus As the internal carotid nears the orbit, the postganglionic fibers branch and follow various structures that connect to the eye, such as the ophthalmic a. and its branches, and the long ciliary nn. that arise from the ophthalmic division of the trigeminal n. In the eye, the postganglionic fibers innervate the eye's dilator pupillae m.

VASCULAR SUPPLY

ARTERIAL SUPPLY		
Artery	**Source**	**Course**
Ophthalmic	Internal carotid a.	Enters the orbit through the optic foramen immediately inferior and lateral to the optic n. Crosses the optic n. to reach the medial part of the orbit While in the orbit, the artery gives rise to a series of arteries that supply the orbit and associated structures The terminal aa. of the ophthalmic a. anastomose along the scalp and face with the superficial temporal, facial, and infraorbital branches of the maxillary a.
Lacrimal	Ophthalmic a.	Arises near the optic foramen One of the ophthalmic's largest branches Follows the lacrimal n. along the superior border of the lateral rectus m. of the eye to reach and supply the lacrimal gland Gives rise to a series of terminal branches, such as the lateral palpebral, that supply the eyelids and conjunctiva Gives rise to a zygomatic branch that then gives rise to the zygomaticotemporal and zygomaticofacial aa. Supply those regions of the face
Supratrochlear		It exits the orbit at the medial angle accompanied by supratrochlear n. Ascends on the scalp, anastomosing with the supraorbital a. and supratrochlear a. from the opposite side

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

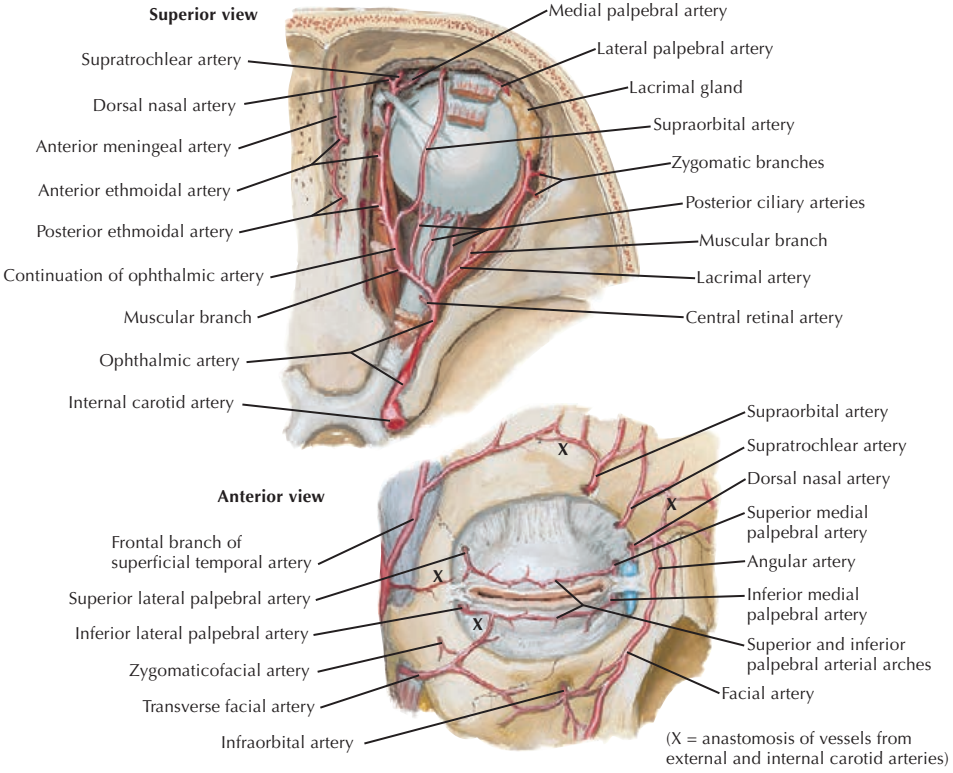
VASCULAR SUPPLY *CONTINUED*

ARTERIAL SUPPLY *CONTINUED*		
Artery	**Source**	**Course**
Supraorbital		Branches from the ophthalmic a. as it passes the optic n. Passes on the medial side of the levator palpebrae superioris and superior rectus mm. to join the supraorbital n. Passes through the supraorbital foramen (notch) and ascends superiorly along the scalp Anastomoses with the supratrochlear a. and superficial temporal a.
Anterior ethmoidal		Travels with the nerve through the anterior ethmoidal canal to supply the anterior and middle ethmoidal sinuses Continues to give rise to a meningeal branch and nasal branches that supply the lateral wall and septum of the nose Then gives rise to the terminal external nasal branch that supplies the external nose
Posterior ethmoidal		Travels through the posterior ethmoidal canal to supply the posterior ethmoidal sinus Gives rise to meningeal and nasal branches that anastomose with branches of the sphenopalatine
External nasal	A terminal branch of the anterior ethmoidal a.	Supplies the area along the external nose at the junction between the nasal bone and the lateral nasal cartilage
Medial palpebral (superior and inferior)	Ophthalmic a. of the internal carotid a.	Arise near the trochlea and exit the orbit to pass along the upper and lower eyelids These arteries anastomose with the other arteries supplying the face in the region
Dorsal nasal (Infratrochlear)	One of the ophthalmic a.'s terminal branches	Exits the orbit along the superomedial border along with the infratrochlear n. Supplies the area along the bridge of the nose
Muscular	Ophthalmic a. from the internal carotid a.	Supply the extraocular muscles of the orbit
Anterior ciliary	Muscular branches from the ophthalmic a.	Pass anteriorly to the anterior surface of the eye following the tendons of the extraocular muscles
Short posterior ciliary	Ophthalmic a. from the internal carotid a.	Usually 6 to 10 arise Travel anteriorly around the optic n. to enter the posterior portion of the eye
Long posterior ciliary		Usually 2 arise Travel anteriorly to enter the posterior portion of the eye near the optic n.
Central a. of the retina		Branches from the ophthalmic a. early on its entrance into the orbit Follows the optic n. and enters the nerve about halfway into the orbit Supplies the retina
Maxillary	1 of 2 terminal branches of the external carotid a.	Gives rise to a series of branches Only the infraorbital branch supplies the orbit
Infraorbital	Maxillary a.	Once the infraorbital exits the infraorbital foramen, the inferior palpebral a. supplies the lower eyelid Supplies some muscles along the floor of the orbit near the inferior orbital canal

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Contents of the Orbit

VASCULAR SUPPLY *CONTINUED*



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

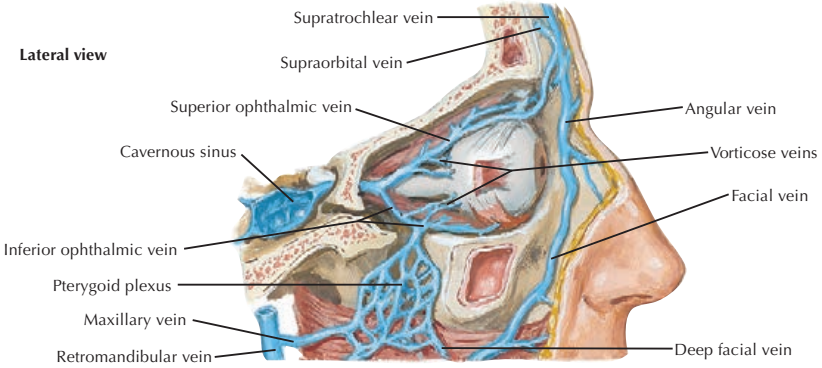
VASCULAR SUPPLY *CONTINUED*

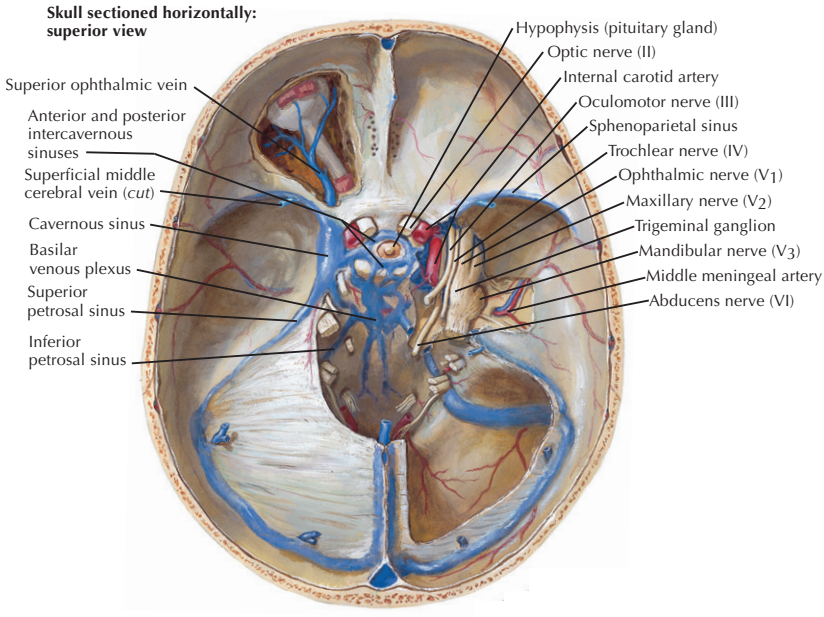
VENOUS DRAINAGE	
Vein	**Course**
Superficial Veins	
Supraorbital	Begins on the forehead, where it communicates with the superficial temporal v. Passes inferiorly superficial to the frontalis m. and joins the supratrochlear v. at the medial angle of the orbit to form the angular v.
Supratrochlear	Begins on the forehead, where it communicates with the superficial temporal v. Passes inferiorly along the forehead, parallel with the vein of the opposite side At the medial angle of the orbit, the supratrochlear joins the supraorbital v. to form the angular v.
Angular	Forms from the confluence of the supraorbital and supratrochlear vv. along the medial part of the eye Travels along the lateral aspect of the nose to become the facial v.
Facial	Begins as the angular v. Passes inferiorly along the side of the nose, receiving the lateral nasal v. Continues posteroinferiorly across the angle of the mouth to the cheek receiving the superior and inferior labial vv. While passing toward the mandible, the deep facial v. connects to the pterygoid plexus In the submandibular triangle the facial v. joins the anterior branch of the retromandibular to form the common facial v. The facial v. has no valves that can allow blood to backflow
Deep Veins	
Cavernous sinus	A reticulated venous structure located on the lateral aspect of the body of the sphenoid bone Drain posteriorly into the superior and inferior petrosal sinuses Receives blood from the superior and inferior ophthalmic vv. Oculomotor and trochlear nn. and ophthalmic and maxillary divisions of the trigeminal n. lie along the lateral wall of the sinus Abducens n. and internal carotid a. lie in the sinus
Pterygoid plexus	An extensive network of veins that parallels the 2nd and 3rd parts of the maxillary a. Receives branches that correspond to the same branches of the maxillary a. Tributaries to the pterygoid plexus eventually converge to form a short maxillary v. Communicates with the cavernous sinus, pharyngeal venous plexus, facial v. via the deep facial v., and ophthalmic vv.
Communicating Veins	
Superior ophthalmic	Receives blood from the roof of the orbit and the scalp Travels posteriorly to communicate with the cavernous sinus
Inferior ophthalmic	Receives blood from the floor of the orbit Often splits into two branches One branch travels posteriorly with the infraorbital v. that passes through the inferior orbital fissure to communicate with the pterygoid plexus The other branch travels posteriorly to communicate directly with the superior ophthalmic v. in the superior orbital fissure, or it will pass through the fissure to communicate with the cavernous sinus
Infraorbital	Receives blood from the midface via the lower eyelid, lateral side of the nose, and the upper lip Eventually communicates with the pterygoid plexus of veins

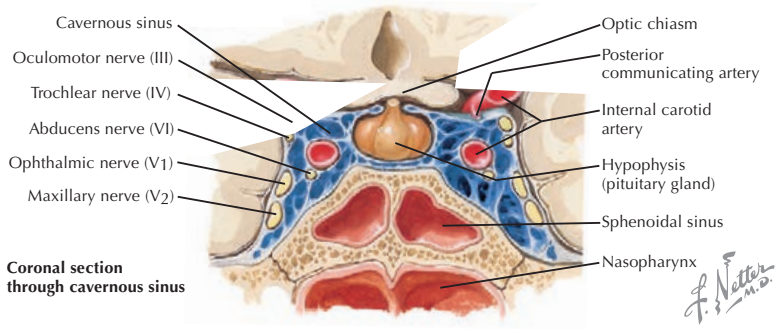
WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Contents of the Orbit

VASCULAR SUPPLY *CONTINUED*





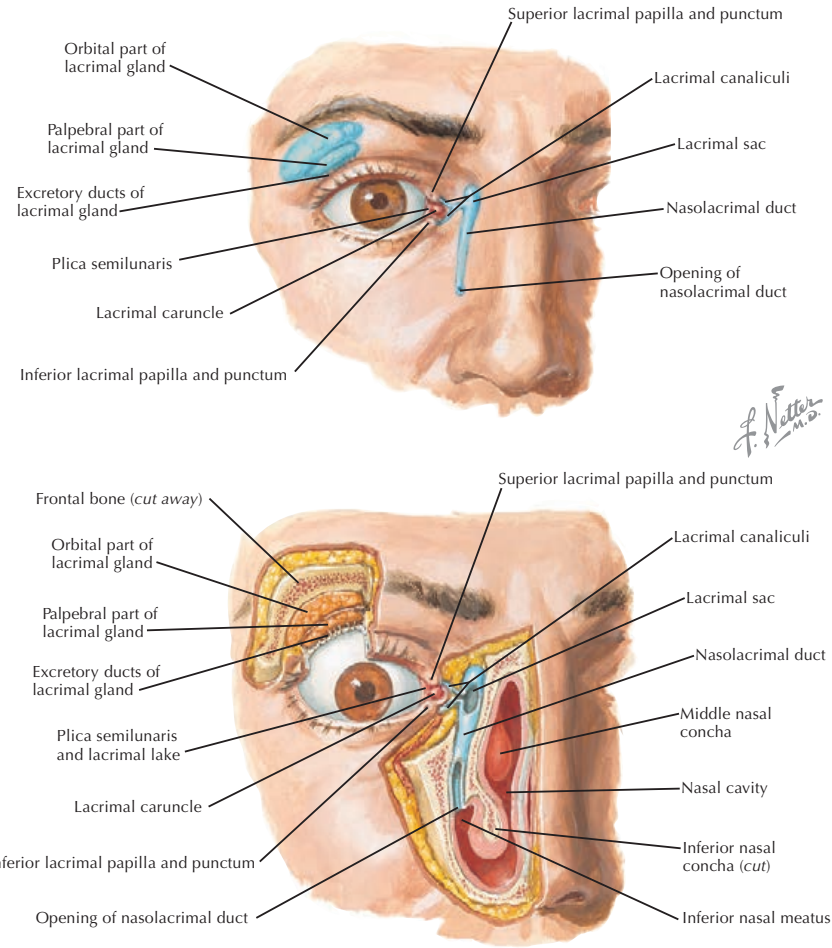


WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Contents of the Orbit

LACRIMAL APPARATUS

OVERVIEW	
Structure/Function	**Description**
Lacrimal apparatus	Composed of: • Lacrimal gland • Lacrimal canaliculi • Lacrimal sac • Nasolacrimal duct Secretes and drains all tears
Lacrimal gland	Located in the anterolateral part of the orbit Secretes serous fluid Divided into 2 parts by the lateral tendon of the levator palpebrae superioris m.
Tear formation and absorption	Tears coat the external surface of the eye to prevent drying, act as a lubricant, and contain bactericidal enzymes With blinking, tears are carried across the eye to collect near the medial canthus Tears enter through the lacrimal puncta into the lacrimal canaliculi Lacrimal canaliculi carry the tears to the lacrimal sac Lacrimal sac carries the tears inferiorly through the nasolacrimal duct, which terminates in the inferior meatus



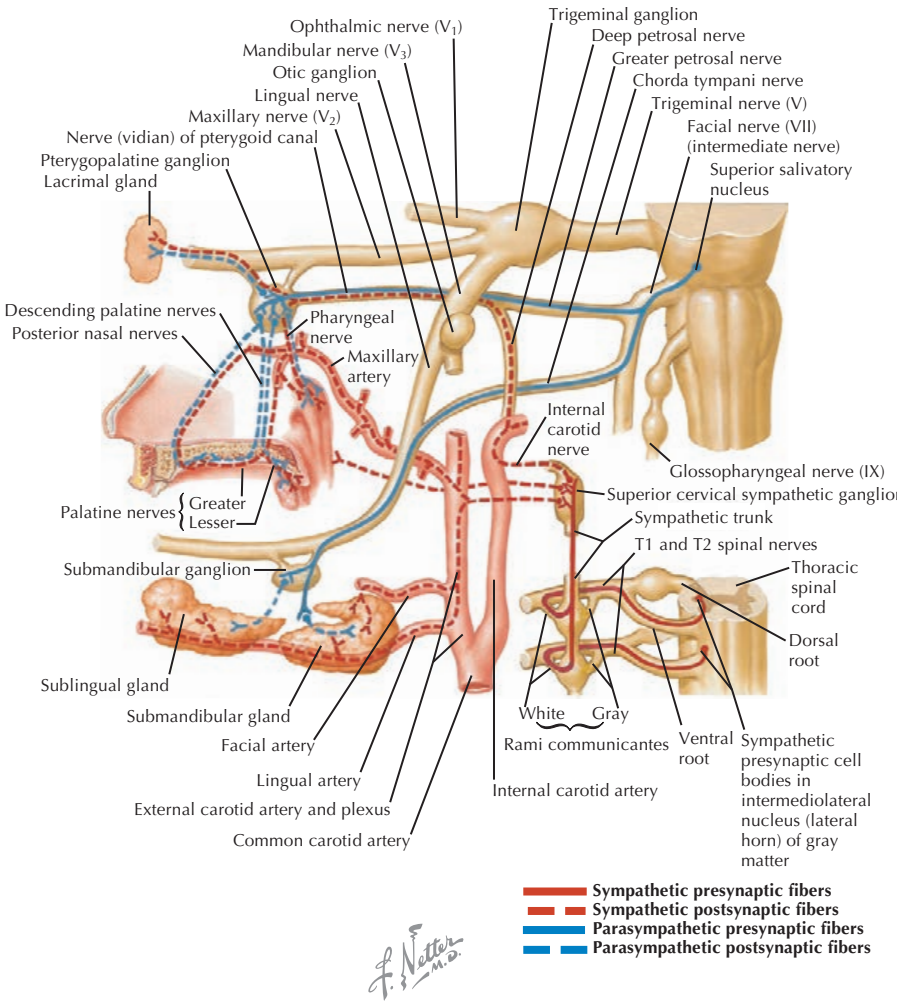
WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

LACRIMAL APPARATUS *CONTINUED*

PARASYMPATHETICS OF THE LACRIMAL GLAND			
Type of Neuron	**Name of Cell Body**	**Characteristics of the Cell Body**	**Course of the Neuron**
Preganglionic neuron	Superior salivatory nucleus	A collection of nerve cell bodies located in the pons Travel through the nervus intermedius of the facial n. into the internal acoustic meatus In the facial canal, the facial n. gives rise to *2 parasympathetic branches:* • Greater petrosal n. • Chorda tympani n.	Lacrimal gland uses the greater petrosal n. **Greater Petrosal Nerve** Exits along the hiatus for the greater petrosal n. toward the foramen lacerum, where it joins the deep petrosal n. (sympathetics) to form the nerve of the pterygoid canal (vidian n.) Vidian n. passes through the pterygoid canal and enters the pterygopalatine fossa, where it joins with the pterygopalatine ganglion
Postganglionic neuron	Pterygopalatine ganglion	A collection of nerve cell bodies located in the pterygopalatine fossa Postganglionic parasympathetic fibers that arise in the pterygopalatine ganglion are distributed to the ophthalmic and maxillary divisions of the trigeminal n. to the: • Lacrimal gland • Nasal glands • Palatine glands • Pharyngeal glands	Lacrimal gland uses the ophthalmic and maxillary divisions **Ophthalmic and Maxillary Division Distribution** Postganglionic fibers travel along the zygomatic branch of the maxillary division for a short distance to enter the orbit A short communicating branch joins the lacrimal n. of the ophthalmic division of the trigeminal n. These fibers innervate: • Lacrimal gland to cause the secretion of tears

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

LACRIMAL APPARATUS *CONTINUED*



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

GLAUCOMA

Damage to the optic nerve often due to increased intraocular pressure

Open Angle Glaucoma
The most common form

Gradual and can result in gradual loss of vision

Intraocular pressure elevates due to insufficient drainage within the eye's canal system located in the angle of the anterior chamber of the anterior segment

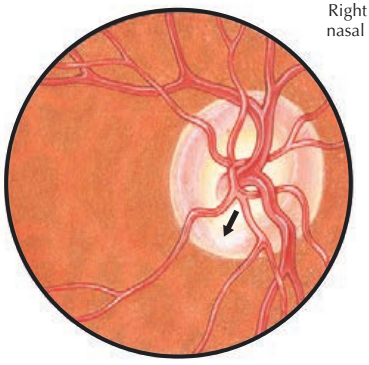
Various medications are successful in treating this form

Closed Angle Glaucoma
Result of an anatomic blockage of the canal system at the angle of the anterior chamber of the anterior segment

Example: When the iris opens the pupil very wide and blocks the angle, intraocular pressure rises quickly as a result of the possible abrupt blockage

Early

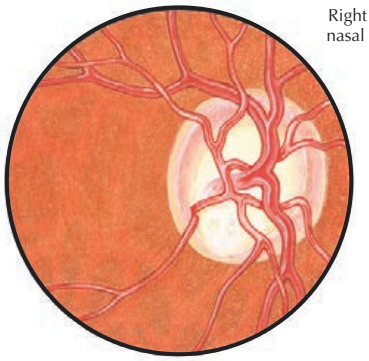
Right eye
nasal side



Funduscopy: notching of contour of physiologic cup in optic disc with slight focal pallor in area of notching; occurs almost invariably in superotemporal or inferotemporal (as shown) quadrants

Minimally advanced

Right eye
nasal side

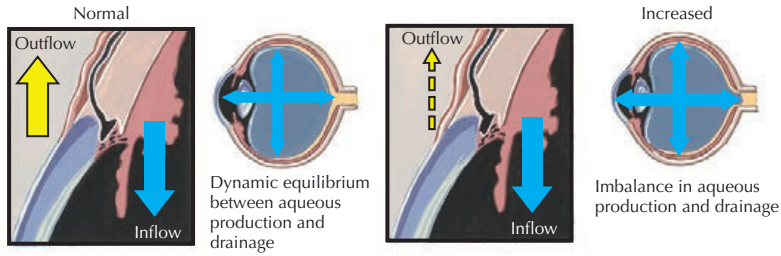


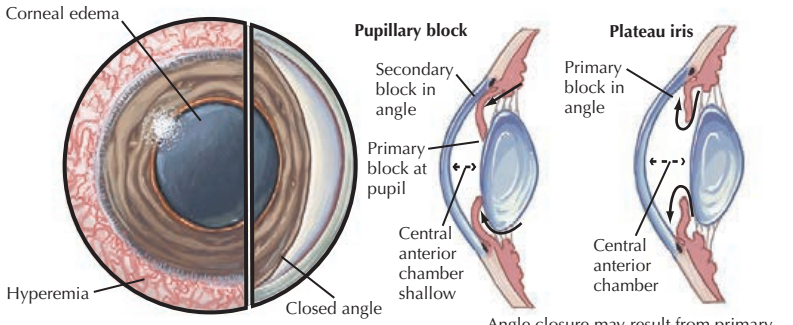
Funduscopy: increased notching of rim of cup; thinning of rim of cup (enlargement of cup); deepening of cup; lamina cribrosa visible in deepest areas.

JOHN A. CRAIG, MD

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

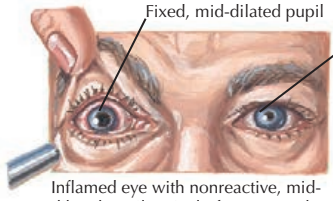
GLAUCOMA *CONTINUED*



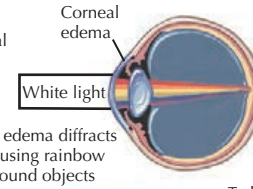


Acute angle closure results in marked increase in intraocular pressure with conjunctival hyperemia, corneal edema, and fixed mid-dilated pupil. Subacute and chronic forms may be asymptomatic.

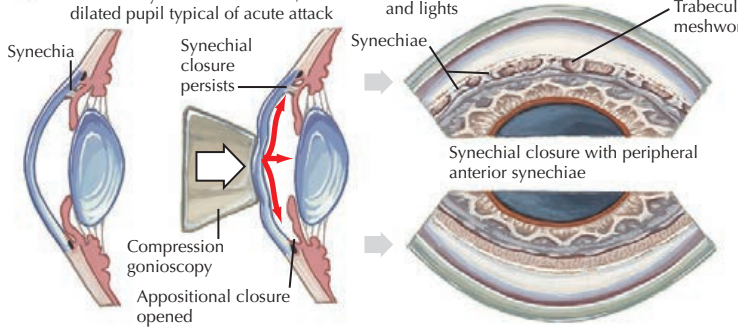
Angle closure may result from primary pupillary block with bulging iris or from less common plateau iris (primary occlusion at periphery of iris)



Inflamed eye with nonreactive, mid-dilated pupil typical of acute attack



Corneal edema diffracts light, causing rainbow halos around objects and lights



Long-term angle closure may result in synechiae that can permanently close angle. Compression gonioscopy differentiates appositional closure from synechial closure

Appositional closure opened by compression gonioscopy

JOHN A. CRAIG, MD

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Clinical Correlate

DIABETIC RETINOPATHY

Damage to the retina as a result of damage to the blood vessels in the retina due to diabetes

Can occur in all people with diabetes (types 1 and 2)

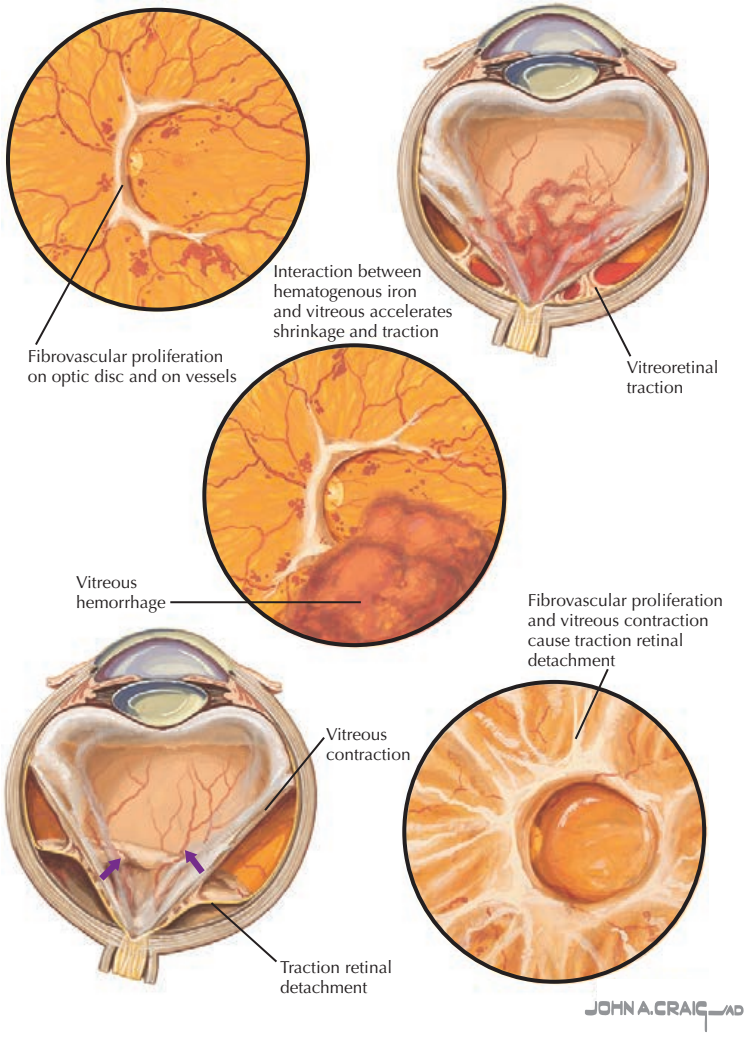
Pathophysiology

As the retinal blood vessels become damaged, they leak fluid into the eye

If the fluid accumulates around the macula lutea (contains the largest amount of cones for acute vision), macula edema occurs in which visual loss is noted

As the permeability of the vessels worsens, lipoprotein is deposited, leading to formation of hard exudates within the retina

As new blood vessels form, they are fragile and bleed, allowing blood to enter the eye, helping to cloud and destroy the retina



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

AMETROPIAS

A series of refractive disorders of the eye that cause blurring of the image on the retina

Types

Myopia

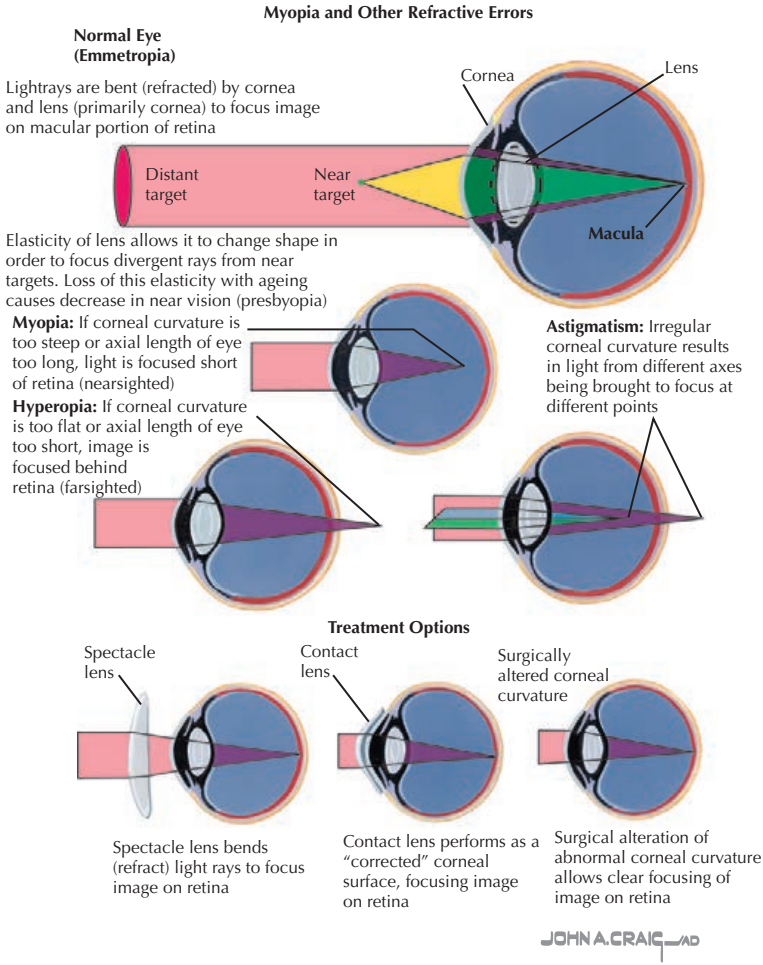
- Image is focused anterior to the retina
- Commonly referred to as nearsightedness

Hyperopia

- Image is focused posterior to the retina
- Commonly referred to as farsightedness

Astigmatism

- A nonspherical eye allows the parts of the image to focus at multiple locations, rather than in a single area



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

CHAPTER 20

AUTONOMICS OF THE HEAD AND NECK

Overview of the Autonomic Nervous System 512

Sympathetics of the Head and Neck 519

Parasympathetic Pathways of the Head and Neck 521

Clinical Correlate 534

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

20 Overview of the Autonomic Nervous System

GENERAL INFORMATION

The autonomic nervous system (ANS) has control over the function of many organ systems and tissues

Provides innervation to:
- Cardiac muscle
- Smooth muscle
- Glands

Also provides innervation to the organs of the immune system and metabolic organs (mainly through the sympathetics)

The hypothalamus exerts control over the ANS and helps the body maintain homeostasis

The ANS uses a 2-neuron chain system:
- Preganglionic neurons—the cell bodies are located in the central nervous system (CNS) (i.e., the brain and spinal cord), and their myelinated axons pass out to the autonomic ganglia
- Postganglionic neurons—the cell bodies are located in the autonomic ganglia, which are outside of the CNS, and their unmyelinated axons travel to the effector organ

The ANS is divided into 2 parts:
- Parasympathetic—the portion responsible for preserving and restoring energy
- Sympathetic—the portion responsible for preparing the body for emergency situations

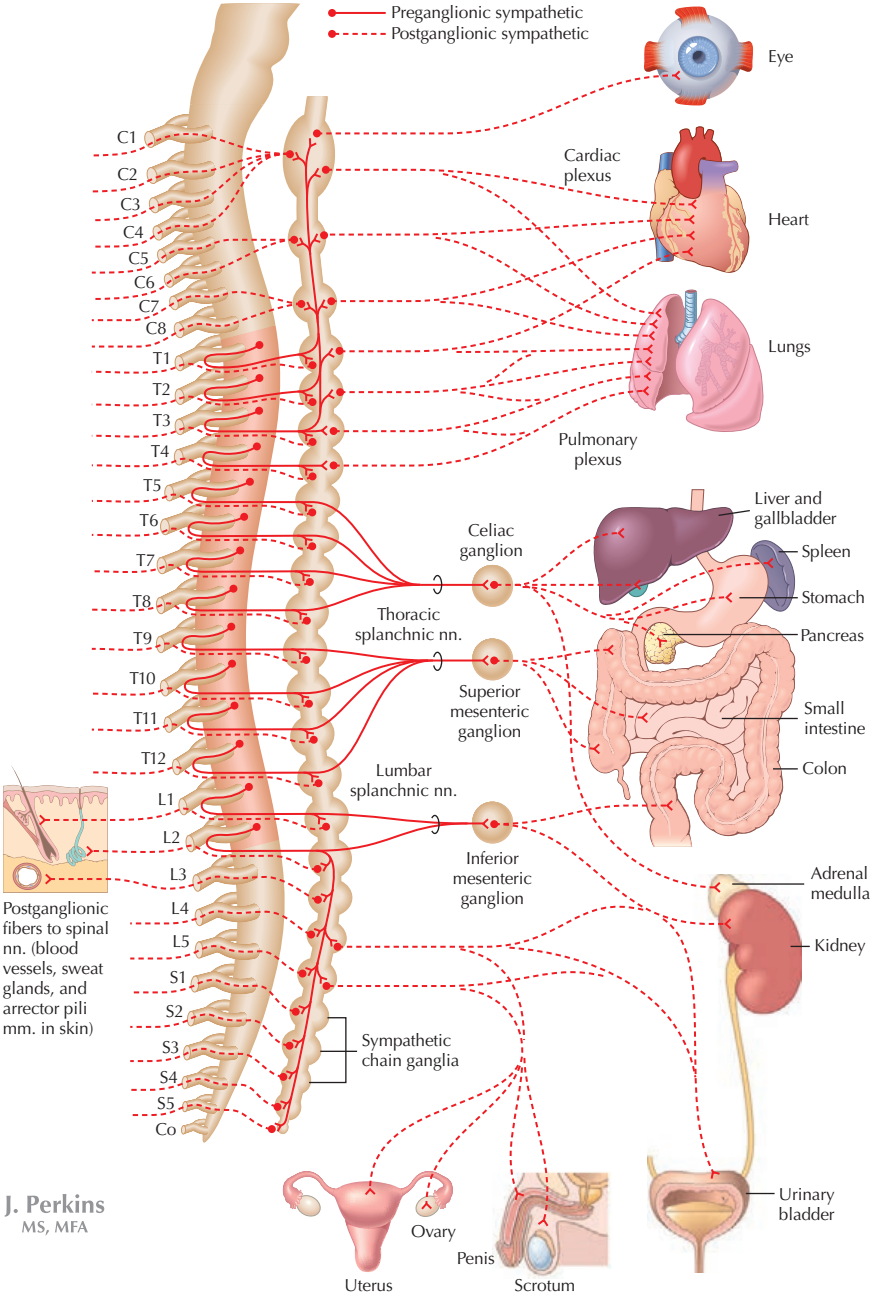
Organs typically receive dual innervation, which has an antagonistic action, although there are some notable exceptions, such as the arrector pili muscles (which are sympathetic only) and the male sexual response (erection is parasympathetic, ejaculation is sympathetic)

Acetylcholine and norepinephrine are the 2 major neurotransmitters used in synapses of the ANS

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Overview of the Autonomic Nervous System

GENERAL INFORMATION *CONTINUED*

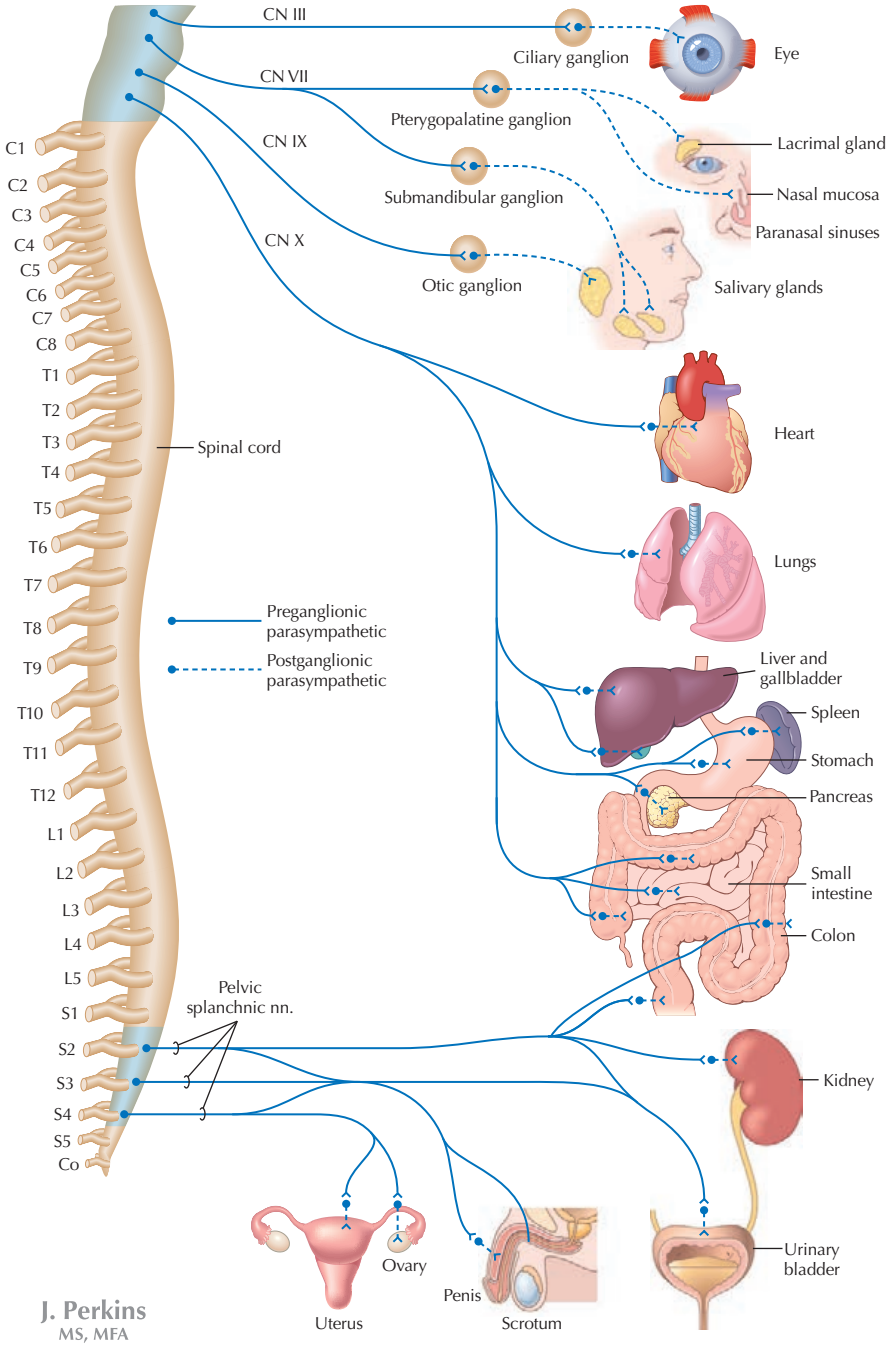


J. Perkins
MS, MFA

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Overview of the Autonomic Nervous System

GENERAL INFORMATION *CONTINUED*



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Overview of the Autonomic Nervous System

DIVISIONS OF THE AUTONOMIC NERVOUS SYSTEM

Parasympathetic	Sympathetic
Referred to as craniosacral fibers	Referred to as thoracolumbar fibers
Arise from: • Cranial nerves III, VII, IX, and X • Sacral fibers 2–4	Arise from: • Thoracic fibers 1 to 12 • Lumbar fibers 1 and 2
Preganglionic fibers are myelinated and travel from the CNS to their autonomic ganglia (located near their respective effector organ in the head and neck) utilizing acetylcholine as the neurotransmitter at the synapse with the nicotinic receptor	Preganglionic fibers are myelinated and travel from the CNS to their autonomic ganglia (located in the sympathetic chain for the head and neck) utilizing acetylcholine as the neurotransmitter at the synapse with the nicotinic receptor
Postganglionic fibers are unmyelinated and travel from the autonomic ganglia to the effector organ, utilizing acetylcholine as the neurotransmitter at the synapse with the muscarinic receptor	Postganglionic fibers are unmyelinated and travel from the autonomic ganglia to the effector organ, typically utilizing norepinephrine* as the neurotransmitter at the synapse with the α or β receptor

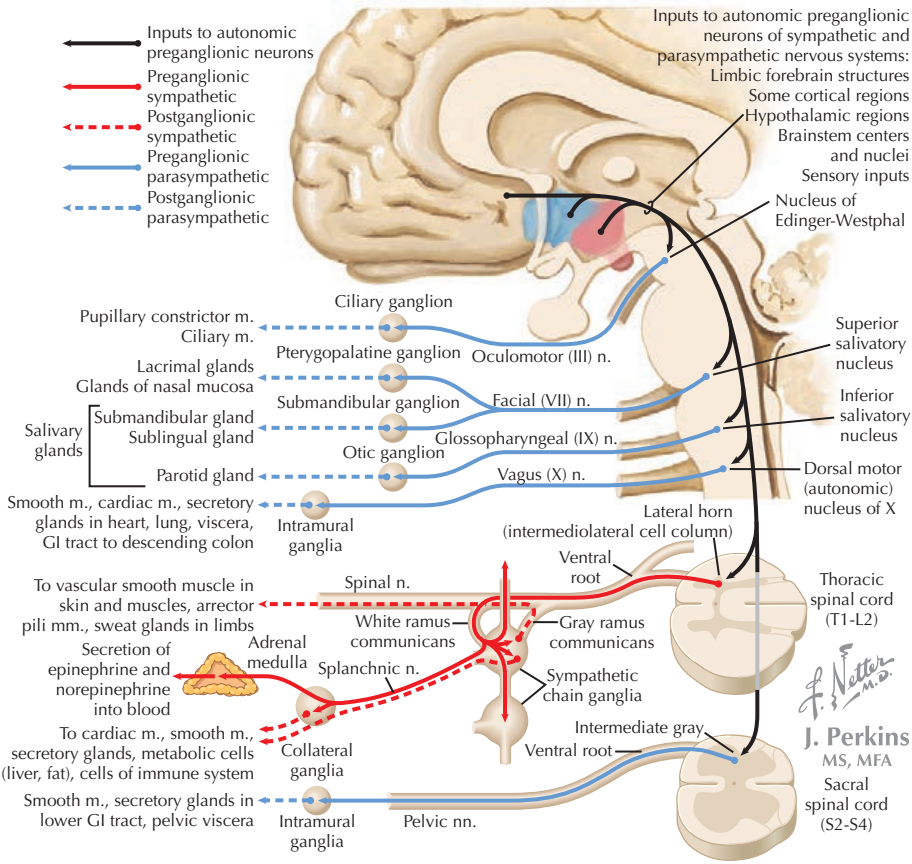
*Main exception to this is in the adrenal gland, where chromaffin cells secrete epinephrine and norepinephrine into the blood.

FUNCTIONS OF THE AUTONOMIC NERVOUS SYSTEM

Parasympathetic	Sympathetic
Responsible for preserving and restoring energy	Responsible for preparing the body for emergency situations
Discharges focally, not as a complete system	Discharges as a complete system
Activated in response to the specific body function that needs to be adjusted (peristalsis, pupillary accommodation)	Activated in response to stressful situations (helps to increase cardiac output, get blood to muscles, and decrease blood flow to the skin and viscera)

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

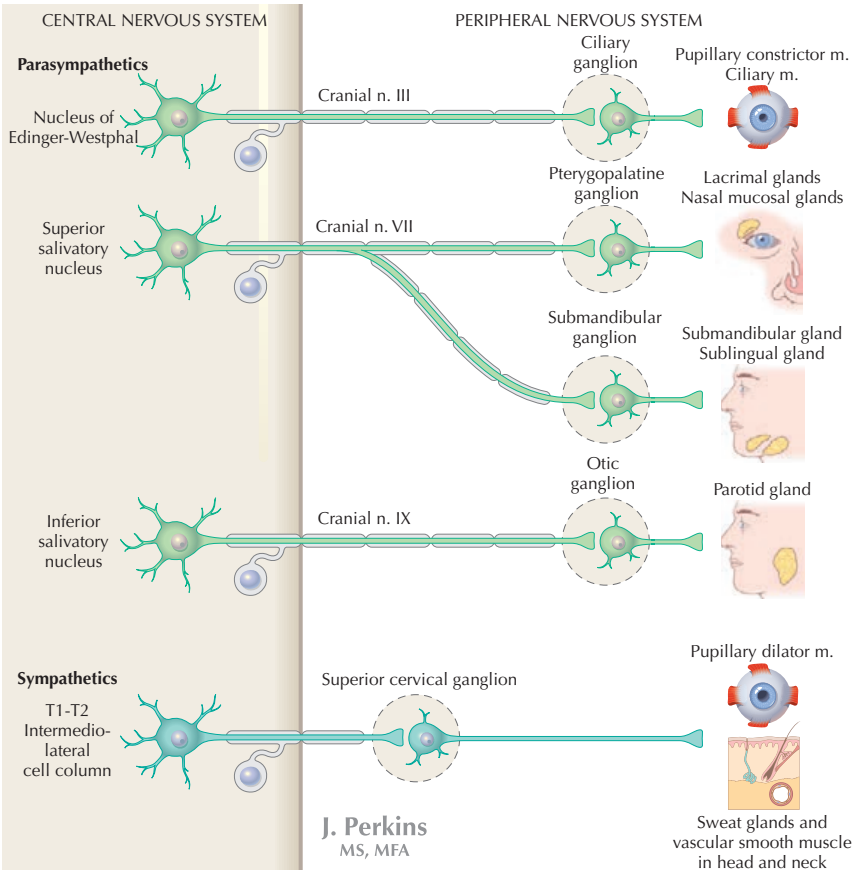
FUNCTIONS OF THE AUTONOMIC NERVOUS SYSTEM *CONTINUED*



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

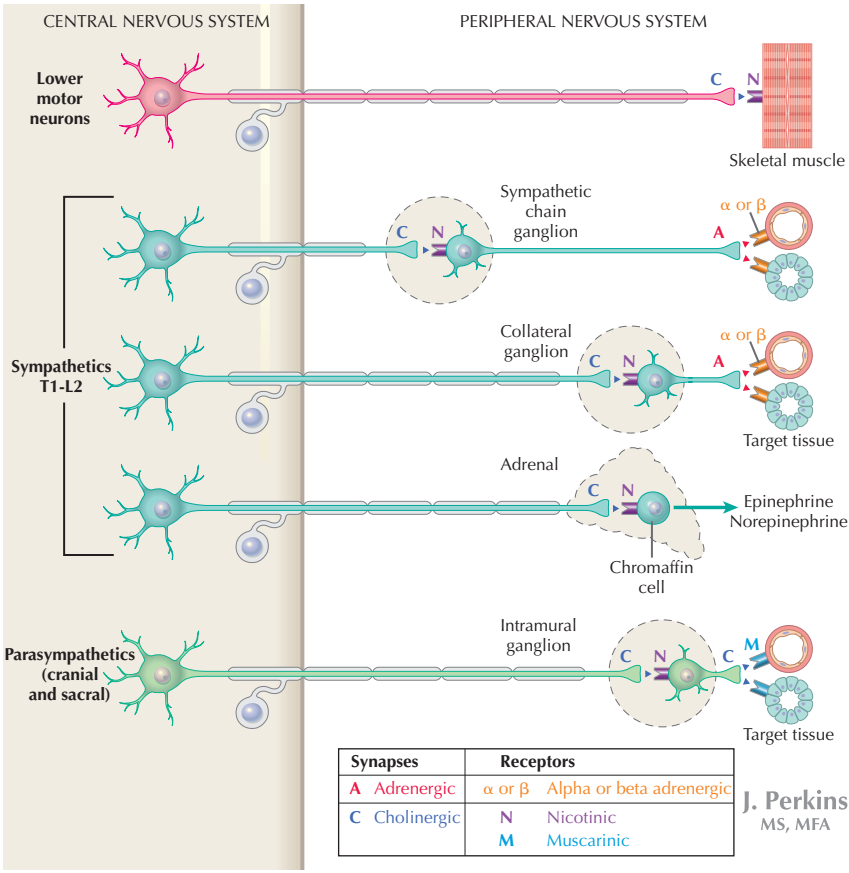
Overview of the Autonomic Nervous System

FUNCTIONS OF THE AUTONOMIC NERVOUS SYSTEM *CONTINUED*



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

FUNCTIONS OF THE AUTONOMIC NERVOUS SYSTEM *CONTINUED*



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Sympathetics of the Head and Neck

GENERAL ANATOMIC PATHWAY

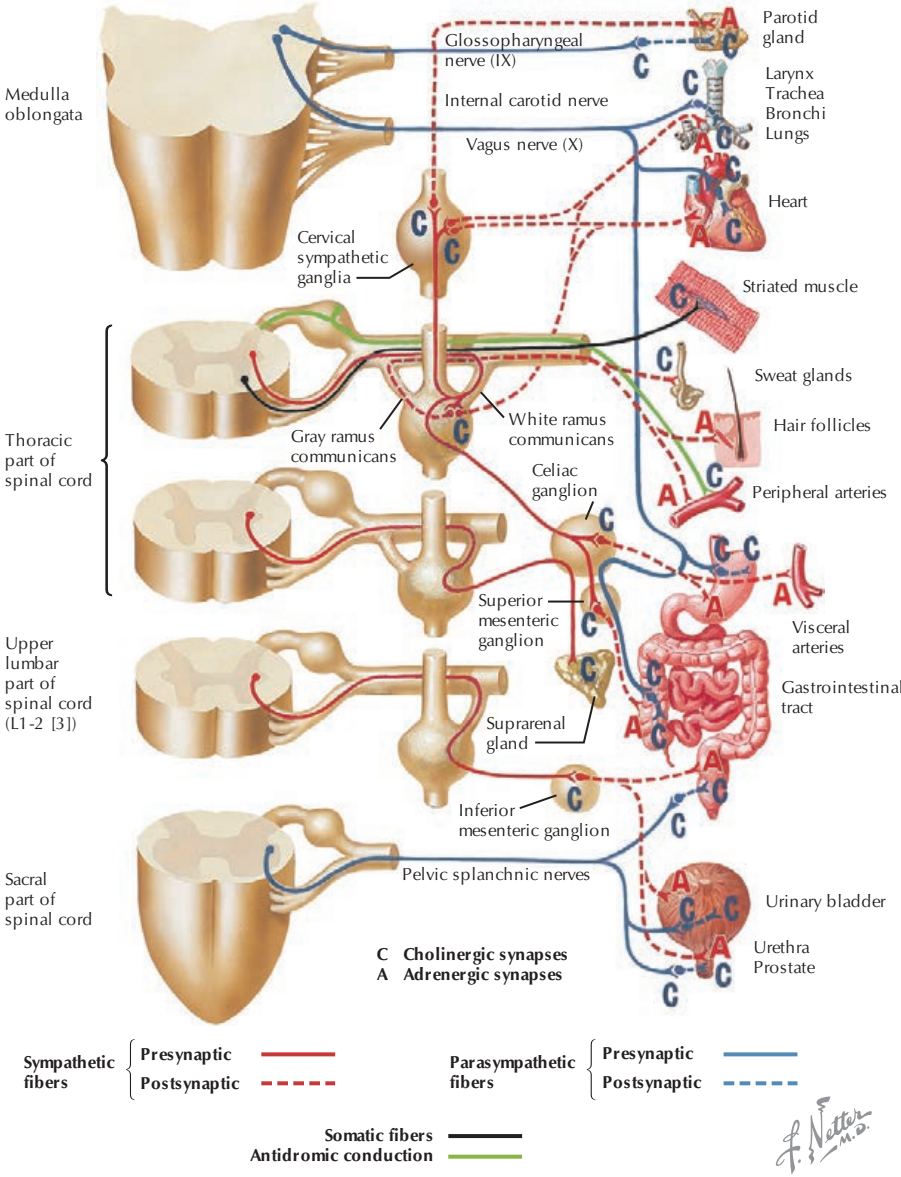
Type of Neuron	Name of Cell Body	Characteristics of the Cell Body	Course of the Neuron
Preganglionic fibers	Intermediolateral horn nucleus	Collection of nerve cell bodies located in the lateral horn nucleus of the spinal cord between spinal segments T1 and T3 (and possibly T4)	Fibers arise from the intermediolateral horn nuclei from T1 to T3(4) Travel through the ventral root of the spinal cord to the spinal n. Enter the sympathetic chain via a white ramus communicantes Once in the sympathetic chain, the preganglionic fibers will ascend and synapse with postganglionic fibers in the various sympathetic chain ganglia A majority of the preganglionic fibers will synapse with postganglionic fibers in the superior cervical ganglion, located at the base of the skull
Postganglionic fibers	Superior cervical ganglion* (major part of head and neck)	Collection of nerve cell bodies located in the sympathetic chain The location of the nerve cell body for a majority of the postganglionic neurons is the superior cervical ganglion Others include the middle and inferior cervical ganglia	Postganglionic fibers arise in their respective sympathetic chain ganglia (e.g., superior cervical, middle cervical, inferior cervical nn.) Some of the postganglionic fibers that travel to the periphery (e.g., skin of the neck, blood vessels) will rejoin the spinal nerves in the cervical region via a gray ramus communicantes, to be distributed along the path of the peripheral nerves following the path with blood vessels A majority of the postganglionic fibers join the major blood vessels of the head (namely, the internal carotid a. and branches of the external carotid a.) to follow the vessel until reaching their final effector organ (e.g., dilator pupillae m. of the eye)

*Location of the cell body for the postganglionic is variable and depends on the course of this neuron.

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Sympathetics of the Head and Neck

GENERAL ANATOMIC PATHWAY *CONTINUED*



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Parasympathetic Pathways of the Head and Neck

CRANIAL NERVE III WITH CORRESPONDING SYMPATHETICS

ANATOMIC PATHWAY FOR PARASYMPATHETICS OF THE EYE			
Type of Neuron	**Name of Cell Body**	**Characteristics of the Cell Body**	**Course of the Neuron**
Preganglionic neuron	Edinger-Westphal nucleus	A collection of nerve cell bodies located in the midbrain The Edinger-Westphal nucleus is found medial to the oculomotor nucleus and lateral to the cerebral aqueduct	Fibers arise from the Edinger-Westphal nucleus in the midbrain from the oculomotor n. Oculomotor n. passes anteriorly on the lateral wall of the cavernous sinus immediately superior to the trochlear n. Immediately before entering the orbit, the nerve divides into superior and inferior divisions of the oculomotor Both the superior and the inferior divisions of the oculomotor enter the orbit through the superior orbital fissure Preganglionic parasympathetic fibers travel in the inferior division A small parasympathetic root passes from the inferior division of the oculomotor to the ciliary ganglion carrying the preganglionic parasympathetic fibers
Postganglionic neuron	Ciliary ganglion	Located anterior to the optic foramen between the optic n. and the lateral rectus m. 3 roots connect to the ciliary ganglion: • Sensory root from the ophthalmic division of the trigeminal n., which carries general sensation fibers to the eye via the short ciliary n. • Parasympathetic root from the inferior division of the oculomotor n., carrying preganglionic parasympathetic fibers to the ganglion • Sympathetic root, which arises from the postganglionic sympathetic fibers that were carried by the internal carotid a. The short ciliary nn., usually numbering about 8 total, arise from the ciliary ganglion to enter the posterior portion of the eye Fibers from all 3 roots pass through the ciliary ganglion and short ciliary nn. to enter the eye Only the parasympathetic fibers synapse in the ciliary ganglion	Fibers arise in the ciliary ganglion following a synapse with the preganglionic parasympathetic fibers Travel through the short ciliary nn. to enter the eye's posterior portion Innervate the: • Sphincter pupillae m.—constricts the pupil • Ciliary m.—changes the shape of the lens during accommodation

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Parasympathetic Pathways of the Head and Neck

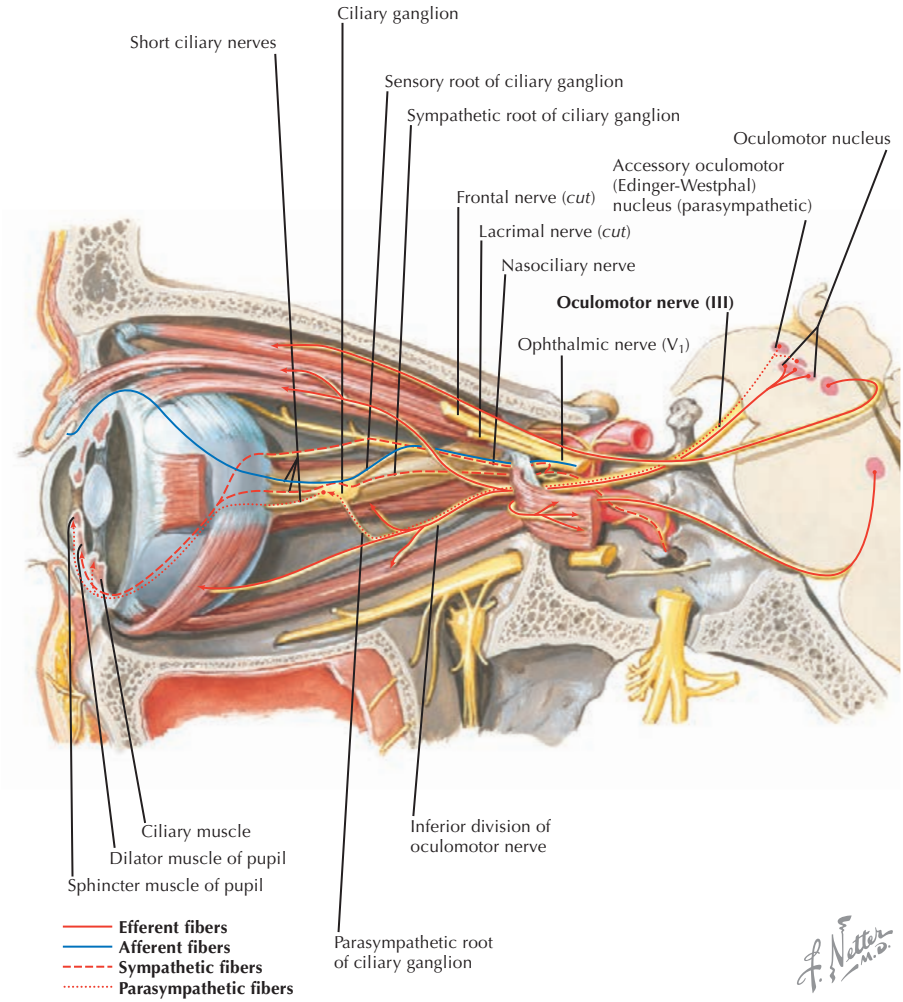
CRANIAL NERVE III WITH CORRESPONDING SYMPATHETICS *CONTINUED*

ANATOMIC PATHWAY FOR SYMPATHETICS OF THE EYE			
Type of Neuron	**Name of Cell Body**	**Characteristics of the Cell Body**	**Course of the Neuron**
Preganglionic neuron	Intermediolateral horn nucleus	Collection of nerve cell bodies located in the lateral horn nucleus of the spinal cord between spinal segments T1 and T3 (and possibly T4)	Fibers arise from the intermediolateral horn nuclei from T1 to T3(4) Travel through the ventral root of the spinal cord to the spinal n. Enter the sympathetic chain via a white ramus communicantes Once in the sympathetic chain, the preganglionic fibers for the eye will ascend and synapse with postganglionic fibers in the superior cervical ganglion
Postganglionic neuron	Superior cervical ganglion	Collection of nerve cell bodies located in the superior cervical ganglion, which is located at the base of the skull	Fibers arise in the superior cervical ganglion Postganglionic fibers will follow the internal carotid a. on the carotid plexus As the internal carotid nears the orbit, the postganglionic fibers branch and follow various structures that connect to the eye, such as the ophthalmic a. and its branches, and the long ciliary nn. that arise from the ophthalmic division of the trigeminal n. In the eye, the postganglionic fibers innervate the eye's dilator pupillae m.

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Parasympathetic Pathways of the Head and Neck

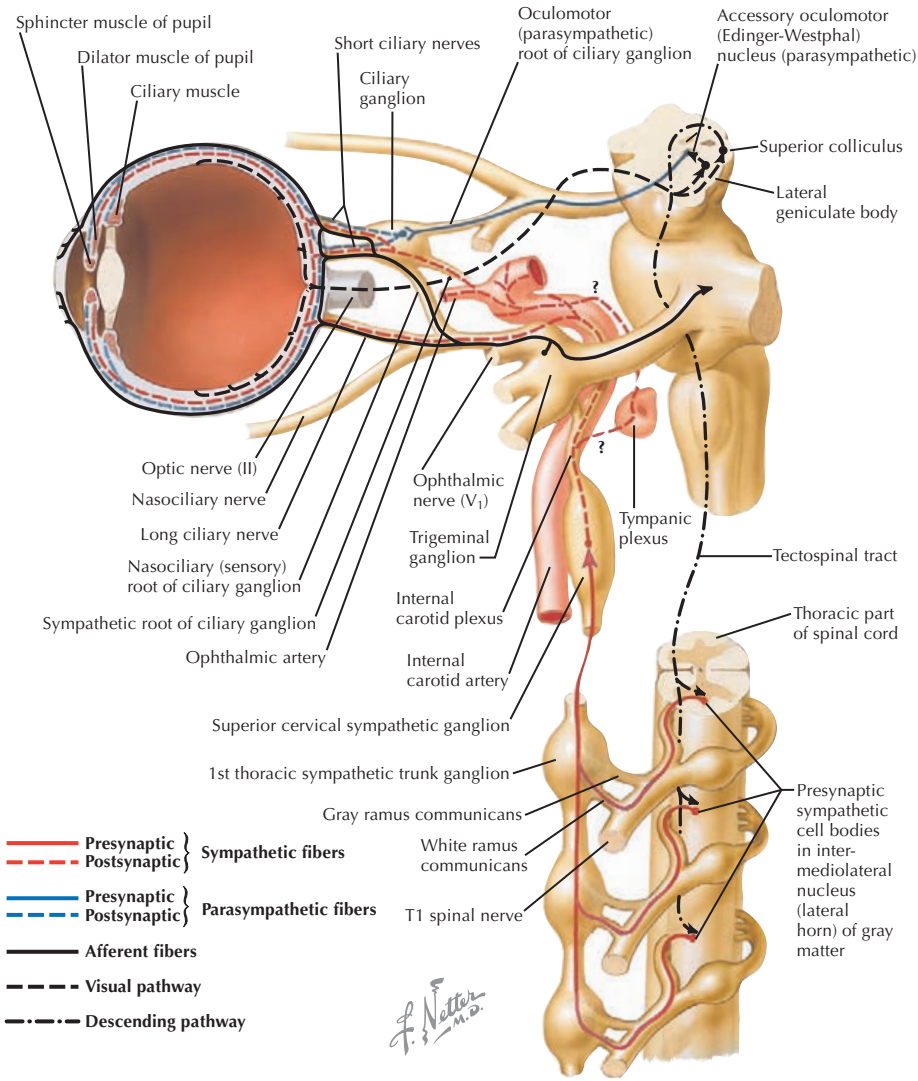
CRANIAL NERVE III WITH CORRESPONDING SYMPATHETICS *CONTINUED*



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Parasympathetic Pathways of the Head and Neck

CRANIAL NERVE III WITH CORRESPONDING SYMPATHETICS *CONTINUED*



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Parasympathetic Pathways of the Head and Neck

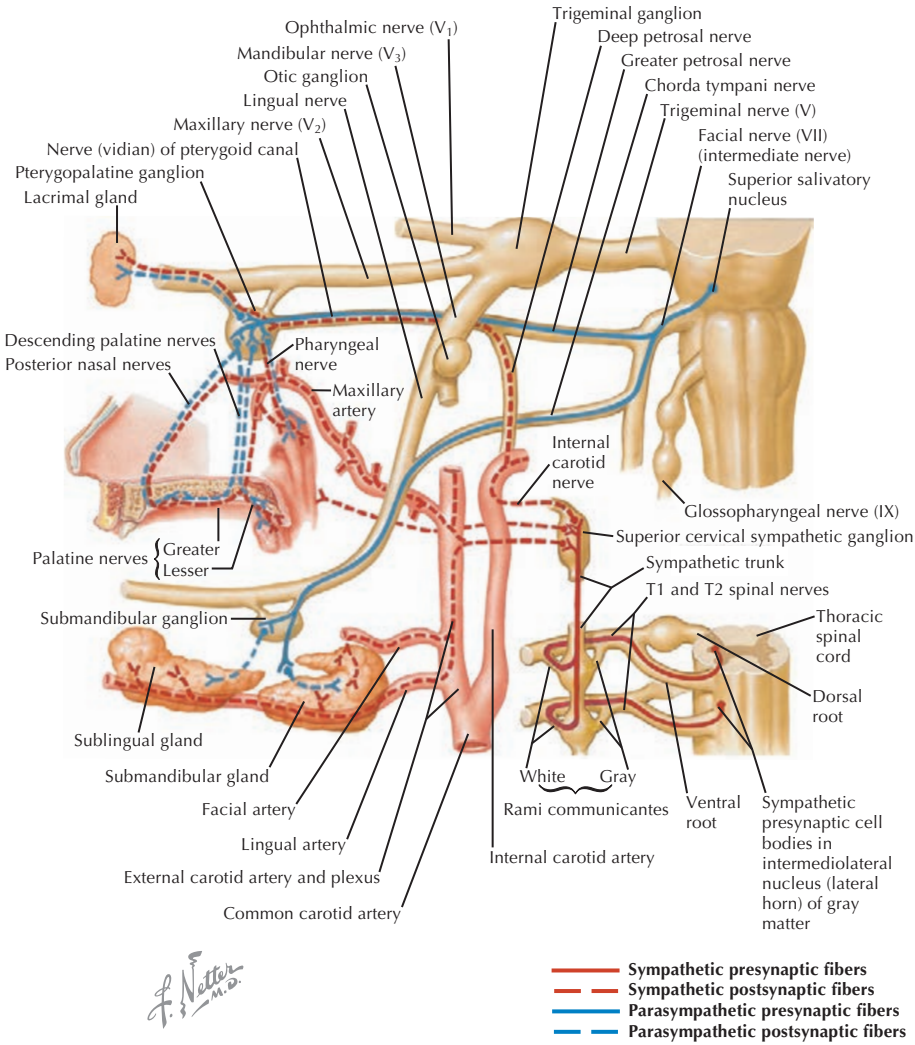
CRANIAL NERVE VII

ANATOMIC PATHWAY FOR PARASYMPATHETICS OF THE LACRIMAL, NASAL, PALATINE, PHARYNGEAL, SUBMANDIBULAR, AND SUBLINGUAL GLANDS			
Type of Neuron	**Name of Cell Body**	**Characteristics of the Cell Body**	**Course of the Neuron**
Preganglionic neuron	Superior salivatory nucleus	A collection of nerve cell bodies located in the pons Travel through the nervus intermedius of the facial n. into the internal acoustic meatus In the facial canal, the facial n. gives rise to 2 parasympathetic branches: • Greater petrosal n. • Chorda tympani n.	**Greater Petrosal Nerve** • Exits along the hiatus for the greater petrosal n. toward the foramen lacerum, where it joins the deep petrosal n. (sympathetics) to form the nerve of the pterygoid canal (vidian n.) • Vidian n. passes through the pterygoid canal and enters the pterygopalatine fossa, where it joins with the pterygopalatine ganglion **Chorda Tympani Nerve** • Exits the petrotympanic fissure to enter the infratemporal fossa, where it joins the lingual n. • Preganglionic fibers travel with the lingual n. into the floor of the oral cavity, where it joins with the submandibular ganglion
Postganglionic neuron	Pterygopalatine ganglion	A collection of nerve cell bodies located in the pterygopalatine fossa Postganglionic parasympathetic fibers that arise in the pterygopalatine ganglion are distributed to the ophthalmic and maxillary divisions of the trigeminal n. to the: • Lacrimal gland • Nasal glands • Palatine glands • Pharyngeal glands	**Ophthalmic and Maxillary Division Distribution** Postganglionic fibers travel along the zygomatic branch of the maxillary division for a short distance to enter the orbit A short communicating branch joins the lacrimal n. of the ophthalmic division of the trigeminal n. These fibers innervate: • Lacrimal gland to cause the secretion of tears **Maxillary Division Distribution** Postganglionic fibers travel along the maxillary division of the trigeminal n. to be distributed along its branches that are located in the nasal cavity, oral cavity, and pharynx (e.g., nasopalatine, greater palatine) These fibers innervate: • Nasal glands • Palatine glands • Pharyngeal glands
	Submandibular ganglion	A collection of nerve cell bodies that is located in the oral cavity It is suspended from the lingual n. at the posterior border of the mylohyoid m. immediately superior to the deep portion of the submandibular gland	Postganglionic parasympathetic fibers arise in the submandibular ganglion and are distributed to the: • Submandibular gland • Sublingual gland

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

20 Parasympathetic Pathways of the Head and Neck

CRANIAL NERVE VII *CONTINUED*



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Parasympathetic Pathways of the Head and Neck

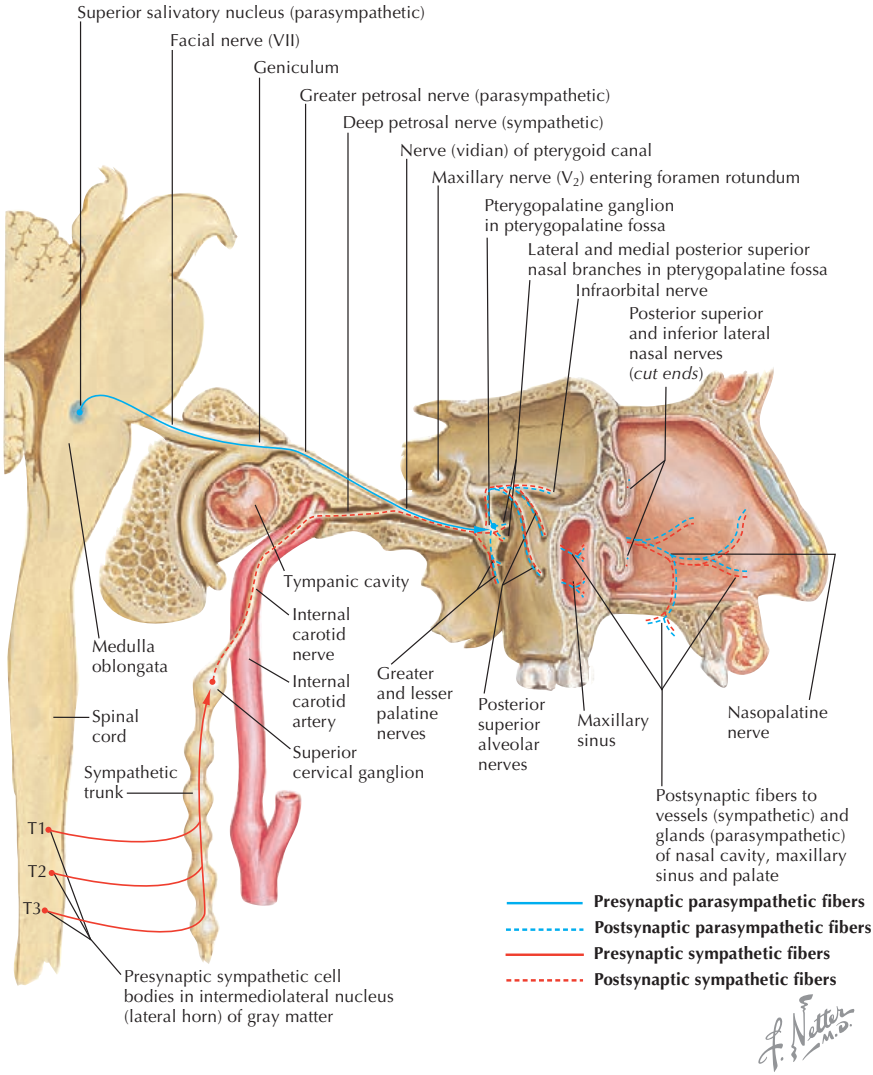
CRANIAL NERVE VII *CONTINUED*

ANATOMIC PATHWAY FOR SYMPATHETICS OF THE NASAL CAVITY, LACRIMAL GLAND, PALATE, AND SUBMANDIBULAR AND SUBLINGUAL GLANDS			
Type of Neuron	**Name of Cell Body**	**Characteristics of the Cell Body**	**Course of the Neuron**
Preganglionic neuron	Intermediolateral horn nucleus	Collection of nerve cell bodies located in the lateral horn nucleus of the spinal cord between spinal segments T1 and T3 (and possibly T4)	Fibers arise from the intermediolateral horn nuclei from T1 to T3 (4) Travel through the ventral root of the spinal cord to the spinal nerve Enter the sympathetic chain via a white ramus communicantes Once in the sympathetic chain, the preganglionic fibers for the eye will ascend and synapse with postganglionic fibers in the superior cervical ganglion
Postganglionic neuron	Superior cervical ganglion	Collection of nerve cell bodies located in the superior cervical ganglion, which is located at the base of the skull Postganglionic sympathetic fibers follow the internal carotid or external carotid a. to pass near their respective effector organs: • Nasal cavity • Palate • Lacrimal gland • Submandibular gland • Sublingual gland	**Nasal Cavity and Palate** • Postganglionic sympathetic fibers follow both the *internal* and *external carotid* aa. • Postganglionic sympathetic fibers from the internal carotid branch in the region of the foramen lacerum to form the deep petrosal n. • The deep petrosal n. joins the greater petrosal n. (parasympathetics) to form the nerve of the pterygoid canal (vidian n.) • Postganglionic sympathetic fibers travel along the branches of the maxillary division of the trigeminal n. associated with the pterygopalatine ganglion to be distributed along its branches in the nasal cavity and palate • Postganglionic sympathetic fibers from the external carotid branch and follow the maxillary a. • These fibers travel along the branches of the maxillary a. to be distributed along the nasal cavity and palate **Lacrimal Gland** • Postganglionic sympathetic fibers follow the internal carotid a. • Postganglionic sympathetic fibers from the internal carotid branch off in the region of the foramen lacerum to form the deep petrosal nerve • The deep petrosal n. joins the greater petrosal n. (parasympathetics) to form the nerve of the pterygoid canal (vidian n.) • Postganglionic fibers travel along the zygomatic branch of the maxillary division for a short distance to enter the orbit • A short communicating branch joins the lacrimal n. of the ophthalmic division of the trigeminal n. • These fibers are distributed to the lacrimal gland **Submandibular and Sublingual Glands** • Postganglionic sympathetic fibers follow the external carotid a. • Postganglionic sympathetic fibers branch off the external carotid to follow the arteries that supply the submandibular and sublingual glands

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

20 Parasympathetic Pathways of the Head and Neck

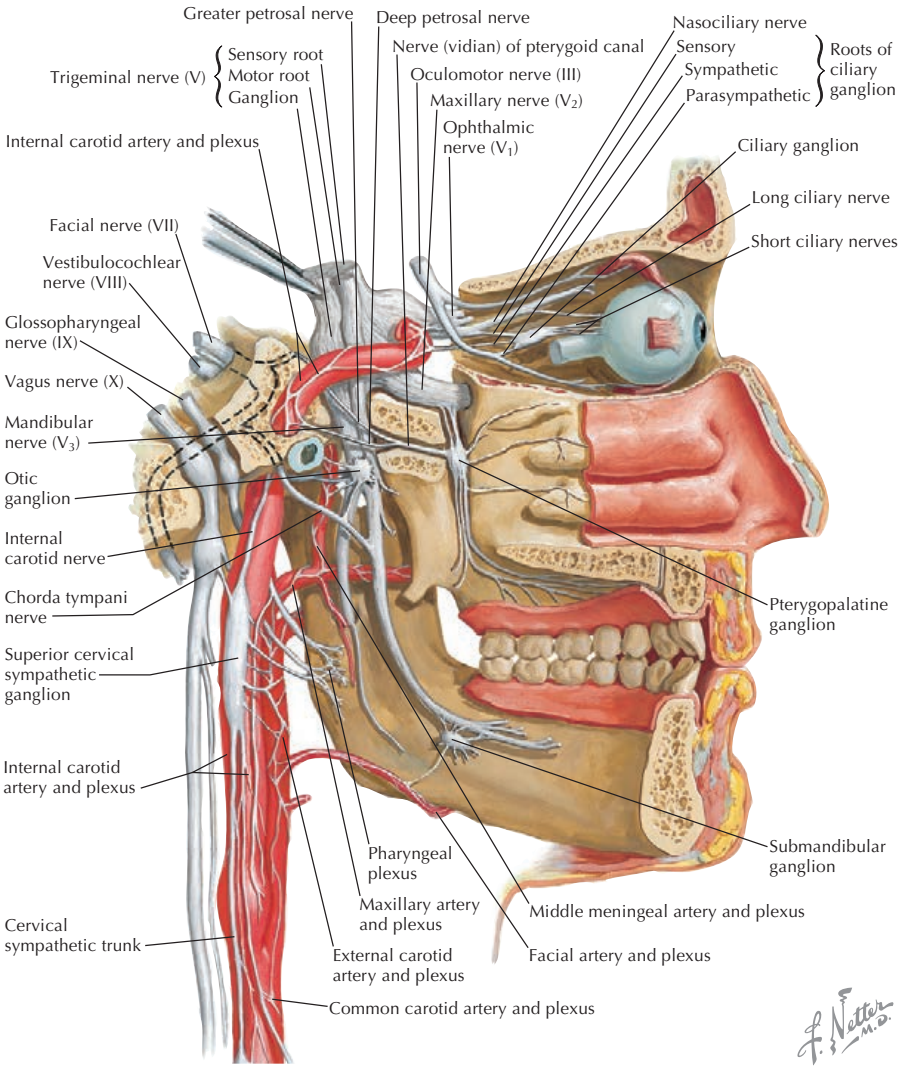
CRANIAL NERVE VII *CONTINUED*



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Parasympathetic Pathways of the Head and Neck

CRANIAL NERVE VII *CONTINUED*



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

20 Parasympathetic Pathways of the Head and Neck

CRANIAL NERVE IX WITH CORRESPONDING SYMPATHETICS

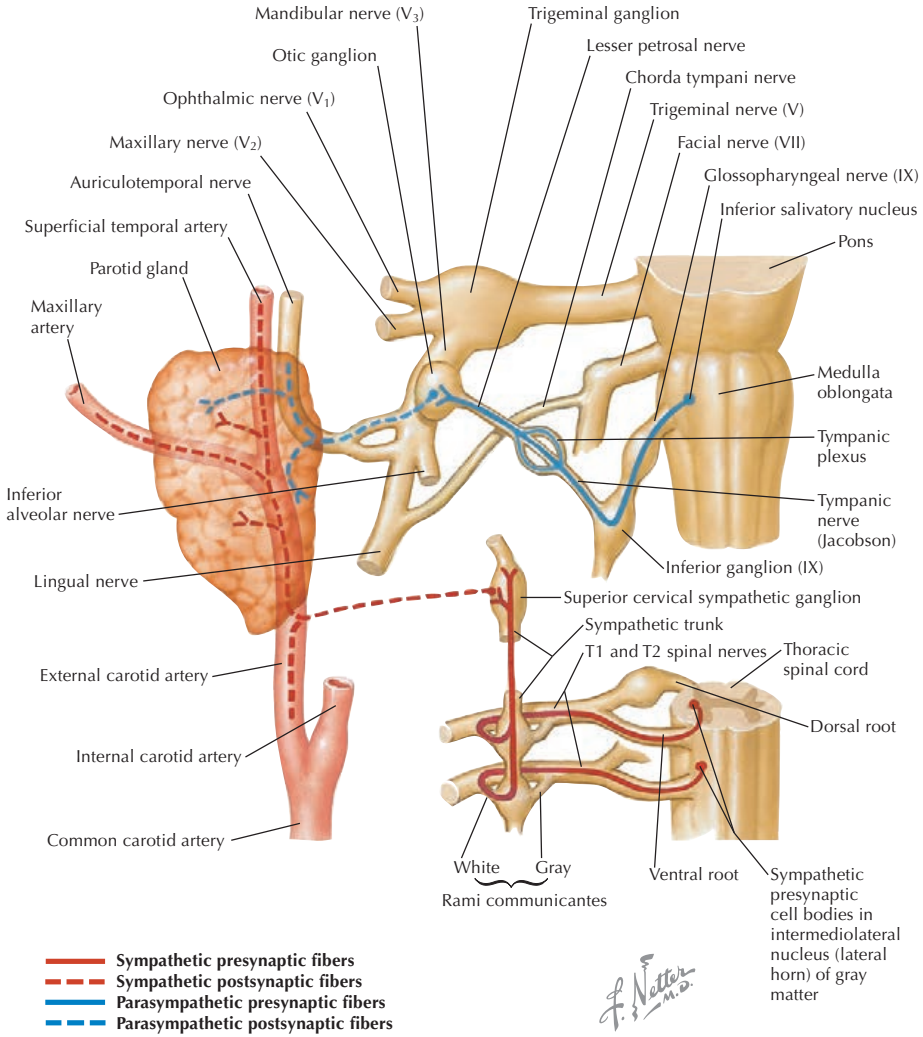
ANATOMIC PATHWAY FOR PARASYMPATHETICS OF THE PAROTID GLAND			
Type of Neuron	**Name of Cell Body**	**Characteristics of the Cell Body**	**Course of the Neuron**
Preganglionic neuron	Inferior salivatory nucleus	A collection of nerve cell bodies located in the medulla	Preganglionic parasympathetic fibers arise from the inferior salivatory nucleus in the medulla Travel through the glossopharyngeal n. and exit the jugular foramen Gives rise to the tympanic branch of IX, which reenters the skull via the tympanic canaliculus The tympanic branch of IX forms the tympanic plexus along the promontory of the ear The plexus re-forms as the lesser petrosal n., which typically exits the foramen ovale to enter the infratemporal fossa Lesser petrosal n. joins the otic ganglion
Postganglionic neuron	Otic ganglion	A collection of nerve cell bodies located inferior to the foramen ovale medial to the mandibular division of the trigeminal n.	Postganglionic parasympathetic fibers arise in the otic ganglion These fibers travel to the auriculotemporal branch of the trigeminal n. Auriculotemporal n. travels to the parotid gland Postganglionic parasympathetic fibers innervate the: • Parotid gland

ANATOMIC PATHWAY FOR SYMPATHETICS OF THE PAROTID GLAND			
Type of Neuron	**Name of Cell Body**	**Characteristics of the Cell Body**	**Course of the Neuron**
Preganglionic neuron	Intermediolateral horn nucleus	Collection of nerve cell bodies located in the lateral horn nucleus of the spinal cord between spinal segments T1 and T3 (and possibly T4)	Fibers arise from the intermediolateral horn nuclei from T1 to T3 (4) Travel through the ventral root of the spinal cord to the spinal n. Enter the sympathetic chain via a white ramus communicantes Once in the sympathetic chain, the preganglionic fibers for the eye will ascend and synapse with postganglionic fibers in the superior cervical ganglion
Postganglionic neuron	Superior cervical ganglion	Collection of nerve cell bodies located in the superior cervical ganglion, which is located at the base of the skull	Fibers arise in the superior cervical ganglion Postganglionic fibers will follow the external carotid a. Branches from the external carotid a. follow the arteries that supply the parotid gland

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Parasympathetic Pathways of the Head and Neck

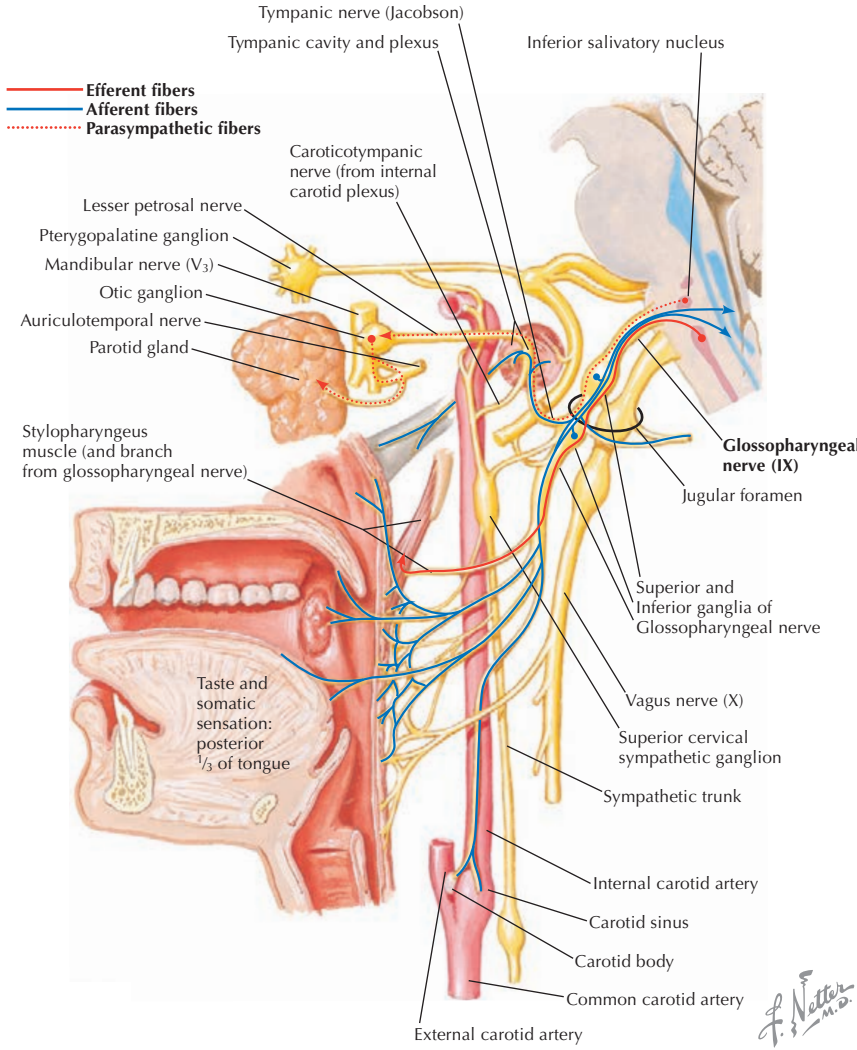
CRANIAL NERVE IX WITH CORRESPONDING SYMPATHETICS *CONTINUED*



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Parasympathetic Pathways of the Head and Neck

CRANIAL NERVE IX WITH CORRESPONDING SYMPATHETICS *CONTINUED*



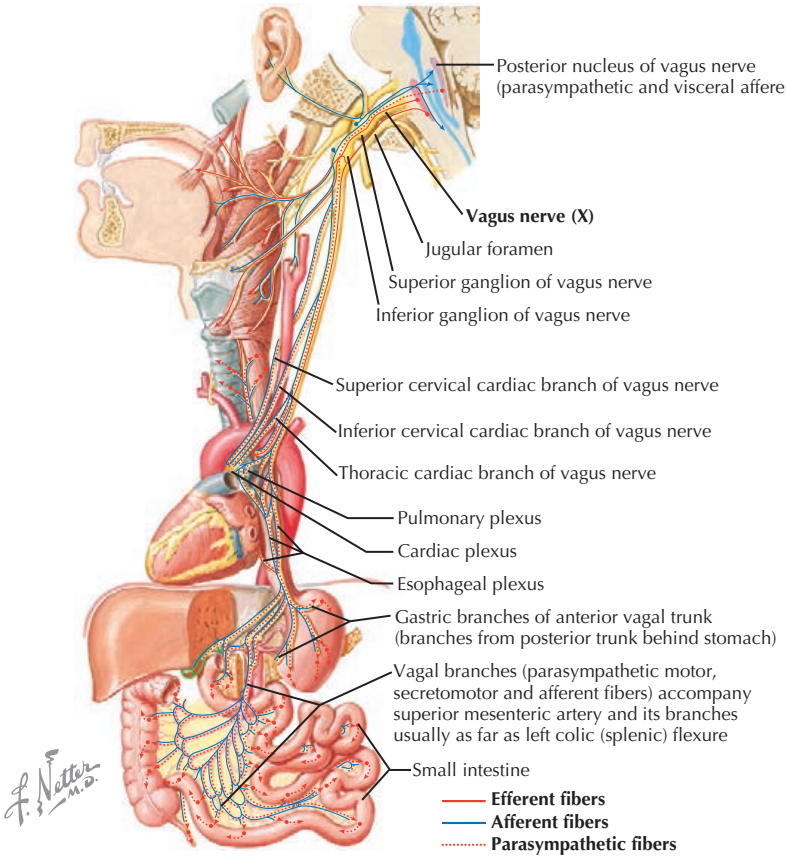
WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Parasympathetic Pathways of the Head and Neck

CRANIAL NERVE X

ANATOMIC PATHWAY FOR PARASYMPATHETICS OF THE VAGUS NERVE*			
Type of Neuron	**Name of Cell Body**	**Characteristics of the Cell Body**	**Course of the Neuron**
Preganglionic neuron	Dorsal motor nucleus	A collection of nerve cell bodies located in the medulla	Preganglionic fibers arise from the dorsal motor nucleus of the vagus in the medulla* Travel through the vagus n. and exit the jugular foramen Various branches connect to intramural ganglia in the thorax and abdomen
Postganglionic neuron	Intramural ganglion	A collection of nerve cell bodies located within the walls of the individual organ	Postganglionic fibers arise in the intramural ganglia These fibers travel to the various effector organs: • Cardiac muscle • Smooth muscle of vasculature • Glands

*The vagus n. arises in the brainstem but provides parasympathetic innervation to the thorax and greater part of the abdomen, rather than the head and neck. The sympathetics that follow the vagus n. to the thorax and greater part of the abdomen, as well as the sympathetics that follow the parasympathetic pelvic splanchnic nerves, arise from the various paravertebral and prevertebral ganglia associated with the sympathetic chain.



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

20 Clinical Correlate

HORNER'S SYNDROME

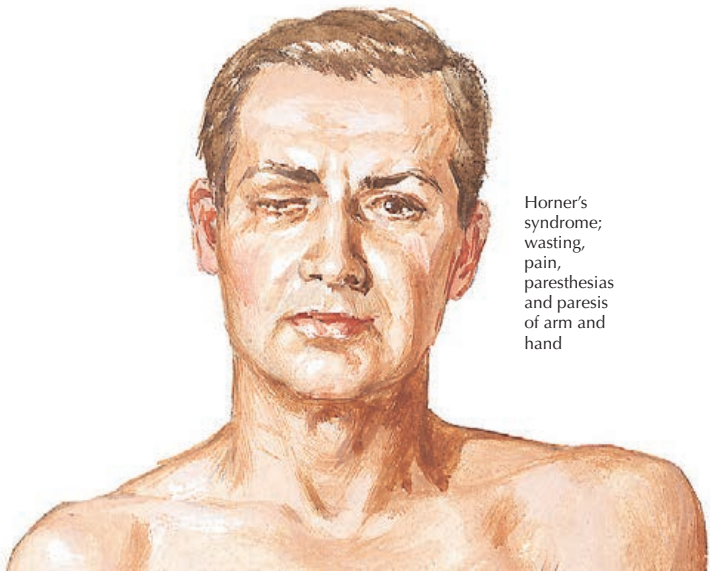
Results from injury or undue stimulus to the sympathetic nerves of the head and neck

Causes may include:
- Stroke
- Neck trauma
- Carotid artery injury
- Pancoast tumors
- Cluster headaches

Pharmacologic tests can help localize which part of the sympathetic pathway has been affected

Treatment depends on the cause (e.g., removal of a tumor)

Clinical manifestations include:
- Miosis (constriction of pupil)
- Ptosis (drooping of eyelid)
- Anhidrosis (decreased sweating)



Horner's syndrome; wasting, pain, paresthesias and paresis of arm and hand

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

CHAPTER 21

INTRAORAL INJECTIONS

Overview and Topographic Anatomy 536

Mandibular Injections 537

Maxillary Injections 546

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

21 Overview and Topographic Anatomy

GENERAL INFORMATION

Intraoral injections provide adequate pain control for various dental procedures

Many techniques have been developed

All require detailed understanding of head and neck anatomy to maximize proper administration and minimize complications

Injections should not be performed in areas of infection or inflammation

The application of topical anesthetic to the site of injection will help lessen the pain caused by the insertion of the needle

Classification

- Local injections (field blocks)
- Nerve blocks

Common Blocks

Mandibular:

- Inferior alveolar
- Long buccal
- Mental
- Gow-Gates
- Akinosi

Maxillary:

- Posterior superior alveolar
- Nasopalatine
- Greater palatine
- Infraorbital
- Maxillary division



K. Carter

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Mandibular Injections

INNERVATION AND OSTEOLOGY LANDMARKS

Mandible: General Considerations and Landmarks

The strongest and largest facial bone

Composed of 2 pieces of thick cortical bone: a lingual plate and a buccal plate

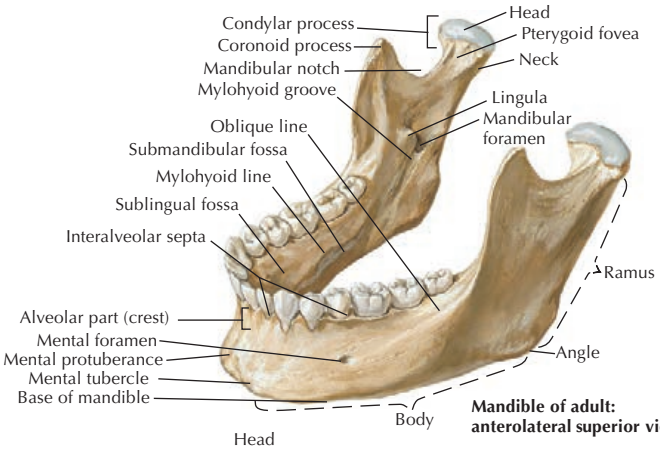
Teeth are contained in the horseshoe-shaped body

Ramus extends superiorly from the angle of the mandible

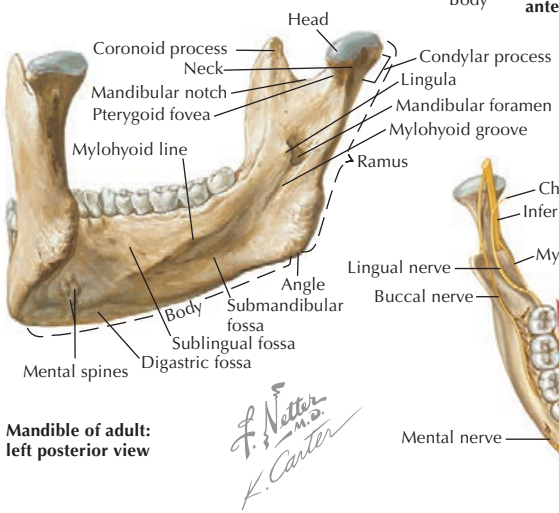
The coronoid notch is the concavity on the anterior portion of the ramus used to estimate the height of the mandibular foramen, which also is located at the height of the occlusal plane

Associated Nerves

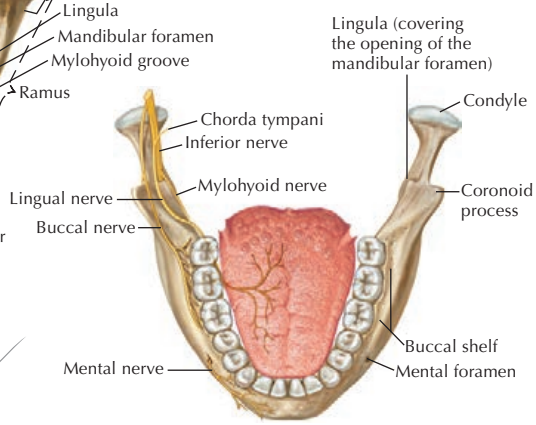
- Inferior alveolar nerve enters the mandible at the mandibular foramen
- Lingual nerve enters the oral cavity passing against the lingual tuberosity
- Buccal nerve lies on the buccal shelf



Mandible of adult: anterolateral superior view



Mandible of adult: left posterior view



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

21 Mandibular Injections

INFERIOR ALVEOLAR NERVE BLOCK

OVERVIEW

Clinically acceptable mandibular anesthesia is more difficult to achieve than maxillary anesthesia because of the thickness of the cortical bone

Requires anesthetic deposition in the pterygomandibular space at the region of the mandibular foramen lateral to the sphenomandibular ligament

Requires proper needle penetration and correct needle angulation in the pterygomandibular space

Properly performed, it anesthetizes 2 nerves:
- Inferior alveolar nerve (and its branches—the incisive and mental nerves)
- Lingual nerve

Areas anesthetized:
- All mandibular teeth (inferior alveolar nerve)
- Epithelium of the anterior 2/3rds of the tongue (lingual nerve)
- All lingual gingiva and lingual mucosa (lingual nerve)
- All buccal gingiva and mucosa from the premolars to the midline (mental nerve)
- Skin of the lower lip (mental nerve)

GENERAL METHODOLOGY

Steps:
- Insert the needle into the mucosa between the deepest portion of the coronoid notch (which should represent the vertical height of the mandibular foramen) and just lateral to the pterygomandibular raphe
- Orient the needle from the contralateral premolars and advance it along the occlusal plane of the mandible
- The needle contacts the mandible after entering 20 to 25 mm (if bone is contacted immediately on penetration into the mucosa, then the temporal crest has been contacted; the needle should be reoriented to allow insertion to the proper depth)
- Withdraw the needle slightly and perform aspiration to determine whether the needle is in a blood vessel (inferior alveolar vessels)
- After a negative result on aspiration (no blood observed in the syringe), slowly inject the anesthetic into the pterygomandibular space
- If the result of aspiration is positive, readjust the needle position and perform aspiration again before injecting into the pterygomandibular space

CONSIDERATIONS

In *children,* the mandibular foramen is located closer to the posterior border of the mandible until more bone is added with age

In *edentulous patients,* the alveolar bone is lost; thus, the deepest part of the coronoid notch is lower than normal, which could lead the clinician to aim the needle too low

In *class II malocclusion,* when the mandible is hypoplastic, the mandibular foramen is typically located more inferior than the clinician may think

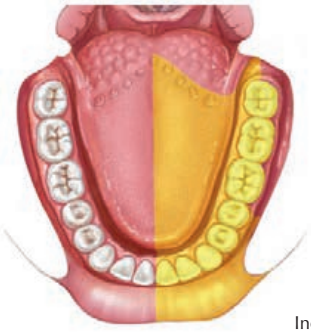
In *class III malocclusion,* when the mandible is hyperplastic, the mandibular foramen is typically located more superior than the clinician may think

A transient, dental-induced *Bell's palsy* can result if the needle is placed too far posteriorly in the parotid bed and anesthetic is introduced close to the facial nerve

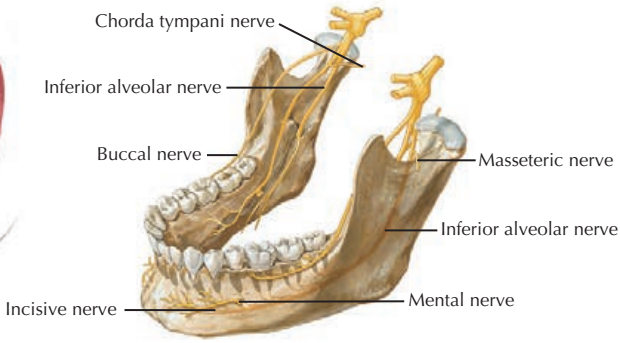
WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

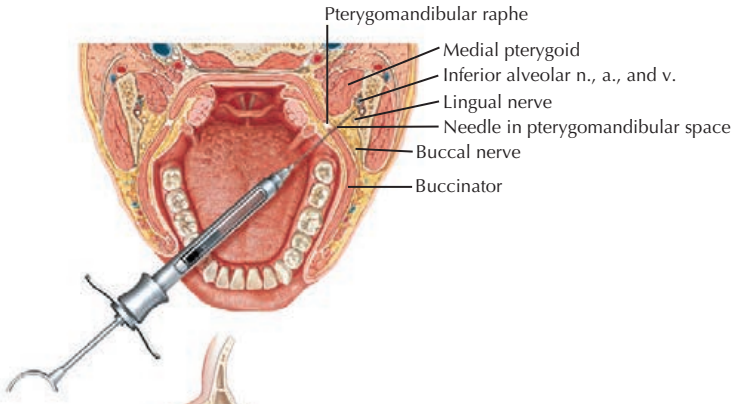
Mandibular Injections

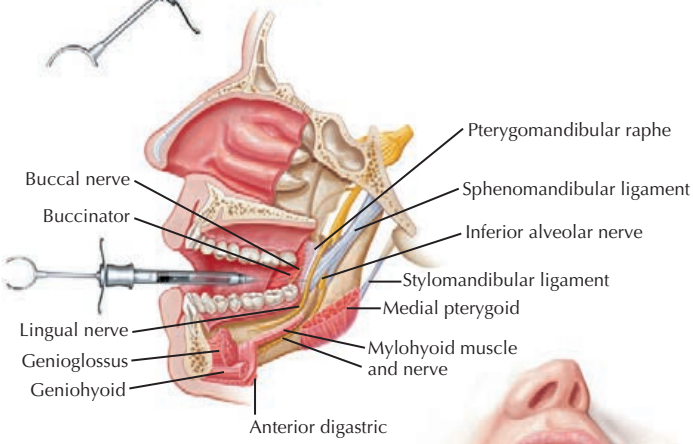
INFERIOR ALVEOLAR NERVE BLOCK *CONTINUED*

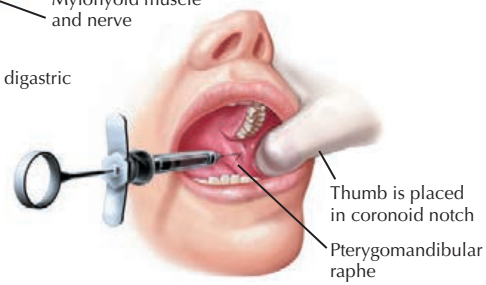


Area anesthetized by an inferior alveolar injection









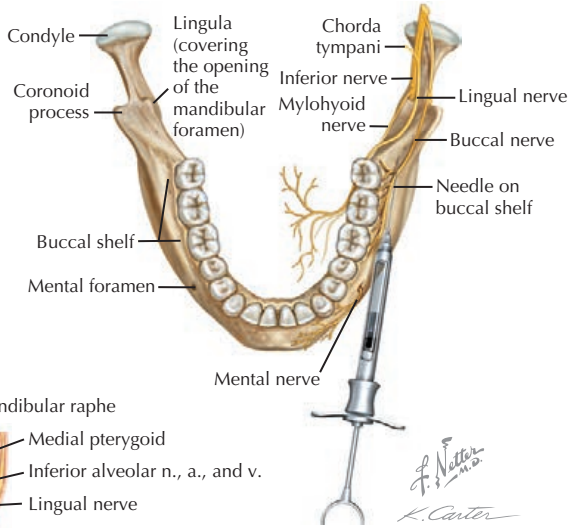
WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

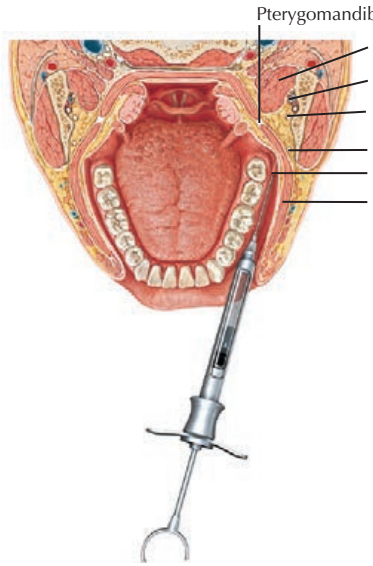
LONG BUCCAL NERVE BLOCK

OVERVIEW
A branch of the mandibular division of the trigeminal nerve, the long buccal nerve is not anesthetized in an inferior alveolar injection This block anesthetizes all buccal gingiva opposite the mandibular molars, including the retromolar trigone
GENERAL METHODOLOGY
Steps: • Insert the needle into the mucosa posterior to the last molar in the mandibular arch on the buccal side (the needle will be inserted a very short distance—about 2 mm) • Perform aspiration; after a negative result, inject the anesthetic
CONSIDERATIONS
A hematoma is rare with this block This injection seldom fails



Area anesthetized by a long buccal injection





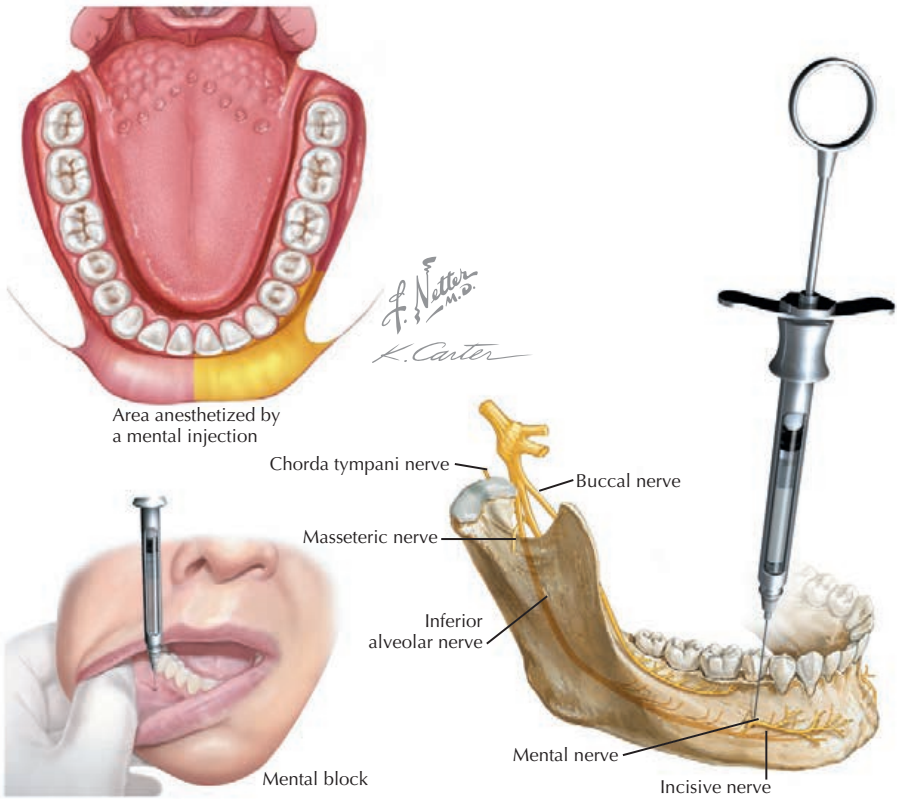


WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Mandibular Injections

MENTAL NERVE BLOCK

OVERVIEW
A branch of the inferior alveolar nerve within the mandibular canal ***Areas anesthetized:*** • All buccal gingiva and mucosa from the premolars to the midline (mental nerve) • Skin of the lower lip (mental nerve)
GENERAL METHODOLOGY
Steps: • Locate the mental foramen via palpation • Insert the needle into the mucosa at the mucobuccal fold at the location of the mental foramen (normally around the 2nd mandibular premolar) (the needle will be inserted a short distance in the direction of the mental foramen) • Perform aspiration; after a negative result, slowly inject the anesthetic
CONSIDERATIONS
X-ray imaging can help the clinician locate the mental foramen if palpation does not do so This block seldom fails



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

GOW-GATES BLOCK

OVERVIEW

A variation of the inferior alveolar nerve block, it anesthetizes the following nerves:
- Inferior alveolar nerve (and its branches, the mental and incisive nerves)
- Mylohyoid nerve
- Lingual nerve
- Long buccal nerve (often)
- Auriculotemporal nerve (often)

Low positive aspiration rate relative to that for the standard inferior alveolar nerve block injection

When the injection is properly administered, the needle contacts the neck of the mandibular condyle

Areas anesthetized:
- All mandibular teeth (inferior alveolar nerve)
- Epithelium of the anterior 2/3rds of the tongue (lingual nerve)
- All lingual gingiva and lingual mucosa (lingual nerve)
- All buccal gingiva and mucosa (long buccal and mental nerves)
- Skin of the lower lip (mental nerve)
- Skin along the temple, anterior to the ear, and posterior part of the cheek (auriculotemporal and buccal nerves)

GENERAL METHODOLOGY

Steps:
- The mouth is opened as wide as possible
- Insert the needle high into the mucosa at the level of the 2nd maxillary molar just distal to the mesiolingual cusp
- Use the intertragic notch as an extraoral landmark to help reach the neck of the mandibular condyle
- Advance the needle in a plane from the corner of the mouth to the intertragic notch from the contralateral premolars (this position varies in accordance with individual flare of the mandible) until it contacts the condylar neck
- Withdraw the needle slightly and perform aspiration to observe whether the needle is in a blood vessel
- After a negative result on aspiration, slowly inject the anesthetic
- Have the patient keep the mouth open for a few minutes after injection, to allow the anesthetic to diffuse around the nerves

CONSIDERATIONS

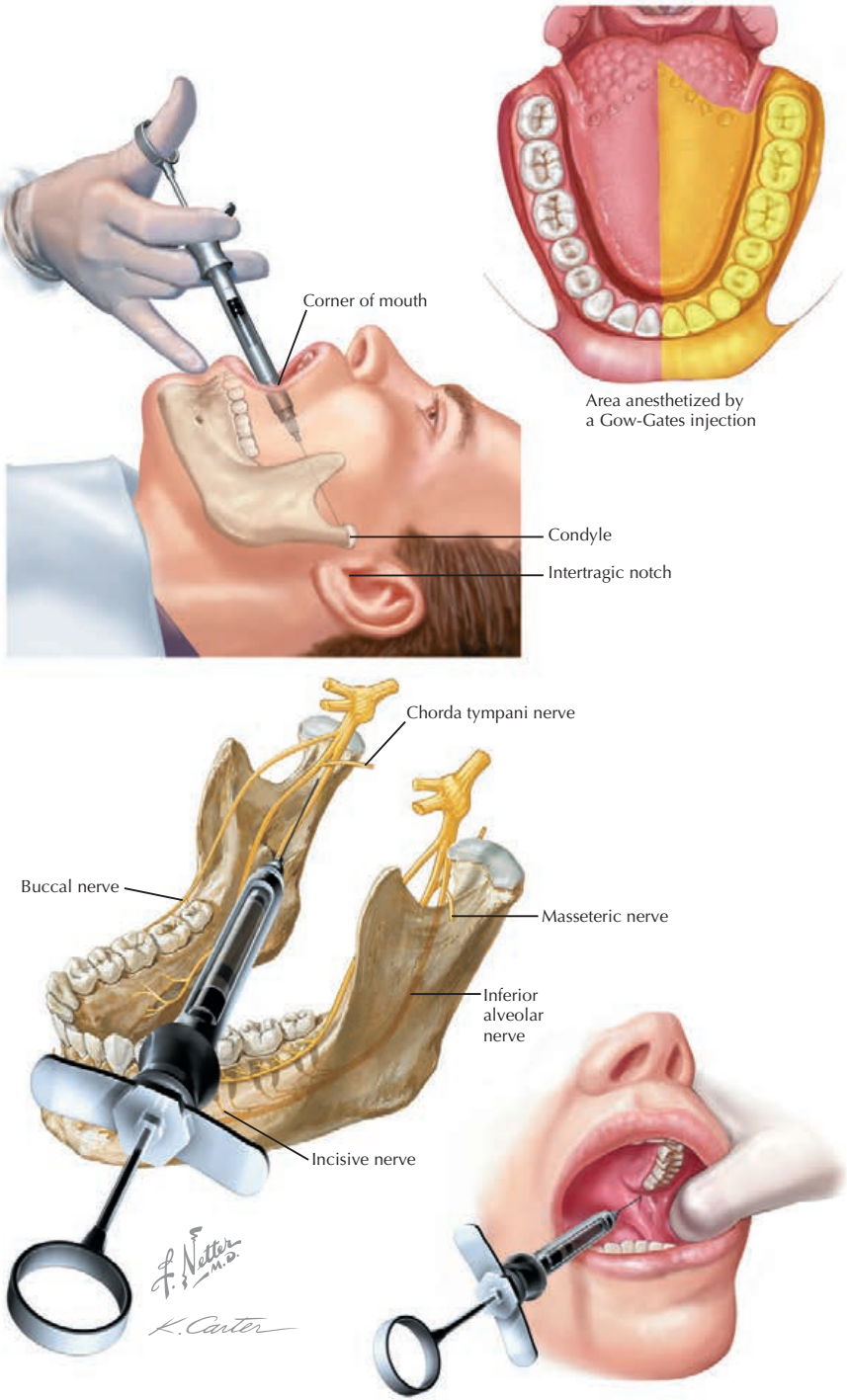
Useful for multiple procedures on mandibular teeth and buccal soft tissue

Few complications

Works well for a bifid inferior alveolar nerve

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

GOW-GATES BLOCK *CONTINUED*



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

21 Mandibular Injections

AKINOSI BLOCK

OVERVIEW

A closed-mouth approach for the mandibular nerve block, it anesthetizes the following nerves:
- Inferior alveolar nerve (and its branches, the mental and incisive nerves)
- Mylohyoid nerve
- Lingual nerve

Useful when mandibular depression (opening) is limited, such as with trismus

Considered a "blind" injection

Areas anesthetized:
- All mandibular teeth (inferior alveolar nerve)
- Epithelium of the anterior 2/3rds of the tongue (lingual nerve)
- All lingual gingiva and lingual mucosa (lingual nerve)
- All buccal gingiva and mucosa from the premolars to the midline (mental nerve)
- Skin of the lower lip (mental nerve)

GENERAL METHODOLOGY

Steps:
- Have the patient close the mouth
- Insert the needle into the mucosa between the medial border of the mandibular ramus and the maxillary tuberosity at the level of the cervical margin of the maxillary molars
- Advance the needle parallel to the maxillary occlusal plane
- Once the needle is advanced approximately 23 to 25 mm, it should be located in the middle of the pterygomandibular space near the inferior alveolar and lingual nerves (*note:* no bone will be contacted)
- After a negative result on aspiration, slowly inject the anesthetic

CONSIDERATIONS

Often used in patients with a *limited ability to open the mouth* and when intraoral landmarks for a standard inferior alveolar nerve block are difficult to view

A transient, dental induced *Bell's palsy* can result if the needle is placed too far posteriorly in the parotid bed and anesthetic is introduced close to the facial nerve

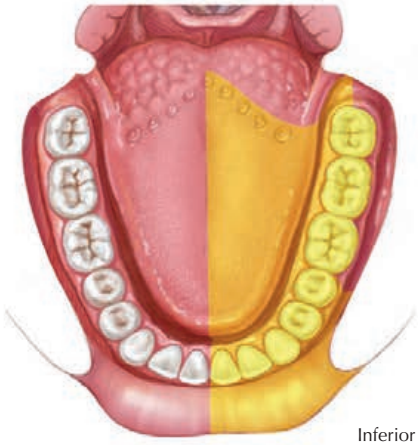
Good for patients with a *strong gag reflex* or macroglossia



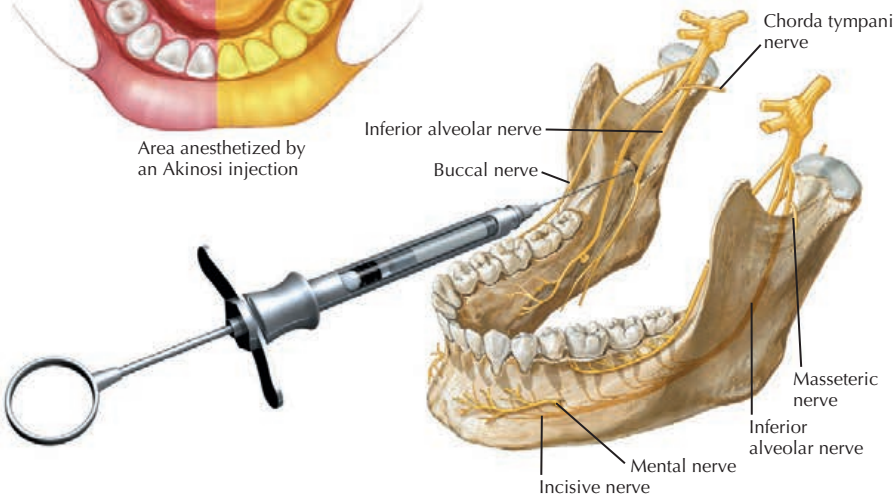
WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

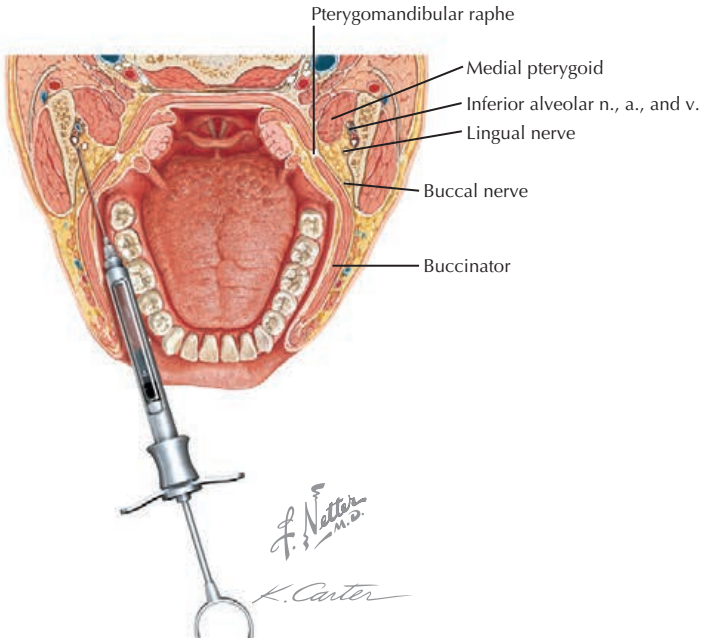
Mandibular Injections

AKINOSI BLOCK *CONTINUED*



Area anesthetized by an Akinosi injection





WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

21 Maxillary Injections

INNERVATION AND OSTEOLOGY LANDMARKS

MAXILLA: GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS AND LANDMARKS

One of the largest facial bones

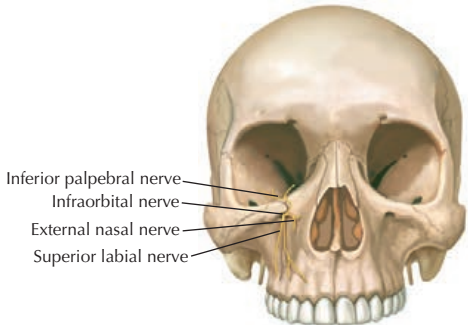
Porous bone, which aids in achieving anesthesia of the maxillary teeth

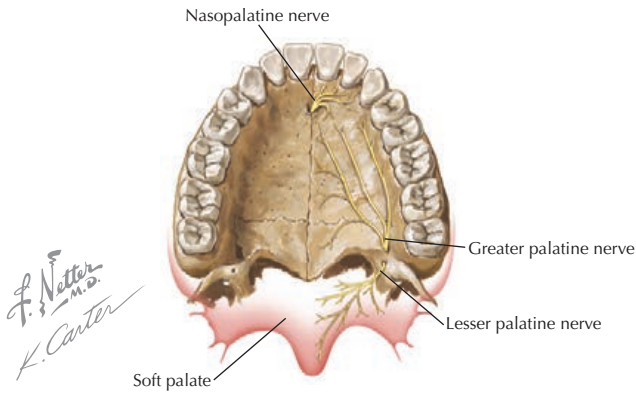
Teeth

- Contained in the alveolar bone
- Maxillary teeth are supplied by the anterior, middle, and posterior superior alveolar nerves (in some patients, the middle superior alveolar nerve may not be present)

Hard Palate

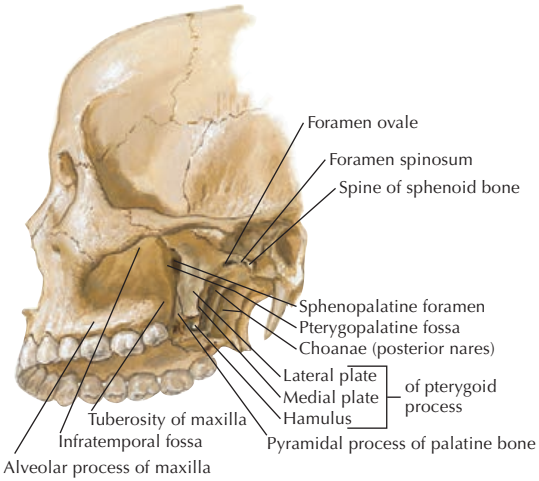
- Composed of the palatal process of the maxilla and the horizontal plate of the palatine
- Supplied by the nasopalatine and greater palatine nerves

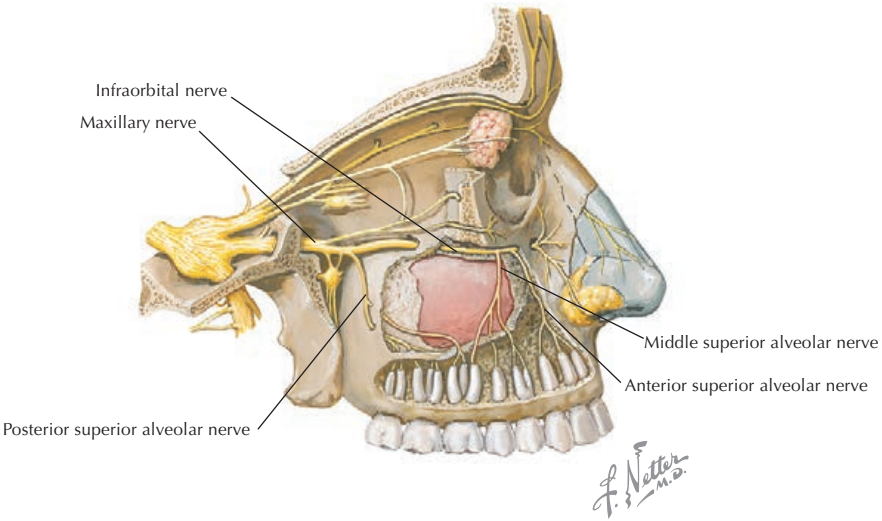




WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

INNERVATION AND OSTEOLOGY LANDMARKS *CONTINUED*





WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

POSTERIOR SUPERIOR ALVEOLAR NERVE BLOCK

OVERVIEW

A frequently used block

The injection is in the infratemporal fossa

Areas anesthetized:

- All maxillary molars, with the possible exception of the mesiobuccal root of the 1st maxillary molar
- Buccal gingiva opposite the teeth

GENERAL METHODOLOGY

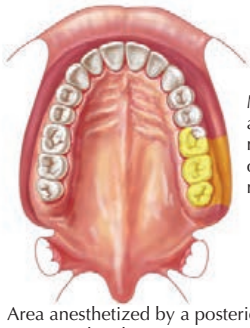
Steps:

- With the mouth open, the patient is instructed to deviate the mandible toward the same side as the injection, to produce more work space for the clinician
- Insert the needle into the mucosa at the mucobuccal fold just superior to the maxillary 2nd molar, between the medial border of the ramus of the mandible and the maxillary tuberosity
- In a single motion, the needle needs to be advanced approximately 15 mm in the following x-y-z plane at the same time, to reach the posterior superior alveolar nerve along the posterior surface of the maxilla:
  - Medially at a 45-degree angle to the maxillary occlusal plane
  - Superiorly at a 45-degree angle to the maxillary occlusal plane
  - Posteriorly at a 45-degree angle to the maxillary occlusal plane
- Perform aspiration due to the close proximity of the pterygoid plexus
- After a negative result on aspiration, slowly inject the anesthetic

CONSIDERATIONS

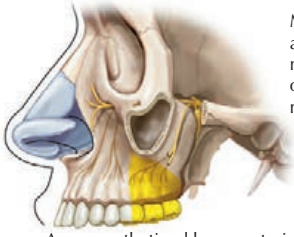
Significant potential for formation of a hematoma involving the pterygoid plexus

Short needles are preferred, to reduce the risk of hematoma



May not always anesthetize the mesiobuccal root of the 1st maxillary molar

Area anesthetized by a posterior superior alveolar injection



May not always anesthetize the mesiobuccal root of the 1st maxillary molar

Area anesthetized by a posterior superior alveolar injection



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Maxillary Injections

NASOPALATINE NERVE BLOCK

OVERVIEW

Considered the most painful of dental injections

Because of the sensitivity of the area, pressure anesthesia (e.g., using a cotton swab applicator) is helpful at the site of injection

Areas anesthetized:

- The area's palatal gingiva and mucosa from the maxillary canine on the right to the maxillary canine on the left side of the maxilla
- Both the right and left nasopalatine nerves, because they exit onto the hard palate in close proximity

Oral mucosa in this region is tightly adhered to the hard palate; thus deposition of anesthetic in the area has less space to diffuse

GENERAL METHODOLOGY

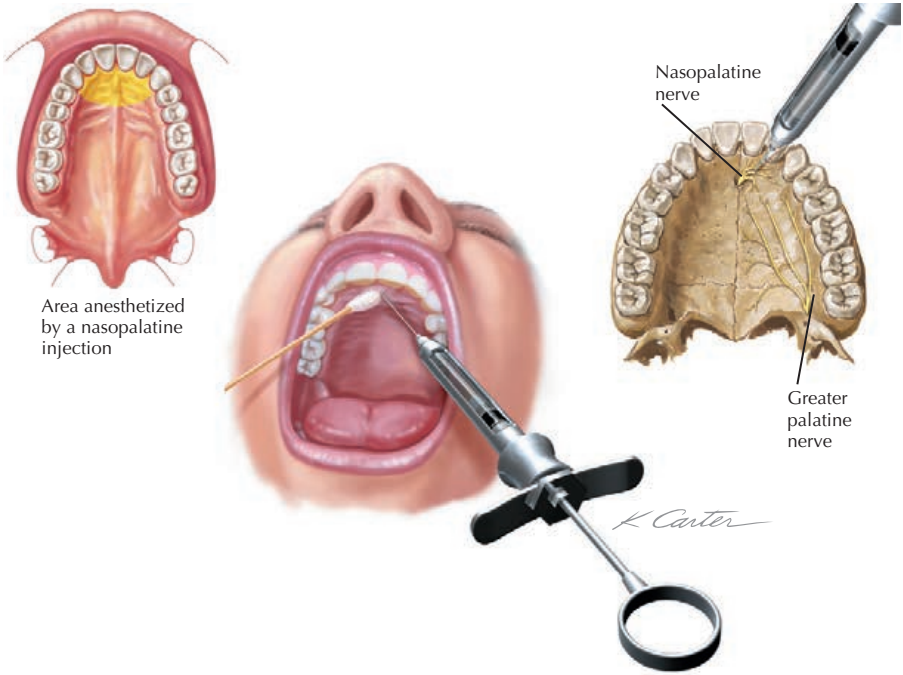
Steps:

- Use a cotton swab applicator to apply pressure to the injection site
- Insert the needle into the palatal mucosa lateral to the incisive papilla
- Deposit a small amount of anesthetic to help lessen the trauma; the vasoconstrictor norepinephrine then causes the area's soft tissue to blanch
- Advance the needle until it contacts the hard palate
- Withdraw the needle slightly and perform aspiration
- After a negative result on aspiration, very slowly inject the anesthetic

CONSIDERATIONS

Pressure anesthesia is beneficial to help lessen the pain

Because the tissue is so dense and is attached to the bone, this block requires a slow injection



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Maxillary Injections

GREATER PALATINE NERVE BLOCK

OVERVIEW

Another commonly used block to anesthetize areas of the hard palate

Not as traumatic for the patient as the nasopalatine nerve block

Because of the sensitivity of the area, pressure anesthesia (e.g., using a cotton swab applicator) is helpful at the site of injection

Areas anesthetized:

- Palatal gingiva and mucosa in the area from the maxillary 1st premolar (anteriorly) to the posterior portion of the hard palate to the midline

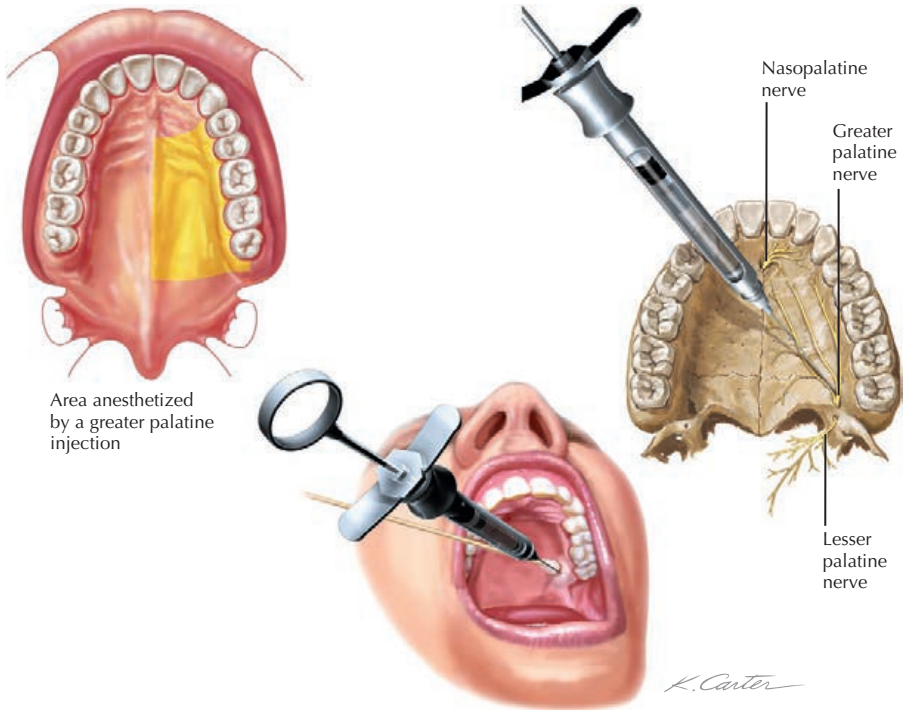
GENERAL METHODOLOGY

Steps:

- Locate the greater palatine foramen by using a cotton swab applicator to press down on the tissue in the region of the 1st maxillary molar, moving posteriorly until the swab dips into the tissue (usually posterior to the 2nd maxillary molar)
- Use a cotton swab applicator to apply pressure to the injection site
- Insert the needle and inject a small amount of anesthetic to lessen patient discomfort; the tissue of the area will begin to blanch from the effects of the anesthetic agent
- Advance the needle until it contacts the hard palate
- Withdraw the needle slightly and perform aspiration
- After a negative result on aspiration, slowly inject the anesthetic

CONSIDERATIONS

The clinician should be able to feel the needle contact bone; otherwise, the needle could be too posterior in the soft palate



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

MIDDLE SUPERIOR ALVEOLAR NERVE BLOCK

OVERVIEW

The middle superior alveolar nerve is reported to be present in about 30% of all people

Areas anesthetized:

- All maxillary premolars and possibly the mesiobuccal root of the 1st maxillary molar
- Buccal gingiva opposite the teeth

GENERAL METHODOLOGY

Steps:

- Insert the needle into the mucosa at the mucobuccal fold just superior to the area of the maxillary 2nd premolar
- Advance the needle until the tip is superior to the apex of the maxillary 2nd premolar for maximum anesthesia
- After a negative result on aspiration, slowly inject the anesthetic

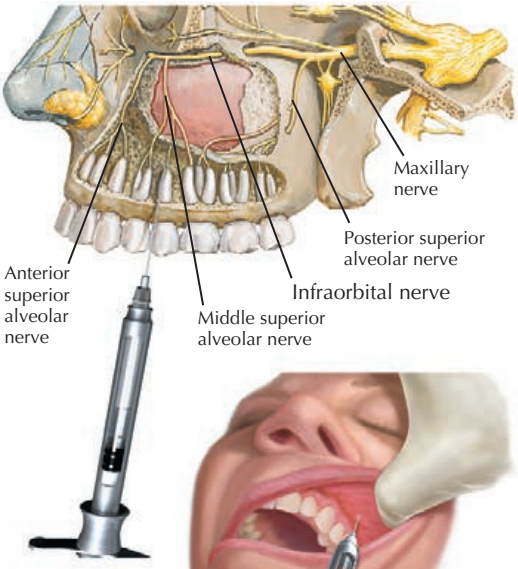
CONSIDERATIONS

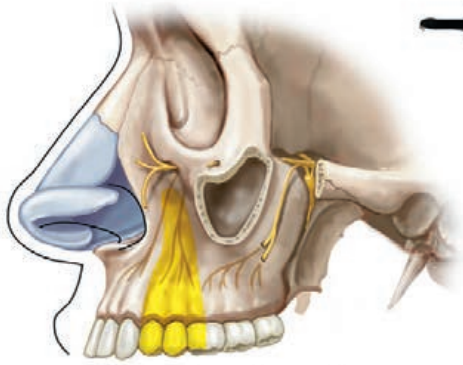
Local infiltrations are a common substitute for this block

This area is somewhat avascular, and hematoma formation is rare



Area anesthetized by a middle superior alveolar injection





Area anesthetized by a middle superior alveolar injection



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

21 Maxillary Injections

INFRAORBITAL/ANTERIOR SUPERIOR ALVEOLAR NERVE BLOCK

OVERVIEW

Less frequently used because of the risk of the clinician injuring the patient's eye

This block anesthetizes the following nerves:
- Anterior superior alveolar nerve
- Middle superior alveolar nerve
- Infraorbital nerve

Areas anesthetized:
- All maxillary teeth from the central incisor to the premolars, with the possible inclusion of the mesiobuccal root of the 1st maxillary molar
- Buccal gingiva opposite these teeth
- Lateral aspect of nose, lower eyelid, and upper lip

GENERAL METHODOLOGY

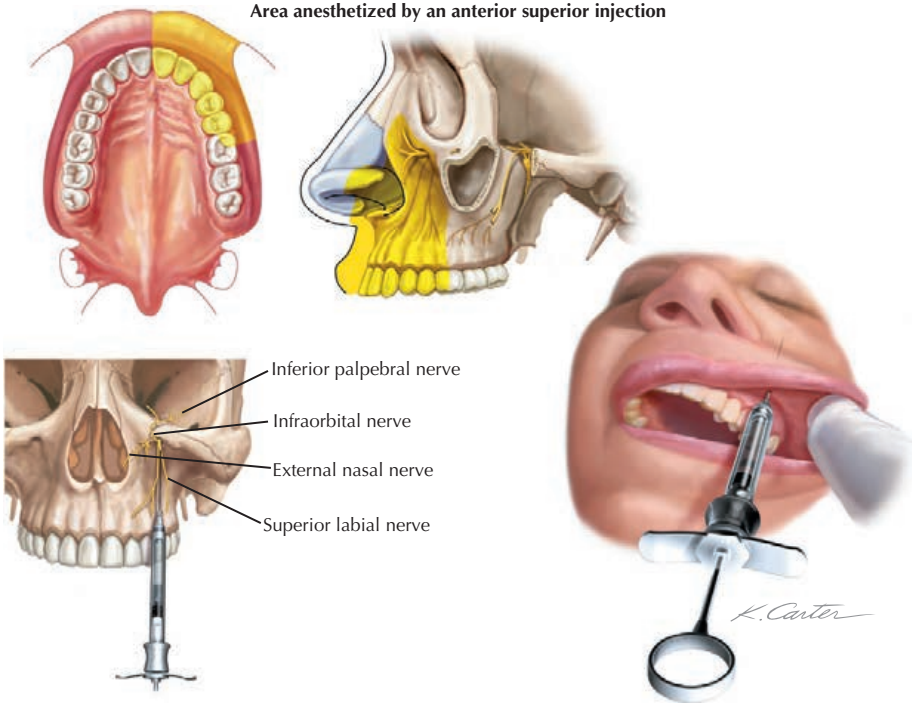
Steps:
- Locate the infraorbital foramen via palpation
- Insert the needle into the mucosa at the mucobuccal fold in the area superior to the 1st maxillary premolar
- Advance the needle parallel to the long axis of the tooth until it contacts the bone of the infraorbital foramen
- After a negative result on aspiration, slowly inject the anesthetic

CONSIDERATIONS

No significant potential for a hematoma

Useful when pulpal anesthesia cannot be achieved in a local infiltration because of dense bone or when anesthesia is required on multiple teeth that would need more than one injection

Area anesthetized by an anterior superior injection



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

MAXILLARY DIVISION BLOCK

OVERVIEW

An excellent technique to achieve hemimaxillary anesthesia

Anesthetizes all of the branches of the maxillary division of the trigeminal nerve

Useful in extensive quadrant procedures and surgery

With blocking of the entire division, the following nerves are anesthetized:
- Posterior superior alveolar nerve
- Middle superior alveolar nerve
- Anterior superior alveolar nerve
- Nasopalatine nerve
- Greater palatine nerve
- Infraorbital nerve

Areas anesthetized:
- All maxillary teeth
- All buccal gingiva
- All palatal gingiva and mucosa
- Lateral aspect of nose, lower eyelid, and upper lip

GENERAL METHODOLOGY

Goal: to deposit the anesthetic in the pterygopalatine fossa using its eventual connection with the greater palatine foramen

Steps:
- Locate the greater palatine foramen by using a cotton swab applicator to press in the region of the 1st maxillary molar, moving posteriorly until the swab dips into the tissue (usually posterior to the 2nd maxillary molar)
- Use a cotton swab applicator to apply pressure to the injection site
- Insert the needle into the mucosa and inject a small amount of anesthetic to lessen patient discomfort; the tissue will begin to blanch as a result of effects of the anesthetic agent
- Insert the needle further and locate the greater palatine foramen with the needle
- Once the foramen is located, insert the needle and advance it approximately 28 to 30 mm; at this location, the needle should be in the pterygopalatine fossa
- During the passage, if any bony resistance is met, the needle may be rotated to aid insertion (*note:* under NO circumstances should the needle be forced)
- After a negative result on aspiration, slowly inject the anesthetic

CONSIDERATIONS

The needle should NEVER be forced into the greater palatine foramen, because occasionally the canal is not vertical, so that forced entry will fracture the bone

Because the orbit is located superior to the pterygopalatine fossa, if the needle is placed too far superiorly, the anesthetic can be deposited in this region, affecting the eye

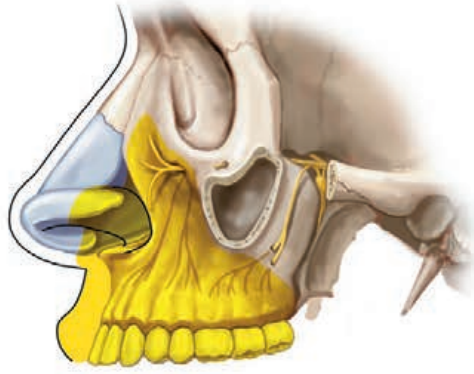
Because the palatine vessels also are contents of the canal, care must be taken to prevent hematoma

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

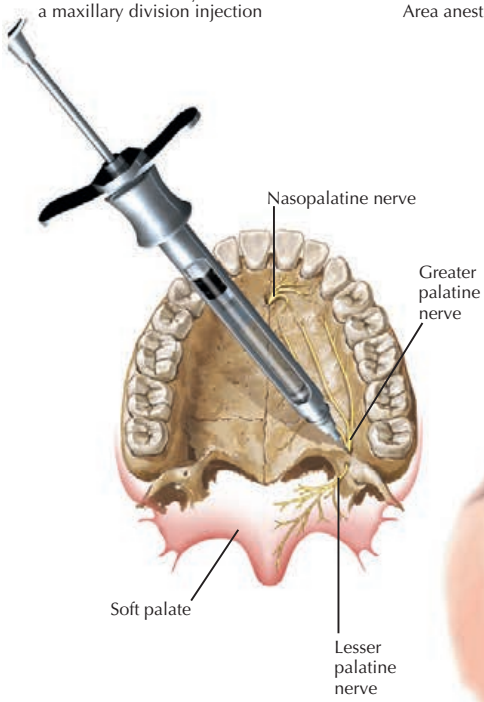
MAXILLARY DIVISION BLOCK *CONTINUED*



Area anesthetized by
a maxillary division injection



Area anesthetized by a maxillary division injection





WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

CHAPTER 22

INTRODUCTION TO THE UPPER LIMB, BACK, THORAX, AND ABDOMEN

Overview and Topographic Anatomy 556
Osteology 558
Muscles 568
Contents of the Thorax 582
Contents of the Abdomen 589
Vascular Supply 601
Nerve Supply 614

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

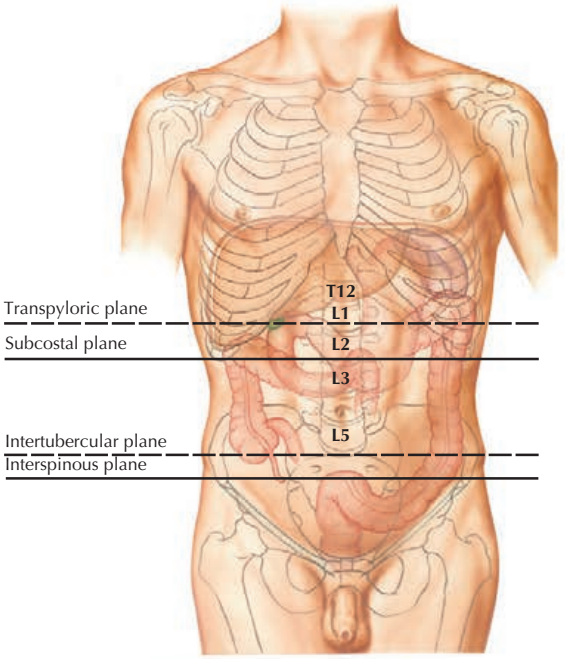
22 Overview and Topographic Anatomy

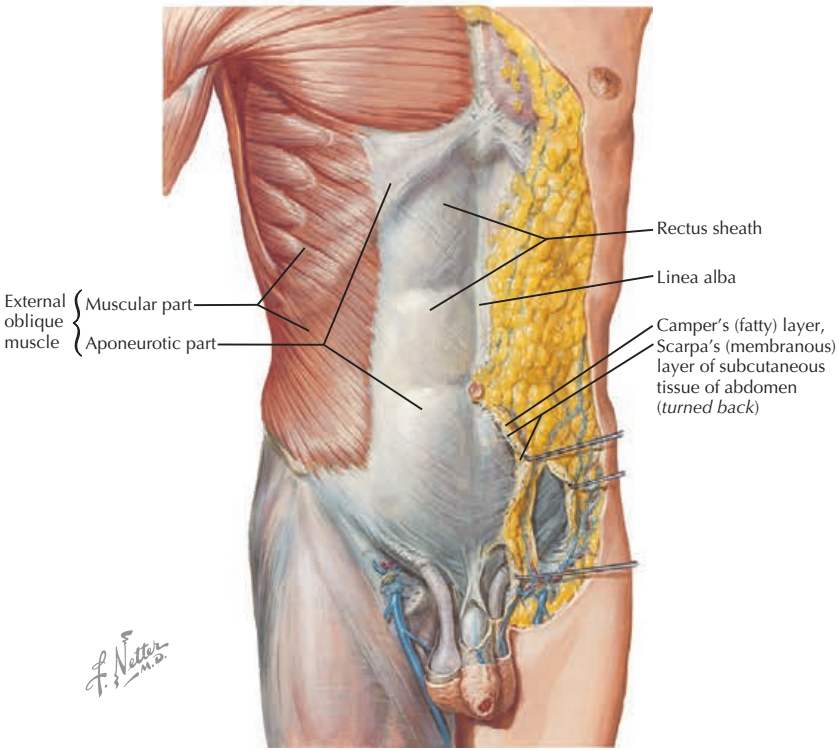
GENERAL INFORMATION

Upper limb	The upper limb is the region of the body composed of the: • Pectoral girdle • Brachium (arm) • Antebrachium (forearm) • Manus (hand) It is a very mobile structure that allows objects to be manipulated All motor and sensory innervation is derived from the brachial plexus, which arises from the ventral rami of C5-T1 It is a frequent site of traumatic injury
Back and thorax	The thoracic cavity is divided into: • 2 Pleural cavities • Mediastinum
Anterolateral abdominal wall	Layers of the anterolateral abdominal wall • Skin • Superficial fascia • Fatty superficial layer (Camper's) • Membranous superficial layer (Scarpa's) • External oblique • Internal oblique • Transversus abdominis • Transversalis fascia • Extraperitoneal fat • Parietal peritoneum
Abdomen	Part of the trunk that lies between the thorax and the pelvis, containing: • Peritoneal cavity • GI organs • Liver and biliary system • Adrenal glands • Pancreas • Kidneys and upper part of ureters • Nerves and blood vessels Divided into body planes: • Xiphisternal—T9 • Transpyloric—L1 • Subcostal—L3 • Supracristal—L4 • Transtubercular—L5 • Interspinous—S2

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

GENERAL INFORMATION *CONTINUED*





WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

UPPER LIMB

BONES OF THE PECTORAL GIRDLE

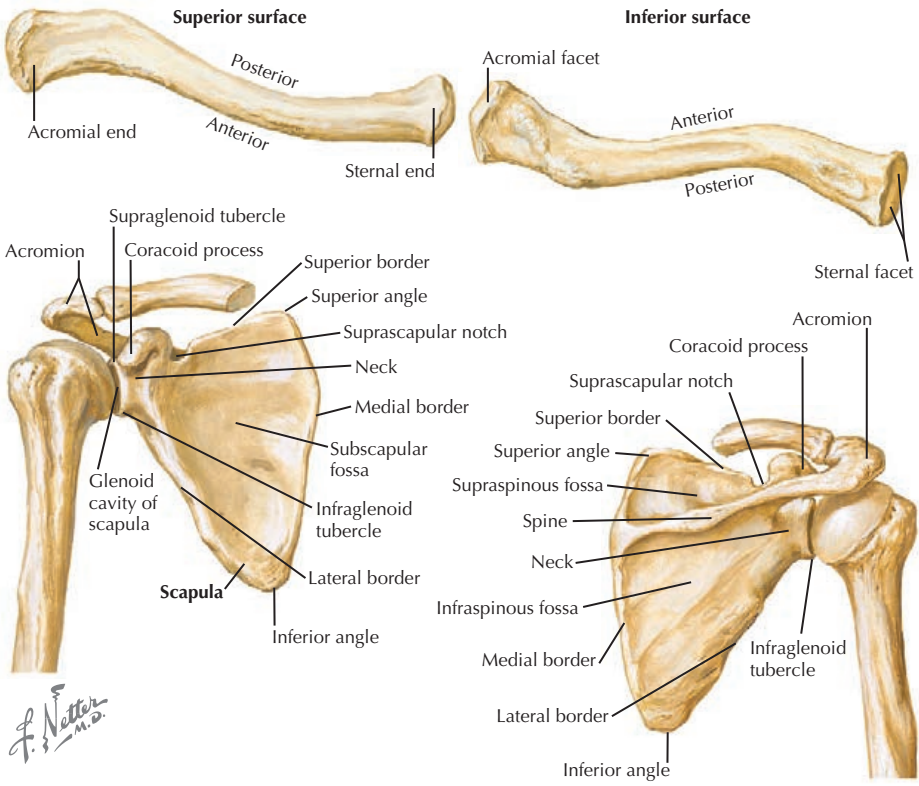
Clavicle

Is convex anteriorly at the sternal end (medial $^{2}/_{3}$ rds) and concave anteriorly at the acromial end (lateral $^{1}/_{3}$ rd)
Provides for the attachment of four muscles:
- Pectoralis major
- Deltoid
- Trapezius
- Sternocleidomastoid

Transmits force from the upper limb to the axial skeleton
Is paired
Is frequently fractured

Scapula

Is flat and triangular in shape
Is paired
Has numerous parts:
- Costal surface—provides attachment for subscapularis
- Spine—provides attachment for trapezius and deltoid
- Acromion—provides attachment for trapezius and deltoid and articulates with clavicle
- Glenoid cavity—articulates with the head of the humerus
- Supraglenoid tubercle—provides attachment for the long head of the biceps brachii
- Infraglenoid tubercle—provides attachment for the long head of the triceps brachii
- Scapular notch—is crossed superiorly by the transverse scapular ligament; suprascapular n. passes inferior to ligament while suprascapular vv. pass superior to ligament
- Coracoid process—provides attachment for pectoralis minor, short head of biceps brachii, and coracobrachialis



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

UPPER LIMB *CONTINUED*

BONES OF THE UPPER LIMB

Humerus

Articulates with the scapula, ulna, and radius
Also known as the arm
Longest bone of the upper limb
Has eight centers of ossification
Has 16 major parts:
- Head—smooth surface that articulates with the glenoid cavity of the scapula
- Anatomical neck—oblique passing groove that provides attachment for the articular capsule
- Greater tubercle—provides attachment for 3 rotator cuff muscles: supraspinatus, infraspinatus, and teres minor
- Lesser tubercle—provides attachment for 1 rotator cuff muscle: subscapularis
- Intertubercular groove—between greater and lesser tubercles; long head of the biceps brachii located in groove
- Surgical neck—axillary nerve and posterior humeral circumflex vv. lie in contact with medial portion of surgical neck
- Radial groove—posterior surface of humerus where radial n. and profunda brachii vv. are located
- Deltoid tuberosity—provides attachment of deltoid
- Capitulum—rounded distal end of the lateral humerus that provides articulation with the radius (head)
- Trochlea—pulley-shaped distal end of the medial humerus that provides articulation with the ulna (trochlear notch)
- Olecranon fossa—depression on posterior humerus superior to trochlea; provides area for olecranon process of ulna to occupy during extension of antebrachium
- Coronoid fossa—depression on anterior humerus superior to trochlea that provides area for coronoid process to occupy during flexion of antebrachium
- Radial fossa—depression on anterior humerus superior to capitulum that provides area for radius (head) during flexion of antebrachium
- Supracondylar ridges—sharp elevations of bone on lateral portion of distal humerus that provides attachment of brachial fascia
- Medial epicondyle—elevation at distal part of medial supracondylar ridge; ulnar n. and superior ulnar collateral vv. are located posterior
- Lateral epicondyle—elevation at distal part of lateral supracondylar ridge

Radius

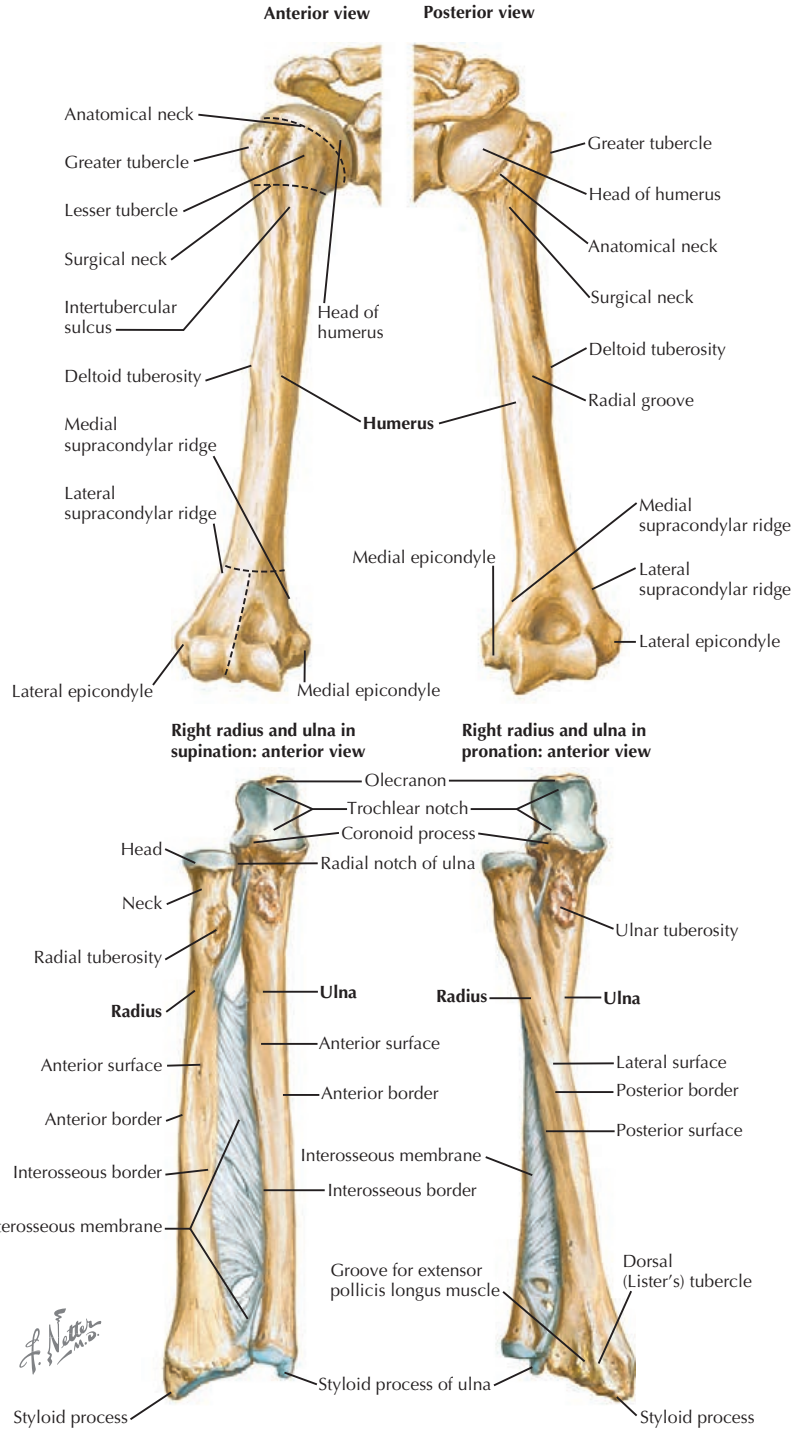
Articulates with capitulum of humerus superiorly
Articulates with scaphoid and lunate inferiorly
Is shorter than ulna
Is frequently fractured at distal end (Colles fracture)
Has 3 major anatomical structures:
- Head—proximal end of radius; provides articulation with capitulum of humerus
- Radial tuberosity—provides attachment for biceps brachii
- Styloid process—provides attachment for brachioradialis

Ulna

Articulates with trochlea of humerus
Has 6 major anatomical structures:
- Olecranon—proximal portion of ulna; provides attachment for triceps brachii
- Coronoid process—provides attachment for brachialis
- Troclear notch—depression for articulation with trochlea of humerus
- Radial notch—depressed area for radius (head)
- Head—distal portion of ulna
- Styloid process—projects posterior and medial

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

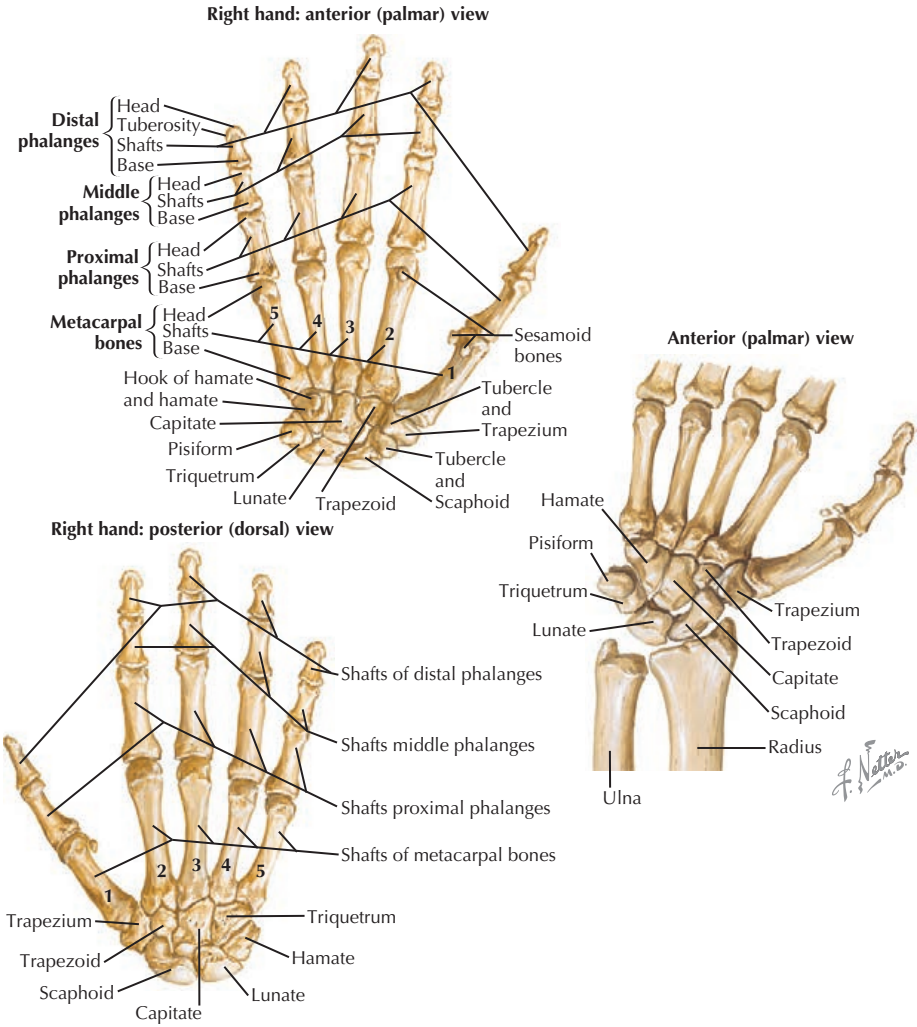
UPPER LIMB *CONTINUED*



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

UPPER LIMB *CONTINUED*

CARPAL BONES
Is described in 2 rows: Proximal row (lateral to medial) • Scaphoid—frequently fractured • Lunate • Triquetrum • Pisiform Distal row (lateral to medial) • Trapezium • Trapezoid • Capitate • Hamate



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

BACK

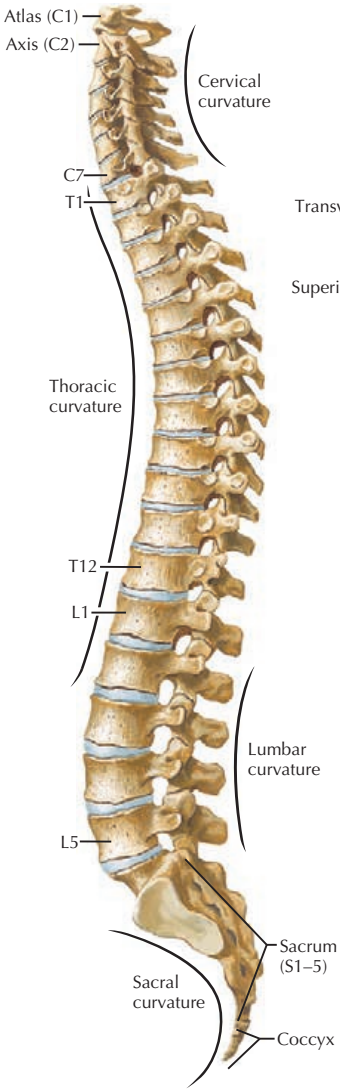
BONES OF BACK
Overview
Vertebral column includes 33 vertebrae • 7 Cervical • 12 Thoracic • 5 Lumbar • 5 Sacrum • 4 Coccygeal Functions include: • Support of body weight • Posture • Locomotion • Protection of spinal cord and spinal roots Important vertebral levels • T2—Suprasternal • T3—Spine of scapula • T7—Inferior angle of the scapula • T9—Xiphoid process • L1—Transpyloric plane • L3—Subcostal plane • L4—Supracristal plane
Parts of the Typical Vertebra
Body Vertebral arch • Pedicles • Superior and inferior articulating facet • Transverse process • Lamina • Spinous process • Superior and inferior vertebral notch • Intervertebral foramen

Vertebra	Characteristics
Cervical	Covered in osteology chapter
Thoracic	12 in number Costal facets on body and transverse process Long spinous processes Heart-shaped body
Lumbar	5 in number Thick body No costal facets
Sacrum	5 in number Fused Four pairs of sacral foramina Sacral hiatus
Coccyx	3–5 in number (typically 4) Fused Mainly provides muscle and ligament attachment

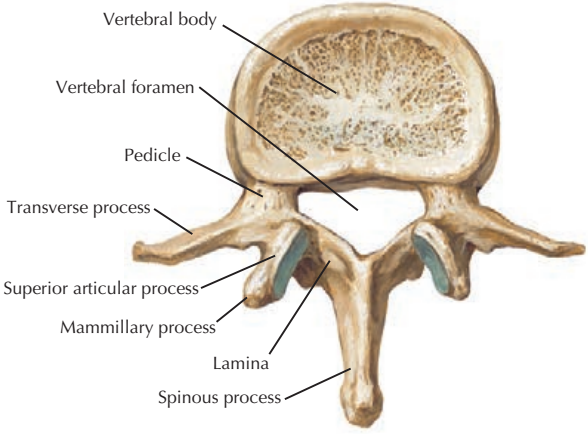
WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

BACK *CONTINUED*

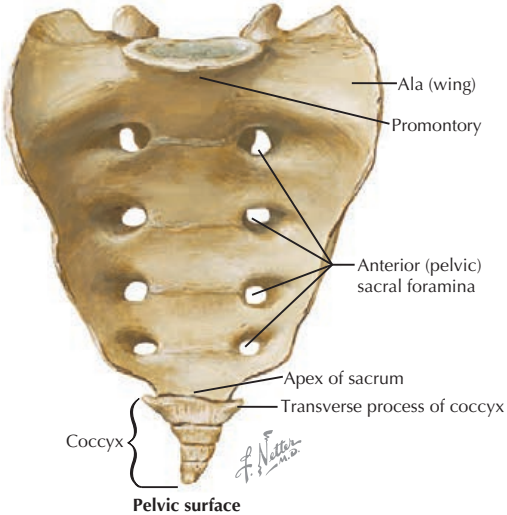
Left lateral view



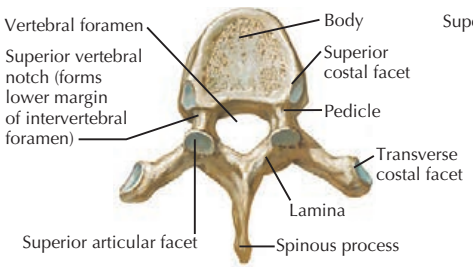
L2 vertebra: superior view



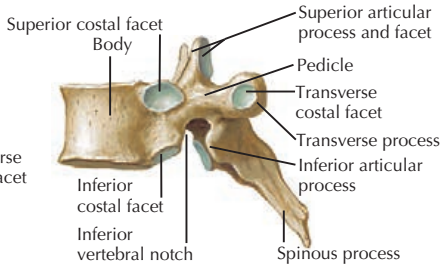
Anterior inferior view



T6 vertebra: superior view



T6 vertebra: lateral view



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

THORAX

BONES OF THORAX

Overview

Landmarks Include:
- Midclavicular
- Midaxillary
- Scapular
- Suprasternal notch
- Sternal angle

The thoracic apertures:
- Superior thoracic aperture
  - Boundaries
    - Body of T1 vertebra
    - 1st pair of ribs and cartilages
    - Manubrium (superior portion)
  - Major contents
    - Trachea
    - Esophagus
    - Great vessels and nerves
    - Lungs
- Inferior thoracic aperture
  - Boundaries
    - Body of T12 vertebra
    - 12th pair of ribs
    - Costal margins
    - Xiphoid process

Sternum

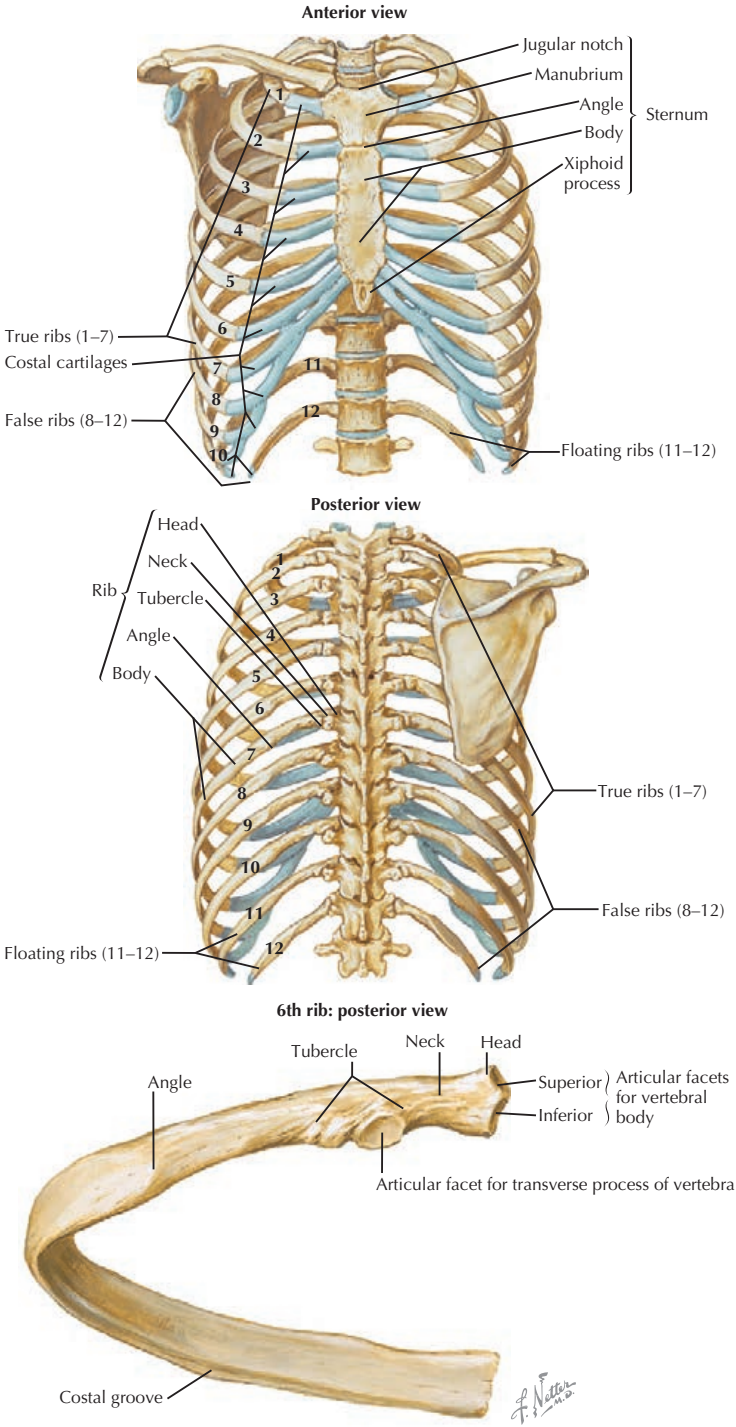
Parts	Characteristics
Manubrium	Superior part of sternum Quadrangular in shape Superior border is known as jugular notch or suprasternal notch (vertebral level T2) Articulates with: • Clavicle • 1st costal cartilage • 2nd costal cartilage • Body of Sternum
Body	Longest part of sternum Articulates with 2nd through 7th rib Articulates with: • Manubrium at manubriosternal joint (vertebral level T4) • Xiphoid process (vertebral level T9)
Xiphoid process	Cartilaginous process, which ossifies

Ribs

Type	Characteristics
Vertebrosternal	Ribs 1–7 Known as "true ribs" because they articulate with the sternum through the costal cartilage Articulate with the sternum through the costal cartilage
Vertebrochondral	Ribs 8–10 Known as "false ribs" because they do not possess a direct articulation to the sternum These ribs articulate to a common cartilaginous connection to the sternum Ribs 11–12
Vertebral	Most commonly known as "floating ribs" They are "false ribs" because they do not possess a direct articulation to the sternum Do not articulate with the sternum and end in the posterior abdominal wall

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

THORAX *CONTINUED*



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

ABDOMEN

BONES OF ABDOMEN

Overview

Formed by 3 structures:
- Sacrum
- Coccyx
- Os coxae (hip bone)
  - Ilium
  - Ischium
  - Pubis

Inferior portion of abdomen that provides connection of the spinal column to the femur
Functions include:
- Bear weight
- Locomotion
- Posture
- Provide muscle and ligament attachment

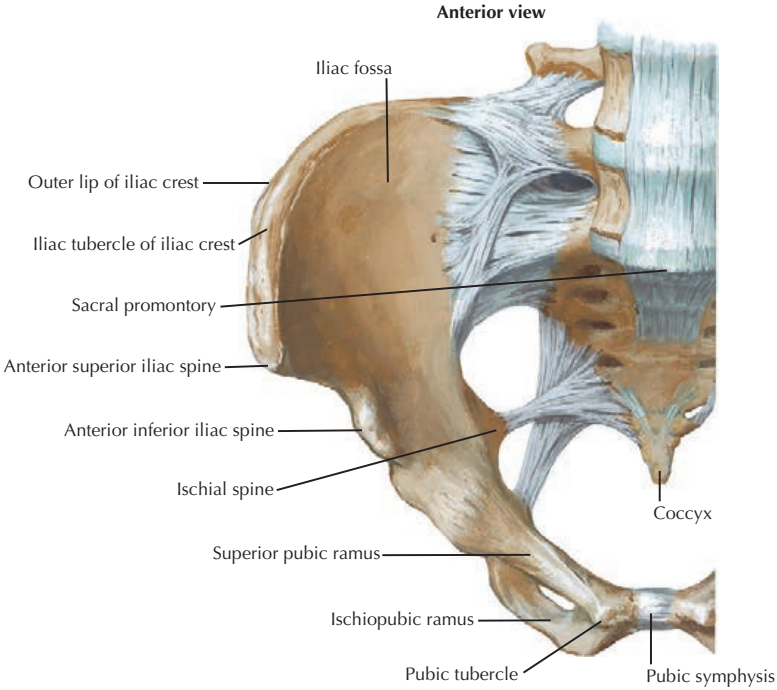
Has a pelvic cavity that is divided by the pelvic brim into:
- False pelvis—superior to pelvic brim and contains inferior portion of abdominal cavity
- True pelvis—inferior to pelvic brim and contains the:
  - Bladder
  - Terminal colon and rectum
  - Some reproductive and accessory reproductive organs:
    - Prostate
    - Seminal vesicles
    - Vas deferens
    - Uterus with uterine tubes and ovary
    - Vagina

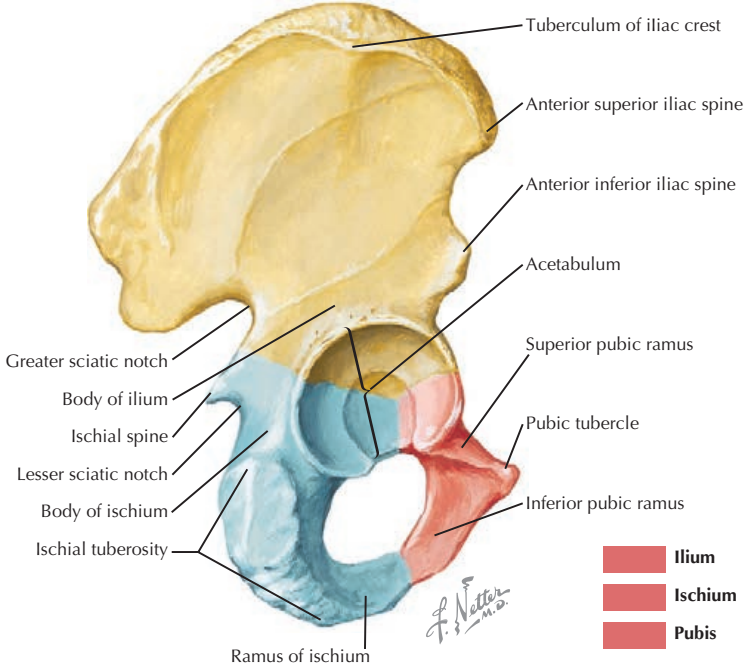
Os Coxae

Parts	Characteristics
Ilium	Largest part of the hip bone Comprised of the: • Ala (wing) • Body Provides muscle and ligament attachments
Ischium	Most posterior and inferior portion of the hip bone Comprised of the: • Body • Superior ischial ramus • Inferior Ischial ramus Provides muscle and ligament attachments
Pubis	Most anterior portion of the hip bone Comprised of the: • Superior pubic ramus • Inferior pubic ramus Provides muscle and ligament attachment Right and left hip bones articulate at the pubic symphysis

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

ABDOMEN *CONTINUED*

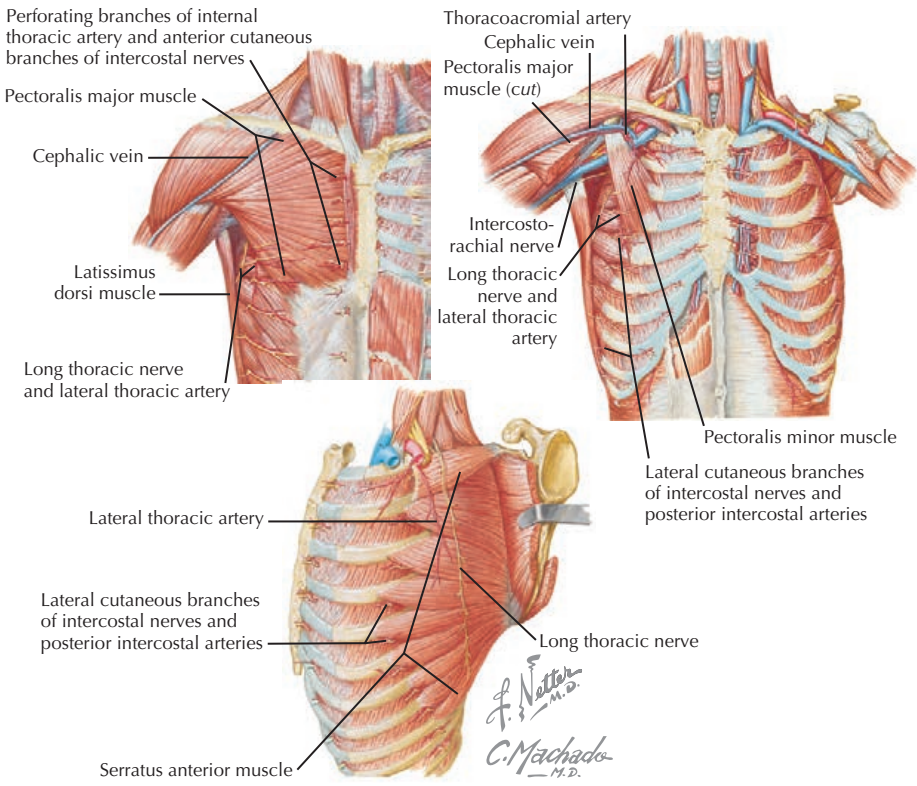




WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

UPPER LIMB

MUSCLES OF PECTORAL REGION				
Muscle	**Origin**	**Insertion**	**Actions**	**Nerve Supply**
Pectoralis major	Clavicular head • Clavicle (medial half) Sternocostal head • Anterior surface of sternum • Upper 6 costal cartilages	Lateral lip of intertubercular groove	Flexion of humerus Adduction of humerus Medial rotation of humerus	Medial pectoral n. Lateral pectoral n.
Pectoralis minor	Ribs 3–5	Coracoid process	Protraction of scapula Aids in stabilization of scapula	Medial pectoral n.
Serratus anterior	Ribs 1–8	Medial border of scapula	Protraction of scapula Rotates the scapula Aids in stabilization of the scapula	Long thoracic n.
Subclavius	1st rib and 1st costal cartilage	Inferior surface of clavicle	Aids in depressing lateral part of clavicle	N. to subclavius



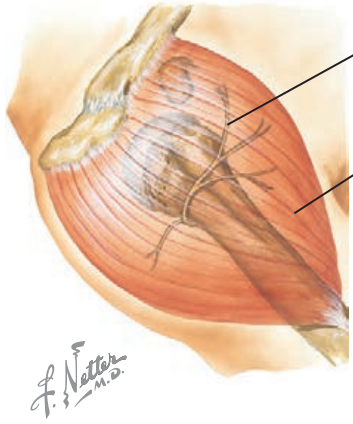
WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

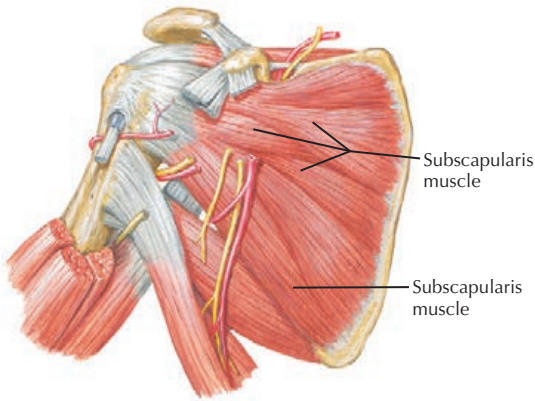
UPPER LIMB *CONTINUED*

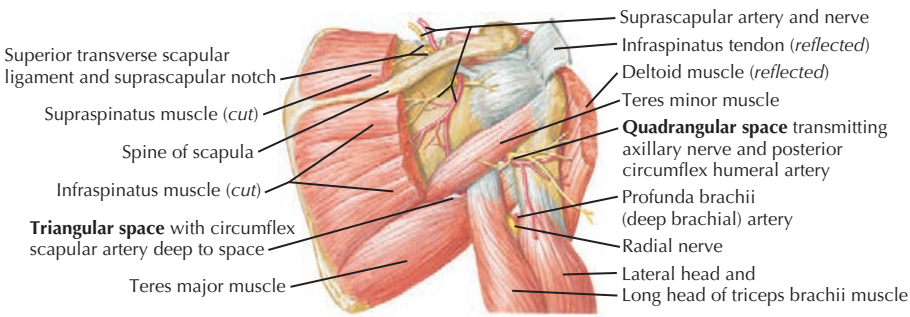
MUSCLES OF SHOULDER				
Muscle	**Origin**	**Insertion**	**Actions**	**Nerve Supply**
Deltoid	• Lateral 1/3rd of clavicle • Acromion • Spine of scapula	Deltoid tuberosity	• Abduction of humerus • Anterior fibers aid in flexion of humerus and medial rotation of humerus • Posterior fibers aid in extension of humerus and lateral rotation of humerus	Axillary n.
Teres major	Inferior angle of posterior scapula	Medial lip of intertubercular groove	• Adduction of humerus • Medial rotation of humerus	Lower subscapular n.
Supraspinatus	Supraspinous fossa	Greater tubercle (superior facet)	• Abduction of humerus (1st 10–15 degrees) • Aids in holding humerus in glenoid cavity	Suprascapular n.
Infraspinatus	Infraspinous fossa	Greater tubercle (middle facet)	• Lateral rotation of humerus • Aids in holding humerus in glenoid cavity • Aids in adduction	Suprascapular n.
Teres minor	Lateral border of scapula	Greater tubercle (inferior facet)	• Lateral rotation of humerus • Aids in holding humerus in • Aids in adduction	Axillary n.
Subscapularis	Subscapular fossa	Lesser tubercle	• Medial rotation of humerus • Aids in holding humerus in glenoid cavity • Aids in adduction	Upper subscapular n. Lower subscapular n.

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

UPPER LIMB *CONTINUED*





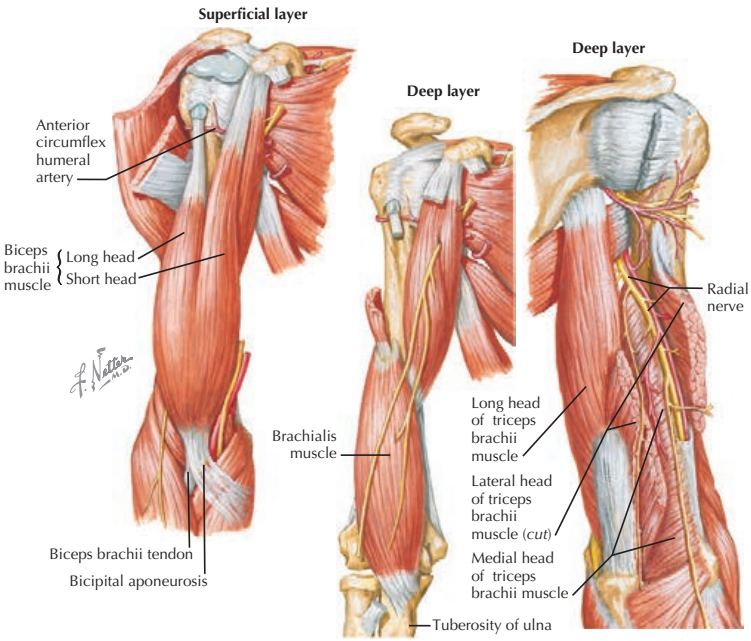


WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Muscles

UPPER LIMB *CONTINUED*

MUSCLES OF BRACHIUM				
Muscle	**Origin**	**Insertion**	**Actions**	**Nerve Supply**
Biceps brachii	Long head • Supraglenoid tubercle Short head • Coracoid process	Radial tuberosity of radius	• Flexion of antebrachium • Supination of antebrachium • Aids in flexion of brachium	Musculocutaneous n.
Brachialis	Anterior surface of distal portion of humerus	• Coronoid process of ulna • Ulnar tuberosity	Flexion of antebrachium	Musculocutaneous n.
Coracobrachialis	Coracoid process	Middle third of medial humerus	• Flexion of brachium • Adduction of brachium	Musculocutaneous n.
Triceps brachii	Long head • Infraglenoid tubercle Lateral head • Superior to radial groove Medial head • Inferior to radial groove	Olecranon of ulna	• Extension of antebrachium • Long head aids in slight adduction of brachium	Radial n.
Anconeus	Lateral epicondyle of humerus	Olecranon of ulna	Extension of antebrachium	Radial n.



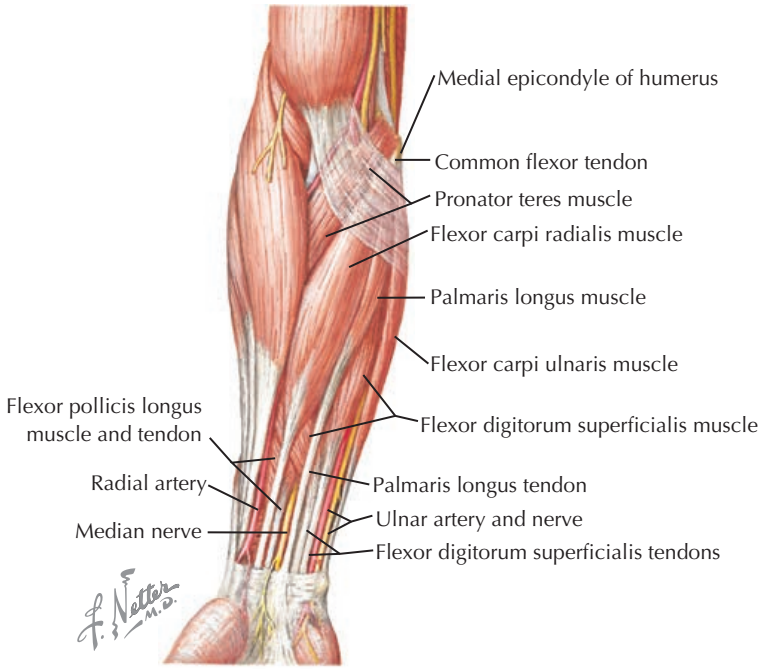
WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

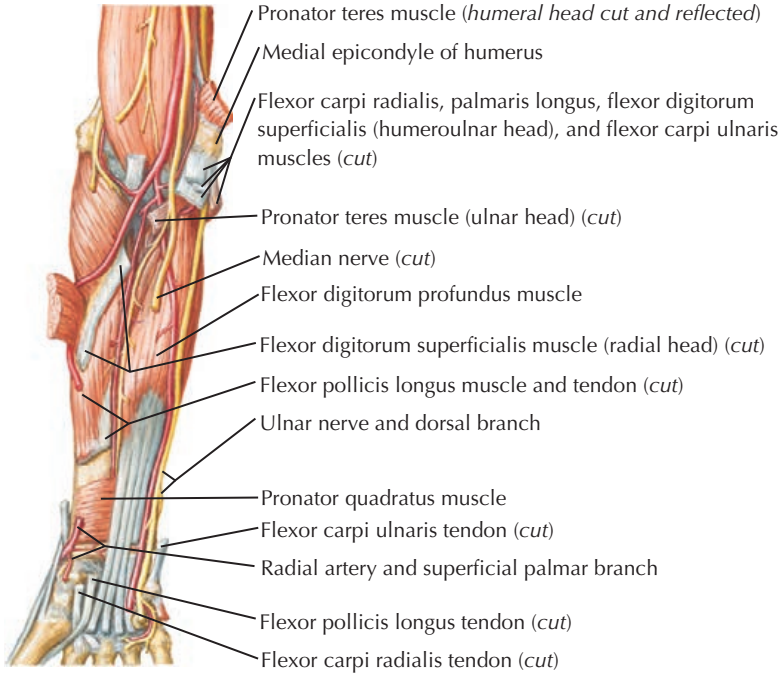
UPPER LIMB *CONTINUED*

MUSCLES OF FLEXOR SURFACE OF ANTEBRACHIUM				
Superficial Group				
Muscle	**Origin**	**Insertion**	**Actions**	**Nerve Supply**
Pronator teres	Medial epicondyle of humerus Coronoid process of ulna	Lateral surface of radius (middle portion)	Pronation of antebrachium Weak flexion of antebrachium	Median n.
Flexor carpi radialis	Medial epicondyle of humerus	Base of 2nd and 3rd metacarpal	Flexion of antebrachium (little) Flexion of hand Abducton of hand	Median n.
Palmaris longus	Medial epicondyle of humerus	Palmar aponeurosis	Weak flexion of antebrachium Flexion of hand	Median n.
Flexor carpi ulnaris	Medial epicondyle of humerus Posterior ulna	Pisiform Hamate (hook) Base of 5th metacarpal	Weak flexion of antebrachium Flexion of hand Adducton of hand	Ulnar n.
Intermediate Group				
Flexor digitorum superficialis	Medial epicondyle of humerus Coronoid process Radius (oblique line)	Middle phalanges of digits 2–5	Weak flexion of antebrachium Flexion of hand Flexion of proximal interphalangeal joints of digits 2–5	Median n.
Deep Group				
Flexor digitorum profundus	Anterior and medial surface of ulna Interosseous membrane	Base of distal phalanges of digits 2–5	Flexion of hand Flexion of distal interphalangeal joints of digits 2–5	Anterior interosseous of the median n. (lateral half) Ulnar n. (medial half)
Flexor pollicis longus	Anterior surface of radius Interosseous membrane	Base of distal phalanx of thumb	Flexion of thumb	Anterior interosseous of the median n.
Pronator quadratus	Anterior surface of distal ulna	Anterior surface of distal radius	Pronation of antebrachium	Anterior interosseous of the median n.

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

UPPER LIMB *CONTINUED*

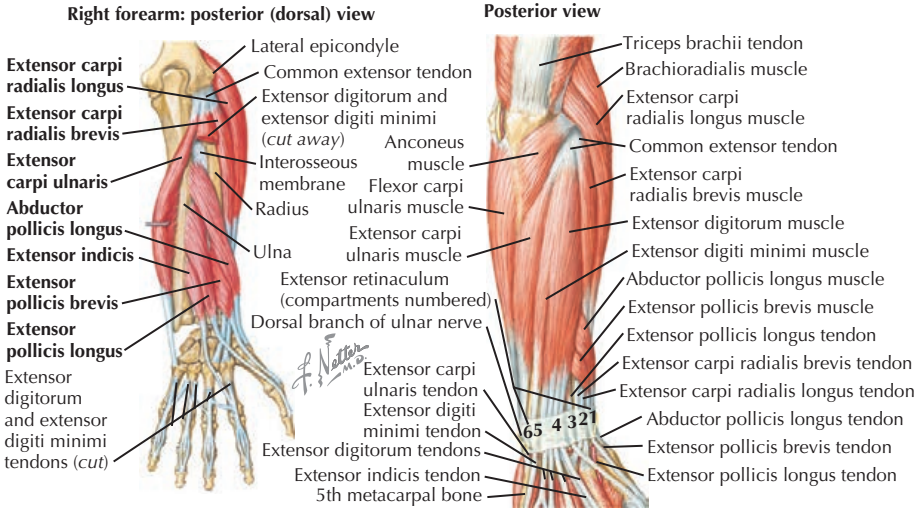




WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

UPPER LIMB *CONTINUED*

MUSCLES OF EXTENSOR SURFACE OF ANTEBRACHIUM				
Muscle	**Origin**	**Insertion**	**Actions**	**Nerve Supply**
Brachioradialis	Lateral supracondylar ridge of humerus	Styloid process of distal radius	Flexion of antebrachium	Radial n.
Extensor carpi radialis longus	Lateral epicondyle of humerus	Base of 2nd metacarpal	Extension of wrist Abduction of wrist Weakly aids in flexion of forearm	Radial n.
Extensor carpi radialis brevis		Base of 3rd metacarpal	Extension of wrist Abduction of wrist	Deep radial n.
			Weakly aids in flexion of forearm	
Extensor digitorum		Joints extensor expansion of digits 2–5	Extension of wrist Extension of digits 2–5	Posterior interosseous n.
Extensor digiti minimi		Joins extensor expansion of the extensor digitorum tendon of proximal phalanx 5th digit	Extension of 5th digit (little finger)	Posterior interosseous n.
Extensor carpi ulnaris	Lateral epicondyle of humerus Posterior ulna	Base of 5th metacarpal	Extension of wrist Adduction of hand	Posterior interosseous n.
Supinator	Lateral epicondyle of humerus Ulna	Radial tubercle Oblique line of radius	Supination	Deep radial n.
Extensor indicis	Posterior ulna Interosseous membrane	Joins extensor expansion of the extensor digitorum of index finger (2nd digit)	Extension of index finger (2nd digit)	Posterior interosseous n.
Abductor pollicis longus	Lateral posterior ulna Interosseous membrane Posterior radius	Base of 1st metacarpal (lateral side)	Abducts 1st digit Adducts wrist	Posterior interosseous n.
Extensor pollicis longus	Posterior ulna Interosseous membrane	Base of distal phalanx of 1st digit	Extension of distal phalanx of 1st digit Helps extend and abduct wrist	Posterior interosseous n.
Extensor pollicis brevis	Posterior ulna Interosseous membrane Posterior radius	Base of proximal phalanx of 1st digit	Extend and abduct 1st digit	Posterior interosseous n.



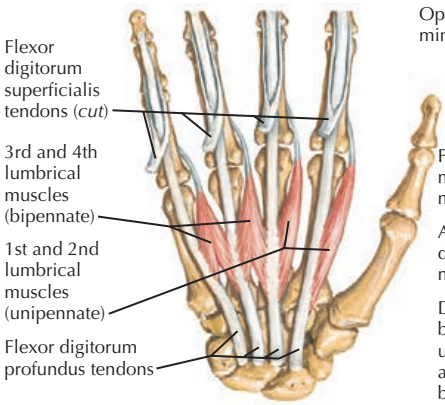
WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

UPPER LIMB *CONTINUED*

MUSCLES OF THE HAND				
Muscle	**Origin**	**Insertion**	**Actions**	**Nerve Supply**
Abductor pollicis brevis	Flexor retinaculum Tubercle of scaphoid Tubercle of trapezium	Base of proximal phalanx of thumb (radial side)	Abduction of thumb Aids in opposition of thumb Aids in extension of thumb	Recurrent branch of median n.
Opponens pollicis	Flexor retinaculum Tubercle of trapezium	1st metacarpal (radial side)	Opposition of thumb	Recurrent branch of median n.
Flexor pollicis brevis		Base of proximal phalanx of thumb (radial side)	Flexion of thumb at metacarpophalangeal joint	
Abductor digiti minimi	Flexor retinaculum Pisiform	Base of proximal phalanx of 5th digit	Abduction of 5th digit (little finger)	Deep branch of ulnar n.
Opponens digiti minimi	Flexor retinaculum Hamulus of hamate	Shaft of 5th metacarpal	Flexion of 5th metacarpal Laterally rotate 5th metacarpal	
Flexor digiti minimi brevis	Flexor retinaculum Hamulus of hamate	Base of proximal phalanx of 5th digit	Flexion of metacarpophalangeal joint of 5th digit	
Palmaris brevis	Flexor retinaculum Palmar aponeurosis	Skin of palm	Raises hypothenal eminence	Superficial branch of ulnar n.
Adductor pollicis • Oblique head • Transverse head	• Capitate, 2nd & 3rd metacarpals • Shaft of 3rd metacarpal	Base of proximal phalanx of thumb	Adduction of thumb	Deep branch of ulnar n.
Lumbrical • 1st and 2nd are unipennate • 3rd & 4th are bipennate	1st and 2nd—Radial side of flexor digitorum profundus tendons of index and middle fingers 3rd—Side of flexor digitorum profundus tendons of middle and ring fingers 4th—Side of flexor digitorum profundus tendons of ring and little fingers	Extensor expansion	Flexion of proximal phalanx Extension of middle and distal phalanges	• Recurrent branch of median n. for 1st & 2nd lumbricals • Deep branch of ulnar n. for 3rd & 4th lumbricals
Dorsal interosseous (bipennate)	1st—Radial side of 2nd metacarpal; ulnar side of 1st metacarpal 2nd—Radial side of 3rd metacarpal; ulnar side of 2nd metacarpal 3rd—Radial side of 4th metacarpal; ulnar side of 3rd metacarpal 4th—Radial side of 5th metacarpal; ulnar side of 4th metacarpal	1st—Radial side of 2nd proximal phalanx; extensor expansion 2nd—Radial side of 3rd proximal phalanx; extensor expansion 3rd—Ulnar side of 3rd proximal phalanx; extensor expansion 4th—Ulnar side of 4th proximal phalanx; extensor expansion	Abduction of fingers from the middle finger Aid in flexion of metacarpophalangeal joint Aid in extension of interphalangeal joints	Deep branch of ulnar n.
Palmar interosseous (unipennate)	1st—Ulnar side of 2nd metacarpal 2nd—Radial side of 4th metacarpal 3rd—Radial side of 5th metacarpal	1st—Ulnar side of proximal phalanx of 2nd digit 2nd—Radial side of proximal phalanx of 4th digit 3rd—Radial side of proximal phalanx of 5th digit	Adduction of fingers toward the middle finger Aid in flexion of metacarpophalangeal joint Aid in extension of interphalangeal joints	

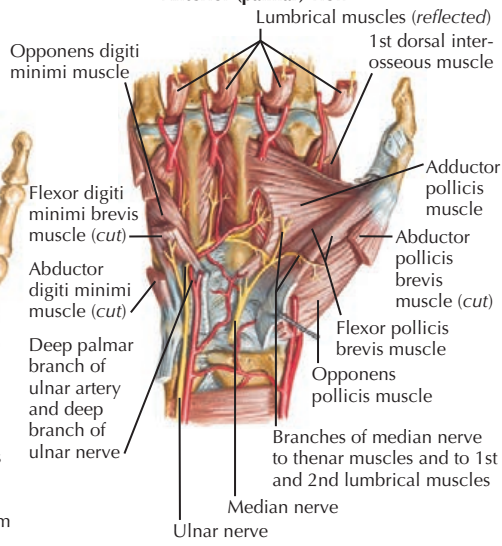
WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

UPPER LIMB *CONTINUED*

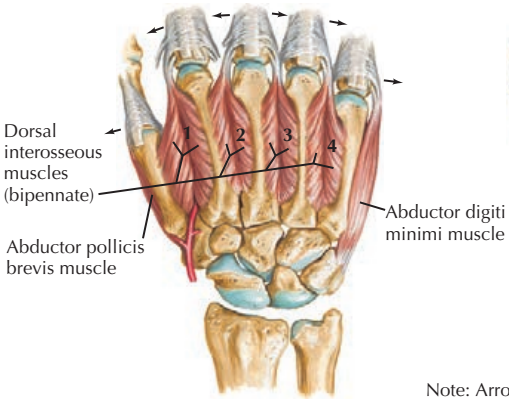


Note: Flexor digitorum superficialis and profundus tendons encased in synovial sheaths are bound to phalanges by fibrous digital sheaths made up of alternating strong annular (A) and weaker cruciform (C) parts (pulleys).

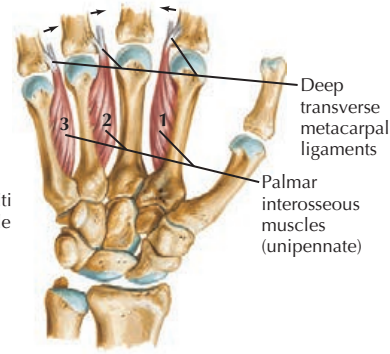
Anterior (palmar) view



Posterior (dorsal) view

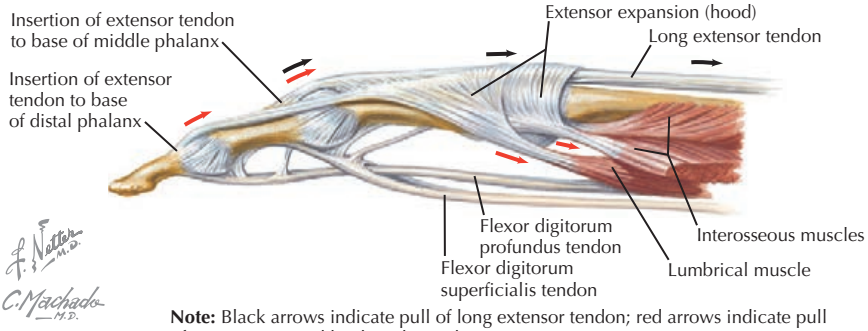


Anterior (palmar) view



Note: Arrows indicate action of muscles.

Finger in extension: lateral (radial) view



Note: Black arrows indicate pull of long extensor tendon; red arrows indicate pull of interosseous and lumbrical muscles.

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Muscles

BACK

OVERVIEW OF MUSCLES OF BACK		
Extrinsic	Superficial	Connect upper limb to trunk
	Intermediate	Superficial respiratory muscles such as serratus posterior
Intrinsic	Superficial	Splenius muscles

	Intermediate	• Spinalis
		  • S. thoracis
		  • S. cervicis
		  • S. capitis
		• Longissimus
		  • L. thoracis
		  • L. cervicis
		  • L. capitis
		• Iliocostalis
		  • I. lumborum
		  • I. thoracis
		  • I. cervicis

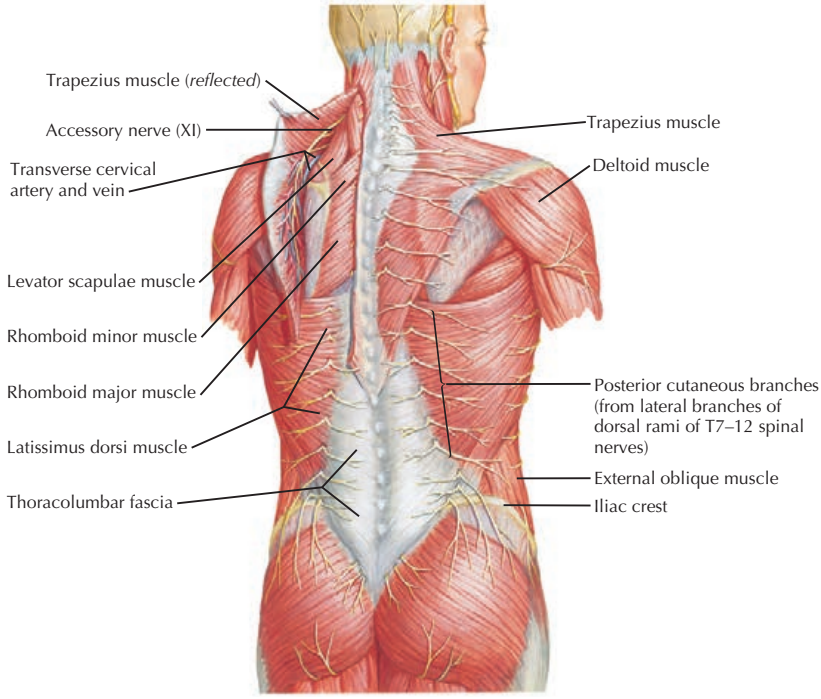
	Deep (transversospinal)	• Semispinalis
		  • S. thoracis
		  • S. cervicis
		  • S. capitis
		• Multifidus
		• Rotatore (long and short)

Others	• Interspinales • Intertansversarii	

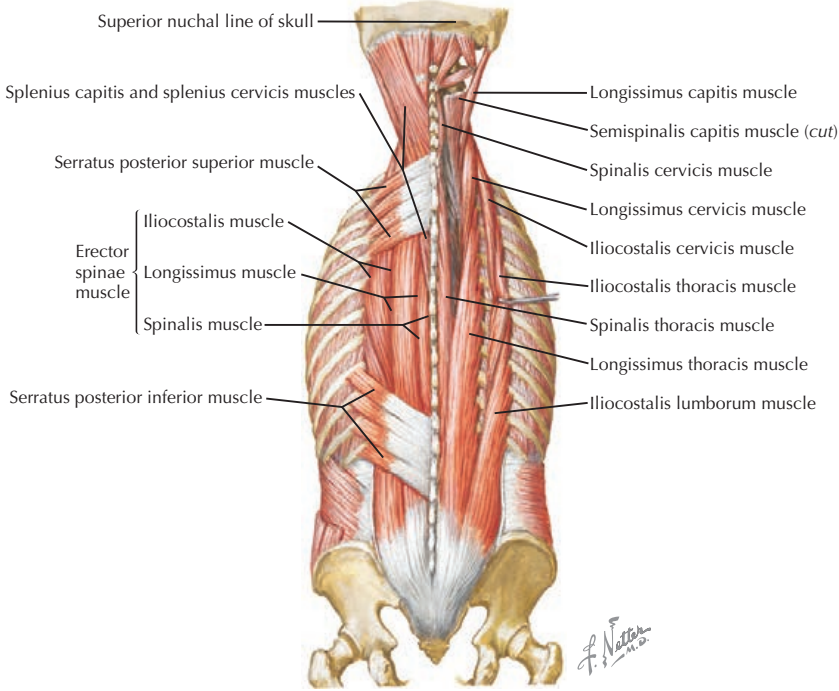
MAJOR EXTRINSIC MUSCLES OF THE BACK				
Muscle	**Origin**	**Insertion**	**Actions**	**Nerve Supply**
Trapezius	External occipital protuberance, ligamentum nuchae, spinous processes of C7-T12	Lateral 1/3 of clavicle, acromion, and spine of scapula	Elevate pectoral girdle Retract pectoral girdle Depress pectoral girdle Rotate scapula	Spinal accessory n.
Latissimus dorsi	Spinous processes of T7–12, thoracolumbar fascia, iliac crest, inferior 3–4 ribs	Floor of intertubercular groove	Extend humerus Adduct humerus Medial rotate humerus	Thoracodorsal n.
Levator scapulae	Transverse processes of C1–4	Superior angle of scapula	Elevates scapula	Dorsal scapular n.
Rhomboid major	Spinous processes of T2–5	Medial border of scapula below the spine of the scapula	Retracts scapula Helps rotate scapula	Dorsal scapular n.
Rhomboid minor	Ligamentum nuchae, spinous processes of C7-T1	Medial border at the level of the spine of the scapula	Retracts scapula Helps rotate scapula	Dorsal scapular n.

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

BACK *CONTINUED*



Intermediate layers

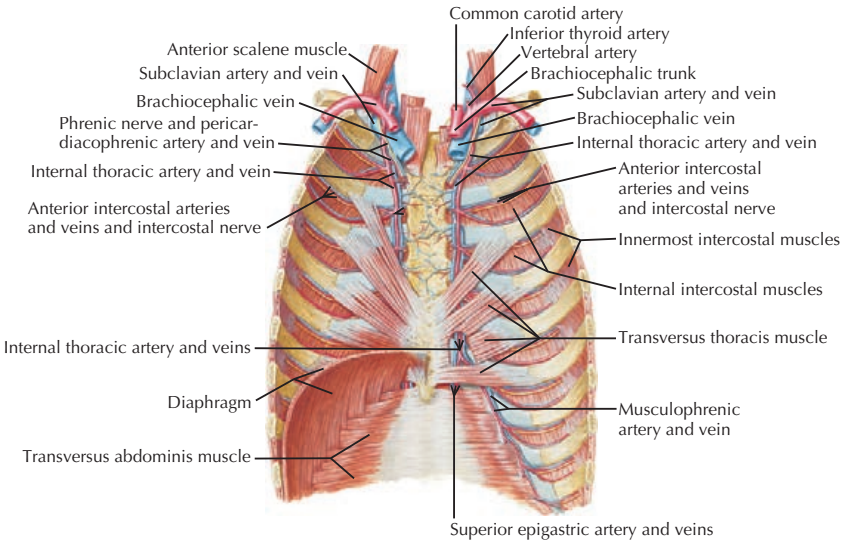


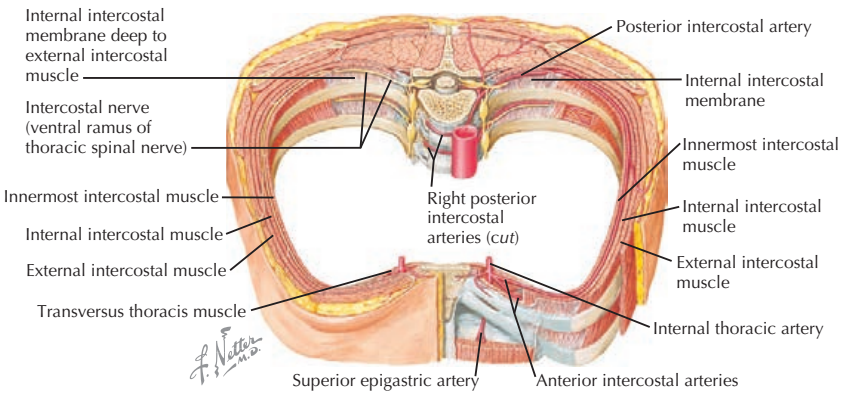
WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Muscles

THORAX

Muscle	Origin	Insertion	Actions	Nerve Supply
External intercostal	Inferior border of ribs	Upper border of ribs	Extend from tubercles to angles of ribs and aid in respiration by elevating ribs for inspiration	Intercostal n. in intercostal space
Internal intercostal	Inferior border of ribs	Upper border of ribs	Extend from sternum to cartilages and aid in respiration by depressing ribs for exhalation	Intercostal n. in intercostal space
Transversus thoracis	Posterior body of sternum and xiphoid	Inferior border of costal cartilages of ribs 2–6	Depresses ribs	Intercostal n. in intercostal space
Innermost intercostal	Inferior border of ribs	Upper border of ribs	Aid in respiration by depressing ribs for exhalation	Intercostal n. in intercostal space
Subcostal	Near angle of rib in lower thorax	2 or 3 ribs inferior	Helps raise ribs	Intercostal n. in intercostal space





WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

ABDOMEN

Muscle	Origin	Insertion	Actions	Nerve Supply
External oblique	Ribs 5–12	Muscular • Anterior half of iliac crest Aponeurotic • Xiphoid process • Linea alba • Pubic symphysis, crest and tubercle • Anterior superior iliac spine	Compresses abdomen Flexes abdomen Rotates trunk to contralateral side	Ventral rami of T7–T12

Internal oblique	Thoracolumbar fascia, anterior 2/3 of Iliac crest, lateral 2/3 of Inguinal ligament	Muscular
		• Ribs 10–12
		Aponeurotic
		• Above arcuate line—Splits to form rectus sheath
		  • Anterior rectus sheath
		  • Posterior rectus sheath
		• Below arcuate line
		  • Forms conjoint tendon
		  • Anterior rectus sheath
			Compresses abdomen
			Flexes abdomen
			Rotates trunk to ipsilateral side
				Ventral rami of T7–L1

Transversus abdominis	Thoracolumbar fascia, anterior 2/3 of Iliac crest, lateral 1/3 of inguinal ligament, lower 6 costal cartilages	Aponeurotic
		• Above arcuate line
		  • Forms posterior rectus sheath
		• Below arcuate line
		  • Forms conjoint tendon
		  • Anterior rectus sheath
			Compresses abdomen	Ventral rami of T7–L1

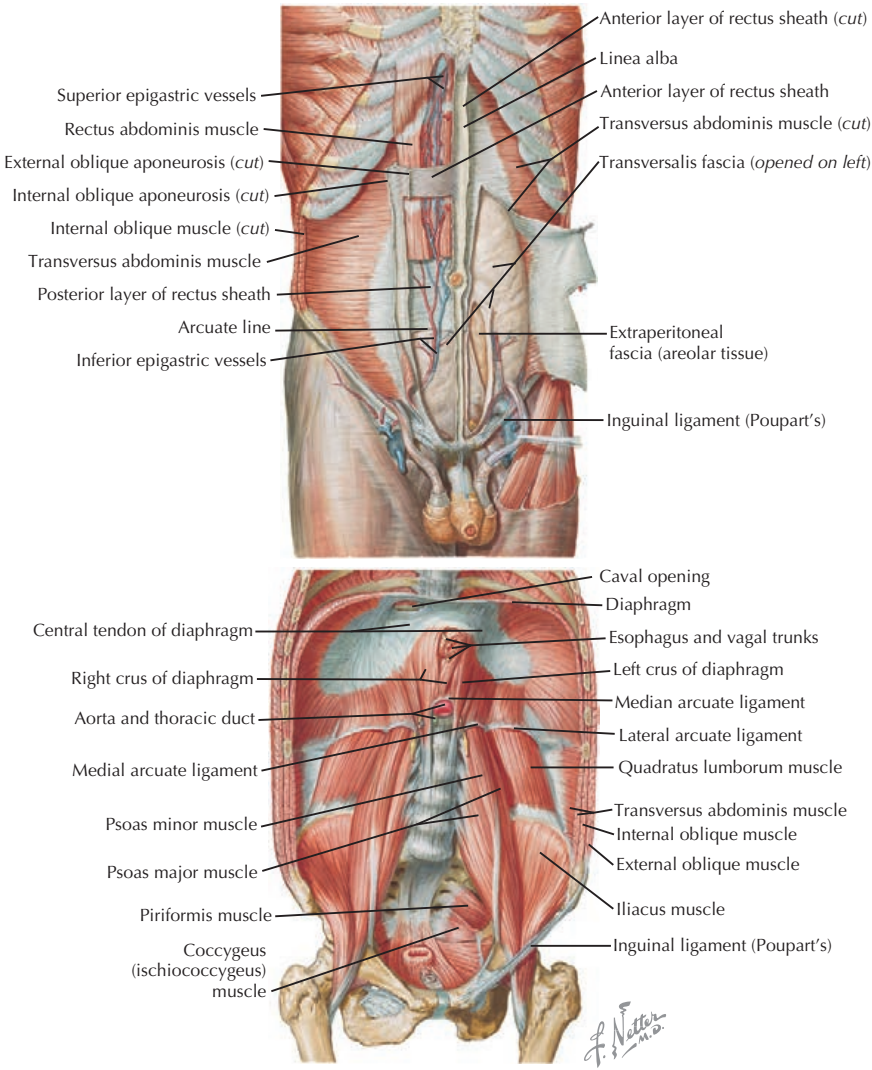
Rectus abdominis	Pubic symphysis, crest and tubercle	Costal cartilages of ribs 5, 6, and 7	Compresses abdomen Flexes abdomen	Ventral rami of T7–T12

Diaphragm	Sternal portion
	• Xiphoid process
	Costal portion
	• Costal cartilages and ribs 7–12
	Lumbar portion
	• Lateral arcuate ligament
	• Medial arcuate ligament
	• Crura
	  • Right crus—L1–3
	  • Left crus—L1 and 2
		Central tendon	Contraction causes central tendon to depress, creating a negative pressure in the thoracic cavity, thus causing inhalation	Phrenic n.

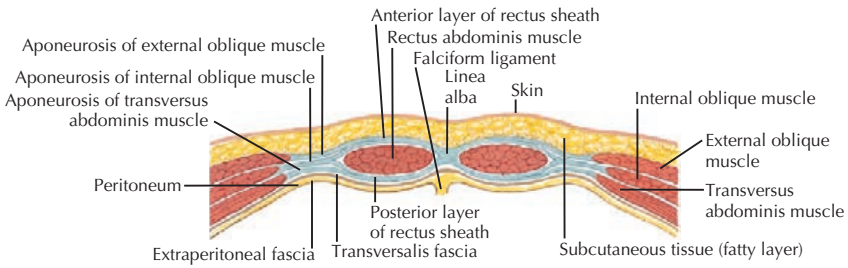
Psoas major	Transverse processes of L1–5 Sides of bodies of T12-L5	Lesser trochanter of femur	Flexes femur Aids in flexing spine Aids in lateral flexion	Ventral rami of L2 and L3
Iliacus	Iliac fossa	Lesser trochanter of femur	Flexes femur	Femoral n.
Quadratus lumborum	Iliac crest	12th rib Transverse processes of L1–4	Lateral flexion	Ventral rami of T12–L4

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

ABDOMEN *CONTINUED*



Section above arcuate line



Aponeurosis of internal oblique muscle splits to form anterior and posterior layers of rectus sheath. Aponeurosis of external oblique muscle joins anterior layer of sheath; aponeurosis of transversus abdominis muscle joins posterior layer. Anterior and posterior layers of rectus sheath unite medially to form linea alba.

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

PLEURAL CAVITY

There are 2 pleural cavities

The cavity is composed of a 2-layered pleural sac that secretes a thin layer of serous fluid

- Visceral layer—lines the lung and fissures
- Parietal layer—lines the wall of the cavity
  - Costal—lines the cavity along the ribs
  - Mediastinal—lines the cavity along the mediastinum
  - Diaphragmatic—lines the cavity along the diaphragm
  - Cervical (cupula)—lines the cavity forming a dome in the ribs opposite the apex of the lung

Pleural reflections—Abrupt lines where the parietal pleura folds back or changes direction

- Vertebral (posterior)—where costal pleura is continuous with the mediastinal pleura at the vertebral column
- Costal (inferior)—where costal pleura is continuous with diaphragmatic pleura
- Sternal (anterior)—where costal pleura is continuous with the mediastinal pleura posterior to sternum

Boundaries

- Anterior midline—6th rib (right) 4th rib (left)
- Midclavicular line—8th rib
- Midaxillary line—10th rib
- Scapular line—12th rib

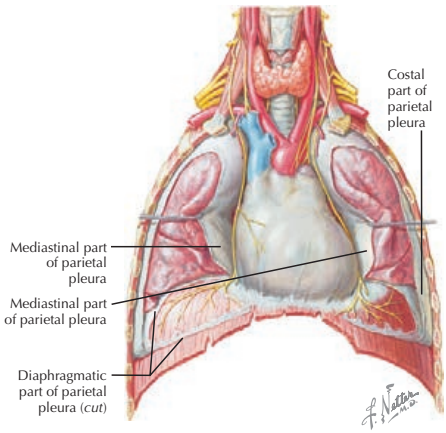
Inferior border of lungs in quiet respiration

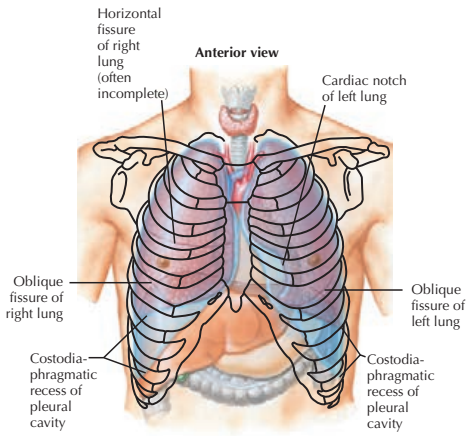
- Anterior midline—6th rib (right) 4th rib (left)
- Midclavicular line—6th rib
- Midaxillary line—8th rib
- Scapular line—10th rib

Pleural recesses—potential spaces in the pleural cavity where parts of the parietal pleura contact one another during quiet respiration

- Costomediastinal—potential space where costal and mediastinal pleurae come together
- Costodiaphragmatic—potential space where costal and diaphragmatic pleurae come together

Pulmonary ligament—a fold created where the mediastinal pleura at the root of the lung come together and extend inferiorly





WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Contents of the Thorax

LUNGS

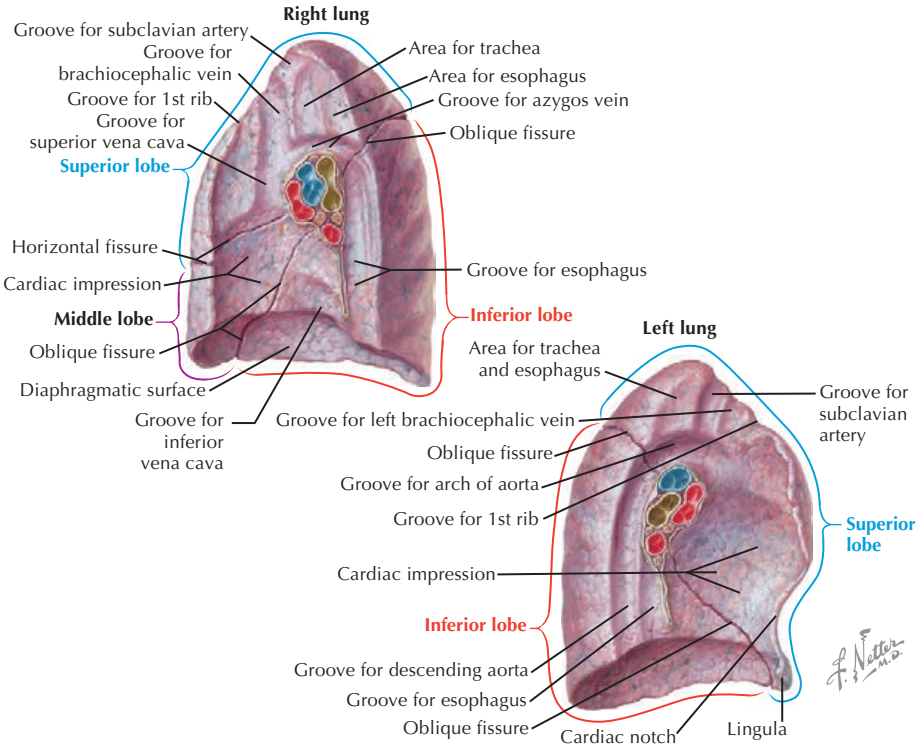
Surface anatomy	• Apex—extends 1 inch into neck • Base—concave area that is located on the convexity of the diaphragm • Costal—large convex area that conforms to the thoracic cavity • Mediastinal—area in contact with the mediastinal pleura • Hilus—area where the structures that make the root of the lung enter and exit

Lobes	• Right lung
	  • Superior
	  • Middle
	  • Inferior
	• Left lung
	  • Superior
	  • Inferior

Air conduction system	• Primary bronchus—travels to lung
	  • Right bronchus—more vertical, wider in diameter, shorter
	  • Left bronchus—less vertical, narrower in diameter, longer
	• Secondary bronchus—travels to lobes
	• Tertiary bronchus—travels to bronchopulmonary segment

Fissures	• Oblique
	  • Right lung—separates superior and middle lobes from inferior lobe
	  • Left lung—separates superior and inferior lobes
	• Horizontal—between superior and middle lobes of right lung beginning at oblique fissure and paralleling the 4th rib anteriorly

Borders	• Anterior • Posterior • Inferior
Structures located on the root of the lung	• Pulmonary vv. • Bronchus • Bronchial vv. • Pulmonary plexus • Lymphatics



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Contents of the Thorax

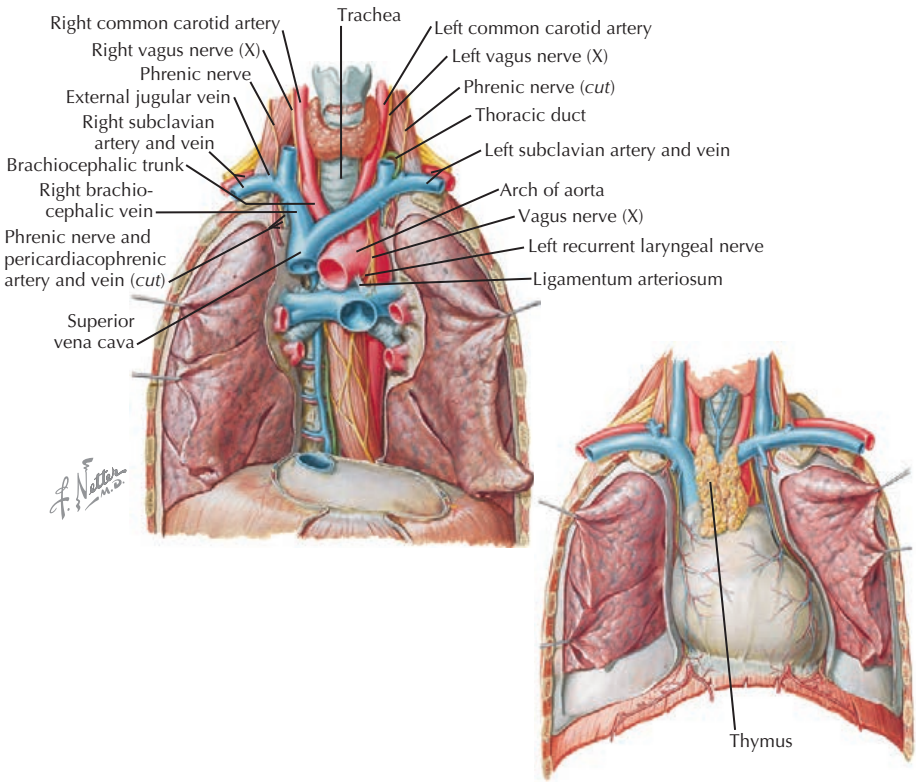
MEDIASTINUM

Region in the middle of the thorax between the two pleural sacs
Subdivided into superior and inferior

SUPERIOR MEDIASTINUM	
Plane of 1st rib to horizontal plane at T4	
Major Contents	
Vessels	• Superior vena cava • Brachiocephalic veins • Arch of the aorta: brachiocephalic artery, left common carotid artery, left subclavian artery • Thoracic duct

Nerves	• Phrenic nerve
	• Vagus nerve
	• Left recurrent laryngeal nerve
	• Plexus:
	  • Cardiac plexus branches (P & S branches)
	  • Pulmonary plexus branches (P & S branches)

Viscera	• Esophagus • Trachea • Thymus (remnants)



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Contents of the Thorax

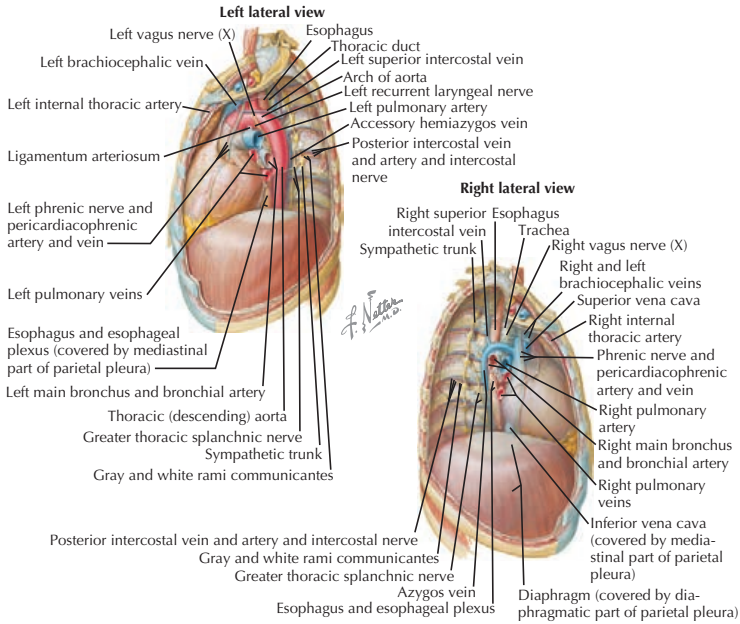
MEDIASTINUM *CONTINUED*

INFERIOR MEDIASTINUM	
Anterior Mediastinum	
Borders	• Lower border of superior mediastinum to diaphragm (T9) • Body of sternum and transversus thoracis to fibrous pericardium
Contents	• No major structures • Remnants of the thymus • Lymph nodes
Middle Mediastinum	
Borders	• Lower border of superior mediastinum to diaphragm (T9/T10) • Anterior and posterior borders are the fibrous pericardium

Contents	• Heart and pericardium
	• Vessels (roots of the great vessels):
	  • Ascending aorta
	  • Pulmonary trunk (with origins of pulmonary arteries)
	  • Superior vena cava
	  • Pericardiacophrenic vv.

Nerves	• Phrenic
Posterior Mediastinum	
Borders	• Lower border of superior mediastinum to diaphragm (T12) • Fibrous pericardium to vertebral column

Contents	• Esophagus
	• Thoracic aorta (and branches):
	  • Posterior intercostal arteries
	  • Bronchial arteries
	  • Esophageal arteries
	• Azygos venous system
	• Hemiazygos and accessory hemiazygos
	• Thoracic duct
	• Cisterna chyli
	• Vagus
	• Esophageal plexus
	• Sympathetic trunk
	  • Greater splanchnic nerve (T5–9)
	  • Lesser splanchnic nerve (T10–11)
	  • Least splanchnic nerve (T12)



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

HEART

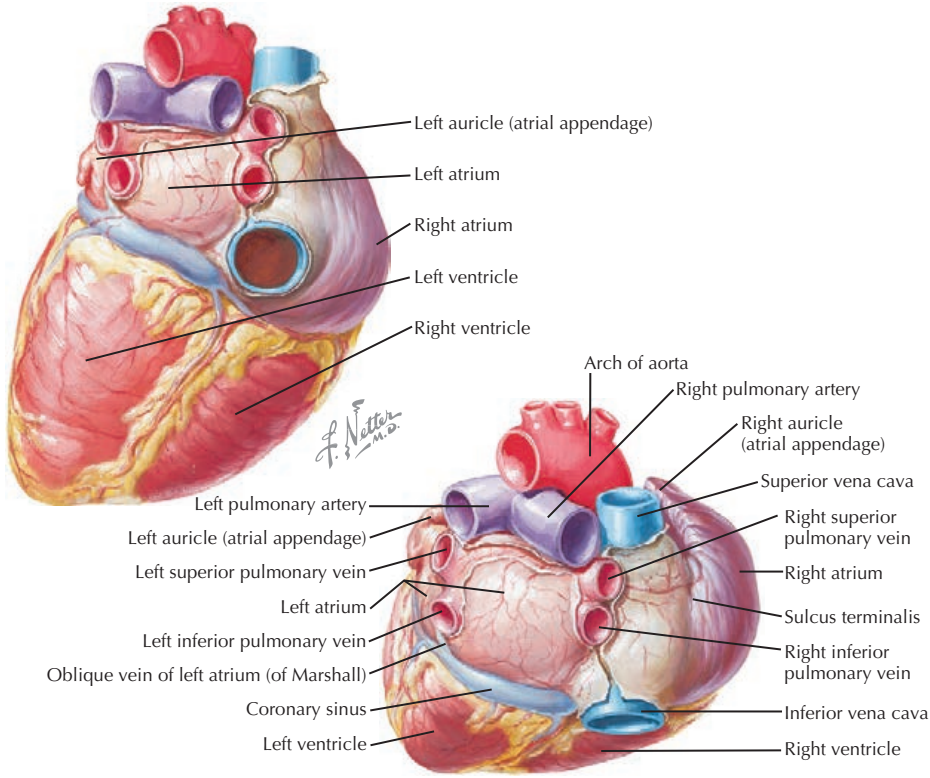
PERICARDIUM

A double-walled fibroserous sac that encloses the heart and the roots of the great vessels
Subdivided into:
• Fibrous pericardium—outer layer
• Serous pericardium—secretes serous fluid
  • Parietal pericardium—lines wall of pericardium
  • Visceral pericardium—lines the heart

SURFACES OF THE HEART	
Inferior or diaphragmatic surface	• Shape—concave • Position—lower border of T8, T9 • Formed by—largely left ventricle, some right ventricle
Posterior surface	• Shape—quadrilateral • Position—opposite 5th–8th thoracic vertebrae • Formed by—largely left atrium, some right atrium

Anterior or sternocostal surface	• Shape—flattened
	• Position—posterior to sternum and costal cartilages 3–6
	• Formed by
	  • Atrial region—largely right atrium and left auricle
	  • Ventricular region—largely right ventricle, some left ventricle

Right surface	• Shape—convex • Position—just lateral to the right border of the sternum • Formed by—right atrium
Left surface	• Shape—convex • Position—1/2 inch to left of manubriosternal junction to apex • Formed by—largely left ventricle, some left auricle



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Contents of the Thorax

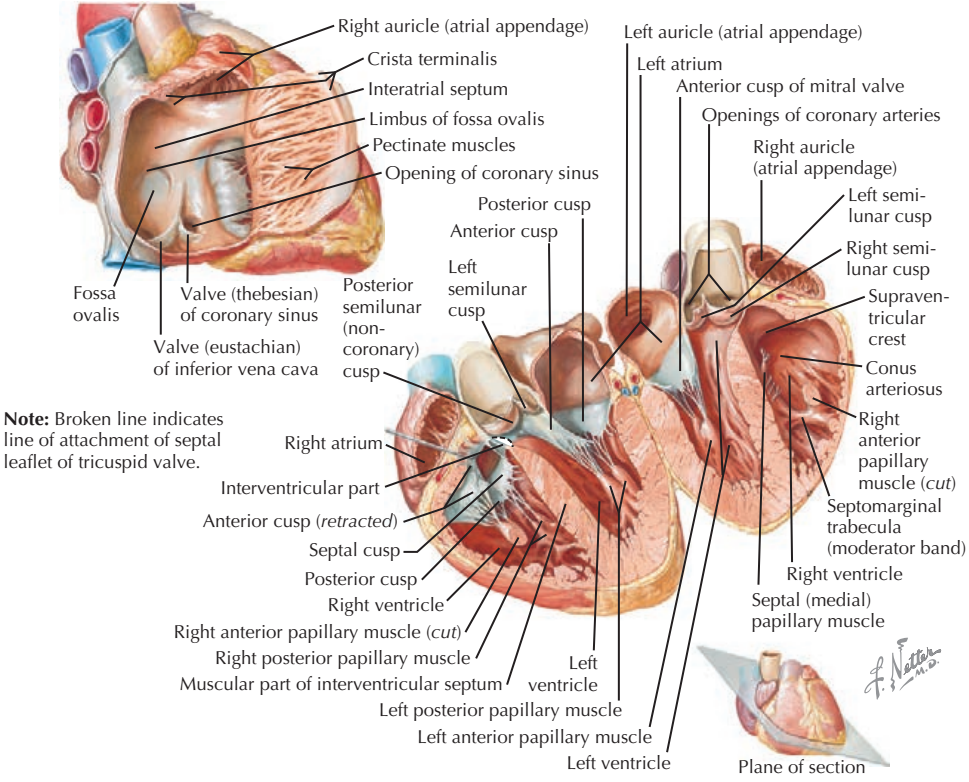
HEART *CONTINUED*

CHAMBERS OF THE HEART	
Right atrium	• Pectinate muscle • Fossa ovalis • Coronary sinus opening • Superior and inferior vena cava opening • Valves of the coronary sinus and inferior vena cava
Right ventricle	• Tricuspid valve • Trabeculae carneae • Papillary muscles (anterior, posterior, and septal) • Chordae tendineae • Septomarginal trabeculae • Conus arteriosus (infundibulum)
Left atrium	• Pectinate muscle in the auricle
Left ventricle	• Bicuspid valve • Trabeculae carneae • Papillary muscles (anterior and posterior) • Chordae tendineae • Membranous part of the interventricular septum

VALVES OF THE HEART

Atrioventricular—close during systole to prevent the backflow of blood into the atrium
- Tricuspid—between right atrium and right ventricle
- Bicuspid (mitral)—between left atrium and left ventricle

Semilunar—close during diastole to prevent the backflow of blood into the ventricles
- Pulmonary—between pulmonary artery and right ventricle
- Aortic—between aorta and left ventricle



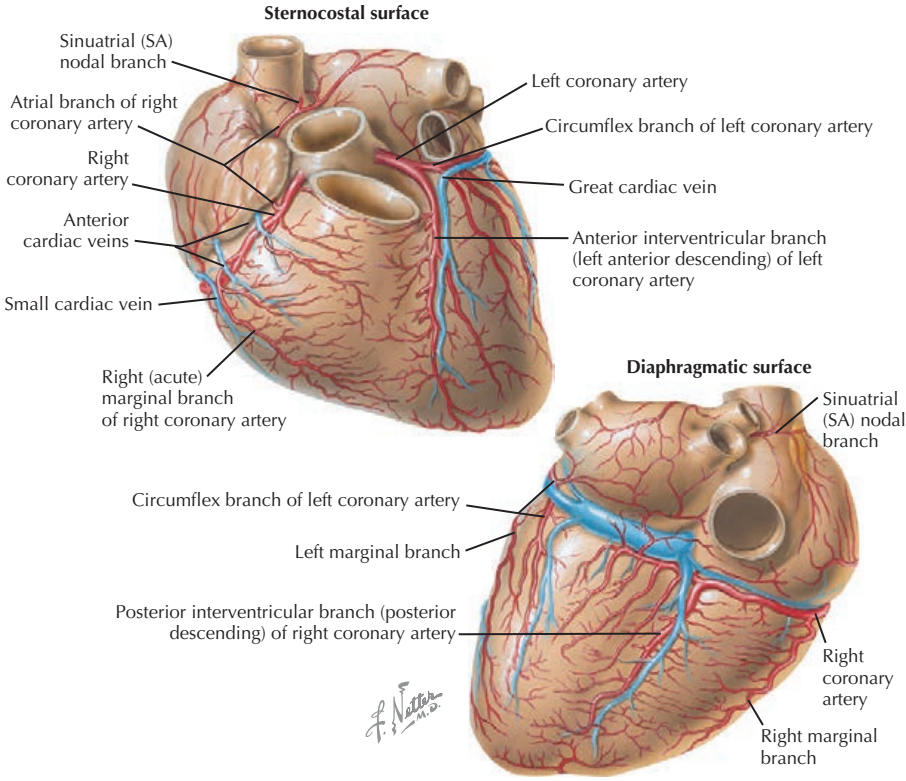
WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

HEART *CONTINUED*

CORONARY CIRCULATION OF THE HEART	

Arterial supply	• Right coronary
	  • Arises from the right aortic sinus
	  • Major branches include:
	  • Conus a.
	  • Marginal
	  • Sinus nodal a.
	  • Posterior interventricular a.
	  • Atrioventricular nodal a.
	• Left coronary
	  • Major branches include:
	  • Anterior interventricular a.
	  • Diagonal a.
	  • Circumflex a.
	  • Marginal a.

Venous supply	• Cardiac veins
	  • Coronary sinus
	  • Great cardiac v.
	  • Middle cardiac v.
	  • Posterior vein of the left ventricle
	  • Oblique vein of the left atrium
	  • Small cardiac v.
	  • Anterior cardiac v.
	• Venae cordis minimae



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

STOMACH

Part of the foregut

There are 4 anatomical parts of the stomach:
- Cardia—where esophagus enters the stomach
- Fundus—created by the superior portion of the greater curvature
- Body—primary central area
- Pylorus—inferior portion that continues to narrow until reaching the pyloric sphincter

The mucosal lining of the stomach are raised elevations known as *gastric rugae*

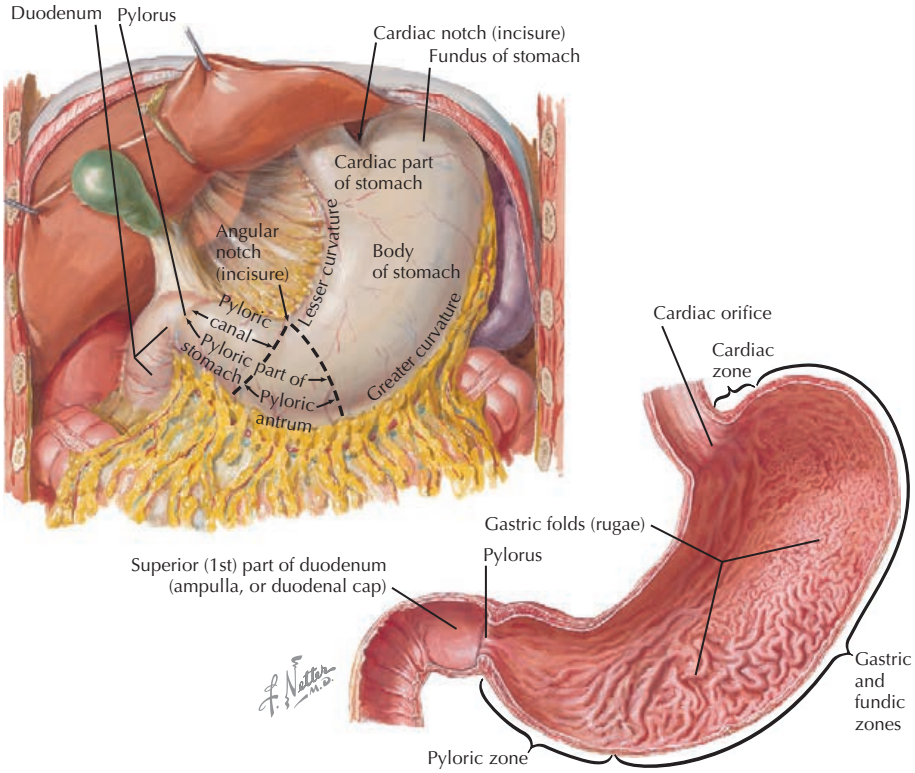
There are 2 major curvatures:
- Greater curvature—provides attachment for some remnants of the dorsal mesogastrium:
  - Gastrophrenic
  - Gastrosplenic
  - Greater omentum
- Lesser curvature—provides attachment for remnants of the ventral mesogastrium:
  - Lesser omentum
    - Hepatogastric portion (hepatoduodenal portion does not attach to the stomach)

There are 2 sphincters associated with the stomach:
- Esophageal—not an anatomical sphincter
- Pyloric—has a thick muscular sphincter

Receives extensive autonomic nerve supply

Is supplied by branches of the celiac artery

Releases pepsin and hydrochloric acid to aid in digestion



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Contents of the Abdomen

DUODENUM

Is the first of the 3 parts of the small intestine:
- Duodenum
- Jejunum
- Ileum

Part of the foregut and midgut

There are 4 anatomical parts of the duodenum:
- 1st part—intraperitoneal, part of foregut
- 2nd part—retroperitoneal, part of foregut
  - Minor duodenal papilla—where accessory pancreatic duct (if present) drains
  - Major duodenal papilla—where pancreas, liver, and gallbladder drain
- 3rd part—retroperitoneal, part of midgut
- 4th part—retroperitoneal, part of midgut

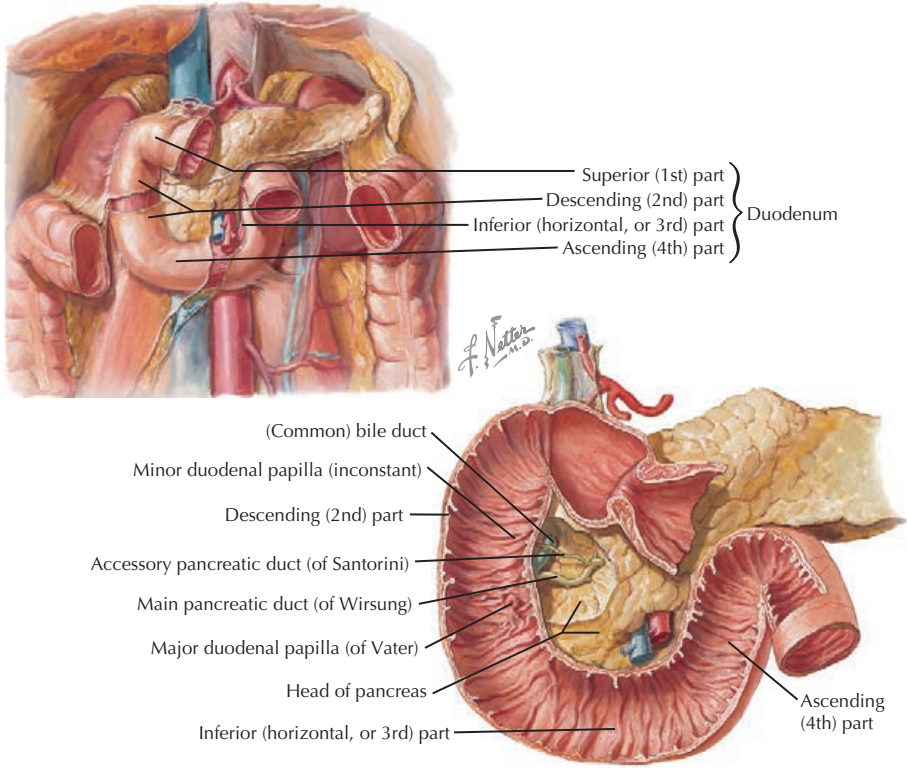
The mucosal lining of the duodenum are raised elevations known as *plicae circulares*

Receives extensive autonomic nerve supply

Is supplied by branches of the celiac and superior mesenteric arteries

Is the portion of the small intestine where the majority of chemical digestion occurs

A major histological feature is the presence of mucus-secreting glands, Brunner's glands



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

JEJUNUM AND ILEUM

Are the final 2 parts of the small intestine:
- Duodenum
- Jejunum
- Ileum

Part of the midgut

Is intraperitoneal

Is suspended by the mesentery proper

The mucosal lining has raised elevations known as *plicae circulares*

Receives extensive autonomic nerve supply

Is supplied by branches of the superior mesenteric artery

JEJUNUM

Is about 7–8 feet in length

Has scattered lymphatic nodules and very few Brunner's glands

Has prominent plicae circulares

Vascular supply has large prominent arterial arcades terminating with long vasa recta

ILEUM

Is about 6–12 feet in length

Ileum has extensive Peyer's patches (lymphatic nodules)

Has fewer plicae circulares than the jejunum

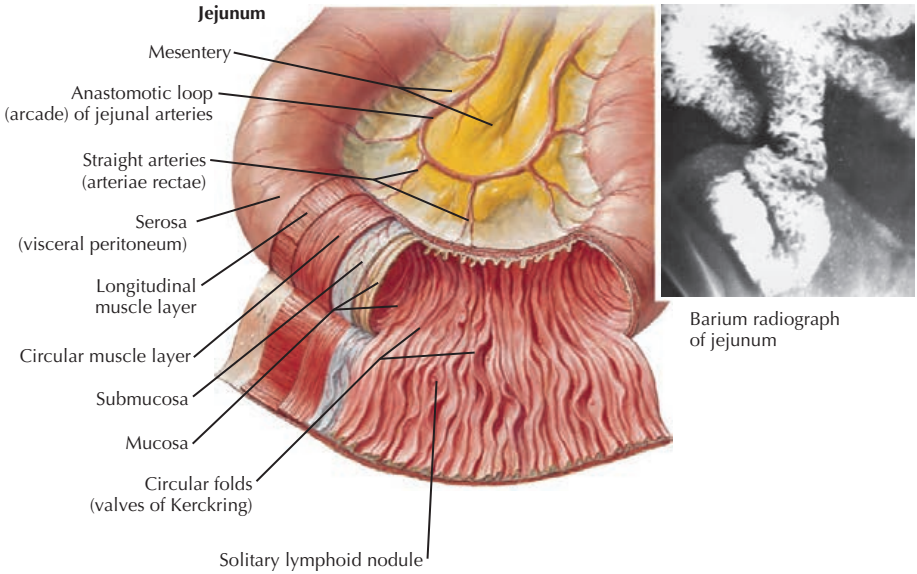
Vascular supply has large smaller layers of arterial arcades terminating with short, compact vasa recta

Ends in the large intestine at the ileocecal valve

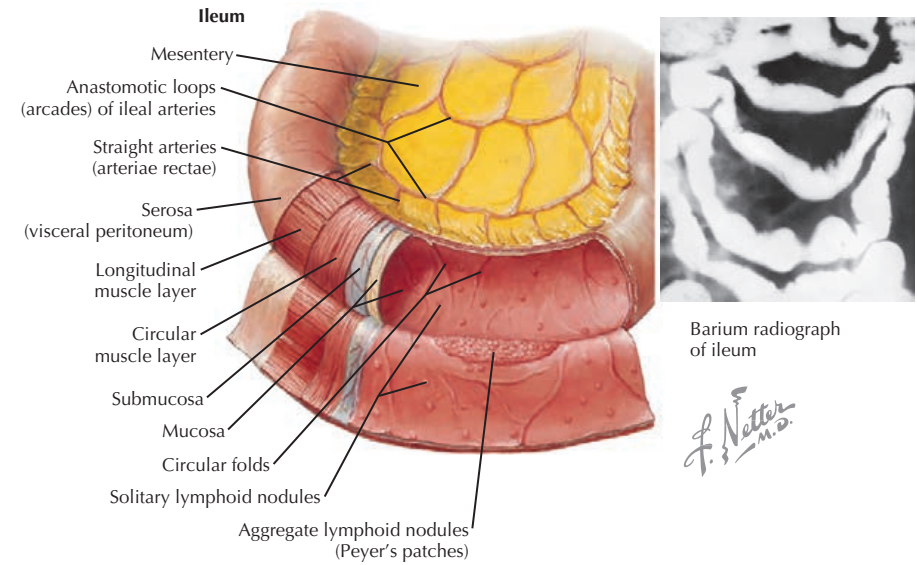
Is the embryological connection to the umbilicus via the vitelline duct; a Meckel's diverticulum is a remnant of the duct in the adult

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

JEJUNUM AND ILEUM *CONTINUED*



Barium radiograph of jejunum



Barium radiograph of ileum

F. Netter M.D.

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

LARGE INTESTINE

Is divided into:
- Cecum with appendix
- Ascending colon
- Transverse colon
- Descending colon
- Sigmoid colon
- Rectum

Has the following characteristic features:
- Taeniae coli—3 separate bands of longitudinal muscle
- Haustra—pouch-like appearance caused by the contraction of the taeniae coli
- Epiploic appendages—small pouches of fat along the peritoneum

Part of the midgut and hindgut

Is intraperitoneal and retroperitoneal

The mucosal lining has raised elevations known as *plicae semilunares*

Receives extensive autonomic nerve supply

Is supplied by branches of the superior mesenteric and inferior mesenteric arteries

Major function is the absorption of water from the indigestible waste and expulsion from the body

CECUM

Is intraperitoneal

Connects ileum to the large intestine at the ileocecal valve

Blind pouch

Appendix is a small (typically around 4 inches) blind tubular intraperironeal structure connected to the cecum

ASCENDING COLON

Is retroperitoneal

Begins at ileocecal valve and ascends

Makes a colic impression on the liver and makes a sharp turn to the left side of the body known as the right colic (hepatic) flexure before continuing as the transverse colon

TRANSVERSE COLON

Is intraperitoneal, suspended by the transverse mesocolon

Longest portion of the large intestine

At the area of the spleen, makes a sharp turn to travel inferiorly, known as the left colic (splenic) flexure before continuing as the descending colon

DESCENDING COLON

Is retroperitoneal

Descends until it ends at the sigmoid colon

Terminal portion of the descending colon is often called the iliac colon because it lies in the iliac fossa

Typically has a smaller diameter than the ascending colon

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

LARGE INTESTINE *CONTINUED*

SIGMOID COLON

Is intraperitoneal, suspended by the sigmoid mesocolon

Begins at the level of the pelvic brim

Travels toward the midline, where it ends at the rectum

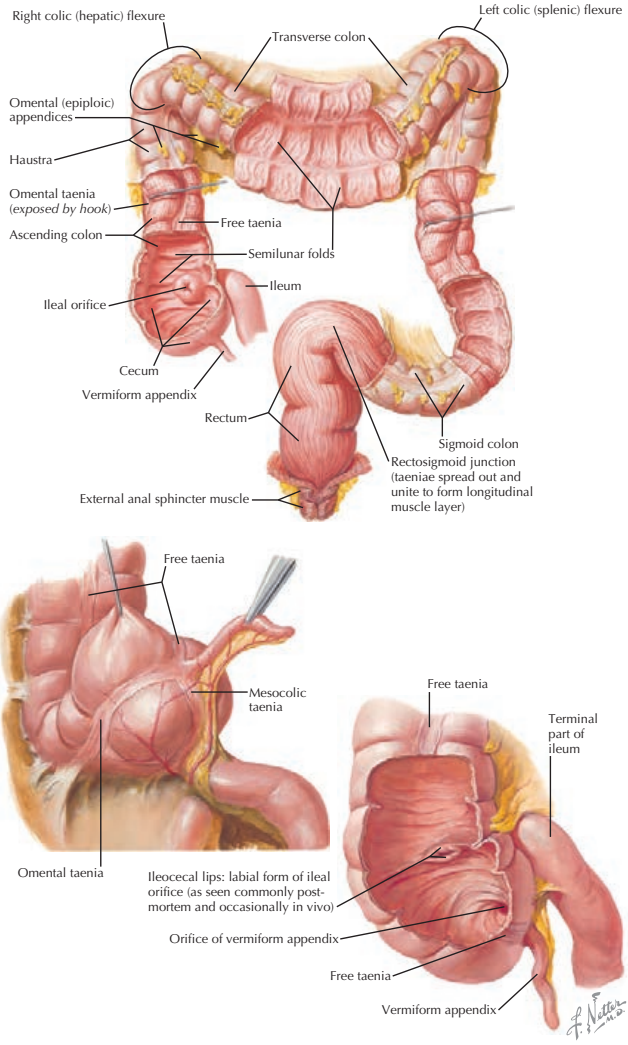
RECTUM

Begins as intraperitoneal, but is retroperitoneal until it passes through the pelvic floor

Is about 4–5 inches in length

Does not have taeniae coli as the separate bands merge to form a complete band of longitudinal muscle at the rectum

Ends at the anus



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

LIVER

Large, multifunctional organ, including:
- Detoxification
- Glycogen storage
- Production of hormones
- Synthesis of plasma proteins
- Production of bile

Divided into 4 anatomical lobes:
- Right—largest lobe
- Caudate—located between fissure for the ligamentum venosum and the inferior vena cava
- Quadrate—located between fissure for the ligamentum teres hepatis (round ligament of the liver) and the gallbladder
- Left—flattened lobe

Is further subdivided into functional segments based on the vascular supply

Is completely covered by visceral peritoneum except an area where the liver connects with the diaphragm, known as the *bare area*

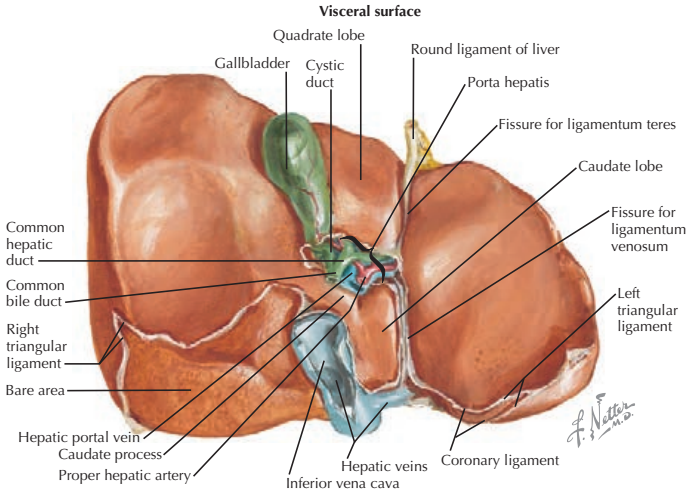
The porta hepatis is the central portion of the liver where the following structures enter and exit:
- Hepatic portal vein—provides 75% of the blood to the liver
- Proper hepatic artery—provides 25% of the blood to the liver
- Common bile duct

Is intraperitoneal

Is supplied by branches of the celiac artery

All remnants of the ventral mesentery attach to the liver:
- Falciform ligament
- Coronary ligament
- Triangular ligament
- Lesser omentum
  - Hepatogastric ligament
  - Hepatoduodenal ligament

The liver is subject to numerous pathologies, including:
- Hepatitis
- Cirrhosis
- Cancer



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

PANCREAS

The pancreas functions as 2 types of glands:
- Endocrine—Islets of Langerhans producing hormones
- Exocrine—Compound tubuloalveolar pancreatic acini producing digestive enzymes

Comprised of 4 major parts:
- Head—is located in the "C" or curve formed by the duodenum; is retroperitoneal
  - Uncinate process—an extension of the head crossed by the superior mesenteric vv.
- Neck—constricted portion of pancreas connecting the head to the body; is retroperitoneal
- Body—largest part of the pancreas separated from the stomach by the omental bursa, is retoperitoneal
- Tail—extends into the lienorenal ligament with the splenic vv. to the spleen

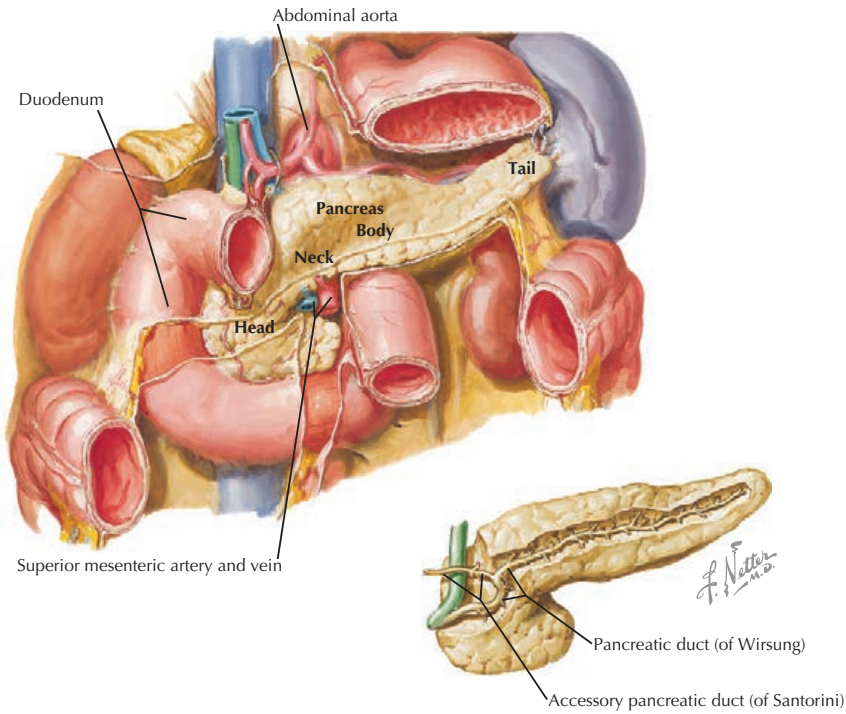
Is part of the foregut

Develops as 2 separate outgrowths from the 2nd part of the duodenum:
- Ventral pancreatic bud—an outgrowth of the hepatic bud
  - Develops into the head and neck of the pancreas
- Dorsal pancreatic bud—a direct outgrowth of the 2nd of the duodenum
  - Develops into the body and tail of the pancreas

Drains into the 2nd part of the duodenum
- Main pancreatic duct—drains into the major duodenal papilla by joining the common bile duct forming the hepatopancreatic ampulla
- Accessory pancreatic duct—drains into the minor duodenal papilla (if present and patent)

Is supplied by branches of the celiac and superior mesenteric arteries

Receives extensive autonomic nerve supply



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

GALLBLADDER AND DUCT SYSTEM

GALLBLADDER

Small intraperitoneal organ

Is part of the foregut

Stores and concentrates bile, which emulsifies fat during digestion

Is located in a fossa on the liver where the linea semilunaris attaches to the ribcage at the 9th costal cartilage

Divided into 3 parts:
- Fundus
- Body
- Neck

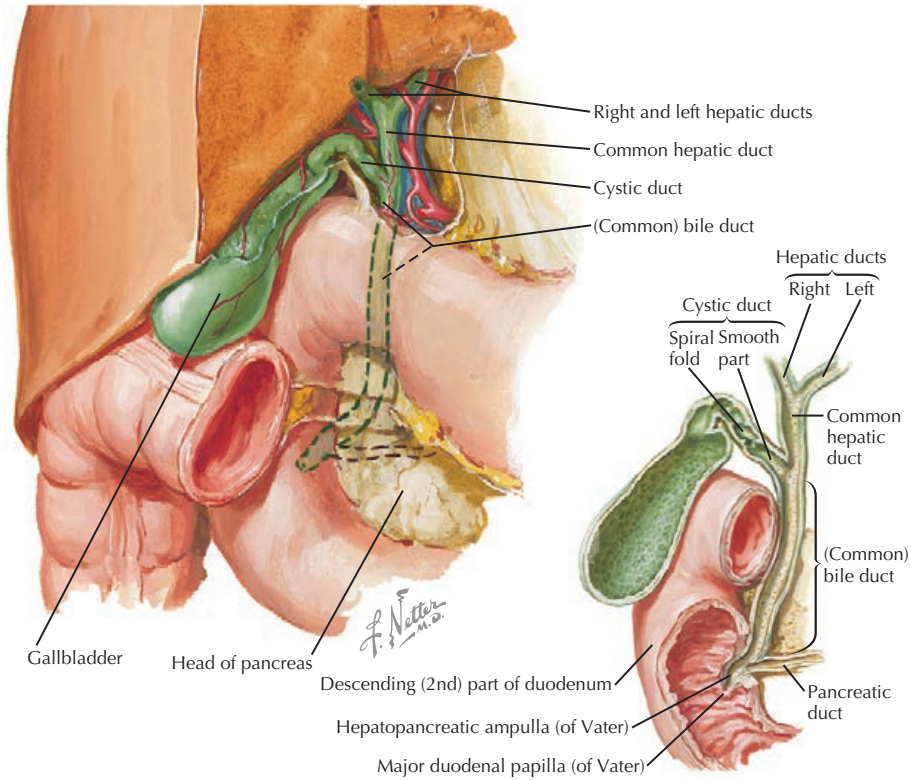
Is supplied by branches of the celiac artery

Receives extensive autonomic nerve supply

DUCT SYSTEM

The cystic duct joins the common hepatic duct to form the common bile duct

The common bile duct joins the main pancreatic duct within the substance of the pancreas to form the hepatopancreatic ampulla, which passes through the wall of the 2nd part of the duodenum into the major duodenal papilla



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

SPLEEN

A lymphatic organ on the left side of the body divided into:
- Red pulp
- White pulp

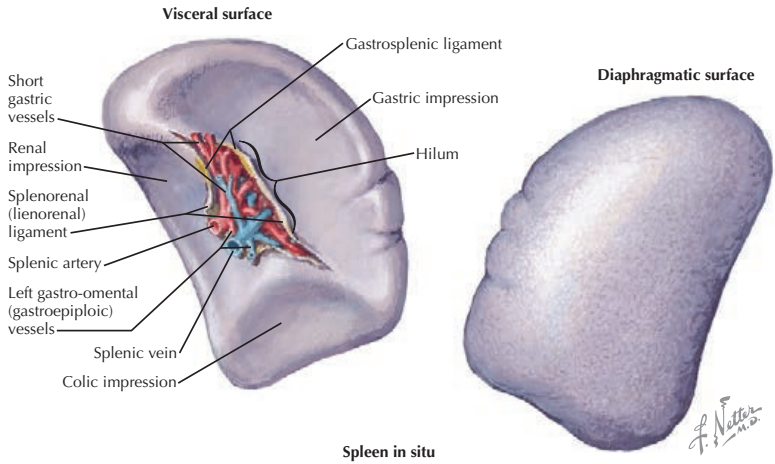
Is intraperitoneal
- Major functions include:
- Storage of red blood cells
- Filters red blood cells
- Removes old red blood cells
- Storage of monocytes

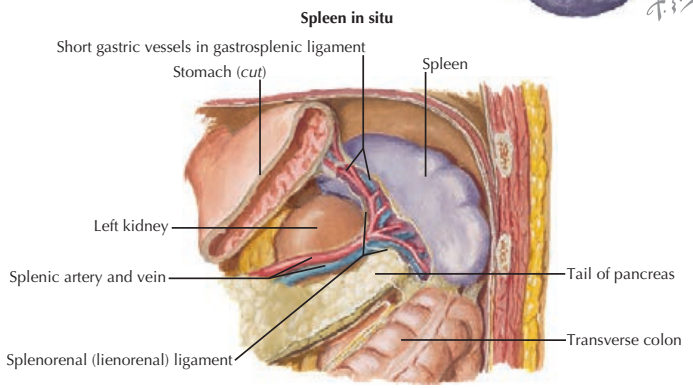
Is not a derivative of the foregut, although receives its arterial supply from branches of the celiac artery

Is located between the 9th and 11th ribs, paralleling the 10th rib

Has contact with 4 organs:
- Stomach
- Large intestine
- Left kidney
- Tail of pancreas

Is suspended by dorsal mesentery of the foregut:
- Lienorenal—contains tail of the pancreas and splenic vv.
- Gastrosplenic—contains short gastric vv. and left gastroepiploic vv.





WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Contents of the Abdomen

KIDNEY, URETER, AND SUPRARENAL GLAND

KIDNEY

Paired organ

Is retroperitoneal

Has multiple functions, including:
- Filter blood
- Regulate electrolytes
- Regulate blood pressure
- Produce hormones

Nephron is function unit

Located between T11–L3, with hilum at L1

Left kidney is slightly larger than the right kidney

Right kidney is slightly inferior to the left kidney due to the liver

Surrounded by a tough capsule

Divided into:
- Cortex
- Medulla

Receives arterial supply from renal vv.

Receives extensive autonomic nerve supply

URETER

Is retroperitoneal

Carries urine from kidney to the bladder

Begins at hilum, or L1 and travels inferior to the bladder

Common sites of kidney stones include:
- Uteropelvic junction
- Crossing Iliac vv. on pelvis
- Junction with bladder

SUPRARENAL GLAND

Also known as *adrenal gland*

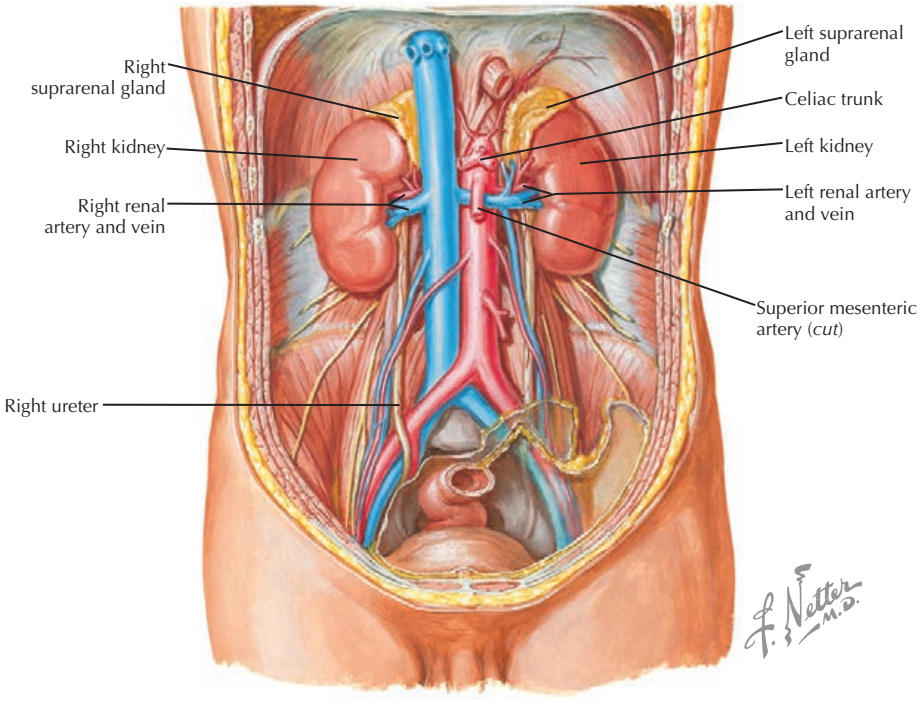
Are endocrine glands

Divided into:
- Cortex—responsible for production of mineralocorticoids, glucocorticoids, and androgens
- Medulla—responsible for catecholamines via sympathetic response (flight or flight)

Receives threefold arterial supply:
- Superior suprarenal—from inferior phrenic a.
- Middle suprarenal—from aorta
- Inferior suprarenal—from renal a.

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

KIDNEY, URETER, AND SUPRARENAL GLAND *CONTINUED*



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

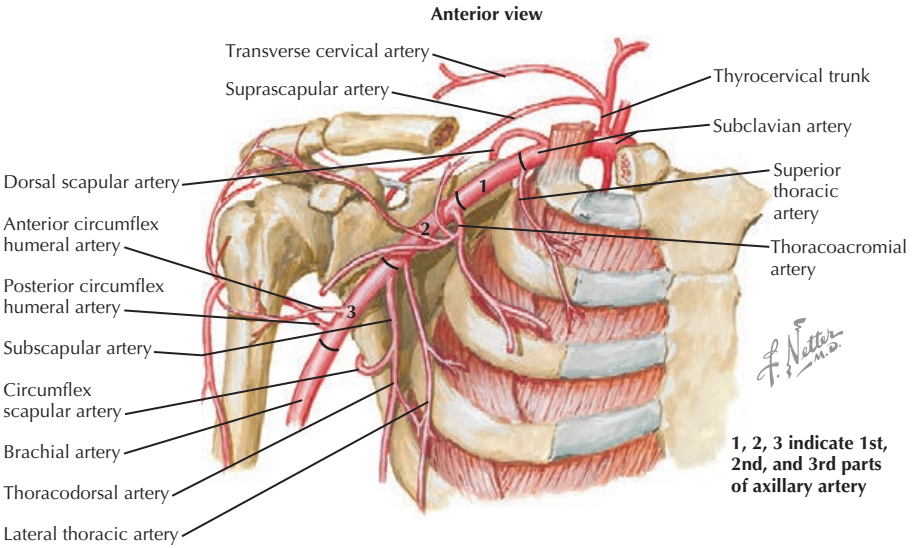
Vascular Supply

UPPER LIMB

Arterial Supply of the Axilla

Axillary—is divided into 3 parts based on its relationship to the pectoralis minor

- 1st part
  - Superior thoracic—supplies 1st two intercostal spaces
- 2nd part
  - Thoracoacromial
    - Pectoral
    - Acromial
    - Deltoid—accompanies cephalic v.
    - Clavicular—helps supply acromioclavicular joint
  - Lateral thoracic—follows inferior border of pectoralis minor to thorax
- 3rd part
  - Subscapular
    - Scapular circumflex—located in triangular space
    - Thoracodorsal—passes with thoracodorsal n. to latissimus dorsi
  - Posterior humeral circumflex—travels in quadrangular space with axillary n.
  - Anterior humeral circumflex



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

UPPER LIMB *CONTINUED*

Arterial Supply of the Brachium

Brachial—begins at inferior border of teres major

- Profunda brachii
  - Middle collateral
  - Radial collateral
- Superior ulnar collateral—passes with ulnar n. posterior to medial epicondyle
- Inferior ulnar collateral
- Muscular branches

Arterial Supply of the Antebrachium

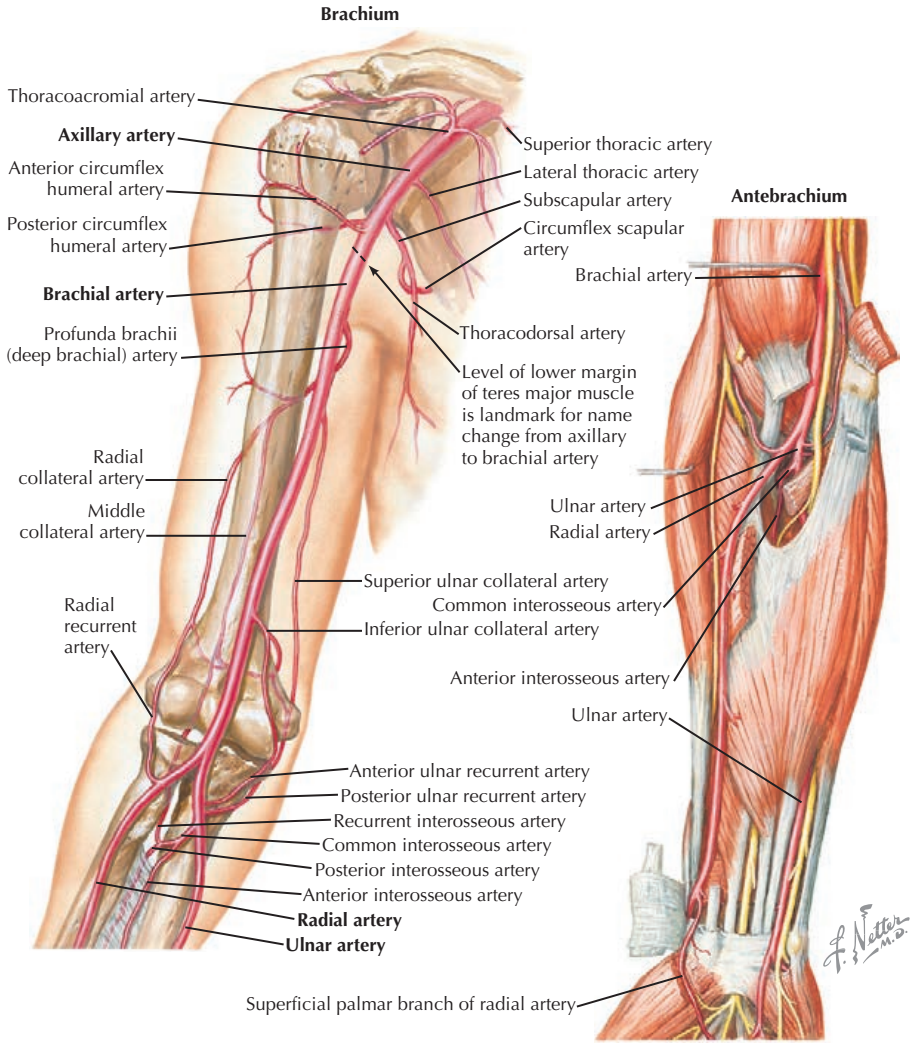
Brachial—divides into:

- Radial
  - Radial recurrent
  - Palmar carpal branch
  - Superficial palmar branch
- Ulnar
  - Anterior ulnar recurrent
  - Posterior ulnar recurrent
  - Common interosseous
  - Palmar carpal branch

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Vascular Supply

UPPER LIMB *CONTINUED*



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

UPPER LIMB *CONTINUED*

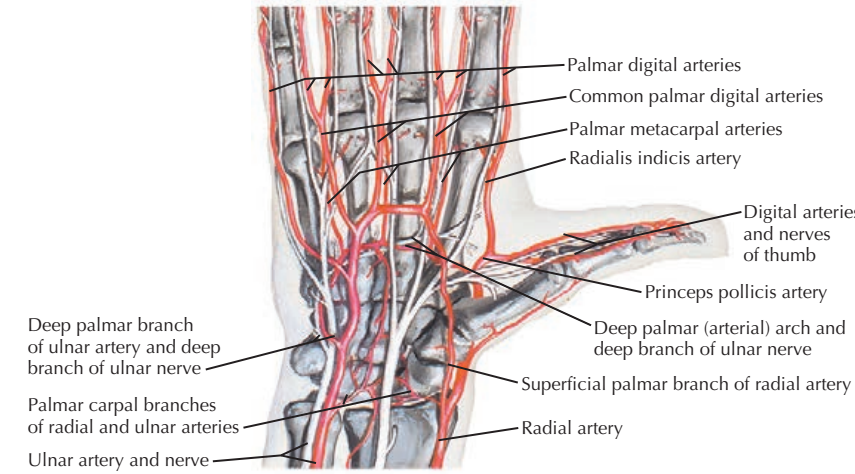
Carpus and Manus

Ulnar

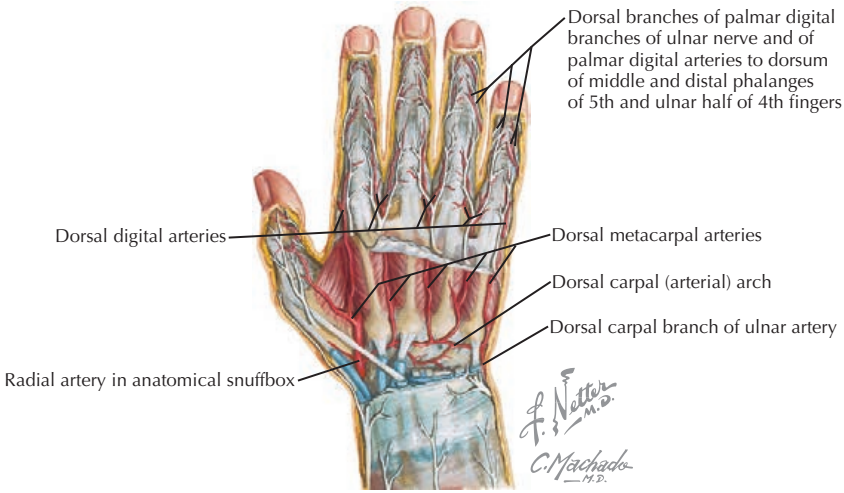
- Dorsal carpal branch
- Deep branch of the ulnar
- Palmar carpal branch
- Superficial palmar arch
  - Common palmar digital
  - Proper palmar digital

Radial

- Princeps pollicis
- Radialis indicis
- Deep palmar arch



Posterior (dorsal) view



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

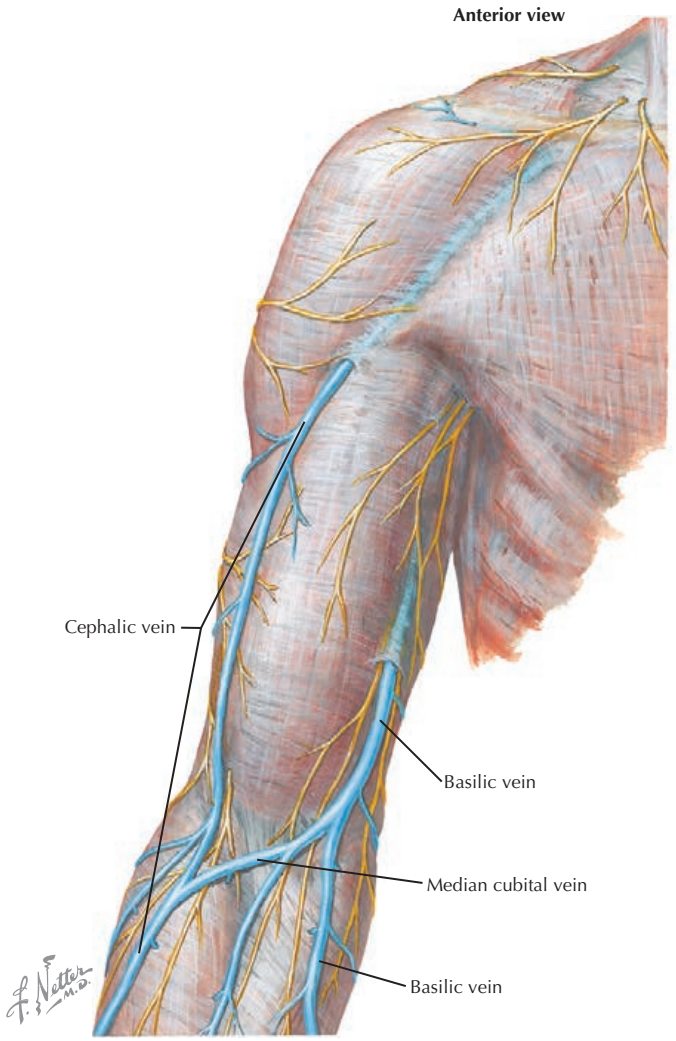
Vascular Supply

UPPER LIMB *CONTINUED*

Veins

Two types of veins:

- Superficial—lie in superficial fascia
  - Cephalic
  - Basilic
- Deep (have either):
  - Single similar-sized vein following the artery of the upper limb (e.g., subclavian vein or axillary vein)
  - Vena comitans—accompanying vein
    - A pairing of veins with both surrounding the artery
    - Typically any veins that are distal to the axillary v. is a vena comitans (e.g., brachial veins, ulnar veins, and radial veins), which are paired around the artery of the same name



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Vascular Supply

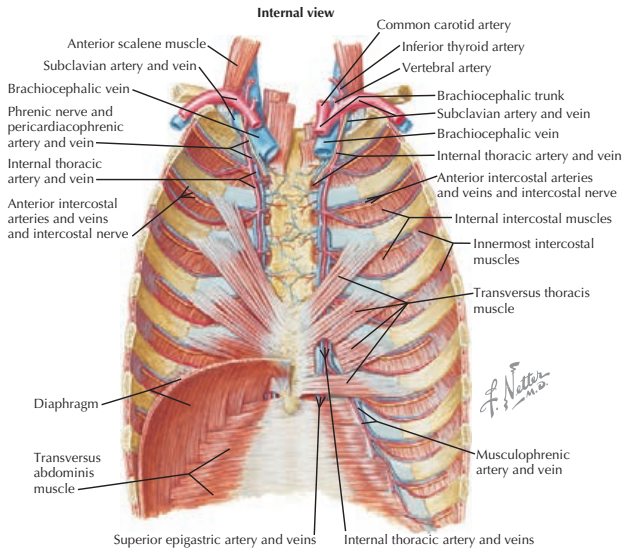
THORAX

Arterial

- Internal thoracic—arises from subclavian a.
  - Pericardiacophrenic
  - Terminates as:
    - Musculophrenic
    - Superior epigastric
- Intercostal arteries
  - Posterior intercostal
    - 2 (Costocervical trunk)
    - 9 (Thoracic aorta)
    - 1 Subcostal (thoracic aorta)
  - Anterior intercostal
    - 6 (Internal thoracic)
    - 3 (Musculophrenic)
- Esophageal
- Bronchial
  - Right (3rd posterior intercostal a.)
  - 2 Left (aorta)

Veins

- Azygos system
  - Posterior intercostal vv.
  - Esophageal vv.
  - Bronchial vv.
  - Right side of thorax
    - Right supreme intercostal v.
    - Right superior intercostal v.
  - Left side of thorax
    - Left supreme intercostal v.
    - Left superior intercostal v.
    - Accessory hemiazygos v.
    - Hemiazygos v.



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

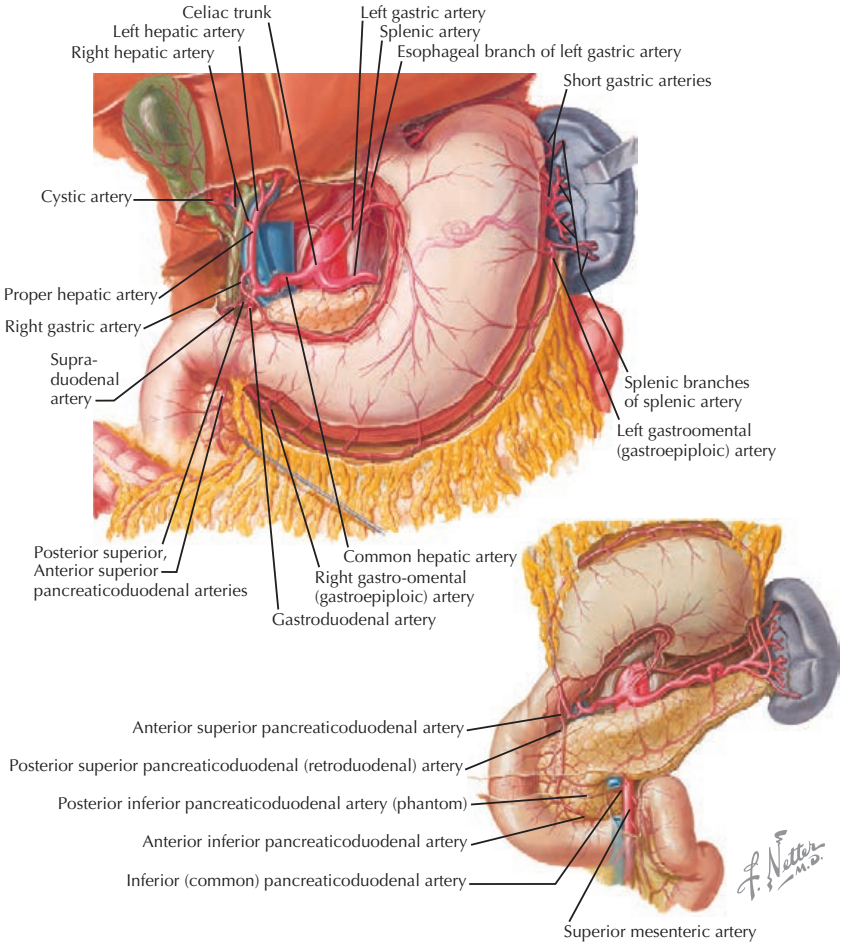
Vascular Supply

ABDOMEN

Unpaired Visceral Arteries

Celiac Artery (Artery of the Foregut)—arises at T12

- Left gastric
- Common hepatic
  - Proper hepatic
    - Right gastric
    - Left hepatic
    - Right hepatic
      - Cystic
  - Gastroduodenal
    - Supraduodenal
    - Right gastroepiploic
    - Anterior and posterior superior pancreaticoduodenal
- Splenic
  - Pancreatic branches
  - Short gastric
  - Left gastroepiploic

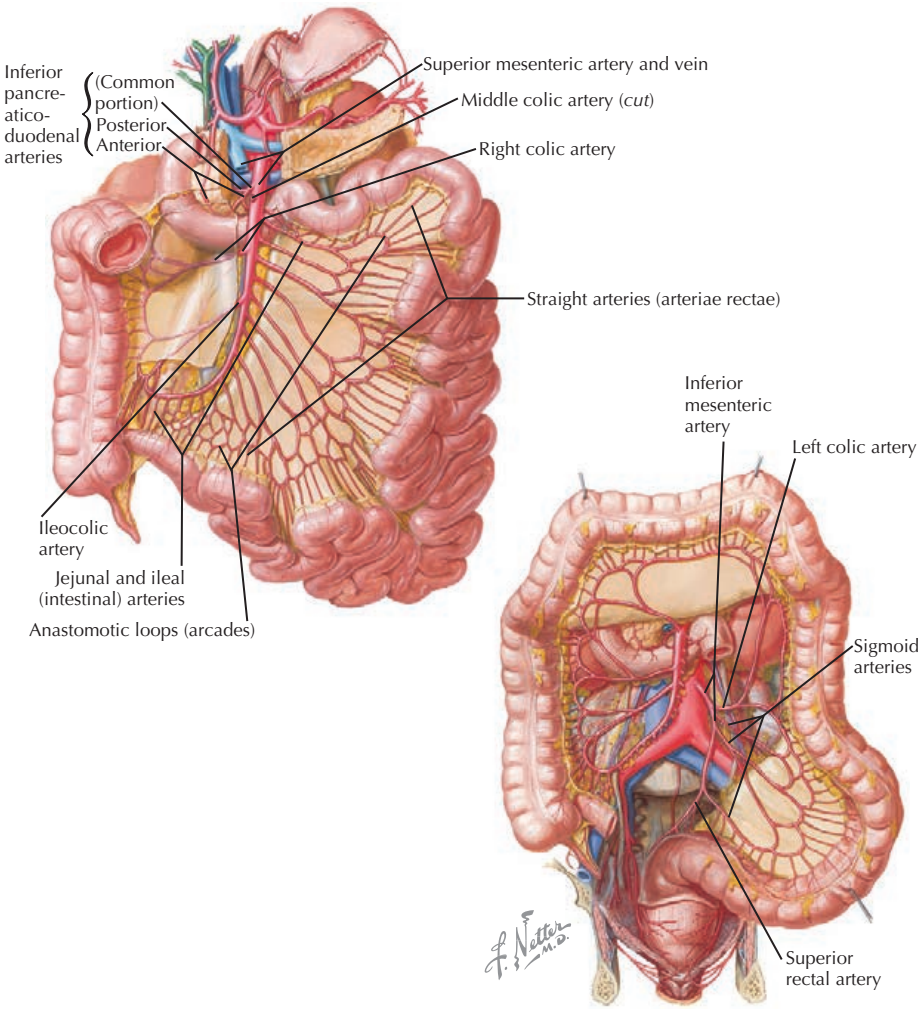


WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

ABDOMEN *CONTINUED*

Superior Mesenteric Artery (Artery of the Midgut)—arises at L1
- Anterior and posterior inferior pancreaticoduodenal
- Jejunal mesenteric
  - Arterial arcades and vasa recta
- Ileal mesenteric
  - Arterial arcades and vasa recta
- Ileocolic
  - Appendicular
- Right colic
- Middle colic

Inferior Mesenteric Artery (Artery of the Hindgut)—arises at L3
- Left colic
- Sigmoid
- Superior rectal



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Vascular Supply

POSTERIOR ABDOMEN

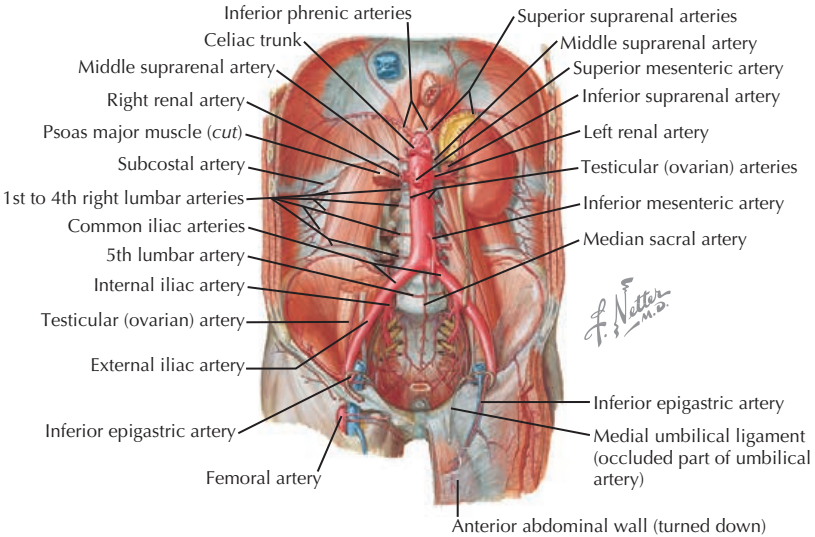
Paired Visceral and Parietal Arteries

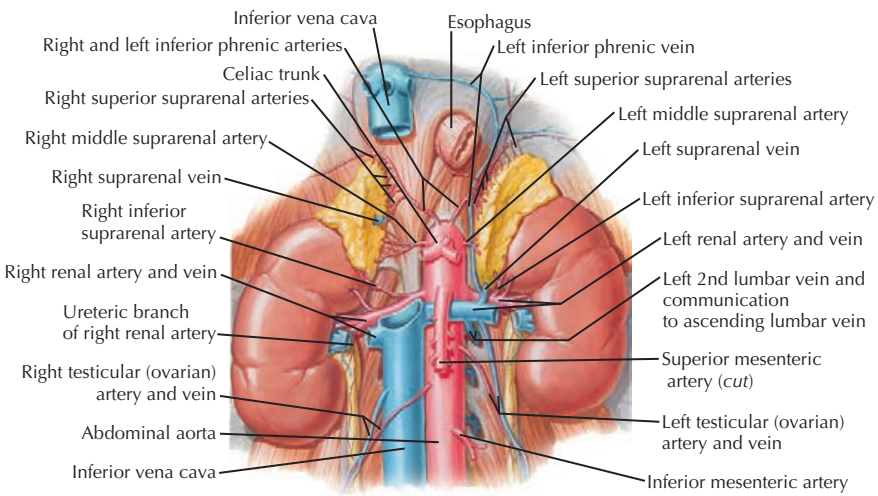
Paired Visceral Branches—paired branches supplying organs

- Renal—arises at L2
- Gonadal—arises between L2 and L3
  - Testicular
  - Ovarian
- Suprarenal
  - Superior—arises from the inferior phrenic
  - Middle—arises from the aorta
  - Inferior—arises from the renal

Paired Parietal (Body Wall) Branches—paired branches supplying the wall

- Inferior phrenic
- Lumbar—4 arise from the aorta





WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Vascular Supply

ABDOMEN

Venous Supply of the Viscera

Veins that drain the abdominal viscera closely follow the celiac, superior mesenteric, and inferior mesenteric arteries

These veins eventually drain into the hepatic portal vein, which passes into the liver, allowing the liver to clear the blood of any wastes and to store nutrients

The hepatic portal vein is formed by the:

- Superior mesenteric vein
- Splenic vein

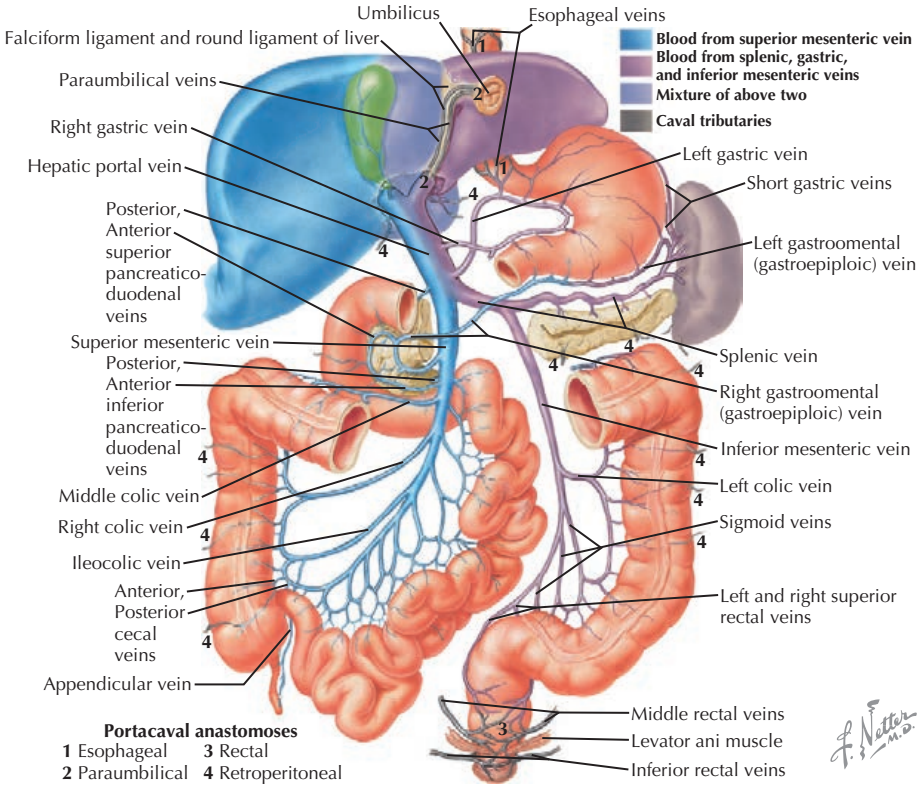
After passing through the liver, the blood returns into the systemic system via hepatic veins into the inferior vena cava

Since the veins in this region lack valves, they take the path of least resistance

If there is an obstruction in the path of the hepatic portal vein, the blood will attempt to return the blood toward the heart by bypassing the block and utilizing anastomosis between the portal system and the systemic system (vena cava)

There are 4 major collaterals between the portal and systemic systems:

- Esophageal
- Paraumbilical
- Rectal
- Retroperitoneal



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Vascular Supply

ABDOMEN *CONTINUED*

Hepatic Portal Vein

- Minor direct tributaries include:
  - Cystic v.
  - Right gastric v.
  - Left gastric v.
    - Esophageal vv.
  - Posterior superior pancreaticoduodenal v.
- Major tributaries include:
  - Superior mesenteric vein
    - Right gastroepiploic v.
      - Anterior superior pancreaticoduodenal v.
      - Anterior inferior pancreaticoduodenal v.
    - Posterior inferior pancreaticoduodenal v.
    - Middle colic v.
    - Jejunal mesenteric vv.
      - Venous anastomotic loops
      - Vasa recta
    - Ileal mesenteric vv.
      - Venous anastomotic loops
      - Vasa recta
    - Ileocolic v.
    - Right colic v.
  - Splenic v.
    - Pancreatic branches
    - Short gastric v.
    - Left gastroepiploic v.
    - Inferior mesenteric—sometimes joins to form hepatic portal v.
      - Left colic v.
      - Sigmoid vv.
      - Superior rectal v.

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

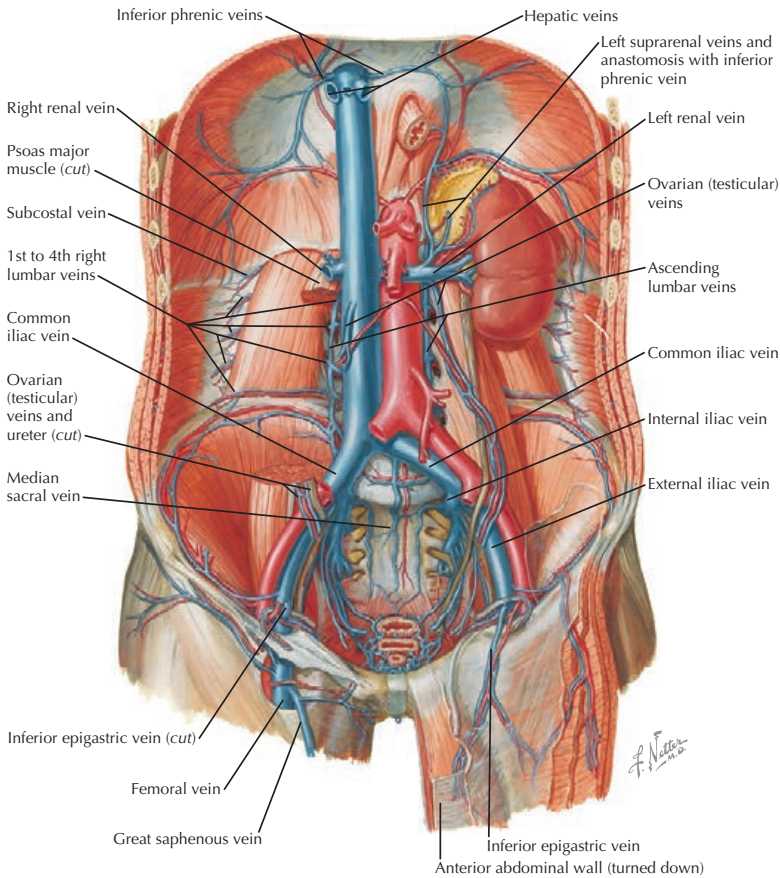
POSTERIOR ABDOMEN

Venous Supply of the Posterior Abdominal Wall

Veins of the posterior abdominal wall drain into the inferior vena cava

Tributaries include:

- Hepatic vv.
  - Right hepatic v.
  - Middle hepatic v.
  - Left hepatic v.
- Inferior phrenic v.
- Suprarenal v.
- Renal v.
  - Left gonadal v.
    - Testicular
    - Ovarian
- Right gonadal v.
  - Testicular
  - Ovarian
- Subcostal v.
- Lumbar vv.



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Nerve Supply

UPPER LIMB

Alternating joining and branching of nerves to reorganize the terminal branches with contributions from multiple spinal cord levels

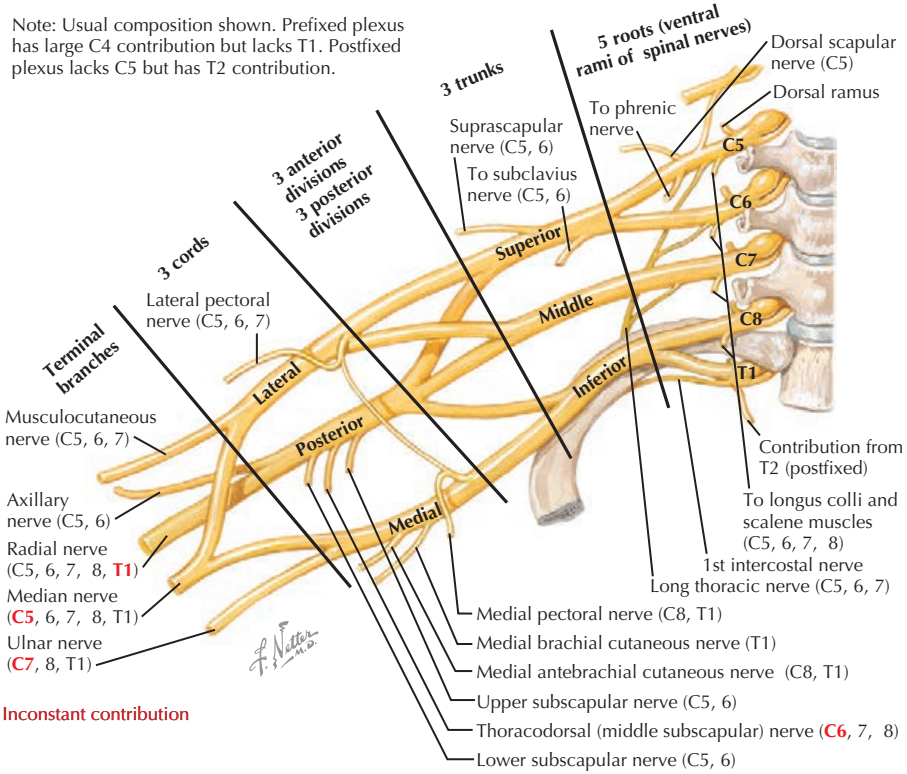
Origin from ventral rami of 5th to 8th cervical and 1st thoracic spinal nerves

General organization is:
- 5 Ventral rami
- 3 Trunks
- 6 Divisions
- 3 Cords
- 6 Branches

Nerves to muscles on ventral and dorsal surfaces of upper limb are derived from anterior and posterior divisions, respectively.

Location and arterial relations:
- Rami and trunks—Posterior triangle of neck—Subclavian a.
- Divisions—Behind clavicle—Subclavian and 1st part of axillary a.
- Cords—Axilla—2nd part of axillary a.
- Branches—Axilla—3rd part of axillary a.

Key landmark of "**M**" formed by medial and lateral cords and terminal branches



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

22 Nerve Supply

UPPER LIMB

BRACHIAL PLEXUS		
Nerve	**Source**	**Comments**
Dorsal scapular (C5)	Ventral rami	Passes posteriorly to lie along the medial border of the scapula Innervates the: • Levator scapula • Rhomboid major • Rhomboid minor
Long thoracic (C5, C6, C7)	Ventral rami	Passes inferiorly along the serratus anterior Innervates the serratus anterior
Muscular branches	Ventral rami	Supplies the scalenes and longus colli
Subclavius (C5)	Upper trunk	Innervates the subclavius
Suprascapular (C5, C6)	Upper trunk	Innervates the: • Supraspinatus • Infraspinatus
Lateral pectoral (C5, C6, C7)	Lateral cord	Innervates the clavicular head of the pectoralis major
Musculocutaneous (C5, C6, C7)	Lateral cord	Passes into the coracobrachialis to enter the flexor compartment of the brachium After passing through the coracobrachialis, it travels distally in the brachium between the biceps brachii and the brachialis Innervates the: • Coracobrachialis • Biceps brachii • Brachialis Terminates as the lateral cutaneous nerve of the antebrachium upon exiting the distal compartment
Median (C5, C6, C7) from lateral head (C8, T1) from medial head	Lateral and medial cord	Brachium: Has no motor or sensory branches in the arm Antebrachium: No sensory branches in antebrachium Innervates: • Pronator teres • Flexor carpi radialis longus • Palmaris longus • Flexor digitorum superficialis Has 1 major motor branch innervating the deep flexor muscles: • Flexor pollicis longus • Flexor digitorum profundus • Pronator quadratus Manus: Sensory branches: • Palmar cutaneous branch—lateral portion of palm • Common palmar digital branches—lateral portion of palm • Proper palmar digital branches—palmar surface of 1st, 2nd, 3rd, and lateral half of 4th digit Motor branches: Recurrent branch of median • Opponens pollicis • Abductor pollicis brevis • Flexor pollicis brevis Motor branches to 1st and 2nd lumbricals
Medial brachial cutaneous (T1)	Medial cord	Provides sensory innervation to the medial aspect of the superior portion of the brachium

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Nerve Supply

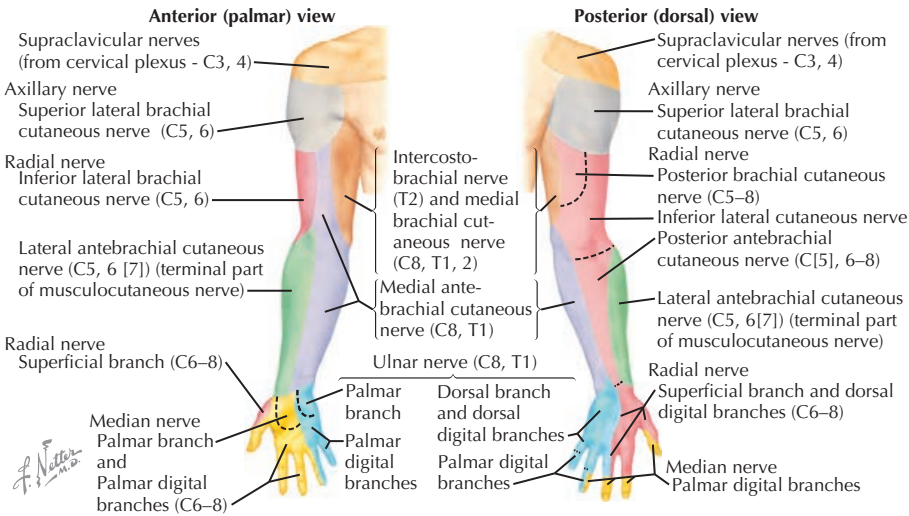
UPPER LIMB *CONTINUED*

BRACHIAL PLEXUS		
Nerve	**Source**	**Comments**
Medial antebrachial cutaneous (C8, T1)	Medial cord	Provides sensory innervation to the medial aspect of the inferior portion of the brachium
Medial pectoral (C8, T1)	Medial cord	Innervates: • Pectoralis minor • Sternal head of pectoralis major
Ulnar (C7, C8, T1)	Medial cord	Brachium: Has no motor or sensory branches in the arm Antebrachium: Has no sensory branches in the antebrachium Innervates: • Flexor carpi ulnaris • Flexor digitorum profundus (medial half) Manus: Sensory branches: • Dorsal cutaneous n.—posterior surface of medial portion of manus • Dorsal digital branches—dorsal aspect of 5th digit and medial half of 4th digit • Palmar cutaneous n.—medial aspect of palm • Common palmar cutaneous branches—distal portion of medial aspect of palm • Proper palmar digital branches—palmar surface of 5th digit and medial half of 4th digit Motor branches: Superficial ulnar n. • Palmaris brevis Deep ulnar n. • Abductor digiti minimi • Flexor digiti minimi brevis • Opponens digiti minimi • Adductor pollicis • Dorsal interosseous • Palmar interosseous • 3rd and 4th lumbrical
Upper subscapular (C5, C6)	Posterior cord	Innervates the upper portion of the subscapularis
Thoracodorsal (C6, C7, C8)	Posterior cord	Innervates the latissimus dorsi
Lower subscapular (C5, C6)	Posterior cord	Innervates: • Lower portion of the subscapularis • Teres major
Axillary (C5, C6)	Posterior cord	Innervates: • Deltoid • Teres minor Has a sensory branch on the lateral aspect of the superior portion of the brachium: • Superior lateral cutaneous branch

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

UPPER LIMB *CONTINUED*

BRACHIAL PLEXUS		
Nerve	**Source**	**Comments**
Radial (C5, C6, C7, C8, T1)	Posterior cord	Brachium: Innervates the: • Triceps brachii • Anconeus Has 2 sensory branches: • Inferior lateral cutaneous nerve—sensory on lateral aspect of inferior brachium • Posterior cutaneous nerve—sensory on posterior surface of brachium Antebrachium: Has 1 sensory branch: • Posterior cutaneous nerve of the antebrachium Innervates the: • Brachioradialis • Extensor carpi radialis longus Divides into a: • Superficial radial (sensory in manus) • Deep radial (motor in antebrachium) Deep radial innervates: • Extensor carpi radialis brevis • Supinator Deep radial passes through the supinator to the posterior surface becoming the posterior interosseus The posterior interosseus innervates: • Extensor digitorum • Extensor carpi ulnaris • Extensor indicis • Extensor digiti minimi • Extensor pollicis longus • Abductor pollicis longus • Extensor pollicis brevis Manus: Sensory branches: • Superficial radial nerve—dorsal aspect of manus • Dorsal digital branches—dorsal aspect of 1st digit There are no motor branches in the manus



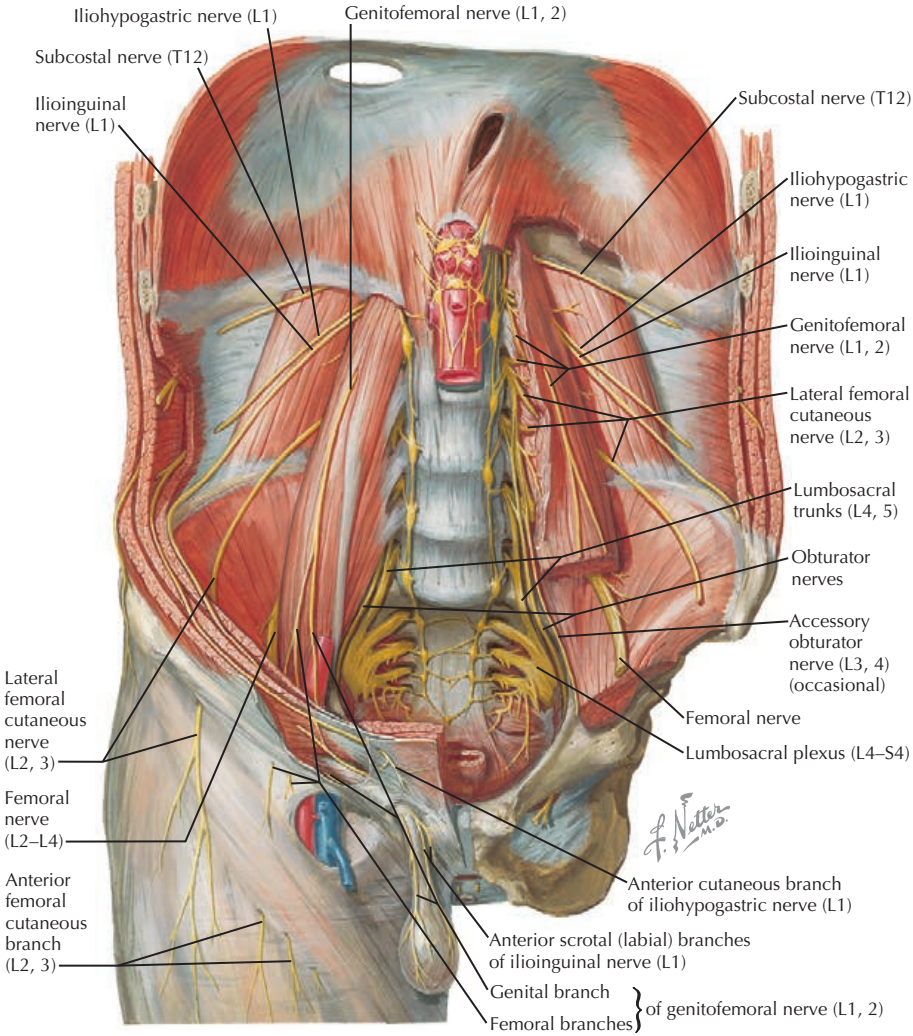
WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Nerve Supply

POSTERIOR ABDOMINAL WALL

Nerves

- Subcostal—T12
- Iliohypogastric—L1
- Ilioinguinal—L1
- Lateral femoral cutaneous nerve—L2, L3
- Genitofemoral—L1, L2
  - Genital branch—cremaster
  - Femoral branch—sensory on thigh
- Femoral—L2, L3, L4
- Obturator—L2, L3, L4



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Appendix A
Questions and Answers

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

QUESTIONS CHAPTER 1 *DEVELOPMENT OF THE HEAD AND NECK*

1. All of the following are derivatives of the 1st pharyngeal arch except one. Which one is the exception?
   A. Masseter
   B. Incus
   C. Sphenomandibular ligament
   D. Posterior digastric
   E. Tensor veli palatini

2. All of the following contribute to the formation of the skull except one. Which one is the exception?
   A. Lateral plate mesoderm
   B. Endoderm
   C. Neural crest
   D. Paraxial mesoderm
   E. All of the above (A-D) contribute to the formation of the skull.

3. All of the following are parts of the 1st pharyngeal arch that contribute to the tongue except one. Which one is the exception?
   A. Lateral lingual swelling
   B. Tuberculum impar
   C. Hypobranchial eminence
   D. Receives GSA innervation from the trigeminal nerve
   E. All of the above (A-D) are parts of the 1st pharyngeal arch that contribute to the tongue.

4. All of the following statements about the formation of the palate are correct except one. Which one is the exception?
   A. The primary and secondary palatal tissues meet at the incisive foramen.
   B. The primary palate, secondary palate, and nasal septum fuse to form the definitive palate.
   C. Swellings of the maxillary prominence form shelves that project laterally and are separated by the tongue.
   D. The primary palate forms from the intermaxillary segment.
   E. All of the above (A-D) are correct.

QUESTIONS CHAPTER 2 *OSTEOLOGY*

5. All of the following statements are correct except one. Which one is the exception?
   A. The frontal lobe of the brain occupies the anterior cranial fossa.
   B. The occipital lobe of the brain occupies the posterior cranial fossa.
   C. The lacrimal bone is paired.
   D. The palatine bone is paired.
   E. The mandible articulates with the temporal bone.

6. All of the following are associated with the sphenoid bone except one. Which one is the exception?
   A. The foramen spinosum is located in the sphenoid bone.
   B. The pterygoid canal is located in the sphenoid bone.
   C. The foramen rotundum is located in the sphenoid bone.
   D. The body of the sphenoid contains the sphenoid paranasal sinus.
   E. The sphenoid bone is paired.

7. All of the following are parts of the maxilla except one. Which one is the exception?
   A. Zygomatic process
   B. Body
   C. Palatine process
   D. Pterygoid process
   E. Alveolar process

8. All of the following structures pass through the fissure/foramen listed except one. Which one is the exception?
   A. Ophthalmic artery passes through the optic canal.
   B. Glossopharyngeal nerve passes through the jugular foramen.
   C. Middle meningeal artery passes through the foramen spinosum.
   D. Maxillary division of the trigeiminal nerve passes through the foramen rotundum.
   E. Frontal nerve passes through the inferior orbital fissure.

ANSWERS
1 D
2 B
3 C
4 C
5 B
6 E
7 D
8 E

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

9. All of the following fissure/foramen are located in or formed by the bones listed except one. Which one is the exception?
   A. Tympanic canaliculus—temporal bone
   B. Carotid canal—occipital bone
   C. Jugular foramen—temporal and occipital bones
   D. Petrotympanic fissure—temporal bone
   E. Hypoglossal canal—occipital bone

QUESTIONS CHAPTER 3 *BASIC NEUROANATOMY AND CRANIAL NERVES*

10. All of the following statements are correct except one. Which one is the exception?
    A. There are 5 pairs of sacral spinal nerves.
    B. Neurons can have multiple axons.
    C. A characteristic of a neuron is irritability.
    D. Neurons are the structural and functional unit of the nervous system.
    E. A multipolar neuron has 3 or more processes from the cell body.
11. All of the following neuroglial cells are located in the central nervous system except one. Which one is the exception?
    A. Astrocytes
    B. Oligodendrocytes
    C. Schwann cells
    D. Microglia
    E. All of the above (A-D) are located in the central nervous system.
12. Which of the following functional columns innervates smooth muscle?
    A. GSA
    B. SSE
    C. SVA
    D. GVE
    E. SSA
13. Which of the following represents the location of the cell bodies of primary taste fibers (SVA) in the facial nerve?
    A. Tractus solitarius
    B. Submandibular ganglion
    C. Geniculate ganglion
    D. Pterygopalatine ganglion
    E. Superior salivatory nucleus
14. In one of the following lists, the functional column responsible for innervating GSE muscle are found in all of the cranial nerves. Identify the letter that corresponds to that list.
    A. III, VII, IX, and X
    B. III, IV, VI, and XII
    C. I, VII, IX, and X
    D. V, VII, IX, and X
    E. III, IV, VI, and X

QUESTIONS CHAPTER 4 *THE NECK*

15. All of the following are a content, muscle, or the cranial nerve that innervates a muscle that makes a border of the submental except one. Which one is the exception?
    A. Anterior digastric
    B. Trigeminal nerve
    C. Anterior jugular vein
    D. Submental lymph node
    E. All of the above (A-D) are a content, muscle, or the nerve that innervates a muscle that makes a border of the submental triangle.
16. All of the following statements are correct except one. Which one is the exception?
    A. The dorsal scapular nerve is a content of the posterior triangle.
    B. The suprascapular nerve is a content of the posterior triangle.
    C. The posterior scalene muscle attaches to the 1st rib.
    D. The external jugular vein is a content of the posterior triangle.
    E. The phrenic nerve lies anterior to the anterior scalene muscle.

ANSWERS

9 B
10 B
11 C
12 D
13 C
14 B
15 E
16 C

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

17. Which of the following vessels are accompanied by a nerve that has the same name?
    A. Submental vessels
    B. Superior laryngeal vessels
    C. Transverse cervical vessels
    D. Suprascapular vessels
    E. All of the following vessels (A-D) are accompanied by a nerve that has the same name.

18. All of the following are either a muscle or the nerve that innervates a muscle that makes a border of the carotid triangle except one. Which one is the exception?
    A. Omohyoid
    B. Facial nerve
    C. Trigeminal nerve
    D. Ansa cervicalis
    E. Spinal accessory nerve

19. All of the following statements are correct except one. Which one is the exception?
    A. The submental triangle is paired.
    B. The larynx is a content of the muscular triangle.
    C. Part of the thyroid gland can be observed at vertebral level C6.
    D. The parathyroid glands are a content of the muscular triangle.
    E. The submandibular gland is a content of the submandibular triangle.

QUESTIONS CHAPTER 5 *SCALP AND MUSCLES OF FACIAL EXPRESSION*

20. All of the following statements concerning the scalp are correct except one. Which one is the exception?
    A. Loose areolar connective tissue lies deep to the aponeurosis.
    B. The prolific arterial blood supply to the scalp is in the connective tissue layer.
    C. The skin, connective tissue, aponeurosis, and loose aerolar connective tissue layers are referred to as the scalp proper.
    D. The pericranium covers the outer surface of the cranium.
    E. Emissary veins connect the connective tissue layer to the dural venous sinuses, providing channel for infections to spread.

21. All of the following nerves provide at least some sensory innervation to either the face, the scalp, or both, except one. Which one is the exception?
    A. Dorsal ramus of C1
    B. Mental nerve
    C. Zygomaticofacial nerve
    D. External nasal nerve
    E. Great auricular nerve

22. All of the following statements are correct except one. Which one is the exception?
    A. The risorius muscle aids in grinning.
    B. The stapedius is innervated by the facial nerve.
    C. The buccal nerve from the trigeminal innervates the buccinator.
    D. The palpebal portion of the orbicularis oculi aids in closing the eyes during blinking.
    E. Levator anguli oris elevates the angle of the mouth.

23. All of the following arteries supplying the face, the scalp, or both, arise directly from the external carotid artery except one. Which one is the exception?
    A. Lacrimal
    B. Facial
    C. Superficial temporal
    D. Posterior auricular
    E. Occipital

24. Which of the following muscles is not innervated by the trigeminal nerve?
    A. Inferior head of the lateral pterygoid
    B. Posterior belly of digastric
    C. Masseter
    D. Tensor veli palatini
    E. Temporalis

ANSWERS
17 D
18 C
19 A
20 C
21 A
22 C
23 A
24 B

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

QUESTIONS CHAPTER 6 *PAROTID BED AND GLAND*

25. All of the following borders of the parotid bed are matched with the correct structure except one. Which one is the exception?
    A. Anterior—masseter
    B. Posterior—mastoid process of the temporal bone
    C. Superior—external acoustic meatus
    D. Medial—transverse process of the axis
    E. Posteromedial—stylohyoid muscle

26. All of the following statements are correct except one. Which one is the exception?
    A. Approximately 75% or more of the parotid gland overlies the masseter muscle.
    B. Facial nerve enters the parotid fossa by passing between the stylohyoid muscle and the posterior belly of the digastric muscle.
    C. Deep lobe of the parotid gland lies adjacent to the lateral pharyngeal space.
    D. Buccal and zygomatic branches of the facial nerve form an anastomosing loop superficial to the parotid duct.
    E. Capsule of the parotid gland is from the superficial cervical fascia.

27. All of the following statements concerning the autonomic innervation of the parotid gland are correct except one. Which one is the exception?
    A. Preganglionic parasympathetic fibers arise from the inferior salivatory nucleus.
    B. Postganglionic parasympathetic fibers arise from the otic ganglion.
    C. Postganglionic sympathetic fibers arise from the superior cervical ganglion.
    D. Preganglionic parasympathetic fibers travel in the greater petrosal nerve.
    E. Preganglionic parasympathetic fibers travel in the tympnic branch of the glossopharyngeal nerve.

QUESTIONS CHAPTER 7 *TEMPORAL AND INFRATEMPORAL FOSSAE*

28. All of the following are boundaries of the temporal fossa except one. Which one is the exception?
    A. The zygomatic process of the frontal bone is an anterior border.
    B. The lesser wing of the sphenoid is a posterior border.
    C. The zygomatic arch is the inferior border.
    D. The superior temporal line of the skull is the superior border.
    E. The frontal bone is part of the floor.

29. All of the following are boundaries of the infratemporal fossa except one. Which one is the exception?
    A. The anterior border is the posterior surface of the maxilla.
    B. The styloid process is a posterior border.
    C. The ramus of the mandible is a lateral border.
    D. The medial pterygoid plate is a medial border.
    E. The infratemporal surface of the sphenoid (greater wing of the sphenoid) is a superior border.

30. All of the following are contents of the infratemporal fossa except one. Which one is the exception?
    A. Pterygopalatine ganglion
    B. Chorda tympani nerve
    C. Pterygoid plexus of veins
    D. Maxillary artery and its branches
    E. Medial pterygoid

31. All of the following are branches of the 1st part (mandibular part) of the maxillary artery except one. Which one is the exception?
    A. Anterior tympanic
    B. Middle meningeal
    C. Inferior alveolar
    D. Deep auricular
    E. Pterygoid

ANSWERS

25 D
26 E
27 D
28 B
29 D
30 A
31 E

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

QUESTIONS CHAPTER 8 *MUSCLES OF MASTICATION*

32. Which of the following depresses the mandible?
    A. Temporalis (posterior fibers)
    B. Medial pterygoid
    C. Lateral pterygoid
    D. Masseter
    E. All of the above (A-D) depress the mandible.

33. The deep head of the medial pterygoid originates on which of the following?
    A. Inferior border of the anterior 2/3rds of the zygomatic arch
    B. Medial surface of the lateral pterygoid plate
    C. Medial surface of the medial pterygoid plate
    D. Lateral surface of the medial pterygoid plate
    E. Lateral surface of the lateral pterygoid plate

34. Which of the following retrudes the mandible?
    A. Temporalis (posterior fibers)
    B. Medial pterygoid
    C. Lateral pterygoid
    D. Masseter
    E. All of the above (A-D) retrude the mandible.

35. The muscles of mastication are innervated by which of the following?
    A. Trigeminal nerve
    B. Facial nerve
    C. Glossopharyngeal nerve
    D. Vagus nerve
    E. Hypoglossal nerve

QUESTIONS CHAPTER 9 *TEMPOROMANDIBULAR JOINT*

36. Which of the following describes the articular surface of the mandibular condyles?
    A. Avascular fibrous connective tissue
    B. Hyaline cartilage
    C. Elastic cartilage
    D. Loose areolar connective tissue
    E. None of the above (A-D)

37. All of the following statements concerning the articular disc are correct except one. Which one is the exception?
    A. Composed of dense fibrous connective tissue
    B. Avascular in its central portion
    C. Divided into 2 bands
    D. Located between the squamous portion of the temporal bone and the condyle
    E. Contiguous posteriorly with the bilaminar zone that blends with the capsule

38. Rotational movement of the temporomandibular joint occurs in which of the following?
    A. Superior compartment
    B. Inferior compartment
    C. Superior and inferior compartments
    D. Bilaminar zone
    E. None of the above (A-D)

39. All of the following statements concerning the capsule of the temporomandibular joint are correct except one. Which one is the exception?
    A. Completely encloses the articular surface of the temporal bone and the condyle
    B. Composed of fibrous connective tissue
    C. Lined by a highly vascularized synovial membrane
    D. Has various sensory receptors including nociceptors
    E. Toughened on the posterior aspect by ligaments

ANSWERS

32 C
33 B
34 A
35 A
36 A
37 C
38 B
39 E

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

40. The sphenomandibular ligament attaches from the spine of the sphenoid to which of the following?
    A. Lingula of the mandible
    B. Styloid process
    C. Condylar process
    D. Coronoid process
    E. Zygomatic arch

QUESTIONS CHAPTER 10 *PTERYGOPALATINE FOSSA*

41. The nasopalatine nerve exits the pterygopalatine fossa by passing through which of the following?
    A. Pharyngeal
    B. Sphenopalatine foramen
    C. Inferior orbital fissure
    D. Palatine canal
    E. Foramen rotundum

42. Which of the following nerves pass through the pterygomaxillary fissure?
    A. Posterior superior alveolar
    B. Zygomatic
    C. Infraorbital
    D. Maxillary division of the trigeminal
    E. Nerve of the pterygoid canal

43. All of the following nerves of the maxillary division of the trigeminal travel communicate with the pterygopalatine ganglion except one. Which one is the exception?
    A. Greater palatine
    B. Lesser palatine
    C. Pharyngeal
    D. Posterior superior alveolar
    E. Nasopalatine

QUESTIONS CHAPTER 11 *NOSE AND NASAL CAVITY*

44. All of the following are a lateral relation of the lateral wall of the nasal cavity except one. Which one is the exception?
    A. Ethmoid sinus
    B. Orbit
    C. Pterygopalatine fossa
    D. Vomer
    E. Maxillary sinus

45. All of the following are correct except one. Which one is the exception?
    A. Epistaxis is often caused by a rupture of a vessel in Kiesselbach's plexus.
    B. The ethmoid bone is a superior boundary of the nasal cavity.
    C. The infratrochlear nerve supplies, at least in part, the nose.
    D. The palatine process of the maxilla is a superior boundary of the nasal cavity.
    E. The horizontal plate of the palatine is an inferior boundary of the nasal cavity.

46. All of the following are a superior boundary of the nasal cavity except one. Which one is the exception?
    A. Frontal sinus
    B. Anterior cranial fossa
    C. Maxillary sinus
    D. Sphenoid sinus
    E. Frontal lobe of the brain

47. The nasolacrimal duct drains into the:
    A. Superior meatus
    B. Middle meatus
    C. Inferior meatus
    D. Bulla ethmoidalis
    E. Hiatus semilunaris

ANSWERS

40 A
41 B
42 A
43 D
44 D
45 D
46 C
47 C

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

48. All of the following nerves that supply the nasal cavity are branches of the maxillary division of the trigeminal nerve except one. Which one is the exception?
    A. Anterior ethmoid
    B. Infraorbital
    C. Nasopalatine
    D. Posterior superior nasal
    E. Posterior inferior nasal

QUESTIONS CHAPTER 12 *PARANASAL SINUSES*

49. Which of the following sinuses drains into the superior meatus?
    A. Sphenoid sinus
    B. Posterior ethmoid sinus
    C. Maxillary sinus
    D. Frontal sinus
    E. Anterior ethmoid sinus

50. All of the following are correct except one. Which one is the exception?
    A. The nasal cavity is an inferior relation of the frontal sinus.
    B. The supraorbital nerve, at least in part, provides sensory innervation to the frontal sinus.
    C. The posterior ethmoid sinus is an inferior relation of the frontal sinus.
    D. The frontal sinus drains into the middle meatus.
    E. The forehead is an anterior relation of the frontal sinus.

51. All of the following are correct except one. Which one is the exception?
    A. The posterior ethmoid artery, at least in part, supplies the sphenoid sinus.
    B. The anterior ethmoid nerve, at least in part, supplies the sphenoid sinus.
    C. The sphenoid sinus drains into the sphenoethmoidal recess.
    D. The nasal cavity is an anterior relation of the sphenoid sinus.
    E. The hypophyseal fossa is a superior relation of the sphenoid sinus.

52. All of the following are correct except one. Which one is the exception?
    A. The orbit is a lateral relation of the ethmoid sinus.
    B. The frontal lobe of the brain is a posterior relation of the anterior ethmoid sinus.
    C. The ethmoid sinuses are supplied, at least in part, by the posterior lateral nasal branches.
    D. The ethmoid sinuses are supplied, at least in part, by the anterior ethmoid nerve.
    E. The ethmoid sinuses are supplied, at least in part, by the posterior ethmoid nerve.

53. All of the following are correct except one. Which one is the exception?
    A. The infraorbital nerve is a superior relation of the maxillary sinus.
    B. The nasal cavity is a medial relation of the maxillary sinus.
    C. The 2nd maxillary molar is an inferior relation of the maxillary sinus.
    D. The posterior superior alveolar nerve provides innervation to, at least in part, the maxillary sinus.
    E. The ostium of the maxillary sinus is located on the inferior part of the wall of the sinus.

QUESTIONS CHAPTER 13 *ORAL CAVITY*

54. All of the following boundaries of the oral cavity are correct except one. Which one is the exception?
    A. The superior boundary is the roof of the hard palate.
    B. The lateral boundary is the cheek.
    C. The posterior-superior boundary is the soft palate.
    D. The inferior boundary is the floor located along the lingual border of the mandible.
    E. The anterior border is the choanae.

55. All of the following statements concerning the hard palate are correct except one. Which one is the exception?
    A. Is composed of the palatal process of the maxilla
    B. Separates the oral cavity from the nasal cavity
    C. Is covered by a thin mucous membrane
    D. Is composed of the horizontal process of the palatine
    E. Has lateral transverse ridges called transverse rugae on the mucous membrane

ANSWERS
48 A
49 B
50 C
51 B
52 E
53 E
54 E
55 C

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

56. All of the following muscles of the soft palate are innervated by the pharyngeal plexus of nerves except one. Which one is the exception?
    A. Tensor veli palatini
    B. Levator veli palatini
    C. Musculus uvulae
    D. Palatoglossus
    E. Palatopharyngeus

57. All of the following statements concerning the surfaces of the tooth are correct except one. Which one is the exception?
    A. The labial surface is the surface of the anterior teeth that is closest to the lip.
    B. The mesial surface is the surface closest to the midline of the dental arch.
    C. The incisal surface is the cutting edge of the anterior teeth.
    D. The distal surface is the surface farthest from the midline of the dental arch.
    E. The buccal surface is the surface of the anterior teeth that is furthest from the cheek.

58. All of the following are involved in the autonomic pathway to the sublingual gland except one. Which one is the exception?
    A. Chorda tympani nerve
    B. Inferior salivatory nucleus
    C. Superior salivatory nucleus
    D. Submandibular ganglion
    E. All of the above (A-D) are involved in the autonomic pathway to the sublingual gland.

QUESTIONS CHAPTER 14 *TONGUE*

59. Which of the following nerves does not provide any sensory innervation to the tongue?
    A. Lingual nerve
    B. Glossopharyngeal nerve
    C. Hypoglossal nerve
    D. Internal laryngeal nerve
    E. All of the above (A-D) provide some sensory innervation to the tongue.

60. Which vessel is responsible for rapid absorption of drugs such as nitroglycerin?
    A. Sublingual artery
    B. Sublingual vein
    C. Deep lingual artery
    D. Deep lingual vein
    E. Dorsal lingual artery

61. All of the following statements concerning the hypoglossal nerve are correct except one. Which one is the exception?
    A. Innervates the intrinsic muscles of the tongue
    B. Exits the skull through the hypoglossal canal
    C. Lies superficial to the lingual artery
    D. Passes deep to the hyoglossus muscle
    E. Innervates the styloglossus

62. A patient with a lesion of the left hypoglossal nerve will present with which of the following signs?
    A. Loss of general sensation over the anterior 2/3rds of the left side of the tongue
    B. Partial loss of taste
    C. Deviation of the tongue to the left upon protrusion
    D. Loss of general sensation from the left margin of the tongue
    E. Deviation of the tongue to the right upon protrusion

63. All of the following statements concerning the lingual artery are correct except one. Which one is the exception?
    A. Branches off of the external carotid artery
    B. Lies superficial to the middle constrictor
    C. Lies superficial to the hyoglossus
    D. Has a sublingual branch
    E. Has a deep lingual branch

ANSWERS
56 A
57 E
58 B
59 C
60 D
61 D
62 C
63 C

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

QUESTIONS CHAPTER 15 *PHARYNX*

64. All of the following are correct except one. Which one is the exception?
    A. The superior constrictor attaches to the pterygoid hamulus.
    B. The stylopharyngeus is innervated by the glossopharyngeal nerve.
    C. The middle constrictor attaches to the hyoid bone.
    D. The ostium of the auditory tube is located in the nasopharynx.
    E. All of the above (A-D) are correct.

65. All of the following are correct except one. Which one is the exception?
    A. The tongue is the floor of the nasopharynx.
    B. The ostium of the auditory tube is located on the lateral wall of the nasopharynx.
    C. The anterior relation of the nasopharynx is the choanae.
    D. The superior constrictor attaches to the pterygomandibular raphe.
    E. The vallecula is the space between the posterior 1/3rd of the tongue and the epiglottis.

66. Which of the following does not pass through the pharyngeal aperture, which is located superior to the superior constrictor?
    A. Ascending pharyngeal artery
    B. Ascending palatine artery
    C. Levator veli palatini
    D. Auditory tube
    E. Tensor veli palatini

67. All of the following either contribute to, or are innervated by, the pharyngeal plexus except one. Which one is the exception?
    A. Spinal portion of the spinal accessory nerve
    B. Palatopharyngeus
    C. Vagus nerve
    D. Middle constrictor
    E. Salpingopharyngeus

68. Which of the following vessels that supplies the pharynx is a branch of the facial artery?
    A. Ascending pharyngeal
    B. Ascending palatine
    C. Pharyngeal
    D. Superior thyroid
    E. Inferior thyroid

QUESTIONS CHAPTER 16 *LARYNX*

69. All of the following statements concerning the larynx are correct except one. Which one is the exception?
    A. The larynx is formed by 9 cartilages.
    B. The larynx is larger in females.
    C. The larynx is located between cervical vertebrae C3-C6.
    D. A lateral relation of the larynx is the carotid sheath.
    E. A superior relation of the larynx is the vallecula.

70. Which muscle(s) act(s) as an antagonist to the transverse arytenoid muscle?
    A. Oblique arytenoid muscle
    B. Thyroarytenoid
    C. Posterior cricoarytenoid muscle
    D. Cricothyroid muscle
    E. A and C only

71. All of the following statements concerning the larynx are correct except one. Which one is the exception?
    A. The primary site for establishing an emergency airway is the median cricothyroid ligament.
    B. The epiglottis is composed of elastic cartilage.
    C. The cricoid cartilage is the only cartilage of the larynx that is a complete ring.
    D. The cranial nerve responsible for innervation of the larynx is the vagus (X).
    E. All of the above (A-D) are correct.

ANSWERS
64 E
65 A
66 E
67 A
68 B
69 B
70 C
71 E

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

72. The free edge of the quadrangular membrane is also known as the:
    A. Conus elasticus
    B. Vocal ligament
    C. Vocalis
    D. Cricovocal membrane
    E. Vestibular ligament

73. All of the following statements concerning the true vocal cord are correct except one. Which one is the exception?
    A. Is made up, at least in part, by the conus elasticus
    B. Is located inferior to the false vocal cord
    C. Is made up, at least in part, by the vocal ligament
    D. Receives its sensory innervation from the glossopharyngeal nerve
    E. All of the above (A-D) are correct.

QUESTIONS CHAPTER 17 *CERVICAL FASCIA*

74. All of the following are contents of the carotid sheath except one. Which one is the exception?
    A. Vagus nerve
    B. Common carotid artery
    C. Internal jugular vein
    D. External carotid artery
    E. Internal carotid artery

75. All of the following are contents of the sublingual space except one. Which one is the exception?
    A. Hypoglossal nerve
    B. Lingual nerve
    C. Sublingual gland
    D. Submandibular duct
    E. Anterior digastric

76. All of the following statements concerning the lateral pharyngeal space are correct except one. Which one is the exception?
    A. Is continuous with the retropharyngeal space posteriorly
    B. Is continuous with the submandibular space anteriorly
    C. Extends from the base of the skull to the hyoid bone
    D. Contains the masseter
    E. Bounded medially by the buccopharyngeal fascia

QUESTIONS CHAPTER 18 *EAR*

77. All of the following statements concerning the middle ear are correct except one. Which one is the exception?
    A. The roof of the middle ear is made by the tegmen tympani.
    B. The auditory tube is located in the anterior wall of the middle ear.
    C. The promontory is located along the medial wall of the middle ear.
    D. The epitympanic recess is located along the posterior wall.
    E. The tendon of the tensor tympani enters the middle ear through the medial wall.

78. All of the following are parts of the membranous labyrinth except one. Which one is the exception?
    A. Cochlear duct
    B. Saccule
    C. Utricle
    D. Semicircular canals
    E. Malleus

79. All of the following vessels supply the external ear except one. Which one is the exception?
    A. Superficial temporal artery
    B. Deep auricular artery
    C. Posterior auricular artery
    D. Anterior tympanic artery
    E. Middle meningeal artery

ANSWERS

72 E
73 D
74 D
75 E
76 D
77 D
78 E
79 E

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

QUESTIONS CHAPTER 19 *EYE AND ORBIT*

80. All of the following bones make up the medial wall of the orbit except one. Which one is the exception?
    A. Maxilla
    B. Lacrimal
    C. Ethmoid
    D. Nasal
    E. All of the above (A-D) make up the medial wall of the orbit.

81. Which of the following is a boundary of the optic foramen?
    A. Ethmoid
    B. Greater wing of the sphenoid
    C. Lesser wing of the sphenoid
    D. Frontal
    E. Lacrimal

82. The greater wing of the sphenoid bone and maxilla are separated by which of the following?
    A. Optic foramen
    B. Dorsum sella
    C. Inferior orbital fissure
    D. Superior orbital fissure
    E. None of the above

83. If the inferior oblique muscle is paralyzed, in what position will the eye point?
    A. Up and out
    B. Down and in
    C. Down and out
    D. Up and in
    E. Up

QUESTIONS CHAPTER 20 *AUTONOMICS OF THE HEAD AND NECK*

84. All of the following are correct except one. Which one is the exception?
    A. A collection of nerve cell bodies in the peripheral nervous system is called a ganglion.
    B. Glands are innervated by the autonomic nervous system.
    C. Skeletal muscle is innervated by the autonomic nervous system.
    D. Cardiac Muscle is innervated by the autonomic nervous system.
    E. A preganglionic sympathetic neuron begins in the central nervous system.

85. At vertebral level L1, what is the connection to the sympathetic chain that allows preganglionic sympathetic fibers to enter?
    A. Grey ramus
    B. White ramus
    C. Dorsal ramus
    D. Ventral ramus
    E. None of the above (A-D)

86. All of the following are correct except one. Which one is the exception?
    A. White ramus is unmyelinated.
    B. Parasympathetics are also called craniosacral fibers.
    C. The nervus intermedius contains preganglionic parasympathetic fibers.
    D. Preganglionic fibers are myelinated.
    E. Gray ramus contains postganglionic parasympathetic nerves.

87. The greater petrosal nerve carries
    A. Preganglionic parasympathetic fibers
    B. Postganglionic sympathetic fibers
    C. Postganglionic parasympathetic fibers
    D. Preganglionic sympathetic fibers
    E. A and B only
    F. B and C only
    G. A and D only

ANSWERS

80 D
81 C
82 C
83 B
84 C
85 B
86 A
87 A

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

88. Preganglionic parasympathetics are found in all of the following nerves except one. Which one is the exception?
A. Tympanic branch of IX
B. Tympanic plexus
C. Lesser petrosal
D. Chorda tympani
E. All of the above (A-D) contain preganglionic parasympathetics.

QUESTIONS CHAPTER 21 *INTRAORAL INJECTIONS*

89. All of the following areas are anesthetized in an inferior alveolar nerve block except one. Which one is the exception?
A. All mandibular teeth
B. Epithelium of posterior 1/3rd of the tongue
C. All lingual gingiva
D. Skin of the lower lip
E. All lingual mucosa

90. Which of the following injections is considered a "blind injection?"
A. Inferior alveolar nerve block
B. Gow-Gates nerve block
C. Akinosi nerve block
D. Mental nerve block
E. Posterior superior alveolar nerve block

91. Which of the following nerve blocks has a significant risk for a hematoma of the pterygoid plexus?
A. Inferior alveolar nerve block
B. Nasopalatine nerve block
C. Infraorbital nerve block
D. Greater palatine nerve block
E. Posterior superior alveolar nerve block

QUESTIONS CHAPTER 22 *INTRODUCTION TO THE UPPER LIMB, BACK, THORAX, AND ABDOMEN*

92. The lateral cord of the brachial plexus is derived from:
A. Ventral rami of C5-T1
B. Ventral rami of C5-C7
C. Ventral rami of C8-T1
D. Ventral rami of C7 only
E. Dorsal rami of C5-T1

93. All of the following are contents of the posterior mediastinum except one. Which one is the exception?
A. Esophagus
B. Lesser splanchnic nerve
C. Thoracic duct
D. Bronchial arteries
E. Trachea

94. All of the following are contents of the superior mediastinum except one. Which one is the exception?
A. Inferior vena cava
B. Trachea
C. Thoracic duct
D. Vagus
E. Esophagus

95. From what immediate vessel does the inferior suprarenal artery arise?
A. Inferior phrenic artery
B. Abdominal aorta
C. Renal artery
D. Lumbar artery
E. Gonadal artery

ANSWERS
88 E
89 B
90 C
91 E
92 B
93 E
94 A
95 C

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

96. Which of the following structures is a retroperitoneal organ?
A. Transverse colon
B. Spleen
C. Head and neck of pancreas
D. 4th part of the duodenum
E. Kidney
F. C and D only
G. C and E only
H. B, C, and E only
I. A, C, and E only
J. C, D, and E only

97. The nerve that innervates the muscle that INITIATES Abduction is which of the following?
A. Upper subscapular
B. Dorsal scapular
C. Suprascapular
D. Axillary
E. Lower subscapular

98. Which of the following nerves arise as immediate branches from the upper trunk of the brachial plexus?
A. Suprascapular
B. Subclavius
C. Supraclavicular
D. Dorsal scapular
E. Long thoracic
F. A & B only
G. A & C only
H. B & C only
I. A, B, & C only
J. A, B, C, & D only

99. Which of the following structures is found between the right lobe of the liver and the quadrate lobe of the liver?
A. Ligamentum venosum
B. Ligamentum arteriosum
C. Inferior vena cava
D. Gallbladder
E. A & B

100. Which of the following attach to the Lesser tubercle?
A. Teres minor
B. Supraspinatus
C. Subscapularis
D. Infraspinatus
E. A, B, & C only

ANSWERS

96 J
97 C
98 F
99 D
100 C

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Appendix B
Lymphatics

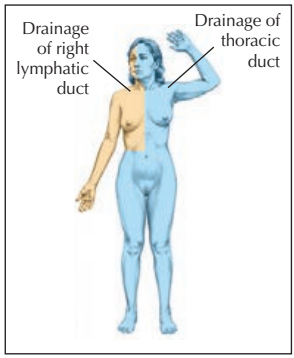
Overview and the Lymphatic System 634

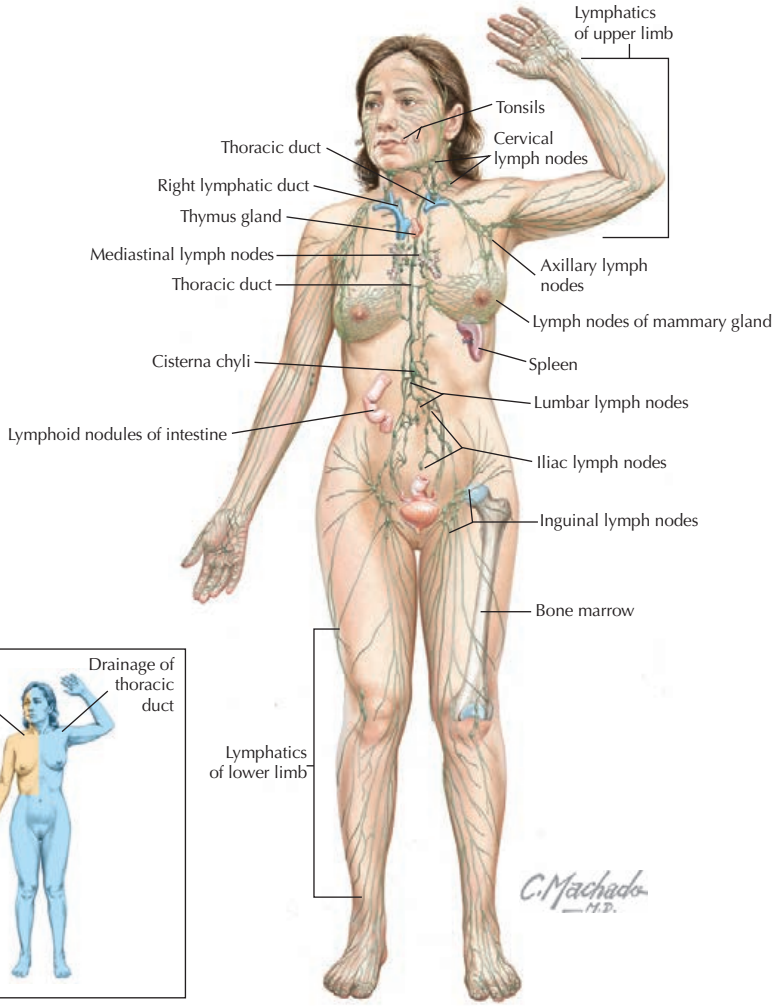
Lymph Vessels and Nodes of Head and Neck 635

Lymphatic Drainage of Mouth and Pharynx 636

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

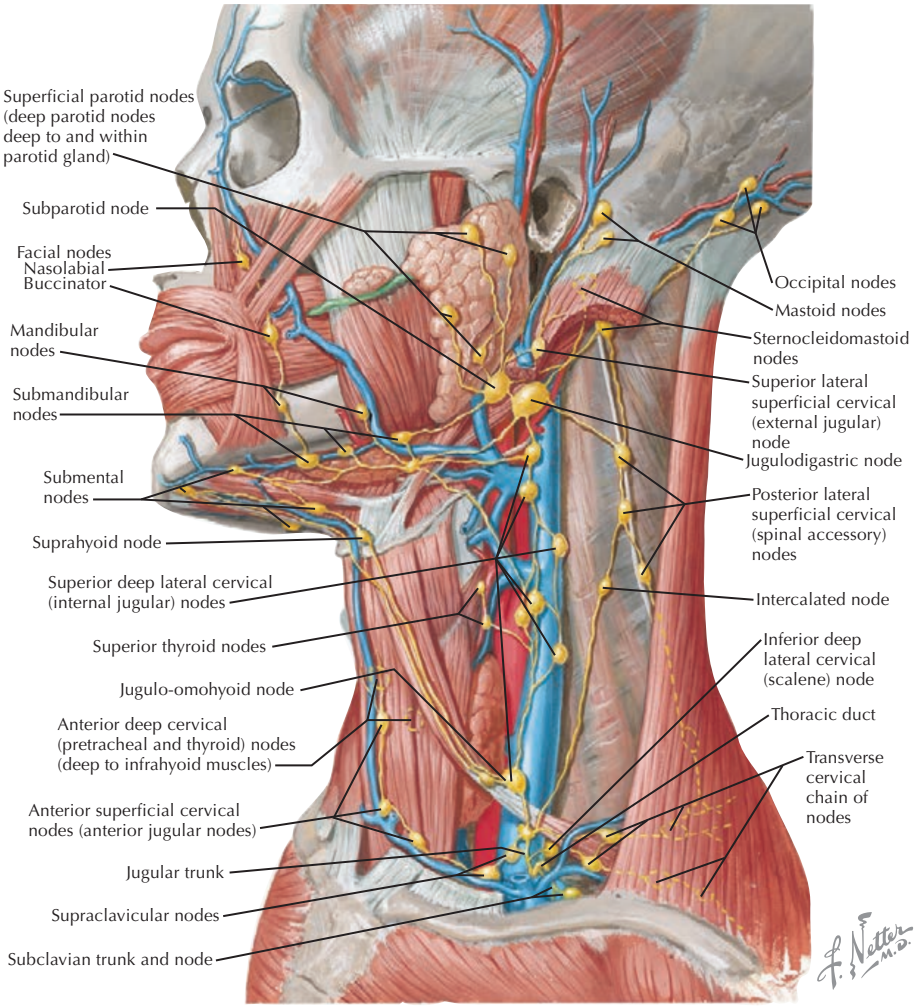
Lymphatics



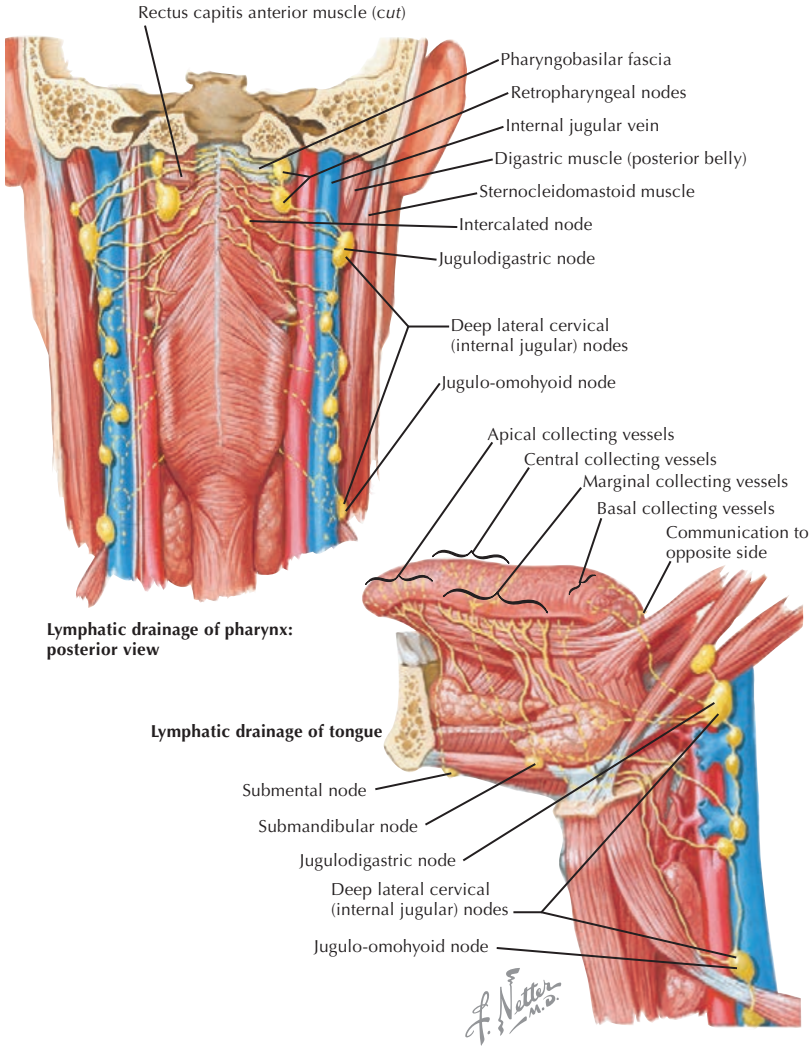


WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Lymphatics



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان



WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Index

A
Abdomen. *See also* Abdominal wall
  arterial supply to
    paired parietal, 609, 609f
    paired visceral, 609, 609f
    unpaired visceral, 607-608, 607-608f
  bones of, 566t, 567f
  duodenum in, 590, 590f
  gallbladder and duct system in, 597, 597f
  ileum in, 591, 592f
  jejunum in, 591, 592f
  kidneys in, 599, 600f
  large intestine in, 593-594, 594f
  liver in, 595, 595f
  muscles of, 580t, 581f
  overview of, 556t, 557f
  pancreas in, 596, 596f
  spleen in, 598, 598f
  stomach in, 589, 589f
  suprarenal glands in, 599, 600f
  ureters in, 599, 600f
  viscera of, venous drainage from, 610-611, 610f
Abdominal wall
  anterolateral, overview of, 556t, 557f
  posterior
    nerve supply to, 617, 617f
    venous drainage from, 612, 612f
Abducens (VI) nerve
  eye and orbit innervation by, 495t, 496f
  fibers and functional column types of, 80f, 80t
  ophthalmoplegia and, 103, 103f, 183
  in peripheral nervous system, 74, 74f
Abductor digiti minimi muscle, 575t, 576f
Abductor pollicis brevis muscle, 574f, 574t, 575t, 576f
Abductor pollicis longus muscle, 574f, 574t
Abscesses, 449
Accessory meningeal artery, 212t, 213f
Accessory nerve. *See* Spinal accessory (XI) nerve
Acute otitis externa, 476, 476f
Acute otitis media, 477, 477f
Acyclovir, 376
Adam's apple, 423t
Adenocarcinoma, of parotid gland, 199, 199f
Adenoids, 377, 404t, 405f
Adenoma, of parotid gland, 199
Adrenal glands, 599, 600f
Afferent general or special functional columns, of cranial nerves, 74f, 75, 75f
Akinosi nerve block, 544t, 545f
Ala, of nose, 268f
Alar, deep layer of deep fascia and, 108
Alar branches of facial artery, 271t
Alar cartilage, 268, 269f, 278f
Alar fascia, 440f, 441t
Alar fibrofatty tissue, 269f
Alar ligament, 59t, 60f
Allergic rhinitis, 297, 297f
Alveolar process
  of mandible, 45t
  of maxilla, 43t, 44f, 110f
Alveolar ridge, 24f
Alveolus, 23, 63
Amacrine cell, 490f
Ametropias, 510f
Ampulla, of semicircular canals, 459t
Anatomic crown, 342t
Anatomic root, 342t
Anconeus muscle, 571t
Aneurysms, nerves affected by, 103, 103f
Angular artery, 168f, 169t, 170f, 172f, 283f
Angular part of levator labii superioris muscle, 162t
Angular tract of Eisler, 187t
Angular vein
  from eye and orbit, 502t, 503f
  from face, 168f, 173t, 174f
  from nose, 272f, 272t
Ankyloglossia, 397, 397f
Ankylosis, of TMJ, 245, 246f
Ansa cervicalis
  carotid triangle and, 115t, 116f
  infrahyoid muscles and, 128t
  muscular triangle and, 117t, 118f
  neck innervation by, 145, 145t, 146f
  omohyoid muscle and, 127t
Antebrachium, muscles of, 572t, 573f, 574f, 574t
Anterior auricular artery, 168f
Anterior auricular muscle, 166t, 167f
Anterior ciliary artery, 500t
Anterior cranial fossa, 277t
Anterior deep cervical lymph nodes, 635f
Anterior deep temporal artery
  to infratemporal fossa, 212t, 213f
  to masticatory muscles, 228t, 229f
  to temporal fossa, 206f, 206t
Anterior deep temporal nerve, 209f
Anterior deep temporal vein, 207t, 230t
Anterior digastric muscle, 82f, 82t, 112f, 113, 114f
Anterior division of anterior deep temporal branch of mandibular nerve
  course of, 89t
    infratemporal fossa, 216t, 217f, 218f
    masticatory muscles, 231t, 232f
    temporal fossa, 208t
Anterior division of buccal branches of mandibular nerve
  course of, 89t
    face, 178f, 178t
    infratemporal fossa, 216t, 217f, 218f
    parotid bed, 186, 186f, 189f
Anterior division of lateral pterygoid branch of mandibular nerve, 89t, 216t, 217f
Anterior division of medial pterygoid branch of mandibular nerve, 89t, 216t, 217f
Anterior division of posterior deep temporal branch of mandibular nerve
  course of, 89t
    infratemporal fossa, 216t, 217f, 218f
    masticatory muscles, 231t, 232f
    temporal fossa, 208t
    temporomandibular joint, 242t
Anterior ethmoid foramen
  anterior view, 55f, 55t
  in orbit, 482t
  in superior view of cranial base, 51t, 52f
Anterior ethmoidal artery
  to ethmoid sinuses, 309f, 309t
  to eye and orbit, 500t, 501f
  to frontal sinuses, 305f, 305t
  to nasal cavity, 281t, 282f
Anterior ethmoidal nerve
  internal and external nasal branches of, 285f, 288f, 289f
  in nasociliary branch of trigeminal nerve ophthalmic division, 84t, 85f, 88f
Anterior ethmoidal nerve, course of
  ethmoid sinuses, 310f, 310t
  eye and orbit, 493f, 493t
  nasal cavity, 287t

Page numbers followed by "f" indicate figures and "t" indicate tables.

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Index

Anterior jugular vein, 117t, 119t
Anterior longitudinal ligament, 409f
Anterior mallear fold, 455t, 458f
Anterior median fissure, of spinal cord, 71f
Anterior nares, 268, 268f
Anterior nasal spine, 269f
Anterior superior alveolar artery, 312f, 312t, 355t, 356f
Anterior superior alveolar nerve
  course of, 87t, 88f
    maxillary sinus, 313f, 313t
    teeth, 359t
  intraoral injections and, 546
  nasal branch of, 288f
Anterior superior alveolar nerve block, 552f, 552t
Anterior superior alveolar vein, 356t
Anterior triangle
  general information about, 111, 111-112f
  as neck descriptor, 108
  subdivisions of
    carotid, 115, 115t, 116f
    muscular, 117, 117t, 118f
    submandibular, 113, 113t, 114f
    submental, 119, 119f, 119t
Anterior tympanic artery
  to external ear, 468t, 469f
  to infratemporal fossa, 212t, 213-214f
  to middle ear, 470t, 471f
  to temporomandibular joint, 240f, 240t
Antihelix, of auricle, 455t
Antitragus, 455t, 456f
Antrostomy, 321
Apex of nose, 268
Apex of root of a tooth, 342t
Apex process of arytenoid cartilage, 425f, 425t
Apical foramina, 343f
Apical ligament of dens, 59t, 60f
Aponeurosis, 156f, 156t, 158f
Appendix, 593, 594f
Arachnoid, of spine, 71f
Arachnoid foveae, 28t
Arthritis, of TMJ, 245, 246f
Articular disc, 236, 236f, 237t
Aryepiglottic fold, 403f, 405f, 418f
Aryepiglottic muscle, 429f, 429t
Arytenoid cartilages, 409f, 422f, 422t, 425f, 425t, 427f
Arytenoid swelling, tongue development and, 17f, 17t
Ascending colon, 593, 594f
Ascending palatine artery
  to oral cavity floor, 354t, 355f
  to palate, 352t, 353f
  to pharynx, 411t, 412f
Ascending pharyngeal artery
  carotid triangle and, 115t, 116f
  to neck, 132, 132t, 134t, 135f
  to palate, 352t, 353f
  to pharynx, 411t, 412f
Asterion, parietal bones at, 29t
Astigmatism, 510, 510f
Astrocytes, 67, 67f
Atlantoaxial joint, major internal ligaments for, 60f
Atlanto-occipital membrane, 58f, 58t, 122
Atlas (C1)
  as cervical vertebrae, 56f, 56t
  Jefferson fracture of, 64, 64f
  rotary subluxation of, torticollis and, 150f
  suboccipital triangle and, 122, 122f
  transverse ligament of, 59t, 60f
Atrium, of nose, 268
Atrophy, of tongue, 106f, 398, 398f
Auditory tube. *See* Pharyngotympanic tube
Auricle, 455t, 456f
Auricular branch of vagus (X) nerve, 139t, 463t, 465f
Auricular group, of muscles of facial expression, 166t, 167f
Auricular muscle, 166t
Auricular tubercle (of Darwin), 456f
Autonomic nervous system, 511-534. *See also* Parasympathetic nervous system; Sympathetic nervous system
  2-neuron chain system, 512
  clinical correlate for, 534, 534f
Autonomic nervous system *(Continued)*
  divisions of, 512, 515t
  functions of, 515t, 516-518f
  general information about, 512, 513-514f
  parotid gland innervation by, 194t
  peripheral nervous system and, 72
  salivary glands in, 368f, 368t, 369f, 370t, 371f
  vagus nerve in, 533f, 533t
Axis (C2), 56f, 56t
  fractures of, 64, 64f
Axons, 66, 66f

B

Back
  bones of, 562t, 563f
  muscles of, 577t, 578f
Bacterial infections, 196, 200
Basilar artery, 103, 103f
Basilar membrane, 454f, 461f
Bell's palsy, 93t, 196, 197f, 538t, 544t
Biceps brachii muscle, 571t, 572f
Bilaminar zone, of TMJ, 238t
Bipolar neurons, 66, 66f
Bitemporal hemianopsia, 78t
Black hairy tongue, 380, 381f
Bleeding, mandibular fractures and, 63f
Blepharoplasty, 164t
Blind spot, 486
Bone(s), 25-64
  articulations of, 27f, 27t
  cervical vertebrae, 56-60, 562t, 563f
  derived from pharyngeal arches, 4, 5t, 6f, 6t
  fractures of, 62-64, 62-64f, 154
  general information about, 26
  intraoral injections and
    mandibular, 537, 537f
    maxillary, 546, 546-547f
  skull. *See* Skull
Bone marrow, 634f
Brachial plexus
  neck innervation by, 147f, 147t
  posterior triangle and, 120t, 121f
  in root of the neck, 125t
  upper limb innervation by, 614-616t, 616f
Brachialis muscle, 571t, 572f
Brachiocephalic veins, 125t, 126f
Brachioradialis muscle, 574f, 574t
Brachium, 571f, 571t, 602, 602f
Brain, 68f, 69, 69f
Brainstem, 69
Bregma, 29f, 29t
Buccal artery
  to face, 169t, 170f
  to infratemporal fossa, 212t, 213f
  to lips and cheeks, 328t, 329f
  to masticatory muscles, 228t, 229f
Buccal branches of facial nerve, 161t, 180t, 181f, 330f, 330t
Buccal branches of mandibular nerve, 331f, 331t
Buccal nerve, 537, 539f, 540f
Buccal shelf, 45t
Buccal surface of teeth, 341t, 342f
Buccal vein, 173t, 230t, 329f, 329t
Buccinator lymph nodes, 635f
Buccinator muscle
  cheeks and, 327t
  facial expression and, 162t, 163f
  long buccal nerve block and, 540f
  mastication and, 224f, 226f, 227f, 233
  oral cavity floor and, 339f
  pharyngeal muscles and, 408f, 409f
  soft palate and, 337f
Buccopharyngeal fascia, 409f, 440f, 441t, 445f

C

C cells, 123
Calcarine fissure, 78f
Calcitonin, 123
Caldwell-Luc procedure, 321, 321f
Camper's layer, of abdominal wall, 556t, 557f
Canines (cuspids), 342f, 344t, 345f, 348f, 348t

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Index

Capsule
of inner ear, 460f
of parotid gland, 186, 187t, 188t, 199, 202f, 445t
of temporomandibular joint, 238t, 239f, 240f, 242f, 243
of vertebral joints, 58f, 60f
Carbamazepine, 182
Cardiac vagal branches of vagus nerve, 139t, 140t
Caries, 373, 373f
Caroticotympanic branch of internal carotid artery, 470t, 471f
Carotid arteries. *See* Common carotid arteries; External carotid artery; Internal carotid artery
Carotid canal
in inferior view of cranial base, 53t, 54f
in superior view of cranial base, 51t, 52f
temporal bone and, 32t, 33f
Carotid sheath, 108, 442f, 442t
fascial space and, 446t, 447f
Carotid triangle, 109f, 111, 115, 115t, 116f
Carpal bones, 561f, 561t
Carpus, 604, 604f
Cartilage, derived from pharyngeal arches, 5t, 6f, 6t
Cartilaginous neurocranium, 10, 12t
Cauda equina, 70f
Cavernous sinus
eye and orbit drained by, 502t, 503f
face drained by, 173, 173f, 174f, 174t
sphenoid bone and, 34t
sphenoidal sinus and, 314, 314f
Cavernous sinus syndrome, 183, 184f
Cecum, 593, 594f
Celiac artery, 607, 607f
Cellulitis, 317, 446t, 448
Cementum, 343t
Central incisors, 342f, 344t, 345f, 349f, 349t
Central nervous system, 517f
brain and, 68f, 69, 69f
spinal cord and, 70, 70-71f
Central retinal artery, 485f, 500t, 501f
Central retinal vein, 485f
Central sulcus (of Rolando), 68f, 69
Cerebellum, 30t, 69, 69f
Cerebral aneurysms, ophthalmoplegia and, 103, 103f
Cerebral nerves. *See* Cranial nerves
Cerebrovascular accidents, 104
Cerebrum, 68f, 69
Cervical branch of facial nerve, 180t, 181f, 189f
Cervical emphysema, 450, 450f
Cervical enlargement, of spinal cord, 70, 70f
Cervical fascia, 437-450
clinical correlates for, 448-450, 448-450f
deep, 441-442t, 442f
general information about, 438, 438-439f
spaces of, 443, 443f
infrahyoid, 446t
suprahyoid, 444-445t, 445f
traversing length of neck, 446t, 447f
superficial, 440, 440f
Cervical ganglia, 148, 148f
Cervical line, of tooth, 343t
Cervical lymph nodes, 634f
Cervical plexus
facial innervation by, 175, 175f, 179f, 179t
neck innervation by, 143, 144f, 145, 145t, 146f
scalp innervation by, 159, 159t, 160f
Cervical spinal nerves, 70, 70f, 73f
ventral rami of, 121f, 128t
Cervical vertebrae
fractures of, 64, 64f
major ligaments of
external, 58f, 58t
internal, 59t, 60f
parts and characteristics of, 56f, 56t, 57f, 562t, 563f
Cheeks. *See also* Facial expression
arterial supply to, 328t, 329f
development of, 13t
motor innervation of, 330f, 330t
as oral cavity boundary, 337, 338f
sensory innervation of, 331f, 331t
Cheeks *(Continued)*
structural features of, 327t
venous drainage from, 329f, 329t
Children, inferior alveolar nerve block in, 538t
Choanae (posterior nares), 16f, 277f, 277t, 404t, 405f
Chorda tympani branch of facial nerve, course of
infratemporal fossa, 210, 219t, 220f, 221f
for lacrimal, nasal, palatine, pharyngeal, submandibular, and sublingual glands, 525t
oral cavity floor, 363t, 636f
salivary glands, 370t
tongue, 391f, 391t
Chorda tympani nerve, 456f, 457t, 458f, 539f
Choroid, 485f, 486, 490f
Chromosome 5, Treacher Collins syndrome and, 21
Chromosome 22, DiGeorge syndrome and, 22
Ciliary body, 485f, 486, 490f
Ciliary ganglion
characteristics of, 521t
GVE fibers and, 80t
nerve roots connected to, 497t, 498f
nerve supply to nasal cavity and, 289f
in orbit, 490f, 493f
Ciliary muscle, 81f
Ciliary processes, 485f
Cingulum, 343t
Circular esophageal muscle, 403f, 409f
Circumvallate papillae. *See* Vallate papillae
Class II malocclusion, inferior alveolar nerve block in, 538t
Class III malocclusion, inferior alveolar nerve block in, 538t
Clavicle, 112f, 120, 558f, 558t
Cleft lip and palate, 23, 24f
Clinical crown, 342t
Clinical root, 342t
Clivus, 30t, 34t, 35f, 60f
Closed angle glaucoma, 507
Coccygeal area, of spinal cord, 70
Coccygeal spinal nerves, 70, 70f, 73f
Coccyx, 70f, 562t, 563f
Cochlea, 454f, 459t
Cochlear duct, 459t, 460f, 461f
Cochlear nerve, 467f, 467t
Collateral ligaments, 238t
Commissure of lips, 268f, 327f, 327t
Common carotid arteries, 125t, 135f, 158f, 168f. *See also* External carotid artery; Internal carotid artery
Common facial vein, 115t, 116f
Common tendinous ring, 487t, 488f
Complete cleft of lip and palate, 23, 24f
Compressor naris muscle, 164t
Concha bullosa, 298f
Conchae
of auricle, 455t, 456f
nasal
ethmoid labyrinth and, 38t
in facial skeleton, 155f
inferior, 41f, 41t, 42f, 279f, 298f
lacrimal bones and, 36f, 36t
on lateral walls, 276, 276f
middle, 279f, 279t, 280f, 298f
as nasal cavity boundary, 277t, 278f
structures articulating with, 27f, 27t
structures drained by, 279-280f, 279t
Condylar canal, 51t, 52f, 53t, 54f
Condylar process, 45t, 46f, 110f, 210t
Cone of light, 456f
Cones, retinal, 78t, 79f, 490f
Connective tissue
of the scalp, 156f, 156t, 159t
structures, derived from pharyngeal arches, 5t
Consciousness, trigeminal (V) nerve and, 82t
Constrictor muscles. *See* Pharyngeal constrictor muscles
Conus elasticus, 428f, 428t
Conus medullaris, 70f
Coracobrachialis muscle, 571t
Corniculate cartilage, 422f, 422t, 427f, 427t
Corniculate tubercle, 403f
Coronoid arch, 537
Coronoid notch, 538t, 539f

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Index

Coronoid process, 45t, 46f, 63, 110f
Corpus callosum, 69f
Corrugator supercilii muscle, 164t, 165f
Corti, spiral organ of, 95f, 95t, 461f
Costal facets, 57f
Costocervical artery, 132, 132t, 133f
Cranial nerves, 74-102. *See also* Neuroanatomy
  I (olfactory). *See* Olfactory (I) nerves
  II (optic). *See* Optic (II) nerve
  III (oculomotor). *See* Oculomotor (III) nerve
  IV (trochlear). *See* Trochlear (IV) nerve
  V (trigeminal). *See* Trigeminal (V) nerve
  VI (abducens). *See* Abducens (VI) nerve
  VII (facial). *See* Facial (VII) nerve
  VIII (vestibulocochlear). *See* Vestibulocochlear (VIII) nerve
  IX (glossopharyngeal). *See* Glossopharyngeal (IX) nerve
  X (vagus). *See* Vagus (X) nerve
  XI (spinal accessory). *See* Spinal accessory (XI) nerve
  XII (hypoglossal). *See* Hypoglossal (XII) nerve
  clinical correlates for, 103-106, 103-106f
  derived from pharyngeal arches, 4, 5t
  fibers and functional column types of, 75
  general information about, 74
  orbit innervation by, 489t, 491-494t, 491f, 493-494f
  peripheral nervous system and, 72
  spinal nerves and, 73f
Cranial part of spinal accessory nerve, 140t, 392t, 414, 415t
Craniosacral fibers, 515t
Cranium, development of, 10, 10t, 11f, 12t
Cretinism, 151
Cribriform plate
  of ethmoid bone, 38t, 39f, 40f, 77f
  foramina of, 51t, 52f
  as nasal cavity boundary, 277f, 277t
  nerve supply to nasal cavity and, 289f
Cricoarytenoid joint, 425t
Cricoid cartilage
  of larynx, 422f, 422t, 424f, 424t
  in neck, 109f, 110f, 112f
  pharynx and, 409f
Cricoid cartilage arch, 424f, 424t
Cricoid cartilage lamina, 424f, 424t
Cricopharyngeal portion of inferior constrictor muscle, 417, 418f
Cricopharyngeus muscle, 403f, 408f, 409f
Cricothyroid joint, 423f, 423t, 424f, 424t
Cricothyroid ligament, 423f
Cricothyroid membrane, 435, 435f
Cricothyroid muscles, 112f, 429f, 429t, 430f, 430t
Cricothyrotomy, 435, 435f
Cricotracheal ligament, 428t
Crista galli, 38t, 40f, 298f
Cristae, of semicircular canals, 95f, 95t
Crown, of a tooth, 342t, 343f
Cruciate ligament, 59t, 60f
Crura, of antihelix, 456f
Crus helix, 455t, 459t
Crux of helix, 456f
Cuneiform cartilage, 422t, 427f, 427t
Cuneiform tubercle, 403f
Cuneus, 69f
Cuspids, 342f, 344t, 345f, 348f, 348t
Cusps, of teeth, 343t

D

Danger space, 446t, 447f
Deep auricular artery
  to external ear, 468t, 469f
  to infratemporal fossa, 212t, 213-214f
  to temporomandibular joint, 240f, 240t
Deep cervical fascia. *See also* Carotid sheath
  carotid triangle and, 115
  deep layer of, 108, 109f, 441t
  general information about, 438, 438-439f
  investing layer of. *See* Superficial layer of deep cervical fascia
  middle layer of, 108, 441t
  superficial layer of. *See* Superficial layer of deep cervical fascia
Deep facial vein, 174t, 272f
Deep lateral cervical lymph nodes, 636f
Deep layer of deep cervical fascia, 108, 109f, 441t
Deep lingual artery, 326f, 340f, 384f, 394f, 394t
Deep lingual nerves, 326f, 340f
Deep lingual veins, 326f, 340f, 384t
Deep petrosal nerve, 292f
Deep temporal arteries, 170f, 206f, 206t
Deep temporal veins, 207t
Deglutition
  mastication and, 224, 233, 234f
  pharyngotympanic tube and, 407f
  process of, 417, 418f
  soft palate and, 334
Deltoid muscle, 569t, 570f
Dendrites, 66, 66f
Dens
  apical ligament of, 59t, 60f
  of axis, 56f, 56t, 57f
  fractures of, 64f
Dental caries, 373, 373f
Dental implants, 322, 322f
Denticulate ligament, 71f
Dentin, 343f, 343t
Dentoalveolar abscess, 449, 449f
Depressor anguli oris muscle, 161t, 163f
Depressor labii inferioris muscle, 162t, 163f
Depressor septi (nasi) muscle, 164t, 165f
Descending colon, 593, 594f
Descending palatine artery, 251f, 252t, 253f
Descending palatine vein, 254t
Diabetic retinopathy, 509, 509f
Diaphragm, 580t, 581f
Diencephalon, 69
Digastric fossa, 46f
Digastric muscle
  in anterior neck, 109f
  facial nerve and, 93t
  parotid gland and, 187t
  pharyngeal muscles and, 408f
  subdividing triangles by, 127f, 127t
  submental triangle and, 119
  in suprahyoid region, 111, 128t
Digastric triangle, 113. *See also* Submandibular triangle
DiGeorge syndrome, 22, 22f
Dilator naris muscle, 164t
Diplopia, 80t
Discriminative touch (sensation), 82t, 90-91t, 92f, 388t
Distal surface of teeth, 341t, 342f
Dorsal column, 72f
Dorsal interosseus muscles, 575t, 576f
Dorsal motor nucleus, 533t
Dorsal nasal artery
  to eye and orbit, 500t, 501f
  to face, 170f, 171t
  to nose, 270f, 270t
Dorsal rami
  cervical spinal nerves and, 122f
  in peripheral nervous system, 72f
  scalp innervation by, 159, 159t, 160f
  sensory innervation of neck by, 143, 143t, 144f
Dorsal root, 71f, 72f
Dorsal scapular artery, 120t, 121f, 132, 132t, 133f
Dorsum of nose, 268
Dorsum sellae, 34t, 35f
Drug reactions, 149
Dry mouth, 201, 201f
Duct system, of abdomen, 597, 597f
Ductus reuniens, 460f
Duodenum, 590, 590f
Dura mater, 28, 70f, 71f
Dystonia, 149

E

Ears, 451-478
  arterial supply to
    external, 468-469f, 468t
    inner, 472-473f, 472t
    middle, 470t, 471f

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Index

Ears *(Continued)*
clinical correlates for, 476-478, 476-478f
embryotic development of, 14f
general information about, 452, 453-454f
glossopharyngeal nerve to, 97t, 98f
muscles of, 462f, 462t
sensory innervation of
external, 463t, 464-465f
inner, 467f, 467t
middle, 466f, 466t
structures and boundaries of
external, 455t, 456f
inner, 459t, 460-461f
middle, 457-458f, 457t
Treacher Collins syndrome and, 21, 21f
venous drainage from, 474t, 475f
vestibulocochlear nerve to, 95-96f, 95t
Ecchymosis, 63f
Ectoderm, 2, 4, 4f
Edema, periorbital, 183, 184f
Edentulous patients, 538t
Edinger-Westphal nucleus
characteristics of, 521t
GVE fibers and, 80f, 80t, 81f
parasympathetics of the eye and, 497t, 498f
Efferent general or special functional columns, of cranial nerves, 74f, 75, 75f
Embryonic development, 1-24
clinical correlates for, 19-22f, 19-23, 24f
of face, 13, 13-14f, 13t
general information about, 2-3f
of palate, 15, 15-16f
of pharyngeal arches, 4, 4f
anomalies of, 20-22, 20-22f
derivatives of, 5t, 6f, 6t
of pharyngeal clefts, 7, 7f, 7t, 9t
of pharyngeal membranes, 7, 7f, 7t, 9t
of pharyngeal pouches, 7, 7f, 7t, 8f
anomalies of, 19, 19f
of skull, 10, 10-12t, 11-12f
of thyroid gland, 18, 18f
of tongue, 17f, 17t
Emissary vein, 284t
Enamel, of teeth, 343f, 343t
Endoderm, 2, 4, 4f
Endolymphatic duct, 459t, 460f
Endolymphatic sac, 460f
Endoscopic surgery, of paranasal sinuses, 323, 323f
Epicranius muscle, 165f
Epiglottic vallecula, 404t, 417, 418f
Epiglottis, 110f, 422f, 422t, 426f, 426t
embryotic development of, 17f, 17t
laryngopharynx and, 404t, 405f
swallowing and, 417, 418f
tongue and, 387f
Epistaxis, 294-295, 295f
Epithalamus, 69
Epitympanic recess, 457t, 458f
Erythroplasia, of tongue, 399
Esophagus, 15f, 108, 117t, 125t
Ethmoid artery, 270t. *See also* Anterior ethmoidal artery; Posterior ethmoidal artery
Ethmoid bone
anatomy of, 38t, 39f
in facial skeleton, 155f
nasal cavity and, 277f, 277t, 278f
orbital plate of, 483f
structures articulating with, 27f, 27t
Ethmoid bulla, 38t
Ethmoid cartilage, 15f
Ethmoid labyrinth, of ethmoid bone, 38t
Ethmoid sinuses
arterial supply to, 309f, 309t
Caldwell-Luc procedure in, 321f
drainage of, 303t
features of, 301-302f, 301t
general information about, 307, 307-308f
imaging of, 324f
nasal cavity and, 277t
Ethmoid sinuses *(Continued)*
nerve supply to, 310f, 310t
sinusitis in, 317
Ethmoidal branches of venous plexus, 284t
Exophthalmos, 183
Extensor carpi radialis brevis muscle, 574f, 574t
Extensor carpi radialis longus muscle, 574f, 574t
Extensor carpi ulnaris muscle, 574f, 574t
Extensor digiti minimi muscle, 574f, 574t
Extensor digitorum muscle, 574f, 574t
Extensor indicis muscle, 574f, 574t
External acoustic meatus, 455, 456f. *See also* External ear
embryotic development of, 9t
parotid gland and, 187t
External carotid artery
branches of, to ear, 473f
carotid triangle and, 115t, 116f
to external ear, 468f, 468t, 469f
to face, 158f, 168, 168f, 169t
to masticatory muscles, 228t
to neck, 132, 134t, 135f
to nose, 269f, 271f
to parotid space (bed), 135f, 190f, 190t
to tongue, 394t, 395f
External ear
arterial supply to, 468-469f, 468t
sensory innervation of, 463t, 464-465f
structures of, 455t, 456f
venous drainage from, 474t
External intercostal muscle, 579f, 579t
External jugular lymph nodes, 635f
External jugular vein, 120t, 121f
External laryngeal nerve, 433t, 434f
External nasal artery, 171t, 172f, 270f, 270t, 500t
External nasal nerve, 84t, 85f, 176t, 273t, 274f
External oblique muscle, 556t, 557f, 580t, 581f
External superior laryngeal nerve, 416f
Eyeball, 79f
Eyes. *See also* Orbit
anatomy of, 480, 480-481f
clinical correlates for, 507-510, 507-510f
components of, 484-485f, 486
general information about, 484
muscles of, 487t, 488-489f
parasympathetics of, 497t, 498f, 521t
sympathetics of, 498f, 499t, 522t

F

Face. *See also* Facial expression, muscles of
arterial supply to, 168, 168f
external carotid artery and branches in, 169t, 170f
ophthalmic artery and branches in, 171t, 172f
bones of, 155f
cervical plexus of, 179f, 179t
clinical correlates for, 182-183, 182-184f
embryotic development of, 13-14
fascia of, 438
general information about, 154, 154f, 155f
innervation of, general information about, 175, 175f
mandibular division of trigeminal nerve in, 178f, 178t
maxilla and, 43t
maxillary division of trigeminal nerve in, 176-177t, 177f
motor innervation of, 180t, 181f
ophthalmic division of trigeminal nerve in, 176t, 177f
sensory innervation of, 176-179t, 177-179f
venous drainage from, 173
communicating veins, 174f, 174t
deep veins, 174f, 174t
superficial veins, 173f, 173t
Facelifts, 154
Facial artery
to face, 168f, 169t, 170f, 172f, 174f
to lips and cheeks, 328t, 329f
to nasal cavity, 281, 282t, 292f
to neck, 132, 132t, 134t, 135f
to nose, 269, 270f, 271t
to oral cavity floor, 354t, 355f
to palate, 352t, 353f
submandibular triangle and, 113t, 114f

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Index

Facial canal, 457t
Facial expression. *See also* Cheeks; Lip(s); Scalp
  muscles of, 161-167
    auricular group, 166t, 167f
    embryotic development of, 15f
    facial nerve and, 93t
    general information about, 161
    nasal group, 164t, 165f
    neck group, 166t, 167f
    oral group, 161-162t, 163f
    orbital group, 164t
    scalp group, 166t, 167f
Facial (VII) nerve
  Bell's palsy and, 197f
  buccal branches of. *See* Buccal branches of facial nerve
  cervical branch of. *See* Cervical branch of facial nerve
  chorda tympani branch of, 210, 219t, 220f
  course of, 83f
    face, 180t, 181f
    middle ear, 466f, 466t
    nasal cavity, 293f
    oral cavity, 330f, 330t
  digastric muscle and, 127t, 128t
  fibers and functional column types of, 93t, 94f
  for lacrimal, nasal, palatine, pharyngeal, submandibular, and sublingual glands
    parasympathetics of, 525t, 526f
    sympathetics of, 527t, 528-529f
  mandibular branch of. *See* Mandibular branch of facial nerve
  marginal mandibular branch of. *See* Marginal mandibular branch of facial nerve
  as middle ear boundary, 458f
  within parotid bed, 186, 186f, 187f, 188t, 189f
  in peripheral nervous system, 73f, 74, 74f
  pharyngeal arches and, 4f, 5t
  salivary gland innervation by, 367t
  sensory facial innervation by, 175, 175f, 331f, 331t
  stylohyoid muscle and, 128t
  temporal branches of. *See* Temporal branches of facial nerve
  tongue innervated by, 389f
Facial surface of teeth, 341t
Facial vein
  from eye and orbit, 502t, 503f
  from face, 168f, 173t, 174f
  from neck, 136, 136t, 137f, 138f
  from nose, 272f, 272t
  submandibular triangle and, 113t, 114f
False pelvis, 566t
False ribs, 564t, 565f
Fasciculation, of tongue, 106f, 398, 398f
Fatty superficial layer, of abdominal wall, 556t, 557f
Fenestra cochleae, 457t, 458f, 460f, 461f
Fenestra vestibuli, 457t
Fibrous loop, for intermediate digastric tendon, 112f
Filiform papillae, 17f, 382t, 383f
Filium terminale, 70f
Fimbriated fold, 326f, 340f, 384f
Fissured tongue, 380, 381f
Fistulas, of parotid gland, 202, 202f
Flexor carpi radialis muscle, 572t, 573f
Flexor carpi ulnaris muscle, 572t, 573f
Flexor digitorum profundus muscle, 572t, 573f
Flexor digitorum superficialis muscle, 572t, 573f
Flexor pollicis brevis muscle, 575t, 576f
Flexor pollicis longus muscle, 572t, 573f
Floor
  of middle ear, 457t
  of oral cavity, 338t, 339-340f, 339t
    arterial supply to, 354t
    sensory innervation of, 362-363t, 363f
    venous drainage from, 356t
Fold of Passavant, 334. *See also* Passavant's ridge
Foliate papillae, 17f, 382t, 388f
Fontanelles, 11t, 29t, 48f, 49f
Food bolus. *See* Swallowing
Foramen cecum
  embryotic development of, 17f, 18
  frontal bone and, 28t
  in superior view of cranial base, 51t, 52f
  of tongue, 382t, 383f, 387f
Foramen lacerum, 51t, 52f, 53t, 54f
Foramen magnum, 31f, 51t, 52f, 53t, 54f
Foramen ovale
  in cranial base, 51t, 52f, 53t, 54f, 110f
  sphenoid bone and, 34t, 35f
Foramen rotundum
  pterygoid canal and, 263f
  pterygopalatine fossa and, 249t, 250f, 251f
  sphenoid bone and, 34t, 35f
  in superior view of cranial base, 51t, 52f
Foramen spinosum
  in cranial base, 51t, 52f, 53t, 54f, 110f
  sphenoid bone and, 34t, 35f
Foramen transversarium, 56f, 56t, 57f
Fordyce's spots, 327t, 337
Fornix, 404t
Fovea centralis, 486
Fractures
  of cervical vertebrae, 64, 64f
  Le Fort, 62, 62f
  mandibular, 63, 63f
  nasal, 154
  zygomatic, 61, 61f, 154
Frenula
  embryotic development of, 17f
  labial, 326f, 327t, 340f
  lingual, 338t, 340f
Frey's syndrome, 198, 198f
Frontal bone
  anatomy of, 28f, 28t
  in facial skeleton, 154, 154f, 155f
  orbital margin and, 482t, 483f
  root of nose and, 268, 269f
  structures articulating with, 27f, 27t
Frontal branch of trigeminal nerve ophthalmic division, 84t, 85f
Frontal lobe, 68f, 69
Frontal nerve, 492t, 493f
Frontal process, 43t, 44f
Frontal sinuses
  arterial supply to, 305f, 305t
  drainage of, 303t
  features of, 301-302f, 301t
  general information about, 304, 304f
  imaging of, 324f
  nasal cavity and, 277f, 277t, 278f
  nerve supply to, 306f, 306t
  sinusitis in, 317
  surgical obliteration of, 320, 320f
Frontalis muscle, 166t
Frontonasal prominence, 4, 13, 13f, 13t
Funduscopy, 507f
Fungiform papillae, 17f, 382t, 383f, 388f

G

Gag reflexes, Akinosi nerve block and, 544t
Galea aponeurosis, 156f, 156t, 160f
Gallbladder and duct system, 597, 597f
Ganglia, 66, 66f
Ganglionic branches, 86t, 176t, 255t, 256f, 257t
General functional columns, of cranial nerves, 75. *See also* GSA function; GSE function; GVA function; GVE function
Geniculum of facial nerve, 454f, 458f
Genioglossus muscle
  hypoglossal nerve paralysis and, 106
  hypoglossal nerve to, 102f, 102t
  oral cavity floor and, 339f
  origin of, 111f
  tongue and, 385-386f, 385t, 387f
Geniohyoid fascia, 440f
Geniohyoid muscle
  oral cavity floor and, 338t, 339f, 339t, 387f
  in suprahyoid region, 111, 111f, 128t

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Geographic tongue, 380, 381f
Gingiva
  Akinosi block and, 544t
  embryotic development of, 16f, 17f
  Gow-Gates block and, 542t
  greater palatine nerve block and, 550t
  inferior alveolar nerve block and, 538t
  infraorbital nerve block and, 552t
  long buccal nerve block and, 540t
  maxillary division nerve block and, 553t
  mental nerve block and, 541t
  middle superior alveolar nerve block and, 551t
  nasopalatine nerve block and, 549t
  posterior superior alveolar nerve block and, 548t
  teeth and, 343f
Gingival groove, 343f
Gingivitis, 372, 372f
Glabella, 268f
Glaucoma, 507, 507-508f
Glenoid fossa, 32t
Glossoepiglottic folds, 382t, 383f
Glossopharyngeal (IX) nerve
  corresponding sympathetics, 530t
  course of
    floor of oral cavity, 362t, 363f
    palate, 364t, 365f
    pharynx, 414t, 416f
    tongue, 389f, 390f, 390t, 391t, 392f
  fibers and functional column types of, 97t, 98f
  neck innervation by, 139t, 141f
  in peripheral nervous system, 73f, 74, 74f
  pharyngeal arches and, 4f, 5t
  salivary gland innervation by, 367t
  tongue development and, 17t
Glossoptosis, 20, 20f
Glycopyrrolate, 198
Golgi apparatus, 66, 66f
Gonadal tumors, 152
Gow-Gates nerve block, 542t, 543f
Graves' disease, 152
Gray matter, of spinal cord, 70, 71f
Gray ramus communicans, 72f, 73f
Great auricular nerve, course of
  external ear, 463t, 464f
  face, 179f, 179t
  neck, 145t, 146f
  parotid bed, 192-193f, 192t
  scalp, 160f
Greater occipital nerve, 122t, 159t, 160f
Greater palatine arteries
  to nasal cavity, 281t, 283f
  to palate, 352t, 353f
  to pterygopalatine fossa, 251f, 253f
Greater palatine foramen
  hard palate and, 332, 333f
  imaging of, 378f
  in inferior view of cranial base, 53t, 54f
  nasal cavity and, 278f
Greater palatine nerve
  course of, 88f
    ethmoid sinuses, 310t
    nose, 275f, 287t, 288f, 293f
    palate, 364t, 365f
    pterygopalatine fossa, 251f, 256f
  intraoral injections and, 546, 546f
  pterygopalatine ganglion and, 86t, 257t, 258f, 260f
Greater palatine nerve block, 550f, 550t
Greater palatine vein, 356t
Greater petrosal nerve groove, 454f
Greater petrosal nerve, parasympathetics associated with
  for lacrimal, nasal, palatine, pharyngeal, submandibular, and sublingual glands, 525t
  for lacrimal gland, 505t
  for nasal cavity, 290t, 292f, 293f
  for pterygopalatine fossa, 259t, 260f
  for salivary glands, 370t, 371f
Greater wing of sphenoid bone
  anatomy of, 34t, 35f
  infratemporal fossa and, 210t, 211f
Greater wing of sphenoid bone *(Continued)*
  orbital surface of, 483f
  temporal fossa and, 205f, 205t
Grinning muscle, 162t
GSA (general somatic afferent) function
  characteristics of, 75
  facial nerve and, 93t
  glossopharyngeal nerve and, 97t
  hypoglossal nerve and, 102t
  tongue and, 388t
  trigeminal nerve and, 82t
  vagus nerve and, 99t
GSE (general somatic efferent) function, 75, 80t
GVA (general visceral afferent) function, 75, 93t, 97t, 99t
GVE (general visceral efferent) function, 75, 80t, 93t, 97t, 99t
Gyri, 68f, 69

H

Haemophilus influenzae, 477
Hair cells, inner and outer, 461f
Hairy leukoplakia, of tongue, 400, 400f
Hairy tongue, 380, 381f
Hand
  arterial supply to, 604, 604f
  muscles of, 575t, 576f
Hangman's fracture, 64, 64f
Hard palate, 326, 332, 332t, 333f
  nerve blocks to, 546, 550t
Hashimoto's thyroiditis, 151
Head and neck. *See also* Neck
  development of. *See also* Embryonic development
    general information about, 2-3f
    pharyngeal arches, 4
  parasympathetic pathways of, 521-533
  sympathetics of, 519-520
    general anatomic pathway, 519t, 520f
Heart
  chambers of, 586-587f, 587t
  circulation in, 588f, 588t
  pericardium of, 586t
  surfaces of, 586f, 586t
  valves of, 587f, 587t
Helicotrema, 460f
Helix, of auricle, 455t, 456f
Hemianopsia, homonymous or bilateral, 78t
Hepatic portal vein, 611
Herpes simplex virus (HSV-1), 196, 376, 376f
Hiatus for greater petrosal nerve, 51t, 52f
Hiatus for lesser petrosal nerve, 51t, 52f
Hiatus semilunaris, 38t, 39f
Hip bone, 566t, 567f
Homonymous hemianopsia, 78t
Horizontal cell, 490f
Horizontal plate, of palatine bone, 41f, 41t, 44f, 378f
Horner's syndrome, 534, 534f
Human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection, 200f
Humerus, 559t, 560f
Hyoglossus muscle, 102f, 102t, 408f
Hyoid bone
  fascial spaces and, 443
  in neck, 110f
    anterior triangle and, 111, 111f
    submandibular triangle and, 114f
    submental triangle and, 119
  in oral cavity, 339f
  pharynx and, 409f
  swallowing and, 417, 418f
Hyoid cartilage, 15f
Hyperopia, 510, 510f
Hyperthyroidism, 152, 152f
Hypobranchial eminence, 17t
Hypoglossal canal
  in inferior view of cranial base, 53t, 54f
  in lateral portion of occipital bone, 30t, 31f
  in superior view of cranial base, 51t, 52f
Hypoglossal (XII) nerve
  carotid triangle and, 115t, 116f
  embryotic development of, 15f

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Index

Hypoglossal (XII) nerve *(Continued)*
fibers and functional column types of, 102f, 102t
lesions affecting, 106, 106f
neck innervation by, 140t, 141f, 142f
paralysis of, 106, 398, 398f
in peripheral nervous system, 74, 74f
submandibular triangle and, 113, 113t, 114f
tongue innervation by, 392t, 393f
Hypoglossus muscle
carotid triangle and, 115
oral cavity floor and, 339f
submandibular triangle and, 113, 114f
tongue and, 385-386f, 385t
Hypophyseal fossa, 34t, 35f
Hypothalamic sulcus, 69f
Hypothalamus, 69
Hypothyroidism, 151, 151f

I
Ileum, 591, 592f
Iliacus muscle, 580t, 581f
Iliocostalis cervicis muscle, 577t, 578f
Iliocostalis lumborum muscle, 577t, 578f
Iliocostalis thoracis muscle, 577t, 578f
Ilium, 566t, 567f
Incisal surface of teeth, 341t
Incisive artery, 355t, 356f
Incisive canal, 289f
Incisive foramen, 15, 53t, 54f, 332
Incisive fossa, 44f, 333f, 378f
Incisive nerve, 360t
Incisive papilla, 332, 333f
Incisors
embryotic development of, 15
mandibular, 349f, 349t, 350f, 350t
maxillary, 344t, 345f
Incus, 456f, 457f, 458f
Infections
abscesses, 449, 449f
Bell's palsy and, 196
fascial spaces and, 443
in infrahyoid region, 446t
in suprahyoid region, 444-445t, 445f
traversing length of neck, 446t, 447f
Ludwig's angina, 448, 448f
of paranasal sinuses, 300, 319f
sinusitis, 317, 317-318f
Inferior alveolar artery, 212t, 213f, 355t, 356f
Inferior alveolar nerve, 542t, 543f, 544t, 545f
Inferior alveolar nerve block, 538t, 539f
Inferior alveolar vein, 356t, 357f
Inferior compartment of temporomandibular joint, 236f, 238t, 239f
Inferior constrictor muscle. *See* Inferior pharyngeal constrictor muscle
Inferior deep lateral cervical lymph nodes, 635f
Inferior division of the oculomotor nerve, 495t, 496f
Inferior horn, of thyroid cartilage, 423f, 423t
Inferior labial artery, 169t, 170f, 328t, 329f
Inferior labial vein, 173t, 174f, 329f, 329t
Inferior lamina, of TMJ, 236f, 238t
Inferior laryngeal arteries, 431f, 431t
Inferior laryngeal nerve, 434f
Inferior laryngeal vein, 432t
Inferior lateral palpebral artery, 501f
Inferior longitudinal band, 59t
Inferior longitudinal muscle, 386t
Inferior mediastinum, 585f, 585t
Inferior mesenteric artery, 608, 608f
Inferior nasal conchae, 41f, 41t, 42f, 279t, 298f
Inferior nasal meatus, 279f, 279t, 280f, 303t
Inferior oblique muscle, 487t, 488-489f
Inferior obliquus capitis muscle, 122, 122f, 122t, 131f, 131t
Inferior ophthalmic vein
from eye and orbit, 502t
from face, 174f, 174t
from nose, 272t
from pterygopalatine fossa, 254f, 254t
Inferior orbital fissure
anterior view, 55f, 55t
as orbital opening, 482t
pterygopalatine fossa and, 249t, 250f
Inferior palpebral artery, 500t
Inferior palpebral branch of infraorbital nerve, 87t
Inferior petrosal sinus, 32t
Inferior pharyngeal constrictor muscle
carotid triangle and, 115
of pharynx, 403f, 406t, 408f, 409f
potential apertures in pharyngeal wall and, 410f, 410t
Inferior rectus muscle, 487t, 488-489f
Inferior salivatory nucleus, parasympathetics of parotid gland and, 368t, 369f
anatomic pathway for, 194t, 221t, 222f, 530t, 531-532f
Inferior thyroid artery
inferior parathyroid glands and, 123
muscular triangle and, 117t, 118f
to pharynx, 411t, 412f
thyroid gland and, 123, 124f
Inferior thyroid vein, 117t, 123, 124f, 125t, 126f
Inferior tubercle, of thyroid cartilage, 423t
Inferior tympanic artery, 470t, 471f
Inferior wall of orbit, 482t
Infrahyoid fascia, 440f, 441t
Infrahyoid fascial spaces, 443, 446t
Infrahyoid muscles, 128t
Infrahyoid region, of neck, 111
Infraorbital artery
to eye and orbit, 500t, 501f
to face, 168f, 169t, 170f, 172f
to nasal cavity, 283f
to pterygopalatine fossa, 252t, 253f
Infraorbital canal, maxillary division nerve branches within, 87t, 88f
Infraorbital fissure, 263f
Infraorbital foramen, 55f, 55t, 87t
Infraorbital groove and canal, 482t
Infraorbital nerve
course of, 86t
eye and orbit, 494f, 494t
face, 176t, 177f, 177t
lips and cheeks, 328t, 329f
maxillary sinus, 313f, 313t
nasal cavity, 287t, 293f
nose, 273t, 274f
pterygopalatine fossa, 255t, 256f
teeth, 359t
pterygopalatine fossa and, 251f
Infraorbital nerve block, 552f, 552t
Infraorbital vein, 168f, 174f, 174t, 254t, 502t
Infraspinatus muscle, 569t, 570f
Infratemporal fossa, 210-222
anatomy of, 204, 204f
arterial supply to, 212-213t, 213-214f
bordering structures of, 210t
contents of, 210, 210-211f
maxilla and, 43t
of neck, 110f
nerve supply to, 216-217t, 217-218f, 219t, 220-222f, 221t
pterygopalatine fossa and, 250f, 251f
venous drainage from, 215f, 215t
Infratrochlear artery, 270t, 500t
Infratrochlear nerve
course of
eye and orbit, 493t
face, 176t, 177f
nose, 273t, 274f, 289f
in nasociliary branch of trigeminal nerve ophthalmic division, 84t
Inguinal lymph nodes, 634f
Injections, intraoral, 535-554
general information about, 536
mandibular, 537-545
Akinosi, 544t, 545f
Gow-Gates, 542t, 543f
inferior alveolar, 538t, 539f
landmarks for, 537, 537f

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Injections, intraoral *(Continued)*
long buccal, 540f, 540t
mental, 541f, 541t
maxillary, 546-554
anterior superior alveolar, 552f, 552t
greater palatine, 550f, 550t
infraorbital, 552f, 552t
landmarks for, 546, 546-547f
maxillary division, 553t, 554f
middle superior alveolar, 551f, 551t
nasopalatine, 549f, 549t
posterior superior alveolar, 548f, 548t
Inner ear
nerve supply to, 467t
structures and boundaries of, 459t, 460-461f
Inner hair cells, 454f
Inner horizontal part of lateral ligaments, 238t
Inner limiting membrane, 490f
Innermost intercostal muscle, 579f, 579t
Insula, 68f, 69
Intercalated lymph nodes, 635f, 636f
Intermaxillary segment, 13t, 15
Intermaxillary suture, 269f
Intermediate mesoderm, 2, 3f
Intermediolateral horn nucleus, characteristics of
for eye, 498f, 499t, 522t
general, 519t
for nasal cavity, 290t
for nasal cavity, lacrimal gland, and submandibular and sublingual gland, 527t
for parotid gland, 194t, 530t
for pterygopalatine fossa, 261t
Internal acoustic meatus. *See also* Inner ear
facial nerve and, 95t
in superior view of cranial base, 51t, 52f
in temporal bones, 32t
vestibulocochlear nerve and, 95t
Internal branch of superior laryngeal nerve, 363f, 409f
Internal carotid artery
carotid triangle and, 115t, 116f
to face, 158f, 168, 168f
as middle ear boundary, 458f
to neck, 132, 134t, 135f
to nose, 269f, 292f
Internal intercostal muscle, 579f, 579t
Internal jugular lymph nodes, 635f, 636f
Internal jugular vein
carotid triangle and, 115t, 116f
muscular triangle and, 118f
from neck, 136, 136t, 137f, 138f
pharyngeal plexus and, 413f
in root of the neck, 124f, 125t, 126f
submandibular triangle and, 114f
Internal laryngeal nerve, course of
floor of oral cavity, 362t, 363f
larynx, 433f, 433t, 434f
tongue, 390t, 391t
Internal nasal nerve, 84t, 273t, 274f
Internal oblique muscle, 580t, 581f
Internal superior laryngeal nerve, 416f
Interspinous plane, 556t, 557f
Intertragic notch, 455t
Intertubercular plane, 556t, 557f
Intervertebral foramina, 57f
Intervertebral joints, 57f
Intralingual ectopic thyroid, 19, 19f
Intramural ganglion, 533t
Intratracheal ectopic thyroid, 19, 19f
Investing layer of deep cervical fascia
of neck, 440f, 441t, 442f
parotid gland and, 187f, 187t
posterior triangle and, 120
sternocleidomastoid muscle and, 108
trapezius muscle and, 108, 109f
Iris, 484-485f, 486
Ischium, 566t, 567f
Isthmus faucium, 17f

J
Jefferson fracture, 64, 64f
Jejunum, 591, 592f
Jugular foramen, 30t, 33f, 51t, 53t, 54f
Jugular fossa, 31f, 32t, 33f, 458f, 462f
Jugular vein. *See* Anterior jugular vein; External jugular vein; Internal jugular vein
Jugulodigastric lymph nodes, 635f, 636f
Jugulo-omohyoid lymph nodes, 635f, 636f

K
Kidneys, 599, 600f

L
Labial surface of teeth, 341t, 342f
Labiomental groove, 327f, 327t
Labyrinthine artery, 472f, 472t
Labyrinthine vein, 474t
Lacrimal apparatus, 504f, 504t, 505t, 506f
Lacrimal artery, 171t, 282f, 499t, 501f
Lacrimal bones
anatomy of, 36f, 36t
in facial skeleton, 155f
nasal cavity and, 277t
orbit walls and, 483f
structures articulating with, 27f, 27t
Lacrimal canaliculi, 280f, 504f, 504t
Lacrimal caruncle, 280f, 504f
Lacrimal fossa, 36t
Lacrimal glands
GVE fibers of facial nerve and, 93t
in lacrimal apparatus, 504f, 504t
orbital and palpebral parts of, 280f
parasympathetics of, 505t, 506f
anatomic pathway for, 525t, 526f
sympathetics of
anatomic pathway for, 506f, 527t, 528-529f
traversing pterygopalatine fossa, 261-262t
Lacrimal nerve
course of, 83t, 88f
eye and orbit, 492t, 493f
face, 176t, 177f
nasal cavity, 289f
Lacrimal part of orbicularis oculi muscle, 164t
Lacrimal sac, 13t, 280f, 504f, 504t
Lambda, parietal bones at, 29t
Lamina propria, 383f
of gingiva, 343f
Large intestine, 593-594, 594f
Laryngeal aditus, 417, 418f
Laryngeal nerve, 114f, 116f
Laryngeal prominence, 423f, 423t
Laryngeal vein, 114f
Laryngeal vestibule, 417, 418f
Laryngitis, 436, 436f
Laryngopharynx, 404t, 405f
Laryngotracheal groove, 17t
Larynx, 419-436
anatomy of, 420, 420-421f
in anterior neck, 108
arterial supply to, 431f, 431t
carotid triangle and, 115t
cartilages of, 422f, 422t
arytenoid, 425f, 425t
cricoid, 424f, 424t
epiglottis, 426f, 426t
minor, 427f, 427t
thyroid, 423f
clinical correlates for, 435-436, 435-436f
lesions affecting, 104, 104f
membranes and ligaments of, 428f, 428t
motor and sensory branches from vagus nerve to, 433f, 433t
muscles of, 429f, 429t, 430f, 430t
muscular triangle and, 117t
in suboccipital triangle, 123
swallowing and, 417, 418f
venous drainage from, 432f, 432t
Lateral collateral ligament, 238-239t, 239f

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Index

Lateral cricoarytenoid muscle, 429f, 429t, 430f, 430t
Lateral crus, 269f
Lateral incisors, 342f, 344t, 345f, 349f, 349t
Lateral ligaments, 238-239t, 239f
Lateral nasal artery, 169t, 170f, 172f, 270f, 271t
Lateral nasal cartilage, 268, 269f
Lateral nasal prominence, 13, 14f
Lateral nasal vein, 173t
Lateral palpebral artery, 501f
Lateral pharyngeal fascial space, 444t
Lateral plate mesoderm, 2, 3f, 4
Lateral pterygoid muscle
  infratemporal fossa and, 210, 211f
  mastication and, 224f, 225t, 226f, 227f, 233
  pharyngeal muscles and, 408f
  trigeminal nerve innervation of, 82f, 82t
Lateral pterygoid nerve, 231t, 232f
Lateral pterygoid plate, 110f
Lateral rectus muscle, 80f, 80t, 487t, 488-489f
Lateral semicircular canal, 454f
Lateral sulcus (of Sylvius), 69
Lateral thyrohyoid ligaments, 428t
Lateral wall of orbit, 482t
Lateral walls
  of middle ear, 457t
  of nasal cavity, 77f, 276
Latissimus dorsi muscle, 577t, 578f
Le Fort fractures, 62, 62f
Left recurrent laryngeal nerve, 104f, 126f
Lens, 484-485f, 486
Lesser occipital nerve, 145t, 159t, 160f, 463t, 464f
Lesser palatine arteries
  to nasal cavity, 283f
  to nose, 271f
  to palate, 352t, 353f
  to pterygopalatine fossa, 251f, 253f
Lesser palatine foramen
  hard palate and, 332, 333f
  imaging of, 378f
  in inferior view of cranial base, 53t, 54f
  nasal cavity and, 278f
Lesser palatine nerve
  course of, 87t, 88f
    nose, 275f, 288f, 293f
    palate, 364t, 365f
  pterygopalatine ganglion and, 251f, 256f, 257t, 258f, 260f
Lesser palatine vein, 356t
Lesser petrosal nerve, 210, 219t, 221f, 458f
Lesser wing of sphenoid bone, 34t, 35f, 483f
Lesser's triangle, 113
Leukoplakia, 399, 400, 400f
Levator anguli oris muscle, 161t, 163f
Levator labii superioris alaeque nasi muscle, 162t, 163f
Levator labii superioris muscle, 162t, 163f
Levator palpebrae superioris muscle, 487t, 488-489f
Levator scapulae muscle, 120, 121f, 577t, 578f
Levator veli palatini muscle
  mastication and, 227f
  pharyngeal muscles and, 408f
  pharyngotympanic tube and, 336-337f, 407f, 458f
  in soft palate, 334, 334f, 335t
Ligamenta flava, 58f, 58t
Ligamentum nuchae, 58f, 58t
Light touch (sensation), 82t, 90-91t, 92f
Lingual artery
  carotid triangle and, 115t, 116f
  to neck, 132, 132t, 134t, 135f
  to oral cavity floor, 354f, 354t
  submandibular triangle and, 113, 113t, 114f
  to tongue, 394-395f, 394t
Lingual frenulum, 338t, 384f, 384t, 397, 397f
Lingual minor salivary gland, 340f, 384f
Lingual nerve
  course of
    floor of oral cavity, 362t, 363f
    tongue, 389t, 390f, 391f
  Gow-Gates block and, 542t
  inferior alveolar nerve block and, 538t, 539f
Lingual nerve *(Continued)*
  intraoral injections and, 537
  as oral cavity floor border, 338t, 339f
Lingual surface of teeth, 341t, 342f
Lingual thyroid, 19, 19f
Lingual tonsils, 328f, 332f, 377
  pharyngeal portion of tongue and, 382t, 383f, 387f
Lingual vein
  carotid triangle and, 115t
  from neck, 136, 136t, 137f
  from oral cavity, 356t
  submandibular triangle and, 113t
  from tongue, 396f, 396t
Lingula, 45t
Lip(s). *See also* Facial expression
  arterial supply to, 328t, 329f
  clefting of, 23, 24f
  commissure of, 154f
  embryotic development of, 13t, 14f, 16f
  frenulum of, 326f, 340f
  infraorbital nerve block and, 552t
  maxillary division nerve block and, 553t
  motor innervation of, 330f, 330t
  sensory innervation of, 331f, 331t
  structural features of, 327t
  venous drainage from, 329f, 329t
Liver, 595, 595f
Lobule of auricle, 455t, 456f
Long buccal nerve block, 540f, 540t
Long buccal nerve, Gow-Gates block and, 542t
Long ciliary nerves, 84t, 85f, 490f, 492t, 493f
Long posterior ciliary artery, 500t
Long thoracic nerve, 120t
Longissimus capitis muscle, 577t, 578f
Longissimus cervicis muscle, 577t, 578f
Longissimus thoracis muscle, 577t, 578f
Longus capitis muscle, 129t, 130f
Longus colli muscle, 129t, 130f
Loose areolar connective tissue, 156f, 156t
Lower motor neurons, 518f
Ludwig's angina, 448, 448f
Lumbar area, of spinal cord, 70
Lumbar spinal nerves, 70, 70f, 73f
Lumbar splanchnic nerves, 73f
Lumbar vertebrae, 562t, 563f
Lumbosacral enlargement, of spinal cord, 70, 70f
Lumbrical muscles, 575t, 576f
Lumen of larynx, 15f
Lung tumors, voice effects from, 104, 104f
Lungs, 583f, 583t
Lymph nodes (lymphatics), 633-636
  of head and neck, 635f
  of pharynx, 636f
  submandibular, 113t
  submental, 119t
  of tongue, 636f
Lymphosarcoma, 199f
Lysosomes, 66, 66f

M

Macroglossia, 544t
Macula lutea, 486
Maculae, of utricle and saccule, 95-96f, 95t
Macular zone, 78f
Malleus, 457f, 457t, 458f
Mamelons, 344t
Mandible
  anatomy of, 45t, 46f
  buccinator crest of, 408f
  dislocation of, 244, 244f
  embryotic development of, 15f
  in facial skeleton, 154, 154f, 155f
  fractures of, 63, 63f
  hypoplastic, 20, 20f, 21
  oblique line of, 408f
  structures articulating with, 27f, 27t
  TMJ and opening of, 243, 243f
Mandibular arch, 341

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Mandibular branch of facial nerve, 161t, 180t, 181f, 330f, 330t
Mandibular condyles, 236, 237t, 542t
Mandibular division (V_3) of trigeminal (V) nerve
branches within, 89t, 90f
course of, 83f
face, 175, 175f, 177f, 178t
infratemporal fossa, 210, 216-217t, 217f
in masticatory muscles, 233
masticatory muscles, 231t, 232f
scalp, 159t, 160f
teeth, 360t, 361f
temporal fossa, 208t
GSA fibers and, 82f, 82t
oral cavity innervation by, 358, 358f
pharyngeal arches and, 4f
sensory innervation of neck by, 144f
temporal fossa innervation by, 209f
Mandibular injections, 537, 537f
Mandibular lymph nodes, 635f
Mandibular mucosa, 538t
Mandibular notch, 45t, 46f
Mandibular processes, 4, 5t
Mandibular prominence, 13, 13t
Mandibular ramus
fractures at, 63
intraoral injections and, 537, 537f
mandible and, 27f, 45t, 46f
neck anatomy and, 109f, 110f
parotid bed and, 187f, 187t, 189f
Mandibular teeth. *See* Teeth, mandibular
Mandibular torus, 374
Manubrium, 125, 564t, 565f
Manus, 557t
Marginal mandibular branch of facial nerve, 189f, 208f
Masseter muscle
mastication and, 224f, 225t, 226f, 233
parotid gland and, 186, 187t
trigeminal nerve innervation of, 82f, 82t
Masseteric artery, 212t, 213f, 228t, 229f
Masseteric branch of mandibular nerve, 89t, 216t, 218f
Masseteric nerve, 231t, 232f, 242t, 539f
Masseteric vein, 230t
Mastication, muscles of, 223-234
anatomy of, 224, 224f, 225t, 226-227f
arterial supply to, 228t, 229f
clinical correlate for, 233, 234f
motor branches of trigeminal nerve in, 231t, 232f
sensory fibers of trigeminal nerve in, 91t
venous drainage from, 230f, 230t
Masticator fascial space, 444t, 445f
Mastoid air cells, 32t
Mastoid antrum, 457t, 458f
Mastoid canaliculus, 53t, 54f
Mastoid foramen, 51t, 52f
Mastoid lymph nodes, 635f
Mastoiditis, 478f
Maxilla
anatomy of, 43-44f, 43t
anterior nasal spine of, 269f
in facial skeleton, 154, 155f
infratemporal fossa and, 210f, 210t, 211f
nasal cavity and, 277t, 278f
orbital margin and, 482t, 483f
palatine process of, 332, 333f
pterygopalatine fossa and, 249t
root of nose and, 268
structures articulating with, 27f, 27t
Maxillary arch, 341
Maxillary artery
to external ear, 468t, 469f
to eye and orbit, 500t
to face, 169t, 170f
to infratemporal fossa, 210, 212-213t, 213-214f
to masticatory muscles, 228t, 229f
to nasal cavity, 281, 281t
to nose, 269, 271f, 271t
to palate, 352t, 353f
to parotid space (bed), 190f, 190t
Maxillary artery *(Continued)*
to pterygopalatine fossa, 251f, 252t, 253f
to teeth, 355t
Maxillary division (V_2) of trigeminal (V) nerve
across pterygopalatine fossa, 259t, 260f, 261t
branches within, 86-87t, 88f
associated with pterygopalatine ganglia, 257t, 258f
course of, 83f, 144f
eye and orbit, 489t, 494f, 494t
face, 175, 175f, 176-177t, 177f
infratemporal fossa, 217f, 217t
maxillary sinus, 313f, 313t
nasal cavity, 285, 285f, 287t, 292f, 293f
nose, 273t, 274f, 275f
oral cavity, 358, 358f
palate, 364t, 365f
pterygopalatine fossa, 255t
scalp, 159t, 160f
teeth, 359t
GSA fibers and, 82f, 82t
nerve blocks to, 553t, 554f
parasympathetics associated with, 525t
pharyngeal arches and, 4f
Maxillary processes, 4, 5t
Maxillary prominence, 13, 13t, 15
Maxillary sinus
arterial supply to, 312f, 312t
boundaries and relations of, 277t
Caldwell-Luc procedure in, 321, 321f
conchae and, 279f
development of, 43t
drainage of, 303t
features of, 301-302f, 301t
general information about, 311, 311-312f
imaging of, 298f, 324f, 378f
nerve supply to, 293f, 313f, 313t
sinusitis in, 317, 318f
Maxillary teeth. *See* Teeth, maxillary
Maxillary vein
from ears, 474t
from face, 174f
from parotid bed, 191t
from pterygopalatine fossa, 254f
from temporal fossa, 207f, 207t
from temporomandibular joint, 241f, 241t
Meckel's cartilage, 15f, 45t
Medial collateral ligament, 238t, 239f
Medial crus, 269f
Medial nasal prominence, 13, 14f
Medial palpebral artery, 500t, 501f
Medial pterygoid muscle
infratemporal fossa and, 210, 211f
mastication and, 224f, 225t, 227f, 233
parotid gland and, 187f, 187t
trigeminal nerve innervation of, 82f, 82t
Medial pterygoid nerve, 231t, 232f
Medial rectus muscle, 487t, 488-489f
Medial wall
of middle ear, 457t
of orbit, 482t
Median cricothyroid ligament, 423f, 428t
Median sulcus, 383f
Median thyrohyoid ligament, 428t
Mediastinum
inferior, 585f, 585t
superior, 584f, 584t
Medulla, 69
Medulla oblongata, 69f, 73f
Membranous labyrinth, 95-96f, 459t, 460f, 475f
Membranous neurocranium, 10, 12t
Membranous superficial layer, of abdominal wall, 556t, 557f
Meningeal nerve, 86t, 88f
Meningitis, 317
Mental artery, 169t, 170f, 328t, 329f, 355t
Mental branch of inferior alveolar artery, 356f
Mental branch of inferior alveolar nerve, 178f, 178t, 331f, 360t
Mental foramen, 45t, 46f, 55f, 55t, 541t
Mental nerve, 539f, 541f

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Index

Mental nerve block, 541f, 541t
Mental protuberance, 327f
Mental vein, 173t, 174f, 329f, 329t
Mentalis muscle, 162t, 163f
Mesencephalic nucleus, 90t
Mesial surface of teeth, 341t, 342f
Mesoderm, 2, 4, 5t
Meyer loop, 78f
Microglia, 67, 67f
Micrognathia, 20, 20f
Midbrain, 69, 69f, 92f
Middle constrictor muscle. *See* Middle pharyngeal constrictor muscle
Middle cranial fossa, 86t
Middle ear, 456f, 457-458f, 457t, 466t
Middle layer of deep cervical fascia, 108, 441t
Middle meningeal artery, 212t, 213f
Middle nasal conchae, 279f, 279t, 280f, 298f
Middle nasal meatus
  anatomy of, 279f, 279t
  drainage of, 303t
  ethmoid sinuses and, 307
  frontal sinuses and, 304
  maxillary sinus and, 311
Middle pharyngeal constrictor muscle
  anatomy of, 406t, 408f, 409f
  carotid triangle and, 115
  potential apertures in pharyngeal wall and, 410f, 410t
Middle superior alveolar artery, 312f, 312t, 355t, 356f
Middle superior alveolar nerve
  course of, 87t, 88f
    maxillary sinus, 313f, 313t
    nasal cavity, 289f
    teeth, 359t
  intraoral injections and, 546, 547f
Middle superior alveolar nerve block, 551f, 551t
Middle superior alveolar vein, 356t
Middle temporal artery, 206f, 206t, 228t, 229f
Middle temporal vein, 207f, 207t, 230f, 230t
Middle thyroid vein, 115t, 123, 136, 136t, 137f
Midline groove of tongue, 383f
Midline septum, of tongue, 382t
Minor's starch iodine test, 198
Mitochondria, 66, 66f
Modiolus of cochleas, 454f, 459t
Molar glands, cheeks and, 327t
Molars
  deciduous vs. permanent, 342f
  mandibular, 351f, 351t
  maxillary, 347f, 347t
    posterior superior alveolar nerve block and, 548f, 548t
Mucobuccal fold, 327t
Mucocele, 375, 375f
Müller cell, 490f
Multipolar neurons, 66, 66f
Mumps, 200, 200f
Muscular branch of ophthalmic artery, 500t, 501f
Muscular process of arytenoid cartilage, 425f, 425t
Muscular triangle, 109f, 111, 117, 117t, 118f
Musculoskeletal region of cervical fascia, 440f, 441t
Musculus uvulae, 334, 335t
Myasthenia gravis, 104, 104f
Mydriasis, 80t
Mylohyoid line, 45t, 46f
Mylohyoid muscle
  oral cavity floor and, 338t, 339t
  pharyngeal muscles and, 408f
  submandibular triangle and, 113, 114f
  submental triangle and, 119
  in suprahyoid region, 111, 111f, 112f, 128t
  trigeminal nerve innervation of, 82f, 82t
Mylohyoid nerve, 113t, 339f, 542t, 544t
Myopia, 510, 510f

N

Nasal bones
  anatomy of, 36f, 36t
  anterolateral view, 269f
Nasal bones *(Continued)*
  in facial skeleton, 154, 154f, 155f, 268, 268f
  nasal cavity and, 277f, 278f
  structures articulating with, 27f, 27t
Nasal branch of infraorbital artery, 270f, 271t
Nasal branch of infraorbital nerve, 87t, 273t, 274f, 275f
Nasal cavity, 266-298
  anatomy of, 276, 276f
  arterial supply to, 281, 281-282t
  autonomics traversing pterygopalatine fossa and, 261t
  bones of, 303f
  boundaries and relations of, 277-278f, 277t
  clinical correlates for, 294-297, 295-297f
  conchae of. *See* Conchae, nasal
  general information about, 266, 266-267f
  imaging of, 298f
  maxilla and, 43t
  parasympathetics of, 290t
    anatomic pathway for, 525t, 526f
  sensory innervation of, 285, 285-286f, 287-288t
  sympathetics of, 290-291t
    anatomic pathway for, 527t, 528-529f
  venous drainage from, 284t
Nasal group, of muscles of facial expression, 164t, 165f
Nasal placodes, 13
Nasal septum
  deviated, 296, 296f, 298f
  embryotic development of, 15f, 16f
  ethmoid bone and, 38t
  nasal cavity and, 276, 277f
  vomer and, 40t
Nasal sinuses. *See* Paranasal sinuses
Nasal venous plexus, 276, 284f, 284t
Nasal vestibule, 268, 276f, 277f
Nasalis muscle, 164t, 165f
Nasociliary branch, of trigeminal nerve ophthalmic division, 84t, 85f, 88f, 176t
Nasociliary nerve
  course of, 310t, 492t, 493f
  ophthalmic division (V_1) and, 83t, 84t, 85f, 88f
Nasofrontal vein, 168f
Nasolabial groove, 327t
Nasolabial lymph nodes, 635f
Nasolabial sulcus, 268f, 327f
Nasolacrimal canal, 482t
Nasolacrimal duct
  drainage of, 303t
  embryotic development of, 13t
  nasal cavity and, 276
  opening of, 278f, 279f, 280f, 504f
  orbit and, 482t, 504t
Nasopalatine nerve
  course of, 87t
    nasal cavity, 293f
    nose, 275f, 287t, 288f, 289f
    palate, 364t, 365f
  intraoral injections and, 546f
  nasopalatine nerve block and, 549t
  pterygopalatine fossa and, 251f
  pterygopalatine ganglion and, 257t, 258f
Nasopalatine nerve block, 549f, 549t
Nasopharynx, 404t, 405f
Neck, 107-152. *See also* Cervical vertebrae; Head and neck
  arterial supply to
    carotid, 134t, 135f
    subclavian, 132, 132t, 133f
  cervical plexus of, 145, 145t, 146f
  clinical correlates for, 149, 149-152f, 151-152
  cranial nerves of, 139-140t, 141-142f
  deep fascia of, 441-442t, 442f
  fascial spaces traversing length of, 443, 446t, 447f
  general information about, 108, 109-110f
  infrahyoid muscle of, 128t
  lymphatics of, 635f
  prevertebral muscles of, 129t, 130f
  root of, 125, 125t, 126f
  sensory innervation of, 143, 143t, 144f
  suboccipital triangle of, 131f, 131t
  superficial fascia of, 440, 440f

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Neck *(Continued)*
suprahyoid muscle of, 128t
sympathetics in, 148, 148f
triangles of
anterior, 111, 111-119f
muscles bordering, 127t
muscles subdividing, 127t
posterior, 120, 120t, 121f
suboccipital, 122, 122f, 122t
venous drainage from, 136, 136t, 137-138f
ventral rami nerves of, 147f, 147t
visceral contents of, 123, 124f
Neck group, of muscles of facial expression, 166t, 167f
Neck tumors, voice effects from, 104, 104f
Nervous system
central, 68-71f, 69-70. *See also* Brain; Spinal cord
peripheral. *See* Peripheral nervous system
tissues of, 66-67, 66-67f
Neural crest, 2, 3f, 4, 5t
Neural plate, 3f
Neuroanatomy. *See also* Cranial nerves; Nervous system
clinical correlates for, 103-106, 103-106f
nervous tissue, 66-67, 66-67f
Neurocranium, 10
Neuroectoderm, 2
Neuroglia, 67, 67f
Neurons, 66, 66f
postganglionic. *See* Postganglionic neurons
preganglionic. *See* Preganglionic neurons
for trigeminal nerve sensory system, 90t, 91t
Neurotubules, 66, 66f
Nissl substance, 66, 66f
Norma basalis, 50f, 50t
Norma frontalis, 47f, 47t
Norma lateralis, 49f, 49t
Norma occipitalis, 47f, 47t
Norma verticalis, 48f, 48t
Nose, 266-297. *See also* Nasal cavity
anatomy of, 268, 268-269f, 303f
arterial supply to, 269, 269-271f, 270-271t
clinical correlates for, 294-297, 295-297f
embryotic development of, 13-14f, 13t, 15-16f
frontal bone and, 28f, 28t
general information about, 266, 266-267f
imaging of, 298f
infraorbital nerve block and, 552t
lateral wall of, 77f
maxillary division nerve block and, 553t
sensory innervation of, 273t, 274-275f
venous drainage from, 272f, 272t
Nosebleeds, 269, 294-295, 295f
Nostrils, 268, 268f
Nuchal lines, 30t
Nucleus, 66, 66f
Nucleus solitarius, 93t

O

Oblique arytenoid muscles, 430t
Oblique cricoarytenoid muscle, 429f, 429t
Oblique head of adductor pollicis muscle, 575t, 576f
Oblique line
mandibular, 408f
external, 45t, 46f
of thyroid cartilage, 423f, 423t
Occipital artery
carotid triangle and, 115t, 116f
to neck, 132, 132t, 134t, 135f
posterior triangle and, 120t
to scalp, 157t, 158f, 160f
Occipital bone, 27t, 30t, 31f
Occipital condyles, 30t, 31f
Occipital lobe, 68f, 69, 78f
Occipital lymph nodes, 635f
Occipital triangle, 120
Occipital vein
from neck, 136, 136t, 137f
posterior triangle and, 120t
from scalp, 157t, 158f
Occipitalis muscle, 166t, 167f
Occlusal surface of teeth, 341t
Oculomotor (III) nerve
with corresponding sympathetics, 521-524
as cranial nerve, 73f
eye and orbit innervation by, 489t, 490f
course of, 495t, 496f
eye muscles and, 488f
fibers and functional column types of, 80-81f, 80t
ophthalmoplegia and, 103, 103f, 183
in peripheral nervous system, 74, 74f
Odontoid process, 56f, 56t
fractures of, 64, 64f
Olfactory bulb, 76-77f, 286f, 289f
Olfactory epithelium, 276, 286f, 287t
Olfactory gland, 77f
Olfactory mucosa, 76f, 77f, 286f
Olfactory (I) nerves
nasal cavity innervation by, 275f, 285, 285f, 288f
in peripheral nervous system, 74, 74f
SVA fibers and, 76-77f, 76t
Olfactory tract, 289f
Oligodendrocytes, 67, 67f
Omoclavicular triangle, 120
Omohyoid muscle
in infrahyoid region, 111, 112f, 128t
of neck, 109f
subdividing triangles, 127f, 127t
Open angle glaucoma, 507
Ophthalmic artery
to ethmoid sinuses, 309t
to eye, 499t, 501f
to face, 170f, 171t
to frontal sinuses, 305f, 305t
to nasal cavity, 281, 281t, 282f
to nose, 269, 270t
to sphenoid sinus, 315t
Ophthalmic division (V_1) of trigeminal (V) nerve
branches of, 83-84t, 83f, 84f
course of
eye and orbit, 490f, 492-493t, 493f
face, 175, 175f, 176t, 177f
nasal cavity, 285, 285f, 287t, 292f
nose, 273t, 274f
pterygopalatine fossa, 259t, 260f
scalp, 159t, 160f
frontal sinuses innervation by, 304, 306f, 306t
GSA fibers and, 82f, 82t
parasympathetics associated with, 525t
pharyngeal arches and, 4f
sensory innervation of neck by, 144f
Ophthalmoplegia, 103, 103f, 183
Opponens pollicis muscle, 575t, 576f
Optic canal (foramen)
anterior view, 55f, 55t
as orbital opening, 482t, 483f
sphenoid bone and, 34t, 35f
superior view, 51t, 52f
Optic chiasm, 173f
Optic disc, 485f, 486
Optic (II) nerve
eye and orbit innervation by, 490f, 491f, 491t
fibers and functional column types of, 78-79f, 78t
in peripheral nervous system, 74, 74f
Ora serrata, 485f, 490f
Oral cavity, 325-378
anatomy of, 326, 326-327f
arterial supply to, 354t
boundaries and borders for
general information about, 332t
inferior (floor), 338-339t, 339-340f
lateral (cheeks), 337, 338f
posterosuperior (soft palate), 334, 334f, 335t, 336-337f
superior (hard palate), 332, 332t, 333f
clinical correlates for, 372-377, 372-377f
external features of, 327t
lips and cheeks, 327-328f, 327t
motor innervation of, 330f, 330t

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Index

Oral cavity *(Continued)*
sensory innervation of, 331f, 331t
vascular supply of, 328-329t, 329f
floor of. *See* Floor, of oral cavity
imaging of, 378f
nasal cavity and, 277f, 277t
palate of. *See* Palate
salivary glands and, 366, 366f, 367t
sensory innervation of, 362-363t, 363f
general information about, 358, 358f
palate, 364t, 365f
salivary glands, 368f, 368t, 369f, 370t, 371f
teeth, 359-360t, 361f
teeth in. *See* Teeth
venous drainage from, 356t, 357f
Oral group, of muscles of facial expression, 161-162t, 163f
Oral mucosa, 327t
Akinosi block and, 544t
Gow-Gates block and, 542t
maxillary division nerve block and, 553t
nasopalatine nerve block and, 549t
Oral vestibule, 326, 326f, 328f
Orbicularis ciliaris of ciliary body, 485f
Orbicularis oculi muscle, 164t, 165f
Orbicularis oris muscle, 161t, 163f, 224f, 226f, 327t
Orbit, 479-510
arterial supply to, 499-500t, 501f
bones creating margins of, 482t, 483f
cranial nerve supply to, 489t, 491-494t, 491f, 493-494f
eye, 484, 484-485f, 486
frontal bone and, 28f, 28t
general information about, 480, 480f
lacrimal apparatus of, 504-505t, 504f, 506f
lacrimal bones and, 36t
maxilla and, 43t, 44f
maxillary division nerve block and, 553t
motor innervation of, 489t, 495t, 496f
muscles of, 487t, 488-489f
nasal cavity and, 277t
openings in, 482t
sensory innervation of, 489t, 492-494t, 493-494f
sphenoid bone and, 34t, 35f
venous drainage from, 502t, 503f
walls of, 482t, 483f
zygomatic bones and, 37t
Orbital branch of pterygopalatine ganglion, 316f, 316t
Orbital group, of muscles of facial expression, 164t
Orbital part of lacrimal gland, 280f
Orbital part of orbicularis oculi muscle, 164t, 165f
Oropharynx, 326, 328f, 404t, 405f
Os coxae, 567f, 567t
Osseous cochlea, 454f
Osseous labyrinth, 459t
Osseous spiral lamina, 454f
Ossicles, 457f
Osteoarthritis, of TMJ, 245, 246f
Osteology. *See* Bone(s)
Osteomyelitis, 317, 319f, 320
Ostium, 404t
Otalgia, 477
Otic ganglion, 220f, 222f, 369f, 531-532f
characteristics of, for parotid gland, 194t, 221t, 368t, 530t
course of, 219t
GVE fibers and, 97t, 98f
to infratemporal fossa, 210
Otitis externa, acute, 476, 476f
Otitis media, acute, 477, 477f
Outer hair cells, 454f

P

Pain
abducens palsy and, 103, 103f
facial nerve and, 93t
glossopharyngeal nerve and, 97t
in middle ear, 477
nasopalatine nerve block and, 549t
tongue and, 388t
trigeminal nerve and, 82t, 90-91t, 92f
trigeminal neuralgia and, 182, 182f
Palatal (palatine) glands, 332, 332f, 333f, 334
parasympathetics of, 525t, 526f
Palate
arterial supply to, 352t
clefting of, 20-23, 20f, 24f
embryotic development of, 15, 15-16f
hard, 326, 332, 332t, 333f
nasal cavity and, 277t
sensory innervation of, 364t, 365f
soft, 326, 326f, 334, 334f, 335t, 336-337f
sympathetics of, 261t, 527t, 528-529f
venous drainage from, 356t
Palatine aponeurosis, 409f
Palatine bone
anatomy of, 41f, 41t
in facial skeleton, 154
horizontal process of, 332
nasal cavity and, 277f, 277t, 278f
orbital process of, 483f
pterygopalatine fossa and, 248f, 249t
structures articulating with, 27t
Palatine canal, 249t, 251f
Palatine (palatal) glands, 332, 332f, 333f, 334, 525t
parasympathetics of, 525t, 526f
Palatine process, of maxilla, 43t, 44f
hard palate and, 332, 333f
imaging of, 378f
nasal cavity and, 277t
Palatine raphé, 16f, 17f, 332, 333f
Palatine tonsil
hard palate and, 333f
in oral cavity, 326f, 332f
oropharynx and, 404t
soft palate and, 334f
tongue and, 387f
tonsillitis and, 377
Palatine torus, 374, 374f
Palatoglossal arches, 326f, 334f, 382t
Palatoglossal fold, 404t
Palatoglossus muscles, 334, 334f, 335t, 385-386f, 385t
Palatopharyngeal arch, 326f, 334f
Palatopharyngeus muscles
oral cavity and, 334, 334f, 335t, 336f
pharynx and, 406t, 409f
swallowing and, 417, 418f
Palatopharyngeus sphincter, 409f. *See also* Passavant's ridge
Palmar interosseus muscles, 575t, 576f
Palmaris brevis muscle, 575t, 576f
Palmaris longus muscle, 572t, 573f
Palpebral part of lacrimal gland, 280f
Palpebral part of orbicularis oculi muscle, 164t, 165f
Pancreas, 596, 596f
Parafollicular cells, 123
Paranasal sinuses, 299-324
anatomy of, 303f
clinical correlates for, 317, 317-323f, 320-323
drainage regions of, 303t
ethmoid. *See* Ethmoid sinuses
features of, 300-302f, 301t
frontal. *See* Frontal sinuses
frontal bone and, 28t
general information about, 300
imaging of, 324f
maxillary. *See* Maxillary sinus
nasal cavity and, 276
nerve supply to, 293f
sphenoid. *See* Sphenoid sinus
Parasympathetic nervous system, 512
cranial nerve III with corresponding sympathetics, 521-522t, 523-524f
cranial nerve VII with corresponding sympathetics, 525t, 526f, 527t, 528-529f
cranial nerve IX with corresponding sympathetics, 530t, 531-532f
cranial nerve X with corresponding sympathetics, 533f, 533t
functions of, 515t, 517f, 518f
nasal cavity and, 290t
parotid bed in, 194t, 195f
parotid gland and, 221t, 222f

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Parathyroid glands, 18f, 108, 117t, 123, 124f
Parathyroid hormone, 123
Paraxial mesoderm, 2, 4
Parietal bones, 27f, 27t, 29f, 29t, 155f
Parietal lobe, 68f, 69
Parieto-occipital sulcus, 69
Parkinson's disease, 104, 104f
Parotid bed, 185-202
  arterial supply to, 190f, 190t
  clinical correlates for, 196-202, 197-202f
  general information about, 186
  major structures of, 188t, 189f
  parasympathetics of, 194t
  recess of, 187f, 187t
  sensory nerves of, 192-193f, 192t
  sympathetics of, 194t
  venous drainage from, 191f, 191t
Parotid duct, 188t, 189f, 327t, 367t
Parotid gland
  borders and structures of, 187f, 187t
  features of, 188t, 367t
  general information about, 366, 366f
  glossopharyngeal nerve to, 97t
  inferior portion of, 113t
  parasympathetics of, 221t, 222f, 368f, 368t, 369f
    anatomic pathway for, 530t
  as parotid bed structure, 189f
  submandibular triangle and, 114f
  sympathetics of, 530t, 531-532f
  tumors of, 199, 199f
Parotid gland fascial space, 445t
Parotid papilla, 337, 338f
Parotitis, 200, 200f
Pars flaccida, 455t, 456f
Pars tensa, 455t, 456f, 458f
Passavant's ridge, 409f, 417, 418f. *See also* Fold of Passavant
Pectoral girdle, bones of, 558f, 558t
Pectoral region muscles, 568t
Pectoralis major muscle, 109f, 568f, 568t
Pectoralis minor muscle, 568f, 568t
Pedicles, 56t, 562t, 563f
Pelvic splanchnic nerves, 73f
Pelvis, 563f, 566t, 567f
Periapical abscess, 449, 449f
Pericardium, 586t
Pericoronitis, 449, 449f
Pericranium, 156t
Periodontal abscess, 449, 449f
Periodontitis, 372
Periodontium, 343f
Periorbita, 308f, 489f
Periorbital edema, 183, 184f
Peripheral nervous system
  functions of, 517f, 518f
  general information about, 72, 72f, 73f
Peritonsillar fascial space, 445f, 445t
Perpendicular plate
  of ethmoid bone, 38t, 39f, 40f
  of palatine bone, 41f, 41t
Petrotympanic fissure, 32t, 33f, 53t, 54f
Petrous part, of temporal bone, 32t, 33f, 454f
Pharyngeal aponeurosis, 403f, 409f
Pharyngeal arches
  abnormalities related to, 20-22, 20-22f
  cranial nerves of, 4f
  derivatives of, 5t, 6f, 6t
  embryotic development of, 2, 4
  facial development from, 13, 13-14f, 13t
  skull development from, 10t
Pharyngeal artery, 251f, 252t, 411t
Pharyngeal branch of glossopharyngeal (IX) nerve, 414, 414t, 416f
Pharyngeal branch of vagus (X) nerve, 139t, 392t, 414, 414t, 416f
Pharyngeal canal, 34t, 35f, 249t, 250f, 251f
Pharyngeal clefts, 4, 7, 7t, 9t
Pharyngeal constrictor muscles, 410f, 410t
Pharyngeal glands, parasympathetics of, 525t, 526f
Pharyngeal membranes, 7, 7t, 9f, 9t
Pharyngeal nerve, 86t, 251f, 257t, 258f, 415t
Pharyngeal plexus
  pharynx innervation by, 413f, 413t, 414, 414-415t, 416f
  tongue innervation by, 392t
  venous drainage from oral cavity and, 356t
Pharyngeal pouches
  abnormalities related to, 19, 19f
  embryotic development of, 4, 7, 7f, 7t, 8f, 9f
Pharyngeal raphe, 403f, 409f
Pharyngeal recess, 276f, 404t, 405f
Pharyngeal tonsil, 377, 404t, 405f
Pharyngeal tubercle, 30t, 31f, 403f, 409f
Pharyngeal vein, 136, 136t, 138f, 254t
Pharyngeal venous plexus, 174t, 215t, 230t
Pharyngoepiglottic fold, 403f
Pharyngotympanic tube
  cartilaginous part of, 403f, 409f
    with tube open vs. closed, 407f
  inferior view of, 53t, 54f
  middle ear's anterior wall and, 457t
  nasal cavity and, 276f
  pharyngeal opening of, 405f
  soft palate and, 336-337f
Pharynx, 401-418
  in anterior neck, 108
  arterial supply to, 411t, 412f
  clinical correlate for, 417, 418f
  general information about, 402, 402-403f
  innervation of, 414-415t, 416f
  lymphatic drainage of, 636f
  muscles of, 406t, 407-409f
  parasympathetics of, 525t
  parts of, 404t, 405f
  pharyngeal plexus innervation of, 414, 414-415t
  potential apertures in wall of, 410, 410f, 410t
  spinal accessory nerve innervation of, 101f, 101t, 415t
  venous drainage from, 413f, 413t
Philtrum, 268, 268f, 326f, 327f, 327t
  embryotic development of, 13t, 14f, 16f
Phonation, 123
Phrenic nerve, 120t, 125t, 147f, 147t
Pia mater, 71f
Pineal gland, 69f
Piriform aperture, 276
Piriform fossa, 405f
Piriform recess, 404t
Pituitary gland, 34t, 69f, 314, 314f
Platysma muscle
  deep fascia and, 442f
  embryotic development of, 15f
  facial expression and, 166t, 167f
  superficial fascia and, 108, 109f, 440, 440f
Pleural cavity, 582, 582f
Plica fimbriata, 338t, 384t
Pons, 69, 69f, 92f
Posterior auricular artery
  to external ear, 468f, 468t, 469f
  to inner ear, 472t, 473f
  to middle ear, 470t
  to parotid space (bed), 190f, 190t
  to scalp, 157t, 158f
Posterior auricular muscle, 166t, 167f
Posterior auricular nerve, 189f
Posterior auricular vein, 157t, 191f, 191t, 474t
Posterior ciliary arteries, 501f
Posterior cricoarytenoid muscle, 429f, 429t, 430f, 430t
Posterior deep temporal artery
  to infratemporal fossa, 212t, 213-214f
  to masticatory muscles, 228t, 229f
  to temporal fossa, 206f, 206t
Posterior deep temporal vein, 207t, 230t
Posterior digastric muscle, 112f, 113, 115
Posterior division of auriculotemporal branch of mandibular nerve
  course of, 89t
    external ear, 463t, 464f
    face, 178f, 178t
    infratemporal fossa, 216t, 217f, 218f
    parotid bed, 192f, 192t

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Index

Posterior division of auriculotemporal branch of mandibular nerve *(Continued)*
scalp, 159t
temporal fossa, 208t, 209f
temporomandibular joint, 242f, 242t
Gow-Gates block and, 542t
Posterior division of inferior alveolar branch of mandibular nerve
course of, 89t
infratemporal fossa, 217f, 217t, 218f
teeth, 360t, 361f
Posterior division of lingual branch of mandibular nerve, 89t, 216t, 217f, 218f, 221f
Posterior division of mylohyoid branch of mandibular nerve, 89t, 217f, 217t
Posterior ethmoidal artery
to ethmoid sinuses, 309f, 309t
to eye and orbit, 500t, 501f
to nasal cavity, 281t, 282f
to sphenoid sinus, 315f, 315t
Posterior ethmoidal foramen, 51t, 52f, 55f, 55t, 482t
Posterior ethmoidal nerve
course of
ethmoid sinuses, 310f, 310t
eye and orbit, 493f, 493t
sphenoid sinus, 316f, 316t
nasal branches of, 285f, 289f
in nasociliary branch of trigeminal nerve ophthalmic division, 84t, 85f
Posterior inferior nasal branch of the greater palatine nerve, 87t, 88f, 287t, 288f
Posterior lateral inferior nasal nerve, 292f, 310t
Posterior lateral nasal artery branches, 309f, 309t, 310f, 315f, 315t
Posterior lateral nasal branch of sphenopalatine artery, 271f, 283f
Posterior lateral septal branch of sphenopalatine artery, 271f, 283f
Posterior lateral superficial cervical lymph nodes, 635f
Posterior lateral superior nasal nerve
course of, 86t
ethmoid sinuses, 310f, 310t
nasal cavity, 288f, 288t, 292f
Posterior longitudinal ligament, 59t, 60f
Posterior mallear fold, 455t, 458f
Posterior medial superior nasal nerve, 86t, 288t
Posterior superior alveolar artery
to infratemporal fossa, 213f, 213t
to maxillary sinus, 312f, 312t
to nasal cavity, 283f
to teeth, 355t, 356f
Posterior superior alveolar branch of maxillary nerve
course of, 86t, 88f
face, 176t
infratemporal fossa, 217t, 218f
pterygopalatine fossa, 251f, 255t, 256f
Posterior superior alveolar nerve
intraoral injections and, 546, 547f
Posterior superior alveolar nerve block, 548f, 548t
Posterior superior alveolar nerve, course of
maxillary sinus, 313f, 313t
nasal cavity, 289f
teeth, 359t
Posterior superior alveolar vein, 254t, 356t, 357f
Posterior superior nasal nerve, 86t, 257t, 288f, 288t, 292f
Posterior triangle, 108, 109f
anatomy of, 120, 120t, 121f
superficial fascia and, 440f
Posterior wall, of middle ear, 457t
Postganglionic neurons
autonomic nervous system, 512
course of
across pterygopalatine fossa, 261-262t
facial nerve correspondence, 527t
general anatomic pathway, 519t
glossopharyngeal nerve correspondence, 530t
greater palatine nerve, 505t
maxillary division distribution, 259t, 290t, 370t, 525t
nasal cavity and palate, 291t
Postganglionic neurons *(Continued)*
oculomotor nerve correspondence, 521t, 522t
ophthalmic and maxillary division distribution, 370t, 525t
ophthalmic division distribution, 259t
parasympathetics of eye, 497t, 498f
parotid gland, 194t, 221t, 368t
sympathetics of eye, 498f, 499t
sympathetics of nasal cavity, 292t
in parasympathetic nervous system
glossopharyngeal nerve and, 531-532f
vagus nerve and, 533f, 533t
Pouting, muscles for, 162t
Preganglionic neurons
autonomic nervous system, 512
course of
across pterygopalatine fossa, 261t
chorda tympani nerve correspondence, 525t
facial nerve correspondence, 527t
general anatomic pathway, 519t
glossopharyngeal nerve correspondence, 530t, 531-532f
greater petrosal nerve correspondence, 259t, 505t, 525t
oculomotor nerve correspondence, 521t, 522t
ophthalmic and maxillary division distribution, 370t, 505t
ophthalmic division distribution, 370t
parasympathetics of eye, 497t, 498f
parasympathetics of parotid gland, 194t, 221t, 368t
sympathetics of eye, 498f, 499t
sympathetics of nasal cavity, 291t
sympathetics of parotid gland, 194t
in parasympathetic nervous system
glossopharyngeal nerve and, 531-532f
vagus nerve and, 533f, 533t
Prelaryngeal ectopic thyroid, 19, 19f
Premolars, 342f
mandibular, 350f, 350t
maxillary, 346f, 346t
nerve blocks to, 551t
Pressure. *See* Touch
Pretracheal fascial space, 446t, 447f
Pretracheal layer of fascia, 441t, 442f
Pretracheal lymph nodes, 635f
Prevertebral deep layer of deep fascia, 108, 440f, 441t
Prevertebral fascial space, 446t, 447f
Primary cleft of lip and palate, 23, 24f
Primary palate, 13t, 15, 15-16f
Procerus muscle, 164t, 165f
Promontory, 456f, 457t, 458f, 462f
Pronator quadratus muscle, 572t, 573f
Pronator teres muscle, 572t, 573f
Proprioception, 82t, 90-91t, 92f
Pseudomonas aeruginosa, 476
Psoas major muscle, 580t, 581f
Pterion, 29f, 29t, 205f, 205t
Pterygoid arteries, 212t, 213f, 228t, 229f
Pterygoid canal
artery of, to pterygopalatine fossa, 251f, 252t, 253f
nerve of, to pterygopalatine fossa, 251f, 256f, 258f
pterygopalatine fossa and, 249t, 250f, 263f
sphenoid bone and, 34t, 35f
vein of, from pterygopalatine fossa, 254t
Pterygoid fovea, 46f
Pterygoid hamulus, 34t, 35f, 333f, 409f
Pterygoid plexus
ears drained by, 474t
eye and orbit drained by, 502t, 503f
face drained by, 173, 173t, 174f, 174t
hematomas in, posterior superior alveolar nerve block and, 548t
infratemporal fossa drained by, 210, 215f, 215t
masticatory muscles drained by, 230f, 230t
nasal cavity drained by, 284f
pterygopalatine fossa drained by, 254f, 254t
Pterygoid processes, 34t, 35f, 110f, 249t
Pterygoid vein, 230t

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Pterygomandibular raphe
hard palate and, 333f
inferior alveolar nerve block and, 539f
mandible and, 45t
in neck view, 110f
pharynx and, 408f, 409f
soft palate and, 337, 337f
Pterygomandibular space, 538t, 539f
Pterygomaxillary fissure, 110f, 249t, 251f
Pterygopalatine fossa, 247-263
arterial supply to, 252t
bordering structures of, 249t
branches within, 176t
general information about, 248, 248f
imaging of, 263f
maxillary division nerve block and, 553t
maxillary division nerve branches associated with, 86-87t, 255t, 256f
nasal cavity and, 276, 277t
openings for, 249t, 250-251f
palatine bone and, 41t
parasympathetics associated with, 259t, 260f
sympathetics associated with, 261-262t, 262f
venous drainage from, 254f, 254t
Pterygopalatine ganglion
branches of maxillary division of trigeminal nerve and, 86-87t, 88f, 257t, 258f
characteristics of
for lacrimal, nasal, palatine, pharyngeal, submandibular, and sublingual glands, 525t
for nasal cavity, 288f, 290t, 292f
for pterygopalatine fossa, 293f
for salivary glands, 370t, 371f
ethmoid sinuses and, 310t
orbital branch of, 316f, 316t
parasympathetics associated with, 259t
pterygopalatine fossa and, 251f
Ptosis, 80t, 103, 103f
Pubis, 566t, 567f
Pulp cavity, 343t
Pupillary light reflexes, ophthalmoplegia and, 183
Pyramid, middle ear's posterior wall and, 457t
Pyramidal process, 41t, 110f, 248f, 249t

Q

Quadrangular membrane, 428t
Quadratus lumborum muscle, 580t, 581f

R

Radius, 559t, 560f
Rami communicantes, 71f. *See also* Dorsal rami; Ventral rami
gray and white, 72f, 73f
Rectum, 593, 594, 594f
Rectus abdominis muscle, 580t, 581f
Rectus capitis anterior muscle, 129t, 130f
Rectus capitis lateralis muscle, 129t, 130f
Rectus capitis posterior major, 122, 122f, 122t, 131f, 131t
Rectus capitis posterior minor, 122f, 122t, 131f, 131t
Recurrent laryngeal nerve (branch of vagus)
to larynx, 104, 433t, 434f
to neck, 140t, 141f
to pharynx, 415t, 416f
in root of the neck, 125t
Reissner's membrane, 454f, 461f
Respiratory epithelium, 266, 300
Retina, 78t, 79f, 485f, 486
Retinopathy, diabetic, 509, 509f
Retrodiscal pad, of TMJ, 236f, 238t
Retromandibular vein, 114f, 191f, 191t, 284f
Retromolar region, 327t
Retromolar trigone, 540t
Retropharyngeal fascial space, 446t, 447f
Retropharyngeal lymph nodes, 307, 314, 636f
Retropharyngeal space, 409f
Rhinitis, 297, 297f
Rhomboid major muscle, 577t, 578f
Rhomboid minor muscle, 577t, 578f
Rhytidectomy, 154
Ribosomes, 66, 66f
Ribs, 564t, 565f
first, in root of the neck, 125, 126f
Right lymphatic duct, 125t, 634f
Right recurrent laryngeal nerve, 104f, 126f
Rima glottidis, 417, 430t
Risorius muscle, 162t, 163f
Robin (Pierre) abnormalities, 20, 20f
Rods, retinal, 78t, 79f, 490f
Roof, of middle ear, 457t
Root canals, of teeth, 343f
Root of the neck, 125, 125t, 126f
Root of tongue, 387f
Roots, of teeth, 342t, 343f
Rotational movement, in opening the mandible, 243, 243f
Round window (fenestra cochleae), 457t, 458f, 460f, 461f

S

Saccule, 459t, 460f, 461f
maculae of, 95-96f, 95t
Sacral area, of spinal cord, 70
Sacral spinal nerves, 70, 70f, 73f
Sacrum, 562t, 563f
Salivary glands, 368f
facial nerve in, 93t, 94f
features of, 367t
general information about, 186f, 366, 366f
oral cavity and, 326, 326f, 339f, 340f
parasympathetics of, 368t, 369f, 370t, 371f
parotid. *See* Parotid gland
sublingual. *See* Sublingual gland
submandibular. *See* Submandibular gland
Salivation
diminished, 234f
mastication and, 233, 234f, 367t, 368f
Salpingopharyngeal fold, 404t, 405f
Salpingopharyngeus muscle, 337f, 403f, 406t, 407f, 409f
Satellite cells, 66f, 67
Scala tympani, 454f, 460f, 461f
Scala vestibuli, 454f, 460f, 461f
Scalene lymph nodes, 635f
Scalene muscles
in neck, 109f
posterior triangle and, 120, 121f
prevertebral, 129t, 130f
venous drainage from, 157t
Scalp, 156-160. *See also* Facial expression, muscles of
arterial supply to, 157, 157t, 158f
general information about, 154, 156t
sensory nerves of, 159, 159t, 160f
venous drainage from, 157t, 158f
Scalp group, of muscles of facial expression, 166t, 167f
Scaphoid fossa, 455t, 456f
Scapula, 558f, 558t
Scapular nerve, 120t
Scapular winging, 105, 105f
Scarpa's layer, of abdominal wall, 556t, 557f
Schlemm's canal, 485f
Schwann cells, 66f, 67
Sclera, 484-485f, 486
Scleral venous sinus, 485f
Secondary cleft of lip and palate, 23, 24f
Secondary palate, 15, 15-16f
Sella turcica, 34t, 35f
Semicircular canals
cristae of, 95-96f, 95t
as inner ear boundaries, 459t, 460f, 461f
Semicircular ducts, 459t, 460f
Semispinalis capitis muscle, 120, 577t, 578f
Sensory root of the ciliary ganglion, 84t, 85f, 492t, 493f
Septal artery, 271t
Septal cartilage
anatomy of, 268, 269f
boundaries and relations of, 277f, 277t, 278f
development of, 15f, 36t
imaging of, 298f
Serratus anterior muscle, 568f, 568t
Short ciliary nerves, 84t, 85f, 490f, 493f
Short posterior ciliary artery, 500t

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Index

Shoulder
  muscles of, 569t, 570f
  spinal accessory nerve lesions affecting, 105, 105f
Sialoceles, of parotid gland, 202, 202f
Sialoliths, 201
Sigmoid colon, 593, 594, 594f
Sigmoid sulcus, 29t
Sinuses. *See* Paranasal sinuses
Sinusitis, 317, 317-318f
Sjögren's syndrome, 200
Skin
  Akinosi block and, 544t
  Gow-Gates block and, 542t
  of lower lip, mental nerve block and, 541t
  over the scalp, 156f, 156t
Skull
  bones of, 28-46
    articulations of, 27f, 27t
    fractures of, 61, 61f, 62, 62f, 154
  development of, 10t, 11f, 11t, 12t
  general information about, 10, 26
  major foramina and fissures in, 51-55
  of newborn, 12f
  views and sutures of, 47-50f, 47-50t
SMAS (Superficial Muscular Aponeurotic System), 154
Smell (sensation), 76t
Soft palate
  muscles of, 409f
  as oral cavity border, 334, 334f, 335t, 336-337f
  as oral cavity boundary, 326, 326f
  pharynx and, 404t, 405f
  swallowing and, 417, 418f
Somatic general or special functional columns, of cranial nerves, 75. *See also* GSA function; GSE function; SSA function
Somatic nervous system, 72
Special functional columns, of cranial nerves, 75. *See also* SSA function; SVA function; SVE function
Sphenoethmoidal recess
  drainage of, 279t, 303t
  ethmoid bone and, 39f
  nasal cavity and, 278f, 279f
  sphenoidal sinus and, 314
Sphenoid bone
  anatomy of, 34t, 35f
  in facial skeleton, 155f
  nasal cavity and, 277f, 277t, 278f
  structures articulating with, 27f, 27t
Sphenoid emissary foramen, 52f
Sphenoid foramen, 51t
Sphenoid sinus
  arterial supply to, 315f, 315t
  boundaries and relations of, 277f, 277t, 278f
  conchae and, 279f
  development of, 34t, 35f
  drainage of, 303t
  features of, 301t
  general information about, 302f, 314
  imaging of, 298f, 324f
  nerve supply to, 316f, 316t
  sinusitis in, 317
Sphenomandibular ligament, 239f, 239t
Sphenopalatine artery
  to ethmoid sinuses, 309f, 309t
  to nasal cavity, 281t, 283f
  to palate, 352t, 353f
  posterior lateral nasal and septal branches of, 271f, 283f
  to pterygopalatine fossa, 251f, 252t, 253f
  to sphenoid sinus, 315f, 315t
Sphenopalatine foramen
  nasal cavity and, 276, 278f, 283f
  palatine bone and, 41f, 41t, 110f
  pterygopalatine fossa and, 248f, 249t
    diagram of, 251f
    imaging of, 263f
    infratemporal fossa and, 250f
    vascular supply and, 253f
Sphenopalatine vein, 254t, 284f, 284t, 356t
Spinal accessory lymph nodes, 635f
Spinal accessory (XI) nerve
  carotid triangle and, 115t, 116f
  fibers and functional column types of, 101f, 101t
  lesions affecting, 105, 105f
  neck innervation by, 140t
  neck muscles and, 127t
  in peripheral nervous system, 74, 74f
  posterior triangle and, 120t, 121f
Spinal cord, 70, 70-71f
Spinal nerves, 70, 70f, 72, 73f
Spinal part of spinal accessory nerve, 140t
Spinalis cervicis muscle, 577t, 578f
Spinalis thoracis muscle, 577t, 578f
Spinous processes, 56f, 56t, 57f, 562t, 563f
Spiral ganglion, 454f, 461f
Spiral lamina, 461f
Spiral ligament, 454f, 461f
Splanchnic nerve, 72f
Spleen, 598, 598f
Splenius capitis muscle, 120, 577t, 578f
Splenius cervicis muscle, 577t, 578f
Squamous cell carcinoma, 399, 399f
Squamous portion
  of frontal bone, 28t
  of temporal bone, 32t, 33f
    development of, 11f
    in newborn, 12f
    temporal fossa and, 205f, 205t
    temporomandibular joint and, 236, 237t
SSA (special somatic afferent) function, 75, 78t, 95t
Stapedius muscle, 93t, 458f, 462f, 462t
Stapes, 457f, 458f, 460f
Staphylococcus aureus, 476
Stensen's duct, 188t, 200f, 367t
Stereocilia, 461f
Sternocleidomastoid lymph nodes, 635f
Sternocleidomastoid muscle
  carotid triangle and, 115
  investing layer of deep cervical fascia around, 108, 109f
  muscular triangle and, 117
  as neck triangles' border, 127t
  parotid gland and, 187f, 187t
  posterior triangle and, 120
  spinal accessory nerve to, 101f, 101t
    lesions affecting, 105, 105f
  torticollis and, 149, 149f
Sternohyoid muscle
  carotid triangle and, 109f
  in infrahyoid region, 111, 112f, 128t
  muscular triangle and, 117, 117t, 118f
Sternothyroid muscle
  carotid triangle and, 109f
  in infrahyoid region, 111, 128t
  muscular triangle and, 117, 117t, 118f
Sternum, 564t, 565f
Stomach, 589, 589f
Stomatitis, viral, 376
Strabismus, 80t
Strap muscles, 111, 117t
Stratified squamous epithelium
  of cheek, 337
  nonkeratinized, 327t, 384t
  oral cavity floor and, 338t
  taste buds and, 383f
Streptococcus pneumoniae, 477
Stripping wave, in swallowing, 417, 418f
Styloglossus muscle
  nerve supply to, 102f, 102t
  pharynx and, 408f, 409f
  tongue and, 385f, 385t
Stylohyoid ligament, 110f, 408f, 409f
Stylohyoid muscle
  facial nerve and, 93t
  parotid gland and, 187f, 187t
  in suprahyoid region, 111, 112f, 128t
Styloid process
  infratemporal fossa and, 210f, 210t, 211f
  of temporal bone, 32t, 33f, 110f
Stylomandibular fascia, 187t

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Stylomandibular ligament, 110f, 239f, 239t
Stylomastoid foramen, 32t, 33f, 53t, 54f
Stylopharyngeus muscle, 97t, 337f, 406t, 408f, 418f
Subclavian artery
to neck, 132, 132t, 133f
posterior triangle and, 120t, 121f
in root of the neck, 125t, 126f
Subclavian lymph nodes, 635f
Subclavian vein
from neck, 136, 136t, 137f
posterior triangle and, 121f
in root of the neck, 125t, 126f
Subclavius muscle, 568f, 568t
Subcostal muscle, 579t
Subcostal plane, 556t, 557f
Sublingual caruncle, 326f, 340f, 366f, 384f
Sublingual ducts, 326f, 366f
Sublingual fascial space, 444t
Sublingual fold, 326f, 340f, 366f, 367t, 384f
Sublingual gland
facial nerve and, 93t, 94f
features of, 367t
general information about, 366, 366f
oral cavity floor and, 326f, 339f, 340f, 384f
parasympathetics of, 370t, 371f
anatomic pathway for, 525t, 526f
sympathetics of, anatomic pathway for, 527t, 528-529f
Sublingual papilla, 338t, 384t
Sublingual thyroid, 19, 19f
Submandibular duct
oral cavity and, 326f, 338t, 340f
salivary glands and, 366f, 367t
tongue and, 384f
Submandibular fascial spaces, 444t
Submandibular ganglion, 370t, 371f, 525t
Submandibular gland
facial nerve and, 93t, 94f
features of, 367t
general information about, 366, 366f
oral cavity floor and, 339f
parasympathetics of, 370t, 371f
anatomic pathway for, 525t, 526f
submandibular triangle and, 113t
sympathetics of, anatomic pathway for, 527t, 528-529f
Submandibular gland fascial space, 445t
Submandibular lymph nodes, 268, 304, 307, 311, 635f
Submandibular triangle, 109f, 111, 113, 113t, 114f
Submaxillary fascial space, 444t
Submental artery
to face, 170f
to oral cavity floor, 354t
submandibular triangle and, 113t, 114f
to tongue, 394t, 395f
Submental lymph nodes, 635f
Submental triangle, 109f, 111, 119, 119f, 119t
Submental vein, 113t, 114f, 396f, 396t
Suboccipital nerve, 58f, 122f, 122t, 160f
Suboccipital triangle, 122, 122f, 122t, 131f, 131t
Subparotid lymph nodes, 635f
Subscapularis muscle, 569t, 570f
Substernal ectopic thyroid, 19f
Subthalamus, 69
Succedaneous teeth, 341
Sulcus terminalis, 17f, 382t
Superficial cervical fascia, 438, 440, 440f
Superficial fascial space, 446t, 447f
Superficial layer of deep cervical fascia, 440f, 441t, 442f
general information about, 438, 439f
parotid gland and, 187f, 187t
trapezius muscle and, 108, 109f
Superficial Muscular Aponeurotic System (SMAS), 154
Superficial parotid lymph nodes, 635f
Superficial temporal artery
to external ear, 468f, 468t, 475f
to face, 169t, 170f
to parotid space (bed), 190f, 190t
to scalp, 157t, 158f
to temporal fossa, 206f, 206t
to temporomandibular joint, 240f, 240t
Superficial temporal vein
from ears, 474t, 475f
from face, 173t
from parotid bed, 191f, 191t
from scalp, 157t, 158f
from temporal fossa, 207f, 207t
from temporomandibular joint, 241f, 241t
Superior auricular muscle, 166t, 167f
Superior cervical ganglion
anatomic pathway for sympathetics of, 530t, 531-532f
characteristics of
for eye, 498f, 499t, 522t
general, 519t
for lacrimal, nasal, palatine, pharyngeal, submandibular, and sublingual glands, 527t
for nasal cavity, 291t, 292f
for parotid gland, 194t, 530t
for pterygopalatine fossa, 261t
Superior compartment, of temporomandibular joint, 236f, 238t, 239f
Superior constrictor muscle. *See* Superior pharyngeal constrictor muscle
Superior deep lateral cervical lymph nodes, 635f
Superior division of the oculomotor nerve, 495t, 496f
Superior horn of thyroid cartilage, 423t
Superior labial artery
to face, 169t, 170f
to lips and cheeks, 328t, 329f
to nasal cavity, 282t
nasal septal branch of, 271f
trauma to septal branch of, 269
Superior labial branch of infraorbital artery, 328t
Superior labial branch of infraorbital nerve, 87t, 331f, 331t
Superior labial vein, 173t, 174f, 272f, 329f, 329t
Superior lamina, of TMJ, 236f, 238t
Superior laryngeal artery, 412f, 431f, 431t
Superior laryngeal nerve
external branch of, 416f
internal branch of, 409f, 416f
to larynx, 433t, 434f
neck innervation, 139t, 141f
Superior laryngeal vein, 432f, 432t
Superior lateral palpebral artery, 501f
Superior lateral superficial cervical lymph nodes, 635f
Superior ligament of malleus, 456f
Superior longitudinal band, 59t, 60f
Superior longitudinal muscle, 386t, 387f
Superior macular arteriole and venule, 485f
Superior mediastinum, 584f, 584t
Superior mesenteric artery, 608, 608f
Superior nasal conchae, 279t
Superior nasal meatus, 41f, 279f, 279t, 303t, 307
Superior oblique muscle, 80f, 80t, 487t, 488-489f
Superior obliquus capitis muscle, 122, 122f, 122t, 131f, 131t
Superior omohyoid muscle, 115
Superior ophthalmic vein
from eye and orbit, 502t, 503f
from face, 174f, 174t
from nose, 272f, 272t
Superior orbital fissure, 51t, 52f, 55f, 55t, 482t
Superior palpebral artery, 500t
Superior petrosal sinus, 32t, 474t, 475f
Superior pharyngeal constrictor muscle
anatomy of, 403f, 406t, 408f, 409f
potential apertures in pharyngeal wall and, 410f, 410t
swallowing and, 418f
Superior rectus muscle, 487t, 488-489f
Superior salivatory nucleus
characteristics of, for lacrimal, nasal, palatine, pharyngeal, submandibular, and sublingual glands, 525t
nasal cavity innervation and, 290t, 293f
parasympathetic nervous system and, 370t, 371f
anatomic pathway for, 526f
in pterygopalatine fossa, 259t, 260f, 262f
Superior thyroid artery
muscular triangle and, 117t
to neck, 132, 132t, 134t, 135f
to pharynx, 411t

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Index

Superior thyroid artery *(Continued)*
superior parathyroid glands and, 123, 124f
thyroid gland and, 123, 124f
Superior thyroid lymph nodes, 635f
Superior thyroid veins
carotid triangle and, 115t
from neck, 136, 136t, 137f, 138f
thyroid gland and, 123
Superior tubercle, of thyroid cartilage, 423t
Superior tympanic artery, 470t, 471f
Superior wall of orbit, 482t
Supinator muscle, 574t
Supraclavicular lymph nodes, 635f
Supraclavicular nerves, 120t, 145t, 146f
Supraclavicular triangle, 120
Suprahyoid fascial spaces, 443, 444-445t, 445f
Suprahyoid lymph nodes, 635f
Suprahyoid muscles, 128f, 128t
Suprahyoid region of neck, 111
Supraorbital artery
to eye and orbit, 500t, 501f
to face, 168f, 170f, 171t, 172f
to frontal sinuses, 305f, 305t
to scalp, 157t, 158f
Supraorbital foramen, 482t
Supraorbital nerve
as frontal branch of trigeminal nerve ophthalmic division, 84t, 85f
Supraorbital nerve, course of
eye and orbit, 492t
face, 176t, 177f
frontal sinuses, 306f, 306t
scalp, 159t, 160f
Supraorbital notch (foramen), 55f, 55t
Supraorbital vein
from eye and orbit, 502t
from face, 168f, 173t, 174f
from scalp, 157t, 158f
Suprarenal glands, 599, 600f
Suprascapular artery, 120t, 121f, 412f
Suprascapular nerve, 120t
Suprascapular vein, 120t, 136t, 137f, 138f
Supraspinatus muscle, 569t, 570f
Suprasternal space, 440f, 442f
Supratrochlear artery
to eye and orbit, 499t, 501f
to face, 170f, 171t, 172f, 173t
to frontal sinuses, 305f, 305t
to scalp, 157t, 158f
Supratrochlear nerve
course of
eye and orbit, 492t, 493f
face, 176t, 177f
frontal sinuses, 306f, 306t
scalp, 159t, 160f
as frontal branch of trigeminal nerve ophthalmic division, 84t, 85f
Supratrochlear vein, 157t, 158f, 174f, 502t, 503f
Surgery
endoscopic, of paranasal sinuses, 323, 323f
of neck, voice effects from, 104f
Suspensory ligament, 490f
Sustentacular cells, 383f
Sutural bones, 26
Sutures
frontal, 28t
views of, 47-50f, 47-50t
SVA (special visceral afferent) function
of cranial nerves, 75
facial nerve and, 93t
glossopharyngeal nerve and, 97t
olfactory nerve and, 76t
tongue and, 388t
vagus nerve and, 99t
SVE (special visceral efferent) function
of cranial nerves, 75
facial nerve and, 93t
glossopharyngeal nerve and, 97t
spinal accessory nerve and, 101t
SVE (special visceral efferent) function *(Continued)*
trigeminal nerve and, 82t
vagus nerve and, 99t
Swallowing
mastication and, 224, 233, 234f
pharyngotympanic tube and, 407f
process of, 417, 418f
soft palate and, 334
Swimmer's ear, 476, 476f
Sympathetic nervous system, 512
functions of, 515t, 517f, 518f
general anatomic pathway, 519t, 520f
overview, 515t
T1-L2, 518f
Sympathetic trunk, 115t, 125t, 148, 148f
Symphysis, 57f, 63
Synovial cavities, of cervical vertebrae, 60f
Synovial fluid, 238t

T

Taste (sensation), 97t, 98f, 388t
Taste buds, 382t, 383f, 388f
Tear formation and absorption, 504f, 504t
Tectorial membrane, 59t, 60f, 454f, 461f
Tectospinal tract, 81f
Teeth, 341-351
age at eruption of, 341
anatomy of, 342-343t, 343f
arterial supply to, 355t
deciduous vs. permanent, 341, 342f
imaging of, 378f
mandibular, 45t, 46f
Akinosi block and, 544t
canines (cuspids), 348f, 348t
fractures of, 63f
Gow-Gates block and, 542t
incisors, 349f, 349t
inferior alveolar nerve block and, 538t
intraoral injections and, 537
molars, 351f, 351t
premolars, 350f, 350t
sensory innervation of, 360t, 361f
maxillary
alveolar process and, 43t
canines (cuspids), 344t, 345f
implants of, 322, 322f
incisors, 344t, 345f
intraoral injections and, 546, 552t
maxillary division nerve block, 553t
molars, 347f, 347t
permanent, 44f, 333f
premolars, 346f, 346t
sensory innervation of, 359t
permanent types of, 344t
surfaces of, 341t, 342f
venous drainage from, 356t
Tegmen tympani, 456f, 458t
Tegretol, 182
Temperature (sensation)
facial nerve and, 93t
glossopharyngeal nerve and, 97t
tongue and, 388t
trigeminal nerve and, 82t, 90-91t, 92f
Temporal bones
anatomy of, 32t, 33f
in facial skeleton, 155f
mastoid process, parotid gland and, 187f, 187t
structures articulating with, 27f, 27t
temporal fossa and, 205f, 205t
Temporal branches of facial nerve
course of, 180t, 181f
within parotid bed, 189f
to temporal fossa, 208f, 208t, 209f
Temporal fascial space, 444t
Temporal fossa, 204-209
anatomy of, 204, 204f
arterial supply to, 206f, 206t
bordering structures of, 205f, 205t

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Temporal fossa *(Continued)*
nerve supply to, 208-209f, 208t
venous drainage from, 207f, 207t
Temporal lobe, 68f, 69
Temporalis muscle
infratemporal fossa and, 210
mastication and, 224f, 225t, 226f, 233
trigeminal nerve innervation of, 82f, 82t
Temporomandibular joint (TMJ), 235-246
anatomic features of, 237-239t
arterial supply to, 240f, 240t
clinical correlates for, 243-244f, 243-245, 246f
dysfunction of, 236
general information about, 236, 236f
mandible and, 45t
mastication and, 233
sensory innervation of, 242f, 242t
venous drainage from, 241f, 241t
Temporomandibular ligament, 238-239t, 239f
Tensor tympani muscle
general information about, 462f, 462t
as middle ear boundary, 457t, 458f
trigeminal nerve innervation of, 82f, 82t
in tympanic cavity, 456f
Tensor veli palatini muscle
external acoustic meatus and, 456f
mastication and, 227f
pharyngeal muscles and, 408f, 409f
pharyngotympanic tube and, 336-337f, 407f
of soft palate, 334, 334f, 335t
tendon of, 409f
trigeminal nerve innervation of, 82f, 82t
Teres major muscle, 569t, 570f
Teres minor muscle, 569t, 570f
Terminal sulcus, 383f
Thalamus, 69, 69f
3rd occipital nerve, 159t, 160f
Thoracic area, of spinal cord, 70
Thoracic cavity, root of the neck and, 125
Thoracic duct, 125t, 634f
Thoracic spinal nerves, 70, 70f, 73f
Thoracic splanchnic nerves, 73f
Thoracic vertebrae, 125, 562t, 563f
Thoracolumbar fibers, 515t
Thorax
bones of, 564t
heart in, 586-588f, 586-588t
inferior mediastinum in, 585f, 585t
lungs in, 583f, 583t
muscles of, 579f, 579t
overview of, 556t
pleural cavity in, 582, 582f
superior mediastinum in, 584f, 584t
vascular supply of, 606, 606f
Thrombosis, cavernous sinus syndrome and, 183, 184f
Thymus gland, 634f
Thyroarytenoid muscle, 429f, 429t, 430f, 430t
Thyrocervical artery, 132, 132t, 133f
Thyroepiglottic ligament, 426f
Thyroepiglottic muscle, 429f, 429t
Thyroglossal duct remnant, ectopic thyroid and, 19, 19f
Thyrohyoid membrane, 112f, 423f, 423t, 428f, 428t
Thyrohyoid muscle, 109f
carotid triangle and, 115
in infrahyoid region, 111, 112f, 128t
muscular triangle and, 117t, 118f
Thyroid cartilage
in anterior triangle of neck, 112f
embryotic development of, 15f
of larynx, 409f, 422f, 422t, 423f, 423t
Thyroid cartilage lamina, 423f, 423t
Thyroid gland
in anterior neck, 108, 112f, 124f
carotid triangle and, 115t, 116f
ectopic, 19, 19f
embryotic development of, 18, 18f
hyperthyroidism and, 152
hypothyroidism and, 151
inflammation of, voice effects from, 104, 104f
Thyroid gland *(Continued)*
muscular triangle and, 117t, 118f
in suboccipital triangle, 123
Thyroid lymph nodes, 635f
Thyroid notch, 423t
Thyroid tumors, voice effects from, 104, 104f
Thyroiditis, 152
Thyrotoxicosis, 152
Thyroxine, 123
Tic douloureux, 182, 182-183f
TMJ. *See* Temporomandibular joint
Tongue, 379-400
Akinosi block and, 544t
anatomy of, 380, 380-381f
arterial supply to, 394-395f, 394t
clinical correlates for, 397-400, 397-400f
dorsal surface structures of, 382t, 383f
embryotic development of, 15, 15f, 17f, 17t
frenulum of, 340f
glossopharyngeal nerve and, 97t, 98f
Gow-Gates block and, 542t
hypoglossal nerve lesions affecting, 106, 106f
hypoglossal nerve's GSE fibers and, 102t
lymphatic drainage of, 636f
mastication and, 224f
motor innervation of, 392t, 393f
muscles of, 385-386f, 385t, 386t, 387f
oral cavity and, 326
oral cavity floor and, 338t
sensory innervation of
general, 389-390t, 391f
special, 391-392f, 391t
types of, 388-389f, 388t
venous drainage from, 396f, 396t
ventral surface structures of, 384f, 384t
Tongue-tie, 397, 397f
Tonsillar artery, 411t, 412f
Tonsillitis, 377, 377f
Torticollis, 149, 149f, 150f
Torus, 374, 374f
Torus levatorius, 405f
Torus tubarius, 404t, 405f
Touch (sensation), 82t, 90-91t, 92f, 388t
Trachea, 108, 110f, 112f, 117t, 125t
Tractus solitarius, 93t
Tragus, 455t, 456f
Translational movement, in opening the mandible, 243, 243f
Transpyloric plane, 556t, 557f
Transverse arytenoid muscles, 430f, 430t
Transverse cervical artery, 120t, 121f, 125t, 126f, 412f
Transverse cervical chain of lymph nodes, 635f
Transverse cervical nerves, 145t, 146f, 179f, 179t
Transverse cervical vein, 120t, 136t, 137f, 138f
Transverse colon, 593, 594f
Transverse cricoarytenoid muscle, 429f, 429t
Transverse facial artery
to face, 168f, 169t, 170f, 172f
to masticatory muscles, 228t, 229f
to nose, 270f
parotid gland and, 186
to parotid space (bed), 190f, 190t
Transverse facial vein
from face, 168f, 173t
from masticatory muscles, 230f, 230t
from parotid bed, 191f, 191t
Transverse foramen, 56f, 57f
Transverse head of adductor pollicis muscle, 575t, 576f
Transverse ligament of atlas, 59t, 60f
Transverse muscle, of tongue, 386t, 387f
Transverse processes, 56f, 56t, 57f, 563f
Transverse rugae (plicae), 332
Transverse sinus vein, 474t
Transversus abdominis muscle, 580t, 581f
Transversus thoracis muscle, 579f, 579t
Trapezius muscle
anterior triangle of neck and, 112f
of back, 577t, 578f
investing layer of deep cervical fascia around, 108, 109f
as neck triangles' border, 127f, 127t

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Index

Trapezius muscle *(Continued)*
nerve supply to, 101f, 101t
posterior triangle and, 120
spinal accessory nerve lesions affecting, 105, 105f
Trauma
to septal branch of superior labial artery, 269
surgical procedures on frontal sinus due to, 320, 320f
Treacher Collins syndrome, 21, 21f
Triangular fossa, 456f
Triceps brachii muscle, 571t
Trigeminal (V) nerve
auriculotemporal branch of, 89t
branches after infraorbital nerve emerges from infraorbital foramen of, 87t
buccal branch of, 89t
deep temporal branches of, 89t
digastric muscle and, 127t
fibers and functional column types of, 82-83f, 82t
frontal branch of, 84t, 85f
infraorbital canal branches of, 87t
lacrimal branch of, 83t, 85f
lingual branch of, 89t
to lips and cheeks, 331t
mandibular division (V_3) of. *See* Mandibular division (V_3) of trigeminal (V) nerve
masseteric branch of, 89t
maxillary division (V_2) of. *See* Maxillary division (V_2) of trigeminal (V) nerve
middle cranial fossa branches of, 86t
mylohyoid branch of, 89t
mylohyoid muscle and, 128t
nasociliary branch of, 84t, 85f
ophthalmic division (V_1) of. *See* Ophthalmic division (V_1) of trigeminal (V) nerve
ophthalmoplegia and, 103, 103f
in peripheral nervous system, 74, 74f
pharyngeal arches and, 5t
proprioception of, 90-91t, 92f
pterygoid branches of, 89t
pterygopalatine fossa branches of, 86t
pterygopalatine ganglia branches of, 86-87t
sensory pathways of, 90-91t, 92f
to tongue, 389f
Trigeminal neuralgia, 182, 182-183f
Trigeminothalamic lemniscus, 93t, 97t
Triiodothyronine, 123
Trismus, Akinosi block and, 544t
Trochlear (IV) nerve
eye and orbit innervation by, 495t, 496f
eye muscles and, 488f
fibers and functional column types of, 80f, 80t
ophthalmoplegia and, 103, 103f, 183
in peripheral nervous system, 74, 74f
True pelvis, 566t
True ribs, 564t, 565f
Tubercle, of superior lip, 268f, 327f
Tuberculosis, parotitis and, 200
Tuberosity of maxilla, 110f
Tympanic branch of glossopharyngeal nerve, 463t
Tympanic canaliculus, 32t, 33f, 53t, 54f, 457t
Tympanic cavity, 460f
Tympanic cells, 458f
Tympanic membrane, 9t, 455t, 456f
Tympanic neurectomy, 198
Tympanic part, of temporal bone, 32t, 33f
Tympanic plexus, 456f, 458f, 466t
Tympanomastoid fissure, 53t

U

Ulna, 559t, 560f
Ultimobranchial body, development of, 18, 18f
Umbo, 456f, 460f
Uncinate process, 38t, 39f, 278f, 298f
Unipolar neurons, 66, 66f
Upper limbs
arterial supply to
antebrachium, 602, 602f
axilla, 601, 601f
brachium, 602, 602f
Upper limbs *(Continued)*
bones of, 558f, 559t, 560-561f
lymphatics of, 634f
muscles of
brachium, 571f, 571t
extensor surface of antebrachium, 574f, 574t
flexor surface of antebrachium, 572t, 573f
hand, 575t, 576f
pectoral region, 568f, 568t
shoulder, 569t, 570f
nerve supply to, 613, 613f, 614-616t, 616f
overview of, 556t
venous drainage from, 605, 605f
Ureters, 599, 600f
Utricle, 95-96f, 95t, 459t, 460f
Utriculosaccular duct, 459t
Uveal tract, 486
Uvula, 16f, 17f, 326f, 334, 403f
Uvular muscle, 333f, 334, 335t

V

Vagus (X) nerve
in autonomic nervous system, 533f, 533t
carotid triangle and, 115t, 116f
fibers and functional column types of, 99t, 100f
lesions affecting voice on, 104, 104f
neck innervation, 139t
in peripheral nervous system, 73f, 74, 74f
pharyngeal arches and, 4f, 5t
in root of the neck, 125t
tongue innervation by, 389f
Vallate papillae, 17f, 382t, 383f, 388f
Ventral rami. *See also* Suboccipital nerve
cervical spinal nerves and, 121f
geniohyoid muscle and, 128t
of the neck, 147f, 147t
in peripheral nervous system, 72f
sensory innervation of neck by, 143, 143t
Ventral root, of spinal cord, 71f, 72f
Ventricular fold, 418f
Vermilion zone, 327f, 327t
Vertebral arteries
to neck, 132, 132t, 133f
in root of the neck, 125t, 126f
suboccipital triangle and, 122, 122t
Vertebral column, 3f, 562t, 563f
Vertebral foramina, 56f, 56t, 57f, 563f
Vertebral prominens, 56t
Vertebral ribs, 564t, 565f
Vertebral veins, 122t, 125t, 136, 136t
Vertebrochondral ribs, 564t, 565f
Vertebrosternal ribs, 564t, 565f
Vertical muscle, of tongue, 386t, 387f
Vesalius foramen, 52f
Vestibular aqueduct, opening of, 51t, 52f
Vestibular fold, 327t
Vestibular ligament, 428f, 428t
Vestibular membrane, 454f, 461f
Vestibular nerve, 454f, 467f, 467t
Vestibule
of inner ear, 459t, 460f
of larynx, 417, 418f
of nose, 268, 276f, 277f
of oral cavity, 326, 326f, 328f
Vestibulocochlear (VIII) nerve, 454f
course of, to inner ear, 467f, 467t
fibers and functional column types of, 95-96t, 95t
in peripheral nervous system, 74, 74f
Vibrissae, of nose, 268
Vidian nerve, of pterygoid canal
nasal cavity and, 292f, 293f
to pterygopalatine fossa, 256f, 257t
pterygopalatine ganglion and, 258f, 260f
Viral infections, parotitis and, 200
Visceral general or special functional columns, of cranial nerves, 75. *See also* GVA function; GVE function; SVA function; SVE function

WWW.HIGHDENT.IR
همیار دندانسازان و دندانپزشکان

Visceral region of cervical fascia, 440f, 441t
Viscerocranium, 10t, 11f
Vision, 78f, 78t, 491f, 491t
Vocal cords, muscles altering, 430t
Vocal function, 104, 104f, 123
Vocal ligaments, 428f, 428t, 430f
Vocal process of arytenoid cartilage, 425f, 425t
Vocalis, 430t
Voice, 104, 104f, 123
Vomer
  anatomy of, 40f, 40t
  in facial skeleton, 155f
  nasal cavity and, 277f, 277t, 298f
  structures articulating with, 27f, 27t

W
Waldeyer's ring, 377
Wharton's duct, 367t
White matter, of spinal cord, 70, 71f
White ramus communicans, 72f, 73f, 81f
Wormian bones, 26
Wrist, arterial supply to, 604, 604f
Wryneck, 149, 149f, 150f

X
Xerostomia, 201, 201f
Xiphoid process, 564t, 565f

Z
Zonular fibers, 485f
Zygapophyseal joints, 57f
Zygomatic arch, 32t, 37f, 37t, 205f, 205t
Zygomatic bones (zygoma)
  anatomy of, 37f, 37t
  in facial skeleton, 154f, 155f
  fractures of, 61, 61f, 154
  orbital margin and, 482t, 483f
  structures articulating with, 27f, 27t
  temporal fossa and, 205f, 205t
  Treacher Collins syndrome and, 21
Zygomatic branches of facial nerve, 180t, 181f, 186, 186f, 189f
Zygomatic foramen, 482t
Zygomatic nerve
  course of, 86t, 88f
    eye and orbit, 494f, 494t
    face, 176t, 177f
    pterygopalatine fossa, 251f, 255t, 256f
Zygomatic process
  of frontal bone, 28t
  maxilla and, 43t, 44f
  in temporal bones, 32t, 33f
  temporal fossa and, 205f, 205t
  zygomatic bones and, 37t
Zygomaticofacial artery, 168f, 172f
Zygomaticofacial foramen, 27f, 37f, 55f, 55t
Zygomaticofacial nerve, 177f, 177t
Zygomaticofacial vein, 168f
Zygomaticoorbital artery, 168f
Zygomaticoorbital vein, 168f
Zygomaticotemporal artery, 168f
Zygomaticotemporal nerve, 159t, 160f, 176t, 177f
Zygomaticotemporal vein, 168f
Zygomaticus major muscle, 161t, 163f
Zygomaticus minor muscle, 161t, 163f